World Journal of

Pharmacology

World Journal of *Pharmacology*

A peer-reviewed, online, open-access journal of pharmacology

Editorial Board

2011-2015

The *World Journal of Pharmacology* Editorial Board consists of 476 members, representing a team of worldwide experts in pharmacology. They are from 44 countries, including Argentina (1), Australia (12), Austria (3), Belarus (1), Belgium (3), Brazil (5), Bulgaria (1), Canada (13), Chile (2), China (45), Czech Republic (2), Denmark (2), Egypt (2), Finland (3), France (13), Germany (7), Greece (17), Hungary (6), Iceland (1), India (10), Iran (4), Ireland (1), Israel (13), Italy (40), Japan (31), Malaysia (1), Mexico (1), Netherlands (11), New Zealand (2), Poland (3), Portugal (2), Russia (1), Saint Kitts and Nevis (1), Saudi Arabia (1), Serbia (1), Singapore (7), South Korea (10), Spain (22), Sweden (4), Switzerland (2), Thailand (2), Turkey (6), United Kingdom (21), and United States (140).

World Journal of Pharmacology

Contents

Contents

ABOUT COVER

Editorial Board Number of *World Journal of Pharmacology*, Constantinos M Paleos, PhD, Institute of Physical Chemistry, NCSR "Demokritos", Gregoriou and Neapoleos sts Aghia Paraskevi, Attiki-15310, Aghia Paraskevi, Greece

AIM AND SCOPE

World Journal of Pharmacology (*World J Pharmacol*, *WJP*, online ISSN 2220-3192, DOI: 10.5497) is a peer-reviewed open access academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians.

WJP covers topics concerning neuropsychiatric pharmacology, cerebrovascular pharmacology, geriatric pharmacology, anti-inflammatory and immunological pharmacology, antitumor pharmacology, anti-infective pharmacology, metabolic pharmacology, gastrointestinal and hepatic pharmacology, respiratory pharmacology, blood pharmacology, urinary and reproductive pharmacology, pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics, clinical pharmacology, and drug toxicology.

We encourage authors to submit their manuscripts to *WJP*. We will give priority to manuscripts that are supported by major national and international foundations and those that are of great basic and clinical significance.

INDEXING/ABSTRACTING

World Journal of Pharmacology is now indexed in Digital Object Identifier.

FLYLEAF

Updates on therapies for chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome

Asfandyar Khan, Adam B Murphy

Asfandyar Khan, Adam B Murphy, Department of Urology, Northwestern University Feinberg School of Medicine, Chicago, IL 60611, United States

Author contributions: Khan A and Murphy AB contributed equally to this work.

Conflict-of-interest: The authors declare no conflict of interest.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/

Correspondence to: Asfandyar Khan, MD, Department of Urology, Northwestern University Feinberg School of Medicine, 303 E. Chicago Ave., Tarry 16-729, Chicago, IL 60611, United States. a-khan@northwestern.edu
Telephone: +1-312-9082002
Received: July 10, 2014
Peer-review started: July 10, 2014
First decision: September 16, 2014
Revised: October 22, 2014
Accepted: December 16, 2014
Article in press: December 17, 2014
Published online: March 9, 2015

Abstract

Prostatitis comprises of a group of syndromes that affect almost 50% of men at least once in their lifetime and makeup the majority of visits to the Urology Clinics. After much debate, it has been divided into four distinct categories by National Institutes of Health namely (1) acute bacterial prostatitis; (2) chronic bacterial prostatitis; (3) chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome (CP/CPPS) which is further divided into inflammatory and non-inflammatory CP/CPPS; and (4) asymptomatic inflammatory prostatitis. CP/CPPS has been a cause of great concern for both patients and physicians because of the lack of presence of thorough information about the etiological factors along with the difficult-to-treat nature of the syndrome. For the presented manuscript an extensive search on PubMed was conducted for CP/CPPS aimed to present an updated review on the evaluation and treatment options available for patients with CP/CPPS. Several diagnostic criteria's have been established to diagnose CP/CPPS, with prostatic/pelvic pain for at least 3 mo being the major classifying symptom along with the presence of lower urinary tract symptoms and/or ejaculatory pain. Diagnostic tests can help differentiate CP/CPPS from other syndromes that come under the heading of prostatitis by ruling out active urinary tract infection and/or prostatic infection with uropathogen by performing urine cultures, Meares-Stamey Four Glass Test, Pre- and Post-Massage Two Glass Test. Asymptomatic inflammatory prostatitis is confirmed through prostate biopsy done for elevated serum prostate-specific antigen levels or abnormal digital rectal examination. Researchers have been unable to link a single etiological factor to the pathogenesis of CP/CPPS, instead a cluster of potential etiologies including atypical bacterial or nanobacterial infection, autoimmunity, neurological dysfunction and pelvic floor muscle dysfunction are most commonly implicated. Initially monotherapy with anti-biotics and alpha adrenergic-blockers can be tried, but its success has only been observed in treatment naïve population. Other pharmacotherapies including phytotherapy, neuromodulatory drugs and anti-inflammatories achieved limited success in trials. Complementary and interventional therapies including acupuncture, myofascial trigger point release and pelvic floor biofeedback have been employed. This review points towards the fact that treatment should be tailored individually for patients based on their symptoms. Patients can be stratified phenotypically based on the UPOINT system constituting of Urinary, Psychosocial, Organ-specific, Infectious, Neurologic/Systemic and symptoms of muscular Tenderness and the treatment algorithm should be proposed accordingly. Treatment of CP/CPPS should be aimed towards treating local as

well as central factors causing the symptoms. Surgical intervention can cause significant morbidity and should only be reserved for treatment-refractory patients that have previously failed to respond to multiple drug therapies.

Key words: Chronic prostatitis; Antibiotics; Myofascial trigger point; Pelvic biofeedback; Chronic pelvic pain syndrome; Phytotherapy; Nanobacteria; Dysfunctional voiding; Acupuncture

Core tip: Chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome (CP/CPPS) is difficult-to-treat because of the multitude of potential etiologies that are not easily observed and delayed diagnosis. Pharmacological monotherapy with antibiotics, alpha-blockers and anti-inflammatories provide significant symptomatic improvement in a limited number of patients. Multidrug therapies are recommended for monotherapy refractory patients. Complementary and interventional therapies such as acupuncture, myofascial trigger point release and pelvic floor biofeedback can provide additional symptomatic relief. Current recommendations involve a treatment algorithm based on UPOINT phenotypic presentation for CP/CPPS patients. Keeping in mind the high prevalence of CP/CPPS, development of novel therapies and an effective vaccine for prevention of CP/CPPS is crucial.

INTRODUCTION

Prostatitis is a term that identifies a number of syndromes ranging from acute or chronic pain to bacterial infection of the prostate gland[1]. Prostatitis makes up the majority of Urology clinic visits with as high as 2 million office visits annually by men suffering from prostatitis in the United States[2] and yet it is one of the least understood diseases in the field. Almost 50% of all men are symptomatic for prostatitis at some point in their lives[3]. Over time diagnostic and therapeutic modalities for prostatitis have evolved significantly and patients are now given specific treatments in accordance with the set of determined subtypes formulated by physicians based on clinical presentations[4].

The national institute of health (NIH) has classified chronic prostatitis into four different categories: Category Ⅰ: Acute bacterial prostatitis is an infection caused by an underlying uropathogen, which presents with signs of systemic infection including fever and chills. Category Ⅱ: Chronic bacterial prostatitis is caused by chronic bacterial infection of the prostatitis

secondary to recurrent urinary tract infections. Category Ⅲ: Chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome (CP/CPPS) primarily presents with pain and sometimes presents with voiding symptoms in absence of any urinary tract infection (UTI). It is sub-grouped into two more categories: Category Ⅲa: Inflammatory CP/CPPS; Category Ⅲb: Non-Inflammatory CP/CPPS. Category Ⅳ: Asymptomatic inflammatory prostatitis is diagnosed incidentally on prostate biopsy or other pathologic specimen by presence of prostatic inflammation without the evidence of any genitourinary symptoms[5].

The majority of patients with CP/CPPS present with pain symptoms ranging from lower abdominal to ejaculatory pain but the pain is not necessarily associated with lower urinary tract symptoms (LUTS) or sexual dysfunction[6]. Apart from being one of the least understood diseases, CP/CPPS comprises almost 90% of the prostatitis syndromes in patients[7].

Given the high prevalence of the disease and the lack of good diagnostic and treatment strategies, NIH formulated a classification system to stratify the types of prostatitis in order to devise treatment modalities accordingly[8]. The guidelines provided by the NIH in the form of NIH chronic prostatitis symptom index (NIH-CPSI) now serve as the international standard for non-diagnostic symptom evaluation of prostatitis in clinical practice as well as in research protocols (Table 1)[9]. An extensive search on PubMed was conducted for CP/CPPS with an aim to present an updated review on the evaluation and treatment options available for patients with CP/CPPS and to provide an in-depth review of the possible causative factors of CP/CPPS.

UNDERSTANDING THE BASES OF CP/CPPS

CP/CPPS is a syndrome without evident pathophysiology. For long it has been postulated that pathogens are the inciting factors and the early treatments focused on microbial eradication[10]. Recently researchers identified that uropathogens are present for only a few cases, which suggests that other unidentified causative factors play a role in the disease[10] including atypical microbes or pathogens that are difficult to culture[11]. The lack of readily identifiable bacteria rationalized the initial term Chronic Non-Bacterial Prostatitis, which was later changed to chronic prostatitis or CPPS[12]. CPPS is further divided into two types based on the number of leukocytes/high power field on microscopic examination of the expressed prostatic secretion (EPS) or semen. The prostatic fluid leukocyte count is used to differentiate between CPPS type Ⅲa (5-10 leukocytes/hpf) and type Ⅲb (< 5 leukocytes/hpf)[13]. Type Ⅲa CP/CPPS patient samples also have higher levels of pro-inflammatory markers, which are absent in type Ⅲb[12]. Despite the absence of bacteria in patients with CP/CPPS, it is hypothesized that bacterial infection acts as the initiating factor for the development of the disease.

Table 1 National institute of health prostatitis classification system

Categories
Acute bacterial prostatitis
Chronic bacterial prostatitis
Chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome
Inflammatory
Non-inflammatory
Asymptomatic inflammatory prostatitis

CP/CPPS has also been linked to depression, and similar conditions with chronic pain symptoms such as fibromyalgia, chronic fatigue syndrome and irritable bowel syndrome[14,15].

"Difficult to culture or atypical bacteria" the main culprits

Efforts have been put into finding the role of sexually transmitted pathogens such as Chlamydia trachomatis, trichomonas vaginalis, Ureaplasma urealyticum or mycoplasma hominis in causing CP/CPPS but no researcher yet been able to link the two[16]. A notion passed on by the researchers is that Bacterial involvement in CP/CPPS is only in 10% of the patients made evident by their response to antibiotics[17].

Atypical bacteria's haven been implicated as one of the potential precipitants of the pathogenic process in CP/CPPS. Atypical bacteria's are difficult to cultivate and require amplification at molecular level hence there's an important role of polymerase chain reaction (PCR) in the investigation[18]. Using PCR Hochreiter *et al*[19] were able to identify the presence of 16 s sub-unit of ribosomal RNA in CP/CPPS patients who had previously been cultured without evidence of bacterial growth in culture media.

Ever since *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) has been established as causative for diseases other than gastric ulcers, researchers have been investigating its contribution in development of CP/CPPS. One such study by Karatas *et al*[20] looked for *H. pylori* seropositivity in CP/CPPS patients. They found that 76% of the cases were seropositive for *H. pylori* as compared to 62% controls. They posit a possible role of *H. pylori* in CP/CPPS, but large multicenter studies are necessary to establish a firm link between the two.

An atypical *Escherichia Coli* strain known as CP1 has been associated with CP/CPPS. As this strain was isolated from a patient suffering from CP/CPPS, non-obese diabetic (NOD) mice were inoculated with CP1 to assess its role in the disease. CP1 was found to be invasive into the urothelium and could chronically colonize the urinary tract of the mice and initiate pain as seen in the patients of CP/CPPS[21].

Function of mast cells, interleukins and cytokines in the development of the disease

Much work has gone into elucidating the role of the immune system in the pathophysiology of CP/CPPS[22]. One of the cells thought to play a major role are mast cells, which are derived from $CD34^+$ hematopoietic precursor cells. Mast cells carry and release potent pro-inflammatory and vasoactive substances such as histamine, serotonin, proteases, leukotriene's and nerve growth factor (NGF)[23,24]. Seminal NGF levels are a reliable predictor of mast cell activity and increased levels are linked to increased pain symptoms, suggesting that NGF is a possible pain inducer[25]. A study was conducted in which EPS from patients diagnosed with CPPS Ⅲb was compared to controls. Samples were assayed for mast cell tryptase and NGF levels. It was shown that patients diagnosed with CPPS Ⅲb had significantly increased levels of tryptase and NGF in their prostatic fluid[25]. Interestingly increased tryptase-PAR2 axis activity is linked to pain in animal models through the activation of the dorsal root ganglion[26].

It has been demonstrated that T cells can provoke prostatic and pelvic pain in the absence of any ongoing bacterial infection. In a study, interleukin-17a (IL-17a), which is secreted primarily by Th1 helper cells, was shown to induce pain symptoms in murine models without interferon γ (IFNγ) playing any major role in the process indicating that T cells are primary mediators of pain in the mouse CPPS model[27].

Autoimmunity has been considered as a possible cause of CP/CPPS since autoreactive T-cells have been found within the prostate, which can trigger IFNγ release[22]. Recently a study was conducted to assess the role of autoimmunity in the development of CP/CPPS in an experimental autoimmune prostatitis model in NOD mice. The study demonstrated that Th1/Th17 cells expressing CXCR3 receptors were able to infiltrate and damage the prostate gland through the induction of pro-inflammatory chemokines[28]. Several pro-inflammatory cytokines including IL-1b, -6 and -8, tumor necrosis factors α and IgA have been linked to the development of CP/CPPS following an event that triggers initiation of the inflammatory process[29].

Chemokines appear to play a significant role in the development of the CP/CPPS. Chemokines are a subgroup of cytokines responsible for regulating and recruiting inflammatory cells; of them, two chemokines, monocyte chemotactic protein 1 (MCP-1) also known as C-C motif ligand 2 and macrophage inflammation protein 1α also called C-C motif ligand 3 can enhance the pain symptoms of CPPS moreover both chemokines are elevated in CP/CPPS type Ⅲa and type Ⅲb patients[28,29].

Despite the presence of inflammatory markers in the EPS, Thumbikat *et al*[30] observed in their study that MCP-1 has no chemoattractant potential in CP/CPPS patients; the underlying mechanism can be caused by extracellular proteases and induced chemoattractant signal loss. In other words, the normal inflammatory pathway is altered within the patient's prostate and this aberrant inflammatory pathway is playing part in

pathogenesis of the disease.

Neurological dysfunction as the primary cause of pain

Neurological dysfunction has been a major focal point for the etiology of the pain in CP/CPPS. A group of men diagnosed with CP/CPPS found to have high amounts of prostaglandin E2 (PGE2) present in their prostatic fluid were treated with antibiotics (Quinolones or Macrolides) and anti-oxidants (Prosta-Q). Subsequently, the level of PGE2 decreased by 50% and β-endorphin levels concurrently increased 2.75 fold, which coincided with reported improvement in patient's pain using the NIH-CPSI[31]. This provided quantifiable effects presumedly due to local neurological effects of prostaglandins along with its role in inhibition of β-endorphins[32].

NGF is a known neurotrophic agent that has a direct role in pain induction in CP/CPPS patients[33]. Prostate inflammation leads to the release of cytokines such as IL-10, which may induce the expression of NGF[33] or direct neuronal damage may bring about NGF release, prompting excitation of C-fibers and mast cell degranulation leading to further release of NGF[34]. Though NGF is released peripherally, it can sensitize central neurons once its concentration exceeds a threshold causing constant depolarization of those neurons. This, in turn, leads to central hyper-sensitization and chronic pain[32].

Furthermore, autonomic dysfunction has been implicated in patients with CP/CPPS as a key contributor in the network of processes promoting symptom development. Abnormal postural blood pressure response has been noted in CP/CPPS patients, along with elevated peripheral blood pressure readings[35]. Cho *et al*[36] also reported that CP/CPPS patients had lower heart rate variability as compared to the controls, which suggests that autonomic dysfunction could be a causative as well as an aggravating factor in CP/CPPS.

Role of nanobacteria

Recently, compelling results have been obtained highlighting the role of nanobacteria in CP/CPPS. Nanobacteria are newly discovered cell-walled organisms that have an annular structure, display slow growth in cell culture, are able to induce cell death in fibroblasts and require electron microscopy for visualization[37]. They do not require host cells in order to replicate and are believed to form the apatite core of prostatic calculi, as under physiological conditions they are present in mineralized apatite crystal form[36-38]. A study was performed to establish the treatment modalities that can be effective against nanobacteria-causing CP/CPPS in the presence of prostatic calculi; in this study patients refractory to multiple prior therapies were given tetracycline, multivitamin (Nanobac OTC supplement) and an ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid rectal suppository for 3-4 mo. Ultrasound and nanobacterial antigen testing was done before the treatment process was initiated. Patients reported marked improvement in their mean NIH-CPSI score (P < 0.0001), after 3 mo consequently few patients who underwent transrectal ultrasound displayed decreased or absent prostatic stones once the treatment was completed[38].

Pelvic injuries, chronic pelvic floor muscle tension and dysfunctional voiding as possible etiologies

The process of CP/CPPS appears to begin after an initiator causes inflammatory or neurogenic damage within or outside the prostate[39]. An important consideration in CP/CPPS patients is that similar symptomatology can also be seen in patients with bladder neck obstruction and external sphincter dyssynergia[40]. These patients often complain of dysfunctional voiding. It is hypothesized that psychological stress causes aberrant pelvic floor muscle function which triggers dysfunctional voiding and eventually full-blown CP/CPPS[41-43]. There is evidence that increased intraprostatic pressure due to enhanced sympathetic activity and can lead to urine reflux from the urethra into prostate, which subsequently causes prostatic inflammation[44]. The prostatic inflammation is thought to cause edema that disrupts the microvasculature, causing tissue hypoxia and pain initiation[45].

A study by Shoskes *et al*[46] demonstrated myofascial pain as an etiology of CP/CPPS. They deduced that most of the patients with CP/CPPS had point myofascial tenderness with the prostate being the tenderest point. Although the cause of myofascial spasm can be infectious, inflammatory or traumatic like CP/CPPS, there was no association between the myofascial spasm and prostatic inflammation. Neuromuscular trigger points have been identified in CP/CPPS patients and it is hypothesized that painful myofascial tissue plays a major role in the syndrome[47].

A racially and ethnically diverse study known as the Boston Area Community Health survey comprised of 2301 men was conducted by Daniels *et al*[48] between April 2002 through June 2005, demonstrating men with frequent UTI's had higher odds of having symptoms of CP/CPPS (P < 0.01). Similarly a study conducted to investigate the symptoms of prostatitis amongst male health professionals concluded that individuals with a history of sexually transmitted disease had 1.8 times increased odds of having the disease[49].

DIAGNOSING THE DISEASE

Patients with CP/CPPS primarily complain of pain in the pelvic region including perineum, rectum, prostate, penis, testicles and abdomen. Along with the pain occasionally patients also complain of LUTS or obstructive symptoms[50]. Pain lasting longer than 3 mo[51] is an imperative symptom and is the most consistent finding in CP/CPPS patients[6]. Patients also experience a wide array of sexual dysfunctions including erectile dysfunction, painful ejaculation and premature ejaculation[52].

Diagnosing CP/CPPS can be difficult as there are

First 10 mL voided (Urethral)   Midstream urine (Bladder)   Expressed prostatic secretions   First 10 mL voided after massage

Prostate massage

Figure 1 Meares-Stamey four glass test.

Table 2 Diagnostic evaluation of chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome

Primary evaluation
  History: Should include complete background and symptom evaluation
  Physical exam: Complete physical exam including a digital rectal exam and check for myofascial tenderness
  Pain evaluation: Use the National Institute of Health-Chronic Prostatitis Symptom index for quantification of the symptoms
  Urinalysis and culture
Specialized evaluation
  Meares-stamey four glass test
  Pre and post-massage two glass test
  Urodynamic studies (only if lower urinary tract symptoms or outflow obstruction present)
New/optional evaluation
  Serum prostate-specific antigen
  Prostatic fluid nerve growth factor levels
  Cystoscopy
  Transrectal ultrasound or computerized tomography scan
  Intra-anal electromyography
  Pelvic floor ultrasound

no validated tests for the disease and it is largely a diagnosis of exclusion[53] once other disease such benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH), interstitial cystitis, Genitourinary stones or cancer and prostatic abscess have been ruled out[54]. Adequate history, a physical examination including a digital rectal examination and urinalysis are mandatory in every patient[55]. Physicians are advised to adopt a step-by-step approach (Table 2) including subjective evaluation and quantification of pain symptoms using the NIH-CPSI followed by physical evaluation and laboratory tests while investigating a patient for CP/CPPS[56]. Meares-Stamey-four glass[57] and the modified two glass tests[13] are commonly used laboratory investigations.

Meares-Stamey four-glass test
This test involves performing a prostatic massage followed by collection of four samples of Urine and expressed prostatic fluid. Each sample collection takes place after voided bladder 2 (VB2) has been collected. Initial 10 mL of voided urine constitutes urethral flora. Subsequently 200 mL of urine is voided and midstream urine is collected (VB2) this constitutes the bladder flora. Collection of VB2 is followed by a prostatic massage to collect EPS afterwards EPS and the first voided 10 mL are collected (VB3) (Figure 1). These samples are cultured and evaluated microscopically to look for bacterial presence and confirm prostatic inflammation[58]. Meares-stamey test can help differentiate between type II, IIIA and IIIB on the bases of presence of leukocytes (> 5 in IIIA and < 5 in IIIB)[50].

Pre-, post-massage two-glass test
Meares-Stamey four-glass test was modified to pre and post-massage two-glass test (Figure 2), which utilizes only VB2 and VB3 and provides fairly accurate results. Along with being cost effective it is easier to perform[59].

Role of serum prostate-specific antigen
Studies have been conducted to find a link between CP/CPPS and total or free prostate-specific antigen (PSA) but a statistically significant connection is yet to be established between the two[60,61]. PSA levels should be checked even without the presence of pain in patients older than 50 years.

Nerve growth factor levels
As discussed earlier a positive correlation between nerve growth factor levels and NIH-CPSI score have been found, presence of higher levels of NGF in CP/CPPS than control group further strengthens the use of NGF as a biomarker[62]. Higher levels of NGF in seminal fluid of CPPS patient heralds prostatic inflammation[33] hence it can be used to assess treatment response in

Figure 2 Pre- and post-massage two glass test.

the patients.

Imaging studies
CP/CPPS patients are not required to undergo unnecessary imaging or endoscopic studies until and unless there is evidence of LUTS or bladder outflow obstruction in which case urodynamic evaluation helps guide treatment[56]. Pelvic imaging such as transrectal ultrasound, computed tomography scan or magnetic resonance imaging can be helpful in ruling out bladder, prostate, seminal vesicular or ejaculatory duct pathology[55]. As pelvic floor muscle dysfunction has been contemplated as one of the possible causes of CPPS, intra-anal electromyography and pelvic floor ultrasound has successfully been used to assess higher pelvic resting muscle tone[63].

TREATMENT MODALITIES

Pharmacological
Antibiotics: Despite the fact that bacterial involvement is one of the least likely causes of CP/CPPS and there are apprehensions surrounding the etiology of CP/CPPS, the treatment primarily constitutes of empirical therapy and in it antibiotics are amongst the most prescribed medications. In a some patients with bacteria identified as the primary etiological factor in causing the disease the antibiotic therapy helps improve symptoms by eradicating the pathogen, however the conducive effects of antibiotics have largely been linked to their anti-inflammatory activity[17].

A randomized multicenter trial by Alexander *et al*[64] conducted to analyze the effect of ciprofloxacin over the period of 6 wk in 49 patients, did not result in any statistically significant improvement in the NIH-CPSI score. Another study conducted to infer efficacy assessment of levofloxacin[65] proved to be fruitless in exhibiting significant improvements in patients NIH-CPSI score on the other hand a course of tetracycline over the period of 12 wk did prove efficacious but the

study had lacking in several fronts including small patient population and use of combination therapy[38]. Despite the negative outcomes of the above studies, a study undertaken by Canadian Prostatitis Research Group did show promising results with likelihood of symptom improvement being almost 65% after a 12-wk course of ofloxacin was administered to CP/CPPS patients[66].

Recently Choe *et al*[67] performed a multicenter randomized pilot trial to compare the effect of roxithro-mycin with ciprofloxacin and aclofenac in 75 patients divided into three groups. Patients were treated for 4 wk and subsequently followed for 12 wk. Results obtained showed decrease in NIH-CPSI score in roxithromycin group comparable to results of the other two groups for type ⅢA patients and even lower scores in type ⅢB patients. This outcome supports the notion that though CP/CPPS is considered primarily to be a non-infectious condition, post-antibiotic improvement in symptoms attests their definitive role in disease treatment.

Use of trimethoprim-sulfamethoxizole has also been found to improve symptoms in CP/CPPS[68] and a single 4-6 wk course of trimethoprim-sulfamethoxizole can be tried as a first line treatment therapy[58]. In a small study, Zhou *et al*[69] found out that tetracycline was able to improve the mean NIH-CPSI scores from 35.6 ± 5.2 to 17.1 ± 2.8 in the treatment group ($P < 0.01$). This result warrants performing further investigations to evaluate the effects of tetracycline therapy in CP/CPPS. Antibiotic use is recommended only in antibiotic naive population and should not be considered as a monotherapy in patients who had prior antibiotic treatment. (Evidence level: 1, recommendation grade: A).

Anti-inflammatories: As prostate inflammation is one of the possible etiologies of CP/CPPS, the use of anti-inflammatories to curb the inflammation has been a mainstay of treatment and plays a discrete role in

disease management. Mast cells are considered to play an important part in pathological process of CP/CPPS for this reason a small-randomized single center study conducted to identify the effect of a leukotriene inhibitor zafirlukast did not exhibit promising results[70]. Cycloxygenase inhibitors are an important class of drugs with important anti-inflammatory effects. Rofecoxib, a COX-2 inhibitor, was given to 161 patients. Efficacious effects were seen in the treatment group against the placebo group but only at high doses given to the patients over a span of 6 wk[71]. Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs have been commonly used in the treatment of CP/CPPS as a first line therapy[72]. Few trials are available, one of which was conducted by Tuğcu *et al*[73] who treated CP/CPPS patients with Ibuprofen together with doxazosin and thiocolchicoside (muscle relaxant) as a triple therapy and compared the results with alpha blocker (Doxazosin) monotherapy and placebo groups for six months, which displayed mean improvement of NIH-CPSI score from 23.1 to 10.7 in the triple therapy group and 21.9 to 9.2 in the the monotherapy group with a stable score in the placebo group indicating there is no advantage of triple therapy over mono therapy ($P < 0.05$) in CP/CPPS. Similarly, a placebo controlled study to assess the role of celecoxib in CP/CPPS by Zhao *et al*[74] determined that 6 wk of celecoxib therapy reduced total NIH-CPSI score from 23.91 ± 5.27 to 15.88 ± 2.51, a statistically significant decrease in score ($P < 0.006$).

Pentosan polysulfate sodium is a FDA approved glycosaminoglycan used in interstitial cystitis chiefly because of its anti-inflammatory effect on bladder mucosa[75]. A 16-wk randomized double-blinded multicenter study failed to show its substantial effect in improving NIH-CPSI scores in CP/CPPS patients[76]. There is an ample room for research and large multicenter studies would certainly reveal more information regarding the potential effects of pentosan in CP/CPPS patients. Keeping in mind the pathogenic role of neurotrophin Nerve growth factor in CP/CPPS, a randomized double-blinded multicenter study was conducted with 62 patients divided in two groups to evaluate the efficacy of tanezumab a humanized monoclonal antibody. Tanezumab was given as a single 20 mg intravenous dose per day to the treatment group for 6 wk but only modest response was observed as compared to the placebo group[77]. These results warrant further trials on a larger scale to broaden the scope of the available treatment options.

Anti-inflammatories play an important role in CP/CPPS therapy when given as a part of the multimodal regimen. (Evidence level: 2, recommendation grade: C).

Alpha-adrenergic blockers: Often, men suffering from CP/CPPS also present with LUTS such as urgency, frequency and incomplete voiding. These manifestations along with the fundamental CP/CPPS symptom of genitourinary pain give way to the use of α-blockers.

Alpha blockade is thought to exert its pacifying effects on prostate, urethra and bladder neck and in turn improve the LUTS along with improvement in NIH-CPSI scores especially in alpha-blocker-naive patients[78]. Various randomized placebo controlled trials have been performed to ascertain effects of alpha-blockers in CP/CPPS. Alpha-blockers commonly used to minimizing LUTS in CP/CPPS are alfuzosin[79,80], tamsulosin[64,81], terazosin[82], doxazosin[73] and silodosin[83]. Despite the fact that two NIH-sponsored studies failed to demonstrate any usefulness of alfuzosin or tamsulosin in CP/CPPS[84], beneficial effects of alpha blockers are pertinent to their long term use as illustrated in a randomized placebo control study by Nickel *et al*[80] performed to evaluate the role of alfuzosin against placebo in recently diagnosed alpha-blocker naive CP/CPPS patients over a period of 12 wk. The study failed to demonstrate any significant improvement in the NIH-CPSI score of the group treated over the placebo group and postulated that long-term therapy might be warranted to observe treatment effects. Taken together, alpha-blocker monotherapy is not recommended, especially in patients previously treated with alpha-blockers. (Evidence level: 1, recommendation grade: A).

Combination therapy trials: Due to the complex nature of the disease, lack of effectiveness of mo-notherapies and the postulated role of multiple patho\ genic factors for CP/CPPS, various combination therapies have been devised by researchers to address specific etiologic factors. The three A's of CP/CPPS including alpha-blockers, anti-inflammatories and antibiotics are an effective combination therapy for CP/CPPS[85]. A recent meta-analysis of all the available treatments for CP/CPPS and their subsequent effects on patient NIH-CPSI scores reported multimodal therapy with alpha-blockers, anti-inflammatories and anti-biotics was superior to monotherapies for optimal disease management[72]. Combination therapies with alpha-blockers and anti-biotics have revealed positive outcomes[64,86], but current recommendations are to tailor the treatment regimen to the patient's symptoms. (Evidence level: 2, recommendation grade: A).

Phytotherapy: Phytotherapy is one of the alternative pharmacotherapies believed to abate the inflammatory process that occurs in the prostate, but the exact mechanism is still unknown[87]. Phytotherapy includes pollen extracts, quercetin and saw palmetto. Various pollen extract preparations are available. In one randomized double-blinded trial, 60 patients were divided into treatment groups that received prostat/ poltit (a pollen extract) or placebo. After 6 mo, the pollen treatment group reported marked improvement in symptom scores compared to placebo group[88]. A larger randomized, multicenter, placebo-controlled trial by Wagenlehner *et al*[89] enrolled 139 participants, randomly allotted to treatment and placebo groups. The 12-wk study resulted in improvement in pain

(P = 0.0086), quality of life (P = 0.0250) and NIH-CPSI score (P = 0.0126) in the Pollen extract group. These studies highlight the fact that pollen extract to some extent is effective in the treatment of CP/CPPS. (Evidence level: 1, recommendation grade: B).

Quercetin is a bioflavonoid found in plants, as well as in green tea, onions and red wine and is a known anti-oxidant and anti-inflammatory agent[90]. A prospective placebo controlled, double-blind trial by Shoskes *et al*[91] demonstrated mean improvement of NIH-CPSI score from 21.0 to 13.1 (P = 0.003) in the group taking quercetin. Apart from the quercetin and placebo group, a third group received a quercetin formulation mixed with digestive enzymes bromelain and papain. This group demonstrated an 82% improvement in mean NIH symptom scores from 25.1 to 14.6. (Evidence level: 2, recommendation grade: C)

Saw Palmetto (Serenao repens), a herbal lipid extract, is one of the most frequently used phytotherapies in symptomatic benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH) patients[92,93], but its use in CP/CPPS still remains controversial because of limited number of trials. A prospective, randomized open-label study by Kaplan *et al*[94] compared saw palmetto with finasteride, 5-alpha reductase inhibitor, in 64 participants. After 1 year, mean NIH-CPSI score in the finasteride group decreased from 23.9 to 18.1 (P = 0.003) and from 24.7 to 24.6 (P = 0.41) in saw palmetto group. These authors concluded that the use of saw palmetto does not improve the symptoms in CP/CPPS patients significantly. (Evidence level: 3, recommendation grade: C).

Neuromodulatory drugs: Neurological dysfunction has been implicated as a prime culprit in men with CP/CPPS. Depression and psycho-emotional changes usually accompany neurogenic pain in CP/CPPS[95,96]. Thus, anxiolytics and anti-depressants might have a therapeutic role in disease management. Several uncontrolled trials have been performed to evaluate different pharmacological interventions for neuropathic pain symptoms. Recently, Giannantoni *et al*[97] conducted a small study to analyze the effectiveness of duloxetine being given as part of a multidrug regimen for CP/CPPS. After 16 wk of treatment in 38 men, randomly divided into two groups, one of which received an alpha-blocker (Tamsulosin) and saw palmetto, while the other group received triple therapy with an alpha-blocker (Tamsulosin), saw palmetto and duloxetine. Significant improvement in total NIH-CPSI score (25.1-14.17, P < 0.01) was observed in the group receiving the triple therapy. The anticonvulsants pregabalin and gabapentin play a major role in chronic pain syndromes treatment and also have been used in CP/CPPS[98]. A multi-center randomized double-blinded placebo controlled trial failed to show significant NIH-CPSI score improvement in participants receiving pregabalin[99]. Nonetheless well-controlled studies are required to investigate possible benefits of these drugs in the management of CP/CPPS. Neuromodulatory drugs should not be recommended

as a primary treatment modality for CP/CPPS (Evidence level: 2, recommendation grade: B).

Hormonal therapy: Finasteride is a 5-α reductase inhibitor used as a treatment to alleviate symptoms and prevent surgical intervention in men with BPH[100]. It blocks the conversion of testosterone to the more potent dihydrotestosterone. The use of finasteride in CP/CPPS needs further study because of the lack of data that supports its positive role in improving patient symptoms. Nickel *et al*[101] conducted a placebo-controlled, randomized trial to determine the effectiveness of finasteride in reducing CP/CPPS symptoms. Only 75% of participants receiving finasteride had > 25% improvement in the subjective oral assessment and a similar trend was observed in the NIH-CPSI scores. Use of mepartricin, an estrogen-lowering drug[102], has been tested in a small placebo controlled trial. It was found to be effective in decreasing the NIH-CPSI score from 25.0 to 10.0 in the treatment group along with a statistically significant decrease in scores of pain (11.0-4.0) and quality of life (10.0-5.0)[103]. Despite the fact that this study displayed some benefit of mepartricin in CP/CPPS patients, larger multicenter center studies are still required to confirm the results. Hormonal therapy is not considered as a first line treatment in CP/CPPS and should be reserved in patients with symptoms of BPH (Evidence level: 2, recommendation grade: C).

Others: Recently a 12-mo randomized placebo controlled double-blinded study was conducted to observe the effects of immunostimulation in CP/CPPS by giving an oral immunostimulatory agent known as OM-89, which is a lysed pathogenic *E. coli* extract[104]. The study did not demonstrate a significant difference in improvement of NIH-CPSI scores between the treatment and the placebo groups despite the fact that the long term therapy was well tolerated by the patients[105]. Hormonal therapies as yet are only advisable to patients with CP/CPPS with prior symptoms of prostatic hyperplasia. Use of allopurinol[106,107] and oral corticosteroids[108] in the management of CP/CPPS remains uncertain and their effects have not comprehensively studied and more detailed and well planned trials are necessary to ascertain the therapeutic role these drugs. (Evidence level: 3, recommendation grade: C).

Complementary and interventional therapies
Physical therapy, myofascial trigger point release and pelvic floor biofeedback: Large number of patients with CP/CPPS also have pelvic floor muscle dysfunction[109] and myofascial pain. In order to relax these pelvic muscle and decrease the pain associated with hypersensitive regions in muscles or fascia, pelvic floor physical therapy and myofascial trigger point release has been devised. Researchers from stanford have identified various myofascial trigger points[47] and have devised a protocol accordingly employing myofascial trigger point release physical therapy along

with paradoxical relaxation technique in CP/CPPS patients. The beneficial effect of this treatment can be assessed by one of their trials which resulted in a 72% rate of moderate to marked improvement of symptoms along with improvement in NIH-CPSI scores with a median decrease of 10.5 ($P < 0.001$) in markedly and 6.5 ($P = 0.008$) in moderately improved groups of CP/CPPS patients[110].

A randomized, multi-center, feasibility trial performed by FitzGerald *et al*[111] evaluated the effectiveness of physical therapy in urological chronic pelvic pain syndromes with global therapeutic massage (GTM) *vs* myofascial physical therapy (MPT). In the study, 45% participants had CP/CPPS and 42% received GTM and 48% received MPT. MPT resulted in improved symptom scores ($P = 0.0003$) in CP/CPPS patients but was only significantly better than GTM on the urinary symptom scale of the NIH-CPSI (-3.9 *vs* -0.3, $P = 0.007$).

Along with myofascial trigger point release, the rationale behind physical therapy is to restore proper use of pelvic floor muscles. Pelvic floor biofeedback and pelvic floor re-education were investigated by Cornel *et al*[112] in a study using rectal Electromyogram probes to monitor therapy response. Pelvic floor biofeedback helped improve the NIH-CPSI score from 23.6 to 11.4 ($P < 0.001$) along with a decreased pelvic muscle tone ($P < 0.001$). Similarly He *et al*[41] used pelvic floor biofeedback in 21 patients and attained comparable results with improvement in NIH-CPSI score ($P < 0.05$) along with improvement urodynamics ($P < 0.05$). Nadler[113] had previously demonstrated the beneficial effects of biofeedback and bladder training in CP/CPPS patients in a small pilot study. Overall, these results point towards therapeutic benefit when targeting pelvic floor muscle dysfunction for CP/CPPS patients.

Acupuncture: Acupuncture has been put forward as a safe and beneficial procedure for CP/CPPS patients. Recently several publications have evaluated the role of acupuncture[114-117], though the exact mechanism of pain relief is unknown. But, its utility in other neuropathic pain entities has already been established[114]. A recent review found acupuncture effective in ameliorating CP/CPPS pain symptoms and the authors endorsed acupuncture as part of a standard CP/CPPS treatment[118].

A pilot study to determine the validity of acupuncture use to improve CP/CPPS symptoms was performed. Chen *et al*[115] provided acupuncture therapy for 6 wk in men refractory to standard therapy. Total NIH-CPSI score decreased from 28.2 to 8.5. The NIH-CPSI pain (14.1-4.8), urinary (5.2-1.3), and NIH-CPSI quality-of-life (8.8-2.3) scores all decreased after a median follow-up of 33 wk. Although this had significant limitations including small study population and the lack of control and placebo groups, acupuncture achieved impressive results and highlighted a need for randomized placebo controlled studies. Lee *et al*[116] compared acupuncture

with sham acupuncture and found out that 32 (73%) of 44 participants responded with 4.5 points decrease in NIH-CPSI score on average in the acupuncture group compared to the score of 21 (47%) participants in the sham group ($P = 0.03$). After 24 wk 32% participants in the acupuncture group demonstrated long-term response as compared to 13% participants ($P = 0.04$) in sham acupuncture group without any additional treatment.

Electroacupuncture was noted to significantly reduce NIH-CPSI scores (details) at 6 wk compared to sham electroacupuncture and to medical advise and exercise regimens[119].

In a recent randomized double-blinded trial, results of acupuncture and sham acupuncture in CP/CPPS were compared over the period of 10 wk. In sham acupuncture, participant's short needles were placed 0.5 cm away from the true acupuncture points. Clinical response criterion was achieved in 73% of the acupuncture participants compared with 47% of sham acupuncture participants ($P = 0.017$). Higher levels of β-endorphins and leucine-enkephalin levels were noted in the acupuncture group ($P < 0.01$)[117]. A recent systemic review analyzed 27 clinical trials including 890 patients and concluded that acupuncture can be contemplated as an efficacious treatment modality in CP/CPPS[120]. Nevertheless, high quality randomized, placebo-controlled trials are needed to investigate acupuncture as a first-line treatment modality for CP/CPPS.

Posterior tibial nerve stimulation and sacral neuromodulation: United States Food and Drug Administration has approved sacral nerve stimulation and posterior tibial nerve stimulation for use in CP/CPPS patients with urinary symptoms. Despite the fact that these therapies have been approved, they are still not considered first line treatments[121]. Both therapies have improved NIH CPSI scores, but larger and better-designed multicenter trials are still required in order to include them into the treatment algorithm[122-124].

Botulinum toxin injection: Botulinum toxin is a potent neurotoxin already being used in different muscular and neurological disorders. Likewise its use has been advocated in the treatment of CP/CPPS patients when multi-therapy is employed[125].

Others: Several other techniques including prostatic massage, sitz bath and frequent ejaculations are prescribed, but they only have a supportive role in the treatment of CP/CPPS. Nickel *et al*[126] devised a comprehensive 8-wk program consisting of cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT) in patients with CP/CPPS in order to help the patients manage their condition and in turn improve their quality of life (QoL). This technique was again tested by Tripp *et al*[127] and obtained satisfactory results. Patients displayed improved scores

in the categories of pain, disability and catastrophizing. Follow-up CPSI scores were significantly decreased ($P = 0.007$) in particular, significant decrease was noted in CPSI pain ($P = 0.015$) and QoL domains ($P = 0.013$). These results support the use of CBT, but additional randomized controlled trials are required to assess its long-term effects in CP/CPPS patients.

These interventions are helpful in CP/CPPS patients with pelvic floor muscle dysfunction and help relieve the symptoms significantly (Evidence level: 4, recommendation grade: C).

Surgical treatment
Surgical treatments have been found to help patients suffering from CP/CPPS refractory to other types of treatments. Various types of surgical interventions are available but their level of benefit is still questionable.

Transurethral needle ablation: Transurethral needle ablation (TUNA) is already one of the primary treatment methods with clinical efficacy BPH/LUTS[128]. Its therapeutic effect in CP/CPPS is yet to be determined because of the limited number of studies available. A Pilot study performed by Aaltomaa *et al*[129] along with the studies conducted by Lee *et al*[130] and Chiang *et al*[131] have shown favorable outcomes in the patients, but further prospective trials are still required[130].

Transurethral balloon dilation: Transurethral balloon dilation (TUBT) is another treatment modality offered to CP/CPPS patients, though, as in the case of TUNA, limited number of studies only allows TUBT to be offered as a secondary treatment choice. A small study by Lopatin *et al*[132] performed TUBT on 7 patients presenting with bladder neck or prostatic urethra obstruction which improved the overall symptoms of CP/CPPS in all the participants.

Transurethral microwave therapy: Transurethral microwave therapy (TUMT) is one of the primary treatments BPH. In CP/CPPS patients, TUMT have been used and results obtained are promising though its use as a first line therapy is not recommended[5].

Extracorporeal shockwave therapy and Extracorporeal magnetic stimulation: Most recently, extracorporeal shock wave therapy has been shown to have potential benefit in CP/CPPS patients. Zimmermann *et al*[133] followed 34 patients for 12 wk and found significant improvement in patients pain and QoL. They followed their initial trial with a double-blinded, placebo-controlled, randomized trial with 60 patients. Extracorporeal shockwave therapy was significantly effective in improving pain, QoL and voiding symptoms[134].

Kim *et al*[135] used a recent technique known as extracorporeal magnetic stimulation to treat CP/CPPS. In their study 46 patients were enrolled and the treatment was provided for 6 wk. The patients were

followed 24 wk post treatment. More than 70% of the patients registered a positive outcome of the treatment with an improvement in NIH-CPSI ($P < 0.05$) and pain scores ($P < 0.05$). Results for this study are promising but it would be too early to say if it can be included as a primary mode of treatment until and unless more multicenter trials are performed and validate its effectiveness.

The above interventions are reserved for patients with refractory symptoms and should not be offered as first line treatment modality (Evidence level: 2, recommendation grade: A).

Transurethral resection of prostate and Prostatectomy: Transurethral resection of prostate and prostatectomy have been reserved only for CP/CPPS patients with intractable pain and is not routinely recommended because it involves significant morbidity and persistence of symptoms post-surgery[39,96] (Evidence level: 4, recommendation grade: D).

Multimodal therapy
CP/CPPS is a heterogeneous syndrome, which makes it difficult to treat. Monotherapies have worked in some of the patients, but there is no data to support the use of a single therapy in most patients. Monotherapy failed to find major success in treating the disease because it acts against a single target but there are multiple etiologies that likely lead to the development of the disease[136].

A more tailored treatment approach was required to treat this condition with varied symptomatology and consequently Shoskes *et al*[137] and Nickel *et al*[138] came up with a phenotypic approach for the management of CP/CPPS. The UPOINT phenotypic approach comprises of six clinical domains including Urinary symptoms, Psychosocial dysfunction, Organ specific findings, Infection, Neurologic dysfunction and Tenderness of muscles[136]. Recently sexual dysfunction was included in this phenotypic approach, which led to the modified UPOINTS system after a study showed sexual dysfunction domain correlated with the NIH-CPSI score significantly[139,140].

To test the treatment efficacy of the UPOINT system, a prospective study was conducted, including 100 patients treated with multimodal therapy. Men were re-evaluated after 26 wk. The treatment proved to be effective and almost 86% patients experienced at least a 6-point decrease in NIH-CPSI score and total improvement in NIH-CPSI scores were from 25.2 ± 6.1 to 13.2 ± 7.2 ($P < 0.0001$). These results are comparable to some of the large monotherapy trials[141].

An algorithm has been constructed to provide individualized therapy based on the phenotypes within the UPOINT system (Figure 3). Because of the fact that monotherapies give modest therapeutic outcomes, a multimodal treatment approach would be considered more rational and should be considered as a primary

Figure 3 Multimodal therapy based on clinical phenotype (urinary, psychosocial, organ specific, infection, neurological, tenderness of muscle) approach for chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome.

recommendation based on patients phenotype.

CONCLUSION

CP/CPPS has been baffling the physicians since long because of its complex etiology and difficult-to-treat nature. No single etiological factor has been linked strongly to CP/CPPS, instead a cluster of factors cause symptoms in CP/CPPS patients. This relates to the fact that monotherapy does not always proves effective in treating the symptoms. Primary role of the Urologist is to rule out differentials that present with similar symptoms as CP/CPPS and utilize diagnostic modalities that cause minimum physical and psychological distress to the patients and provide most accurate results. Multimodal therapy such as UPOINT has been beneficial because of its role in influencing multiple constituents that lead to CP/CPPS. Overall CP/CPPS should not be considered as a localized pathology and a centralized approach is recommended to reverse or halt the progression of symptoms. There is still space for development of novel therapeutic regimens including the development of a vaccine that can be offered to CP/CPPS patients. Psychological stress should always be ruled out and psychiatric counseling needs to be offered along with pharmacological treatment. Pelvic floor biofeedback along with acupuncture proved to help patients but larger multicenter studies are still required to prove its effectiveness in CP/CPPS patients. It is recommended that physicians keep in touch with new researches and treatments coming out for CP/CPPS, in order to provide their patients a chance for an up to date

and improved treatment opportunities. For now the best available strategy would be to individually tailor treatment plan for each patient.

REFERENCES

1   **Pontari MA**, Joyce GF, Wise M, McNaughton-Collins M. Prostatitis. *J Urol* 2007; **177**: 2050-2057 [PMID: 17509285 DOI: 10.1016/j.juro.2007.01.128]

2   **Collins MM**, Stafford RS, O'Leary MP, Barry MJ. How common is prostatitis? A national survey of physician visits. *J Urol* 1998; **159**: 1224-1228 [PMID: 9507840 DOI: 10.1016/S0022-5347(01)63564-X]

3   **Schaeffer AJ**, Landis JR, Knauss JS, Propert KJ, Alexander RB, Litwin MS, Nickel JC, O'Leary MP, Nadler RB, Pontari MA, Shoskes DA, Zeitlin SI, Fowler JE, Mazurick CA, Kishel L, Kusek JW, Nyberg LM. Demographic and clinical characteristics of men with chronic prostatitis: the national institutes of health chronic prostatitis cohort study. *J Urol* 2002; **168**: 593-598 [PMID: 12131316 DOI: 10.1016/S0022-5347(05)64686-1]

4   **Schaeffer AJ**. Clinical practice. Chronic prostatitis and the chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *N Engl J Med* 2006; **355**: 1690-1698 [PMID: 17050893 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMcp060423]

5   **Nickel JC**. Prostatitis. *Can Urol Assoc J* 2011; **5**: 306-315 [PMID: 22031609 DOI: 10.5489/cuaj.11211]

6   **Krieger JN**, Egan KJ, Ross SO, Jacobs R, Berger RE. Chronic pelvic pains represent the most prominent urogenital symptoms of "chronic prostatitis". *Urology* 1996; **48**: 715-721; discussion 721-722 [PMID: 8911515 DOI: 10.1016/s0090-4295(96)00421-9]

7   **de la Rosette JJ**, Hubregtse MR, Meuleman EJ, Stolk-Engelaar MV, Debruyne FM. Diagnosis and treatment of 409 patients with prostatitis syndromes. *Urology* 1993; **41**: 301-307 [PMID: 8470312 DOI: 10.1016/0090-4295(93)90584-W]

8   **Nickel JC**, Nyberg LM, Hennenfent M. Research guidelines for chronic prostatitis: consensus report from the first National Institutes of Health International Prostatitis Collaborative Network. *Urology* 1999; **54**: 229-233 [PMID: 10443716 DOI: 10.1016/S0090-4295(99)00205-8]

9   **Litwin MS**, McNaughton-Collins M, Fowler FJ, Nickel JC, Calhoun EA, Pontari MA, Alexander RB, Farrar JT, O'Leary MP. The National Institutes of Health chronic prostatitis symptom index: development and validation of a new outcome measure. Chronic Prostatitis Collaborative Research Network. *J Urol* 1999; **162**: 369-375 [PMID: 10411041 DOI: 10.1016/S0022-5347(05)68562-X]

10   **Nickel JC**, Alexander RB, Schaeffer AJ, Landis JR, Knauss JS, Propert KJ. Leukocytes and bacteria in men with chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome compared to asymptomatic controls. *J Urol* 2003; **170**: 818-822 [PMID: 12913707 DOI: 10.1097/01.ju.0000082252.49374.e9]

11   **Pontari MA**. Etiology of chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome: psychoimmunoneurendocrine dysfunction (PINE syndrome) or just a really bad infection? *World J Urol* 2013; **31**: 725-732 [PMID: 23579440 DOI: 10.1007/s00345-013-1061-z]

12   **Krieger JN**, Nyberg L, Nickel JC. NIH consensus definition and classification of prostatitis. *JAMA* 1999; **282**: 236-237 [PMID: 10422990 DOI: 10.1001/jama.282.3.236]

13   **Nickel JC**. The Pre and Post Massage Test (PPMT): a simple screen for prostatitis. *Tech Urol* 1997; **3**: 38-43 [PMID: 9170224]

14   **Potts JM**, Payne CK. Urologic chronic pelvic pain. *Pain* 2012; **153**: 755-758 [PMID: 22153018 DOI: 10.1016/j.pain.2011.10.005]

15   **Potts J**, Payne RE. Prostatitis: Infection, neuromuscular disorder, or pain syndrome? Proper patient classification is key. *Cleve Clin J Med* 2007; **74** Suppl 3: S63-S71 [PMID: 17549825 DOI: 10.3949/ccjm.74.Suppl_3.S63]

16   **Weidner W**, Schiefer HG, Krauss H, Jantos C, Friedrich HJ, Altmannsberger M. Chronic prostatitis: a thorough search for etiologically involved microorganisms in 1,461 patients. *Infection* 1991; **19** Suppl 3: S119-S125 [PMID: 2055646 DOI: 10.1007/BF01643680]

17   **Hua VN**, Williams DH, Schaeffer AJ. Role of bacteria in chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *Curr Urol Rep* 2005; **6**: 300-306 [PMID: 15978234 DOI: 10.1007/s11934-005-0028-z]

18   **Krieger JN**, Riley DE. Bacteria in the chronic prostatitis-chronic pelvic pain syndrome: molecular approaches to critical research questions. *J Urol* 2002; **167**: 2574-2583 [PMID: 11992091 DOI: 10.1016/S0022-5347(05)65041-0]

19   **Hochreiter WW**, Duncan JL, Schaeffer AJ. Evaluation of the bacterial flora of the prostate using a 16S rRNA gene based polymerase chain reaction. *J Urol* 2000; **163**: 127-130 [PMID: 10604329 DOI: 10.1016/S0022-5347(05)67987-6]

20   **Karatas OF**, Turkay C, Bayrak O, Cimentepe E, Unal D. Helicobacter pylori seroprevalence in patients with chronic prostatitis: a pilot study. *Scand J Urol Nephrol* 2010; **44**: 91-94 [PMID: 20163196 DOI: 10.3109/00365590903535981]

21   **Rudick CN**, Berry RE, Johnson JR, Johnston B, Klumpp DJ, Schaeffer AJ, Thumbikat P. Uropathogenic Escherichia coli induces chronic pelvic pain. *Infect Immun* 2011; **79**: 628-635 [PMID: 21078846 DOI: 10.1128/IAI.00910-10]

22   **Kouiavskaia DV**, Southwood S, Berard CA, Klyushnenkova EN, Alexander RB. T-cell recognition of prostatic peptides in men with chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *J Urol* 2009; **182**: 2483-2489 [PMID: 19765754 DOI: 10.1016/j.juro.2009.07.067]

23   **Ren S**, Sakai K, Schwartz LB. Regulation of human mast cell beta-tryptase: conversion of inactive monomer to active tetramer at acid pH. *J Immunol* 1998; **160**: 4561-4569 [PMID: 9574563]

24   **Kalesnikoff J**, Galli SJ. New developments in mast cell biology. *Nat Immunol* 2008; **9**: 1215-1223 [PMID: 18936782 DOI: 10.1038/ni.f.216]

25   **Done JD**, Rudick CN, Quick ML, Schaeffer AJ, Thumbikat P. Role of mast cells in male chronic pelvic pain. *J Urol* 2012; **187**: 1473-1482 [PMID: 22341813 DOI: 10.1016/j.juro.2011.11.116]

26   **Roman K**, Done JD, Schaeffer AJ, Murphy SF, Thumbikat P. Tryptase-PAR2 axis in experimental autoimmune prostatitis, a model for chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *Pain* 2014; **155**: 1328-1338 [PMID: 24726923 DOI: 10.1016/j.pain.2014.04.009]

27   **Quick ML**, Wong L, Mukherjee S, Done JD, Schaeffer AJ, Thumbikat P. Th1-Th17 cells contribute to the development of

uropathogenic Escherichia coli-induced chronic pelvic pain. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e60987 [PMID: 23577183 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0060987]

28   **Breser ML**, Motrich RD, Sanchez LR, Mackern-Oberti JP, Rivero VE. Expression of CXCR3 on specific T cells is essential for homing to the prostate gland in an experimental model of chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *J Immunol* 2013; **190**: 3121-3133 [PMID: 23455510 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1202482]

29   **Murphy SF**, Schaeffer AJ, Thumbikat P. Immune mediators of chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *Nat Rev Urol* 2014; **11**: 259-269 [PMID: 24686526 DOI: 10.1038/nrurol.2014.63]

30   **Thumbikat P**, Shahrara S, Sobkoviak R, Done J, Pope RM, Schaeffer AJ. Prostate secretions from men with chronic pelvic pain syndrome inhibit proinflammatory mediators. *J Urol* 2010; **184**: 1536-1542 [PMID: 20723928 DOI: 10.1016/j.juro.2010.05.086]

31   **Shahed AR**, Shoskes DA. Correlation of beta-endorphin and prostaglandin E2 levels in prostatic fluid of patients with chronic prostatitis with diagnosis and treatment response. *J Urol* 2001; **166**: 1738-1741 [PMID: 11586213 DOI: 10.1016/S0022-5347(05)65664-9]

32   **Pontari MA**, Ruggieri MR. Mechanisms in prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *J Urol* 2008; **179**: S61-S67 [PMID: 18405756 DOI: 10.1016/j.juro.2008.03.139]

33   **Miller LJ**, Fischer KA, Goralnick SJ, Litt M, Burleson JA, Albertsen P, Kreutzer DL. Nerve growth factor and chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *Urology* 2002; **59**: 603-608 [PMID: 11927336 DOI: 10.1016/S0090-4295(01)01597-7]

34   **Mazurek N**, Weskamp G, Erne P, Otten U. Nerve growth factor induces mast cell degranulation without changing intracellular calcium levels. *FEBS Lett* 1986; **198**: 315-320 [PMID: 2420641 DOI: 10.1016/0014-5793(86)80428-8]

35   **Yilmaz U**, Liu YW, Berger RE, Yang CC. Autonomic nervous system changes in men with chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *J Urol* 2007; **177**: 2170-2174; discussion 2174 [PMID: 17509311 DOI: 10.1016/j.juro.2007.01.144]

36   **Cho DS**, Choi JB, Kim YS, Joo KJ, Kim SH, Kim JC, Kim HW. Heart rate variability in assessment of autonomic dysfunction in patients with chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *Urology* 2011; **78**: 1369-1372 [PMID: 21996103 DOI: 10.1016/j.urology.2011.07.1379]

37   **Shen X**, Ming A, Li X, Zhou Z, Song B. Nanobacteria: a possible etiology for type III prostatitis. *J Urol* 2010; **184**: 364-369 [PMID: 20488493 DOI: 10.1016/j.juro.2010.03.003]

38   **Shoskes DA**, Thomas KD, Gomez E. Anti-nanobacterial therapy for men with chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome and prostatic stones: preliminary experience. *J Urol* 2005; **173**: 474-477 [PMID: 15643213 DOI: 10.1097/01.ju.0000150062.60633.b2]

39   **Nickel JC**. Treatment of chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *Int J Antimicrob Agents* 2008; **31** Suppl 1: S112-S116 [PMID: 17954024 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijantimicag.2007.07.028]

40   **Kaplan SA**, Ikeguchi EF, Santarosa RP, D'Alisera PM, Hendricks J, Te AE, Miller MI. Etiology of voiding dysfunction in men less than 50 years of age. *Urology* 1996; **47**: 836-839 [PMID: 8677573 DOI: 10.1016/S0090-4295(96)00038-6]

41   **He W**, Chen M, Zu X, Li Y, Ning K, Qi L. Chronic prostatitis presenting with dysfunctional voiding and effects of pelvic floor biofeedback treatment. *BJU Int* 2010; **105**: 975-977 [PMID: 19751259 DOI: 10.1111/j.1464-410X.2009.08850.x]

42   **Kaplan SA**, Santarosa RP, D'Alisera PM, Fay BJ, Ikeguchi EF, Hendricks J, Klein L, Te AE. Pseudodyssynergia (contraction of the external sphincter during voiding) misdiagnosed as chronic nonbacterial prostatitis and the role of biofeedback as a therapeutic option. *J Urol* 1997; **157**: 2234-2237 [PMID: 9146624 DOI: 10.1016/S0022-5347(01)64727-X]

43   **Li Y**, Qi L, Wen JG, Zu XB, Chen ZY. Chronic prostatitis during puberty. *BJU Int* 2006; **98**: 818-821 [PMID: 16978277 DOI: 10.1111/j.1464-410X.2006.06386.x]

44   **Mehik A**, Hellström P, Lukkarinen O, Sarpola A, Alfthan O. Increased intraprostatic pressure in patients with chronic prostatitis. *Urol Res* 1999; **27**: 277-279 [PMID: 10460899 DOI: 10.1007/

s002400050123]

45   **Mehik A**, Hellström P, Nickel JC, Kilponen A, Leskinen M, Sarpola A, Lukkarinen O. The chronic prostatitis-chronic pelvic pain syndrome can be characterized by prostatic tissue pressure measurements. *J Urol* 2002; **167**: 137-140 [PMID: 11743292 DOI: 10.1016/S0022-5347(05)65399-2]

46   **Shoskes DA**, Berger R, Elmi A, Landis JR, Propert KJ, Zeitlin S. Muscle tenderness in men with chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome: the chronic prostatitis cohort study. *J Urol* 2008; **179**: 556-560 [PMID: 18082223 DOI: 10.1016/j.juro.2007.09.088]

47   **Anderson RU**, Sawyer T, Wise D, Morey A, Nathanson BH. Painful myofascial trigger points and pain sites in men with chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *J Urol* 2009; **182**: 2753-2758 [PMID: 19837420 DOI: 10.1016/j.juro.2009.08.033]

48   **Daniels NA**, Link CL, Barry MJ, McKinlay JB. Association between past urinary tract infections and current symptoms suggestive of chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *J Natl Med Assoc* 2007; **99**: 509-516 [PMID: 17534008]

49   **Collins MM**, Meigs JB, Barry MJ, Walker Corkery E, Giovannucci E, Kawachi I. Prevalence and correlates of prostatitis in the health professionals follow-up study cohort. *J Urol* 2002; **167**: 1363-1366 [PMID: 11832733]

50   **Murphy AB**, Macejko A, Taylor A, Nadler RB. Chronic prostatitis: management strategies. *Drugs* 2009; **69**: 71-84 [PMID: 19192937 DOI: 10.2165/00003495-200969010-00005]

51   **Luzzi GA**. Chronic prostatitis and chronic pelvic pain in men: aetiology, diagnosis and management. *J Eur Acad Dermatol Venereol* 2002; **16**: 253-256 [PMID: 12195565 DOI: 10.1046/j.1468-3083.2002.00481.x]

52   **Tran CN**, Shoskes DA. Sexual dysfunction in chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *World J Urol* 2013; **31**: 741-746 [PMID: 23579441 DOI: 10.1007/s00345-013-1076-5]

53   **McNaughton Collins M**, MacDonald R, Wilt TJ. Diagnosis and treatment of chronic abacterial prostatitis: a systematic review. *Ann Intern Med* 2000; **133**: 367-381 [PMID: 10979882 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-133-5-200009050-00013]

54   **Sharp VJ**, Takacs EB, Powell CR. Prostatitis: diagnosis and treatment. *Am Fam Physician* 2010; **82**: 397-406 [PMID: 20704171]

55   **Nickel JC**. Clinical evaluation of the man with chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *Urology* 2002; **60**: 20-22; discussion 22-23 [PMID: 12521583 DOI: 10.1016/S0090-4295(02)02298-7]

56   **Schaeffer AJ**. Epidemiology and evaluation of chronic pelvic pain syndrome in men. *Int J Antimicrob Agents* 2008; **31** Suppl 1: S108-S111 [PMID: 18164597 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijantimicag.2007.08.027]

57   **Meares EM**, Stamey TA. Bacteriologic localization patterns in bacterial prostatitis and urethritis. *Invest Urol* 1968; **5**: 492-518 [PMID: 4870505]

58   **Habermacher GM**, Chason JT, Schaeffer AJ. Prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *Annu Rev Med* 2006; **57**: 195-206 [PMID: 16409145 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.med.57.011205.135654]

59   **Nickel JC**, Shoskes D, Wang Y, Alexander RB, Fowler JE, Zeitlin S, O'Leary MP, Pontari MA, Schaeffer AJ, Landis JR, Nyberg L, Kusek JW, Propert KJ. How does the pre-massage and post-massage 2-glass test compare to the Meares-Stamey 4-glass test in men with chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome? *J Urol* 2006; **176**: 119-124 [PMID: 16753385 DOI: 10.1016/s0022-5347(06)00498-8]

60   **Morote J**, Lopez M, Encabo G, de Torres IM. Effect of inflammation and benign prostatic enlargement on total and percent free serum prostatic specific antigen. *Eur Urol* 2000; **37**: 537-540 [PMID: 10765091 DOI: 10.1159/000020190]

61   **Nadler RB**, Collins MM, Propert KJ, Mikolajczyk SD, Knauss JS, Landis JR, Fowler JE, Schaeffer AJ, Alexander RB. Prostate-specific antigen test in diagnostic evaluation of chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *Urology* 2006; **67**: 337-342 [PMID: 16442595 DOI: 10.1016/j.urology.2005.08.031]

62   **Watanabe T**, Inoue M, Sasaki K, Araki M, Uehara S, Monden K, Saika T, Nasu Y, Kumon H, Chancellor MB. Nerve growth factor

level in the prostatic fluid of patients with chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome is correlated with symptom severity and response to treatment. *BJU Int* 2011; **108**: 248-251 [PMID: 20883485 DOI: 10.1111/j.1464-410X.2010.09716.x]

63   **Davis SN**, Morin M, Binik YM, Khalife S, Carrier S. Use of pelvic floor ultrasound to assess pelvic floor muscle function in Urological Chronic Pelvic Pain Syndrome in men. *J Sex Med* 2011; **8**: 3173-3180 [PMID: 21883952 DOI: 10.1111/j.1743-6109.2011.02452.x]

64   **Alexander RB**, Propert KJ, Schaeffer AJ, Landis JR, Nickel JC, O'Leary MP, Pontari MA, McNaughton-Collins M, Shoskes DA, Comiter CV, Datta NS, Fowler JE, Nadler RB, Zeitlin SI, Knauss JS, Wang Y, Kusek JW, Nyberg LM, Litwin MS. Ciprofloxacin or tamsulosin in men with chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome: a randomized, double-blind trial. *Ann Intern Med* 2004; **141**: 581-589 [PMID: 15492337 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-141-8-200410190-00005]

65   **Nickel JC**, Downey J, Clark J, Casey RW, Pommerville PJ, Barkin J, Steinhoff G, Brock G, Patrick AB, Flax S, Goldfarb B, Palmer BW, Zadra J. Levofloxacin for chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome in men: a randomized placebo-controlled multicenter trial. *Urology* 2003; **62**: 614-617 [PMID: 14550427 DOI: 10.1016/s0090-4295(03)00583-1]

66   **Nickel JC**, Downey J, Johnston B, Clark J. Predictors of patient response to antibiotic therapy for the chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome: a prospective multicenter clinical trial. *J Urol* 2001; **165**: 1539-1544 [PMID: 11342913 DOI: 10.1016/S0022-5347(05)66344-6]

67   **Choe HS**, Lee SJ, Han CH, Shim BS, Cho YH. Clinical efficacy of roxithromycin in men with chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome in comparison with ciprofloxacin and aceclofenac: a prospective, randomized, multicenter pilot trial. *J Infect Chemother* 2014; **20**: 20-25 [PMID: 24462419 DOI: 10.1016/j.jiac.2013.07.010]

68   **Fowler JE**. Antimicrobial therapy for bacterial and nonbacterial prostatitis. *Urology* 2002; **60**: 24-26; discussion 26 [PMID: 12521585 DOI: 10.1016/S0090-4295(02)02300-2]

69   **Zhou Z**, Hong L, Shen X, Rao X, Jin X, Lu G, Li L, Xiong E, Li W, Zhang J, Chen Z, Pan J, Song B. Detection of nanobacteria infection in type III prostatitis. *Urology* 2008; **71**: 1091-1095 [PMID: 18538692 DOI: 10.1016/j.urology.2008.02.041]

70   **Goldmeier D**, Madden P, McKenna M, Tamm N. Treatment of category III A prostatitis with zafirlukast: a randomized controlled feasibility study. *Int J STD AIDS* 2005; **16**: 196-200 [PMID: 15829018 DOI: 10.1258/0956462053420239]

71   **Nickel JC**, Pontari M, Moon T, Gittelman M, Malek G, Farrington J, Pearson J, Krupa D, Bach M, Drisko J. A randomized, placebo controlled, multicenter study to evaluate the safety and efficacy of rofecoxib in the treatment of chronic nonbacterial prostatitis. *J Urol* 2003; **169**: 1401-1405 [PMID: 12629372 DOI: 10.1097/01.ju.0000054983.45096.16]

72   **Thakkinstian A**, Attia J, Anothaisintawee T, Nickel JC. α-blockers, antibiotics and anti-inflammatories have a role in the management of chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *BJU Int* 2012; **110**: 1014-1022 [PMID: 22471591 DOI: 10.1111/j.1464-410X.2012.11088.x]

73   **Tuğcu V**, Taşçi AI, Fazlioğlu A, Gürbüz G, Ozbek E, Sahin S, Kurtuluş F, Cek M. A placebo-controlled comparison of the efficiency of triple- and monotherapy in category III B chronic pelvic pain syndrome (CPPS). *Eur Urol* 2007; **51**: 1113-1117; discussion 1118 [PMID: 17084960 DOI: 10.1016/j.eururo.2006.09.036]

74   **Zhao WP**, Zhang ZG, Li XD, Yu D, Rui XF, Li GH, Ding GQ. Celecoxib reduces symptoms in men with difficult chronic pelvic pain syndrome (Category IIIA). *Braz J Med Biol Res* 2009; **42**: 963-967 [PMID: 19787151 DOI: 10.1590/s0100-879X2009005000021]

75   **Murphy AB**, Nadler RB. Pharmacotherapy strategies in chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome management. *Expert Opin Pharmacother* 2010; **11**: 1255-1261 [PMID: 20429665 DOI: 10.1517/14656561003709748]

76   **Nickel JC**, Forrest JB, Tomera K, Hernandez-Graulau J, Moon

TD, Schaeffer AJ, Krieger JN, Zeitlin SI, Evans RJ, Lama DJ, Neal DE, Sant GR. Pentosan polysulfate sodium therapy for men with chronic pelvic pain syndrome: a multicenter, randomized, placebo controlled study. *J Urol* 2005; **173**: 1252-1255 [PMID: 15758763 DOI: 10.1097/01.ju.0000159198.83103.01]

77 **Nickel JC**, Atkinson G, Krieger JN, Mills IW, Pontari M, Shoskes DA, Crook TJ. Preliminary assessment of safety and efficacy in proof-of-concept, randomized clinical trial of tanezumab for chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *Urology* 2012; **80**: 1105-1110 [PMID: 23010344 DOI: 10.1016/j.urology.2012.07.035]

78 **Nickel JC**, Touma N. α-Blockers for the Treatment of Chronic Prostatitis/Chronic Pelvic Pain Syndrome: An Update on Current Clinical Evidence. *Rev Urol* 2012; **14**: 56-64 [PMID: 23526487]

79 **Mehik A**, Alas P, Nickel JC, Sarpola A, Helström PJ. Alfuzosin treatment for chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome: a prospective, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, pilot study. *Urology* 2003; **62**: 425-429 [PMID: 12946740 DOI: 10.1016/s0090-4295(03)00466-7]

80 **Nickel JC**, Krieger JN, McNaughton-Collins M, Anderson RU, Pontari M, Shoskes DA, Litwin MS, Alexander RB, White PC, Berger R, Nadler R, O'Leary M, Liong ML, Zeitlin S, Chuai S, Landis JR, Kusek JW, Nyberg LM, Schaeffer AJ. Alfuzosin and symptoms of chronic prostatitis-chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *N Engl J Med* 2008; **359**: 2663-2673 [PMID: 19092152 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0803240]

81 **Nickel JC**, Narayan P, McKay J, Doyle C. Treatment of chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome with tamsulosin: a randomized double blind trial. *J Urol* 2004; **171**: 1594-1597 [PMID: 15017228 DOI: 10.1097/01.ju.0000117811.40279.19]

82 **Cheah PY**, Liong ML, Yuen KH, Teh CL, Khor T, Yang JR, Yap HW, Krieger JN. Terazosin therapy for chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome: a randomized, placebo controlled trial. *J Urol* 2003; **169**: 592-596 [PMID: 12544314 DOI: 10.1097/01.ju.0000042927.45683.6c]

83 **Nickel JC**, O'Leary MP, Lepor H, Caramelli KE, Thomas H, Hill LA, Hoel GE. Silodosin for men with chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome: results of a phase II multicenter, double-blind, placebo controlled study. *J Urol* 2011; **186**: 125-131 [PMID: 21571345 DOI: 10.1016/j.juro.2011.03.028]

84 **Nickel JC**, Shoskes DA, Wagenlehner FM. Management of chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome (CP/CPPS): the studies, the evidence, and the impact. *World J Urol* 2013; **31**: 747-753 [PMID: 23568442 DOI: 10.1007/s00345-013-1062-y]

85 **Nickel JC**. The three As of chronic prostatitis therapy: antibiotics, alpha-blockers and anti-inflammatories. What is the evidence? *BJU Int* 2004; **94**: 1230-1233 [PMID: 15610095 DOI: 10.1111/j.1464-410X.2004.05148.x]

86 **Ye ZQ**, Lan RZ, Yang WM, Yao LF, Yu X. Tamsulosin treatment of chronic non-bacterial prostatitis. *J Int Med Res* 2008; **36**: 244-252 [PMID: 18380933 DOI: 10.1177/147323000803600205]

87 **Herati AS**, Moldwin RM. Alternative therapies in the management of chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *World J Urol* 2013; **31**: 761-766 [PMID: 23740129 DOI: 10.1007/s00345-013-1097-0]

88 **Elist J**. Effects of pollen extract preparation Prostat/Poltit on lower urinary tract symptoms in patients with chronic nonbacterial prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study. *Urology* 2006; **67**: 60-63 [PMID: 16413333 DOI: 10.1016/j.urology.2005.07.035]

89 **Wagenlehner FM**, Schneider H, Ludwig M, Schnitker J, Brähler E, Weidner W. A pollen extract (Cernilton) in patients with inflammatory chronic prostatitis-chronic pelvic pain syndrome: a multicentre, randomised, prospective, double-blind, placebo-controlled phase 3 study. *Eur Urol* 2009; **56**: 544-551 [PMID: 19524353 DOI: 10.1016/j.eururo.2009.05.046]

90 **Shoskes DA**, Nickel JC. Quercetin for chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *Urol Clin North Am* 2011; **38**: 279-284 [PMID: 21798389 DOI: 10.1016/j.ucl.2011.05.003]

91 **Shoskes DA**, Zeitlin SI, Shahed A, Rajfer J. Quercetin in men with

category III chronic prostatitis: a preliminary prospective, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Urology* 1999; **54**: 960-963 [PMID: 10604689 DOI: 10.1016/S0090-4295(99)00358-1]

92 **Shoskes DA**. Phytotherapy in chronic prostatitis. *Urology* 2002; **60**: 35-37; discussion 37 [PMID: 12521591 DOI: 10.1016/S0090-4295(02)02383-X]

93 **Suh LK**, Lowe FC. Alternative therapies for the treatment of chronic prostatitis. *Curr Urol Rep* 2011; **12**: 284-287 [PMID: 21448730 DOI: 10.1007/s11934-011-0188-y]

94 **Kaplan SA**, Volpe MA, Te AE. A prospective, 1-year trial using saw palmetto versus finasteride in the treatment of category III prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *J Urol* 2004; **171**: 284-288 [PMID: 14665895 DOI: 10.1097/01.ju.0000101487.83730.80]

95 **Clemens JQ**, Brown SO, Calhoun EA. Mental health diagnoses in patients with interstitial cystitis/painful bladder syndrome and chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome: a case/control study. *J Urol* 2008; **180**: 1378-1382 [PMID: 18707716 DOI: 10.1016/j.juro.2008.06.032]

96 **Kwon JK**, Chang IH. Pain, catastrophizing, and depression in chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *Int Neurourol J* 2013; **17**: 48-58 [PMID: 23869268 DOI: 10.5213/inj.2013.17.2.48]

97 **Giannantoni A**, Porena M, Gubbiotti M, Maddonni S, Di Stasi SM. The efficacy and safety of duloxetine in a multidrug regimen for chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *Urology* 2014; **83**: 400-405 [PMID: 24231216 DOI: 10.1016/j.urology.2013.09.024]

98 **Curtis Nickel J**, Baranowski AP, Pontari M, Berger RE, Tripp DA. Management of men diagnosed with chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome who have failed traditional management. *Rev Urol* 2007; **9**: 63-72 [PMID: 17592539]

99 **Pontari MA**, Krieger JN, Litwin MS, White PC, Anderson RU, McNaughton-Collins M, Nickel JC, Shoskes DA, Alexander RB, O'Leary M, Zeitlin S, Chuai S, Landis JR, Cen L, Propert KJ, Kusek JW, Nyberg LM, Schaeffer AJ. Pregabalin for the treatment of men with chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome: a randomized controlled trial. *Arch Intern Med* 2010; **170**: 1586-1593 [PMID: 20876412 DOI: 10.1001/archinternmed.2010.319]

100 **Leskinen M**, Lukkarinen O, Marttila T. Effects of finasteride in patients with inflammatory chronic pelvic pain syndrome: a double-blind, placebo-controlled, pilot study. *Urology* 1999; **53**: 502-505 [PMID: 10096374 DOI: 10.1016/S0090-4295(98)00540-8]

101 **Nickel JC**, Downey J, Pontari MA, Shoskes DA, Zeitlin SI. A randomized placebo-controlled multicentre study to evaluate the safety and efficacy of finasteride for male chronic pelvic pain syndrome (category IIIA chronic nonbacterial prostatitis). *BJU Int* 2004; **93**: 991-995 [PMID: 15142149 DOI: 10.1111/j.1464-410X.2003.04766.x]

102 **Shakutou S**, Bandoh K, Yoshinaka Y, Kobayashi H, Yamanaka H. Effects of mepartricin, a polyene macrolide agent, on fecal excretion and serum concentration of estrogen and number of prostatic estrogen receptors in immature rats. *Prostate* 1999; **38**: 17-27 [PMID: 9973105]

103 **De Rose AF**, Gallo F, Giglio M, Carmignani G. Role of mepartricin in category III chronic nonbacterial prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome: a randomized prospective placebo-controlled trial. *Urology* 2004; **63**: 13-16 [PMID: 14751338 DOI: 10.1016/j.urology.2003.08.006]

104 **Schmidhammer S**, Ramoner R, Höltl L, Bartsch G, Thurnher M, Zelle-Rieser C. An Escherichia coli-based oral vaccine against urinary tract infections potently activates human dendritic cells. *Urology* 2002; **60**: 521-526 [PMID: 12350510 DOI: 10.1016/S0090-4295(02)01767-3]

105 **Wagenlehner FM**, Ballarini S, Naber KG. Immunostimulation in chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome (CP/CPPS): a one-year prospective, double-blind, placebo-controlled study. *World J Urol* 2014; **32**: 1595-1603 [PMID: 24482313 DOI: 10.1007/s00345-014-1247-z]

106 **Persson BE**, Ronquist G, Ekblom M. Ameliorative effect of allopurinol on nonbacterial prostatitis: a parallel double-blind controlled study. *J Urol* 1996; **155**: 961-964 [PMID: 8583618 DOI:

10.1016/S0022-5347(01)66358-4]

107 **Ziaee AM**, Akhavizadegan H, Karbakhsh M. Effect of allopurinol in chronic nonbacterial prostatitis: a double blind randomized clinical trial. *Int Braz J Urol* 2006; **32**: 181-186 [PMID: 16650295 DOI: 10.1590/S1677-55382006000200008]

108 **Bates SM**, Hill VA, Anderson JB, Chapple CR, Spence R, Ryan C, Talbot MD. A prospective, randomized, double-blind trial to evaluate the role of a short reducing course of oral corticosteroid therapy in the treatment of chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *BJU Int* 2007; **99**: 355-359 [PMID: 17313424 DOI: 10.1111/j.1464-410X.2007.06667.x]

109 **Doggweiler R**, Stewart AF. Pelvic floor therapies in chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *Curr Urol Rep* 2011; **12**: 304-311 [PMID: 21547556 DOI: 10.1007/s11934-011-0197-x]

110 **Anderson RU**, Wise D, Sawyer T, Chan C. Integration of myofascial trigger point release and paradoxical relaxation training treatment of chronic pelvic pain in men. *J Urol* 2005; **174**: 155-160 [PMID: 15947608 DOI: 10.1097/01.ju.0000161609.31185.d5]

111 **FitzGerald MP**, Anderson RU, Potts J, Payne CK, Peters KM, Clemens JQ, Kotarinos R, Fraser L, Cosby A, Fortman C, Neville C, Badillo S, Odabachian L, Sanfield A, O'Dougherty B, Halle-Podell R, Cen L, Chuai S, Landis JR, Mickelberg K, Barrell T, Kusek JW, Nyberg LM. Randomized multicenter feasibility trial of myofascial physical therapy for the treatment of urological chronic pelvic pain syndromes. *J Urol* 2009; **182**: 570-580 [PMID: 19535099 DOI: 10.1016/j.juro.2009.04.022]

112 **Cornel EB**, van Haarst EP, Schaarsberg RW, Geels J. The effect of biofeedback physical therapy in men with Chronic Pelvic Pain Syndrome Type III. *Eur Urol* 2005; **47**: 607-611 [PMID: 15826751 DOI: 10.1016/j.eururo.2004.12.014]

113 **Nadler RB**. Bladder training biofeedback and pelvic floor myalgia. *Urology* 2002; **60**: 42-43; discussion 44 [PMID: 12521595 DOI: 10.1016/S0090-4295(02)02390-7]

114 **Birch S**, Hammerschlag R, Berman BM. Acupuncture in the treatment of pain. *J Altern Complement Med* 1996; **2**: 101-124 [PMID: 9395648 DOI: 10.1089/acm.1996.2.101]

115 **Chen R**, Nickel JC. Acupuncture ameliorates symptoms in men with chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *Urology* 2003; **61**: 1156-1159; discussion 1159 [PMID: 12809886 DOI: 10.1016/s0090-4295(03)00141-9]

116 **Lee SW**, Liong ML, Yuen KH, Leong WS, Chee C, Cheah PY, Choong WP, Wu Y, Khan N, Choong WL, Yap HW, Krieger JN. Acupuncture versus sham acupuncture for chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain. *Am J Med* 2008; **121**: 79.e1-79.e7 [PMID: 18187077 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjmed.2007.07.033]

117 **Lee SW**, Liong ML, Yuen KH, Leong WS, Khan NK, Krieger JN. Validation of a sham acupuncture procedure in a randomised, controlled clinical trial of chronic pelvic pain treatment. *Acupunct Med* 2011; **29**: 40-46 [PMID: 21245238 DOI: 10.1136/aim.2010.003137]

118 **Lee SH**, Lee BC. Use of acupuncture as a treatment method for chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndromes. *Curr Urol Rep* 2011; **12**: 288-296 [PMID: 21472420 DOI: 10.1007/s11934-011-0186-0]

119 **Lee SH**, Lee BC. Electroacupuncture relieves pain in men with chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome: three-arm randomized trial. *Urology* 2009; **73**: 1036-1041 [PMID: 19394499 DOI: 10.1016/j.urology.2008.10.047]

120 **Posadzki P**, Zhang J, Lee MS, Ernst E. Acupuncture for chronic nonbacterial prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome: a systematic review. *J Androl* 2012; **33**: 15-21 [PMID: 21436307 DOI: 10.2164/jandrol.111.013235]

121 **Yang CC**. Neuromodulation in male chronic pelvic pain syndrome: rationale and practice. *World J Urol* 2013; **31**: 767-772 [PMID: 23619478 DOI: 10.1007/s00345-013-1066-7]

122 **Kabay S**, Kabay SC, Yucel M, Ozden H. Efficiency of posterior tibial nerve stimulation in category IIIB chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain: a Sham-Controlled Comparative Study. *Urol Int* 2009; **83**: 33-38 [PMID: 19641356 DOI: 10.1159/000224865]

123 **Siegel S**, Paszkiewicz E, Kirkpatrick C, Hinkel B, Oleson K. Sacral nerve stimulation in patients with chronic intractable pelvic pain. *J Urol* 2001; **166**: 1742-1745 [PMID: 11586214 DOI: 10.1016/S0022-5347(05)65665-0]

124 **Biemans JM**, van Balken MR. Efficacy and effectiveness of percutaneous tibial nerve stimulation in the treatment of pelvic organ disorders: a systematic review. *Neuromodulation* 2013; **16**: 25-33; discussion 33 [PMID: 22985128 DOI: 10.1111/j.1525-1403.2012.00504.x]

125 **Gottsch HP**, Yang CC, Berger RE. A review of botulinum toxin use for chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *Curr Urol Rep* 2010; **11**: 265-270 [PMID: 20446070 DOI: 10.1007/s11934-010-0118-4]

126 **Nickel JC**, Mullins C, Tripp DA. Development of an evidence-based cognitive behavioral treatment program for men with chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *World J Urol* 2008; **26**: 167-172 [PMID: 18293000 DOI: 10.1007/s00345-008-0235-6]

127 **Tripp DA**, Nickel JC, Katz L. A feasibility trial of a cognitive-behavioural symptom management program for chronic pelvic pain for men with refractory chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *Can Urol Assoc J* 2011; **5**: 328-332 [PMID: 22031613 DOI: 10.5489/cuaj.10201]

128 **Leskinen MJ**, Kilponen A, Lukkarinen O, Tammela TL. Transurethral needle ablation for the treatment of chronic pelvic pain syndrome (category III prostatitis): a randomized, sham-controlled study. *Urology* 2002; **60**: 300-304 [PMID: 12137830 DOI: 10.1016/S0090-4295(02)01704-1]

129 **Aaltomaa S**, Ala-Opas M. The effect of transurethral needle ablation on symptoms of chronic pelvic pain syndrome--a pilot study. *Scand J Urol Nephrol* 2001; **35**: 127-131 [PMID: 11411655]

130 **Lee KC**, Jung PB, Park HS, Whang JH, Lee JG. Transurethral needle ablation for chronic nonbacterial prostatitis. *BJU Int* 2002; **89**: 226-229 [PMID: 11856102 DOI: 10.1046/j.1464-4096.2001.001217.x]

131 **Chiang PH**, Chiang CP. Therapeutic effect of transurethral needle ablation in non-bacterial prostatitis: chronic pelvic pain syndrome type IIIa. *Int J Urol* 2004; **11**: 97-102 [PMID: 14706013 DOI: 10.1111/j.1442-2042.2004.00751.x]

132 **Lopatin WB**, Martynik M, Hickey DP, Vivas C, Hakala TR. Retrograde transurethral balloon dilation of prostate: innovative management of abacterial chronic prostatitis and prostatodynia. *Urology* 1990; **36**: 508-510 [PMID: 2247918 DOI: 10.1016/0090-4295(90)80188-S]

133 **Zimmermann R**, Cumpanas A, Hoeltl L, Janetschek G, Stenzl A, Miclea F. Extracorporeal shock-wave therapy for treating chronic pelvic pain syndrome: a feasibility study and the first clinical results. *BJU Int* 2008; **102**: 976-980 [PMID: 18510660 DOI: 10.1111/j.1464-410X.2008.07742.x]

134 **Zimmermann R**, Cumpanas A, Miclea F, Janetschek G. Extracorporeal shock wave therapy for the treatment of chronic pelvic pain syndrome in males: a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled study. *Eur Urol* 2009; **56**: 418-424 [PMID: 19372000 DOI: 10.1016/j.eururo.2009.03.043]

135 **Kim TH**, Han DH, Cho WJ, Lee HS, You HW, Park CM, Ryu DS, Lee KS. The efficacy of extracorporeal magnetic stimulation for treatment of chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome patients who do not respond to pharmacotherapy. *Urology* 2013; **82**: 894-898 [PMID: 23958510 DOI: 10.1016/j.urology.2013.06.032]

136 **Shoskes DA**, Nickel JC. Classification and treatment of men with chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome using the UPOINT system. *World J Urol* 2013; **31**: 755-760 [PMID: 23588814 DOI: 10.1007/s00345-013-1075-6]

137 **Shoskes DA**, Nickel JC, Rackley RR, Pontari MA. Clinical phenotyping in chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome and interstitial cystitis: a management strategy for urologic chronic pelvic pain syndromes. *Prostate Cancer Prostatic Dis* 2009; **12**: 177-183 [PMID: 18645581 DOI: 10.1038/pcan.2008.42]

138 **Nickel JC**, Shoskes DA. Phenotypic approach to the management of the chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome. *BJU Int* 2010; **106**: 1252-1263 [PMID: 20946349 DOI: 10.1111/j.1464-

410X.2010.09701.x]

139 **Magri V**, Wagenlehner F, Perletti G, Schneider S, Marras E, Naber KG, Weidner W. Use of the UPOINT chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome classification in European patient cohorts: sexual function domain improves correlations. *J Urol* 2010; **184**: 2339-2345 [PMID: 20952019 DOI: 10.1016/j.juro.2010.08.025]

140 **Davis SN**, Binik YM, Amsel R, Carrier S. Is a sexual dysfunction domain important for quality of life in men with urological chronic pelvic pain syndrome? Signs "UPOINT" to yes. *J Urol* 2013; **189**: 146-151 [PMID: 23164384 DOI: 10.1016/j.juro.2012.08.083]

141 **Shoskes DA**, Nickel JC, Kattan MW. Phenotypically directed multimodal therapy for chronic prostatitis/chronic pelvic pain syndrome: a prospective study using UPOINT. *Urology* 2010; **75**: 1249-1253 [PMID: 20363491 DOI: 10.1016/j.urology.2010.01.021]

Levomilnacipran and vortioxetine: Review of new pharmacotherapies for major depressive disorder

Mei T Liu, Megan E Maroney, Evelyn R Hermes-DeSantis

Mei T Liu, Megan E Maroney, Evelyn R Hermes-DeSantis, Department of Pharmacy Practice and Administration, Ernest Mario School of Pharmacy, Rutgers, the State University of New Jersey, Piscataway, NJ 08854, United States
Author contributions: Liu MT, Maroney ME, Hermes-DeSantis ER all contributed to this paper.
Conflict-of-interest: The authors have nothing to declare.
Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/
Correspondence to: Mei T Liu, PharmD, BCPP, Department of Pharmacy Practice and Administration, Ernest Mario School of Pharmacy, Rutgers, the State University of New Jersey, 160 Frelinghuysen Road, Piscataway, NJ 08854, United States. mei_liu@pharmacy.rutgers.edu
Telephone: +1-848-4456487
Fax: +1-732-4452533
Received: July 9, 2014
Peer-review started: July 9, 2014
First decision: August 14, 2014
Revised: January 6, 2015
Accepted: January 18, 2015
Article in press: January 20, 2015
Published online: March 9, 2015

Abstract

Major depressive disorder (MDD) is a common psychiatric disorder with an estimated lifetime prevalence rate in the range of 13% to 16% in the United States population. Patients with MDD often have symptoms such as depressed mood, loss of interest or pleasure in usual activities, changes in eating or sleeping patterns, fatigue, difficulty concentrating and thoughts of suicide. Although many pharmacotherapy treatment options are available for MDD, antidepressants can often cause adverse effects that could affect adherence to the medication. Additionally, it is estimated that MDD is unremitting in 15% of patients and 35% can have recurrent episodes. Given the high rate of recurrence and the adverse effects associated with existing medications, new treatment options for depression are needed. Both levomilnacipran and vortioxetine are new antidepressants that were approved by the food and drug administration in 2013 for the treatment of MDD in adults. Levomilnacipran is a serotonin norepinephrine reuptake inhibitor that was effective in several short term studies and sustained efficacy and tolerability was demonstrated in a 48-wk extension study. Vortioxetine is a multi-modal antidepressant and it is thought to work *via* inhibition of the serotonin (5-HT) transporter, 5-HT$_{3A}$, 5-HT$_7$ and 5-HT$_{1D}$ antagonist, a 5-HT$_{1B}$ partial agonist, and a 5-HT$_{1A}$ agonist. Vortioxetine was effective in the treatment of MDD in both short-term trials as well as in the prevention of relapse in a 24-36 wk trial. Sustained efficacy and tolerability was demonstrated in several long-term open-label trials. Further studies comparing levomilnacipran and vortioxetine to other currently available antidepressants are needed to establish its place in therapy.

Key words: Levomilnacipran; Vortioxetine; Adult; Major depressive disorder; Antidepressive agents

Core tip: Levomilnacipran and vortioxetine are the two newest antidepressant medications to join the armamentarium of treatment choices for major depressive disorder. Levomilnacipran, a serotonin norepinephrine reuptake inhibitor, is an enantiomer of the previously approved fibromyalgia agent milnacipran. Vortioxetine is a multimodal antidepressant with a unique mechanism of action, affecting several serotonin receptors as well as inhibiting serotonin reuptake. This review summarizes the clinical trial data as well as pharmacokinetic, dosing and

safety concerns with these two new agents.

INTRODUCTION

Major depressive disorder (MDD) is a common psychiatric disorder with an estimated lifetime prevalence rate in the range of 13% to 16% in the United States population[1]. Patients with MDD often have symptoms such as depressed mood, loss of interest or pleasure in usual activities, changes in eating or sleeping patterns, fatigue, difficulty concentrating and thoughts of suicide. These symptoms persist over a period of at least 2 wk and are not attributable to other disorders such as substance-induced or general medical conditions[1].

Many pharmacotherapy treatment options are available for MDD. They include selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs), serotonin norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors (SNRIs), tricyclic antidepressants, monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs), miscellaneous antidepressants such as bupropion and mirtazapine and antipsychotics such as quetiapine and aripiprazole. Despite the wide variety of antidepressants available, antidepressants can often cause adverse effects such as weight gain, sexual dysfunction, anxiety, headache, nausea, and sleep disturbances which could affect adherence to the medication. Additionally, it is estimated that MDD is unremitting in 15% of patients and 35% can have recurrent episodes[1]. If no prophylactic maintenance treatment is provided, the risk of recurrence approaches 100% in patients with three or more lifetime depressive episodes[1]. Given the high rate of recurrence and the adverse effects associated with existing medications, new treatment options for depression are needed.

The objective of this article is to provide an overview of the two newest antidepressants, levomilnacipran and vortioxetine, and review the safety and efficacy data on these two medications.

LEVOMILNACIPRAN

Levomilnacipran (1S, 2R-milnacipran) was initially approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) on July 26, 2013 for the treatment of MDD in adults (Table 1). Although levomilnacipran is the L-isomer in racemate milnacipran (Savella®) and it is reported to be the more active form of the two isomers, levomilnacipran is not approved for fibromyalgia and efficacy and safety of levomilnacipran for the management of fibromyalgia have not been established[2]. Interconversion between levomilnacipran and its stereoisomer does not occur in humans[3].

Pharmacology

Levomilnacipran is categorized as a SNRI antidepressant because it is thought to increase serotonin and nore-pinephrine (NE) in the central nervous system through inhibition of reuptake at serotonin (5-HT) and norepine-phrine transporters. Levomilnacipran lacks significant affinity to other receptors such as adrenergic, muscarinic, or histaminergic receptors[3]. Levomilnacipran has 2-fold greater potency for inhibition of NE relative to serotonin reuptake[2]. Compared to other SNRIs such as duloxetine and venlafaxine, which preferentially inhibit 5-HT relative to NE reuptake, levomilnacipran has more than 10-fold higher selectivity for NE relative to serotonin reuptake inhibition[2]. Antidepressants with noradrenergic mechanisms of action may be effective in improving depression symptoms related to social functioning such as decreased concentration and loss of energy[4].

Pharmacokinetics

The concentration of levomilnacipran at steady state is proportional to the dose when administered within the range of 25 to 300 mg once daily. It reaches maximum plasma concentration within 6 to 8 h and terminal elimination half-life is approximately 12 h. The relative bioavailability of levomilnacipran is 92% compared to oral solution and its concentration is not significantly affected when administered with food. Levomilnacipran is metabolized primarily by cytochrome P450 (CYP) 3A4 with minor contribution by CYP2C8, 2C19, 2D6, and 2J2. Levomilnacipran and its inactive metabolites are eliminated primarily by renal excretion (Table 2)[3].

Clinical trials

Levomilnacipran has been studied in over 2600 patients with MDD in 7 clinical trials including: 5 short-term (10-11 wk) acute MDD trials, one long-term (≥ 24 wk) relapse prevention trial and one long-term (48 wk) extension study. Four of the short-term trials with results published to date have demonstrated positive efficacy for levomilnacipran for the acute treatment of MDD[5,6], the remaining study is not yet published. One of the studies was a 10-wk Phase Ⅱ study conducted outside of the United States and the other three studies were 10-11 wk Phase Ⅲ studies that included United States sites[7-11]. Two of the studies were fixed dose and two were flexible dose studies (Table 3).

Short-term trials: In the three published Phase Ⅲ short-term studies, patients were included if they were adult out-patients who met the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, Fourth edition, Text Revision (DSM-Ⅳ-TR) criteria for MDD with an ongoing episode of at least 4 to 8 wk duration and a minimum Montgomery-Asberg Depression Rating Scale (MADRS) score ranging from 26-30 at baseline indicating de-pression symptoms of moderate severity[12,13]. Patients

Table 1 Basic drug information for levomilnacipran and vortioxetine[3,20]

	Levomilnacipran	Vortioxetine
Brand names	Fetzima	Brintellix
Mechanism of action	Serotonin-norepinephrine reuptake inhibitor	Serotonin receptor reuptake inhibitor, serotonin-3 receptor antagonist and serotonin-1A receptor agonist
FDA approval date	July 26, 2013	September 30, 2013
Recommended dosing range	40 mg to 120 mg once daily with or without food	10 mg to 20 mg once daily
Dosage form	Extended-release capsules in 20 mg, 40 mg, 80 mg and 120 mg	Immediate release tablets in 5 mg, 10 mg, 15 mg and 20 mg

FDA: Food and Drug Administration.

Table 2 Pharmacokinetic parameters for levomilnacipran and vortioxetine[3,20,21,24]

	Levomilnacipran	Vortioxetine
Bioavailability	92%	75% ± 9%
T_{max}	6-8 h	3-16 h
Volume of distribution	387-473 L	2400 L
Metabolism	Oxidation (primarily through CYP3A4), glucuronidation	Oxidation (primarily through CYP2D6), glucuronidation
Elimination	58% urine	50% urine, 26% feces
Clearance	21-29 L/h	38 L/h
Half-life	12 h	57-66 h
Protein binding	22%	98%-99%

CYP: Cytochrome P450; T_{max}: Time to maximum plasma concentration.

Table 3 Randomized controlled trials of levomilnacipran for major depressive disorder[3,5,7-11]

Ref.	*n*	Duration	Key inclusion criteria	Doses	Primary outcome
Montgomery *et al*[7] Phase Ⅱ	563	10 wk	Age 18-70 yr HAMD-17 > 22	Levomilnacipran 75-100 mg/d Placebo	Positive Change from baseline in MADRS Placebo: -14.5 Levomilnacipran: -18.7 (*P* < 0.001)
Greenberg[5] Phase Ⅲ	362	11 wk	Age 18-80 yr Clinician-rated MADRS ≥ 30 Self-rated MADRS ≥ 26	Levomilnacipran 40-120 mg/d Placebo	Negative Change from baseline in MADRS Placebo: -14.2 Levomilnacipran: -15.7 (*P* = 0.249)
Asnis *et al*[8] Phase Ⅲ	724	11 wk	Age 18-65 yr MADRS ≥ 30	Levomilnacipran 40 mg/d Levomilnacipran 80 mg/d Levomilnacipran 120 mg/d Placebo	Positive Change from baseline in MADRS Placebo: -11.6 40 mg: -14.8 (*P* < 0.05) 80 mg: -15.6 (*P* < 0.01) 120 mg: -16.5 (*P* < 0.001)
Bakish *et al*[9] Phase Ⅲ	568	10 wk	Age 18-75 yr MADRS ≥ 26	Levomilnacipran 40 mg/d Levomilnacipran 80 mg/d Placebo	Positive Change from baseline in MADRS Placebo: -11.3 40 mg: -14.6 (*P* < 0.003) 80 mg: -14.4 (*P* < 0.004)
Sambunaris *et al*[10] Phase Ⅲ	442	11 wk	Age 18-80 yr Clinician-rated MADRS ≥ 30 Self-rated MADRS ≥ 26	Levomilnacipran 40-120 mg/d Placebo	Positive Change from baseline in MADRS Placebo: -12.2 Levomilnacipran: -15.3 (*P* < 0.01)
Shiovitz *et al*[11] Phase Ⅲ	734	24 wk	Age 18-65 yr MADRS ≥ 22	Levomilnacipran 40 mg/d Levomilnacipran 80 mg/d Levomilnacipran 120 mg/d Placebo	Failed Percent of patient relapse Placebo: 13.91% Levomilnacipran: 20.54% (*P* = 0.1651)

HAMD: Hamilton Rating Scale for Depression; MADRS: Montgomery-Asberg Depression Rating Scale.

were required to have normal physical examination and clinical laboratory results and electrocardiogram findings. Patients were excluded if they had other comorbid DSM-Ⅳ-TR Axis Ⅰ disorders within the last

6 mo, history of nonresponse to adequate treatment with 2 or more antidepressants, medical conditions that may have interfered with the study, if they were pregnant or had significant risk of suicide. Patients

taking concomitant psychotropic medications (with the exception of eszopiclone, zolpidem, or zaleplon) were also excluded[8-10].

In the fixed-dose study by Bakish *et al*[9], the average age of participants ranged from 42.3-43.1 years, 62.2%-66% were female, and 72.6%-77.5% were Caucasian. Patients had an average of 3.5 depressive episodes and the duration of illness ranged from 12.8-14.7 years. The mean MADRS score at baseline ranged from 30.8-31.2 indicating moderate depression. Baseline demographics were similar between the treatment groups. The primary outcome for this study was change from baseline to end of study on the MADRS total score. Secondary outcomes included improvement in the Sheehan Disability Scale (SDS), response ($\geq$ 50% improvement in MADRS score) and remission (MADRS score $\leq$ 10 at study endpoint). This study found statistically significant differences in change of MADRS total score between both levomilnacipran groups (40 mg and 80 mg) compared to placebo [40 mg: -3.3 (95%CI: -5.5 to -1.1), *P* = 0.003; and 80 mg: -3.1 (95%CI: -5.3 to -1.0), *P* = 0.004)][9]. A treatment effect is considered clinically significant if there is at least a 2-point difference between the active drug and the placebo group[7]. Levomilnacipran also demonstrated superiority over placebo in change in SDS total score [40 mg: -1.8 (95%CI: -3.6 to 0) *P* = 0.046; 80 mg: -2.7 (95%CI: -4.5 to -0.9) *P* = 0.003]. Response rates were found to be statistically significantly higher than placebo in both 40 mg (49%) and 80 mg (47%) groups (placebo 34%, *P* < 0.01). Remission rates were statistically significantly higher than placebo in the 40 mg and 80 mg groups, at 18% *vs* 30% and 32%, respectively (*P* < 0.01). Significantly more patients in the levomilnacipran 40 mg/d (*P* = 0.032) and 80 mg/d (*P* < 0.001) groups than the placebo group prematurely discontinued the study due to adverse events. Adverse effects were generally considered mild to moderate, with the most frequent and statistically significant adverse effects being nausea, dry mouth, constipation, increase heart rate, dizziness, hyperhidrosis, urinary hesitation and erectile dysfunction[9].

In another fixed-dose study of levomilnacipran 40 mg, 80 mg or 120 mg *vs* placebo, the average age of participants in ranged from 40.3-41.3 years, 58.9%-68.5% were female and 72.2%-76.1% were Caucasian. The average number of depressive episodes experienced per patient ranged from 5.3-9.7 and the duration of illness ranged from 10.2-12.6 years. The mean MADRS score at baseline ranged from 35.6-36.1, indicating severe depression. Baseline demographics were similar between the treatment groups. The primary outcome for this study was change from baseline to end of study on the MADRS total score. Secondary outcomes included improvement in SDS total score, response and remission rates as defined above. This study found statistically significant

differences in change of MADRS total score between all 3 levomilnacipran groups compared to placebo [40 mg: -3.23 (*P* = 0.0186), 80 mg: -3.99 (*P* = 0.0038), and 120 mg: -4.86 (*P* = 0.0005)]. Levomilnacipran demonstrated superiority over placebo in change in SDS total score in the 80 mg and 120 mg groups only (-2.51 and -2.57, respectively, *P* < 0.05). Response rates were found to be statistically significantly higher than placebo only in the 120 mg group with a rate of 41.5% compared to 29.1% with placebo (*P* = 0.0107). Remission rates were found to be similar between the groups. Significantly more levomilnacipran than placebo patients discontinued due to adverse events. The most common adverse effects that led to discontinuation were nausea, vomiting and palpitations[8].

In the flexible-dose study by Sambunaris *et al*[10] (with a dose range 40 mg to 120 mg/d of levo-milnacipran) the average age of participants was 45 years and 65% were female. The mean MADRS score at baseline was 35 indicating that the patients had at least moderate to severe depression. Baseline demographics were similar between the treatment groups. The primary and secondary outcomes for this study were the same as the above described trials. This study found statistically significant differences in change of MADRS total score and SDS total score between the levomilnacipran group compared to placebo [-3.095 (-5.256 to -0.935); *P* = 0.0051 and -2.632 (-4.193 to -1.070); *P* = 0.0010, respectively]. Response rates were found to be statistically significantly higher than placebo with a rate of 41.9% in the levomilnacipran compared to 29.4% in the placebo group (*P* = 0.0083). Remission rates were found to similar between the groups. The incidence of premature discontinuation due to adverse events was higher for levomilnacipran (7.8%) than placebo (3.2%) but the difference was not statistically significant (*P* = 0.0567)[10].

Long-term trials: One randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, relapse prevention study over $\geq$ 24 wk was conducted in 348 patients age 18 to 65 years with MDD in 36 sites in the United States and Canada[11]. Patients were included in the study if they met the DSM-IV-TR criteria for MDD with an ongoing episode of at least 4 wk duration, the diagnosis was confirmed by the Mini International Neuropsychiatric Interview and if they had a MADRS score $\geq$ 22 indicating moderate severity[12,13]. Patients were required to have normal physical examination and clinical laboratory results and electrocardiogram findings. Patients were excluded if they had other comorbid DSM-IV-TR Axis I disorder within the last 6 mo, history of nonresponse to 2 or more adequate trials with antidepressants, medical conditions that may interfere with the study, if they were pregnant or if they had significant risk of suicide. Eligible patients were treated first with 12 wk of open-label, flexible-dose levomilnacipran 40-120 mg/d. Patients who met criteria for response (MADRS score $\leq$ 12) and had

a Clinical Global Impressions-Improvement (CGI-I) score ≤ 2 at both weeks 10 and 12, were randomized to receive either levomilnacipran or placebo once daily for 24 wk. Relapse was defined as MADRS score ≥ 22, CGI-I increase by ≥ 2 points or insufficient clinical response as judged by the investigators. The primary efficacy endpoint was the time to relapse within the first 24 wk of the double-blind period. Time to relapse was longer in the levomilnacipran group than the placebo group, but the difference was not statistically significant [HR = 0.68 (95%CI: 0.4-1.17, *P* = 0.165)]. The relapse rates observed in this study (placebo = 20.5%, levomilnacipran = 13.9%) were lower than the relapse rates anticipated in the statistical analysis (placebo = 38%, levomilnacipran = 20%), which compromised the projected statistical power. This study was underpowered and therefore it can be considered a failed study rather than a negative study[11].

One open-label extension study has been published so far[14]. It was a multicenter, open-label, flexible-dose study (40-120 mg/d) in adult patients with MDD who completed 1 of the 3 short-term studies. The study was 52 wk in duration and consisted of a 48-wk open-label period followed by a down-taper period of up to 4 wk. The median duration of treatment was 280 d and the final daily dose was 40 mg/d for 27%, 80 mg/d for 26% and 120 mg/d for 47% of patients. A mean decrease in MADRS total score of -23.6 was seen from baseline to the end of the 48-wk period. Rates of withdrawal due to adverse effects or insufficient therapeutic response were 13% and 8.1%, respectively The most common that were considered severe were nausea and headache[14].

Dosage recommendations

The recommended dose range of levomilnacipran is 40 mg to 120 mg once daily. The dose should be starting at 20 mg once daily for 2 d, and then increased to 40 mg once daily. The dose can be further increased by 40 mg at intervals of every 2 or more days. The maximum recommended dose is 120 mg once daily. The dose of levomilnacipran should not exceed 80 mg once daily when use concomitantly with strong CYP3A4 inhibitors. Levomilnacipran should be swallowed whole due to the extended-release formulation and it can be taken with or without food[3].

No dose adjustment is required in patients with mild renal impairment [creatinine clearance (CrCl) of 60-89 mL/min]. The maximum recommended dose is 80 mg once daily or 40 mg once daily for patients with moderate renal impairment (CrCl of 30-59 mL/min) or patients with severe renal impairment (CrCl of 15-29 mL/min), respectively. Levomilnacipran is not recommended for patients with end stage renal disease[3].

Drug interactions

Levomilnacipran appears to have a low potential to cause any clinically relevant inhibitory or inducing effects on the CYP450 system. Dose adjustment is recommended when co-administered with strong CYP3A4 inhibitors such as ketoconazole. MAOIs should be discontinued for at least 14 d prior to starting levomilnacipran. Levomilnacipran should be discontinued for at least 7 d prior to starting MAOI. Alcohol can cause a more rapid release of drug into the blood stream and it is not recommended to take levomilnacipran with alcohol[3].

Adverse effects

The most common adverse effects (≥ 5%) seen in both short and long-term trials of levomilnacipran were headache, nausea, dizziness, constipation, dry mouth, increased heart rate, tachycardia, erectile dysfunction, urinary hesitation, insomnia, vomiting, and hyperhidrosis[7-11,14]. Most adverse reactions were considered mild or moderate in intensity and 9% of patients in the short-term placebo-controlled trials discontinued treatment due to an adverse event. The most common adverse reaction leading to discontinuation in at least 1% of patients was nausea. Only urinary hesitation and erectile dysfunction appear to be dose-related[3,6].

Levomilnacipran had a mean increase in systolic blood pressure (SBP) of 3 mmHg and diastolic blood pressure (DBP) of 3.2 mmHg in the short-term, placebo-controlled studies. Mean increase in SBP was 3.9 mmHg and DBP was 3.3 mmHg in the long-term, 48-wk extension study[3,14]. Levomilnacipran had a mean increase in heart rate of 7.4 beats per minute (bpm) compared to a mean decrease of 0.3 bpm in placebo group. Orthostatic hypotension was observed in 11.6% of patients in the levomilnacipran group compared to 9.7% in the placebo group[3]. Mean increase in corrected QT interval (QTc) by Bazett's formula (QTcB) was 9.5 ms in levomilnacipran compared to 0.1 ms in the placebo group in the short-term studies. However, changes in QTc by Fridericia's method (QTcF) were small between groups (-2.5 and -1.4 ms for levomilnacipran and placebo, respectively). No patients had QTcF interval greater than 500 ms in short-term or extension studies[6]. One patient has QTcB greater than 500 ms in the extension study[14]. Since patients with significant medical conditions such as cardiovascular disease were excluded from the clinical trials, clinicians should use caution in these patients, and should monitor blood pressure and heart rate periodically.

All clinical trials had a down-taper period range from 1 to 4 wk[7-11,14]. Patients should be monitored for symptoms of discontinuation syndrome when discontinuing levomilnacipran and reduce the dose gradually[3]. No clinically significant effects on body weight or laboratory tests were reported in the short-term studies but five patients experienced potentially clinically significant high transaminase values (≥ 3x upper limits of normal of aspartate aminotransferase and alanine aminotransferase levels) in the 48-wk extension study[6,14].

Levomilnacipran is contraindicated in patients with hypersensitivity to levomilnacipran, milnacipran, or any excipients in the formulation. Patients with uncontrolled narrow-angle glaucoma should not use levomilnacipran since it is associated with an increased risk of mydriasis. Similar to other antidepressants, levomilnacipran is contraindicated to use with MAOI, methylene blue, or linezolid concurrently due to the increased risk of serotonin syndrome. Levomilnacipran should be used with caution in patients with controlled narrow-angle glaucoma and patients with raised intraocular pressure or those at risk of acute narrow-angle glaucoma should be monitored. Patients being started on any antidepressant medication should be screened for bipolar disorder and monitored closely for clinical worsening, suicidality and behavior changes. Serotonin syndrome, abnormal bleeding, activation of mania/hypomania and hyponatremia are all class warnings of the SSRI and SNRI antidepressants that also apply to levomilnacipran[3].

Levomilnacipran is listed as pregnancy category C. No teratogenic effects have been seen in the offspring of rats and rabbits exposed to levomilnacipran at doses up to 8 to 16 times the maximum recommended human dose (MRHD). An increase in early post natal rat pup mortality was seen at a dose equivalent to 5 times the MRHD given during pregnancy and lactation[3]. Pregnancy was reported in three patients during the 48-wk open-label extension study conducted by Mago *et al*[14]. Two of the three patients prematurely discontinued from the study and all three pregnancies resulted in live births with no complications. Levomilnacipran has been detected in the milk of lactating rats, but no data is available for nursing women[3].

VORTIOXETINE

Vortioxetine was initially approved by the FDA on September 30, 2013 and became available on the United States market in early 2014[15,16]. Like levomilnacipran it is currently approved for use in MDD. Trials supporting its use in generalized anxiety disorder have also been completed; however, they are beyond the scope of this review.

Pharmacology
Vortioxetine is categorized as a "multi-modal" antidepressant because it is thought to work *via* two complementary mechanisms of action[17,18]. In addition to being an inhibitor of the 5-HT transporter [serotonin transporter (SERT)], vortioxetine also functions as a 5-HT receptor modulator, acting as a 5-HT$_{3A}$, 5-HT$_7$ and 5-HT$_{1D}$ antagonist, a 5-HT$_{1B}$ partial agonist, and a 5-HT$_{1A}$ agonist[17,19,20]. It is unclear exactly which of these activities contributes to its antidepressant efficacy though it is likely a combination of these receptor modulatory effects coupled with the SERT blockade[19,20].

Most selective SSRI antidepressants, which are so named because they are thought to work exclusively through their inhibition of SERT, require approximately 80% SERT occupancy to exert therapeutic efficacy. Vortioxetine exhibits approximately 50% SERT occupancy at 5 mg/d, 65% at 10 mg/d and 80% at 20 mg/d[20]. Given its demonstrated efficacy in clinical trials at doses as low as 5 mg/d, it can be postulated that other mechanisms are actively involved[19,21-23].

Pharmacokinetics
Vortioxetine exhibits linear and dose-dependent pharmacokinetics with a terminal half-life of approximately 57-66 h[20,24]. The absolute bioavailability has been established to be approximately 75% after a single administration of 20 mg, and its absorption does not appear to be effected by the presence or absence of food. It is a lipophilic compound with a high affinity for peripheral tissue, causing it to have a large volume of distribution. It is also highly protein bound (98%-99%)[24]. Vortioxetine is extensively metabolized *via* oxidation *via* the cytochrome P450 system, followed by glucuronidation, primarily to a metabolite that is likely pharmacologically inactive due to its inability to cross the blood brain barrier[20,24]. Vortioxetine is metabolized primarily by CYP2D6 and poor metabolizers of this enzyme have approximately twice the vortioxetine plasma concentration of extensive metabolizers[20]. Approximately 59% of vortioxetine metabolites are eliminated through the urine and 26% through the feces. Negligible amounts of unchanged vortioxetine are excreted in the urine[20]. The presence of renal impairment or mild-moderate hepatic impairment does not seem to affect the clearance of vortioxetine[20].

Clinical trials
Vortioxetine has been studied in over 9000 patients with MDD in 25 clinical trials including: 14 short-term (6-12 wk) acute MDD trials, one long-term ($\geq$ 24 wk) maintenance of remission study, 6 long-term (52 wk) extension studies, 3 short-term (2-8 wk) studies focused on cognition and one short-term (8 wk) trial focused on sexual dysfunction[25,26]. Seven of the 12 short-term trials with results published to date have demonstrated positive efficacy for at least one dose of vortioxetine for the acute treatment of MDD (Table 4)[25-27]. One of these trials demonstrated efficacy in the elderly and another in patients who had an inadequate response to previous antidepressant treatment[25]. The only dose to show clinical efficacy in a United States population is the 20 mg/d.

Short-term trials: The first of the short-term trials was a multinational (excluding the United States) phase Ⅱ trial conducted by Alvarez and colleagues in 429 patients with moderate to severe MDD over 6 wk[21]. Patients were randomized equally to a fixed dose of vortioxetine 5 or 10 mg, venlafaxine XR 225 mg, or placebo for 6 wk[21,25]. Patients who had failed

Table 4 Randomized controlled trials of vortioxetine for major depressive disorder[21-23,27,29,31-36]

Ref.	n	Duration	Key inclusion criteria	Doses	Primary outcome
Alvarez et al[21] Phase II	429	6 wk	Age 18-65 yr MADRS $\geq$ 30	Vortioxetine 5 mg/d Vortioxetine 10 mg/d Placebo Venlafaxine XR 225 mg/d	Positive Change from baseline in MADRS Placebo: -14.5 5 mg: -20.4 ($P < 0.001$) 10 mg: -20.2 ($P < 0.001$) Venlafaxine: -20.9 ($P < 0.001$)
Baldwin et al[29] Phase III	776	8 wk	Age 18-75 yr MADRS $\geq$ 26	Vortioxetine 2.5 mg/d Vortioxetine 5 mg/d Vortioxetine 10 mg/d Placebo Duloxetine 60 mg/d	Failed Change from baseline in MADRS Placebo: -14.8 2.5 mg: -16.2 ($P = 0.219$) 5 mg: -16.5 ($P = 0.132$) 10 mg: -16.3 ($P = 0.185$) Duloxetine: -16.8 ($P = 0.074$)
Jain et al[32] Phase III	600	6 wk	Age 18-75 yr MADRS $\geq$ 30	Vortioxetine 5 mg/d Placebo	Negative/failed Change from baseline in HAM-D24 Placebo: -13.87 5 mg: -14.61 ($P = 0.407$)
Mahableshwarkar et al[33] Phase III	611	8 wk	Age 18-75 yr MADRS $\geq$ 22	Vortioxetine 2.5 mg/d Vortioxetine 5 mg/d Placebo Duloxetine 60 mg/d	Negative Change from baseline in HAM-D24 Placebo: -10.5 2.5 mg: -12.05 ($P = 0.138$) 5 mg: -11.08 ($P = 0.577$) Duloxetine: -13.47 ($P = 0.005$)
Henigsberg[23] Phase III	560	8 wk	Age 18-75 yr MADRS $\geq$ 26	Vortioxetine 1 mg/d Vortioxetine 5 mg/d Vortioxetine 10 mg/d Placebo	Positive Change from baseline in HAM-D24 Placebo: -11.3 1 mg: -14.82 ($P < 0.001$) 5 mg: -15.42 ($P < 0.001$) 10 mg: -16.23 ($P < 0.001$)
Boulenger et al[31] Phase III	608	8 wk	Age 18-75 yr MADRS $\geq$ 26	Vortioxetine 15 mg/d Vortioxetine 20 mg/d Placebo Duloxetine 60 mg/d	Positive Change from baseline in MADRS Placebo: -11.7 15 mg: -17.2 ($P < 0.0001$) 20 mg: -18.8 ($P < 0.0001$) Duloxetine: -21.2 ($P < 0.0001$)
NCT01153009[34] Phase III	614	8 wk	Age 18-75 yr MADRS $\geq$ 26	Vortioxetine 15 mg/d Vortioxetine 20 mg/d Placebo Duloxetine 60 mg/d	Positive Change from baseline in MADRS Placebo: -12.83 15 mg: -14.3 (NS) 20 mg: -15.57 ($P < 0.05$) Duloxetine: -16.9 ($P < 0.001$)
NCT01163266[36] Phase III	462	8 wk	Age 18-75 yr MADRS $\geq$ 26	Vortioxetine 10 mg/d Vortioxetine 20 mg/d Placebo	Positive Change from baseline in MADRS Placebo: -10.8 10 mg: -13.0 (NS) 20 mg: -14.4 ($P < 0.01$)
NCT01179516[35] Phase III	469	8 wk	Age 18-75 yr MADRS $\geq$ 26	Vortioxetine 10 mg/d Vortioxetine 15 mg/d Placebo	Negative/failed Change from baseline in MADRS Placebo: -12.87 10 mg: -13.66 ($P = 0.597$) 15 mg: -13.36 ($P = 0.745$)
NCT01255787[27] (unpublished) Phase III	600	8 wk	Age 20-64 yr MADRS $\geq$ 26	Vortioxetine 5 mg/d Vortioxetine 10 mg/d Vortioxetine 20 mg/d Placebo	Negative Change from baseline in MADRS Placebo: -13.99 5 mg: -14.61 ($P = 0.907$) 10 mg: -15.68 ($P = 0.301$) 20 mg: -15.82 ($P = 0.240$)
Boulenger et al[22] Phase III	400	24-64 wk	Age 18-75 yr MADRS $\geq$ 26	Vortioxetine 5-10 mg/d Placebo	Positive Time to relapse-vortioxetine vs placebo HR = 2.01 (95%CI: 1.26-3.21) ($P = 0.0035$)

NCT: National clinical trial; MADRS: Montgomery-Asberg Depression Rating Scale; HAM-D24: Hamilton Rating Scale for Depression (24-items).

adequate trials of two or more antidepressants, who were receiving formal behavioral or psychotherapy, or who had significant suicidal thoughts were excluded[21]. Of the 426 patients who were treated in the trial, the average age was 43.3, 62.7% were women and 92% were Caucasian. The mean baseline MADRS score was 34, indicating a severe level of depression[12,13,25]. There were no statistically significant differences between treatment groups at baseline[21]. Both doses of vortioxetine were statistically significantly superior to placebo on the primary endpoint of mean change from baseline in MADRS total score at week 6. The mean difference from placebo was 5.9 points for 5 mg, 5.7 points for 10 mg, and 6.4 points for venlafaxine, translating to medium effect sizes of 0.56 for 5 mg and 0.54 for 10 mg of vortioxetine ($P < 0.001$ for each)[28]. A statistically significant difference compared to placebo was seen from week 2 onwards in the venlafaxine and vortioxetine 5 mg group and week 3 onwards in the vortioxetine 10 mg group. Response and remission rates (as defined in the description of the levomilnacipran trials above) were also statistically significantly higher for all of the active treatment arms when compared to placebo, ranging from 67%-73% response and 45%-49% remission in the vortioxetine 5 mg arm, 68%-76% response and 45%-50% remission in the vortioxetine 10 mg arm, and 72%-77% response and 46%-55% remission in the venlafaxine arm as compared to 40%-49% response rates and 26%-28% remission rates in the placebo arm depending on how response or remission was defined. The study was not powered to be able to detect statistical differences between vortioxetine and venlafaxine. Adverse effects were generally considered mild to moderate, with the most frequent and statistically significant adverse effects being nausea, hyperhidrosis and vomiting. Venlafaxine patients also experienced significantly more dry mouth, constipation and sexual dysfunction, particularly anorgasmia, than placebo-treated patients. Only the venlafaxine group had more patients withdraw from the trial due to adverse effects (14%) than placebo group (4%) ($P = 0.009$)[21].

A similar study conducted by Baldwin *et al*[29] in 776 patients with moderate to severe MDD, which was also conducted in several countries outside of the United States. Patients also had to be in a current major depressive episode (MDE) for at least 3 mo. Other inclusion and exclusion criteria were similar to the Alvarez trial. Patients were randomized to either a fixed dose of vortioxetine 2.5, 5 or 10 mg, duloxetine 60 mg or placebo for 8 wk[29]. The mean baseline MADRS score was 31.9 indicating moderate to severe MDD and the mean Hamilton Rating Scale for Anxiety (HAM-A) score was 23.0, indicating at least a mild to moderate level of anxiety[30]. The average age of trial participants was 45 years, approximately two-thirds were women, and the majority (78%) were Caucasian, with a significant minority being Asian (21%). As none of the active treatment arms separated from

placebo on the primary endpoint, mean change in MADRS score at week 8, using a last observation carried forward analysis approach, this was considered a failed trial. However, when using the mixed model method of analysis with repeated measures, the vortioxetine 5 and 10 mg and duloxetine groups were statistically significant when compared to placebo on the primary and most secondary outcomes, including mean change from baseline in the Hamilton Rating Scale for Depression (24-items) (HAM-D$_{24}$), HAM-A, and CGI-I scores. The clinical significance of these outcomes, however, is questionable, as the difference from placebo on the MADRS scores were only 1.6, 2.5, 2.6 and 3.0 points for vortioxetine 2.5, 5, 10 mg and duloxetine, respectively. This study was also not powered to be able to detect a difference between vortioxetine and the active control, duloxetine. In terms of adverse effects of vortioxetine, only the incidence of nausea was statistically significantly greater than placebo, while patients in the duloxetine arm experienced significantly more nausea, dizziness, hyperhidrosis and decreased appetite than placebo-treated patients. The rates of withdrawal from the study were comparable between each of the treatment arms[29].

Two similar trials demonstrated efficacy for vortioxetine in a multinational population, excluding the United States. In these trials, patients were treated for 8 wk with vortioxetine 1, 5, 10 mg or placebo once daily in the trial conducted by Henigsberg *et al*[23] and vortioxetine 15 or 20 mg, duloxetine 60 mg or placebo in the study by Henigsberg *et al*[23] and Boulenger *et al*[31]. Other inclusion and exclusion criteria were similar to the above described trials. The average age of patients in these trials was approximately 47 years, the great majority were Caucasian and roughly two-thirds were female[23,31]. All doses of vortioxetine, as well as duloxetine, showed a statistically significant improvement on the primary outcome, change from baseline HAM-D$_{24}$ in the Henigsberg trial, and change in MADRS in the Boulenger trial (Table 4). In the Henigsberg trial, these differences translated to moderate effect sizes of 0.37, 0.41 and 0.54 for vortioxetine 1, 5 and 10 mg, respectively[23]. MADRS and HAM-D$_{24}$ scores began to separate from placebo at week 2 for most doses, and week 4 for the vortioxetine 15 mg/d arm. Statistically significant differences were seen for many of the secondary outcomes as well, with the exception of the change in the SDS, which did not show a difference from placebo with any dose of vortioxetine in the Henigsberg trial, but did show improvement in the Boulenger trial[23,31]. Such positive secondary outcomes included change in MADRS score, change in HAM-D$_{24}$ in patients with a baseline HAM-A score $\geq$ 20, and response and remission rates based on both the HAM-D$_{24}$ and the MADRS[23,31]. Response rates ranged from 46.8%-61.6% and remission rates from 20.9%-38.4% for vortioxetine as compared to 74.0% response and 54.1% remission

in the duloxetine group and 23.0%-32.3% response and 11.5%-19.0% remission for placebo. Adverse effects occurring in ≥ 5% of subjects in any of the vortioxetine treatment groups included nausea, headache, nasopharyngitis, and dizziness. One incidence of pancreatitis with vortioxetine 10 mg/d was judged by the investigator to be possibly related to the medication[23]. No statistically significant changes in the Arizona Sexual Experiences (ASEX) scale were seen in any of the treatment arms in the Boulenger trial, even when stratified according to sex or baseline sexual function status. However, the most frequent primary reason for withdrawing from the study was adverse events and the percentage of patients in the vortioxetine 20 mg arm that discontinued due to adverse events was significantly higher than placebo [11.3% vs 4.4%, respectively (P value not reported)]. Nausea and dry mouth occurred statistically more often with duloxetine than with placebo (P < 0.001)[31].

In patients being switched from vortioxetine 15 or 20 mg to placebo at the end of 8 wk, only the 20 mg group experienced a statistically significantly higher score on the Discontinuation Emergent Signs and Symptoms Scale (DESS). This difference was seen in week 9 (P = 0.0297), but was not statistically significant at week 10 (P = 0.1690), indicating short-lived discontinuation symptoms. Increased dreaming or nightmares was the most reported new or worsening symptom in the vortioxetine-treated patients. Patients in the duloxetine arm were tapered down to 30 mg/d for one week and then switched to placebo. Duloxetine-treated patients also scored higher on the DESS during the taper period with patients reporting new or worsening dizziness/lightheadedness, trouble sleeping, insomnia, irritability, fatigue/tiredness, anxiety, tearfulness, headache, agitation, and mood swings[31].

The first United States short-term trial was published by Jain and colleagues and enrolled 600 patients age 18-75 years with moderate to severe MDD. Patients had to have a MADRS score ≥ 30 at baseline and were excluded if they had significant risk of suicide or history of non-response to 2 or more antidepressants[32]. Patients were required to be in a current MDE for at least 3 mo. Patients were randomized to vortioxetine 5 mg once daily or placebo for 6 wk. Vortioxetine did not separate from placebo in the primary outcome, change in HAM-D$_{24}$ total score at week 6 (Table 4), nor most of the secondary outcomes such as response and remission. Vortioxetine did, however, statistically significantly decrease HAM-D$_{24}$ scores (-13.4 points) in individuals with a baseline HAM-A score > 19 (indicating moderate anxiety) (P = 0.049). The effect size in this subgroup was small (0.21), indicating a low level of clinical significance[28,32]. The most common adverse effects seen in the vortioxetine-treated group were nausea (19%), headache (17.1%), diarrhea (11.4%), dry mouth (8.4%) and dizziness (6.4%). The rates of

nausea and diarrhea appeared much higher than with placebo (9.4% and 7.0%, respectively). There were no differences between the groups in the number of patients who withdrew from the study due to adverse effects. Additionally, no significant discontinuation effects were seen after stopping vortioxetine during the 2-wk follow up period[32].

A series of three 8-wk trials were conducted in the United States by Mahableshwarkar et al[33]. Each of these trials included patients aged 18-75 years with similar inclusion and exclusion criteria as the above described trials, with the exception of the cutoff requirements on the MADRS at baseline. One trial had a relatively modest cutoff of ≥ 22 and the other two trials required a score of ≥ 26. Two of the trials used duloxetine 60 mg/d as an active reference. The first trial included vortioxetine 2.5 mg, 5 mg, placebo or duloxetine, the other trial to include a duloxetine arm also studied vortioxetine 15 or 20 mg/d. The trial without an active reference included vortioxetine 10 or 15 mg/d. The average age of participants in these trials ranged from 42.7-45.1 years, 63.5%-73.8% were female, 74.2%-76.5% were Caucasian, and a significant minority (17.3%-22.7%) were Black. The mean MADRS score at baseline ranged from 29.8-33.7[33-35]. Baseline demographics were similar between the treatment groups, however there was a significant difference in baseline body mass index (BMI) in one trial, with patients in the vortioxetine 5 mg group having a slightly higher mean BMI (31.38 kg/m^2) than the vortioxetine 2.5 mg, duloxetine or placebo treatment arms (29.48-30.14 kg/m^2) (P value not reported)[25,33]. Only the 20 mg/d arm in any of the vortioxetine arms showed statistically significant improvement in the primary outcome, in this case change in MADRS from baseline (Table 4). Duloxetine, however, did show a significantly greater improvement in the primary outcome in both trials to include it, and was significant in many of the secondary outcomes in these trials as well[33,34].

Nausea, dry mouth and headache were the most frequently reported adverse effects with vortioxetine in these trials and nausea was also the most common adverse events leading to discontinuation. Sexual side effect rates, as measured by the ASEX scale, were similar to that of duloxetine in one trial (51.0% with vortioxetine 2.5 mg, 37.5% with 5 mg, 46.9% with duloxetine, as compared to 33.3% with placebo)[18,33]. In the trials that examined higher doses of vortioxetine, rates of sexual dysfunction as measured by the ASEX were generally similar to what was seen in placebo-treated patients[25,26]. No significant differences in DESS scores were seen in the vortioxetine groups as compared to placebo in the higher dose vortioxetine trial, despite abrupt discontinuation from 15 or 20 mg/d[25].

The second study to show efficacy for vortioxetine in a United States population was conducted by Jacobsen and colleagues in 462 patients randomized

to vortioxetine 10 mg, vortioxetine 20 mg or placebo once daily. Inclusion and exclusion criteria where the same as the above studies by Mahableshwarkar *et al*[33] and Boulenger *et al*[22,31]. The average age of patients in this trial was 42.8 years, 69.9% were Caucasian, 27.9% were Black, and 72.5% were female[25]. The mean MADRS score at baseline was 32.2[36]. Vortioxetine 20 mg/d separated from placebo on the primary outcome, change from baseline in MADRS total score, with a mean difference of 14.41 points (P = 0.002), while vortioxetine 10 mg/d did not, with a mean difference of 12.96 as compared to placebo, with a mean difference of 10.77 (P = 0.058)[36].

The most recently completed short-term placebo-controlled trial was a combined phase Ⅱ and Ⅲ trial conducted in 600 patients, age 20 to 64 years, in Europe and Asia. Patients in this trial were treated with vortioxetine 5, 10, or 20 mg or placebo. Average age of included participants was 44.4 years, 62.5% were female and 69% were Caucasian, with the remaining 31% being Asian. The mean MADRS score at baseline was 31.7. None of the treatment arms separated from placebo on the primary endpoint, change in MADRS (Table 4). Statistical analysis was not performed for any of the secondary outcomes. Nausea was the most commonly reported adverse effect and the rate was the highest in the 20 mg vortioxetine group (24.7%)[27].

The only short-term trial to include an active comparator was a trial of 501 patients with moderate to severe MDD who had a documented inadequate response to SSRI or SNRI monotherapy. This trial was conducted in Europe and compared flexibly-dosed vortioxetine 10-20 mg/d to flexibly dosed agomelatine 25-50 mg/d. Agomelatine works as a NE and dopamine disinhibitor and is marketed in Europe as an antidepressant. Average age of participants in this trial was 46.3 years, 74.7% were female, and almost 100% of patients were Caucasian. The mean baseline MADRS score at baseline was 28.9[25,37]. At weeks 8 and 12, vortioxetine provided significantly greater improvement in the MADRS as compared to agomelatine, with a between group difference of 2.2 points at week 8 (P = 0.018) and 2.0 points at week 12 (P = 0.0054)[25,37]. Change from baseline in HAM-A score, response and remission rates, and all other secondary outcomes were also significantly superior in vortioxetine-treated patients as compared to agomelatine-treated patients[37]. Fewer patients in the vortioxetine group discontinued due to adverse effects than the agomelatine group and the most commonly reported adverse effects with both treatments were nausea, headache, dizziness and somnolence. Numerically more patients in the agomelatine group reported headache, dizziness and somnolence and more patients in the vortioxetine group reported nausea[25].

The efficacy of vortioxetine in an elderly population (≥ 65 years) was established in an 8-wk trial conducted

by Katona *et al*[38] in 453 patients randomized to vortioxetine 5 mg/d, duloxetine 60 mg/d or placebo. The mean age of patients in this trial was 71 years, approximately two-thirds were women, and 95% were Caucasian. Mean baseline MADRS score was approximately 30. Approximately 91% of patients had concurrent medical, psychiatric or neurologic disorders and the mean baseline HAM-A score was 19. Both vortioxetine and duloxetine were statistically significant when compared to placebo on the primary outcome, change in HAM-D$_{24}$ at week 8. Vortioxetine had a 3.3 point difference from placebo (P = 0.0011) and duloxetine had a 5.5 point difference (P < 0.0001). Response and remission rates were also significant for both drugs with rates of 53.2%-61.7% response and 29.2%-33.8% remission for vortioxetine, depending on the definition, 63.3%-72.1% response and 34.7%-46.9% remission with duloxetine and 35.2%-38.0% response and 19.3%-20.7% remission with placebo[38].

Secondary exploratory outcomes focused on cognition, which were measured with the Digit Symbol Substitution Test (DSST) and the Rey Auditory Verbal Learning Test (RAVLT) were statistically significantly superior to placebo for vortioxetine. Duloxetine had statistically significant improvement on the RAVLT but not the DSST. Effect sizes on these outcomes were generally small for vortioxetine (0.24-0.27) which calls into question the clinical significance of these findings[38]. The only adverse effect that occurred significantly more frequently in the vortioxetine group than placebo was nausea. Significantly more patients in the duloxetine group experienced nausea, fatigue, constipation, dry mouth, hyperhidrosis and somnolence[38].

The final short-term trial in adult MDD patients examined sexual functioning in adults experiencing SSRI-related sexual dysfunction[39]. Preliminary results have recently been presented at a meeting of the American Society of Clinical Pharmacology and are currently available from the manufacturer's website[40]. In this trial, 447 patients with recent major depressive episodes that were currently being treated with an SSRI were discontinued from their current treatment and randomized to vortioxetine titrated to 20 mg once daily or escitalopram 20 mg once daily for 8 wk. Patients treated with vortioxetine experienced statistically significant improvement in sexual functioning as measured by the changes in sexual functioning questionnaire short-form-14 (P = 0.013).

Long-term trials: The only long-term trial to employ a double-blind, randomized, placebo-controlled design was a 24-64 wk relapse prevention study conducted in 404 patients, age 18-75 years with MDD in 17 countries in Europe, Asia and Africa. Inclusion and exclusion criteria were similar to the short-term phase Ⅱ trial conducted by Alvarez *et al*[21]. Eligible patients were treated first with 12 wk of open-label, flexible-

dose vortioxetine 5-10 mg/d. The study design was nearly identical to the relapse prevention study conducted for levomilnacipran. Patients who achieved remission (MADRS score ≤ 10) at both weeks 10 and 12, were randomized to receive vortioxetine or placebo once daily for 24-64 wk. Patients were withdrawn from the study if at any time they suffered a relapse (MADRS score ≥ 22) or an insufficient clinical response as judged by the investigator. The primary efficacy endpoint was the time to relapse within the first 24 wk of the double-blind period. There were no significant differences between the treatment groups at time of randomization. The mean MADRS score at the time of randomization was 4.8% and 65% of the vortioxetine-treated patients were on 10 mg/d, with the remaining 35% on 5 mg/d. Patients treated with vortioxetine were statistically significantly less likely to relapse with a hazard ratio of 2.01 (95%CI: 1.26-3.21, *P* = 0.035)[22].

The proportion of patients that relapsed on placebo was also statistically significantly higher in the placebo group (26%) than in the vortioxetine group (13%) (*P* = 0.013)[22]. Interestingly, there was a lower risk of relapse for Caucasian patients than for Asian patients, however the number of Asian patients enrolled in the study was small (17.7% of the placebo group and 15.7% of the vortioxetine group)[22]. Nausea and headache were the most common adverse effects in the open-label period (25.7% and 18.3% respectively). The only adverse effect that was statistically significantly higher in the vortioxetine group during the double-blind phase was nausea (8.8% *vs* 3.1% with placebo)[22].

Out of the six open-label extension trials that have been conducted for vortioxetine for the treatment of MDD, five of them currently have results available. Doses in these trials ranged from 2.5-20 mg/d. Three of these trials were performed outside of the United States, one exclusively in the United States and one in multiple countries including the United States. Depression scale scores continued to improve in all of the open-label extension studies, as did rates of response and remission in trials that measured this information. The most common adverse effects seen in the long-term trials were nausea and headache. Other commonly reported adverse effects reported in one or more of the trials included dizziness, nasopharyngitis and weight increase. Rates of withdrawal due to adverse effects were generally low and ranged from 5.9%-10.9%[25,41-43].

Dosage recommendations
Vortioxetine is available in dosage strengths of 5, 10, 15 and 20 mg immediate release tablets. The recommended starting dose of vortioxetine is 10 mg once daily with or without food. It is recommended that this be titrated to 20 mg once daily, as tolerated. No specific titration recommendations are outlined in the package insert, however, most clinical trials

increased to 15 or 20 mg/d after one week at a dose of 10 mg/d. Patients who do not tolerate 10-20 mg/d can be decreased down to 5 mg/d[20].

The maximum recommended dose is 10 mg/d in patients who are known CYP2D6 poor metabolizers or who are on a strong CYP2D6 inhibitor (such as bupropion, paroxetine or fluoxetine). Patients who are taking concomitant CYP strong inducers (such as carbamazepine, phenytoin or phenobarbital) for more than 14 d may need a dose increase to maintain adequate plasma levels; however, it is not recommended to go above three times the original dose[20]. No dose adjustment is recommended based on age, race, gender, ethnicity or renal function. Patients with mild-end stage renal impairment or mild-moderate hepatic impairment can be administered vortioxetine safely without dose adjustment. Vortioxetine is not recommended in patients with severe hepatic impairment since it has not been studied in this population[20].

Drug interactions
Vortioxetine does not appear to have any clinically relevant inhibitory or inducing effects on the CYP450 system[24]. It is a substrate of several of the CYP450 enzymes and dose adjustments are recommended when used concomitantly with strong CYP2D6 inhibitors or strong CYP450 inducers. Because vortioxetine is highly protein bound, it is possible that coadministration with other highly protein bound drugs may increase the free concentrations of the other drug. Yet, in a study with coadministration of warfarin, a highly protein-bound drug, no significant change in international normalized ratio was seen[20].

Adverse effects
The most common adverse effects seen in both short and long-term trials of vortioxetine were nausea, constipation and vomiting. Nausea appears to be dose-related, with almost one-third of patients on 15 or 20 mg/d experiencing nausea. It also seems to be transient for most patients, with an average duration of 2 wk, however, as many as 10% of patients continued to experience nausea at the end of the 6- to 8-wk trials[20].

Spontaneously reported sexual adverse effects were low in the clinical trials for vortioxetine. In order to more accurately capture a side effect that is generally underreported, the ASEX was used in several of the clinical trials for vortioxetine. For patients without sexual dysfunction at baseline, rates of treatment emergent sexual dysfunction according to the ASEX were somewhat higher than placebo, with rates of 22%-34% in females and 16%-29% in males as compared to 20% and 14% with placebo, respectively. As with nausea, this adverse effect appears to be dose-dependent, with the highest rates occurring at 20 mg/d[20].

Most of the clinical trials employed a rapid dis-

continuation upon cessation of vortioxetine. Rates of discontinuation symptoms were low overall, with some patients reporting headache and muscle tension[20]. One of two trials that measured such symptoms *via* the DESS showed a statistically significant difference[25,31]. It is recommended that patients taking 15 or 20 mg/d of vortioxetine be tapered down to 10 mg/d for one week before completely discontinuing the medication[20].

Contraindications and warnings related to vortioxetine include hypersensitivity to vortioxetine or any excipients in the formulation as well as concomitant use of MAOIs, linezolid or methylene blue. Vortioxetine should be discontinued at least 21 d before starting one of these medications and usage of vortioxetine within 14 d of use of an MAOI is also contraindicated. Patients being started on any antidepressant medication should be screened for bipolar disorder and monitored closely for clinical worsening, suicidality and behavior changes. Serotonin syndrome, abnormal bleeding, activation of mania/hypomania and hyponatremia are all class warnings of the SSRI and SNRI antidepressants that also apply to vortioxetine. No abnormal laboratory (except sodium), weight or vital sign changes have been noted in clinical trials with vortioxetine. According to the product information, a clinical study has demonstrated that a single dose of vortioxetine 20 or 40 mg does not appear to increase the impairment of mental or motor skills due to alcohol consumption[20].

Vortioxetine is listed as pregnancy category C. Developmental delays, but no teratogenic effects have been seen in the offspring of rats and rabbits exposed to vortioxetine. The medication has been seen to enter the milk of lactating rats, but no data is available for nursing or pregnant women[20].

CONCLUSION

Both levomilnacipran and vortioxetine are new antidepressants that were approved by the FDA in 2013 for the treatment of MDD in adults. Levomilnacipran is a SNRI that was effective in several short term studies and sustained efficacy and tolerability was demonstrated in 1 long-term (48 wk) extension study. The most commonly observed adverse effects are headache, nausea, dizziness, constipation, dry mouth, increased heart rate, tachycardia, erectile dysfunction, urinary hesitation, insomnia, vomiting, and hyperhidrosis. Levomilnacipran seems to have a weight-neutral profile that was demonstrated in both short and long-term studies. Although most of the adverse effects are considered mild to moderate, this may limit its clinical utility, especially in patients with baseline cardiovascular disease. Additional long-term studies and studies comparing levomilnacipran to other antidepressants are needed to establish its place in therapy.

Vortioxetine was effective in the treatment of

MDD in both short-term (6-8 wk) trials as well as in the prevention of relapse in a 24-36 wk trial. Sustained efficacy and tolerability was demonstrated in several long-term open-label trials. Its efficacy was also established in a trial of patients who had unsatisfactory response to an SSRI or SNRI. Some unique benefits of vortioxetine may include its ability to improve depressive symptoms in patients with high levels of baseline anxiety, its low-moderate risk for causing sexual dysfunction and its relatively low risk for sedation, weight gain, and discontinuation symptoms upon rapid withdrawal. Vortioxetine's drug interaction potential, high rates of nausea and cost may limit its clinical utility. Currently the only dose of vortioxetine that has been proven to be effective in a United States population is 20 mg/d, which is also the dose associated with the most adverse effects.

Several generic antidepressants are currently available at a modest cost. Compared to these medications, these brand-name products may be cost prohibitive. Further studies comparing levomilnacipran and vortioxetine to other currently available antidepressants may be needed to establish its place in therapy.

REFERENCES

1   **Gelenberg AJ**, Freeman MP, Markowitz JC, Rosenbaum JF, Thase ME, Trivedi MH, Van Rhoads RS. Practice guideline for the treatment of patients with major depressive disorder. 3th ed. American Psychiatric Association, 2010

2   **Auclair AL**, Martel JC, Assié MB, Bardin L, Heusler P, Cussac D, Marien M, Newman-Tancredi A, O'Connor JA, Depoortère R. Levomilnacipran (F2695), a norepinephrine-preferring SNRI: profile in vitro and in models of depression and anxiety. *Neuropharmacology* 2013; **70**: 338-347 [PMID: 23499664 DOI: 10.1016/j.neuropharm.2013.02.024]

3   Fetzima (levomilnacipran) [prescribing information]. St. Louis, MO: Forest Pharmaceuticals, 2013

4   **Kasper S**, Meshkat D, Kutzelnigg A. Improvement of the noradrenergic symptom cluster following treatment with milnacipran. *Neuropsychiatr Dis Treat* 2011; **7**: 21-27 [PMID: 21750625 DOI: 10.2147/NDT.S19615]

5   Fetzima (levomilnacipran) [formulary dossier]. St. Louis, MO: Forest Pharmaceuticals, 2013

6   **Citrome L**. Levomilnacipran for major depressive disorder: a systematic review of the efficacy and safety profile for this newly approved antidepressant--what is the number needed to treat, number needed to harm and likelihood to be helped or harmed? *Int J Clin Pract* 2013; **67**: 1089-1104 [PMID: 24016209 DOI: 10.1111/ijcp.12298]

7   **Montgomery SA**, Mansuy L, Ruth A, Bose A, Li H, Li D. Efficacy and safety of levomilnacipran sustained release in moderate to severe major depressive disorder: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, proof-of-concept study. *J Clin Psychiatry* 2013; **74**: 363-369 [PMID: 23656841 DOI: 10.4088/JCP.12m08141]

8   **Asnis GM**, Bose A, Gommoll CP, Chen C, Greenberg WM. Efficacy and safety of levomilnacipran sustained release 40 mg, 80 mg, or 120 mg in major depressive disorder: a phase 3, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study. *J Clin Psychiatry* 2013; **74**: 242-248 [PMID: 23561229 DOI: 10.4088/JCP.12m08197]

9   **Bakish D**, Bose A, Gommoll C, Chen C, Nunez R, Greenberg WM, Liebowitz M, Khan A. Levomilnacipran ER 40 mg and 80 mg in patients with major depressive disorder: a phase III,

randomized, double-blind, fixed-dose, placebo-controlled study. *J Psychiatry Neurosci* 2014; **39**: 40-49 [PMID: 24144196 DOI: 10.1503/jpn.130040]

10   **Sambunaris A**, Bose A, Gommoll CP, Chen C, Greenberg WM, Sheehan DV. A phase III, double-blind, placebo-controlled, flexible-dose study of levomilnacipran extended-release in patients with major depressive disorder. *J Clin Psychopharmacol* 2014; **34**: 47-56 [PMID: 24172209 DOI: 10.1097/JCP.0000000000000060]

11   **Shiovitz T**, Greenberg WM, Chen C, Forero G, Gommoll CP. A Randomized, Double-blind, Placebo-controlled Trial of the Efficacy and Safety of Levomilnacipran ER 40-120mg/day for Prevention of Relapse in Patients with Major Depressive Disorder. *Innov Clin Neurosci* 2014; **11**: 10-22 [PMID: 24653937]

12   **Montgomery SA**, Asberg M. A new depression scale designed to be sensitive to change. *Br J Psychiatry* 1979; **134**: 382-389 [PMID: 444788 DOI: 10.1192/bjp.134.4.382]

13   **Snaith RP**, Harrop FM, Newby DA, Teale C. Grade scores of the Montgomery-Asberg Depression and the Clinical Anxiety Scales. *Br J Psychiatry* 1986; **148**: 599-601 [PMID: 3779233 DOI: 10.1192/bjp.148.5.599]

14   **Mago R**, Forero G, Greenberg WM, Gommoll C, Chen C. Safety and tolerability of levomilnacipran ER in major depressive disorder: results from an open-label, 48-week extension study. *Clin Drug Investig* 2013; **33**: 761-771 [PMID: 23999912 DOI: 10.1007/s40261-013-0126-5]

15   Takeda Pharmaceutical Company Limited. Brintellix® (vortioxetine) for the treatment of major depressive disorder in adults is now available in U.S. pharmacies. [Updated 2014 January 22]. Available from: URL: http://www.takeda.com/news/2014/20140122_6162.html

16   **US Food and Drug Administration**. FDA approves new drug to treat major depressive disorder. [Updated 2013 September 30]. Available from: URL: http: //www.fda.gov/newsevents/newsroom/pressannouncements/ucm370416.htm

17   **Bang-Andersen B**, Ruhland T, Jørgensen M, Smith G, Frederiksen K, Jensen KG, Zhong H, Nielsen SM, Hogg S, Mørk A, Stensbøl TB. Discovery of 1-[2-(2,4-dimethylphenylsulfanyl)phenyl]piperaz ine (Lu AA21004): a novel multimodal compound for the treatment of major depressive disorder. *J Med Chem* 2011; **54**: 3206-3221 [PMID: 21486038 DOI: 10.1021/jm101459g]

18   **Dhir A**. Vortioxetine for the treatment of major depression. *Drugs Today* (Barc) 2013; **49**: 781-790 [PMID: 24524096 DOI: 10.1358/dot.2013.49.12.2058448]

19   **Mørk A**, Pehrson A, Brennum LT, Nielsen SM, Zhong H, Lassen AB, Miller S, Westrich L, Boyle NJ, Sánchez C, Fischer CW, Liebenberg N, Wegener G, Bundgaard C, Hogg S, Bang-Andersen B, Stensbøl TB. Pharmacological effects of Lu AA21004: a novel multimodal compound for the treatment of major depressive disorder. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther* 2012; **340**: 666-675 [PMID: 22171087 DOI: 10.1124/jpet.111.189068]

20   Brintellix (vortioxetine) [product information]. Deerfield, IL: Takeda Pharmaceuticals American, 2013

21   **Alvarez E**, Perez V, Dragheim M, Loft H, Artigas F. A double-blind, randomized, placebo-controlled, active reference study of Lu AA21004 in patients with major depressive disorder. *Int J Neuropsychopharmacol* 2012; **15**: 589-600 [PMID: 21767441 DOI: 10.1017/S1461145711001027]

22   **Boulenger JP**, Loft H, Florea I. A randomized clinical study of Lu AA21004 in the prevention of relapse in patients with major depressive disorder. *J Psychopharmacol* 2012; **26**: 1408-1416 [PMID: 22495621 DOI: 10.1177/0269881112441866]

23   **Henigsberg N**, Mahableshwarkar AR, Jacobsen P, Chen Y, Thase ME. A randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled 8-week trial of the efficacy and tolerability of multiple doses of Lu AA21004 in adults with major depressive disorder. *J Clin Psychiatry* 2012; **73**: 953-959 [PMID: 22901346 DOI: 10.4088/JCP.11m07470]

24   **Areberg J**, Søgaard B, Højer AM. The clinical pharmacokinetics of Lu AA21004 and its major metabolite in healthy young volunteers. *Basic Clin Pharmacol Toxicol* 2012; **111**: 198-205 [PMID: 22448783]

25   Brintellix (vortioxetine) [formulary dossier]. Deerfield, IL: Takeda Pharmaceuticals American, 2013

26   **Citrome L**. Vortioxetine for major depressive disorder: a systematic review of the efficacy and safety profile for this newly approved antidepressant - what is the number needed to treat, number needed to harm and likelihood to be helped or harmed? *Int J Clin Pract* 2014; **68**: 60-82 [PMID: 24165478 DOI: 10.1111/ijcp.12350]

27   **Takeda**. Efficacy and safety study of vortioxetine (Lu AA21004) for treatment of major depressive disorder. In: ClinicalTrials.gov [internet]. Bethesda (MD): National Library of Medicine (US), 2000: cited 2014-06-23. Available from: URL: http: //clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01255787

28   **Cohen J**. Statistical Power Analysis for the Behavioral Sciences, 2nd ed. Hillsdale, NJ: Lawrence Erlbaum Associates, 1988

29   **Baldwin DS**, Loft H, Dragheim M. A randomised, double-blind, placebo controlled, duloxetine-referenced, fixed-dose study of three dosages of Lu AA21004 in acute treatment of major depressive disorder (MDD). *Eur Neuropsychopharmacol* 2012; **22**: 482-491 [PMID: 22209361 DOI: 10.1016/j.euroneuro.2011.11.008]

30   **Hamilton M**. The assessment of anxiety states by rating. *Br J Med Psychol* 1959; **32**: 50-55 [PMID: 13638508 DOI: 10.1111/j.2044-8341.1959.tb00467.x]

31   **Boulenger JP**, Loft H, Olsen CK. Efficacy and safety of vortioxetine (Lu AA21004), 15 and 20 mg/day: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, duloxetine-referenced study in the acute treatment of adult patients with major depressive disorder. *Int Clin Psychopharmacol* 2014; **29**: 138-149 [PMID: 24257717 DOI: 10.1097/YIC.0000000000000018]

32   **Jain R**, Mahableshwarkar AR, Jacobsen PL, Chen Y, Thase ME. A randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled 6-wk trial of the efficacy and tolerability of 5 mg vortioxetine in adults with major depressive disorder. *Int J Neuropsychopharmacol* 2013; **16**: 313-321 [PMID: 22963932 DOI: 10.1017/S1461145712000727]

33   **Mahableshwarkar AR**, Jacobsen PL, Chen Y. A randomized, double-blind trial of 2.5mg and 5mg vortioxetine (Lu AA21004) versus placebo for 8 weeks in adults with major depressive disorder. *Curr Med Res Opin* 2013; **29**: 217-226 [PMID: 23252878 DOI: 10.1185/03007995.2012.761600]

34   **Takeda**. Safety and efficacy of vortioxetine (Lu AA21004) in adults with major depressive disorder. In: ClinicalTrials.gov [internet]. Bethesda (MD): National Library of Medicine (US), 2000: cited 2014-6-23. Available from: URL: http: //clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01153009

35   **Takeda**. Safety and efficacy study of voritioxetine (Lu AA21004) in adults with major depressive disorder. In: ClinicalTrials.gov [internet]. Bethesda (MD): National Library of Medicine (US), 2000: cited 2014-6-23. Available from: URL: http: //clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01179516

36   **Takeda**. Efficacy and safety study of vortioxetine (Lu AA21004) in adults with major depressive disorder. In: ClinicalTrials.gov [internet]. Bethesda (MD): National Library of Medicine (US), 2000: cited 2014-6-23. Available from: URL: http: //clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01163266

37   **Lundbeck H A/S**. A study of vortioxetine (Lu AA21004) in comparison to agomelatine in adults suffering from major depression with inadequate response to previous medication (REVIVE). In: ClinicalTrials.gov [internet]. Bethesda (MD): National Library of Medicine (US), 2000: Cited 2014-6-23. Available from: URL: http: //clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01488071

38   **Katona C**, Hansen T, Olsen CK. A randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, duloxetine-referenced, fixed-dose study comparing the efficacy and safety of Lu AA21004 in elderly patients with major depressive disorder. *Int Clin Psychopharmacol* 2012; **27**: 215-223 [PMID: 22572889 DOI: 10.1097/YIC.0b013e3283542457]

39   **Takeda**. Effect of Lu AA21004 versus escitalopram on sexual functioning in adults with well-treated major depressive disorder. In: ClinicalTrials.gov [internet]. Bethesda (MD): National Library of Medicine (US), 2000: cited 2014 -6-23. Available from: URL: http: //clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01364649

40   **Takeda Pharmaceutical Company Limited**. Results of a new study of Brintellix® (vortioxetine) vs escitalopram on sexual functioning in well treated MDD patients experiencing treatment-emergent sexual dysfunction. [Updated 2014 June 18]. Available from: URL: https://www.takeda.com/news/2014/20140618_6611.html

41   **Alam MY**, Jacobsen PL, Chen Y, Serenko M, Mahableshwarkar AR. Safety, tolerability, and efficacy of vortioxetine (Lu AA21004) in major depressive disorder: results of an open-label, flexible-dose, 52-week extension study. *Int Clin Psychopharmacol* 2014; **29**: 36-44 [PMID: 24169027 DOI: 10.1097/YIC.0000000000000010]

42   **Baldwin DS**, Hansen T, Florea I. Vortioxetine (Lu AA21004) in the long-term open-label treatment of major depressive disorder. *Curr Med Res Opin* 2012; **28**: 1717-1724 [PMID: 22978748 DOI: 10.1185/03007995.2012.725035]

43   **Takeda**. Safety and tolerability of vortioxetine (Lu AA21004) - open label extension study. In: ClinicalTrials.gov [internet]. Bethesda (MD): National Library of Medicine (US), 2000: cited 2014-6-23. Available from: URL: http: //clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01152996

REVIEW

Antimicrobial resistance in clinically important biofilms

Fatemeh Rafii, Mark E Hart

Fatemeh Rafii, Mark E Hart, Division of Microbiology, National Center for Toxicological Research, FDA, Jefferson, AR 72079, United States

Author contributions: Both authors contributed to this work.

Conflict-of-interest: The authors declare no conflicts of interest regarding this manuscript.

Correspondence to: Fatemeh Rafii, Research Microbiologist, Division of Microbiology, National Center for Toxicological Research, FDA, Jefferson, AR 72079,
United States. fatemeh.rafii@fda.hhs.gov
Telephone: +1-870-5437342
Fax: +1-870-5437307

Abstract

A biofilm contains a consortium of cohesive bacterial cells forming a complex structure that is a sedentary, but dynamic, community. Biofilms adhere on biotic and abiotic surfaces, including the surfaces of practically all medical devices. Biofilms are reported to be responsible for approximately 60% of nosocomial infections due to implanted medical devices, such as intravenous catheters, and they also cause other foreign-body infections and chronic infections. The presence of biofilm on a medical device may result in the infection of surrounding tissues and failure of the device, necessitating the removal and replacement of the device. Bacteria from biofilms formed on medical devices may be released and disperse, with the potential for the formation of new biofilms in other locations and the development of a systemic infection. Regardless of their location, bacteria in biofilms are tolerant of the activities of the immune system, antimicrobial agents, and antiseptics. Concentrations of antimicrobial agents sufficient to eradicate planktonic cells have no effect on the same microorganism in a biofilm. Depending on the microbial consortium or component of the biofilm that is involved, various combinations of factors have been suggested to explain the recalcitrant nature of biofilms toward killing by antibiotics. In this mini-review, some of the factors contributing to antimicrobial resistance in biofilms are discussed.

Key words: Biofilm; Bacteria; Antimicrobial agent; Medical devices; Nosocomial infections; Resistance

Core tip: Biofilm formation on host tissues and medically implanted devices is a major health problem, and the infections caused by bacteria in biofilms are hard to treat with antimicrobial agents. They are the cause of frequent and recurrent infections after the termination of antimicrobial treatments. The reasons for the recalcitrant nature of biofilms to antimicrobial treatment are varied and have been attributed to different factors, including impermeability of biofilms, slow rates of growth and metabolic activity, and the presence of small colonies and persisters. They have been the subject of many investigations that will be discussed in this minireview.

Rafii F, Hart ME. Antimicrobial resistance in clinically important biofilms. *World J Pharmacol* 2015; 4(1): 31-46 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3192/full/v4/i1/31.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5497/wjp.v4.i1.31

INTRODUCTION

Over the past three decades, it has become increasingly clear that microbial biofilms represent the norm and not the exception for microbial life. Most microorganisms reside under diverse environmental stresses, with less than optimal levels of such essentials as nutrients and oxygen, and under a constant threat of physical removal. To combat such a hostile environment, microorganisms form surface-associated communities, embedded in a self-produced extracellular matrix. This is evident in the clinical setting, where the biofilm survival lifestyle affords resistance to high concentrations of antimicrobials and to the host defense system[1,2]. It has been estimated that 60% to 80% of infections in the developed world involve biofilms[1,3]. By definition, biofilms are microbially derived sessile communities characterized by cells that are irreversibly attached to a substratum or interface or each other, are embedded in a matrix of extracellular polymeric substances that they have produced and exhibit an altered phenotype with respect to growth rate and gene transcription[4]. The bacterial population in biofilms may be comprised of one or more bacterial species that have formed a cohesive matrix, consisting of live bacteria embedded in polysaccharides, proteins, and extracellular DNA, all of which are bacterial byproducts, and may also include fungi and host-related materials[5]. This matrix, which is produced over time, is important for the structural stability of biofilms and the protection of living microorganisms in the biofilm from antimicrobial agents and the immune system[6]. Clinically important microbial biofilm growth may occur on various host tissues and medically-implanted foreign bodies, resulting in a variety of infections[7-9]. Bacteria in the biofilm matrix have a survival advantage, including protection from the host's immune defense system of antibodies and phagocytic leukocytes, host-derived inhibitory substances, and antimicrobial agents that encompass antibiotics, disinfectants, and germicides[4,10]. Consequently, these biofilm infections tend to be chronic or recurring, even when formed by opportunistic bacterial pathogens[11]. For further reading, we suggest these excellent reviews[12-14].

MEDICALLY IMPORTANT BIOFILMS

Biofilm formation occurs on a variety of surfaces and can be either indwelling medical device-associated[15] or formed on native host tissues[16]. In most cases, formation of a biofilm on a medical device results in failure of the device, requiring removal of the device and/or debridement, which leads to significant morbidity and economic loss[17-19]. These devices include intravenous catheters, biliary and urinary stents, prosthetic heart valves, joint prostheses, peritoneal dialysis catheters, cardiac pacemakers, cerebrospinal fluid shunts, endotracheal tubes, breast implants and urethral catheters[20-24]. It has been estimated that 1.8 billion dollars per year are spent on treating orthopedic implant-related infections in the United States alone[25,26]. Most, if not all, implanted medical devices are susceptible to biofilm formation, as devices are coated by host matrix proteins, such as fibronectin and collagen, which serve as sites for adherence by microbial surface components recognizing adhesive matrix molecules (MSCRAMMs)[17,27-31].

In addition to being the cause of local infection, a biofilm on an implanted device may shed bacteria that produce abscesses in other locations or cause systemic infections[32]. The presence of a biofilm may result in blockage of an indwelling medical device, resulting in complication of treatment. Implanted tube devices may be clogged by biofilms, which necessitate their removal[24,33]. In addition to nosocomial and other infections associated with insertion of tubes, catheters and other devices, biofilms also are involved in causing atherosclerosis, sinusitis, otitis media, chronic wound infections, endocarditis, bronchopneumonia, urinary tract infection, cystic fibrosis, osteomyelitis, colitis, dental plaque and gingivitis[6].

Although a variety of microorganisms are involved in biofilm formation, the bacteria most frequently associated with biofilms are *Staphylococcus epidermidis* (*S. epidermidis*), *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* (*P. aeruginosa*), *Staphylococcus aureus* (*S. aureus*), and *Enterobacteria*, such as *Escherichia coli* (*E. coli*)[24]. Other more frequently isolated bacteria, depending on the site of infection, are *Haemophilus influenzae*, *Burkholderia cepacia* (*B. cepacia*), *Enterococcus* spp., *Klebsiella* spp., *Proteus* spp., and *Helicobacter pylori*[24,34,35]. Other bacterial genera, including *Bacteroides*, *Clostridium*, *Finegoldia* and *Fusobacterium*, have been shown to form biofilms *in vitro*, and some have been isolated from clinical biofilms[6,36]. Regardless of their location and bacterial makeup, the bacterial populations in biofilms coexist and form a cohesive matrix, which allows them to survive and be protected from the detrimental effects of antibiotics and the immune system[37].

BACTERIAL BIOFILM DEVELOPMENT

The formation of a biofilm occurs in three sequential phases, each involving specific factors - irreversible attachment to the surface, growth and production of an extracellular matrix leading to a mature biofilm, and finally, detachment or dispersal[38]. Abiotic biofilm formation starts with planktonic bacterial cells that attach to the foreign body surface by reversible, specific or nonspecific adhesion[39]. The initial attachment is primarily governed by physicochemical forces, such as hydrophobicity and electrostatic forces, between the surface of attachment and the attaching microorganism[20,21,36]. In addition, bacterial appendages, such as flagella, pili, have been shown to be associated with attachment in the case of *P. aeruginosa*[40,41].

More than likely, the production of different bacterial cell wall-associated proteins that adhere to many of the host matrix proteins, either on tissue surfaces or on the surfaces of medically-implanted devices, plays a more important role in attachment[42]. Curli fibers which are proteinaceous extracellular compounds produced by many *Enterobacteriaceae* and belong to class of fiber called amyloids have been shown to be involved in the bacterial attachment and biofilm formation[43]. In *S. aureus*, the MSCRAMMs have been identified not only as important components of staphylococcal infection but also as adhesins for attachment to host tissues and/or foreign bodies covered with host matrix proteins[44,45]. Human plasma has been shown to enhance the expression of genes encoding these proteins in *S. aureus*[46,47]. These proteins include fibronectin-binding proteins[48,49], fibrinogen-binding proteins[50-52], extracellular matrix binding protein[53], protein A[54], and accumulation-associated protein[55-57].

Once attached, bacteria proliferate and produce an extracellular polymeric substance (EPS) matrix consisting, in the staphylococci, of polysaccharides[58], proteins[59], and extracellular DNA[60]. This EPS, also known as glycocalyx or slime[7,61], surrounds the cells and functions as an intercellular adhesin that leads to the formation of a microcolony, which is irreversibly bound to the surface. In the staphylococci, polysaccharide intercellular adhesin (PIA) or poly-N-acetyl glucosamine (PNAG) is usually the main component of the EPS[62-64], but recent studies indicate that the PIA/PNAG may be less important in methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* than in *S. epidermidis* and methicillin-susceptible *S. aureus*[65-67]. Other microbial components have recently been determined to be involved in biofilm maturation. These include extracellular DNA, which is hypothesized to be released from either small vesicles secreted from the outer membranes[68,69] or released by prophage-mediated cell death[70], in *P. aeruginosa*, or programmed cell death, in *S. aureus*[60,71]. However, the exact role is not known, as this has only been demonstrated under *in vitro* conditions. Other staphylococcal polymers that have been implicated in biofilm formation are the cell wall-associated teichoic acids[72,73]. In the Gram-negative bacterium *P. aeruginosa*, three different polysaccharides are produced[74-77].These are the glucose-rich Pel polysaccharide[78], the mannose-rich PSl polysaccharide[78], and alginate[79-81]. Alginate is a key component in the mucoid phenotype of *P. aeruginosa* and a contributing factor to chronic cystic fibrosis pathology[79,82]. Over time, as bacteria are surrounded by a much larger amount of EPS matrix, the biofilm continues to grow in thickness, and mushroom-like or column-like structures up to 10-100 μm thick have been observed *in vitro*[75]. Detailed analyses of mature biofilms show a heterogeneous structure, in which bacterial biomass exists in a polymeric matrix surrounded with water-filled spaces, thought to be essential for providing nutrients to the deeper layer of sessile bacteria but

constituting only 15% of the total volume of the biofilm community[8,83]. It is at this stage of biofilm maturation that the cells are recalcitrant to antimicrobial agents[6].

Bacteria from a biofilm may be released and dispersed, which results in the spread of bacteria and the potential for the formation of new biofilms in other locations. Detached bacteria may produce other types of infections[84]. Dispersion could be either by the release of individual cells or aggregates of cells into the fluid or surrounding substances or by surface dispersal and movement of biofilm structures across a surface as in the case of motile bacteria[7,85]. The biofilm matrix formed in the laboratory may differ from those formed in the body, in which adherent bacteria in biofilms may be associated with molecules of host origin or with fungi[7].

Development of a biofilm may also be influenced by cell-to-cell communication and quorum sensing (QS), in which certain genes are activated when the concentration of bacteria in a given space in the environment reaches a critical level[86-89]. In the staphylococci, the primary QS system that has been most studied, with respect to biofilms, is the accessory gene regulator (Agr) system[90]. The Agr QS system is comprised of two divergent transcripts, one containing a four-gene operon (*agrA*, *agrB*, *agrC*, and *agrD*) that functions as a sensor/response regulator sensing a secreted self-made autoinducing peptide (the product of the *AgrD* gene). The autoinducing peptide is then sensed by the AgrAC two-component, trans-membrane transduction system that, in turn, generates the effector molecule, RNAⅢ. This effector molecule then regulates the expression of numerous cell wall-associated and secreted proteins in a temporal fashion[91]. In biofilms, activation of the Agr system negatively affects biofilm formation, as the Agr system downregulates many of the MSCRAMMs shown to be involved with adhesion and activates proteases, which are most likely responsible for biofilm maturation by degrading many of the proteins known to be involved with adhesion in staphylococcal strains independent of PIA for the formation of biofilms[92-94]. Also, in the staphylococci, the DNA-binding protein SarA is an important regulator of not only virulence gene expression but also biofilm formation[92,95-97]. SarA does so by Agr-dependent and independent mechanisms that contribute collectively to switching between planktonic and sessile lifestyles[92,95-97].

In Gram-negative bacteria, the QS molecules are N-acyl-L-homoserine lactones[86,98]. For example, in *P. aeruginosa*, there are three QS systems. The Pqs system senses a specific quinolone, referred to as the *Pseudomonas* quinolone signal, the Las system senses 3-oxododecanoyl-L-homoserine lactone, and the Rhl system senses N-butanoyl-L-homoserine lactone[99-101]. The activation of these systems may result in the production of extracellular polysaccharides,and a variety of enzymes, including virulence factors[99,100,102-104]. Collectively, these QS systems regulate the expression

of various genes in a coordinated fashion[105]. Natural and synthetic QS inhibitors are being considered for the treatment of infections caused by bacteria in biofilms[87-89,106].

In *P. aeruginosa*, the cyclic AMP signaling, in addition to regulating other genes, controls biofilm formation, alters cell surface hydrophobicity and signals irreversible attachment[107]. *In vitro* experiments with *E. coli* have shown crosstalk between QS and hormones from the host. Yang *et al*[108] showed that in *E. coli* the *qseC* gene regulates the histidine kinase gene, which senses epinephrine/norepinephrine hormone and stimulates biofilm formation, and found that the addition of these hormones increases the thickness of biofilms. The biofilm thickness and ureolytic activity of *Proteus mirabilis* were shown to increase with the QS signal molecule N-butanoyl-L-homoserine lactone[109].

Other factors that have been shown to be involved with biofilm maturation and dispersal include surfactants. For example, a surfactin is found in *Bacillus subtilis*[110,111] and, in *P. aeruginosa,* a rhamnolipid has been shown to contribute to biofilm maturation[112,113]. In the staphylococci, a group of amphipathic, alpha-helical peptides with surfactant activity, known as the phenol-soluble modulins, have been shown to be involved in biofilm maturation[114,115].

CHARACTERISTICS OF BACTERIA IN BIOFILMS

Biofilm-grown bacteria have different properties from those of free-living bacteria, which affects the diagnosis and treatment of infections caused by biofilms. The gene expression profile in a staphylococcal biofilm is considerably different from the profile of a planktonic culture[96,116,117]. Genes for arginine deaminase and urease are upregulated, probably to maintain a pH homeostatic environment, due to anaerobic growth that results in the formation of acidic by-products. In addition, Scherr *et al*[118] recently reported a significant reduction in gene expression when an *S. aureus* biofilm was exposed to macrophages, but very little change in the biofilm transcriptome when exposed to neutrophils; these are two important cellular components of the innate immune response. An increase in pyrimidine nucleotide biosynthesis is also involved in staphylococcal, *E. coli* and *Streptococcus pneumoniae* biofilm formation[119,120].

Biofilms are formed by heterogeneous bacterial aggregates surrounded by a self-produced matrix, which also may contain host constituents[6]. The physiological heterogeneity of bacteria in biofilms enables the subpopulation of bacteria with specialized activities to tolerate the hostile environment and survive[13,121]. Study of *in vitro* biofilms has shown that the concentration of oxygen may be higher at the surface of a biofilm and lower in the center[122,123]. In *P. aeruginosa*, the oxygen is depleted in mucoid macrocolonies, and in cystic fibrosis,

this disease-causing bacterium functions in an anaerobic environment[123,124]. Similarly, there are differences in the concentrations of nutrients and chemicals at the surface and in the center of microcolonies[125,126]. As a result, growth, metabolic activities and protein synthesis are reduced at the center of a biofilm and are higher at the surface[125,126]. There is population diversity within the biofilms; some cells have slow or no growth and other cells are in stationary phase[123,126-129]. There may be also phenotypic variants of regular cells, called persisters, which have reduced cellular activity, are non-growing or dormant, and are tolerant to antimicrobial agents[130-134]. This state of cell growth, which reduces its susceptibility to antimicrobial agents and contributes to relapsing and chronic infections[135], will be discussed later. Also, there is a higher rate of mutation in growing biofilm bacteria, in comparison with free-living bacteria, including mutations in the DNA repair genes[121,136]. Low nutrients, including the lack of some amino acids, and stress responses result in tolerance of *E. coli* biofilms to ofloxacin[121]. The dense population of cells in a biofilm facilitates plasmid transfer, and the frequency of gene transfer is increased in the bacterial population in a biofilm[137]. *In vitro* study of *P. aeruginosa* has shown genetic differences between the planktonic and surface-attached bacteria, which results in differences in biochemical and phenotypic properties, and specific mechanisms to avoid the bactericidal action of antibiotics[138].

FACTORS AFFECTING ANTIMICROBIAL RESISTANCE IN BACTERIAL BIOFILMS

The colonization of natural surfaces or medically implanted devices with biofilm-forming bacteria results in the infection of local and surrounding tissues, which if not treated, may result in systemic infection, require prolonged treatment with antimicrobial agents, and may require the removal of infected devices[6,7,12,13]. The bacteria forming a biofilm could be 10-1000 times more resistant to antimicrobial agents than planktonic cells, even when they are formed by *E. coli*, *P. aeruginosa*, *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, *S. epidermidis*, *S. aureus*, and *Enterococcus faecalis*, which are commensal bacteria[6,139]. Various factors contribute to the recalcitrant nature of these bacteria. Vancomycin used for the treatment of methicillin-resistant *S. aureus* was shown to be effective only against planktonic cells, not biofilm cells[135,140].

The mechanisms of resistance to antimicrobials, such as antibiotic-modifying enzymes and efflux pumps, that have long been established for planktonic bacteria, are only marginally involved in resistance of bacteria in a biofilm[141,142]. The role of exopolysaccharides in restricting antimicrobial penetration, which was originally thought to be the key to biofilm resistance, remains uncertain. Additional factors contributing to antimicrobial resistance in biofilms include specific

genetic determinants, such as the *ndvB* gene, which codes for a glycosyltransferase required for the synthesis of a cyclic-β-(1,3)-glucan, which is found in the periplasmic space of *P. aeruginosa* and is thought to be involved with antibiotic sequestration[143]. Given the dynamics of a biofilm lifestyle with cells at various stages of growth, it is not surprising that antimicrobial resistance of a biofilm is multifactorial.

PENETRATION RESTRICTION

Insufficient exposure of bacteria to antimicrobial agents, because of the limitations of transport of antimicrobial agents to the bacteria in a biofilm, contributes to the lack of antimicrobial effectiveness in eradicating bacteria in the biofilm[144]. The exopolysaccharides, proteins and extracellular materials that form the biofilm matrix may prevent the penetration of antimicrobial agents to various layers of the biofilm where the bacteria are vulnerable[144]. The exopolymer matrix of a biofilm may also restrict penetration of antimicrobial agents by binding to the compounds and preventing their diffusion[6]. Reversible or irreversible binding of antimicrobial agents to biofilm components retards antibiotic transport to cells within the biofilm[145]. Gentamicin was shown to penetrate *E. coli* biofilms but not the biofilm with *P. aeruginosa*, which has negatively charged polysaccharides that can bind to gentamicin[146]. Bacterial species and the age of the biofilm affect the retardation of antimicrobial agents[146]. Also, exopolysaccharides and other components of the matrix may present a barrier preventing certain compounds from entering the biofilm and not others[147].

The charge of the matrix also affects diffusion of some antimicrobial agents, and this diffusion barrier is specifically effective against large molecules[6,148]. Aminoglycosides are positively charged and may bind to the negatively charged exopolysaccharide matrix of a biofilm, restricting access to the live cells in the biofilm[149]. Tseng *et al*[150] showed that in *P. aeruginosa* the penetration of tobramycin is limited by the presence of an extracellular matrix.

Some antimicrobial agents, including fluoroquinolones, readily equilibrate across a biofilm and have been shown to be effective. A *P. aeruginosa* biofilm was shown to prevent the penetration and diffusion of piperacillin[151]. However, a biofilm formed by *S. epidermidis* did not prevent the diffusion of vancomycin and rifampicin across the biofilm, indicating that biofilm resistance to antimicrobial agents is not solely because of lack of penetration[152].

Restricted diffusion also may result in the enzymatic degradation of some antimicrobial agents by enzymes produced by the bacteria in the biofilm. The combination of retarded diffusion and enzymatic degradation of antibiotics has an additive effect in rendering antimicrobial agents ineffective for the treatment of bacteria in a biofilm[131,153]. It appears from these reports that whether or not an EPS can serve as a suitable permeability barrier to antibiotics and disinfectants[145,154] depends upon the antimicrobial agent in question and certainly also on the chemical composition of the EPS that surrounds the microorganisms.

INACTIVATION OF THE ANTIMICROBIAL AGENTS

Inactivation of antimicrobial agents by extracellular enzymes also has been suggested to be a contributing factor in the inefficiency of antimicrobial agents in eradicating the cells in biofilms. Extracellular enzymes, like β-lactamases, have been suggested to be involved in the ineffectiveness of β-lactam antibiotics[153]. However, the extent of their involvement in rendering antibiotics ineffective for clinically important biofilms is not known. Vrany *et al*[155] showed that ciprofloxacin and levofloxacin are transported into the *P. aeruginosa* biofilm. Anderl *et al*[147], using ampicillin and ciprofloxacin in biofilms formed by a strain of *Klebsiella pneumoniae* that produced β-lactamase and its mutant lacking β-lactamase, showed that resistance to these antibiotics is not the result of slow diffusion or antibiotic inactivation, and suggested other mechanisms for the resistance of biofilms. In clinical isolates, recurrent infections by *P. aeruginosa* result from persisters, which develop tolerance to a host of antibiotics under a variety of growth conditions and will be discussed further below[156].

GROWTH RATE AND PRESENCE OF PERSISTERS

All antimicrobial agents are more effective in killing rapidly growing cells; decreased growth rates reduce the efficacy of antimicrobial agent killing[131,132]. Several subpopulations of *P. aeruginosa* found in biofilms have different susceptibilities to antimicrobial agents. During treatment, antimicrobial agents preferentially kill the metabolically active cells in biofilms. However, the less active dormant cells that are covered with various substances within the biofilm layers are protected[148]. Considering the heterogeneous nature of microbial subpopulations in a biofilm, multiple resistance mechanisms may be involved in the protection of the different subpopulations[157]. Treatment with a single antimicrobial agent, while bactericidal for part of the population, is not enough to eradicate the infection. In addition to slow growth, induction of stress response genes also could contribute to resistance of bacteria in biofilms[132]. The physicochemical structure of the biofilm components also may eliminate the biocide from the microbial community. Gilbert *et al*[158] showed that sensitivities of *P. aeruginosa*, *E. coli* and *S. epidermidis* in planktonic cultures to tobramycin and ciprofloxacin increased with increasing rates of growth, but the

slow rate of growth of cells in a biofilm protected the cells from antimicrobial action. However, although both planktonic and biofilm cells of *P. aeruginosa* are resistant to ciprofloxacin at slower growth rates, only the planktonic cells of *P. aeruginosa* become more susceptible to ciprofloxacin when the growth rate increases[159]. Other factors in the biofilm, in addition to the slower rate of growth, must contribute to antimicrobial resistance. Desai *et al*[160] found that *B. cepacia* cells in biofilms were 15 times more resistant to antibiotics than planktonic bacteria, and that the growth phase and mode of growth affect the susceptibility of *B. cepacia* to antimicrobial agents. Factors affecting resistance may differ for different antibiotics[161]. Low nutrients, including lack of some amino acids, and stress responses result in tolerance of biofilms to ofloxacin[121].

The majority of cells in a biofilm are killed within the clinically achievable concentration range of antimicrobial agents; however, after the initial 3-4 log drop in the bacterial number, further addition of antimicrobial agents has no effect on bacterial killing[131]. This indicates that a small fraction of the cells persisting in the biofilm are the source of antimicrobial resistance and account for the failure of antimicrobial agents to eradicate bacteria in the biofilm[135].

It is now thought that the main contributor to increased antimicrobial resistance of biofilms is a subset of cells known as persisters[131,162]. By definition, persisters are "small subpopulations of bacteria that survive lethal concentrations of antibiotics without any specific resistance mechanisms"[162]. These bacteria represent a small percentage (0.1%-10%) of the entire population and appear to be the product of a non-heritable phenotypic switch rather than a result of antimicrobial pressure[130,163].

Biofilm exopolymers shield bacteria from the assault of immune factors. During therapy with antimicrobial agents, most of the planktonic cells shed from a biofilm are eliminated and only a small fraction of persisters remains after the symptoms disappear and treatment is discontinued[131,132]. The persisters eventually start shedding new planktonic cells, resulting in the relapse of symptoms. This dynamic cycle of decrease in planktonic bacteria and bacterial shedding from existing biofilms explains the need for lengthy antibiotic therapy and continuous recurrent infection following termination of the use of antimicrobial agents[131]. Although the persisters are not necessarily resistant to antimicrobial agents, being shielded from the effect of the immune system enables them to survive and initiate recurring infections. The persisters cause recurrent meningitis by *S. pneumoniae* and *Helicobacter pylori,* both of which are shielded from the immune system, and cause relapse of infections following therapy[132]. Persisters in a biofilm can be assayed using antimicrobial agents. If the biofilm restricts penetration of antimicrobial agents across the exopolymers, the bulk of bacteria in the biofilm should survive drugs like aminoglycosides,

which have restricted penetration and diffusion, and be killed by fluoroquinolones, which can diffuse and penetrate into a biofilm[131].

Both *in vitro* and *in vivo* studies of Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria support the theory of persisters in biofilms[37,164-166]. The difficulties in the eradication of persisters in biofilms have been shown for different bacteria and antimicrobial agents[133,135,167,168]. After exposure to a high concentration of ciprofloxacin, a small number of *E. coli* cells insensitive to this drug remain in a biofilm[131,169]. Similarly, the effects of amoxicillin and clindamycin on *Lactobacillus acidophilus*, and those of erythromycin and metronidazole on *Gardnerella vaginalis,* reach a plateau in a biofilm after initial bacterial killing[170].

From cystic fibrosis patients, a high-persister mutant of *P. aeruginosa* has been isolated. Its presence has been speculated to be the main reason for the recalcitrant nature of this disease to antimicrobial therapy[132]. In *E. coli*, the stress response results in the formation of persisters. The stress response activates the overexpression of TisB, which is a membrane-acting dipeptide, and decreases the ATP level and proton motive force in the cell, leading to cell dormancy and persister formation[132]. Persisters also occur in planktonic cells; most of what is known of persisters has been done with planktonic cells[132]. Whether biofilm bacteria produce more persisters than planktonic cells is not known; however, planktonic cells are subject to elimination by the immune system[6,132].

Clearly, the generation of persisters is multifactorial and most likely involves environmental cues and the expression of genes in response to those cues. It is beyond the scope of this review to discuss all of these factors. For an in-depth discussion, the reader is encouraged to peruse the recent review by Lebeaux *et al*[14]. Many factors have been shown to be involved in the generation of persisters, such as nutrient limitations and the induction of the stress response and stringent responses. However, what is known of persisters from planktonic growth conditions does not necessarily explain the occurrence of persisters under biofilm conditions[121]. Because the environmental cues are numerous, the response to such cues involves several molecular mechanisms and pathways that are overlapping and may actually "cross-talk". Given the dynamic community of a biofilm, the generation of subsets of persisters is essentially endless. While, in general, the phenotypic switch that results in the formation of persisters is transient, exposure of these subsets of cells to continuous antibiotic treatments may lead to a greater genetic diversity with time due to mutational changes. In the staphylococci mutability in the biofilm lifestyle is significantly higher than that in the planktonic lifestyle[171].

In addition to persisters and the ability to hyper-mutate, many Gram-positive and Gram-negative bacteria form small-colony variants (SCV)[172]. These include *S. aureus*[173], methicillin-resistant *S. aureus*[174],

S. epidermidis[175], and *P. aeruginosa*[176]. All of these bacteria are also known to be involved in biofilm-associated infections, and they have been the most studied. This is rightfully so, as *P. aeruginosa* is notorious for causing severe chronic infections in patients with cystic fibrosis[177,178]. The staphylococci represent the leading cause of hospital-acquired infections on indwelling medical devices[179,180]. Both *P. aeruginosa* and *S. aureus* also coexist in the lungs of cystic fibrosis patients and in chronic wounds[181,182]. These same bacteria have also been isolated exhibiting the SCV phenotype in clinical samples that include blood, abscesses, skin and soft tissues, bones and joints, and the respiratory tract[172].

Whereas many alterations in metabolic activity can yield small, slow-growing colonies[183], thus far only a limited number of defects have been associated with clinical strains[172]. In clinical isolates of the staphylococci, the primary determinants of SCV are a reduction in electron transport and thymidine biosynthesis[172,184]. These determinants have been linked to defects in menadione, hemin, and thymidine biosynthesis by using staphylococcal laboratory strains and generating mutations within the *men, hem,* and *thy* operons, respectively[172]. However, a recent study examining the whole genomes of five different clinical isolates of *S. aureus* (four were either hospital-acquired or community-associated United States 300 MRSA strains) demonstrated that all five contained a single-nucleotide polymorphism in one of the menadione biosynthesis genes, specifically *menC, menE,* or *menF*[185], thereby identifying the genetic basis for the staphylococcal SCV phenotype.

In addition to exhibiting a small colonial, slow-growing morphology, SCV cells of *S. aureus* produce less pigmentation and exhibit a reduction of hemolytic and coagulase activity as well as other virulence factors. The SCV are slow-growing and tend to have increased resistance to antibiotics, which is strikingly similar to bacteria growing in a biofilm, especially when one considers that the diseases with which SCV and biofilms are most closely associated (endocarditis, pneumonia, soft-tissue infection and osteomyelitis) are persistent, recurrent, and tend to be resistant to most classes of antibiotics[186-188]. The SCVs of *S. epidermidis* and *S. aureus* have an increased ability to form biofilms, which is partly due to increased expression of PIA[189,190]. Similarly, SCVs of two different strains of *S. pneumoniae* were shown to emerge in the initial stages of biofilm formation[191,192]. These SCVs had increased attachment capabilities to solid surfaces and formed mature, three-dimensional[191,192] biofilm structures but had decreased capsules[191,192]. Likewise, in *P. aeruginosa*, both an increase in hydrophobicity[193,194] and EPS production[195,196] have been observed in SCV.

The clinical and laboratory standards institute (CLSI) performance standards for antimicrobial susceptibility testing have recommendations (Fifteenth informational supplement. CSLI/NCCLS document M100-S15.2005)

for measuring the susceptibility of bacteria in a biofilm, quantified as the minimal biofilm eradication concentration (MBEC). After exposure to antibiotics, samples are transferred to fresh medium. The MBEC value is the lowest concentration of an antibiotic that prevents regrowth. The recommended MBEC for an antibiotic is defined as the concentration of antibiotic that causes a > 99.9% drop in cell number.

In a clinical setting, increased production of persister cells in biofilms is one reason for the recurrence of infection following discontinuation of treatment[132,135]. Although the small population of persister planktonic cells will be eliminated by the immune system following antimicrobial treatment, antibiotics are not effective for eliminating the persisters in a biofilm because they are protected by the biofilm matrix. The remaining persisters are involved in regrowth after cessation of antimicrobial treatment[135].

Bacteria with serious defects do not survive but undergo programmed cell death (PCD). It is hypo-thesized[131,197] that persisters may have disabled their PCD to allow survival of a few cells if the antimicrobial agent reaches the whole population. Lewis[131] hypo-thesized that production of persisters by bacteria is a lifestyle for bacterial perseverance. Persisters survive challenge by factors that kill planktonic bacteria; the rate of development of persisters is 10-10000 fold higher than the rate of development of mutants[197]. This process of variation in lifestyle insures cell survival.

OXIDATIVE STRESS

Differences in the expression of phenotypes between planktonic cells and cells in biofilms may also include differences in sensitivity to antimicrobial agents. In a mature biofilm, bacteria have slower growth than those in the planktonic state[4]. Changes in growth rate in the biofilm, which may be accompanied by limitation in nutrients, may affect the components of the bacterial cell envelope. Both growth rate and low nutrients affect antibiotic efficacy and tolerance[121,198-200]. The constituent of proteins, polysaccharides, extracellular enzymes, fatty acids, phospholipids and metal cations in the bacterial cell envelope are affected by low nutrients, which in turn affect the bacterial susceptibility to antimicrobial agents[121,200,201]. By growing in an environment with lower nutrients, the bacteria also avoid oxidative stress, which results from the effect of bactericidal antibiotics, the generation of harmful reactive oxygen species (ROS) and the production of cytotoxic hydroxyl radicals (•HO), which damage cellular macromolecules[202].

The interactions of β-lactams, fluoroquinolones and aminoglycosides with the target cells induces •HO formation in bacteria. It is suggested that the production of •HO depends on the activity of the tricarboxylic acid cycle (TCA)[12]. Drug-target interaction results in the oxidation of NADH that is produced during the TCA

cycle. Conversion of NADH to NAD$^+$, which generates ATP, results in the production of superoxide (O_2^-). The superoxide damages the iron-sulfur cluster in proteins and releases Fe^{2+}. The released Fe^{2+}, in combination with H_2O_2, produces highly reactive •HO, which is damaging to macromolecules. The production of •HO is prevented in the bacteria in biofilms that have low metabolic activities[12]. Roles of oxidative stress and •HO in cell death have mainly been established in planktonic cells. However, Battán *et al*[203] showed that for the induction of ROS production in *Pseudomonas* in biofilms, a higher concentration of piperacillin and ceftazidime is required than for planktonic cells. Also, although ciprofloxacin induces ROS production in *P. aeruginosa* biofilms, in the areas of biofilms with low metabolic activities, •HO production is prevented[202]. A study of the effect of the aminoglycoside tobramycin on a *Burkholderia cenocepacia* biofilm showed that although the production of ROS increased in treated cells, 0.1% of the cells survived the treatment[204]. The genes for the glyoxylate cycle, which allows the cells to utilize simple carbon compounds as carbon sources rather than glucose, were upregulated in the surviving cells in comparison with the untreated cells of a biofilm[204]. However, the genes for the TCA cycle and electron transport were downregulated, avoiding the production of reactive oxygen intermediates. Similarly, low number of persisting cells were produced in catalase mutants[204]. Khakimova *et al*[205] showed that the stress response in *P. aeruginosa* regulates catalase, which is important in protecting biofilm bacteria from antibiotic-mediated killing.

Biofilm bacteria are also exposed to ROS from activated polymorphonuclear leukocytes. If there is a deficiency in the antioxidant system, the production of ROS increases in a biofilm[206]. The increase in oxidative burden and decrease in antioxidant defense results in oxidative stress in biofilms[6,178]. The oxidative stress affects the bacterial DNA break repair mechanism and is a contributing factor in the increased mutability of bacteria. This may lead to the diversity and adaptability of a biofilm community[127]. Boles *et al*[127] showed that in *P. aeruginosa*, endogenous oxidative stress in biofilms promotes antimicrobial resistance and that the addition of antioxidants reduces the occurrence of diversity.

EFFLUX PUMP

Induction of the biofilm phenotype is another suggested reason for the resistance of bacteria in biofilms to antimicrobial agents. It is hypothesized that a sub-population of bacteria in the biofilm expresses an active mechanism to avoid the bactericidal effect of antimicrobial agents[157,207,208]. The multidrug-resistant efflux pump MexAB-OprM may be involved in the resistance of *P. aeruginosa* to ofloxacin, and biofilms lacking this pump are more susceptible to ofloxacin[103,161], but resistance of *P. aeruginosa* to ciprofloxacin is not attributed to this

pump[161]. Another efflux pump reported in *P. aeruginosa* is PA1874-1877, which confers resistance to ciprofloxacin, gentamicin and tobramycin[209]. Other efflux pumps in biofilms that contribute to drug resistance are *MacABCsm*, an ABC-type tripartite efflux pump in *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia,* which also is involved in oxidative stress response and biofilm formation[210].

In *E. coli*, acrAB (AG100-B) protects biofilms from 0.004 mg/L, but not 0.1 mg/L, of ciprofloxacin, indicating that biofilm resistance to ciprofloxacin in *E. coli* is not the result of multiple antibiotic resistance operons (*mar*) and the multidrug efflux pump *acrAB*[10]. In *E. coli*, a putative multidrug resistance pump, yhcQ, may be responsible for resistance to penicillin[211]. In *E. coli*, the *emrD*, *emrE*, *emrK*, *acrD*, *acre* and *mtd* genes, which encode the proton motive force multidrug efflux pump, also contribute to the formation of biofilms[212]. In *Salmonella enterica*, serovar Typhimurium there is a link between the multidrug resistance efflux pump and biofilm formation[213]. In the mutants that lack a functional multidrug resistance efflux pump AcrB and TolC the transcription of proteinacous materials of amyloid class (curli) biosynthesis is repressed[213].

Inactivation of the NfxB negative regulator of the MexAB-OprM efflux pump affects the resistance mechanism of *P. aeruginosa* in a biofilm[214].

OTHER FACTORS

In vitro study of *P. aeruginosa*, *E. coli* and *S. epidermidis* has shown genetically based differences between planktonic and surface-attached bacteria, which results in differences in biochemical and phenotypic properties. The bacteria in a biofilm use a specific mechanism to avoid the bactericidal action of antibiotics[138,215]. Mah *et al*[138] detected a periplasmic glucan produced from the *ndvB* locus in the biofilm-forming, antimicrobial-resistant strains that interacted with tobramycin. They suggested that the interaction of the glucose polymer with tobramycin may prevent the antibiotic from reacting with the target.

A biofilm-specific *BrlR* gene product, contributes to a high level of drug tolerance in *P. aeruginosa*[216]. BrlR has similarity to the MerR family of transcription regulators, which function as multidrug transporter activators. MerR transcription regulators activate the expression of multidrug transporters in *B. subtilis* and *Streptomyces lividans*[216]. In *P. aeruginosa*, BrlR activates the multidrug efflux pump operons *mexAB-oprM* and *mexEF-oprN*, which are involved in resistance to a variety of antibiotics[216].

Other genes are also implicated in conferring resistance to *P. aeruginosa* in biofilms. Gupta *et al*[217] found that in *P. aeruginosa*, biofilm development and tolerance to antimicrobial agents are linked. They found a two-component hybrid, SagS that regulates the transition attachment of *P. aeruginosa* during biofilm development and also regulates the tolerance to

antimicrobials. The inactivation of SagS resulted in an increase in susceptibility of biofilm cells to bactericidal compounds, more than that of the planktonic cells, and also contributed indirectly to *BrlR* activation. *SagS* functions upstream of *BrlR*, so its inactivation correlates with reduction of the level of BrlR in biofilms[217]. The activities of the QS system also appear to affect antimicrobial resistance in some bacteria. Unlike their wild types, QS deficient mutants of *P. aeruginosa* are susceptible to kanamycin[218]. By *in vitro* quantitation of biofilm formation in wild type and three QS deficient mutants of *P. aeruginosa*, they showed that the quorum sensing Las system plays an important role, not only in biofilm formation thickness, but also in the production of *ampC* lactamase[219]. A further complication of biofilm infections is the potential for horizontal gene transfer[220]. Both conjugation and plasmid transformation have been shown to occur at a higher frequency in *E. coli in vitro* biofilms[221-223]. Clinically speaking the serious implications of such transfer are the generation of either more virulent bacterial strains and/or bacterial strains having acquired antibiotic resistance determinants. In addition, biofilms and horizontal gene transfer may very well promote and maintain an environment for bacterial heterogeneity. In addition, biofilm may also provide a communal environment where transformation of mobile genetic elements is more conducive not only between cells of the same species but between cells of different species, thus providing a mechanism of evolutionary change[220].

CONCLUSION

Clinically important microbial biofilms are formed on host tissues and medically-implanted devices, resulting in a variety of hard-to-treat infections. Biofilm formation is a major health problem, as microorganisms within biofilms are difficult to eradicate with conventional therapeutic treatments. Bacteria in biofilms persist under less than the optimal conditions that would be required for growth and survival of planktonic bacteria. The sessile bacteria in a biofilm are embedded in a self-produced extracellular matrix that shields them from the host's immune system. The population of bacteria in a biofilm exhibits a heterogeneous physiology that enables the sessile community to survive environmental stresses and allows them to escape the bactericidal activities of antimicrobial agents. After termination of treatment with antimicrobial agents, biofilms may shed bacteria and cause recurrent infections. A variety of mechanisms have been investigated in the last several decades to elucidate the reason for the recalcitrant nature of bacterial biofilms; in this literature review, we have attempted to highlight some of these mechanisms. Various studies have implicated as possible causes the inaccessibility of antibiotics to bacteria because of the protective matrix, the production of antimicrobial-degrading enzymes and efflux pumps, and the lack

of oxidative stress. Some of these mechanisms are known to be involved in resistance in planktonic cells. Other studies have shown hypermutability of the cells, as well as the existence of persisters and small colony variants that are characteristic of biofilms of several clinically important bacteria, as contributors to the recalcitrant nature of biofilms to high concentrations of antimicrobials. The reason for the recalcitrance appears to be multifactorial, which challenges the development of strategies for the prevention and treatment of biofilm related diseases.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

REFERENCES

1   **Costerton JW**. Introduction to biofilm. *Int J Antimicrob Agents* 1999; **11**: 217-21; discussion 237-9 [PMID: 10394973]
2   **Fux CA**, Stoodley P, Hall-Stoodley L, Costerton JW. Bacterial biofilms: a diagnostic and therapeutic challenge. *Expert Rev Anti Infect Ther* 2003; **1**: 667-683 [PMID: 15482163]
3   **Potera C**. Forging a link between biofilms and disease. *Science* 1999; **283**: 1837, 1839 [PMID: 10206887]
4   **Donlan RM**. Biofilms: microbial life on surfaces. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2002; **8**: 881-890 [PMID: 12194761 DOI: 10.3201/eid0809.020063]
5   **Semenyuk EG**, Laning ML, Foley J, Johnston PF, Knight KL, Gerding DN, Driks A. Spore formation and toxin production in Clostridium difficile biofilms. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e87757 [PMID: 24498186]
6   **Høiby N**, Bjarnsholt T, Givskov M, Molin S, Ciofu O. Antibiotic resistance of bacterial biofilms. *Int J Antimicrob Agents* 2010; **35**: 322-332 [PMID: 20149602 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijantimicag.2009.12.011]
7   **Hall-Stoodley L**, Costerton JW, Stoodley P. Bacterial biofilms: from the natural environment to infectious diseases. *Nat Rev Microbiol* 2004; **2**: 95-108 [PMID: 15040259 DOI: 10.1038/nrmicro821]
8   **Costerton W**, Veeh R, Shirtliff M, Pasmore M, Post C, Ehrlich G. The application of biofilm science to the study and control of chronic bacterial infections. *J Clin Invest* 2003; **112**: 1466-1477 [PMID: 14617746 DOI: 10.1172/JCI20365]
9   **Bjarnsholt T**, Givskov M. Quorum-sensing blockade as a strategy for enhancing host defences against bacterial pathogens. *Philos Trans R Soc Lond B Biol Sci* 2007; **362**: 1213-1222 [PMID: 17360273 DOI: 10.1098/rstb.2007.2046]
10 **Maira-Litrán T**, Allison DG, Gilbert P. Expression of the multiple antibiotic resistance operon (mar) during growth of Escherichia coli as a biofilm. *J Appl Microbiol* 2000; **88**: 243-247 [PMID: 10735992]
11 **Achermann Y**, Goldstein EJ, Coenye T, Shirtliff ME. Propionibacterium acnes: from commensal to opportunistic biofilm-associated implant pathogen. *Clin Microbiol Rev* 2014; **27**: 419-440 [PMID: 24982315 DOI: 10.1128/CMR.00092-13]
12 **Van Acker H**, Van Dijck P, Coenye T. Molecular mechanisms of antimicrobial tolerance and resistance in bacterial and fungal biofilms. *Trends Microbiol* 2014; **22**: 326-333 [PMID: 24598086 DOI: 10.1016/j.tim.2014.02.001]
13 **Jolivet-Gougeon A**, Bonnaure-Mallet M. Biofilms as a mechanism of bacterial resistance. *Drug Discov Today Technol* 2014; **11**: 49-56 [PMID: 24847653 DOI: 10.1016/j.ddtec.2014.02.003]

14   **Lebeaux D**, Ghigo JM, Beloin C. Biofilm-related infections: bridging the gap between clinical management and fundamental aspects of recalcitrance toward antibiotics. *Microbiol Mol Biol Rev* 2014; **78**: 510-543 [PMID: 25184564 DOI: 10.1128/MMBR.00013-14]

15   **Donlan RM**. Biofilms and device-associated infections. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2001; **7**: 277-281 [PMID: 11294723 DOI: 10.3201/eid0702.700277]

16   **Burmølle M**, Thomsen TR, Fazli M, Dige I, Christensen L, Homøe P, Tvede M, Nyvad B, Tolker-Nielsen T, Givskov M, Moser C, Kirketerp-Møller K, Johansen HK, Høiby N, Jensen PØ, Sørensen SJ, Bjarnsholt T. Biofilms in chronic infections - a matter of opportunity - monospecies biofilms in multispecies infections. *FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol* 2010; **59**: 324-336 [PMID: 20602635 DOI: 10.1111/j.1574-695X.2010.00714.x]

17   **Montanaro L**, Speziale P, Campoccia D, Ravaioli S, Cangini I, Pietrocola G, Giannini S, Arciola CR. Scenery of Staphylococcus implant infections in orthopedics. *Future Microbiol* 2011; **6**: 1329-1349 [PMID: 22082292 DOI: 10.2217/fmb.11.117]

18   **Zimmerli W**, Trampuz A, Ochsner PE. Prosthetic-joint infections. *N Engl J Med* 2004; **351**: 1645-1654 [PMID: 15483283 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra040181]

19   **Lora-Tamayo J**, Murillo O, Iribarren JA, Soriano A, Sánchez-Somolinos M, Baraia-Etxaburu JM, Rico A, Palomino J, Rodríguez-Pardo D, Horcajada JP, Benito N, Bahamonde A, Granados A, del Toro MD, Cobo J, Riera M, Ramos A, Jover-Sáenz A, Ariza J. A large multicenter study of methicillin-susceptible and methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus prosthetic joint infections managed with implant retention. *Clin Infect Dis* 2013; **56**: 182-194 [PMID: 22942204 DOI: 10.1093/cid/cis746]

20   **Habash M**, Reid G. Microbial biofilms: their development and significance for medical device-related infections. *J Clin Pharmacol* 1999; **39**: 887-898 [PMID: 10471979]

21   **von Eiff C**, Jansen B, Kohnen W, Becker K. Infections associated with medical devices: pathogenesis, management and prophylaxis. *Drugs* 2005; **65**: 179-214 [PMID: 15631541]

22   **Libby ED**, Leung JW. Prevention of biliary stent clogging: a clinical review. *Am J Gastroenterol* 1996; **91**: 1301-1308 [PMID: 8677983]

23   **Liu J**, Ling JQ, Zhang K, Wu CD. Physiological properties of Streptococcus mutans UA159 biofilm-detached cells. *FEMS Microbiol Lett* 2013; **340**: 11-18 [PMID: 23278289 DOI: 10.1111/1574-6968.12066]

24   **Chatterjee S**, Maiti P, Dey R, Kundu A, Dey R. Biofilms on indwelling urologic devices: microbes and antimicrobial management prospect. *Ann Med Health Sci Res* 2014; **4**: 100-104 [PMID: 24669340 DOI: 10.4103/2141-9248.126612]

25   **Darouiche RO**. Treatment of infections associated with surgical implants. *N Engl J Med* 2004; **350**: 1422-1429 [PMID: 15070792 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra035415]

26   **Haenle M**, Skripitz C, Mittelmeier W, Skripitz R. [Economic impact of infected total hip arthroplasty in the German diagnosis-related groups system]. *Orthopade* 2012; **41**: 467-476 [PMID: 22653328 DOI: 10.1007/s00132-012-1939-2]

27   **Arciola CR**, Campoccia D, Speziale P, Montanaro L, Costerton JW. Biofilm formation in Staphylococcus implant infections. A review of molecular mechanisms and implications for biofilm-resistant materials. *Biomaterials* 2012; **33**: 5967-5982 [PMID: 22695065 DOI: 10.1016/j.biomaterials.2012.05.031]

28   **McCann MT**, Gilmore BF, Gorman SP. Staphylococcus epidermidis device-related infections: pathogenesis and clinical management. *J Pharm Pharmacol* 2008; **60**: 1551-1571 [PMID: 19000360 DOI: 10.1211/jpp/60.12.0001]

29   **Kiedrowski MR**, Horswill AR. New approaches for treating staphylococcal biofilm infections. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 2011; **1241**: 104-121 [PMID: 22191529 DOI: 10.1111/j.1749-6632.2011.06281.x]

30   **Joh D**, Wann ER, Kreikemeyer B, Speziale P, Höök M. Role of fibronectin-binding MSCRAMMs in bacterial adherence and entry into mammalian cells. *Matrix Biol* 1999; **18**: 211-223 [PMID: 10429941]

31   **Fowler VG**, Sakoulas G, McIntyre LM, Meka VG, Arbeit RD, Cabell CH, Stryjewski ME, Eliopoulos GM, Reller LB, Corey GR, Jones T, Lucindo N, Yeaman MR, Bayer AS. Persistent bacteremia due to methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus infection is associated with agr dysfunction and low-level in vitro resistance to thrombin-induced platelet microbicidal protein. *J Infect Dis* 2004; **190**: 1140-1149 [PMID: 15319865 DOI: 10.1086/423145]

32   **Bordi C**, de Bentzmann S. Hacking into bacterial biofilms: a new therapeutic challenge. *Ann Intensive Care* 2011; **1**: 19 [PMID: 21906350 DOI: 10.1186/2110-5820-1-19]

33   **Holling N**, Lednor D, Tsang S, Bissell A, Campbell L, Nzakizwanayo J, Dedi C, Hawthorne JA, Hanlon G, Ogilvie LA, Salvage JP, Patel BA, Barnes LM, Jones BV. Elucidating the genetic basis of crystalline biofilm formation in Proteus mirabilis. *Infect Immun* 2014; **82**: 1616-1626 [PMID: 24470471 DOI: 10.1128/IAI.01652-13]

34   **Stickler DJ**, Evans A, Morris N, Hughes G. Strategies for the control of catheter encrustation. *Int J Antimicrob Agents* 2002; **19**: 499-506 [PMID: 12135840]

35   **García A**, Salas-Jara MJ, Herrera C, González C. Biofilm and Helicobacter pylori: from environment to human host. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 5632-5638 [PMID: 24914322 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i19.5632]

36   **Leung JW**, Liu Y, Chan RC, Tang Y, Mina Y, Cheng AF, Silva J. Early attachment of anaerobic bacteria may play an important role in biliary stent blockage. *Gastrointest Endosc* 2000; **52**: 725-729 [PMID: 11115903]

37   **Conlon BP**, Nakayasu ES, Fleck LE, LaFleur MD, Isabella VM, Coleman K, Leonard SN, Smith RD, Adkins JN, Lewis K. Activated ClpP kills persisters and eradicates a chronic biofilm infection. *Nature* 2013; **503**: 365-370 [PMID: 24226776 DOI: 10.1038/nature12790]

38   **Joo HS**, Otto M. Molecular basis of in vivo biofilm formation by bacterial pathogens. *Chem Biol* 2012; **19**: 1503-1513 [PMID: 23261595 DOI: 10.1016/j.chembiol.2012.10.022]

39   **Marshall KC**. Microbial adhesion in biotechnological processes. *Curr Opin Biotechnol* 1994; **5**: 296-301 [PMID: 7765346]

40   **Déziel E**, Comeau Y, Villemur R. Initiation of biofilm formation by Pseudomonas aeruginosa 57RP correlates with emergence of hyperpiliated and highly adherent phenotypic variants deficient in swimming, swarming, and twitching motilities. *J Bacteriol* 2001; **183**: 1195-1204 [PMID: 11157931 DOI: 10.1128/JB.183.4.1195-1204.2001]

41   **Vallet I**, Olson JW, Lory S, Lazdunski A, Filloux A. The chaperone/usher pathways of Pseudomonas aeruginosa: identification of fimbrial gene clusters (cup) and their involvement in biofilm formation. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2001; **98**: 6911-6916 [PMID: 11381121 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.111551898]

42   **Demuyser L**, Jabra-Rizk MA, Van Dijck P. Microbial cell surface proteins and secreted metabolites involved in multispecies biofilms. *Pathog Dis* 2014; **70**: 219-230 [PMID: 24376219 DOI: 10.1111/2049-632X.12123]

43   **Barnhart MM**, Chapman MR. Curli biogenesis and function. *Annu Rev Microbiol* 2006; **60**: 131-147 [PMID: 16704339 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.micro.60.080805.142106]

44   **Clarke SR**, Foster SJ. Surface adhesins of Staphylococcus aureus. *Adv Microb Physiol* 2006; **51**: 187-224 [PMID: 17010697]

45   **Foster TJ**, Höök M. Surface protein adhesins of Staphylococcus aureus. *Trends Microbiol* 1998; **6**: 484-488 [PMID: 10036727]

46   **Atshan SS**, Shamsudin MN, Karunanidhi A, van Belkum A, Lung LT, Sekawi Z, Nathan JJ, Ling KH, Seng JS, Ali AM, Abduljaleel SA, Hamat RA. Quantitative PCR analysis of genes expressed during biofilm development of methicillin resistant Staphylococcus aureus (MRSA). *Infect Genet Evol* 2013; **18**: 106-112 [PMID: 23669446 DOI: 10.1016/j.meegid.2013.05.002]

47   **Cardile AP**, Sanchez CJ, Samberg ME, Romano DR, Hardy SK, Wenke JC, Murray CK, Akers KS. Human plasma enhances the expression of Staphylococcal microbial surface components recognizing adhesive matrix molecules promoting biofilm formation and increases antimicrobial tolerance In Vitro. *BMC Res Notes* 2014; **7**: 457 [PMID: 25034276 DOI: 10.1186/1756-0500-7-457]

48   **McElroy MC**, Cain DJ, Tyrrell C, Foster TJ, Haslett C. Increased

virulence of a fibronectin-binding protein mutant of Staphylococcus aureus in a rat model of pneumonia. *Infect Immun* 2002; **70**: 3865-3873 [PMID: 12065530]

49 **Maxe I**, Rydén C, Wadström T, Rubin K. Specific attachment of Staphylococcus aureus to immobilized fibronectin. *Infect Immun* 1986; **54**: 695-704 [PMID: 3781623]

50 **Josefsson E**, Hartford O, O'Brien L, Patti JM, Foster T. Protection against experimental Staphylococcus aureus arthritis by vaccination with clumping factor A, a novel virulence determinant. *J Infect Dis* 2001; **184**: 1572-1580 [PMID: 11740733 DOI: 10.1086/324430]

51 **Pei L**, Palma M, Nilsson M, Guss B, Flock JI. Functional studies of a fibrinogen binding protein from Staphylococcus epidermidis. *Infect Immun* 1999; **67**: 4525-4530 [PMID: 10456895]

52 **Geoghegan JA**, Corrigan RM, Gruszka DT, Speziale P, O'Gara JP, Potts JR, Foster TJ. Role of surface protein SasG in biofilm formation by Staphylococcus aureus. *J Bacteriol* 2010; **192**: 5663-5673 [PMID: 20817770 DOI: 10.1128/JB.00628-10]

53 **Christner M**, Franke GC, Schommer NN, Wendt U, Wegert K, Pehle P, Kroll G, Schulze C, Buck F, Mack D, Aepfelbacher M, Rohde H. The giant extracellular matrix-binding protein of Staphylococcus epidermidis mediates biofilm accumulation and attachment to fibronectin. *Mol Microbiol* 2010; **75**: 187-207 [PMID: 19943904 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2958.2009.06981.x]

54 **Merino N**, Toledo-Arana A, Vergara-Irigaray M, Valle J, Solano C, Calvo E, Lopez JA, Foster TJ, Penadés JR, Lasa I. Protein A-mediated multicellular behavior in Staphylococcus aureus. *J Bacteriol* 2009; **191**: 832-843 [PMID: 19047354 DOI: 10.1128/JB.01222-08]

55 **Hussain M**, Herrmann M, von Eiff C, Perdreau-Remington F, Peters G. A 140-kilodalton extracellular protein is essential for the accumulation of Staphylococcus epidermidis strains on surfaces. *Infect Immun* 1997; **65**: 519-524 [PMID: 9009307]

56 **Conrady DG**, Brescia CC, Horii K, Weiss AA, Hassett DJ, Herr AB. A zinc-dependent adhesion module is responsible for intercellular adhesion in staphylococcal biofilms. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2008; **105**: 19456-19461 [PMID: 19047636 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0807717105]

57 **Rohde H**, Burdelski C, Bartscht K, Hussain M, Buck F, Horstkotte MA, Knobloch JK, Heilmann C, Herrmann M, Mack D. Induction of Staphylococcus epidermidis biofilm formation via proteolytic processing of the accumulation-associated protein by staphylococcal and host proteases. *Mol Microbiol* 2005; **55**: 1883-1895 [PMID: 15752207 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2958.2005.04515.x]

58 **Rohde H**, Burandt EC, Siemssen N, Frommelt L, Burdelski C, Wurster S, Scherpe S, Davies AP, Harris LG, Horstkotte MA, Knobloch JK, Ragunath C, Kaplan JB, Mack D. Polysaccharide intercellular adhesin or protein factors in biofilm accumulation of Staphylococcus epidermidis and Staphylococcus aureus isolated from prosthetic hip and knee joint infections. *Biomaterials* 2007; **28**: 1711-1720 [PMID: 17187854 DOI: 10.1016/j.biomaterials.2006.11.046]

59 **Schwartz K**, Syed AK, Stephenson RE, Rickard AH, Boles BR. Functional amyloids composed of phenol soluble modulins stabilize Staphylococcus aureus biofilms. *PLoS Pathog* 2012; **8**: e1002744 [PMID: 22685403]

60 **Rice KC**, Mann EE, Endres JL, Weiss EC, Cassat JE, Smeltzer MS, Bayles KW. The cidA murein hydrolase regulator contributes to DNA release and biofilm development in Staphylococcus aureus. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2007; **104**: 8113-8118 [PMID: 17452642 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0610226104]

61 **Gristina AG**, Hobgood CD, Webb LX, Myrvik QN. Adhesive colonization of biomaterials and antibiotic resistance. *Biomaterials* 1987; **8**: 423-426 [PMID: 3427140]

62 **Cramton SE**, Gerke C, Schnell NF, Nichols WW, Götz F. The intercellular adhesion (ica) locus is present in Staphylococcus aureus and is required for biofilm formation. *Infect Immun* 1999; **67**: 5427-5433 [PMID: 10496925]

63 **Mack D**, Haeder M, Siemssen N, Laufs R. Association of biofilm production of coagulase-negative staphylococci with expression of a specific polysaccharide intercellular adhesin. *J Infect Dis* 1996;

174: 881-884 [PMID: 8843236]

64 **Maira-Litrán T**, Kropec A, Abeygunawardana C, Joyce J, Mark G, Goldmann DA, Pier GB. Immunochemical properties of the staphylococcal poly-N-acetylglucosamine surface polysaccharide. *Infect Immun* 2002; **70**: 4433-4440 [PMID: 12117954]

65 **Izano EA**, Amarante MA, Kher WB, Kaplan JB. Differential roles of poly-N-acetylglucosamine surface polysaccharide and extracellular DNA in Staphylococcus aureus and Staphylococcus epidermidis biofilms. *Appl Environ Microbiol* 2008; **74**: 470-476 [PMID: 18039822 DOI: 10.1128/AEM.02073-07]

66 **O'Neill E**, Pozzi C, Houston P, Smyth D, Humphreys H, Robinson DA, O'Gara JP. Association between methicillin susceptibility and biofilm regulation in Staphylococcus aureus isolates from device-related infections. *J Clin Microbiol* 2007; **45**: 1379-1388 [PMID: 17329452 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.02280-06]

67 **Pozzi C**, Waters EM, Rudkin JK, Schaeffer CR, Lohan AJ, Tong P, Loftus BJ, Pier GB, Fey PD, Massey RC, O'Gara JP. Methicillin resistance alters the biofilm phenotype and attenuates virulence in Staphylococcus aureus device-associated infections. *PLoS Pathog* 2012; **8**: e1002626 [PMID: 22496652 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1002626]

68 **Renelli M**, Matias V, Lo RY, Beveridge TJ. DNA-containing membrane vesicles of Pseudomonas aeruginosa PAO1 and their genetic transformation potential. *Microbiology* 2004; **150**: 2161-2169 [PMID: 15256559 DOI: 10.1099/mic.0.26841-0]

69 **Manning AJ**, Kuehn MJ. Functional advantages conferred by extracellular prokaryotic membrane vesicles. *J Mol Microbiol Biotechnol* 2013; **23**: 131-141 [PMID: 23615201 DOI: 10.1159/000346548]

70 **Webb JS**, Lau M, Kjelleberg S. Bacteriophage and phenotypic variation in Pseudomonas aeruginosa biofilm development. *J Bacteriol* 2004; **186**: 8066-8073 [PMID: 15547279 DOI: 10.1128/JB.186.23.8066-8073.2004]

71 **Whitchurch CB**, Tolker-Nielsen T, Ragas PC, Mattick JS. Extracellular DNA required for bacterial biofilm formation. *Science* 2002; **295**: 1487 [PMID: 11859186 DOI: 10.1126/science.295.5559.1487]

72 **Gross M**, Cramton SE, Götz F, Peschel A. Key role of teichoic acid net charge in Staphylococcus aureus colonization of artificial surfaces. *Infect Immun* 2001; **69**: 3423-3426 [PMID: 11292767 DOI: 10.1128/IAI.69.5.3423-3426.2001]

73 **Sadovskaya I**, Vinogradov E, Flahaut S, Kogan G, Jabbouri S. Extracellular carbohydrate-containing polymers of a model biofilm-producing strain, Staphylococcus epidermidis RP62A. *Infect Immun* 2005; **73**: 3007-3017 [PMID: 15845508 DOI: 10.1128/IAI.73.5.3007-3017.2005]

74 **Billings N**, Millan M, Caldara M, Rusconi R, Tarasova Y, Stocker R, Ribbeck K. The extracellular matrix Component Psl provides fast-acting antibiotic defense in Pseudomonas aeruginosa biofilms. *PLoS Pathog* 2013; **9**: e1003526 [PMID: 23950711]

75 **Ghafoor A**, Hay ID, Rehm BH. Role of exopolysaccharides in Pseudomonas aeruginosa biofilm formation and architecture. *Appl Environ Microbiol* 2011; **77**: 5238-5246 [PMID: 21666010 DOI: 10.1128/AEM.00637-11]

76 **Colvin KM**, Irie Y, Tart CS, Urbano R, Whitney JC, Ryder C, Howell PL, Wozniak DJ, Parsek MR. The Pel and Psl polysaccharides provide Pseudomonas aeruginosa structural redundancy within the biofilm matrix. *Environ Microbiol* 2012; **14**: 1913-1928 [PMID: 22176658 DOI: 10.1111/j.1462-2920.2011.02657.x]

77 **Franklin MJ**, Douthit SA, McClure MA. Evidence that the algI/algJ gene cassette, required for O acetylation of Pseudomonas aeruginosa alginate, evolved by lateral gene transfer. *J Bacteriol* 2004; **186**: 4759-4773 [PMID: 15231808]

78 **Friedman L**, Kolter R. Two genetic loci produce distinct carbohydrate-rich structural components of the Pseudomonas aeruginosa biofilm matrix. *J Bacteriol* 2004; **186**: 4457-4465 [PMID: 15231777 DOI: 10.1128/JB.186.14.4457-4465.2004]

79 **Evans LR**, Linker A. Production and characterization of the slime polysaccharide of Pseudomonas aeruginosa. *J Bacteriol* 1973; **116**: 915-924 [PMID: 4200860]

80 **Govan JR**, Deretic V. Microbial pathogenesis in cystic fibrosis:

mucoid Pseudomonas aeruginosa and Burkholderia cepacia. *Microbiol Rev* 1996; **60**: 539-574 [PMID: 8840786]

81 **Hoiby N**. Pseudomonas aeruginosa infection in cystic fibrosis. Relationship between mucoid strains of Pseudomonas aeruginosa and the humoral immune response. *Acta Pathol Microbiol Scand B Microbiol Immunol* 1974; **82**: 551-558 [PMID: 4213330]

82 **Goldberg JB**, Coyne MJ, Neely AN, Holder IA. Avirulence of a Pseudomonas aeruginosa algC mutant in a burned-mouse model of infection. *Infect Immun* 1995; **63**: 4166-4169 [PMID: 7558335]

83 **Lawrence JR**, Korber DR, Hoyle BD, Costerton JW, Caldwell DE. Optical sectioning of microbial biofilms. *J Bacteriol* 1991; **173**: 6558-6567 [PMID: 1917879]

84 **Sauer K**, Camper AK, Ehrlich GD, Costerton JW, Davies DG. Pseudomonas aeruginosa displays multiple phenotypes during development as a biofilm. *J Bacteriol* 2002; **184**: 1140-1154 [PMID: 11807075]

85 **Klausen M**, Heydorn A, Ragas P, Lambertsen L, Aaes-Jørgensen A, Molin S, Tolker-Nielsen T. Biofilm formation by Pseudomonas aeruginosa wild type, flagella and type IV pili mutants. *Mol Microbiol* 2003; **48**: 1511-1524 [PMID: 12791135]

86 **Singh PK**, Schaefer AL, Parsek MR, Moninger TO, Welsh MJ, Greenberg EP. Quorum-sensing signals indicate that cystic fibrosis lungs are infected with bacterial biofilms. *Nature* 2000; **407**: 762-764 [PMID: 11048725 DOI: 10.1038/35037627]

87 **Bjarnsholt T**, van Gennip M, Jakobsen TH, Christensen LD, Jensen PØ, Givskov M. In vitro screens for quorum sensing inhibitors and in vivo confirmation of their effect. *Nat Protoc* 2010; **5**: 282-293 [PMID: 20134428 DOI: 10.1038/nprot.2009.205]

88 **Kiran MD**, Giacometti A, Cirioni O, Balaban N. Suppression of biofilm related, device-associated infections by staphylococcal quorum sensing inhibitors. *Int J Artif Organs* 2008; **31**: 761-770 [PMID: 18924087]

89 **Köhler T**, Dumas JL, Van Delden C. Ribosome protection prevents azithromycin-mediated quorum-sensing modulation and stationary-phase killing of Pseudomonas aeruginosa. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2007; **51**: 4243-4248 [PMID: 17876004]

90 **Novick RP**. Autoinduction and signal transduction in the regulation of staphylococcal virulence. *Mol Microbiol* 2003; **48**: 1429-1449 [PMID: 12791129]

91 **Novick RP**, Muir TW. Virulence gene regulation by peptides in staphylococci and other Gram-positive bacteria. *Curr Opin Microbiol* 1999; **2**: 40-45 [PMID: 10047551]

92 **Boles BR**, Horswill AR. Agr-mediated dispersal of Staphylococcus aureus biofilms. *PLoS Pathog* 2008; **4**: e1000052 [PMID: 18437240 DOI: 10.1371/journal.ppat.1000052]

93 **Kong KF**, Vuong C, Otto M. Staphylococcus quorum sensing in biofilm formation and infection. *Int J Med Microbiol* 2006; **296**: 133-139 [PMID: 16487744 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijmm.2006.01.042]

94 **Yarwood JM**, Bartels DJ, Volper EM, Greenberg EP. Quorum sensing in Staphylococcus aureus biofilms. *J Bacteriol* 2004; **186**: 1838-1850 [PMID: 14996815]

95 **Ji G**, Beavis RC, Novick RP. Cell density control of staphylococcal virulence mediated by an octapeptide pheromone. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1995; **92**: 12055-12059 [PMID: 8618843]

96 **Beenken KE**, Blevins JS, Smeltzer MS. Mutation of sarA in Staphylococcus aureus limits biofilm formation. *Infect Immun* 2003; **71**: 4206-4211 [PMID: 12819120]

97 **Mrak LN**, Zielinska AK, Beenken KE, Mrak IN, Atwood DN, Griffin LM, Lee CY, Smeltzer MS. saeRS and sarA act synergistically to repress protease production and promote biofilm formation in Staphylococcus aureus. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e38453 [PMID: 22685571 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0038453]

98 **Du Y**, Li T, Wan Y, Long Q, Liao P. Signal molecule-dependent quorum-sensing and quorum-quenching enzymes in bacteria. *Crit Rev Eukaryot Gene Expr* 2014; **24**: 117-132 [PMID: 24940766]

99 **Pearson JP**, Passador L, Iglewski BH, Greenberg EP. A second N-acylhomoserine lactone signal produced by Pseudomonas aeruginosa. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1995; **92**: 1490-1494 [PMID: 7878006]

100 **Pesci EC**, Pearson JP, Seed PC, Iglewski BH. Regulation of las

and rhl quorum sensing in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. *J Bacteriol* 1997; **179**: 3127-3132 [PMID: 9150205]

101 **Juhas M**, Eberl L, Tümmler B. Quorum sensing: the power of cooperation in the world of Pseudomonas. *Environ Microbiol* 2005; **7**: 459-471 [PMID: 15816912 DOI: 10.1111/j.1462-2920.2005.00769.x]

102 **Latifi A**, Foglino M, Tanaka K, Williams P, Lazdunski A. A hierarchical quorum-sensing cascade in Pseudomonas aeruginosa links the transcriptional activators LasR and RhIR (VsmR) to expression of the stationary-phase sigma factor RpoS. *Mol Microbiol* 1996; **21**: 1137-1146 [PMID: 8898383]

103 **De Kievit TR**, Gillis R, Marx S, Brown C, Iglewski BH. Quorum-sensing genes in Pseudomonas aeruginosa biofilms: their role and expression patterns. *Appl Environ Microbiol* 2001; **67**: 1865-1873 [PMID: 11282644 DOI: 10.1128/AEM.67.4.1865-1873.2001]

104 **Choi SC**, Zhang C, Moon S, Oh YS. Inhibitory effects of 4-hydroxy-2,5-dimethyl-3(2H)-furanone (HDMF) on acyl-homoserine lactone-mediated virulence factor production and biofilm formation in Pseudomonas aeruginosa PAO1. *J Microbiol* 2014; **52**: 734-742 [PMID: 25085732 DOI: 10.1007/s12275-014-4060-x]

105 **Schuster M**, Lostroh CP, Ogi T, Greenberg EP. Identification, timing, and signal specificity of Pseudomonas aeruginosa quorum-controlled genes: a transcriptome analysis. *J Bacteriol* 2003; **185**: 2066-2079 [PMID: 12644476]

106 **Rasmussen TB**, Givskov M. Quorum-sensing inhibitors as anti-pathogenic drugs. *Int J Med Microbiol* 2006; **296**: 149-161 [PMID: 16503194 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijmm.2006.02.005]

107 **Ono K**, Oka R, Toyofuku M, Sakaguchi A, Hamada M, Yoshida S, Nomura N. cAMP signaling affects irreversible attachment during biofilm formation by Pseudomonas aeruginosa PAO1. *Microbes Environ* 2014; **29**: 104-106 [PMID: 24553108]

108 **Yang K**, Meng J, Huang YC, Ye LH, Li GJ, Huang J, Chen HM. The role of the QseC quorum-sensing sensor kinase in epinephrine-enhanced motility and biofilm formation by Escherichia coli. *Cell Biochem Biophys* 2014; **70**: 391-398 [PMID: 24676679 DOI: 10.1007/s12013-014-9924-5]

109 **Czerwonka G**, Arabski M, Wąsik S, Jabłońska-Wawrzycka A, Rogala P, Kaca W. Morphological changes in Proteus mirabilis O18 biofilm under the influence of a urease inhibitor and a homoserine lactone derivative. *Arch Microbiol* 2014; **196**: 169-177 [PMID: 24481535 DOI: 10.1007/s00203-014-0952-8]

110 **Branda SS**, González-Pastor JE, Ben-Yehuda S, Losick R, Kolter R. Fruiting body formation by Bacillus subtilis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2001; **98**: 11621-11626 [PMID: 11572999 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.191384198]

111 **Angelini TE**, Roper M, Kolter R, Weitz DA, Brenner MP. Bacillus subtilis spreads by surfing on waves of surfactant. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2009; **106**: 18109-18113 [PMID: 19826092 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0905890106]

112 **Davey ME**, Caiazza NC, O'Toole GA. Rhamnolipid surfactant production affects biofilm architecture in Pseudomonas aeruginosa PAO1. *J Bacteriol* 2003; **185**: 1027-1036 [PMID: 12533479]

113 **Boles BR**, Thoendel M, Singh PK. Rhamnolipids mediate detachment of Pseudomonas aeruginosa from biofilms. *Mol Microbiol* 2005; **57**: 1210-1223 [PMID: 16101996 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2958.2005.04743.x]

114 **Mehlin C**, Headley CM, Klebanoff SJ. An inflammatory polypeptide complex from Staphylococcus epidermidis: isolation and characterization. *J Exp Med* 1999; **189**: 907-918 [PMID: 10075974]

115 **Wang R**, Braughton KR, Kretschmer D, Bach TH, Queck SY, Li M, Kennedy AD, Dorward DW, Klebanoff SJ, Peschel A, DeLeo FR, Otto M. Identification of novel cytolytic peptides as key virulence determinants for community-associated MRSA. *Nat Med* 2007; **13**: 1510-1514 [PMID: 17994102 DOI: 10.1038/nm1656]

116 **Resch A**, Rosenstein R, Nerz C, Götz F. Differential gene expression profiling of Staphylococcus aureus cultivated under biofilm and planktonic conditions. *Appl Environ Microbiol* 2005; **71**: 2663-2676 [PMID: 15870358 DOI: 10.1128/AEM.71.5.2663-2]

676.2005]

117 **Yao Y**, Sturdevant DE, Otto M. Genomewide analysis of gene expression in Staphylococcus epidermidis biofilms: insights into the pathophysiology of S. epidermidis biofilms and the role of phenol-soluble modulins in formation of biofilms. *J Infect Dis* 2005; **191**: 289-298 [PMID: 15609240 DOI: 10.1086/426945]

118 **Scherr TD**, Roux CM, Hanke ML, Angle A, Dunman PM, Kielian T. Global transcriptome analysis of Staphylococcus aureus biofilms in response to innate immune cells. *Infect Immun* 2013; **81**: 4363-4376 [PMID: 24042108 DOI: 10.1128/IAI.00819-13]

119 **Garavaglia M**, Rossi E, Landini P. The pyrimidine nucleotide biosynthetic pathway modulates production of biofilm determinants in Escherichia coli. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e31252 [PMID: 22359582 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0031252]

120 **Yadav MK**, Kwon SK, Cho CG, Park SW, Chae SW, Song JJ. Gene expression profile of early in vitro biofilms of Streptococcus pneumoniae. *Microbiol Immunol* 2012; **56**: 621-629 [PMID: 22708961 DOI: 10.1111/j.1348-0421.2012.00483.x]

121 **Bernier SP**, Lebeaux D, DeFrancesco AS, Valomon A, Soubigou G, Coppée JY, Ghigo JM, Beloin C. Starvation, together with the SOS response, mediates high biofilm-specific tolerance to the fluoroquinolone ofloxacin. *PLoS Genet* 2013; **9**: e1003144 [PMID: 23300476 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pgen.1003144]

122 **Costerton JW**, Lewandowski Z, Caldwell DE, Korber DR, Lappin-Scott HM. Microbial biofilms. *Annu Rev Microbiol* 1995; **49**: 711-745 [PMID: 8561477 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.mi.49.100195.003431]

123 **Høiby N**, Ciofu O, Johansen HK, Song ZJ, Moser C, Jensen PØ, Molin S, Givskov M, Tolker-Nielsen T, Bjarnsholt T. The clinical impact of bacterial biofilms. *Int J Oral Sci* 2011; **3**: 55-65 [PMID: 21485309 DOI: 10.4248/IJOS11026]

124 **Yoon SS**, Hennigan RF, Hilliard GM, Ochsner UA, Parvatiyar K, Kamani MC, Allen HL, DeKievit TR, Gardner PR, Schwab U, Rowe JJ, Iglewski BH, McDermott TR, Mason RP, Wozniak DJ, Hancock RE, Parsek MR, Noah TL, Boucher RC, Hassett DJ. Pseudomonas aeruginosa anaerobic respiration in biofilms: relationships to cystic fibrosis pathogenesis. *Dev Cell* 2002; **3**: 593-603 [PMID: 12408810]

125 **Nguyen D**, Joshi-Datar A, Lepine F, Bauerle E, Olakanmi O, Beer K, McKay G, Siehnel R, Schafhauser J, Wang Y, Britigan BE, Singh PK. Active starvation responses mediate antibiotic tolerance in biofilms and nutrient-limited bacteria. *Science* 2011; **334**: 982-986 [PMID: 22096200 DOI: 10.1126/science.1211037]

126 **Werner E**, Roe F, Bugnicourt A, Franklin MJ, Heydorn A, Molin S, Pitts B, Stewart PS. Stratified growth in Pseudomonas aeruginosa biofilms. *Appl Environ Microbiol* 2004; **70**: 6188-6196 [PMID: 15466566 DOI: 10.1128/AEM.70.10.6188-6196.2004]

127 **Boles BR**, Singh PK. Endogenous oxidative stress produces diversity and adaptability in biofilm communities. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2008; **105**: 12503-12508 [PMID: 18719125 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0801499105]

128 **Yang L**, Haagensen JA, Jelsbak L, Johansen HK, Sternberg C, Høiby N, Molin S. In situ growth rates and biofilm development of Pseudomonas aeruginosa populations in chronic lung infections. *J Bacteriol* 2008; **190**: 2767-2776 [PMID: 18156255 DOI: 10.1128/JB.01581-07]

129 **Patel R**. Biofilms and antimicrobial resistance. *Clin Orthop Relat Res* 2005; (**437**): 41-47 [PMID: 16056024]

130 **Balaban N**, Gov Y, Giacometti A, Cirioni O, Ghiselli R, Mocchegiani F, Orlando F, D'Amato G, Saba V, Scalise G, Bernes S, Mor A. A chimeric peptide composed of a dermaseptin derivative and an RNA III-inhibiting peptide prevents graft-associated infections by antibiotic-resistant staphylococci. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2004; **48**: 2544-2550 [PMID: 15215107 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.48.7.2544-2550.2004]

131 **Lewis K**. Riddle of biofilm resistance. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2001; **45**: 999-1007 [PMID: 11257008 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.45.4.999-1007.2001]

132 **Lewis K**. Persister cells. *Annu Rev Microbiol* 2010; **64**: 357-372 [PMID: 20528688 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.micro.112408.134306]

133 **Keren I**, Kaldalu N, Spoering A, Wang Y, Lewis K. Persister cells

134 **Keren I**, Shah D, Spoering A, Kaldalu N, Lewis K. Specialized persister cells and the mechanism of multidrug tolerance in Escherichia coli. *J Bacteriol* 2004; **186**: 8172-8180 [PMID: 15576765 DOI: 10.1128/JB.186.24.8172-8180.2004]

135 **Conlon BP**. Staphylococcus aureus chronic and relapsing infections: Evidence of a role for persister cells: An investigation of persister cells, their formation and their role in S. aureus disease. *Bioessays* 2014; **36**: 991-996 [PMID: 25100240 DOI: 10.1002/bies.201400080]

136 **Driffield K**, Miller K, Bostock JM, O'Neill AJ, Chopra I. Increased mutability of Pseudomonas aeruginosa in biofilms. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2008; **61**: 1053-1056 [PMID: 18256114 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dkn044]

137 **Molin S**, Tolker-Nielsen T. Gene transfer occurs with enhanced efficiency in biofilms and induces enhanced stabilisation of the biofilm structure. *Curr Opin Biotechnol* 2003; **14**: 255-261 [PMID: 12849777]

138 **Mah TF**, Pitts B, Pellock B, Walker GC, Stewart PS, O'Toole GA. A genetic basis for Pseudomonas aeruginosa biofilm antibiotic resistance. *Nature* 2003; **426**: 306-310 [PMID: 14628055 DOI: 10.1038/nature02122]

139 **Reffuveille F**, de la Fuente-Núñez C, Mansour S, Hancock RE. A broad-spectrum antibiofilm peptide enhances antibiotic action against bacterial biofilms. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2014; **58**: 5363-5371 [PMID: 24982074 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.03163-14]

140 **Okuda K**, Zendo T, Sugimoto S, Iwase T, Tajima A, Yamada S, Sonomoto K, Mizunoe Y. Effects of bacteriocins on methicillin-resistant Staphylococcus aureus biofilm. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2013; **57**: 5572-5579 [PMID: 23979748 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.00888-13]

141 **Stewart PS**, Costerton JW. Antibiotic resistance of bacteria in biofilms. *Lancet* 2001; **358**: 135-138 [PMID: 11463434]

142 **Walsh C**. Molecular mechanisms that confer antibacterial drug resistance. *Nature* 2000; **406**: 775-781 [PMID: 10963607 DOI: 10.1038/35021219]

143 **Sadovskaya I**, Vinogradov E, Li J, Hachani A, Kowalska K, Filloux A. High-level antibiotic resistance in Pseudomonas aeruginosa biofilm: the ndvB gene is involved in the production of highly glycerol-phosphorylated beta-(1->3)-glucans, which bind aminoglycosides. *Glycobiology* 2010; **20**: 895-904 [PMID: 20348539 DOI: 10.1093/glycob/cwq047]

144 **Stewart PS**, Grab L, Diemer JA. Analysis of biocide transport limitation in an artificial biofilm system. *J Appl Microbiol* 1998; **85**: 495-500 [PMID: 9750280]

145 **Stewart PS**. Theoretical aspects of antibiotic diffusion into microbial biofilms. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 1996; **40**: 2517-2522 [PMID: 8913456]

146 **Carmen JC**, Nelson JL, Beckstead BL, Runyan CM, Robison RA, Schaalje GB, Pitt WG. Ultrasonic-enhanced gentamicin transport through colony biofilms of Pseudomonas aeruginosa and Escherichia coli. *J Infect Chemother* 2004; **10**: 193-199 [PMID: 15365858 DOI: 10.1007/s10156-004-0319-1]

147 **Anderl JN**, Franklin MJ, Stewart PS. Role of antibiotic penetration limitation in Klebsiella pneumoniae biofilm resistance to ampicillin and ciprofloxacin. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2000; **44**: 1818-1824 [PMID: 10858336]

148 **Walters MC**, Roe F, Bugnicourt A, Franklin MJ, Stewart PS. Contributions of antibiotic penetration, oxygen limitation, and low metabolic activity to tolerance of Pseudomonas aeruginosa biofilms to ciprofloxacin and tobramycin. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2003; **47**: 317-323 [PMID: 12499208]

149 **Nichols WW**, Dorrington SM, Slack MP, Walmsley HL. Inhibition of tobramycin diffusion by binding to alginate. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 1988; **32**: 518-523 [PMID: 3132093 DOI: 10.1128/aac.32.4.518]

150 **Tseng BS**, Zhang W, Harrison JJ, Quach TP, Song JL, Penterman J, Singh PK, Chopp DL, Packman AI, Parsek MR. The extracellular matrix protects Pseudomonas aeruginosa biofilms by limiting the penetration of tobramycin. *Environ Microbiol* 2013; **15**: 2865-2878

and tolerance to antimicrobials. *FEMS Microbiol Lett* 2004; **230**: 13-18 [PMID: 14734160]

[PMID: 23751003 DOI: 10.1111/1462-2920.12155]

151   **Hoyle BD**, Alcantara J, Costerton JW. Pseudomonas aeruginosa biofilm as a diffusion barrier to piperacillin. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 1992; **36**: 2054-2056 [PMID: 1416900]

152   **Dunne WM**, Mason EO, Kaplan SL. Diffusion of rifampin and vancomycin through a Staphylococcus epidermidis biofilm. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 1993; **37**: 2522-2526 [PMID: 8109913]

153   **Giwercman B**, Jensen ET, Høiby N, Kharazmi A, Costerton JW. Induction of beta-lactamase production in Pseudomonas aeruginosa biofilm. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 1991; **35**: 1008-1010 [PMID: 1906694]

154   **Stewart PS**. Diffusion in biofilms. *J Bacteriol* 2003; **185**: 1485-1491 [PMID: 12591863]

155   **Vrany JD**, Stewart PS, Suci PA. Comparison of recalcitrance to ciprofloxacin and levofloxacin exhibited by Pseudomonas aeruginosa bofilms displaying rapid-transport characteristics. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 1997; **41**: 1352-1358 [PMID: 9174198]

156   **Mulcahy LR**, Isabella VM, Lewis K. Pseudomonas aeruginosa biofilms in disease. *Microb Ecol* 2014; **68**: 1-12 [PMID: 24096885 DOI: 10.1007/s00248-013-0297-x]

157   **Mah TF**, O'Toole GA. Mechanisms of biofilm resistance to antimicrobial agents. *Trends Microbiol* 2001; **9**: 34-39 [PMID: 11166241]

158   **Gilbert P**, Allison DG, McBain AJ. Biofilms in vitro and in vivo: do singular mechanisms imply cross-resistance? *Symp Ser Soc Appl Microbiol* 2002; **2002**: 98S-110S [PMID: 12481835]

159   **Evans DJ**, Allison DG, Brown MR, Gilbert P. Susceptibility of Pseudomonas aeruginosa and Escherichia coli biofilms towards ciprofloxacin: effect of specific growth rate. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 1991; **27**: 177-184 [PMID: 1905285]

160   **Desai M**, Bühler T, Weller PH, Brown MR. Increasing resistance of planktonic and biofilm cultures of Burkholderia cepacia to ciprofloxacin and ceftazidime during exponential growth. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 1998; **42**: 153-160 [PMID: 9738832]

161   **Brooun A**, Liu S, Lewis K. A dose-response study of antibiotic resistance in Pseudomonas aeruginosa biofilms. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2000; **44**: 640-646 [PMID: 10681331]

162   **Lewis K**. Persister cells, dormancy and infectious disease. *Nat Rev Microbiol* 2007; **5**: 48-56 [PMID: 17143318 DOI: 10.1038/nrmicro1557]

163   **Helaine S**, Kugelberg E. Bacterial persisters: formation, eradication, and experimental systems. *Trends Microbiol* 2014; **22**: 417-424 [PMID: 24768561 DOI: 10.1016/j.tim.2014.03.008]

164   **Allison KR**, Brynildsen MP, Collins JJ. Heterogeneous bacterial persisters and engineering approaches to eliminate them. *Curr Opin Microbiol* 2011; **14**: 593-598 [PMID: 21937262 DOI: 10.1016/j.mib.2011.09.002]

165   **Chauhan A**, Lebeaux D, Ghigo JM, Beloin C. Full and broad-spectrum in vivo eradication of catheter-associated biofilms using gentamicin-EDTA antibiotic lock therapy. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2012; **56**: 6310-6318 [PMID: 23027191 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.01606-12]

166   **Shapiro JA**, Nguyen VL, Chamberlain NR. Evidence for persisters in Staphylococcus epidermidis RP62a planktonic cultures and biofilms. *J Med Microbiol* 2011; **60**: 950-960 [PMID: 21415203 DOI: 10.1099/jmm.0.026013-0]

167   **Simões M**. Antimicrobial strategies effective against infectious bacterial biofilms. *Curr Med Chem* 2011; **18**: 2129-2145 [PMID: 21517762]

168   **Percival SL**, Hill KE, Malic S, Thomas DW, Williams DW. Antimicrobial tolerance and the significance of persister cells in recalcitrant chronic wound biofilms. *Wound Repair Regen* 2011; **19**: 1-9 [PMID: 21235682 DOI: 10.1111/j.1524-475X.2010.00651.x]

169   **Ashby MJ**, Neale JE, Knott SJ, Critchley IA. Effect of antibiotics on non-growing planktonic cells and biofilms of Escherichia coli. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 1994; **33**: 443-452 [PMID: 8040110]

170   **Muli FW**, Struthers JK. The growth of Gardnerella vaginalis and Lactobacillus acidophilus in Sorbarod biofilms. *J Med Microbiol* 1998; **47**: 401-405 [PMID: 9879940]

171   **Ryder VJ**, Chopra I, O'Neill AJ. Increased mutability of Staphy-

lococci in biofilms as a consequence of oxidative stress. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e47695 [PMID: 23110091 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0047695]

172   **Proctor RA**, von Eiff C, Kahl BC, Becker K, McNamara P, Herrmann M, Peters G. Small colony variants: a pathogenic form of bacteria that facilitates persistent and recurrent infections. *Nat Rev Microbiol* 2006; **4**: 295-305 [PMID: 16541137 DOI: 10.1038/nrmicro1384]

173   **JENSEN J**. Biosynthesis of hematin compounds in a hemin requiring strain of Micrococcus pyogenes var. aureus. I. The significance of coenzyme A for the terminal synthesis of catalase. *J Bacteriol* 1957; **73**: 324-333 [PMID: 13416192]

174   **Bulger RJ**. A methicillin-resistant strain of Staphylococcus aureus. Clinical and laboratory experience. *Ann Intern Med* 1967; **67**: 81-89 [PMID: 5182354]

175   **Baddour LM**, Barker LP, Christensen GD, Parisi JT, Simpson WA. Phenotypic variation of Staphylococcus epidermidis in infection of transvenous endocardial pacemaker electrodes. *J Clin Microbiol* 1990; **28**: 676-679 [PMID: 2332465]

176   **Bryan LE**, Kwan S. Aminoglycoside-resistant mutants of Pseudomonas aeruginosa deficient in cytochrome d, nitrite reductase, and aerobic transport. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 1981; **19**: 958-964 [PMID: 6791588]

177   **Richards MJ**, Edwards JR, Culver DH, Gaynes RP. Nosocomial infections in combined medical-surgical intensive care units in the United States. *Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol* 2000; **21**: 510-515 [PMID: 10968716 DOI: 10.1086/501795]

178   **Høiby N**, Ciofu O, Bjarnsholt T. Pseudomonas aeruginosa biofilms in cystic fibrosis. *Future Microbiol* 2010; **5**: 1663-1674 [PMID: 21133688 DOI: 10.2217/fmb.10.125]

179   **Otto M**. Staphylococcal biofilms. *Curr Top Microbiol Immunol* 2008; **322**: 207-228 [PMID: 18453278]

180   **Lowy FD**. Staphylococcus aureus infections. *N Engl J Med* 1998; **339**: 520-532 [PMID: 9709046 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM199808203390806]

181   **Willner D**, Haynes MR, Furlan M, Schmieder R, Lim YW, Rainey PB, Rohwer F, Conrad D. Spatial distribution of microbial communities in the cystic fibrosis lung. *ISME J* 2012; **6**: 471-474 [PMID: 21796216 DOI: 10.1038/ismej.2011.104]

182   **Price LB**, Liu CM, Frankel YM, Melendez JH, Aziz M, Buchhagen J, Contente-Cuomo T, Engelthaler DM, Keim PS, Ravel J, Lazarus GS, Zenilman JM. Macroscale spatial variation in chronic wound microbiota: a cross-sectional study. *Wound Repair Regen* 2011; **19**: 80-88 [PMID: 20946140 DOI: 10.1111/j.1524-475X.2010.00628.x]

183   **Proctor RA**, Kriegeskorte A, Kahl BC, Becker K, Löffler B, Peters G. Staphylococcus aureus Small Colony Variants (SCVs): a road map for the metabolic pathways involved in persistent infections. *Front Cell Infect Microbiol* 2014; **4**: 99 [PMID: 25120957 DOI: 10.3389/fcimb.2014.00099]

184   **Balwit JM**, van Langevelde P, Vann JM, Proctor RA. Gentamicin-resistant menadione and hemin auxotrophic Staphylococcus aureus persist within cultured endothelial cells. *J Infect Dis* 1994; **170**: 1033-1037 [PMID: 7930701 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/170.4.1033]

185   **Dean MA**, Olsen RJ, Long SW, Rosato AE, Musser JM. Identification of point mutations in clinical Staphylococcus aureus strains that produce small-colony variants auxotrophic for menadione. *Infect Immun* 2014; **82**: 1600-1605 [PMID: 24452687 DOI: 10.1128/IAI.01487-13]

186   **Kahl B**, Herrmann M, Everding AS, Koch HG, Becker K, Harms E, Proctor RA, Peters G. Persistent infection with small colony variant strains of Staphylococcus aureus in patients with cystic fibrosis. *J Infect Dis* 1998; **177**: 1023-1029 [PMID: 9534977]

187   **Proctor RA**, van Langevelde P, Kristjansson M, Maslow JN, Arbeit RD. Persistent and relapsing infections associated with small-colony variants of Staphylococcus aureus. *Clin Infect Dis* 1995; **20**: 95-102 [PMID: 7727677]

188   **von Eiff C**, Heilmann C, Peters G. New aspects in the molecular basis of polymer-associated infections due to staphylococci. *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 1999; **18**: 843-846 [PMID: 10691193]

189   **Al Laham N**, Rohde H, Sander G, Fischer A, Hussain M,

Heilmann C, Mack D, Proctor R, Peters G, Becker K, von Eiff C. Augmented expression of polysaccharide intercellular adhesin in a defined Staphylococcus epidermidis mutant with the small-colony-variant phenotype. *J Bacteriol* 2007; **189**: 4494-4501 [PMID: 17449620 DOI: 10.1128/jb.00160-07]

190 **Singh R**, Ray P, Das A, Sharma M. Enhanced production of exopolysaccharide matrix and biofilm by a menadione-auxotrophic Staphylococcus aureus small-colony variant. *J Med Microbiol* 2010; **59**: 521-527 [PMID: 20110391 DOI: 10.1099/jmm.0.017046-0]

191 **Allegrucci M**, Sauer K. Characterization of colony morphology variants isolated from Streptococcus pneumoniae biofilms. *J Bacteriol* 2007; **189**: 2030-2038 [PMID: 17189375 DOI: 10.1128/jb.01369-06]

192 **Allegrucci M**, Sauer K. Formation of Streptococcus pneumoniae non-phase-variable colony variants is due to increased mutation frequency present under biofilm growth conditions. *J Bacteriol* 2008; **190**: 6330-6339 [PMID: 18658260 DOI: 10.1128/JB.00707-08]

193 **Drenkard E**, Ausubel FM. Pseudomonas biofilm formation and antibiotic resistance are linked to phenotypic variation. *Nature* 2002; **416**: 740-743 [PMID: 11961556 DOI: 10.1038/416740a]

194 **Häussler S**, Ziegler I, Löttel A, von Götz F, Rohde M, Weh-mhöhner D, Saravanamuthu S, Tümmler B, Steinmetz I. Highly adherent small-colony variants of Pseudomonas aeruginosa in cystic fibrosis lung infection. *J Med Microbiol* 2003; **52**: 295-301 [PMID: 12676867]

195 **Kirisits MJ**, Prost L, Starkey M, Parsek MR. Characterization of colony morphology variants isolated from Pseudomonas aeruginosa biofilms. *Appl Environ Microbiol* 2005; **71**: 4809-4821 [PMID: 16085879 DOI: 10.1128/AEM.71.8.4809-4821.2005]

196 **Starkey M**, Hickman JH, Ma L, Zhang N, De Long S, Hinz A, Palacios S, Manoil C, Kirisits MJ, Starner TD, Wozniak DJ, Harwood CS, Parsek MR. Pseudomonas aeruginosa rugose small-colony variants have adaptations that likely promote persistence in the cystic fibrosis lung. *J Bacteriol* 2009; **191**: 3492-3503 [PMID: 19329647 DOI: 10.1128/JB.00119-09]

197 **Lewis K**. Programmed death in bacteria. *Microbiol Mol Biol Rev* 2000; **64**: 503-514 [PMID: 10974242]

198 **Tuomanen E**, Cozens R, Tosch W, Zak O, Tomasz A. The rate of killing of Escherichia coli by beta-lactam antibiotics is strictly proportional to the rate of bacterial growth. *J Gen Microbiol* 1986; **132**: 1297-1304 [PMID: 3534137]

199 **Gilbert P**, Maira-Litran T, McBain AJ, Rickard AH, Whyte FW. The physiology and collective recalcitrance of microbial biofilm communities. *Adv Microb Physiol* 2002; **46**: 202-256 [PMID: 12073654]

200 **Brown MR**, Allison DG, Gilbert P. Resistance of bacterial biofilms to antibiotics: a growth-rate related effect? *J Antimicrob Chemother* 1988; **22**: 777-780 [PMID: 3072331]

201 **Taylor PK**, Yeung AT, Hancock RE. Antibiotic resistance in Pseudomonas aeruginosa biofilms: towards the development of novel anti-biofilm therapies. *J Biotechnol* 2014; **191**: 121-130 [PMID: 25240440 DOI: 10.1016/j.jbiotec.2014.09.003]

202 **Jensen PØ**, Briales A, Brochmann RP, Wang H, Kragh KN, Kolpen M, Hempel C, Bjarnsholt T, Høiby N, Ciofu O. Formation of hydroxyl radicals contributes to the bactericidal activity of ciprofloxacin against Pseudomonas aeruginosa biofilms. *Pathog Dis* 2014; **70**: 440-443 [PMID: 24376174 DOI: 10.1111/2049-632X.12120]

203 **Battán PC**, Barnes AI, Albesa I. Resistance to oxidative stress caused by ceftazidime and piperacillin in a biofilm of Pseudomonas. *Luminescence* 2004; **19**: 265-270 [PMID: 15386799 DOI: 10.1002/bio.779]

204 **Van Acker H**, Sass A, Bazzini S, De Roy K, Udine C, Messiaen T, Riccardi G, Boon N, Nelis HJ, Mahenthiralingam E, Coenye T. Biofilm-grown Burkholderia cepacia complex cells survive antibiotic treatment by avoiding production of reactive oxygen species. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e58943 [PMID: 23516582 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0058943]

205 **Khakimova M**, Ahlgren HG, Harrison JJ, English AM, Nguyen D. The stringent response controls catalases in Pseudomonas aeruginosa and is required for hydrogen peroxide and antibiotic tolerance. *J Bacteriol* 2013; **195**: 2011-2020 [PMID: 23457248 DOI: 10.1128/JB.02061-12]

206 **Mandsberg LF**, Ciofu O, Kirkby N, Christiansen LE, Poulsen HE, Høiby N. Antibiotic resistance in Pseudomonas aeruginosa strains with increased mutation frequency due to inactivation of the DNA oxidative repair system. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2009; **53**: 2483-2491 [PMID: 19332676 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.00428-08]

207 **Kvist M**, Hancock V, Klemm P. Inactivation of efflux pumps abolishes bacterial biofilm formation. *Appl Environ Microbiol* 2008; **74**: 7376-7382 [PMID: 18836028 DOI: 10.1128/AEM.01310-08]

208 **Soto SM**. Role of efflux pumps in the antibiotic resistance of bacteria embedded in a biofilm. *Virulence* 2013; **4**: 223-229 [PMID: 23380871 DOI: 10.4161/viru.23724]

209 **Zhang L**, Mah TF. Involvement of a novel efflux system in biofilm-specific resistance to antibiotics. *J Bacteriol* 2008; **190**: 4447-4452 [PMID: 18469108 DOI: 10.1128/JB.01655-07]

210 **Lin YT**, Huang YW, Liou RS, Chang YC, Yang TC. MacABCsm, an ABC-type tripartite efflux pump of Stenotrophomonas maltophilia involved in drug resistance, oxidative and envelope stress tolerances and biofilm formation. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2014; **69**: 3221-3226 [PMID: 25139838 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dku317]

211 **Lynch SV**, Dixon L, Benoit MR, Brodie EL, Keyhan M, Hu P, Ackerley DF, Andersen GL, Matin A. Role of the rapA gene in controlling antibiotic resistance of Escherichia coli biofilms. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2007; **51**: 3650-3658 [PMID: 17664315 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.00601-07]

212 **Matsumura K**, Furukawa S, Ogihara H, Morinaga Y. Roles of multidrug efflux pumps on the biofilm formation of Escherichia coli K-12. *Biocontrol Sci* 2011; **16**: 69-72 [PMID: 21719992]

213 **Baugh S**, Ekanayaka AS, Piddock LJ, Webber MA. Loss of or inhibition of all multidrug resistance efflux pumps of Salmonella enterica serovar Typhimurium results in impaired ability to form a biofilm. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2012; **67**: 2409-2417 [PMID: 22733653 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dks228]

214 **Mulet X**, Moyá B, Juan C, Macià MD, Pérez JL, Blázquez J, Oliver A. Antagonistic interactions of Pseudomonas aeruginosa antibiotic resistance mechanisms in planktonic but not biofilm growth. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2011; **55**: 4560-4568 [PMID: 21807976 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.00519-11]

215 **Das JR**, Bhakoo M, Jones MV, Gilbert P. Changes in the biocide susceptibility of Staphylococcus epidermidis and Escherichia coli cells associated with rapid attachment to plastic surfaces. *J Appl Microbiol* 1998; **84**: 852-858 [PMID: 9674140]

216 **Liao J**, Sauer K. The MerR-like transcriptional regulator BrlR contributes to Pseudomonas aeruginosa biofilm tolerance. *J Bacteriol* 2012; **194**: 4823-4836 [PMID: 22730129 DOI: 10.1128/JB.00765-12]

217 **Gupta K**, Marques CN, Petrova OE, Sauer K. Antimicrobial tolerance of Pseudomonas aeruginosa biofilms is activated during an early developmental stage and requires the two-component hybrid SagS. *J Bacteriol* 2013; **195**: 4975-4987 [PMID: 23995639 DOI: 10.1128/JB.00732-13]

218 **Shih PC**, Huang CT. Effects of quorum-sensing deficiency on Pseudomonas aeruginosa biofilm formation and antibiotic resistance. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2002; **49**: 309-314 [PMID: 11815572]

219 **Zhao J**, Jiang H, Cheng W, Wu J, Zhao J, Wang J, Dong L. The role of quorum sensing system in antimicrobial induced ampC expression in Pseudomonas aeruginosa biofilm. *J Basic Microbiol* 2014; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 25112215 DOI: 10.1002/jobm.201300987]

220 **Madsen JS**, Burmølle M, Hansen LH, Sørensen SJ. The interconnection between biofilm formation and horizontal gene transfer. *FEMS Immunol Med Microbiol* 2012; **65**: 183-195 [PMID: 22444301 DOI: 10.1111/j.1574-695X.2012.00960.x]

221 **Hausner M**, Wuertz S. High rates of conjugation in bacterial biofilms as determined by quantitative in situ analysis. *Appl Environ Microbiol* 1999; **65**: 3710-3713 [PMID: 10427070]

222 **Sørensen SJ**, Bailey M, Hansen LH, Kroer N, Wuertz S. Studying plasmid horizontal transfer in situ: a critical review. *Nat Rev Microbiol* 2005; **3**: 700-710 [PMID: 16138098 DOI: 10.1038/

nrmicro1232]

223 **Maeda S**, Ito M, Ando T, Ishimoto Y, Fujisawa Y, Takahashi H, Matsuda A, Sawamura A, Kato S. Horizontal transfer of non-conjugative plasmids in a colony biofilm of Escherichia coli. *FEMS Microbiol Lett* 2006; **255**: 115-120 [PMID: 16436070 DOI: 10.1111/j.1574-6968.2005.00072.x]

REVIEW

Importance of microenvironment in preclinical models of breast and prostate cancer

Maija Valta, Katja Fagerlund, Mari Suominen, Jussi Halleen, Johanna Tuomela

Maija Valta, Johanna Tuomela, Department of Cell Biology and Anatomy, Institute of Biomedicine, University of Turku, 20520 Turku, Finland

Maija Valta, Division of Medicine, Turku University Hospital and University of Turku, 20520 Turku, Finland

Katja Fagerlund, Mari Suominen, Jussi Halleen, Johanna Tuomela, Pharmatest Services Ltd, Itäinen Pitkäkatu 4 C, 20520 Turku, Finland

Correspondence to: Johanna Tuomela, PhD, Adjunct Professor, Department of Cell Biology and Anatomy, Institute of Biomedicine, University of Turku, Kiinamyllynkatu 10, 20520 Turku, Finland. jomitu@utu.fi
Telephone: +358-50-4352677
Fax: +358-2-2784710

Abstract

The majority of cancer drugs entering clinical trials fail to reach the market due to poor efficacy. Preclinical efficacy has been traditionally tested using subcutaneous xenograft models that are cheap, fast and easy to perform. However, these models lack the correct tumor microenvironment, leading to poor clinical predictivity. Selecting compounds for clinical trials based on efficacy results obtained from subcutaneous xenograft models may therefore be one important reason for the high failure rates. In this review we concentrate in describing the role and importance of the tumor microenvironment in progression of breast and prostate cancer, and describe some breast and prostate cancer cell lines that are widely used in preclinical studies. We go through different preclinical efficacy models that incorporate the tissue microenvironment and should therefore be clinically more predictive than subcutaneous xenografts. These include three-dimensional cell culture models, orthotopic and metastasis models, humanized and transgenic mouse models, and patient-derived xenografts. Different endpoint measurements and applicable imaging techniques are also discussed. We conclude that models that incorporate the tissue microenvironment should be increasingly used in preclinical efficacy studies to reduce the current high attrition rates of cancer drugs in clinical trials.

Key words: Tumor microenvironment; Breast cancer; Prostate cancer; Preclinical; Efficacy

Core tip: It is today a recognized major problem in cancer drug development that the vast majority of drugs entering clinical trials fail to reach the market due to poor efficacy. One important reason for this is the wide use of subcutaneous xenograft models that are cheap, fast and easy to perform, but lack tumor microenvironment. Concentrating on breast and prostate cancer, we explain why the presence of tumor microenvironment is important, and describe different types of preclinical efficacy models that incorporate

tumor microenvironment. We state the importance of using these models to reduce the high failure rates in clinical trials.

INTRODUCTION

During the course of multistep tumorigenesis of breast and prostate carcinomas, neoplastic epithelial cells are in a continuous interplay with mesenchymal cells that form the tumor-associated stroma. This tumor microenvironment is constituted by endothelial cells, pericytes, myoepithelial cells, osteoblasts, immune cells, fibroblasts, cancer stem cells, and many other cells that secrete growth factors and cytokines[1]. While complex interactions between these different cell types reshape the surrounding extracellular matrix (ECM) as cancer progresses, also neoplastic and stromal cells undergo constant changes. Endpoint of this extreme plasticity is that a tumor almost never contains two completely identical cells[2]. While tumor heterogeneity remains a major obstacle to effective cancer treatment and personalized medicine, it can also be used as a biomarker to predict the risk of progression and therapeutic resistance[3].

An optimal preclinical model mimics these plastic genetic and phenotypic changes that occur within human disease, is heterogenic, and results in appropriate tumor growth and spread[4]. Mouse (Mus musculus) has emerged as the main species of *in vivo* tumor biology due to its basic physiology and genome size that are similar to human[5]. Other advantages for using mice include the ease of genetic manipulation, low maintenance cost, and short gestation period[6]. Here we rationalize how mouse models of breast and prostate cancer can help us to understand the interaction between microenvironment and cancer cells in neoplastic progression. Major differences between human and mouse tissue architecture and different research models will be discussed.

MOUSE *VS* HUMAN BREAST AND PROSTATE TISSUE

In mammals, the morphology of mammary gland changes throughout the entire reproductive life. Ductal morphogenesis, as well as carcinogenesis, are regulated by steroid and polypeptide hormones and growth factors that act as local epithelial-mesenchymal inductive signals. The glandular part of the human and murine mammary tissue is composed of major

lactiferous ducts that arise inside the nipple, branch into terminal ducts, and end up in acini that are embedded in the intralobular stroma[7,8]. The acini are composed of a bilayer of inner milk producing luminal cells and outer myoepithelial cells[9]. The human acini with the surrounding intralobular stroma are termed terminal ductal lobular unit. It is comprised of a small group of lobules, resembling a cluster of grapes at the end of a stem[10]. The murine mammary tissue is organized differently. The corresponding functional units are termed lobuloalveolar units. Unlike in human, the individual ducts branch minimally and end in single bulbous terminal end-buds (Figure 1)[11].

Breast cancer usually originates from the epithelium, but the stroma has a profound effect on tumor growth, invasion, metastasis, and drug resistance[12]. The mouse mammary stroma is histologically different from the human stroma[13,14]. Human mammary epithelium is surrounded by fibrous connective tissue, whereas mouse tissue consists of larger number of adipose cells and smaller proportion of connective tissue (Figure 1). Also, the human breast contains fat, but it is not in contact with the epithelium[11].

Both human and murine prostates are muscular glands that surround urethra. The prostate is covered with a capsule, and it is in close contact with accessory sexual glands such as coagulating gland in mice, bulbourethral gland in humans, and seminal vesicles in both. The obvious difference in gross anatomy between human and murine prostates is that murine prostate is composed of separate ventral, dorsal, and lateral lobes, whereas human prostate is a single nut-shaped gland that is divided to lobes or zones according to their location and function. In humans, there are two lateral lobes in the anterior end of the gland. The anterior lobe is located behind the lateral lobe, anterior to urethra. It is constructed of fibromuscular tissue, and activates during ejaculation. On the posterior to the urethra there is an area called median lobe, and on the posterior to the median lobe a very thin area called posterior lobe. The human prostate can also be divided into an anteriorly located central zone, an urethra surrounding transition zone, and a peripheral zone, which is the largest zone and the most common location of a tumor[4,15].

The prostatic tissue is composed of exocrine glands, ducts, and fibromuscular stroma. The human and mouse prostates contain similar cell types, but the proportion of stroma is larger in the human prostate (Figure 1). Of the mouse prostatic lobes, the dorsolateral lobe resembles most the human prostate histologically and biochemically[4,16]. Therefore, the dorsolateral prostate is an appropriate inoculation or implantation site in xenograft models.

During carcinogenesis, the stroma undergoes extensive changes in gene expression, and often proliferates actively[17]. The stroma co-evolves with its tumor and adapts to the needs of the tumor[18]. For

Figure 1 Anatomical and histological comparison of mouse and human mammary gland (A-D) or prostate (E-H). A: Schematic representation of pubertal mouse mammary tree ducts, which end in club shaped terminal end buds (TEBs); B: Hematoxylin & eosin (H&E) stained section of mouse breast tissue, showing ducts imbedded in a stroma composed of adipose tissue; C: Human mature nulliparous terminal ductal lobular unit, 30-50 ductules (DTL) are present in each lobule; D: H&E stained section of human mammary gland showing a terminal ductal lobular unit comprised of ducts and acini in a fibrous connective tissue stroma; E: Mouse prostate surrounds urethra and has distinct lobes: ventral lobe (VP), dorsal lobe (DP) and lateral lobe (LP); F: H&E stained section of mouse ventral prostate; G: Human prostate is a nut shaped glad which also surrounds the urethra; H: The proportion of stroma in human prostate is larger compared with mouse prostate, H&E staining shows secreting ducts (D) and stroma (S). B: Bladder; DD: Ductus deferens; SV: Seminal vesicle; AP: Anterior prostate.

example the amount of collagens increases in tumor ECM, which makes it thicker and may act as a physical or cell attachment - based barrier to drugs. Despite the differences in organization of the stroma between humans and mice, similar gene activation as in patients is seen in the stroma of transgenic and xenograft-

Table 1 Classification of the most commonly used human breast cancer cell lines

Name	Histopathological classification	Immunohistochemical classification
MCF-7	Luminal A	ER+, PR+, Her2-
SUM185	Luminal A	ER+, PR-, Her2-
T47D	Luminal A	ER+, PR+, Her2-
BT-474	Luminal B	ER+, PR+, Her2+
ZR-75	Luminal B	ER+, PR-, Her2+
SKBR3	Her2-positive	ER-, PR-, Her2+
MDA-MB-453	Her2-positive	ER-, PR-, Her2+
MDA-MB-468	Basal	ER-, PR-, Her2-
SUM190	Basal	ER-, PR-, Her2+
BT-20	Basal	ER-, PR-, Her2-
MDA-MB-231	Claudin-low	ER-, PR-, Her2-
HS-578T	Claudin-low	ER-, PR-, Her2-
Cal-51	Claudin-low	ER-, PR-, Her2-

Adapted from a review of Holliday and Speirs 2011[24]. ER+/-: Estrogen receptor-positive/negative; PR+/-: Progesterone receptor-positive/negative; Her2+/-: Human epidermal growth factor-positive/negative.

Table 2 Classification of the most commonly used human prostate cancer cell lines

Name	Site of origin	Hormonal status	PSA expression
PC-3	Bone	AR-	No
DU-145	Brain	AR-	No
LNCaP	Lymph node	AS	Yes
C4-2B	Subline of LNCaP	AI	Yes
VCaP	Bone	AS	Yes
CWR22	Prostate	AS	Yes
22Rv1	Subline of 22Rv1	AI	Yes
PC-346	Prostate	AS	Yes

AR-: Androgen receptor negative; AS: Androgen sensitive; AI: Androgen independent.

bearing mice[19,20].

HUMAN BREAST AND PROSTATE CANCER CELL LINES

BT-20 was the first commercial breast cancer cell line. It was established in 1958, followed by the still very popular MD Anderson series (MDA), and MCF-7 cell lines 20 years later[21-23]. Breast cancer, as well as prostate cancer, is a very heterogenous disease, and until today there are no comprehensive models available to study them. However, human breast cancer cell lines (summarized in Table 1) are available that represent the main categories of breast cancer[24].

Table 2 summarizes the most commonly used human prostate cancer cell lines. PC-3 and DU-145 cells were originally cloned from bone and brain metastases of prostate cancer, respectively[25,26]. Their tumorigenicity is high and they form metastases when inoculated into immunodeficient mice[27], and they can thus be considered as models of advanced disease. However, these very popularly used cell lines lack expression of androgen receptor (AR) and prostate

specific antigen (PSA), which are both characteristic for hormone-responsive prostate cancer. LNCaP cells express AR and secrete PSA, but they have limited tumorigenicity and respond aberrantly to androgen therapy because of a mutated AR, and they are also sensitive to other sex steroids[28]. Some newer prostate cancer cell lines respond to androgens and secrete PSA, including VCaP cells[29-31], 22Rv1 cells[32] and PC-346 cells[33]. A panel of transplantable human-derived xenografts (CWR, MDA Pca, LuCaP, and LAPC series) have interesting characteristics that mimic human disease[26]. Their benefit is the relevant tissue architecture with stromal support, which improves tumor growth and metastasis.

THREE-DIMENSIONAL CELL CULTURE MODELS FOR STUDYING THE IMPACT OF MICROENVIRONMENT

Currently, *in vitro* drug testing is mostly based on traditional two-dimensional (2D) monoculture models that utilize immortalized cancer cell lines in systems that cannot incorporate the tissue microenvironment. However, 3D cell cultures have raised considerable attention in recent years because of their potential to deliver higher quality and more accurate information that is more representative and predictive of drug responses *in vivo*. Currently, the main applications of 3D cell cultures include cancer therapy and studies of cell-to-cell and cell-to-matrix interactions. It is known that both cancer cells and normal cells cultured in 3D in the presence of ECM components show differences in gene expression, differentiation and proliferation when compared to cells cultured as monolayer in 2D. The importance of the microenvironment was highlighted by Mina Bissell's research group, who were the first to recognize that normal mammary epithelial cells grown in monolayers divided exponentially through several passages, but when the cells were grown in 3D Matrigel culture, they responded to microenvironmental signals by reducing proliferation and differentiating into nearly normal-sized mammary acinar structures[34]. An interesting finding was also that when cultured in the presence of a matrix that contained a combination of reconstituted basement membrane proteins, including type I collagen and normal breast fibroblasts, MCF-7 cancer cells were induced to near-complete tumor phenotype reversion[35].

The most widely used 3D culture structures are spheroids that can be formed by multiple different approaches, including scaffolds such as hydrogels, and as floating structures formed either by hanging drop method or by low attachment coatings. The spheroid systems allow co-culturing of different cell populations for studying the role of cell-to-cell or cell-to-ECM interactions, and therefore provide an improved approximate of the *in vivo* tissue architecture. Multiple cell types, such as stromal fibroblasts, nerve

ganglia or endothelial cells, have been seeded within a matrix gel to influence spheroid growth and define specific roles or interactions with prostate cancer cells, including DU-145, LNCaP and PC-3 cells[36]. Also, co-culture of bone stromal derived HS5 cells and PC-3 cells in Matrigel scaffold displays up-regulated invasion and proliferation, along with altered expression of epithelial-to-mesenchymal and chemokine protein constituents involved in metastatic progression[37]. Additionally, multiple cells, including PC-3, osteoblasts and endothelial cells, have been seeded into hanging drops to form heterogeneous aggregates recapitulating the *in vivo* growth behavior of cancer cells within the bone metastatic prostate cancer microenvironment[38]. In breast cancer, the surrounding microenvironment, including stromal fibroblasts, is believed to promote the progression of ductal carcinoma *in situ* (DCIS) to invasive ductal carcinoma[39-43]. Indeed, human mammary fibroblasts cultured in a 3D matrix have been shown to secrete more paracrine signaling molecules than in 2D monolayer cultures, increasing the invasive progression in MCF10-DCIS.com cells[44]. Even though the role of the matrix in regulating fibroblast behavior has been studied, the consequences of modified fibroblast behavior with cancer cells remains poorly understood.

XENOGRAFT AND SYNGENEIC ANIMAL MODELS

The term xenograft implies transplantation of material between species. Most commonly, human cells or tissue implants are grafted into immunodeficient mice. If the transplanted material is from genetically nearly identical individuals, it can be transplanted into immunocompetent mice to produce syngeneic tumors. Syngeneic models allow to study the role of adaptive immunity in tumor progression, which is a benefit compared with xenografts. However, the fact that the cells are from murine origin and very rarely respond to hormonal therapy may hamper the results. There are several good syngeneic models for breast cancer, such as Balb/cC3H-originated 4T1 subline grafted into Balb/c mice[45], S115 cells grafted into DD/Sio mice[46], and Py8119 cells grafted into C57BL mice[47]. Until now, there are only few syngeneic models for prostate cancer such as RM1 cells or TRAMP-C2 cells in C57BL mice[48,49].

SUBCUTANEOUS, ORTHOTOPIC AND METASTASIS MODELS

Subcutaneous inoculation of tumor cells is a popular and inexpensive way to perform xenograft models. However, these models can be used only in studies of primary tumor growth because of restricted spread and formation of metastases due to incomplete blood and lymphatic vasculature[50,51]. This, and the fact

that these models lack the correct microenvironment for the tumor cells, leads to poor clinical predictivity. The correct tumor microenvironment is important not only for the processes of tumorigenesis, invasion and metastasis, but also for its potential effects on efficacy of tested drug candidates. The correct microenvironment can either improve the efficacy of tissue-specific targeted therapies, or protect the cancer cells from the therapy[12]. The wide use of subcutaneous xenografts and relying on the obtained results is probably one important reason why a very high number of cancer drug candidates fail in clinical trials due to poor efficacy[52]. However, many other reasons such as non-enhanced patient groups, tumor heterogeneity, and low number of clinically relevant events also contribute to the high failure rates.

Clinically much more relevant xenograft models are orthotopic models, where breast cancer cells are inoculated into the mammary fat pad, and prostate cancer cells into the prostate. In these models the cancer cells form primary tumors in the relevant tumor microenvironment and interact with the mouse stromal cells[53-55]. Orthotopic models can also include formation of metastases, depending on the characteristics of the used cell line[56,57]. Typically, orthotopic breast and prostate tumors metastasize into local (inguinal or iliac and sacral, respectively) lymph nodes, liver and lungs[58,59]. Bone metastasis is a common and deadly complication of both breast and prostate cancer. Some breast and prostate cancer models produce bone metastases, but macroscopic bone tumors are rarely, if ever, observed using orthotopic models[56]. By inoculating tumor cells into the bone marrow cavity of the mouse tibia, tumor cell-bone interactions can be studied. Although several steps of the metastasis cascade remain unstudied in this model, the intratibial tumors provide valuable information about the tumor-bone interaction.

Tumor cells can also be inoculated directly into the tail vein or the left cardiac ventricle in order to mimic metastatic disease[60,61]. These models are clinically highly relevant, since at the time of diagnosis of breast and prostate cancer, dormant tumor cells can be found in bone marrow cavity[62]. The models are based on Paget's seed and soil-hypothesis, where a small number of tumor cells have evolved towards metastatic phenotype after a series of somatic mutations[63]. Some laboratories have succeeded in enrichment of bone- or lung-seeking tumor cell populations, and created sublines of some commonly used cell lines. Examples of such breast cancer sublines are bone-seeking MDA-MB-231(SA) and MDA-MB-231(B02) cells[64,65], and MDA-MB-231(LM) cells that form tumors in lungs when inoculated into the blood stream[59].

HUMANIZED MICE

The major limitation of using xenograft models with immunocompromised mice is the lack of immune cells

in the tumor microenvironment. The use of human stroma may be a solution to this problem. Kuperwasser *et al*[66] injected human mammary stromal and epithelial cells into cleared murine mammary fat pads. This chimeric mouse "humanized mammary fat pad" was found to be similar to that of humans and allowed genetic manipulation of the human stroma. Currently, there are no xenograft models where bone metastases are formed from orthotopic tumors with a relevant rate. Several laboratories have introduced a humanized mouse, where human bone tissue is first grafted into immunodeficient mice and after inoculation of the human breast or prostate tumor cells, metastases have been formed into human bone instead of mouse bone[67-69], underlining the importance of species-specificity of the microenvironment in metastasis formation. However, the effect of possible differences in bone metabolism of the transplant *vs* normal bone cannot be ruled out, since there is clear evidence of higher bone metabolism connected to higher metastasis rate[70]. Challenges of the model include the availability of human bone, donor-related variance, immune reactions, and difficulties in implant functionality and viability[71,72].

TRANSGENIC MOUSE MODELS

Genetically engineered mouse models are physiologically relevant models to study tumor progression, because they include natural microenvironment and immune competence. However, most transgenic breast and prostate cancer models are hormone-independent and do not respond to hormone therapy[73,74]. Also, mouse tumors are often mesenchymal instead of epithelial origin[75], and none of the transgenic models include the entire heterogeneity and plasticity of human carcinogenesis.

When an oncogene is overexpressed in mammary gland or prostate epithelium, the most commonly used promoter elements are the mouse mammary tumor virus (MMTV) long terminal repeat, human cytomegalovirus and ubiquitin promoters, the rat probasin gene, the rat C3 prostate steroid-binding protein gene, the human *PSA* gene, and the mouse cryptic gene[76-79]. Hruska *et al*[80] created an estrogen receptor overexpressing conditional mouse line that developed mammary adenocarcinomas, which responded to estrogen and had similarities to human breast cancer histology. The transgenic adenocarcinoma mouse prostate (TRAMP) model was established in 1995, and TRAMP mice have been widely used in oncology[78,81]. In the TRAMP model, SV40 small and large T-antigens inactivate tumor-suppressor proteins and enhance the development of neoplasia[78,82]. TRAMP mice develop prostate adenocarcinoma and metastasize into para-aortic lymph nodes and lungs, and occasionally to distant sites[78]. Disadvantage of the model is that metastases develop at a relatively low frequency[4]. In addition, Chiaverotti *et al*[83] have shown that the background of TRAMP

mice (FVB instead of C57/BL) influenced the tumor type. FVB mice frequently developed neuroendocrine-type prostate tumors, while C57/BL mice developed adenocarcinomas. In addition to TRAMP mice, a popular transgenic model is c-Myc overexpression[84]. A structural variation of the c-Myc gene is common in cancer, and accordingly the increased copy number of c-Myc results in a homologous gene-expression profile with human c-Myc-overexpressing cancer, such as disappearance of NKX3.1 during tumorigenesis[85].

Alternatively, the role of specific genes in breast and prostate tumorigenesis can be studied using knockout mice. Since ablation of important genes often leads to embryonic or early fatality, genetically modified mice with conditional knockouts have been developed. Germ-line mutations in oncogenes BRCA1 and BRCA2, in which DNA repair function is interrupted, account for the majority of familial breast cancers. In order to study the role of BRCA1 in breast cancer, MMTV-cre mice have been created, and used to produce conditional mammary BRCA1 knockout mice[86].

Inactivation of the tumor suppressor gene *PTEN* is associated in approximately 70% of advanced human prostate cancers[87]. PTEN[+/-], PTEN hypomorph, and PTEN conditional knock-out models have been established to study prostate cancer progression[87-89]. Conditional PTEN knock-out leads to prostate cancer with lymph node and lung metastases[88,89]. In addition to the cre-loxP system, tissue-specific, conditional knock-out models have been created using the tetracycline promoter system under the regulation of tet operator promoter. In this model, the specific gene is expressed only under doxycycline supplementation[80].

PATIENT-DERIVED XENOGRAFTS

While cell line based models have provided invaluable knowledge of cancer progression, the utility of these systems is diminished in the light of the findings that patient derived tumor cell lines have significantly different gene expression patterns when compared to the original cell lines or the xenografted tumors[90-92]. Patient-derived xenografts (PDXs) are recent advances in personalized medicine. These models use mouse avatars, where fresh tumor tissue from the patient is grafted in order to study which therapies are most effective for an individual cancer patient. A large number of drugs or drug combinations can then be screened in the mice, which increases the likelihood that a given treatment will benefit the patient. In addition to clinics, PDX models are used increasingly as tumor models in drug development. An obvious benefit of PDX models *vs* traditional cell line - based subcutaneous xenografts is that they possess the natural tissue architecture and composition[93].

However, PDX models have many challenges. The success rate for implanting human tumors in mice is low and depending on the tumor type, engraftment efficiencies vary a lot. In clinical use, it takes more

Table 3 Comparison of different types of breast and prostate cancer xenograft models

Type	Relevant ME	Metastases	Costs	Ease	Ref.
Subcutaneous	No	No	Low	Easy	[51]
Orthotopic BrCa	Yes	Yes	Low	Easy	[45]
Orthotopic PCa	Yes	Yes	Medium	Difficult	[55]
Intratibial	Yes	Yes	Medium	Difficult	[56]
Intravenous/cardiac	Yes	Yes	Medium	Medium	[60]
Humanized	Yes	Yes	High	Difficult	[67]
PDX	Yes	No	High	Difficult	[94]

ME: Microenvironment; BrCa: Breast cancer; PCa: Prostate cancer; PDX: Patient-derived xenograft.

than six months to generate PDXs and screen potential therapies, and many patients die before they can benefit from the results. Although the patient tumor is engrafted along with human stromal components and is sustained during several passages[94], murine stroma may gradually replace the human stroma and lead to confounding results. High cost of PDX technology also limits their use. However, increased use of PDX systems with modern molecular biology techniques will continue to improve the methodology and may help more patients in the future.

There are several companies that offer breast cancer PDX models, but none that offer prostate cancer PDX models. Human prostate cancer xenografts have been implanted in immunodeficient mice subcutaneously or under the renal capsule to study, maintain, or even expand the tumor tissue[95]. This technique has been particularly tested for the propagation of the tumor tissue from castration resistant prostate cancer, which is available for research only in very limited amounts from biopsy samples.

ENDPOINTS AND IMAGING

Experimental tumors are evaluated using immuno-histochemical markers and histomorphometry that are already established in clinic. The major obstacle of comparing experimental tumors with clinical specimens is the mouse background, which may hamper immuno-histochemical stainings. Also the need for an experienced disease model pathologist may be an obstacle.

The classical endpoint in subcutaneous xenograft models is tumor dimension measurement by caliper, where tumor volume can be calculated using the formula $V = a \times b^2/2$, "a" being the biggest dimension of the tumor and "b" the perpendicular dimension[96]. If the tumors are dissected the formula of three dimensions can be used, where $V = \pi/6 \ (a \times b \times c)$[97]. Naturally, caliper measurements can only be used if the tumors are palpable. The rapid evaluation of novel drugs in animal models requires developing clinically translatable noninvasive imaging strategies, which are discussed below.

Optical imaging is based on a signal produced by

a reporter protein. The signal can be produced by constitutive expression of a fluorescent protein[98], or by enzymatic activation of an inactive substrate[99]. In both options, tumor-producing cell lines need to be transfected with a reporter molecule. A popular method of transfection is the use of genome-integrated viruses. However, they contain a risk of genotoxicity and unpredicted effects due to random integration, which may directly affect the expression levels of not only surrounding but also distant genes. Also, both plasmid and virus based methods can modify the cell behavior indirectly because they typically contain unmethylated or hypomethylated CpG sequences that act as ligands for Toll-like receptor 9, and therefore activate the immune system[100,101]. The third obstacle is that cells may spit out the redundant reporter material during the course of the experiment[102]. In a recent study, these problems were avoided by transfecting cells using non-integrated, episomal CpG-depleted lentivector with a scaffold/matrix-attachment region that acts as an initiation point of replication during mitosis, and enables efficient and stable production of labelled cell lines[103,104].

In addition to optical imaging, bone metastases can be imaged and quantitatively analysed using radiography, micro-computed tomography (CT)[105,106], or micro-magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)[107]. Multimodality functional imaging approach effectively combines the advantages of optical imaging, CT and MRI to analyze breast or prostate cancer bone lesions. Soft tissue metastases can be detected using ultrasound imaging[108], MRI[107], or *ex vivo* by histology and quantitative polymerase chain reaction[56]. Micro-ultrasound imaging can be used to image the surrounding tissue at 3 cm depth, which is usually sufficient for detecting tumors in mice, but difficult for detecting metastases due to their small size. Micro-MRI combined with a contrast agent that specifically attaches to prostate specific membrane antigen receptor, a marker implicated in prostate tumor progression and metastasis, may prove to be a sensitive technique[109].

Today, popular methods of functional imaging are single-photon emission CT and positron emission tomography combined either with CT or MRI. Although clinical use of these techniques is increasing in oncology for diagnosis and image guided radiotherapy planning, their use in preclinical studies is still limited due to their poor resolution and because they are very expensive[110].

CONCLUSION

There are several types of xenograft models available for breast and prostate cancer research (summarized in Table 3). Subcutaneous models are most widely used because they are cheap, fast and easy to perform, but they lack the correct tumor microenvironment. The presence of tumor microenvironment is very

important and necessary for obtaining results that are clinically predictive. It would be important to use preclinical efficacy models that incorporate tumor microenvironment instead of or in addition to subcutaneous models to decrease the very high number of cancer drugs that fail in clinical trials due to poor efficacy.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

REFERENCES

1 **Hanahan D**, Weinberg RA. The hallmarks of cancer. *Cell* 2000; **100**: 57-70 [PMID: 10647931 DOI: 10.1016/S0092-8674(00)81683-9]

2 **Varga J**, De Oliveira T, Greten FR. The architect who never sleeps: tumor-induced plasticity. *FEBS Lett* 2014; **588**: 2422-2427 [PMID: 24931375 DOI: 10.1016/j.febslet.2014.06.019]

3 **Polyak K**. Tumor heterogeneity confounds and illuminates: a case for Darwinian tumor evolution. *Nat Med* 2014; **20**: 344-346 [PMID: 24710378 DOI: 10.1038/nm.3518]

4 **Roy-Burman P**, Wu H, Powell WC, Hagenkord J, Cohen MB. Genetically defined mouse models that mimic natural aspects of human prostate cancer development. *Endocr Relat Cancer* 2004; **11**: 225-254 [PMID: 15163300]

5 **Guénet JL**. The mouse genome. *Genome Res* 2005; **15**: 1729-1740 [PMID: 16339371]

6 **Cheon DJ**, Orsulic S. Mouse models of cancer. *Annu Rev Pathol* 2011; **6**: 95-119 [PMID: 20936938 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.pathol.3.121806.154244]

7 **Sakakura T**, Suzuki Y, Shiurba R. Mammary stroma in development and carcinogenesis. *J Mammary Gland Biol Neoplasia* 2013; **18**: 189-197 [PMID: 23604977 DOI: 10.1007/s10911-013-9281-9]

8 **Pollard JW**. Tumour-stromal interactions. Transforming growth factor-beta isoforms and hepatocyte growth factor/scatter factor in mammary gland ductal morphogenesis. *Breast Cancer Res* 2001; **3**: 230-237 [PMID: 11434874]

9 **Sims AH**, Howell A, Howell SJ, Clarke RB. Origins of breast cancer subtypes and therapeutic implications. *Nat Clin Pract Oncol* 2007; **4**: 516-525 [PMID: 17728710]

10 **Russo J**, Lynch H, Russo IH. Mammary gland architecture as a determining factor in the susceptibility of the human breast to cancer. *Breast J* 2001; **7**: 278-291 [PMID: 11906437]

11 **Parmar H**, Cunha GR. Epithelial-stromal interactions in the mouse and human mammary gland in vivo. *Endocr Relat Cancer* 2004; **11**: 437-458 [PMID: 15369447]

12 **Dittmer J**, Leyh B. The impact of tumor stroma on drug response in breast cancer. *Semin Cancer Biol* 2015; **31C**: 3-15 [PMID: 24912116 DOI: 10.1016/j.semcancer.2014.05.006]

13 **Haagensen CD**. The physiology of the breast as it concerns the clinician. *Am J Obstet Gynecol* 1971; **109**: 206-209 [PMID: 5539119]

14 **Topper YJ**, Freeman CS. Multiple hormone interactions in the developmental biology of the mammary gland. *Physiol Rev* 1980; **60**: 1049-1106 [PMID: 7001510]

15 **Lee CH**, Akin-Olugbade O, Kirschenbaum A. Overview of prostate anatomy, histology, and pathology. *Endocrinol Metab Clin North Am* 2011; **40**: 565-575, viii-ix [PMID: 21889721 DOI: 10.1016/j.ecl.2011.05.012]

16 **Sugimura K**. [Staging and tissue characterization of prostate carcinoma: role of endorectal MR imaging and MR spectroscopy]. *Hinyokika Kiyo* 2000; **46**: 855-859 [PMID: 11193312]

17 **Sadlonova A**, Bowe DB, Novak Z, Mukherjee S, Duncan VE, Page GP, Frost AR. Identification of molecular distinctions between normal breast-associated fibroblasts and breast cancer-associated fibroblasts. *Cancer Microenviron* 2009; **2**: 9-21 [PMID: 19308679 DOI: 10.1007/s12307-008-0017-0]

18 **Egeblad M**, Nakasone ES, Werb Z. Tumors as organs: complex tissues that interface with the entire organism. *Dev Cell* 2010; **18**: 884-901 [PMID: 20627072 DOI: 10.1016/j.devcel.2010.05.012]

19 **Werbeck JL**, Thudi NK, Martin CK, Premanandan C, Yu L, Ostrowksi MC, Rosol TJ. Tumor Microenvironment Regulates Metastasis and Metastasis Genes of Mouse MMTV-PymT Mammary Cancer Cells In Vivo. *Vet Pathol* 2014; **51**: 868-881 [PMID: 24091811]

20 **Loeffler M**, Krüger JA, Niethammer AG, Reisfeld RA. Targeting tumor-associated fibroblasts improves cancer chemotherapy by increasing intratumoral drug uptake. *J Clin Invest* 2006; **116**: 1955-1962 [PMID: 16794736]

21 **Lasfargues EY**, Ozzello L. Cultivation of human breast carcinomas. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 1958; **21**: 1131-1147 [PMID: 13611537]

22 **Cailleau R**, Olivé M, Cruciger QV. Long-term human breast carcinoma cell lines of metastatic origin: preliminary characterization. *In Vitro* 1978; **14**: 911-915 [PMID: 730202]

23 **Soule HD**, Vazquez J, Long A, Albert S, Brennan M. A human cell line from a pleural effusion derived from a breast carcinoma. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 1973; **51**: 1409-1416 [PMID: 4357757]

24 **Holliday DL**, Speirs V. Choosing the right cell line for breast cancer research. *Breast Cancer Res* 2011; **13**: 215 [PMID: 21884641 DOI: 10.1186/bcr2889]

25 **van Bokhoven A**, Varella-Garcia M, Korch C, Johannes WU, Smith EE, Miller HL, Nordeen SK, Miller GJ, Lucia MS. Molecular characterization of human prostate carcinoma cell lines. *Prostate* 2003; **57**: 205-225 [PMID: 14518029]

26 **van Weerden WM**, Bangma C, de Wit R. Human xenograft models as useful tools to assess the potential of novel therapeutics in prostate cancer. *Br J Cancer* 2009; **100**: 13-18 [PMID: 19088719 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6604822]

27 **Stephenson RA**, Dinney CP, Gohji K, Ordóñez NG, Killion JJ, Fidler IJ. Metastatic model for human prostate cancer using orthotopic implantation in nude mice. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 1992; **84**: 951-957 [PMID: 1378502]

28 **Veldscholte J**, Berrevoets CA, Brinkmann AO, Grootegoed JA, Mulder E. Anti-androgens and the mutated androgen receptor of LNCaP cells: differential effects on binding affinity, heat-shock protein interaction, and transcription activation. *Biochemistry* 1992; **31**: 2393-2399 [PMID: 1540595]

29 **Loberg RD**, St John LN, Day LL, Neeley CK, Pienta KJ. Development of the VCaP androgen-independent model of prostate cancer. *Urol Oncol* 2006; **24**: 161-168 [PMID: 16520280]

30 **Korenchuk S**, Lehr JE, MClean L, Lee YG, Whitney S, Vessella R, Lin DL, Pienta KJ. VCaP, a cell-based model system of human prostate cancer. *In Vivo* 2001; **15**: 163-168 [PMID: 11317522]

31 **Tomlins SA**, Rhodes DR, Perner S, Dhanasekaran SM, Mehra R, Sun XW, Varambally S, Cao X, Tchinda J, Kuefer R, Lee C, Montie JE, Shah RB, Pienta KJ, Rubin MA, Chinnaiyan AM. Recurrent fusion of TMPRSS2 and ETS transcription factor genes in prostate cancer. *Science* 2005; **310**: 644-648 [PMID: 16254181]

32 **Sramkoski RM**, Pretlow TG, Giaconia JM, Pretlow TP, Schwartz S, Sy MS, Marengo SR, Rhim JS, Zhang D, Jacobberger JW. A new human prostate carcinoma cell line, 22Rv1. *In Vitro Cell Dev Biol Anim* 1999; **35**: 403-409 [PMID: 10462204]

33 **van Weerden WM**, de Ridder CM, Verdaasdonk CL, Romijn JC, van der Kwast TH, Schröder FH, van Steenbrugge GJ. Development of seven new human prostate tumor xenograft models and their histopathological characterization. *Am J Pathol* 1996; **149**: 1055-1062 [PMID: 8780407]

34 **Petersen OW**, Rønnov-Jessen L, Howlett AR, Bissell MJ. Interaction with basement membrane serves to rapidly distinguish growth and differentiation pattern of normal and malignant human breast epithelial cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1992; **89**: 9064-9068 [PMID: 1384042]

35 **Krause S**, Maffini MV, Soto AM, Sonnenschein C. The microenvironment determines the breast cancer cells' phenotype:

organization of MCF7 cells in 3D cultures. *BMC Cancer* 2010; **10**: 263 [PMID: 20529269 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2407-10-263]

36   **Ayala GE**, Wheeler TM, Shine HD, Schmelz M, Frolov A, Chakraborty S, Rowley D. In vitro dorsal root ganglia and human prostate cell line interaction: redefining perineural invasion in prostate cancer. *Prostate* 2001; **49**: 213-223 [PMID: 11746267]

37   **Windus LC**, Glover TT, Avery VM. Bone-stromal cells up-regulate tumourigenic markers in a tumour-stromal 3D model of prostate cancer. *Mol Cancer* 2013; **12**: 112 [PMID: 24073816 DOI: 10.1186/1476-4598-12-112]

38   **Hsiao AY**, Torisawa YS, Tung YC, Sud S, Taichman RS, Pienta KJ, Takayama S. Microfluidic system for formation of PC-3 prostate cancer co-culture spheroids. *Biomaterials* 2009; **30**: 3020-3027 [PMID: 19304321 DOI: 10.1016/j.biomaterials.2009.02.047]

39   **Hu M**, Peluffo G, Chen H, Gelman R, Schnitt S, Polyak K. Role of COX-2 in epithelial-stromal cell interactions and progression of ductal carcinoma in situ of the breast. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2009; **106**: 3372-3377 [PMID: 19218449 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0813306106]

40   **Hu M**, Yao J, Carroll DK, Weremowicz S, Chen H, Carrasco D, Richardson A, Violette S, Nikolskaya T, Nikolsky Y, Bauerlein EL, Hahn WC, Gelman RS, Allred C, Bissell MJ, Schnitt S, Polyak K. Regulation of in situ to invasive breast carcinoma transition. *Cancer Cell* 2008; **13**: 394-406 [PMID: 18455123 DOI: 10.1016/j.ccr.2008.03.007]

41   **Sharma M**, Beck AH, Webster JA, Espinosa I, Montgomery K, Varma S, van de Rijn M, Jensen KC, West RB. Analysis of stromal signatures in the tumor microenvironment of ductal carcinoma in situ. *Breast Cancer Res Treat* 2010; **123**: 397-404 [PMID: 19949854 DOI: 10.1007/s10549-009-0654-0]

42   **Espina V**, Mariani BD, Gallagher RI, Tran K, Banks S, Wiedemann J, Huryk H, Mueller C, Adamo L, Deng J, Petricoin EF, Pastore L, Zaman S, Menezes G, Mize J, Johal J, Edmiston K, Liotta LA. Malignant precursor cells pre-exist in human breast DCIS and require autophagy for survival. *PLoS One* 2010; **5**: e10240 [PMID: 20421921 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0010240]

43   **Burstein HJ**, Polyak K, Wong JS, Lester SC, Kaelin CM. Ductal carcinoma in situ of the breast. *N Engl J Med* 2004; **350**: 1430-1441 [PMID: 15070793]

44   **Sung KE**, Su X, Berthier E, Pehlke C, Friedl A, Beebe DJ. Understanding the impact of 2D and 3D fibroblast cultures on in vitro breast cancer models. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e76373 [PMID: 24124550 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0076373]

45   **Säfholm A**, Tuomela J, Rosenkvist J, Dejmek J, Härkönen P, Andersson T. The Wnt-5a-derived hexapeptide Foxy-5 inhibits breast cancer metastasis in vivo by targeting cell motility. *Clin Cancer Res* 2008; **14**: 6556-6563 [PMID: 18927296 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-08-0711]

46   **Tarkkonen KM**, Nilsson EM, Kähkönen TE, Dey JH, Heikkilä JE, Tuomela JM, Liu Q, Hynes NE, Härkönen PL. Differential roles of fibroblast growth factor receptors (FGFR) 1, 2 and 3 in the regulation of S115 breast cancer cell growth. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e49970 [PMID: 23185502 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0049970]

47   **Biswas T**, Gu X, Yang J, Ellies LG, Sun LZ. Attenuation of TGF-β signaling supports tumor progression of a mesenchymal-like mammary tumor cell line in a syngeneic murine model. *Cancer Lett* 2014; **346**: 129-138 [PMID: 24368187 DOI: 10.1016/j.canlet.2013.12.018]

48   **Tse BW**, Russell PJ, Lochner M, Förster I, Power CA. IL-18 inhibits growth of murine orthotopic prostate carcinomas via both adaptive and innate immune mechanisms. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e24241 [PMID: 21935389 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0024241]

49   **Zhang M**, Ju W, Yao Z, Yu P, Wei BR, Simpson RM, Waitz R, Fassò M, Allison JP, Waldmann TA. Augmented IL-15Rα expression by CD40 activation is critical in synergistic CD8 T cell-mediated antitumor activity of anti-CD40 antibody with IL-15 in TRAMP-C2 tumors in mice. *J Immunol* 2012; **188**: 6156-6164 [PMID: 22593619 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1102604]

50   **Sharkey FE**, Fogh J. Metastasis of human tumors in athymic nude mice. *Int J Cancer* 1979; **24**: 733-738 [PMID: 544528]

51   **Tuomela J**, Grönroos TJ, Valta MP, Sandholm J, Schrey A, Seppänen J, Marjamäki P, Forsback S, Kinnunen I, Solin O, Minn H, Härkönen PL. Fast growth associated with aberrant vasculature and hypoxia in fibroblast growth factor 8b (FGF8b) over-expressing PC-3 prostate tumour xenografts. *BMC Cancer* 2010; **10**: 596 [PMID: 21034500 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2407-10-596]

52   **Wartha K**, Herting F, Hasmann M. Fit-for purpose use of mouse models to improve predictivity of cancer therapeutics evaluation. *Pharmacol Ther* 2014; **142**: 351-361 [PMID: 24412280 DOI: 10.1016/j.pharmthera.2014.01.001]

53   **Rembrink K**, Romijn JC, van der Kwast TH, Rübben H, Schröder FH. Orthotopic implantation of human prostate cancer cell lines: a clinically relevant animal model for metastatic prostate cancer. *Prostate* 1997; **31**: 168-174 [PMID: 9167768]

54   **Tuomela J**, Sandholm J, Karihtala P, Ilvesaro J, Vuopala KS, Kauppila JH, Kauppila S, Chen D, Pressey C, Härkönen P, Harris KW, Graves D, Auvinen PK, Soini Y, Jukkola-Vuorinen A, Selander KS. Low TLR9 expression defines an aggressive subtype of triple-negative breast cancer. *Breast Cancer Res Treat* 2012; **135**: 481-493 [PMID: 22847512 DOI: 10.1007/s10549-012-2181-7]

55   **Tuomela JM**, Valta MP, Väänänen K, Härkönen PL. Alendronate decreases orthotopic PC-3 prostate tumor growth and metastasis to prostate-draining lymph nodes in nude mice. *BMC Cancer* 2008; **8**: 81 [PMID: 18371232 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2407-8-81]

56   **Valta MP**, Tuomela J, Vuorikoski H, Loponen N, Väänänen RM, Pettersson K, Väänänen HK, Härkönen PL. FGF-8b induces growth and rich vascularization in an orthotopic PC-3 model of prostate cancer. *J Cell Biochem* 2009; **107**: 769-784 [PMID: 19415685 DOI: 10.1002/jcb.22175]

57   **Tuomela J**, Valta M, Seppänen J, Tarkkonen K, Väänänen HK, Härkönen P. Overexpression of vascular endothelial growth factor C increases growth and alters the metastatic pattern of orthotopic PC-3 prostate tumors. *BMC Cancer* 2009; **9**: 362 [PMID: 19821979 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2407-9-362]

58   **Hafeez BB**, Zhong W, Fischer JW, Mustafa A, Shi X, Meske L, Hong H, Cai W, Havighurst T, Kim K, Verma AK. Plumbagin, a medicinal plant (Plumbago zeylanica)-derived 1,4-naphthoquinone, inhibits growth and metastasis of human prostate cancer PC-3M-luciferase cells in an orthotopic xenograft mouse model. *Mol Oncol* 2013; **7**: 428-439 [PMID: 23273564 DOI: 10.1016/j.molonc.2012.12.001]

59   **Minn AJ**, Gupta GP, Siegel PM, Bos PD, Shu W, Giri DD, Viale A, Olshen AB, Gerald WL, Massagué J. Genes that mediate breast cancer metastasis to lung. *Nature* 2005; **436**: 518-524 [PMID: 16049480]

60   **Shevrin DH**, Gorny KI, Kukreja SC. Patterns of metastasis by the human prostate cancer cell line PC-3 in athymic nude mice. *Prostate* 1989; **15**: 187-194 [PMID: 2529482]

61   **Wu TT**, Sikes RA, Cui Q, Thalmann GN, Kao C, Murphy CF, Yang H, Zhau HE, Balian G, Chung LW. Establishing human prostate cancer cell xenografts in bone: induction of osteoblastic reaction by prostate-specific antigen-producing tumors in athymic and SCID/bg mice using LNCaP and lineage-derived metastatic sublines. *Int J Cancer* 1998; **77**: 887-894 [PMID: 9714059]

62   **Yu C**, Shiozawa Y, Taichman RS, McCauley LK, Pienta K, Keller E. Prostate cancer and parasitism of the bone hematopoietic stem cell niche. *Crit Rev Eukaryot Gene Expr* 2012; **22**: 131-148 [PMID: 22856431]

63   **Nowell PC**. The clonal evolution of tumor cell populations. *Science* 1976; **194**: 23-28 [PMID: 959840]

64   **Yoneda T**, Williams PJ, Hiraga T, Niewolna M, Nishimura R. A bone-seeking clone exhibits different biological properties from the MDA-MB-231 parental human breast cancer cells and a brain-seeking clone in vivo and in vitro. *J Bone Miner Res* 2001; **16**: 1486-1495 [PMID: 11499871]

65   **Peyruchaud O**, Winding B, Pécheur I, Serre CM, Delmas P, Clézardin P. Early detection of bone metastases in a murine model using fluorescent human breast cancer cells: application to the use of the bisphosphonate zoledronic acid in the treatment of osteolytic lesions. *J Bone Miner Res* 2001; **16**: 2027-2034 [PMID: 11697798]

66   **Kuperwasser C**, Chavarria T, Wu M, Magrane G, Gray JW, Carey L, Richardson A, Weinberg RA. Reconstruction of functionally normal and malignant human breast tissues in mice. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2004; **101**: 4966-4971 [PMID: 15051869]

67   **Nemeth JA**, Harb JF, Barroso U, He Z, Grignon DJ, Cher ML. Severe combined immunodeficient-hu model of human prostate cancer metastasis to human bone. *Cancer Res* 1999; **59**: 1987-1993 [PMID: 10213511]

68   **Yonou H**, Yokose T, Kamijo T, Kanomata N, Hasebe T, Nagai K, Hatano T, Ogawa Y, Ochiai A. Establishment of a novel species- and tissue-specific metastasis model of human prostate cancer in humanized non-obese diabetic/severe combined immunodeficient mice engrafted with human adult lung and bone. *Cancer Res* 2001; **61**: 2177-2182 [PMID: 11280783]

69   **Kuperwasser C**, Dessain S, Bierbaum BE, Garnet D, Sperandio K, Gauvin GP, Naber SP, Weinberg RA, Rosenblatt M. A mouse model of human breast cancer metastasis to human bone. *Cancer Res* 2005; **65**: 6130-6138 [PMID: 16024614]

70   **Ottewell PD**, Wang N, Meek J, Fowles CA, Croucher PI, Eaton CL, Holen I. Castration-induced bone loss triggers growth of disseminated prostate cancer cells in bone. *Endocr Relat Cancer* 2014; **21**: 769-781 [PMID: 25052474 DOI: 10.1530/ERC-14-0199]

71   **Reichert JC**, Saifzadeh S, Wullschleger ME, Epari DR, Schütz MA, Duda GN, Schell H, van Griensven M, Redl H, Hutmacher DW. The challenge of establishing preclinical models for segmental bone defect research. *Biomaterials* 2009; **30**: 2149-2163 [PMID: 19211141 DOI: 10.1016/j.biomaterials.2008.12.050]

72   **Holzapfel BM**, Thibaudeau L, Hesami P, Taubenberger A, Holzapfel NP, Mayer-Wagner S, Power C, Clements J, Russell P, Hutmacher DW. Humanised xenograft models of bone metastasis revisited: novel insights into species-specific mechanisms of cancer cell osteotropism. *Cancer Metastasis Rev* 2013; **32**: 129-145 [PMID: 23657538 DOI: 10.1007/s10555-013-9437-5]

73   **Kirma NB**, Tekmal RR. Transgenic mouse models of hormonal mammary carcinogenesis: advantages and limitations. *J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol* 2012; **131**: 76-82 [PMID: 22119744 DOI: 10.1016/j.jsbmb.2011.11.005]

74   **Cardiff RD**. Validity of mouse mammary tumour models for human breast cancer: comparative pathology. *Microsc Res Tech* 2001; **52**: 224-230 [PMID: 11169869]

75   **DePinho RA**. The age of cancer. *Nature* 2000; **408**: 248-254 [PMID: 11089982]

76   **Bosland MC**. Use of animal models in defining efficacy of chemoprevention agents against prostate cancer. *Eur Urol* 1999; **35**: 459-463 [PMID: 10325505]

77   **Green JE**, Greenberg NM, Ashendel CL, Barrett JC, Boone C, Getzenberg RH, Henkin J, Matusik R, Janus TJ, Scher HI. Workgroup 3: transgenic and reconstitution models of prostate cancer. *Prostate* 1998; **36**: 59-63 [PMID: 9650918]

78   **Gingrich JR**, Barrios RJ, Morton RA, Boyce BF, DeMayo FJ, Finegold MJ, Angelopoulou R, Rosen JM, Greenberg NM. Metastatic prostate cancer in a transgenic mouse. *Cancer Res* 1996; **56**: 4096-4102 [PMID: 8797572]

79   **Marconett CN**, Morgenstern TJ, San Roman AK, Sundar SN, Singhal AK, Firestone GL. BZL101, a phytochemical extract from the Scutellaria barbata plant, disrupts proliferation of human breast and prostate cancer cells through distinct mechanisms dependent on the cancer cell phenotype. *Cancer Biol Ther* 2010; **10**: 397-405 [PMID: 20574166]

80   **Hruska KS**, Tilli MT, Ren S, Cotarla I, Kwong T, Li M, Fondell JD, Hewitt JA, Koos RD, Furth PA, Flaws JA. Conditional over-expression of estrogen receptor alpha in a transgenic mouse model. *Transgenic Res* 2002; **11**: 361-372 [PMID: 12212839]

81   **Greenberg NM**, DeMayo F, Finegold MJ, Medina D, Tilley WD, Aspinall JO, Cunha GR, Donjacour AA, Matusik RJ, Rosen JM. Prostate cancer in a transgenic mouse. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1995; **92**: 3439-3443 [PMID: 7724580]

82   **Kasper S**, Sheppard PC, Yan Y, Pettigrew N, Borowsky AD, Prins GS, Dodd JG, Duckworth ML, Matusik RJ. Development, progression, and androgen-dependence of prostate tumors in

probasin-large T antigen transgenic mice: a model for prostate cancer. *Lab Invest* 1998; **78**: 319-333 [PMID: 9520945]

83   **Chiaverotti T**, Couto SS, Donjacour A, Mao JH, Nagase H, Cardiff RD, Cunha GR, Balmain A. Dissociation of epithelial and neuroendocrine carcinoma lineages in the transgenic adenocarcinoma of mouse prostate model of prostate cancer. *Am J Pathol* 2008; **172**: 236-246 [PMID: 18156212]

84   **Ellwood-Yen K**, Graeber TG, Wongvipat J, Iruela-Arispe ML, Zhang J, Matusik R, Thomas GV, Sawyers CL. Myc-driven murine prostate cancer shares molecular features with human prostate tumors. *Cancer Cell* 2003; **4**: 223-238 [PMID: 14522256]

85   **He WW**, Sciavolino PJ, Wing J, Augustus M, Hudson P, Meissner PS, Curtis RT, Shell BK, Bostwick DG, Tindall DJ, Gelmann EP, Abate-Shen C, Carter KC. A novel human prostate-specific, androgen-regulated homeobox gene (NKX3.1) that maps to 8p21, a region frequently deleted in prostate cancer. *Genomics* 1997; **43**: 69-77 [PMID: 9226374]

86   **Xu X**, Wagner KU, Larson D, Weaver Z, Li C, Ried T, Hennighausen L, Wynshaw-Boris A, Deng CX. Conditional mutation of Brca1 in mammary epithelial cells results in blunted ductal morphogenesis and tumour formation. *Nat Genet* 1999; **22**: 37-43 [PMID: 10319859]

87   **Steck PA**, Pershouse MA, Jasser SA, Yung WK, Lin H, Ligon AH, Langford LA, Baumgard ML, Hattier T, Davis T, Frye C, Hu R, Swedlund B, Teng DH, Tavtigian SV. Identification of a candidate tumour suppressor gene, MMAC1, at chromosome 10q23.3 that is mutated in multiple advanced cancers. *Nat Genet* 1997; **15**: 356-362 [PMID: 9090379]

88   **Simpson L**, Parsons R. PTEN: life as a tumor suppressor. *Exp Cell Res* 2001; **264**: 29-41 [PMID: 11237521]

89   **Trotman LC**, Niki M, Dotan ZA, Koutcher JA, Di Cristofano A, Xiao A, Khoo AS, Roy-Burman P, Greenberg NM, Van Dyke T, Cordon-Cardo C, Pandolfi PP. Pten dose dictates cancer progression in the prostate. *PLoS Biol* 2003; **1**: E59 [PMID: 14691534]

90   **Jin K**, Teng L, Shen Y, He K, Xu Z, Li G. Patient-derived human tumour tissue xenografts in immunodeficient mice: a systematic review. *Clin Transl Oncol* 2010; **12**: 473-480 [PMID: 20615824 DOI: 10.1007/s12094-010-0540-6]

91   **Daniel VC**, Marchionni L, Hierman JS, Rhodes JT, Devereux WL, Rudin CM, Yung R, Parmigiani G, Dorsch M, Peacock CD, Watkins DN. A primary xenograft model of small-cell lung cancer reveals irreversible changes in gene expression imposed by culture in vitro. *Cancer Res* 2009; **69**: 3364-3373 [PMID: 19351829 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-08-4210]

92   **Kopetz S**, Lemos R, Powis G. The promise of patient-derived xenografts: the best laid plans of mice and men. *Clin Cancer Res* 2012; **18**: 5160-5162 [PMID: 22912394 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-12-2408]

93   **Goldstein AS**, Huang J, Guo C, Garraway IP, Witte ON. Identification of a cell of origin for human prostate cancer. *Science* 2010; **329**: 568-571 [PMID: 20671189 DOI: 10.1126/science.1189992]

94   **Thong AE**, Zhao H, Ingels A, Valta MP, Nolley R, Santos J, Young SR, Peehl DM. Tissue slice grafts of human renal cell carcinoma: an authentic preclinical model with high engraftment rate and metastatic potential. *Urol Oncol* 2014; **32**: 43.e23-43.e30 [PMID: 23911681 DOI: 10.1016/j.urolonc.2013.05.008]

95   **Toivanen R**, Taylor RA, Pook DW, Ellem SJ, Risbridger GP. Breaking through a roadblock in prostate cancer research: an update on human model systems. *J Steroid Biochem Mol Biol* 2012; **131**: 122-131 [PMID: 22342674 DOI: 10.1016/j.jsbmb.2012.01.005]

96   **Carlsson G**, Gullberg B, Hafström L. Estimation of liver tumor volume using different formulas - an experimental study in rats. *J Cancer Res Clin Oncol* 1983; **105**: 20-23 [PMID: 6833336]

97   **Tomayko MM**, Reynolds CP. Determination of subcutaneous tumor size in athymic (nude) mice. *Cancer Chemother Pharmacol* 1989; **24**: 148-154 [PMID: 2544306]

98   **Bobek V**, Hoffman RM, Kolostova K. Site-specific cytomorphology of disseminated PC-3 prostate cancer cells visualized in vivo with fluorescent proteins. *Diagn Cytopathol* 2013; **41**: 413-417 [PMID:

22508666 DOI: 10.1002/dc.22843]

99 **Quintana E**, Piskounova E, Shackleton M, Weinberg D, Eskiocak U, Fullen DR, Johnson TM, Morrison SJ. Human melanoma metastasis in NSG mice correlates with clinical outcome in patients. *Sci Transl Med* 2012; **4**: 159ra149 [PMID: 23136044 DOI: 10.1126/scitranslmed.3004599]

100 **Bauer S**, Kirschning CJ, Häcker H, Redecke V, Hausmann S, Akira S, Wagner H, Lipford GB. Human TLR9 confers responsiveness to bacterial DNA via species-specific CpG motif recognition. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2001; **98**: 9237-9242 [PMID: 11470918]

101 **Hyde SC**, Pringle IA, Abdullah S, Lawton AE, Davies LA, Varathalingam A, Nunez-Alonso G, Green AM, Bazzani RP, Sumner-Jones SG, Chan M, Li H, Yew NS, Cheng SH, Boyd AC, Davies JC, Griesenbach U, Porteous DJ, Sheppard DN, Munkonge FM, Alton EW, Gill DR. CpG-free plasmids confer reduced inflammation and sustained pulmonary gene expression. *Nat Biotechnol* 2008; **26**: 549-551 [PMID: 18438402 DOI: 10.1038/nbt1399]

102 **Haase R**, Argyros O, Wong SP, Harbottle RP, Lipps HJ, Ogris M, Magnusson T, Vizoso Pinto MG, Haas J, Baiker A. pEPito: a significantly improved non-viral episomal expression vector for mammalian cells. *BMC Biotechnol* 2010; **10**: 20 [PMID: 20230618 DOI: 10.1186/1472-6750-10-20]

103 **Argyros O**, Wong SP, Fedonidis C, Tolmachov O, Waddington SN, Howe SJ, Niceta M, Coutelle C, Harbottle RP. Development of S/MAR minicircles for enhanced and persistent transgene expression in the mouse liver. *J Mol Med* (Berl) 2011; **89**: 515-529 [PMID:

21301798 DOI: 10.1007/s00109-010-0713-3]

104 **Wong SP**, Harbottle RP. Genetic modification of dividing cells using episomally maintained S/MAR DNA vectors. *Mol Ther Nucleic Acids* 2013; **2**: e115 [PMID: 23941867 DOI: 10.1038/mtna.2013.40]

105 **Valta MP**, Tuomela J, Bjartell A, Valve E, Väänänen HK, Härkönen P. FGF-8 is involved in bone metastasis of prostate cancer. *Int J Cancer* 2008; **123**: 22-31 [PMID: 18386787 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.23422]

106 **Clark DP**, Badea CT. Micro-CT of rodents: state-of-the-art and future perspectives. *Phys Med* 2014; **30**: 619-634 [PMID: 24974176 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejmp.2014.05.011]

107 **Jennbacken K**, Gustavsson H, Tesan T, Horn M, Vallbo C, Welén K, Damber JE. The prostatic environment suppresses growth of androgen-independent prostate cancer xenografts: an effect influenced by testosterone. *Prostate* 2009; **69**: 1164-1175 [PMID: 19399749 DOI: 10.1002/pros.20965]

108 **Kraaij R**, van Weerden WM, de Ridder CM, Gussenhoven EJ, Honkoop J, Nasu Y, Bangma CH. Validation of transrectal ultrasonographic volumetry for orthotopic prostate tumours in mice. *Lab Anim* 2002; **36**: 165-172 [PMID: 11943081]

109 **Bates D**, Abraham S, Campbell M, Zehbe I, Curiel L. Development and characterization of an antibody-labeled super-paramagnetic iron oxide contrast agent targeting prostate cancer cells for magnetic resonance imaging. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e97220 [PMID: 24819929 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0097220]

110 **Minn H**. PET and SPECT in low-grade glioma. *Eur J Radiol* 2005; **56**: 171-178 [PMID: 16233891]

Improving cancer therapy by targeting cancer stem cells: Directions, challenges, and clinical results

Pier Adelchi Ruffini, Valentina Vaja, Marcello Allegretti

Pier Adelchi Ruffini, Valentina Vaja, Marcello Allegretti, Research and Development Department, Dompé Farmaceutici S.p.A., 20122 Milano, Italy

Author contributions: Ruffini PA, Vaja V and Allegretti M contributed to this paper.

Conflict-of-interest: Pier Adelchi Ruffini, Valentina Vaja and Marcello Allegretti are employees of Dompé Farmaceutici S.p.A.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/

Correspondence to: Pier Adelchi Ruffini, MD, PhD, Research and Development Department, Dompé Farmaceutici S.p.A., via S. Lucia 6, 20122 Milano, Italy. pieradelchi.ruffini@dompe.com
Telephone: +39-02-58383500
Fax: +39-02-58383324
Received: September 30, 2014
Peer-review started: October 1, 2014
First decision: October 28, 2014
Revised: November 26, 2014
Accepted: February 9, 2015
Article in press: February 11, 2015
Published online: March 9, 2015

Abstract

Cancer stem cells (CSC) are a rare cell population within a tumor characterized by the ability to form tumors following injection into an immunocompromised host. While the role of CSC has been clearly established in animal models, evidence of their clinical relevance has been harder to demonstrate. A number of markers, or combination thereof, have been used to detect and measure, although non-specifically, CSC in almost all human tumors. Several pathways have been identified as crucial for, but not necessarily unique to, CSC survival and proliferation, and novel agents have been designed to target such pathways. A number of such agents have entered early phase development. Further, drugs that have long been marketed for non-oncological indications have been redirected to oncology as they appear to affect one or more of such pathways. This article aims to review the available evidence on the clinical relevance of CSC from a drug development standpoint and the results of early phase clinical trials of agents interfering with the above pathways. It also discusses limitations of current clinical trial design and endpoints to demonstrate anti-CSC activity as well as possible strategies to overcome these limitations.

Key words: Cancer stem cells; Cancer; Time to new metastasis; Tumor heterogeneity; Drug development

Core tip: Cancer stem cells are a rare cell population with two embedded fundamental properties: self-renewal and differentiation into the heterogeneous lineages of cancer cells that comprise the tumor. While the identification and role of such cells has been clearly established *in vitro* and in animal models, uncertainty remains as to the role they play in human tumors and their relevance as therapeutic targets. The article summarizes and discusses the latest findings and challenges on cancer stem cell research, the significance of these cells beyond experimental models and suggests avenues for development of cancer stem cell targeting agents.

Ruffini PA, Vaja V, Allegretti M. Improving cancer therapy by targeting cancer stem cells: Directions, challenges, and clinical results. *World J Pharmacol* 2015; 4(1): 58-74 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3192/full/v4/i1/58.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5497/wjp.v4.i1.58

INTRODUCTION

In order to explain tumor heterogeneity, the clonal theory of cancer initiation and progression was proposed[1], stating that each cell within a tumor has equal potential in acquiring genetic and/or epigenetic changes, conferring growth advantages and generating new tumors. This model presumes that all cells within a given tumor have the same tumorigenic potential, and it is called classical or stochastic.

In the cancer stem cell paradigm of tumors, heterogeneous neoplastic cells are organized in a hierarchy where only a small subset of cancer cells, the cancer stem cells (CSC), is responsible for tumor initiation and growth maintenance. According to a consensus definition[2], a CSC is a cell within a tumor that possesses the capacity to self-renew and to generate the heterogeneous lineages of cancer cells that comprise the tumor. CSC could be tissue stem cells or a more differentiated progeny, which acquired self-renewal capacity[3-5]. There are 2 mechanisms that could mediate the transformation of normal stem cells to CSC[6,7]: (1) Early progenitor cells can gain mutations, which gives them self-renewal capacity; and (2) Fully differentiated cells or cells in the late progenitor stage can become de-differentiated to acquire the properties of stem cells.

Activation of oncogenes or inactivation of tumor suppressor genes are the major types of mutations involved in these processes. CSC may indeed arise from normal stem cells by mutation of genes that make the stem cells cancerous, but this may not be the case in all tumors. For example, in blast crisis chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML), a committed granulocyte-macrophage progenitor may acquire self-renewal capacity and thus "reacquire" stem-like properties due to the effects of later mutations[2]. It is conceivable that more differentiated cells can, through multiple mutagenic events, acquire the self-renewal capacity and immortality that typify CSC. In these examples, a differentiated cell, not the tissue stem cell, eventually evolves to become a full-blown CSC.

The first compelling evidence on the existence of CSC was presented by Bonnet *et al*[8] through their seminal work on leukemic stem cells, where they showed that these cells possess characteristic functional properties of stem cells. They demonstrated that the cell capable of initiating human acute myeloid leukemia in non-obese diabetic mice with severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID)-termed the SCID leukemia-initiating cell-possesses the differentiative and proliferative capacities and the potential for self-renewal expected of a leukemic stem cell. The SCID leukemia-initiating cells were able to differentiate *in vivo* into leukemic blasts, indicating that the leukemic clone is organized as a hierarchy.

CSC have been identified also in solid tumors, including breast, lung, colon, prostate and pancreatic cancers, all supporting the model that cancer derives from a subpopulation of CSC capable of self-renewal to initiate and sustain tumor growth[9,10].

Functional assays were performed in all of these studies, in which cell suspensions of cancer cells were inoculated into immunodeficient mice. This assay is currently considered the gold standard for studying the degree of stemness in a subpopulation of human cancer cells that drives tumorigenicity. In fact, CSC are not necessarily derived from stem cells although they share functional similarities to normal stem cells.

Therefore, the definition of CSC remains mainly operational, *i.e.*, the ability to form tumors in an animal model, which is, although imperfect[11], regarded as the best functional assay to meet the two critical criteria of the consensus CSC definition[2]. The implementation of this approach explains the use of alternative terms in the literature, such as "tumor-initiating cell" and "tumorigenic cell" to describe putative CSC.

However, the results of this assay have been questioned, as it may measure the ability of human tumor cells to grow in immunodeficient mice and not necessarily the actual frequency of CSC in the tumor. It has been demonstrated that only rare human cancer cells (0.1%-0.0001%) form tumors when transplanted into immunodeficient mice. However, modifications to xenotransplantation assays (*i.e.*, the degree of immunodeficiency of mice) can dramatically increase the detectable frequency of tumorigenic cells, demonstrating that they are common in some human cancers[12]. Furthermore, introducing human tumor cells in Matrigel containing a cocktail of growth factors to a foreign species such as a mouse may compromise the growth of human cancer cells[13], indicating the importance of the tumor microenvironment in tumorigenesis. Last, the nature of the proteolytic enzymes used, the duration of incubation, and the temperature at which the tumor cells are dissociated into single cells in order to perform xenotransplantation might further result in the under-estimation of the percentage of CSC, even with the same type of tumor. It follows that if the cancer initiating cells are not rare, the hierarchical model of CSC may be questioned[12]. It should be stressed that the aforementioned findings do not disprove the CSC paradigm. The CSC paradigm is directly related to tumor heterogeneity and tumor's hierarchical organization, and not to the absolute number of these cells[14]. Thus, evidence of CSC in many human tumors has been described using the xenotransplantation model by highlighting that a fraction of tumor cells, and not all cancer cells, are tumorigenic and may thus represent a distinct therapeutic target[15].

From a therapeutic perspective, it is important to acknowledge that other targets exist beyond the CSC themselves to affect this cell population. In fact, the tumor microenvironment, the CSC niche, and cytokine loops play essential roles in the maintenance of CSC and in tumor growth and development[16,17].

Table 1 Commonly used Cancer Stem Cells Markers

Marker	Association with chemoresistance	Reported malignancies
CD34		Hematological malignancies (in combination with CD38)[8,36]
CD38		Hematological malignancies (in combination with CD34)[8,36]
CD24	Yes (in combination with CD44)[63]	Breast, prostate, pancreas (in combination with CD44)[15,23]
CD44	Yes (in combination with CD24)[63]	Breast, pancreas, stomach, prostate, head and neck, ovary, colon (in combination with CD24)[15,23]
CD133	Yes[24,25]	Brain, pancreas, lung, liver, prostate, stomach, colon, head and neck[15,23]
ALDH	Yes[60,61]	Breast, lung, head and neck, colon, liver, ovary[15,26]

ALDH: Aldehyde dehydrogenase.

For example, Feng *et al*[18] demonstrated that tumor microenvironment stromal cells create a growth advantage for CSC in a model of multiple myeloma. In that study, the proliferative capacity of multiple myeloma stem cells was stronger when grown in the presence of stromal cells from patients with myeloma than it was in the presence of stromal cells from normal control bone marrow.

If CSC are relatively refractory to therapies (*e.g.*, chemotherapy, radiotherapy) that have been developed to eradicate the rapidly dividing cells that constitute the majority of the non-stem cell component of tumors, then such therapies are unlikely to be curative and relapses would be expected. If correct, the cancer stem cell hypothesis would require adjustments to the way tumors are diagnosed and treated. The objective would have to be not only to eliminate the bulk of rapidly dividing but terminally differentiated components of the tumor responsible for tumor-associated symptoms, but also the minority stem cell population that fuels tumor growth and is responsible for disease relapse and metastases.

CANCER STEM CELL SURFACE MARKERS

Besides discussion about the pitfalls of the functional assay used to identify CSC, it is intuitive that such an assay is unfit for clinical development of any novel drug as it would require ready availability of immunodeficient mice to be injected with single cell suspensions of patient-derived cancer cells before and after treatment, if one is to demonstrate presence of CSC and their reduction following treatment.

Therefore, more practical assays have been developed to be implemented in clinical research. An *in vitro* tumorsphere assay was used to evidence the self-renewal properties of CSC in human brain tumors[19,20]. This assay is now widely used in clinical research inasmuch as it requires live cells, and this requirement may not be always satisfied in large, multicenter clinical trials. The easiest way to identify and measure CSC within tumors or in the bloodstream would be to use CSC-specific or - associated cell surface marker proteins. By staining cells with antibodies against these markers, populations of interest could be easily identified and measured by either flow cytometry (which requires live cells) or immunohistochemistry (which does not require live cells).

Several markers are commonly used to isolate CSC in normal and tumor tissue, but it is not clear if they are universal markers for characterizing CSC from all tumor types. Furthermore, expression of markers may not be restricted to the CSC population and may be present in normal stem cells, early progenitor cells and normal tissues.

Although many markers have been proposed to define CSC populations, here we focus on the ones most widely used in the literature (Table 1).

The pentaspan transmembrane glycoprotein CD133, also known as prominin-1, was discovered as the target of the AC133 monoclonal antibody, specific for the CD34[+] population of hematopoietic stem cells. Subsequently, it was shown to be expressed by a number of normal stem and progenitor cells including those of the epithelium, where it is expressed on the apical surface[21]. The biological role of CD133 has yet to be clarified.

Best known for being expressed on the tumor-initiating population of brain neoplasms[22] the CD133[+] phenotype has recently been used to define the CSC populations in lung, pancreatic, liver, prostate, gastric, colorectal, as well as head and neck cancers, and CD133[+] cells clearly generated tumors in immunocompromised mice more efficiently than their CD133-counterpart[23]. Also, CD133[+] CSC display resistance to traditional chemotherapies[24,25].

A valid stem cell marker among several malignant and non-malignant tissues is aldehyde dehydrogenase (ALDH). ALDH is an intracellular enzyme that oxidizes aldehydes. It holds the attractive distinction of being not only a potential marker of "stemness", but it potentially plays a role in the biology of tumor initiating cells as well[26].

Traditional methods such as immunohistochemistry and blotting are used to detect levels of ALDH in tissues and cells, but the method of choice to measure ALDH activity is the flow cytometry-based Aldefluor assay[27]. In the past few years, Aldefluor has been used to characterize CSC in breast, lung, head and neck, colon, and liver tumors and cell lines. Although CSC are enriched in ALDH[+] populations in several tissues,

it is important to acknowledge possible limitations of this marker, especially when used as a single marker. Enzymatic activity measured by Aldefluor is much more transient than the expression of traditional surface markers and may be altered by treatment of tumors or cells[23]. ALDH activity has been used as a marker for CSC in malignancies characterized by the presence and/or absence of cell-surface markers like the CD44[+]/CD24[-/low] and CD133[+] populations such as breast cancer and ovarian cancer, respectively[9,28] and early reports suggest that the use of ALDH may "refine" the CSC population because the CSC populations defined above and the ALDH[+] populations rarely overlap completely[23].

CD44 is a transmembrane glycoprotein which mediates cell adhesion and migration by binding extracellular matrix components such as hyaluronic acid and osteopontin, or by activating receptor tyrosine kinases related to tumor progression, invasion and metastasis. CD44 is reported as a CSC marker across several tissues, including breast, pancreas, gastric, prostate, head and neck, ovarian, and colon[15]. In both preclinical models and clinical research, however, CD44 is most commonly used in combination with other markers, *e.g.*, CD24.

CD24 is a glycosylphosphatidylinositol-linked cell surface protein expressed in various solid tumors[29]. Expression of CD24 in adult non-malignant tissue is limited to B cells, granulocytes, and epithelial cells[30,31]. The normal function of CD24 outside of B cells is poorly understood. The presence or absence of CD24 on the cell surface has been used as a marker for putative CSC. Breast and prostate CSC (CD44[+]/CD24[-]) were found to have increased adhesion, invasion and migration characteristics when compared with CD24-expressing cells[32], and prostate cells that were able to migrate through Matrigel had suppressed CD24 expression along with decreased levels of E-cadherin[33].

The presence or absence of CD24 as a CSC marker seems to be tissue specific, *i.e.*, breast (CD44[+]/CD24[-/low])[9], prostate (CD44[+]/CD24[-])[34] and pancreatic (CD44[+]/CD24[+]/ESA[+])[35] cancers.

All the above markers have been used alone or in combination to define CSC populations in solid tumors. The most commonly used markers to define CSC in hematological malignancies are CD34 and CD38, which are used in combination[8,36]. Also for these markers, expression is not restricted to CSC, as they are expressed also by normal hematopoietic and non-hematopoietic cells as well as hematopoietic stem and progenitor cells (CD34).

CLINICAL EVIDENCE FOR A ROLE OF CSC IN CANCER INITIATION, RELAPSE AND METASTASES

Following the demonstration that only CSC identified in patients' tumor cells by the previously described markers can form tumors following injection into immunodeficient mice, a number of studies has been conducted to measure CSC in human tumors and to explore their association with prognosis. These studies are important as they would contribute to validate CSC as a therapeutic target and to confirm the correlation between the presence of such cells in tumor samples with unfavorable outcome, independent of any other prognostic factor. Methodologically, most of these studies are retrospective, which in itself carries limitations due to change over time in diagnostic and therapeutic procedures. Breast cancer is by far the most thoroughly investigated solid tumor. Two meta-analyses have been published. The first reported on 9 studies including a total of 2121 patients and demonstrated that the presence of ALDH[+] CSC and CD44[+]/CD24[-/low] CSC was significantly associated with poor overall survival[37]. All of the studies included in the meta-analysis used either ALDH or CD44/CD24 as CSC marker. More recently, a second meta-analysis on 3274 patients using ALDH as the sole CSC marker (sharing 7 out of 16 studies and more than 2000 patients with the first meta-analysis) confirmed the association between the presence of ALDH[+] CSC and reduced patient survival irrespective of the different cutoff values used in the different studies to define ALDH positivity[38]. However, breast cancer can be divided into several subtypes, either into histopathological categories based upon expression or lack of hormone receptors and HER2 amplification, or into molecularly identifiable categories using gene expression signatures[39]. The presence and clinical significance of CSC have been investigated in most subtypes[40,41]. In this respect, it is interesting to note that CSC have been shown to be represented at an increased percentage in some breast cancer subtypes. For example, Triple Negative Breast Cancer (TNBC) has been described as the most CSC enriched breast cancer subtype[42-44] Further molecular dissection of TNBC identified mesenchymal stem cell-Like[45] and claudin-low[46] as the most CSC enriched subgroups. It has been shown *in vitro* that breast cancer cell lines of the luminal subtype do not always contain a sizeable ALDH[+] cell population, whereas 16/16 basal-like cell lines displayed a CSC population identified by the same marker[47]. Indeed, with a cutoff for positivity set at ≥ 5% in most studies, it would appear that a minority of tumors display a sizeable CSC population identified by a single marker or combination of markers (*i.e.*, CD44[+]/CD24[-], ALDH[+])[37,38]. It remains to be demonstrated whether this is due to suboptimal markers to identify CSC and/or the limited overlap between CSC populations identified by either marker alone[41,48,49].

In other solid tumors similar results have been reported, although the number of patients studied is in general far lower. In ovarian cancer, the presence of ALDH[+]/CD133[+] cells in debulked primary tumor specimens correlated with reduced disease-free and overall survival in 56 ovarian cancer patients[28]. These findings were confirmed by a meta-analysis of 1258

patients from 7 studies, in which ALDH was used as a single CSC marker[50]. In prostate cancer, detection of ALDH[+] CSC correlated with shorter median survival in hormone naïve, but not in castration resistant, tumors. The two groups consisted of 100 and 107 patients, respectively[51]. In gastric cancer, presence of ALDH[+] CSC was found to be an independent prognostic factor for both overall survival and recurrence-free survival[52] in a population of 216 patients. In pancreatic cancer, expression of the CSC markers CD133, CD44 and CD24 was found to correlate with poor prognosis in a sample of 65 patients[53]. In hematological malignancies, it has been found that CD34[+]/ALDH[+] CSC in the bone marrow of 68 patients with acute myeloid leukemia at diagnosis correlated with reduced survival probability[54]. In conclusion, retrospective studies have found a negative prognostic role of pretreatment CSC, in keeping with their alleged resistance to chemo- and radiotherapy.

EVIDENCE OF CSC RESISTANCE TO CHEMOTHERAPY

Breast cancer is the solid tumor in which this issue has been explored most thoroughly. Breast cancer CSC have been shown to display resistance to commonly used chemotherapeutic agents (*e.g.*, paclitaxel) *in vitro*[55] and in mice[56,57]. In patients, neoadjuvant (*i.e.*, administered before surgery) chemotherapy represents the ideal setting for assessing the efficacy of chemotherapy against CSC, as the primary tumor is readily available to serial biopsies before, during and at the completion of treatment. In the majority of clinical trials of neoadjuvant chemotherapy, the proportion of CSC identified by marker expression and/or mammosphere forming efficiency was found to be increased following treatment[58-60] despite reduction of tumor size, highlighting that chemosensitivity of the bulk tumor cells is not shared by CSC.

In these studies, 56% or fewer patients had ALDH[+] CSC in their tumors at diagnosis, using a cutoff of ≥ 5% to ≥ 20% (reviewed in[61]). In keeping with preclinical findings[41,62], it was reported that the ALDH[+] phenotype[60,61], or the CD44[+]/CD24[-] phenotype[63], is associated with chemoresistance However, the studies by Lee *et al*[59] and Gong *et al*[62] came to the opposite conclusion, *i.e.*, ALDH[+] CSC correlated with increased pathologic or clinical responses, respectively. The reasons for this discrepancy could be different chemotherapy regimens administered to patients, different patient populations, or different antibody and cutoff values used to evaluate ALDH positivity in breast cancer samples.

The study by Alamgeer *et al*[61] is the only prospective evaluation of ALDH[+] cells in serial biopsies of breast cancer. Biopsies were obtained before neoadjuvant chemotherapy, following 4 cycles of either one of two chemotherapy regimens, and at completion of treatment in 119 patients. Dynamic changes of ALDH were recorded, with patients switching from ALDH[-] to ALDH[+] and vice versa in 27% and 19% of cases, respectively, at the biopsy after 4 cycles of chemotherapy. There are several possible explanations for these findings. First, there may be interconversion between the stem cell like and non-stem cell like phenotype, as previously described in preclinical models[64]. However, conversion from ALDH[+] to ALDH[-] with chemotherapy alone (*i.e.*, without a CSC targeting agent) is not in keeping with the alleged chemoresistance of CSC. Second, ALDH[+] cells have been described to be localized at the center of the tumor mass, whereas CD44[+]/CD24[-] cells are localized at the edges[49]. Thus, serial biopsy of a tumor mass may lead to increase or decrease of either cell population depending on the area sampled. Third, for biopsies negative at baseline, which convert to positive after 4 wk of treatment, there might have been ALDH positivity below the 5% cutoff value of an otherwise positive baseline sample. However, the most intriguing finding of the study is that the disease-free survival of those patients who did not achieve pathologic complete response (pCR) but displayed elimination of ALDH[+] cells in the primary tumor, is similar to that of patients experiencing pCR[61].

Another prospective study, the AVASTEM trial, was designed to evaluate whether the addition of bevacizumab to conventional chemotherapy alters the proportion of CSC in breast cancer patients receiving neoadjuvant treatment. It is an open label, randomized phase II trial in which tumor biopsies are required at baseline and after the 4 initial cycles of treatment to evaluate variations in the ALDH[+] CSC population[65]. Preclinical work demonstrated that anti-angiogenic agents (*e.g.*, bevacizumab) may increase breast cancer CSC *via* the generation of tumor hypoxia[66]. Indeed, CSC have been described to reside near hypoxic regions in solid tumors[67-70]. Results of AVASTEM will confirm or disprove these preclinical findings.

MOLECULAR SIGNALING PATHWAYS AS THERAPEUTIC TARGETS IN CSC

Signaling pathways are essential for normal stem cells with respect to self-renewal, proliferation and differentiation. Accumulating evidence suggests that maintenance of the CSC population in different human tumors employs the same signaling pathways as in normal stem cells, although an alteration of these pathways during the development of cancer has occurred, and this event has led to dysregulation of stem cell self-renewal and contributes to tumor proliferation[71,72]. Therefore, targeting these aberrant signaling pathways that are important for the formation of CSC seems to offer a new strategy for cancer therapy.

Most of these pathways have been described in dedicated reviews[15]. In this section, we will present

Table 2 Pathways and drug candidates targeting cancer stem cells

Pathway	Targets	Compounds	Clinical development
Hedgehog	Smoothened	[1]Vismodegib[80-82]	Medulloblastoma
			Pancreatic cancer
			Hematological malignances
Notch	γ-secretase	MK-0752[94]	Breast cancer
	DLL4	Demcizumab[88-90]	Pancreatic cancer
			NSCLC
			Ovarian cancer
		MEDI0639	Solid tumors
Wnt	β-catenin	Vantictumab[101]	Breast cancer
			Pancreatic cancer
			NSCLC
		OMP-54F28[102]	Ovarian cancer
			Pancreatic cancer
			Hepatic cancer
CXCR1/2-CXCL8	CXCR1	Reparixin[113,114]	Breast cancer
		SCH563705	
	CXCR1/2		
IL-6/JAK/STAT3	IL-6	[2]Tocilizumab	
	JAK1, JAK2	[3]Tofacitinib	
		[4]Chloroquine	Breast cancer[57]

[1]Erivedge™, FDA and EMA approved for metastatic or locally advanced basal cell carcinoma; [2]RoActemra™, FDA and EMA approved for rheumatoid arthritis; [3]Xeljanz™, FDA approved for rheumatoid arthritis; [4]FDA approved for malaria and extraintestinal amebiasis. DLL4: Delta-like ligand 4; FDA: Food and Drug Administration; NSCLC: Non-small-cell lung carcinoma; CXCR1/2-CXCL8: CXC chemokine receptor 1/2-interleukin 8; IL-6/JAK/STAT3: Interleukin 6/Janus kinase 2/Signal transducer and activator of transcription 3.

and discuss clinical data concerning anti-tumor activity and side effects related to targeting of each pathway.

The hedgehog signaling pathway

The hedgehog (Hh) pathway plays a crucial role in development and patterning during mammalian embryogenesis, and it is essential for the maintenance of stem cells[73]. The Hh pathway is activated when Hh protein binds to and inhibits the transmembrane protein called Patched, leading through activation of the Smoothened function to the regulation of target genes involved in many cellular functions including metastasis, proliferation, survival, and pathway auto-regulation[74,75]. Deregulation of the Hh pathway is associated with numerous human malignancies and is a critical factor affecting the outcome of treating the disease[76]. Recently, it has been suggested that the Hh pathway is essential for the maintenance of CSC in various human cancers, including colorectal, pancreatic and gastric cancer[77,78], and it is also responsible for treatment resistance of cancer cells[79]. Thus, inhibitors that block any step of the Hh signaling pathway may result in reduction of CSC and overcoming treatment resistance.

One Hh inhibitor, vismodegib, is approved for treatment of metastatic or locally advanced, unresectable basal cell carcinoma. Vismodegib 150 mg/d administered orally produced a sizeable and lasting response rate, including complete responses, in patients with basal cell carcinoma, suggesting activity also on bulk tumor cells[80,81]. In a randomized trial of vismodegib *vs* placebo in patients with basal cell nevus syndrome, an autosomal dominant disorder causing a markedly increased incidence of basal cell carcinoma, medulloblastoma, and rhabdomyosarcoma, new basal cell carcinoma formation rate was decreased by vismodegib from 29/year to 2/year[82]. This tumor prevention capability would suggest suppression of CSC activity, however, no formal investigation of anti-CSC activity has been reported. Vismodegib administration may result in adverse reactions, so that in the latter trial, 54% of patients had to discontinue treatment due to adverse reactions[82], with 25% of patients experiencing serious adverse events in the phase Ⅱ trial regarding basal cell carcinoma[81]. Ongoing and completed clinical trials using Smoothened antagonists were recently reviewed by Amakye *et al*[83] (Table 2).

Notch signaling pathway

The Notch signaling pathway plays several crucial roles in the communication between cells[84,85]. The Notch pathway is activated through ligand-receptor interactions of four receptors (Notch-1-Notch-4) and five Notch ligands (Delta-like1, 3, 4 and Jagged1, 2)[85], resulting in the expression of multiple target genes. The Notch pathway is involved in stem cell proliferation, differentiation, and apoptosis, but its role in tumorigenesis can be either oncogenic or oncosuppressive[85]. In fact, Notch functions as an oncogenic protein in most human cancers including cervical, lung, colon, head and neck, prostate and pancreatic cancer, while it may act as a tumor suppressor in hepatocellular carcinoma, skin and small cell lung cancer[86,87].

The delta-like ligand 4 (DLL4) contributes to CSC self-renewal and vascular development and can bind to any of the 4 receptors. Two anti-DLL4 monoclonal antibodies are in development (Table 2). Demcizumab (OMP-21M18, Oncomed) is a humanized IgG2 antibody specific for DLL4 with as dual mechanism of action: targeting of cancer stem cells and inhibition of angiogenesis. It has been evaluated as a single agent in patients with advanced malignancies[88] and in two phase Ib dose escalation clinical trials for frontline treatment of metastatic pancreatic adenocarcinoma[89] and non-squamous non-small cell lung cancer[90] in combination with gemcitabine and carboplatin + pemetrexed, respectively. In pancreatic adenocarcinoma, median Progression-Free Survival observed did not differ significantly from what would be expected from single agent treatment with gemcitabine in the same patient population[89]. In order to comply with the new standard of care in this disease[91], patients are now being treated with demcizumab in combination with gemcitabine + nab-paclitaxel[89]. In non-squamous non-small cell lung

cancer, median Progression-Free Survival was around 6 mo[90]. In both studies, the objective response rate was significant (25% and 46%, respectively), but the dual mechanism of action makes it difficult to disentangle effects on CSC from anti-angiogenic activity. The most common adverse reactions included nausea, fatigue and hypertension, the latter of which was managed with anti-hypertensives[88-90]. Also, late cardiopulmonary toxicity was recorded in a few patients treated for over 5 mo, leading to a shorter course of treatment and monitoring for early signs of toxicity by serial measurements of B-type natriuretic peptide levels[89,90].

MEDI0639 (medimmune) is an IgG1 lambda (IgG1λ) antibody that selectively binds to DLL4. Clinical results are undisclosed at the time of writing (Table 2).

Notch signaling affects lineage-specific differentiation and self-renewal of normal human breast stem cells[92]. Moreover, Notch-4 activity is elevated in breast CSC, and inhibiting Notch4 activity can reduce the breast CSC population, thereby suppressing tumor initiation[93]. Cleavage of the Notch receptor by gamma-secretase is required to release the Notch intracellular domain, which then translocates to the nucleus, turning on genes involved in cell differentiation and proliferation. Thus, gamma secretase inhibition results in a loss of Notch function in cells. In breast cancer xenografts, the gamma-secretase inhibitor MK-0752 reduced CSC and enhanced the efficacy of docetaxel[94]. Subsequently, 30 patients with locally advanced or metastatic breast cancer were treated with escalating doses of oral MK-0752[95] plus docetaxel every 3 wk. All patients could be evaluated for toxicity. Overall, 12/30 patients experienced G3 adverse reactions including G3 diarrhea (2 patients) and G3 liver function tests elevation at the selected dose level. Further, 24 patients could be evaluated for efficacy. In 11/24 patients, partial remissions were recorded, and in 9/24 patients, stable diseases were recorded. Since docetaxel has an established activity against breast cancer[96], the response rate should be interpreted with caution. Tumor biopsies were optional for participants in the study, and were performed more frequently in patients with locally advanced disease for whom surgery following initial medical treatment was planned. Serial biopsies were taken from 6 patients, at baseline, after cycle 1 and 3 and at progression or completion of treatment. All patients but one were treated at the selected dose level. Four patients experienced Partial Response, and 2 patients achieved stable disease. CSC were evaluated by flow cytometry examining both ALDH[+] and CD44[+]/CD24[-] cell populations and by mammosphere forming efficiency. CD44[+]/CD24[-] cells decreased from baseline to surgery in 3/5 patients, while ALDH[+] cells decreased from baseline to surgery in 3/6 patients. Mammosphere forming efficiency decreased over the course of treatment[94]. Despite these results, later phase clinical trials with MK-0752 are not listed on http://clinicaltrials.gov, neither for breast cancer nor for any other tumor type.

Wnt signaling pathway

The Wnt signaling pathway is another developmental pathway involved in multiple biological processes including embryogenesis, development, cell proliferation, survival and differentiation[97]. The Wnt/β-catenin signaling pathway is the best characterized one of the Wnt pathways[74]. Wnt/β-catenin signaling is activated when secreted glycoprotein, Wnt ligand, binds to the cell membrane Frizzled receptors and LRP5/6 co-receptors, which results in triggering of target genes[97]. Alteration in Wnt/β-catenin signaling has been identified in various malignancies, such as leukemia, colon, breast and cutaneous carcinoma. Wnt signaling in many human tumors arises from mutations in pathway components, resulting in aberrantly high levels of activation. For example, defective mutations in the adenomatous polyposis coli gene, a key downstream regulator of Wnt signaling, result in the inappropriate stabilization of β-catenin, thus activating the Wnt cascade and inducing epithelial cell transformation in patients with familial adenomatous polyposis[98,99]. The Wnt signaling pathway is associated with the maintenance of CSC stem cell properties, but it also regulates important stem cell niches within the body, including normal hematopoietic stem cells and adult stem cells within various tissues.

OMP-18R5 (vantictumab) (Table 2), a fully human IgG2 monoclonal antibody targeting the Frizzled receptors 1, 2, 5, 7 and 8, displays strong anti-tumor activity in patient-derived xenografts in association with standard of care chemotherapy[100]. It also induces cancer cell differentiation. A phase Ib study of the single agent OMP-18R5 in 25 patients demonstrated pharmacodynamic activity on hair follicles and bone turnover. Prolonged stabilization of disease was recorded in 3 patients with neuroendocrine tumors. Analysis of pre- and post-treatment tumor biopsies showed inhibition of Wnt and CSC genes, as well as upregulation of differentiation genes[101].

OMP-54F28 is a fusion protein based on a truncated form of the Frizzled8 receptor, or Fzd8, and the Fc fragment of human immunoglobulin IgG1. It is designed to bind Wnt ligands thus blocking Wnt signaling. In patient-derived xenograft models, OMP-54F28 acts synergetically with chemotherapy in a broad spectrum of malignancies. This fusion protein was tested as a single agent in a phase I study in patients with advanced solid tumors[102]. Intravenous injections every 3 wk did not result in any grade ≥ 3 adverse reactions at doses up to 20 mg/kg, double the target efficacious dose established by animal data and pharmacokinetic modeling. Most common (> 20% of patients) grade 1-2 adverse reactions were dysgeusia, decreased appetite, fatigue, muscle spasms, nausea and vomiting. No objective responses were recorded in 25 patients treated in 7 dose escalation cohorts, whereas several patients experienced prolonged stabilization of the disease. Pharmacodynamic modulation of Wnt pathway genes was shown in hair follicles. Five patients experienced doubling of the bone turnover marker

β-C-terminal telopeptide, consistent with Wnt pathway inhibition in bone. This adverse reaction was easily managed with a single dose of zoledronic acid. Phase I b studies of OMP-54F28 in combination with gemcitabine and nab-paclitaxel (pancreatic cancer), carboplatin and paclitaxel (ovarian cancer) and sorafenib (hepatocellular carcinoma) are currently in progress (Table 2).

CXCR1/2-CXCL8 signaling pathway

CXCL8 [formerly interleukin (IL-8)] is a small soluble protein belonging to the chemokine family[103]. It was originally identified as a potent neutrophil activator and chemotactic factor mainly secreted by activated monocytes and macrophages[104,105]. The biological effects of CXCL8 are mediated by two class A, rhodopsin-like guanine-protein-coupled receptors: CXC chemokine receptor 1 (CXCR1) (IL-8RA) and CXCR2 (IL-8RB)[106,107]. CXCL8 is upregulated in a wide variety of solid cancers, such as prostate, gastric, bladder, ovarian, lung cancer and melanoma. It has also been reported to contribute to multiple hallmarks of cancer, such as increased proliferation, angiogenesis, invasion, and metastases[108,109]. CXCL8 is overexpressed in breast cancer, compared with normal breast tissue, and although there is substantial evidence that CXCL8 may promote breast cancer initiation and progression, more recent evidence indicates that this cytokine is a key regulator of CSC activity[110]. A search for actionable molecules on ALDH+ breast cancer CSC identified CXCR1 as a target almost exclusively expressed by CSC as compared with bulk tumor cells[47]. It was shown *in vitro* that breast cancer CSC proliferate in response to exogenous CXCL8 and that addition of a small molecular weight antagonist of CXCR1/2 (reparixin, formerly repertaxin)[111] or a blocking anti-CXCR1 (but not anti-CXCR2) monoclonal antibody depleted CSC *in vitro*[56]. Interestingly, a FAS-FASL mediated bystander effect killed the vast majority of bulk tumor cells *in vitro*, suggesting the possibility of synergistic effects with chemotherapy[56]. In breast cancer patient-derived xenografts or human breast cancer cell lines, the combination of docetaxel and reparixin was more effective than chemotherapy alone in reducing tumor size[56]. As expected, administration of the single agent reparixin did not result in tumor shrinkage over a 4 wk treatment period. However, tumors recovered from mice that had been treated with reparixin alone or in combination with chemotherapy displayed a far lower abundance of CSC than tumors recovered from mice receiving chemotherapy alone[56]. In addition, reparixin reduced metastasis formation in mice following injection of luciferase-transfected human breast cancer cells into the bloodstream[56]. These results were integrated into a model in which following administration of chemotherapy, dying bulk tumor cells release CXCL8 and FASL. However, CXCR1+ CSC are sheltered from apoptotic signals from FASL unless CXCR1 is blocked by reparixin. Reparixin is a clinical grade molecule already used in patients with non-oncological conditions[112]. Therefore, clinical trials of oral reparixin were started in combination with weekly paclitaxel in HER2-negative pretreated metastatic breast cancer (NCT02001974)[113], and as a single agent in a window of opportunity trial in HER2-negative operable breast cancer (NCT01861054)[114]. Indirect support for this model comes from two lines of evidence. First, Bolha *et al*[55] reported release of CXCL8 from tumor cells exposed to taxane *in vitro*. Also, they observed a marked and dose-dependent increase in mammosphere forming efficiency in TNBC tumor cells recovered from immunocompromised mice treated with 2 doses of paclitaxel[55]. Second, Singh and colleagues[115] demonstrated measurable IL-8 levels in pleural effusions and ascites from breast cancer patients When tumor cells from pleural effusions and ascites were cultured *in vitro*, a direct correlation between IL-8 levels and CSC activity could be measured by mammosphere formation[115]. Surface CXCR1 was detected on the majority of mammosphere cells, and a CXCR1/2 inhibitor, SCH563705, blocked the effects of exogenous CXCL8 on mammosphere formation[115]. In partial contrast to findings by Ginestier pointing to a role for CXCR1 but not CXCR2 in anti-CSC activity[56], CXCR2 inhibition was shown to lead to a significant growth inhibition of basal like breast cancer cell lines *in vitro*[116], further highlighting the potential of CXCR1/2 inhibition. The activity was far less pronounced on non-basal like breast cancer cell lines. Also, in the report by Ginestier, most of the cell lines and patient-derived xenografts were triple negative breast cancers[56]. Although basal like and triple negative breast cancers do not fully overlap[44], these findings suggest that basal like and/or triple negative breast cancer could be most sensitive to CXCR1/2 inhibition, possibly due to an enrichment in CSC in these breast cancer types[42-44].

A possible role for CXCL8 on CSC has been recently highlighted also in pancreatic cancer[53]. The authors found a positive correlation between CXCR1 and both CD44 and CD133 expression in human pancreatic cancer samples. Furthermore, addition of exogenous CXCL8 *in vitro* increased sphere formation, CSC population, and cell invasion of pancreatic cancer cells, all these effects being reversible upon addition of a CXCR1-blocking monoclonal antibody[53].

CXCR1/2 blockade may lead to anti-CSC effects also by an indirect mechanism. In fact, mesenchymal stem cells, a stromal cell type secreting factors that sustain CSC, are often recruited to tumors by tumor cell-derived CXCL8[117]. Thus, inhibition of CXCL8 activity and its homing signal may prevent localization of mesenchymal stem cells to the tumor stroma, hindering the development of a supportive CSC niche[15].

Finally, considering the multiple roles played by CXCL8 in cancer (reviewed in[118], it should be borne in mind that inhibition of CXCL8 biological activity may lead to anti-tumor activity also by other mechanisms not directly related to CSC, such as inhibition of angiogenesis and modification of the leukocyte infiltration into tumors.

IL-6/Janus kinase 2/Signal transducer and activator of transcription 3

The IL-6/Janus kinase 2 (JAK2)/Signal transducer and activator of transcription 3 (Stat3) pathway was found to be preferentially activated in CD44[+]/CD24[-] breast CSC[116]. This opens the possibility of targeting CSC by compounds interfering with any of the 3 pathway components. Approved anti-IL-6 compounds (tocilizumab, anti-IL-6R mAb) and JAK inhibitors (*i.e.*, tofacitinib) are available for the treatment of rheumatoid arthritis, thus making this pathway a readily available clinical target. Furthermore, it has been shown in preclinical studies that breast cancer cell resistance to trastuzumab, an approved monoclonal antibody for treatment of HER2[+] breast cancer, is mediated by an IL-6 feedback loop, leading to an expansion of the CSC pool[119]. Indirect support for a role played by JAK2 comes also from preclinical studies using chloroquine (another approved drug for treating malaria), which suppressed CD44[+]/CD24[-] breast CSC *via* inhibition of the JAK2-Stat3 pathway[57].

HER2/AKT

HER2 has been reported to be an intrinsic regulator of breast cancer CSC[120,121]. This regulation occurs through activation of the Wnt/β-catenin pathway *via* Akt mediated phosphorylation of GSK3B and nuclear translocation of β-catenin[122]. In patients with HER2-positive breast cancer undergoing neoadjuvant treatment, lapatinib administration led to a decrease, although not a statistically significant one, in both the proportion of CD44[+]/CD24[-] CSC and mammosphere forming efficiency[58]. However, HER2 regulation of CSC possibly extends to HER2-negative breast cancer (reviewed in[123], as suggested by the clinical benefit observed in patients with HER2-negative breast cancer receiving adjuvant anti-HER2 treatment[124]. It has been shown that in HER2-negative breast cancer, CSC selectively express, and are regulated by, HER2[125]. This is in line with the observation that *in vitro*, lapatinib inhibits CXCL8-stimulated mammosphere formation from both HER2-positive and HER2-negative patient breast cancer samples, highlighting a key role of HER2 in regulating CXCR1/2 mediated activation of breast cancer CSC[115]. This data was put into context in a model in which CSC activity is increased following CXCL8 binding to CXCR1/2 *via* both HER2-independent and HER2-dependent (through CXCR1/2 mediated transactivation) mechanisms[115]. From a clinical standpoint, this data suggests that combination therapy with anti-HER2 and anti-CXCR1/2 compounds may affect breast cancer CSC to a greater extent than either compound alone[115,126].

REPURPOSED DRUGS

A number of approved drugs that have been used for many years in non-oncological indications have been shown to have anti-tumor activity *in vitro* and/or *in vivo*. The obvious advantage of such drugs is the extensive knowledge of their safety profile (although not in association with standard of care chemotherapy), which may open the possibility for single agent window of opportunity trials in a preoperative setting for selected cancers, or possibly neoadjuvant trials if overlapping toxicities are not to be expected[127]. In other instances, high throughput screening programs have identified known compounds as potential CSC targeting agents[128,129]. Several such drugs are being tested as anti-CSC.

Chloroquine is an antimalarial drug. It is capable of inhibiting autophagy, which is a mechanism exploited by cancer cells to cope with stress[130]. In particular, autophagy has emerged as a mechanism by which CSC maintain their capability of self-renewal[131]. *In silico* gene expression analysis of the CD44[+]/CD24[-] treatment resistant breast cancer cell population identified chloroquine as a candidate anti-CSC compound[57]. *In vitro* chloroquine reduced, in a dose-dependent manner, mammosphere forming efficiency in TNBC cell lines as well as CD44[+]/CD24[-] cells when used alone or in combination with paclitaxel[57]. *In vivo*, growth of orthotopically implanted tumors as well as lung metastases were reduced, and so were CSC when chloroquine was administered in combination with paclitaxel[57]. A clinical trial (NCT01446016) is currently in progress, in which chloroquine is administered in combination with a taxane or taxane-like drug (*i.e.*, nab-paclitaxel and ixabepilone) to women with advanced or metastatic breast cancer, who have not responded to anthracycline therapy. An interim report showed that in two out of three patients, from whom pre- and post-treatment biopsies were taken, a clear reduction in CD44[+]/CD24[-] cells was recorded[57]. Chloroquine has been investigated as a CSC targeting agent not only in breast cancer but also in CML[132].

A significant number of studies has been performed with the anti-diabetic drug metformin[133]. Its activity against CSC has been described in a number of preclinical reports[134,135], whereas the issue of its clinical activity against CSC has remained unexplored despite a number of window of opportunity studies in patients with operable breast cancer that established safety of the drug in this setting[136].

Itraconazole and arsenic trioxide, two drugs approved for fungal infections and acute promyelocytic leukemia, respectively, have been shown to be Hedgehog pathway inhibitors[137,138]. In an open label phase 2 clinical trial in patients with basal cell carcinoma, a 24% decrease in tumor area, a 65% reduction in Hedgehog pathway activity and a 45% reduction in the proliferative marker Ki-67 were observed following treatment with itraconazole in comparison with untreated patients[139]. The potential for all-trans retinoic acid as an anti-CSC agent has been recently and thoroughly reviewed[140].

Salinomycin, which is used in chicken fodder as a coccidiostat, has been shown to reduce the proportion of CSC by > 100-fold relative to paclitaxel, a commonly

used breast cancer chemotherapeutic drug[128]. Treatment of mice with salinomycin inhibits mammary tumor growth *in vivo* and induces increased epithelial differentiation of tumor cells[128]. In addition, global gene expression analyses show that salinomycin treatment results in loss of expression of breast CSC genes previously identified by analyses of breast tissues isolated from patients[128]. However, no clinical trials testing salinomycin are registered on http://clinicaltrials. gov.

Thioridazine, an antipsychotic drug, selectively targets leukemic stem cells while sparing normal hematopoietic stem cells[129]. The drug antagonizes dopamine receptors that are expressed on CSC[129]. It is currently being tested in a phase I trial in combination with cytarabine in patients with acute myeloid leukemia (NCT02096289).

ISSUES IN DESIGNING CLINICAL TRIALS FOR CSC-TARGETING AGENTS

Early drug development in cancer usually requires signs of anti-tumor activity as measured by shrinkage of metastatic lesions. Once this is demonstrated, a novel agent is then moved to the adjuvant setting, *i.e.*, after removal of the primary tumor, to reduce recurrence risk. Based on the CSC model, and considering that CSC represent only a tiny percentage of the total tumor cells (*i.e.*, < 5%) of any given tumor, single agent CSC-specific agents would not be expected to display antitumor activity measurable by RECIST criteria[141]. As a consequence, in metastatic patients such agents would not be expected to affect tumor growth and tumor-related symptoms in the short term. Thus, in this setting, CSC-specific agents likely need be tested in combination with standard of care chemotherapy that will address the proliferating, non-CSC portion of the tumor. When a CSC-targeting agent is used in combination with standard of care chemotherapy, the objective response rate is still an obvious endpoint, but its relevance is mostly to ensure that the CSC-targeting agent does not hinder chemotherapy activity. In fact, it is unlikely that a specific CSC-targeting agent augments chemotherapy activity as measured by the objective response rate unless indirectly mediated through a bystander effect on bulk tumor cells[56].

The same consideration applies to neoadjuvant chemotherapy, the purpose of which is to downsize the primary tumor and to eliminate micrometastases. Also, in this setting, it is not intuitive that a CSC-specific agent can significantly increase the rate of pCR as compared to chemotherapy alone, unless a bystander effect is postulated. In this specific setting, one may hypothesize that in a randomized clinical trial, the rate of pCR as well as complete and partial clinical responses between the two treatment groups could be very similar, but disease-free survival may differ, favoring the regimen including a CSC-targeting agent. Partial support for this hypothesis comes from the study by Alamgeer *et al*[61], in which patients who experienced less than pCR but had eliminated ALDH+ CSC in their primary tumor following neoadjuvant chemotherapy had the same disease-free survival as patients achieving a pCR.

Therefore, the objective response rate *per se* is not necessarily indicative of anti-CSC activity, whereas the duration of response would be more informative. These considerations are relevant for the identification of effective compounds for adjuvant treatment, in which activity on CSC is expected to be most relevant, according to the CSC paradigm[123]. Evaluation of pre- and post-treatment biopsies is conceivably the most compelling evidence for anti-CSC activity. However, post-treatment biopsy can be difficult to obtain from metastatic patients[94]. Other challenges also may hinder the value of repeated biopsies even in the neoadjuvant setting, in which tumor tissue is readily available. In breast cancer, the most widely used CSC markers are ALDH+ and CD44+/CD24-. However, it has been shown that cells displaying either phenotype are largely not overlapping, with each marker(s) identifying a distinct CSC population[41,48,49]. Furthermore, breast cancer CSC can transition from one phenotype to the other. Little is known about the role, and the therapeutic relevance, of each CSC population in primary breast cancer. However, recent evidence shows that ALDH+ cells are proliferative, epithelial cell-like CSC, whereas CD44+/CD24- CSC are quiescent, mesenchymal-like cells poised to invade and metastasize[49]. In keeping with their different putative role in cancer, ALDH+ and CD44+/CD24- cells tend to be localized in different areas of the tumor, *i.e.*, center and edges, respectively[49]. The location of these CSC populations in anatomically distinct areas of a tumor, coupled with their plasticity, poses theoretical challenges to comparative measurement of CSC in serial biopsies taken before, during and after treatment.

In drug development, in order to treat patients with potentially curable diseases with a novel agent, a robust safety database from the metastatic setting or from other indications for repurposed drugs must be available. Thus, most novel agents designed to target CSC will be tested first in patients with metastatic disease due to safety reasons. One may argue that the metastatic setting is less than ideal to test CSC-targeting agents, since they are conceivably best suited to prevent or reduce metastatic spread and thus should be applied to the (neo)adjuvant setting. In order to circumvent these limitations, surrogate clinical endpoints have been devised to evaluate the potential of a novel agent to reduce the metastatic spread of tumors[142]. This concept fits into the CSC model and can be applied to the development of a CSC-targeting agent which, as a novel chemical entity or biologic,

cannot be tested in settings of earlier disease stages due to safety concerns. Time to new metastasis (TTM) is an exploratory endpoint that measures the time elapsing from study entry or randomization to detection of metastatic lesions in a new organ system as compared to baseline[143]. Examples of application of this endpoint can be found in lung cancer[144,145]. In a less stringent fashion, this endpoint can be measured also until appearance of new lesion(s) in an organ already metastatic at baseline. In breast cancer, considering the proportion of patients developing either new metastatic sites or new lesions at their first tumor progression[146], this endpoint can certainly be read with the possibility of demonstrating the potential for a novel agent to reduce metastatic spread. It should be noted that TTM has also immediate clinical relevance since the development of new metastases in the brain, bones or viscera can lead to significant morbidity. The data with denosumab in the prevention of bone metastases in patients with castration-resistant, non-metastatic prostate cancer[147], as well as the reduction of skeletal-related events in patients with metastatic breast cancer[148], is reminiscent of this endpoint. However, TTM is a challenging endpoint to measure, as in several metastatic tumors, patients with progression will be put on another treatment so that TTM can be read only until RECIST 1.1 progression[143]. The most thorough way to assess TTM would be to design trials allowing treatment beyond progression[143]. One possible way to measure anti-CSC activity circumventing the need for serial biopsies would be to analyze cancer cells and/or tumor DNA in patients' bloodstream. The prognostic role of circulating tumor cells (CTCs) has been established since 2004[149,150]. However, the relationship between the number of CTC and tumor-localized or circulating CSC has not been established yet. The potential, but also the current pitfalls, of CTC and circulating DNA have been recently reviewed elsewhere[151,152].

Targeted anti-cancer therapies are best developed in conjunction with biomarkers (*e.g.*, crizotinib, vemurafenib) that can measure treatment efficacy and/or can identify patients with a higher chance to benefit from the treatment. As discussed earlier, not all tumors display a sizeable CSC population, although this finding may be related to the sensitivity of the assay used and the use of a single marker. The ideal biomarker for pharmacodynamic evaluation of cancer stem cell therapies would be able to accurately measure the proportion of stem cells within the tumor, so as to select patients with a high proportion of stem cells for treatment, to identify presence of the target on CSC for targeted therapies, and to determine on pre- and post-therapy specimens (*i.e.*, tumor or blood) whether the proportion of stem cells within the tumor decreased under the therapy. Unfortunately, the tiny percentage of CSC in a tumor mass makes it difficult to develop a companion diagnostic for any CSC targeting agent with a molecular target.

CONCLUSION

The existence of multiple subpopulations of cells within a tumor with distinct tumor initiating capacity has been clearly demonstrated[14,15]. The clinical relevance of CSC is being highlighted by both retrospective analyses and prospective studies, challenging clinical paradigms[61]. There is still controversy about the most suitable markers to identify CSC in order to understand their role and therapeutic relevance in different stages of human cancers, as well as about monitoring effects of CSC targeting agents. There is a requirement to identify cell surface marker and gene activity profiles that can be readily and reliably used to identify CSC in human tumors. However, as these genes frequently operate in other cell types, they cannot be called "stemness" genes. In order to identify true signatures and pure populations, microarray and genome-wide techniques can be applied to detect trends in genetic and epigenetic models for cancer stem cells. This is especially true for cells expected to be rare, such as cancer stem cells, the expression signature of which would be saturated by the majority of non-stem cells in a whole tumor sample. Even after a cancer stem cell signature from a particular type of tumor is identified, one cannot assume that a given signature is useful for identifying cancer stem cells in a different tumor type, unless it is validated by a functional assay. The use of gene inactivation to eliminate "stemness" or gene activation to engender "stemness" would be required to functionally link any marker to stem cell identity. This can be applied to clinical trials as exemplified by the study that identified RPL39 and MFL2 as potential targets in CSC[153].

A number of novel or repurposed agents interfering with pathways considered relevant for CSC are being evaluated in patients with advanced tumors following demonstration of activity in patient-derived xenografts. A recommended phase 2 dose has been identified for most of such agents either alone or in combination with chemotherapy. For some agents, pharmacodynamic demonstration of target pathway modulation of non-cancer targets (*e.g.*, hair follicles) has been obtained, and some long term responders or at least non-progressors have been described. Formal demonstration of an anti-CSC effect is still lacking in most cases, due to a number of factors including the challenge to obtain serial biopsies in metastatic patients, and the interference of several anti-CSC agents with multiple pathways makes it difficult to disentangle the relative contribution of the anti-CSC *vs* non-anti-CSC activity. Clinical surrogate endpoints may prove useful in suggesting an anti-CSC activity, such as reduction of metastatic spread measured as time to new metastasis[143]. However, in order to seek marketing authorization, a CSC-targeting agent should demonstrate an advantage at least in terms of Progression-Free Survival and Disease-Free Survival as compared with standard of care in the metastatic and

(neo)adjuvant setting, respectively. In this respect, the goals recently put forward by the American Society of Clinical Oncology Cancer Research Committee[154] may be within reach if the CSC model holds true for a given malignancy. Achievement of these goals raises the issue of patient selection, a rather unexplored issue thus far, since trials to date have been conducted on unselected patient populations. First, it is not known whether the CSC paradigm is universal to all human cancers[14]. Second, it has been clearly established that administration of chemotherapy in the adjuvant setting (*i.e.*, following surgery of the primary tumor) increases 30-year disease-free survival as compared with surgery alone in node-positive breast cancer patients[155]. This suggests that a fraction of patients does not seem to require a CSC targeting agent, whereas the opposite is entirely possible in another set of patients or a different breast cancer subtype. Third, aberrant activation of any of the pathways discussed here due to mutations, as seen in a proportion of tumors, may represent one selection step. Lastly, it is possible that CSC may eventually show resistance to CSC targeting agents. At least two drug resistance pathways have been identified for the Hedgehog inhibitor vismodegib in patients[156,157].

In conclusion, given the extraordinary complexity of CSC clinical targeting, a bench to bedside to bench circle[94] is the most sensible approach to develop anti-CSC agents.

REFERENCES

1   **D'Angelo RC**, Wicha MS. Stem cells in normal development and cancer. *Prog Mol Biol Transl Sci* 2010; **95**: 113-158 [PMID: 21075331 DOI: 10.1016/B978-0-12-385071-3.00006-X]
2   **Clarke MF**, Dick JE, Dirks PB, Eaves CJ, Jamieson CH, Jones DL, Visvader J, Weissman IL, Wahl GM. Cancer stem cells--perspectives on current status and future directions: AACR Workshop on cancer stem cells. *Cancer Res* 2006; **66**: 9339-9344 [PMID: 16990346 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-06-3126]
3   **Alison MR**, Lim SM, Nicholson LJ. Cancer stem cells: problems for therapy? *J Pathol* 2011; **223**: 147-161 [PMID: 21125672 DOI: 10.1002/path.2793]
4   **Passegué E**, Jamieson CH, Ailles LE, Weissman IL. Normal and leukemic hematopoiesis: are leukemias a stem cell disorder or a reacquisition of stem cell characteristics? *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2003; **100** Suppl 1: 11842-11849 [PMID: 14504387 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.2034201100]
5   **Cobaleda C**, Gutiérrez-Cianca N, Pérez-Losada J, Flores T, García-Sanz R, González M, Sánchez-García I. A primitive hematopoietic cell is the target for the leukemic transformation in human philadelphia-positive acute lymphoblastic leukemia. *Blood* 2000; **95**: 1007-1013 [PMID: 10648416]
6   **O'Connor ML**, Xiang D, Shigdar S, Macdonald J, Li Y, Wang T, Pu C, Wang Z, Qiao L, Duan W. Cancer stem cells: A contentious hypothesis now moving forward. *Cancer Lett* 2014; **344**: 180-187 [PMID: 24333726 DOI: 10.1016/j.canlet.2013.11.012]
7   **Wang JC**, Dick JE. Cancer stem cells: lessons from leukemia. *Trends Cell Biol* 2005; **15**: 494-501 [PMID: 16084092 DOI: 10.1016/j.tcb.2005.07.004]
8   **Bonnet D**, Dick JE. Human acute myeloid leukemia is organized as a hierarchy that originates from a primitive hematopoietic cell. *Nat Med* 1997; **3**: 730-737 [PMID: 9212098]
9   **Al-Hajj M**, Wicha MS, Benito-Hernandez A, Morrison SJ, Clarke MF. Prospective identification of tumorigenic breast cancer cells. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2003; **100**: 3983-3988 [PMID: 12629218 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0530291100]
10   **O'Brien CA**, Pollett A, Gallinger S, Dick JE. A human colon cancer cell capable of initiating tumour growth in immunodeficient mice. *Nature* 2007; **445**: 106-110 [PMID: 17122772 DOI: 10.1038/nature05372]
11   **Frank NY**, Schatton T, Frank MH. The therapeutic promise of the cancer stem cell concept. *J Clin Invest* 2010; **120**: 41-50 [PMID: 20051635 DOI: 10.1172/JCI41004]
12   **Quintana E**, Shackleton M, Sabel MS, Fullen DR, Johnson TM, Morrison SJ. Efficient tumour formation by single human melanoma cells. *Nature* 2008; **456**: 593-598 [PMID: 19052619 DOI: 10.1038/nature07567]
13   **De Palma M**, Venneri MA, Galli R, Sergi Sergi L, Politi LS, Sampaolesi M, Naldini L. Tie2 identifies a hematopoietic lineage of proangiogenic monocytes required for tumor vessel formation and a mesenchymal population of pericyte progenitors. *Cancer Cell* 2005; **8**: 211-226 [PMID: 16169466 DOI: 10.1016/j.ccr.2005.08.002]
14   **Dick JE**. Stem cell concepts renew cancer research. *Blood* 2008; **112**: 4793-4807 [PMID: 19064739 DOI: 10.1182/blood-2008-08-077941]
15   **Pattabiraman DR**, Weinberg RA. Tackling the cancer stem cells - what challenges do they pose? *Nat Rev Drug Discov* 2014; **13**: 497-512 [PMID: 24981363 DOI: 10.1038/nrd4253]
16   **Tlsty TD**, Coussens LM. Tumor stroma and regulation of cancer development. *Annu Rev Pathol* 2006; **1**: 119-150 [PMID: 18039110 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.pathol.1.110304.100224]
17   **Clarke MF**, Fuller M. Stem cells and cancer: two faces of eve. *Cell* 2006; **124**: 1111-1115 [PMID: 16564000 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2006.03.011]
18   **Feng Y**, Wen J, Mike P, Choi DS, Eshoa C, Shi ZZ, Zu Y, Chang CC. Bone marrow stromal cells from myeloma patients support the growth of myeloma stem cells. *Stem Cells Dev* 2010; **19**: 1289-1296 [PMID: 20121456 DOI: 10.1089/scd.2010.0010]
19   **Al-Hajj M**, Becker MW, Wicha M, Weissman I, Clarke MF. Therapeutic implications of cancer stem cells. *Curr Opin Genet Dev* 2004; **14**: 43-47 [PMID: 15108804 DOI: 10.1016/j.gde.2003.11.007]
20   **Singh SK**, Clarke ID, Terasaki M, Bonn VE, Hawkins C, Squire J, Dirks PB. Identification of a cancer stem cell in human brain tumors. *Cancer Res* 2003; **63**: 5821-5828 [PMID: 14522905]
21   **Corbeil D**, Röper K, Hellwig A, Tavian M, Miraglia S, Watt SM, Simmons PJ, Peault B, Buck DW, Huttner WB. The human AC133 hematopoietic stem cell antigen is also expressed in epithelial cells and targeted to plasma membrane protrusions. *J Biol Chem* 2000; **275**: 5512-5520 [PMID: 10681530 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.275.8.5512]
22   **Singh SK**, Hawkins C, Clarke ID, Squire JA, Bayani J, Hide T, Henkelman RM, Cusimano MD, Dirks PB. Identification of human brain tumour initiating cells. *Nature* 2004; **432**: 396-401 [PMID: 15549107 DOI: 10.1038/nature03128]
23   **Keysar SB**, Jimeno A. More than markers: biological significance of cancer stem cell-defining molecules. *Mol Cancer Ther* 2010; **9**: 2450-2457 [PMID: 20716638 DOI: 10.1158/1535-7163.MCT-10-0530]
24   **Zhang Q**, Shi S, Yen Y, Brown J, Ta JQ, Le AD. A subpopulation of CD133(+) cancer stem-like cells characterized in human oral squamous cell carcinoma confer resistance to chemotherapy. *Cancer Lett* 2010; **289**: 151-160 [PMID: 19748175 DOI: 10.1016/j.canlet.2009.08.010]
25   **Bertolini G**, Roz L, Perego P, Tortoreto M, Fontanella E, Gatti L, Pratesi G, Fabbri A, Andriani F, Tinelli S, Roz E, Caserini R, Lo Vullo S, Camerini T, Mariani L, Delia D, Calabrò E, Pastorino U, Sozzi G. Highly tumorigenic lung cancer CD133+ cells display stem-like features and are spared by cisplatin treatment. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2009; **106**: 16281-16286 [PMID: 19805294 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0905653106]
26   **Moreb JS**. Aldehyde dehydrogenase as a marker for stem cells. *Curr Stem Cell Res Ther* 2008; **3**: 237-246 [PMID: 19075754 DOI: 10.2174/157488808786734006]

27 **Storms RW**, Trujillo AP, Springer JB, Shah L, Colvin OM, Ludeman SM, Smith C. Isolation of primitive human hematopoietic progenitors on the basis of aldehyde dehydrogenase activity. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1999; **96**: 9118-9123 [PMID: 10430905 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.96.16.9118]

28 **Silva IA**, Bai S, McLean K, Yang K, Griffith K, Thomas D, Ginestier C, Johnston C, Kueck A, Reynolds RK, Wicha MS, Buckanovich RJ. Aldehyde dehydrogenase in combination with CD133 defines angiogenic ovarian cancer stem cells that portend poor patient survival. *Cancer Res* 2011; **71**: 3991-4001 [PMID: 21498635 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-10-3175]

29 **Kristiansen G**, Sammar M, Altevogt P. Tumour biological aspects of CD24, a mucin-like adhesion molecule. *J Mol Histol* 2004; **35**: 255-262 [PMID: 15339045 DOI: 10.1023/B:HIJO.0000032357.16261.c5]

30 **Sano A**, Kato H, Sakurai S, Sakai M, Tanaka N, Inose T, Saito K, Sohda M, Nakajima M, Nakajima T, Kuwano H. CD24 expression is a novel prognostic factor in esophageal squamous cell carcinoma. *Ann Surg Oncol* 2009; **16**: 506-514 [PMID: 19050962 DOI: 10.1245/s10434-008-0252-0]

31 **Aigner S**, Sthoeger ZM, Fogel M, Weber E, Zarn J, Ruppert M, Zeller Y, Vestweber D, Stahel R, Sammar M, Altevogt P. CD24, a mucin-type glycoprotein, is a ligand for P-selectin on human tumor cells. *Blood* 1997; **89**: 3385-3395 [PMID: 9129046]

32 **Croker AK**, Goodale D, Chu J, Postenka C, Hedley BD, Hess DA, Allan AL. High aldehyde dehydrogenase and expression of cancer stem cell markers selects for breast cancer cells with enhanced malignant and metastatic ability. *J Cell Mol Med* 2009; **13**: 2236-2252 [PMID: 18681906 DOI: 10.1111/j.1582-4934.2008.00455.x]

33 **Klarmann GJ**, Hurt EM, Mathews LA, Zhang X, Duhagon MA, Mistree T, Thomas SB, Farrar WL. Invasive prostate cancer cells are tumor initiating cells that have a stem cell-like genomic signature. *Clin Exp Metastasis* 2009; **26**: 433-446 [PMID: 19221883 DOI: 10.1007/s10585-009-9242-2]

34 **Hurt EM**, Kawasaki BT, Klarmann GJ, Thomas SB, Farrar WL. CD44+ CD24(-) prostate cells are early cancer progenitor/stem cells that provide a model for patients with poor prognosis. *Br J Cancer* 2008; **98**: 756-765 [PMID: 18268494 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6604242]

35 **Li C**, Heidt DG, Dalerba P, Burant CF, Zhang L, Adsay V, Wicha M, Clarke MF, Simeone DM. Identification of pancreatic cancer stem cells. *Cancer Res* 2007; **67**: 1030-1037 [PMID: 17283135 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-06-2030]

36 **Lapidot T**, Sirard C, Vormoor J, Murdoch B, Hoang T, Caceres-Cortes J, Minden M, Paterson B, Caligiuri MA, Dick JE. A cell initiating human acute myeloid leukaemia after transplantation into SCID mice. *Nature* 1994; **367**: 645-648 [PMID: 7509044 DOI: 10.1038/367645a0]

37 **Zhou L**, Jiang Y, Yan T, Di G, Shen Z, Shao Z, Lu J. The prognostic role of cancer stem cells in breast cancer: a meta-analysis of published literatures. *Breast Cancer Res Treat* 2010; **122**: 795-801 [PMID: 20571867 DOI: 10.1007/s10549-010-0999-4]

38 **Liu Y**, Lv DL, Duan JJ, Xu SL, Zhang JF, Yang XJ, Zhang X, Cui YH, Bian XW, Yu SC. ALDH1A1 expression correlates with clinicopathologic features and poor prognosis of breast cancer patients: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *BMC Cancer* 2014; **14**: 444 [PMID: 24938375 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2407-14-444]

39 **Perou CM**, Sørlie T, Eisen MB, van de Rijn M, Jeffrey SS, Rees CA, Pollack JR, Ross DT, Johnsen H, Akslen LA, Fluge O, Pergamenschikov A, Williams C, Zhu SX, Lønning PE, Børresen-Dale AL, Brown PO, Botstein D. Molecular portraits of human breast tumours. *Nature* 2000; **406**: 747-752 [PMID: 10963602 DOI: 10.1038/35021093]

40 **Charafe-Jauffret E**, Ginestier C, Iovino F, Tarpin C, Diebel M, Esterni B, Houvenaeghel G, Extra JM, Bertucci F, Jacquemier J, Xerri L, Dontu G, Stassi G, Xiao Y, Barsky SH, Birnbaum D, Viens P, Wicha MS. Aldehyde dehydrogenase 1-positive cancer stem cells mediate metastasis and poor clinical outcome in inflammatory breast cancer. *Clin Cancer Res* 2010; **16**: 45-55 [PMID: 20028757 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-09-1630]

41 **Ginestier C**, Hur MH, Charafe-Jauffret E, Monville F, Dutcher J, Brown M, Jacquemier J, Viens P, Kleer CG, Liu S, Schott A, Hayes D, Birnbaum D, Wicha MS, Dontu G. ALDH1 is a marker of normal and malignant human mammary stem cells and a predictor of poor clinical outcome. *Cell Stem Cell* 2007; **1**: 555-567 [PMID: 18371393 DOI: 10.1016/j.stem.2007.08.014]

42 **Hennessy BT**, Gonzalez-Angulo AM, Stemke-Hale K, Gilcrease MZ, Krishnamurthy S, Lee JS, Fridlyand J, Sahin A, Agarwal R, Joy C, Liu W, Stivers D, Baggerly K, Carey M, Lluch A, Monteagudo C, He X, Weigman V, Fan C, Palazzo J, Hortobagyi GN, Nolden LK, Wang NJ, Valero V, Gray JW, Perou CM, Mills GB. Characterization of a naturally occurring breast cancer subset enriched in epithelial-to-mesenchymal transition and stem cell characteristics. *Cancer Res* 2009; **69**: 4116-4124 [PMID: 19435916 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-08-3441]

43 **Idowu MO**, Kmieciak M, Dumur C, Burton RS, Grimes MM, Powers CN, Manjili MH. CD44(+)/CD24(-/low) cancer stem/progenitor cells are more abundant in triple-negative invasive breast carcinoma phenotype and are associated with poor outcome. *Hum Pathol* 2012; **43**: 364-373 [PMID: 21835433 DOI: 10.1016/j.humpath.2011.05.005S0046-8177(11)00214-0]

44 **Foulkes WD**, Smith IE, Reis-Filho JS. Triple-negative breast cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2010; **363**: 1938-1948 [PMID: 21067385 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra1001389]

45 **Mayer IA**, Abramson VG, Lehmann BD, Pietenpol JA. New strategies for triple-negative breast cancer--deciphering the heterogeneity. *Clin Cancer Res* 2014; **20**: 782-790 [PMID: 24536073 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.ccr-13-0583]

46 **Perou CM**. Molecular stratification of triple-negative breast cancers. *Oncologist* 2011; **16** Suppl 1: 61-70 [PMID: 21278442 DOI: 10.1634/theoncologist.2011-S1-61]

47 **Charafe-Jauffret E**, Ginestier C, Iovino F, Wicinski J, Cervera N, Finetti P, Hur MH, Diebel ME, Monville F, Dutcher J, Brown M, Viens P, Xerri L, Bertucci F, Stassi G, Dontu G, Birnbaum D, Wicha MS. Breast cancer cell lines contain functional cancer stem cells with metastatic capacity and a distinct molecular signature. *Cancer Res* 2009; **69**: 1302-1313 [PMID: 19190339]

48 **Liu Y**, Nenutil R, Appleyard MV, Murray K, Boylan M, Thompson AM, Coates PJ. Lack of correlation of stem cell markers in breast cancer stem cells. *Br J Cancer* 2014; **110**: 2063-2071 [PMID: 24577057 DOI: 10.1038/bjc.2014.105]

49 **Liu S**, Cong Y, Wang D, Sun Y, Deng L, Liu Y, Martin-Trevino R, Shang L, McDermott SP, Landis MD, Hong S, Adams A, D'Angelo R, Ginestier C, Charafe-Jauffret E, Clouthier SG, Birnbaum D, Wong ST, Zhan M, Chang JC, Wicha MS. Breast cancer stem cells transition between epithelial and mesenchymal states reflective of their normal counterparts. *Stem Cell Reports* 2014; **2**: 78-91 [PMID: 24511467 DOI: 10.1016/j.stemcr.2013.11.009]

50 **Liu S**, Liu C, Min X, Ji Y, Wang N, Liu D, Cai J, Li K. Prognostic value of cancer stem cell marker aldehyde dehydrogenase in ovarian cancer: a meta-analysis. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e81050 [PMID: 24282568 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0081050]

51 **Le Magnen C**, Bubendorf L, Rentsch CA, Mengus C, Gsponer J, Zellweger T, Rieken M, Thalmann GN, Cecchini MG, Germann M, Bachmann A, Wyler S, Heberer M, Spagnoli GC. Characterization and clinical relevance of ALDHbright populations in prostate cancer. *Clin Cancer Res* 2013; **19**: 5361-5371 [PMID: 23969936 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-12-2857]

52 **Li XS**, Xu Q, Fu XY, Luo WS. ALDH1A1 overexpression is associated with the progression and prognosis in gastric cancer. *BMC Cancer* 2014; **14**: 705 [PMID: 25253129 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2407-14-705]

53 **Chen L**, Fan J, Chen H, Meng Z, Chen Z, Wang P, Liu L. The IL-8/CXCR1 axis is associated with cancer stem cell-like properties and correlates with clinical prognosis in human pancreatic cancer cases. *Sci Rep* 2014; **4**: 5911 [PMID: 25081383 DOI: 10.1038/srep05911]

54 **Ran D**, Schubert M, Pietsch L, Taubert I, Wuchter P, Eckstein V, Bruckner T, Zoeller M, Ho AD. Aldehyde dehydrogenase activity among primary leukemia cells is associated with stem cell features and correlates with adverse clinical outcomes. *Exp*

Hematol 2009; **37**: 1423-1434 [PMID: 19819294 DOI: 10.1016/j. exphem.2009.10.001]

55   **Bhola NE**, Balko JM, Dugger TC, Kuba MG, Sánchez V, Sanders M, Stanford J, Cook RS, Arteaga CL. TGF-β inhibition enhances chemotherapy action against triple-negative breast cancer. *J Clin Invest* 2013; **123**: 1348-1358 [PMID: 23391723 DOI: 10.1172/JCI65416]

56   **Ginestier C**, Liu S, Diebel ME, Korkaya H, Luo M, Brown M, Wicinski J, Cabaud O, Charafe-Jauffret E, Birnbaum D, Guan JL, Dontu G, Wicha MS. CXCR1 blockade selectively targets human breast cancer stem cells in vitro and in xenografts. *J Clin Invest* 2010; **120**: 485-497 [PMID: 20051626 DOI: 10.1172/JCI39397]

57   **Choi DS**, Blanco E, Kim YS, Rodriguez AA, Zhao H, Huang TH, Chen CL, Jin G, Landis MD, Burey LA, Qian W, Granados SM, Dave B, Wong HH, Ferrari M, Wong ST, Chang JC. Chloroquine eliminates cancer stem cells through deregulation of Jak2 and DNMT1. *Stem Cells* 2014; **32**: 2309-2323 [PMID: 24809620 DOI: 10.1002/stem.1746]

58   **Li X**, Lewis MT, Huang J, Gutierrez C, Osborne CK, Wu MF, Hilsenbeck SG, Pavlick A, Zhang X, Chamness GC, Wong H, Rosen J, Chang JC. Intrinsic resistance of tumorigenic breast cancer cells to chemotherapy. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2008; **100**: 672-679 [PMID: 18445819 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/djn123]

59   **Lee HE**, Kim JH, Kim YJ, Choi SY, Kim SW, Kang E, Chung IY, Kim IA, Kim EJ, Choi Y, Ryu HS, Park SY. An increase in cancer stem cell population after primary systemic therapy is a poor prognostic factor in breast cancer. *Br J Cancer* 2011; **104**: 1730-1738 [PMID: 21559013 DOI: 10.1038/bjc.2011.159]

60   **Tanei T**, Morimoto K, Shimazu K, Kim SJ, Tanji Y, Taguchi T, Tamaki Y, Noguchi S. Association of breast cancer stem cells identified by aldehyde dehydrogenase 1 expression with resistance to sequential Paclitaxel and epirubicin-based chemotherapy for breast cancers. *Clin Cancer Res* 2009; **15**: 4234-4241 [PMID: 19509181 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-08-1479]

61   **Alamgeer M**, Ganju V, Kumar B, Fox J, Hart S, White M, Harris M, Stuckey J, Prodanovic Z, Schneider-Kolsky ME, Watkins DN. Changes in aldehyde dehydrogenase-1 expression during neoadjuvant chemotherapy predict outcome in locally advanced breast cancer. *Breast Cancer Res* 2014; **16**: R44 [PMID: 24762066 DOI: 10.1186/bcr3648]

62   **Gong C**, Yao H, Liu Q, Chen J, Shi J, Su F, Song E. Markers of tumor-initiating cells predict chemoresistance in breast cancer. *PLoS One* 2010; **5**: e15630 [PMID: 21187973 DOI: 10.1371/journal. pone.0015630]

63   **Creighton CJ**, Li X, Landis M, Dixon JM, Neumeister VM, Sjolund A, Rimm DL, Wong H, Rodriguez A, Herschkowitz JI, Fan C, Zhang X, He X, Pavlick A, Gutierrez MC, Renshaw L, Larionov AA, Faratian D, Hilsenbeck SG, Perou CM, Lewis MT, Rosen JM, Chang JC. Residual breast cancers after conventional therapy display mesenchymal as well as tumor-initiating features. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2009; **106**: 13820-13825 [PMID: 19666588 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0905718106]

64   **Akunuru S**, James Zhai Q, Zheng Y. Non-small cell lung cancer stem/progenitor cells are enriched in multiple distinct phenotypic subpopulations and exhibit plasticity. *Cell Death Dis* 2012; **3**: e352 [PMID: 22825470 DOI: 10.1038/cddis.2012.93]

65   **Gonçalves A**, Pierga JY, Brain E, Tarpin C, Cure H, Esterni B, Boyer-Chammard A, Bertucci F, Jalaguier A, Houvenaeghel G, Viens P, Charaffe-Jauffret E, Extra JM. Abstract ot2-3-05: Avastem: A phase II randomized trial evaluating anti-cancer stem cell activity of pre-operative bevacizumab and chemotherapy in breast cancer. *Cancer Res* 2012; **24**: OT2-3-05 [DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472. sabcs12-ot2-3-05]

66   **Conley SJ**, Gheordunescu E, Kakarala P, Newman B, Korkaya H, Heath AN, Clouthier SG, Wicha MS. Antiangiogenic agents increase breast cancer stem cells via the generation of tumor hypoxia. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2012; **109**: 2784-2789 [PMID: 22308314 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1018866109]

67   **Li Z**, Bao S, Wu Q, Wang H, Eyler C, Sathornsumetee S, Shi Q, Cao Y, Lathia J, McLendon RE, Hjelmeland AB, Rich JN. Hypoxia-inducible factors regulate tumorigenic capacity of glioma

stem cells. *Cancer Cell* 2009; **15**: 501-513 [PMID: 19477429 DOI: 10.1016/j.ccr.2009.03.018]

68   **Chen X**, Iliopoulos D, Zhang Q, Tang Q, Greenblatt MB, Hatziapostolou M, Lim E, Tam WL, Ni M, Chen Y, Mai J, Shen H, Hu DZ, Adoro S, Hu B, Song M, Tan C, Landis MD, Ferrari M, Shin SJ, Brown M, Chang JC, Liu XS, Glimcher LH. XBP1 promotes triple-negative breast cancer by controlling the HIF1α pathway. *Nature* 2014; **508**: 103-107 [PMID: 24670641 DOI: 10.1038/nature13119]

69   **Jensen RL**. Brain tumor hypoxia: tumorigenesis, angiogenesis, imaging, pseudoprogression, and as a therapeutic target. *J Neurooncol* 2009; **92**: 317-335 [PMID: 19357959 DOI: 10.1007/ s11060-009-9827-2]

70   **Heddleston JM**, Hitomi M, Venere M, Flavahan WA, Yang K, Kim Y, Minhas S, Rich JN, Hjelmeland AB. Glioma stem cell maintenance: the role of the microenvironment. *Curr Pharm Des* 2011; **17**: 2386-2401 [PMID: 21827414]

71   **Reya T**, Morrison SJ, Clarke MF, Weissman IL. Stem cells, cancer, and cancer stem cells. *Nature* 2001; **414**: 105-111 [PMID: 11689955 DOI: 10.1038/35102167]

72   **Molofsky AV**, Pardal R, Morrison SJ. Diverse mechanisms regulate stem cell self-renewal. *Curr Opin Cell Biol* 2004; **16**: 700-707 [PMID: 15530784 DOI: 10.1016/j.ceb.2004.09.004]

73   **Varjosalo M**, Taipale J. Hedgehog: functions and mechanisms. *Genes Dev* 2008; **22**: 2454-2472 [PMID: 18794343 DOI: 10.1101/ gad.1693608]

74   **Maugeri-Saccà M**, Zeuner A, De Maria R. Therapeutic targeting of cancer stem cells. *Front Oncol* 2011; **1**: 10 [PMID: 22655230 DOI: 10.3389/fonc.2011.00010]

75   **Corbit KC**, Aanstad P, Singla V, Norman AR, Stainier DY, Reiter JF. Vertebrate Smoothened functions at the primary cilium. *Nature* 2005; **437**: 1018-1021 [PMID: 16136078 DOI: 10.1038/ nature04117]

76   **Merchant AA**, Matsui W. Targeting Hedgehog--a cancer stem cell pathway. *Clin Cancer Res* 2010; **16**: 3130-3140 [PMID: 20530699 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-09-2846]

77   **Song Z**, Yue W, Wei B, Wang N, Li T, Guan L, Shi S, Zeng Q, Pei X, Chen L. Sonic hedgehog pathway is essential for maintenance of cancer stem-like cells in human gastric cancer. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e17687 [PMID: 21394208 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0017687]

78   **Tang SN**, Fu J, Nall D, Rodova M, Shankar S, Srivastava RK. Inhibition of sonic hedgehog pathway and pluripotency maintaining factors regulate human pancreatic cancer stem cell characteristics. *Int J Cancer* 2012; **131**: 30-40 [PMID: 21796625 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.26323]

79   **Chen YJ**, Sims-Mourtada J, Izzo J, Chao KS. Targeting the hedgehog pathway to mitigate treatment resistance. *Cell Cycle* 2007; **6**: 1826-1830 [PMID: 17671418 DOI: 10.4161/cc.6.15.4545]

80   **Von Hoff DD**, LoRusso PM, Rudin CM, Reddy JC, Yauch RL, Tibes R, Weiss GJ, Borad MJ, Hann CL, Brahmer JR, Mackey HM, Lum BL, Darbonne WC, Marsters JC, de Sauvage FJ, Low JA. Inhibition of the hedgehog pathway in advanced basal-cell carcinoma. *N Engl J Med* 2009; **361**: 1164-1172 [PMID: 19726763 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0905360]

81   **Sekulic A**, Migden MR, Oro AE, Dirix L, Lewis KD, Hainsworth JD, Solomon JA, Yoo S, Arron ST, Friedlander PA, Marmur E, Rudin CM, Chang AL, Low JA, Mackey HM, Yauch RL, Graham RA, Reddy JC, Hauschild A. Efficacy and safety of vismodegib in advanced basal-cell carcinoma. *N Engl J Med* 2012; **366**: 2171-2179 [PMID: 22670903 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1113713]

82   **Tang JY**, Mackay-Wiggan JM, Aszterbaum M, Yauch RL, Lindgren J, Chang K, Coppola C, Chanana AM, Marji J, Bickers DR, Epstein EH. Inhibiting the hedgehog pathway in patients with the basal-cell nevus syndrome. *N Engl J Med* 2012; **366**: 2180-2188 [PMID: 22670904 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1113538]

83   **Amakye D**, Jagani Z, Dorsch M. Unraveling the therapeutic potential of the Hedgehog pathway in cancer. *Nat Med* 2013; **19**: 1410-1422 [PMID: 24202394 DOI: 10.1038/nm.3389]

84   **Soltanian S**, Matin MM. Cancer stem cells and cancer therapy. *Tumour Biol* 2011; **32**: 425-440 [PMID: 21318290 DOI: 10.1007/

s13277-011-0155-8]

85   **Wang Z**, Li Y, Banerjee S, Sarkar FH. Exploitation of the Notch signaling pathway as a novel target for cancer therapy. *Anticancer Res* 2008; **28**: 3621-3630 [PMID: 19189643]

86   **Lobry C**, Oh P, Aifantis I. Oncogenic and tumor suppressor functions of Notch in cancer: it's NOTCH what you think. *J Exp Med* 2011; **208**: 1931-1935 [PMID: 21948802 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20111855]

87   **Radtke F**, Raj K. The role of Notch in tumorigenesis: oncogene or tumour suppressor? *Nat Rev Cancer* 2003; **3**: 756-767 [PMID: 14570040 DOI: 10.1038/nrc1186]

88   **Smith DC**, Eisenberg PD, Manikhas G, Chugh R, Gubens MA, Stagg RJ, Kapoun AM, Xu L, Dupont J, Sikic B. A phase I dose escalation and expansion study of the anticancer stem cell agent demcizumab (anti-DLL4) in patients with previously treated solid tumors. *Clin Cancer Res* 2014; **20**: 6295-6303 [PMID: 25324140 DC: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-14-1373]

89   **Gracian AC**, Jameson MB, Grande E, Cooray P, Parnis F, Grimison P, Jeffery M, Stagg RJ, Dupont J, Tebbutt NC. A phase 1b study of the anticancer stem cell agent demcizumab (dem) and gemcitabine (gem) with or without paclitaxel protein bound particles (nab-paclitaxel) in patients with pancreatic cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2014; **32** Suppl 3: Abstr 279

90   **McKeage MJ**, Kotasek D, Markman B, Hidalgo M, Millward M, Jameson MB, Harris DL, Stagg RJ, Dupont J, Hughes BGM. A phase 1b study of the anticancer stem cell agent demcizumab (dem), pemetrexed (pem), and carboplatin (carbo) in pts with first-line nonsquamous NSCLC. *J Clin Oncol* 2014; **32** Suppl 3: Abstr 2544

91   **Von Hoff DD**, Ervin T, Arena FP, Chiorean EG, Infante J, Moore M, Seay T, Tjulandin SA, Ma WW, Saleh MN, Harris M, Reni M, Dowden S, Laheru D, Bahary N, Ramanathan RK, Tabernero J, Hidalgo M, Goldstein D, Van Cutsem E, Wei X, Iglesias J, Renschler MF. Increased survival in pancreatic cancer with nab-paclitaxel plus gemcitabine. *N Engl J Med* 2013; **369**: 1691-1703 [PMID: 24131140 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1304369]

92   **Dontu G**, Jackson KW, McNicholas E, Kawamura MJ, Abdallah WM, Wicha MS. Role of Notch signaling in cell-fate determination of human mammary stem/progenitor cells. *Breast Cancer Res* 2004; **6**: R605-R615 [PMID: 15535842 DOI: 10.1186/bcr920]

93   **Harrison H**, Farnie G, Howell SJ, Rock RE, Stylianou S, Brennan KR, Bundred NJ, Clarke RB. Regulation of breast cancer stem cell activity by signaling through the Notch4 receptor. *Cancer Res* 2010; **70**: 709-718 [PMID: 20068161 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-09-1681]

94   **Schott AF**, Landis MD, Dontu G, Griffith KA, Layman RM, Krop I, Paskett LA, Wong H, Dobrolecki LE, Lewis MT, Froehlich AM, Paranilam J, Hayes DF, Wicha MS, Chang JC. Preclinical and clinical studies of gamma secretase inhibitors with docetaxel on human breast tumors. *Clin Cancer Res* 2013; **19**: 1512-1524 [PMID: 23340294 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-11-3326]

95   **Krop I**, Demuth T, Guthrie T, Wen PY, Mason WP, Chinnaiyan P, Butowski N, Groves MD, Kesari S, Freedman SJ, Blackman S, Watters J, Loboda A, Podtelezhnikov A, Lunceford J, Chen C, Giannotti M, Hing J, Beckman R, Lorusso P. Phase I pharmacologic and pharmacodynamic study of the gamma secretase (Notch) inhibitor MK-0752 in adult patients with advanced solid tumors. *J Clin Oncol* 2012; **30**: 2307-2313 [PMID: 22547604 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2011.39.1540]

96   **Eniu A**, Palmieri FM, Perez EA. Weekly administration of docetaxel and paclitaxel in metastatic or advanced breast cancer. *Oncologist* 2005; **10**: 665-685 [PMID: 16249346 DOI: 10.1634/theoncologist.10-9-665]

97   **Klaus A**, Birchmeier W. Wnt signalling and its impact on development and cancer. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2008; **8**: 387-398 [PMID: 18432252 DOI: 10.1038/nrc2389]

98   **Wend P**, Holland JD, Ziebold U, Birchmeier W. Wnt signaling in stem and cancer stem cells. *Semin Cell Dev Biol* 2010; **21**: 855-863 [PMID: 20837152 DOI: 10.1016/j.semcdb.2010.09.004]

99   **Katoh M**, Katoh M. WNT signaling pathway and stem cell signaling network. *Clin Cancer Res* 2007; **13**: 4042-4045 [PMID: 17634527 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-06-2316]

100   **Gurney A**, Axelrod F, Bond CJ, Cain J, Chartier C, Donigan L, Fischer M, Chaudhari A, Ji M, Kapoun AM, Lam A, Lazetic S, Ma S, Mitra S, Park IK, Pickell K, Sato A, Satyal S, Stroud M, Tran H, Yen WC, Lewicki J, Hoey T. Wnt pathway inhibition via the targeting of Frizzled receptors results in decreased growth and tumorigenicity of human tumors. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2012; **109**: 11717-11722 [PMID: 22753465 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1120068109]

101   **Smith DC**, Rosen LS, Chugh R, Goldman JW, Xu L, Kapoun A, Brachmann RK, Dupont J, Stagg RJ, Tolcher AW, Papadopoulos KP. First-in-human evaluation of the human monoclonal antibody vantictumab (OMP-18R5; anti-frizzled) targeting the Wnt pathway in a phase I study for patients with advanced solid tumors. *J Clin Oncol* 2013; **31**: abstr 2540

102   **Jimeno A**, Gordon MS, Chugh R, Messersmith WA, Mendelson DS, Dupont J, Stagg RJ, Kapoun A, Xu L, Brachmann RK, Smith DC. A first-in-human phase 1 study of anticancer stem cell agent OMP-54F28 (fzd8-fc), decoy receptor for wnt ligands, in patients with advanced solid tumors. *J Clin Oncol* 2014; **32** Suppl 3: Abstr 2505

103   **Rossi D**, Zlotnik A. The biology of chemokines and their receptors. *Annu Rev Immunol* 2000; **18**: 217-242 [PMID: 10837058 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.immunol.18.1.217]

104   **Walz A**, Peveri P, Aschauer H, Baggiolini M. Purification and amino acid sequencing of NAF, a novel neutrophil-activating factor produced by monocytes. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 1987; **149**: 755-761 [PMID: 3322281 DOI: 10.1016/0006-291X(87)90432-3]

105   **Schröder JM**, Mrowietz U, Morita E, Christophers E. Purification and partial biochemical characterization of a human monocyte-derived, neutrophil-activating peptide that lacks interleukin 1 activity. *J Immunol* 1987; **139**: 3474-3483 [PMID: 2824608]

106   **Holmes WE**, Lee J, Kuang WJ, Rice GC, Wood WI. Structure and functional expression of a human interleukin-8 receptor. *Science* 1991; **253**: 1278-1280 [PMID: 1840701 DOI: 10.1126/science.1840701]

107   **Murphy PM**, Tiffany HL. Cloning of complementary DNA encoding a functional human interleukin-8 receptor. *Science* 1991; **253**: 1280-1283 [PMID: 1891716 DOI: 10.1126/science.1891716]

108   **Venkatakrishnan G**, Salgia R, Groopman JE. Chemokine receptors CXCR-1/2 activate mitogen-activated protein kinase via the epidermal growth factor receptor in ovarian cancer cells. *J Biol Chem* 2000; **275**: 6868-6875 [PMID: 10702246 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.275.10.6868]

109   **Zhu YM**, Webster SJ, Flower D, Woll PJ. Interleukin-8/CXCL8 is a growth factor for human lung cancer cells. *Br J Cancer* 2004; **91**: 1970-1976 [PMID: 15545974 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6602227]

110   **Singh JK**, Simões BM, Clarke RB, Bundred NJ. Targeting IL-8 signalling to inhibit breast cancer stem cell activity. *Expert Opin Ther Targets* 2013; **17**: 1235-1241 [PMID: 24032691 DOI: 10.1517/14728222.2013.835398]

111   **Bertini R**, Allegretti M, Bizzarri C, Moriconi A, Locati M, Zampella G, Cervellera MN, Di Cioccio V, Cesta MC, Galliera E, Martinez FO, Di Bitondo R, Troiani G, Sabbatini V, D'Anniballe G, Anacardio R, Cutrin JC, Cavalieri B, Mainiero F, Strippoli R, Villa P, Di Girolamo M, Martin F, Gentile M, Santoni A, Corda D, Poli G, Mantovani A, Ghezzi P, Colotta F. Noncompetitive allosteric inhibitors of the inflammatory chemokine receptors CXCR1 and CXCR2: prevention of reperfusion injury. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2004; **101**: 11791-11796 [PMID: 15282370 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0402090101]

112   **Citro A**, Cantarelli E, Maffi P, Nano R, Melzi R, Mercalli A, Dugnani E, Sordi V, Magistretti P, Daffonchio L, Ruffini PA, Allegretti M, Secchi A, Bonifacio E, Piemonti L. CXCR1/2 inhibition enhances pancreatic islet survival after transplantation. *J Clin Invest* 2012; **122**: 3647-3651 [PMID: 22996693 DOI: 10.1172/JCI6308963089]

113   **Schott A**, Wicha M, Cristofanilli M, Ruffini P, McCanna S, Reuben J, Goldstein L. Abstract ot2-3-01: Phase Ib pilot study to evaluate reparixin in combination with chemotherapy with weekly paclitaxel in patients with HER-2 negative metastatic breast cancer (MBC). *Cancer Res* 2012; **72**: OT2-3-01 [DOI:

10.1158/0008-5472.sabcs12-ot2-3-01]

114 **Goldstein L**, Sparano J, Perez R, Vito C, Reuben J, Landis M, McCanna S, Ruffini P, Cristofanilli M, Chang J. A single arm, preoperative, pilot study to evaluate the safety and biological effects of orally administered reparixin in early breast cancer patients who are candidates for surgery. *Cancer Res* 2013; **73**: OT2-6-03 [DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.sabcs13-ot2-6-03]

115 **Singh JK**, Farnie G, Bundred NJ, Simões BM, Shergill A, Landberg G, Howell SJ, Clarke RB. Targeting CXCR1/2 significantly reduces breast cancer stem cell activity and increases the efficacy of inhibiting HER2 via HER2-dependent and -independent mechanisms. *Clin Cancer Res* 2013; **19**: 643-656 [PMID: 23149820 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-12-1063]

116 **Marotta LL**, Almendro V, Marusyk A, Shipitsin M, Schemme J, Walker SR, Bloushtain-Qimron N, Kim JJ, Choudhury SA, Maruyama M, Wu Z, Gönen M, Mulvey LA, Bessarabova MO, Huh SJ, Silver SJ, Kim SY, Park SY, Lee HE, Anderson KS, Richardson AL, Nikolskaya T, Nikolsky Y, Liu XS, Root DE, Hahn WC, Frank DA, Polyak K. The JAK2/STAT3 signaling pathway is required for growth of CD44+CD24- stem cell-like breast cancer cells in human tumors. *J Clin Invest* 2011; **121**: 2723-2735 [PMID: 21633165 DOI: 10.1172/JCI44745]

117 **Birnbaum T**, Roider J, Schankin CJ, Padovan CS, Schichor C, Goldbrunner R, Straube A. Malignant gliomas actively recruit bone marrow stromal cells by secreting angiogenic cytokines. *J Neurooncol* 2007; **83**: 241-247 [PMID: 17570034 DOI: 10.1007/s11060-007-9332-4]

118 **Waugh DJ**, Wilson C. The interleukin-8 pathway in cancer. *Clin Cancer Res* 2008; **14**: 6735-6741 [PMID: 18980965 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-07-4843]

119 **Korkaya H**, Kim GI, Davis A, Malik F, Henry NL, Ithimakin S, Quraishi AA, Tawakkol N, D'Angelo R, Paulson AK, Chung S, Luther T, Paholak HJ, Liu S, Hassan KA, Zen Q, Clouthier SG, Wicha MS. Activation of an IL6 inflammatory loop mediates trastuzumab resistance in HER2+ breast cancer by expanding the cancer stem cell population. *Mol Cell* 2012; **47**: 570-584 [PMID: 22819326 DOI: 10.1016/j.molcel.2012.06.014]

120 **Korkaya H**, Paulson A, Iovino F, Wicha MS. HER2 regulates the mammary stem/progenitor cell population driving tumorigenesis and invasion. *Oncogene* 2008; **27**: 6120-6130 [PMID: 18591932 DOI: 10.1038/onc.2008.207]

121 **Magnifico A**, Albano L, Campaner S, Delia D, Castiglioni F, Gasparini P, Sozzi G, Fontanella E, Menard S, Tagliabue E. Tumor-initiating cells of HER2-positive carcinoma cell lines express the highest oncoprotein levels and are sensitive to trastuzumab. *Clin Cancer Res* 2009; **15**: 2010-2021 [PMID: 19276287 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-08-1327]

122 **Korkaya H**, Paulson A, Charafe-Jauffret E, Ginestier C, Brown M, Dutcher J, Clouthier SG, Wicha MS. Regulation of mammary stem/progenitor cells by PTEN/Akt/beta-catenin signaling. *PLoS Biol* 2009; **7**: e1000121 [PMID: 19492080 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pbio.1000121]

123 **Korkaya H**, Wicha MS. HER2 and breast cancer stem cells: more than meets the eye. *Cancer Res* 2013; **73**: 3489-3493 [PMID: 23740771 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-13-0260]

124 **Paik S**, Kim C, Wolmark N. HER2 status and benefit from adjuvant trastuzumab in breast cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2008; **358**: 1409-1411 [PMID: 18367751 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMc0801440]

125 **Ithimakin S**, Day KC, Malik F, Zen Q, Dawsey SJ, Bersano-Begey TF, Quraishi AA, Ignatoski KW, Daignault S, Davis A, Hall CL, Palanisamy N, Heath AN, Tawakkol N, Luther TK, Clouthier SG, Chadwick WA, Day ML, Kleer CG, Thomas DG, Hayes DF, Korkaya H, Wicha MS. HER2 drives luminal breast cancer stem cells in the absence of HER2 amplification: implications for efficacy of adjuvant trastuzumab. *Cancer Res* 2013; **73**: 1635-1646 [PMID: 23442322 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-12-3349]

126 **Korkaya H**, Wicha MS. Breast cancer stem cells: we've got them surrounded. *Clin Cancer Res* 2013; **19**: 511-513 [PMID: 23251003 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-12-3450]

127 **Paller CJ**, Bradbury PA, Ivy SP, Seymour L, LoRusso PM, Baker L,

Rubinstein L, Huang E, Collyar D, Groshen S, Reeves S, Ellis LM, Sargent DJ, Rosner GL, LeBlanc ML, Ratain MJ. Design of phase I combination trials: recommendations of the Clinical Trial Design Task Force of the NCI Investigational Drug Steering Committee. *Clin Cancer Res* 2014; **20**: 4210-4217 [PMID: 25125258 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-14-0521]

128 **Gupta PB**, Onder TT, Jiang G, Tao K, Kuperwasser C, Weinberg RA, Lander ES. Identification of selective inhibitors of cancer stem cells by high-throughput screening. *Cell* 2009; **138**: 645-659 [PMID: 19682730 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2009.06.034]

129 **Sachlos E**, Risueño RM, Laronde S, Shapovalova Z, Lee JH, Russell J, Malig M, McNicol JD, Fiebig-Comyn A, Graham M, Levadoux-Martin M, Lee JB, Giacomelli AO, Hassell JA, Fischer-Russell D, Trus MR, Foley R, Leber B, Xenocostas A, Brown ED, Collins TJ, Bhatia M. Identification of drugs including a dopamine receptor antagonist that selectively target cancer stem cells. *Cell* 2012; **149**: 1284-1297 [PMID: 22632761 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2012.03.049]

130 **Janku F**, McConkey DJ, Hong DS, Kurzrock R. Autophagy as a target for anticancer therapy. *Nat Rev Clin Oncol* 2011; **8**: 528-539 [PMID: 21587219 DOI: 10.1038/nrclinonc.2011.71]

131 **Gong C**, Bauvy C, Tonelli G, Yue W, Deloménie C, Nicolas V, Zhu Y, Domergue V, Marin-Esteban V, Tharinger H, Delbos L, Gary-Gouy H, Morel AP, Ghavami S, Song E, Codogno P, Mehrpour M. Beclin 1 and autophagy are required for the tumorigenicity of breast cancer stem-like/progenitor cells. *Oncogene* 2013; **32**: 2261-2272, 2272e.1-11 [PMID: 22733132 DOI: 10.1038/onc.2012.252]

132 **Bellodi C**, Lidonnici MR, Hamilton A, Helgason GV, Soliera AR, Ronchetti M, Galavotti S, Young KW, Selmi T, Yacobi R, Van Etten RA, Donato N, Hunter A, Dinsdale D, Tirrò E, Vigneri P, Nicotera P, Dyer MJ, Holyoake T, Salomoni P, Calabretta B. Targeting autophagy potentiates tyrosine kinase inhibitor-induced cell death in Philadelphia chromosome-positive cells, including primary CML stem cells. *J Clin Invest* 2009; **119**: 1109-1123 [PMID: 19363292 DOI: 10.1172/JCI35660]

133 **Kourelis TV**, Siegel RD. Metformin and cancer: new applications for an old drug. *Med Oncol* 2012; **29**: 1314-1327 [PMID: 21301998 DOI: 10.1007/s12032-011-9846-7]

134 **Rattan R**, Ali Fehmi R, Munkarah A. Metformin: an emerging new therapeutic option for targeting cancer stem cells and metastasis. *J Oncol* 2012; **2012**: 928127 [PMID: 22701483 DOI: 10.1155/2012/928127]

135 **Song CW**, Lee H, Dings RP, Williams B, Powers J, Santos TD, Choi BH, Park HJ. Metformin kills and radiosensitizes cancer cells and preferentially kills cancer stem cells. *Sci Rep* 2012; **2**: 362 [PMID: 22500211 DOI: 10.1038/srep00362]

136 **Thompson AM**. Molecular pathways: preclinical models and clinical trials with metformin in breast cancer. *Clin Cancer Res* 2014; **20**: 2508-2515 [PMID: 24682417 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-13-0354]

137 **Kim J**, Tang JY, Gong R, Kim J, Lee JJ, Clemons KV, Chong CR, Chang KS, Fereshteh M, Gardner D, Reya T, Liu JO, Epstein EH, Stevens DA, Beachy PA. Itraconazole, a commonly used antifungal that inhibits Hedgehog pathway activity and cancer growth. *Cancer Cell* 2010; **17**: 388-399 [PMID: 20385363 DOI: 10.1016/j.ccr.2010.02.027]

138 **Kim J**, Lee JJ, Kim J, Gardner D, Beachy PA. Arsenic antagonizes the Hedgehog pathway by preventing ciliary accumulation and reducing stability of the Gli2 transcriptional effector. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2010; **107**: 13432-13437 [PMID: 20624968 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1006822107]

139 **Kim DJ**, Kim J, Spaunhurst K, Montoya J, Khodosh R, Chandra K, Fu T, Gilliam A, Molgo M, Beachy PA, Tang JY. Open-label, exploratory phase II trial of oral itraconazole for the treatment of basal cell carcinoma. *J Clin Oncol* 2014; **32**: 745-751 [PMID: 24493717 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2013.49.9525]

140 **Bhat-Nakshatri P**, Goswami CP, Badve S, Sledge GW, Nakshatri H. Identification of FDA-approved drugs targeting breast cancer stem cells along with biomarkers of sensitivity. *Sci Rep* 2013; **3**: 2530 [PMID: 23982413 DOI: 10.1038/srep02530]

141 **Eisenhauer EA**, Therasse P, Bogaerts J, Schwartz LH, Sargent D, Ford R, Dancey J, Arbuck S, Gwyther S, Mooney M, Rubinstein L, Shankar L, Dodd L, Kaplan R, Lacombe D, Verweij J. New response evaluation criteria in solid tumours: revised RECIST guideline (version 1.1). *Eur J Cancer* 2009; **45**: 228-247 [PMID: 19097774 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2008.10.026]

142 **Steeg PS**. Perspective: The right trials. *Nature* 2012; **485**: S58-S59 [PMID: 22648501 DOI: 10.1038/485S58a]

143 **Oxnard GR**, Morris MJ, Hodi FS, Baker LH, Kris MG, Venook AP, Schwartz LH. When progressive disease does not mean treatment failure: reconsidering the criteria for progression. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2012; **104**: 1534-1541 [PMID: 22927506 DOI: 10.1093/jnci/djs353]

144 **Oxnard GR**, Arcila ME, Chmielecki J, Ladanyi M, Miller VA, Pao W. New strategies in overcoming acquired resistance to epidermal growth factor receptor tyrosine kinase inhibitors in lung cancer. *Clin Cancer Res* 2011; **17**: 5530-5537 [PMID: 21775534 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-10-2571]

145 **Sequist LV**, von Pawel J, Garmey EG, Akerley WL, Brugger W, Ferrari D, Chen Y, Costa DB, Gerber DE, Orlov S, Ramlau R, Arthur S, Gorbachevsky I, Schwartz B, Schiller JH. Randomized phase II study of erlotinib plus tivantinib versus erlotinib plus placebo in previously treated non-small-cell lung cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2011; **29**: 3307-3315 [PMID: 21768463 DOI: 10.1200/jco.2010.34.0570]

146 **Giuliano M**, Giordano A, Jackson S, De Giorgi U, Mego M, Cohen EN, Gao H, Anfossi S, Handy BC, Ueno NT, Alvarez RH, De Placido S, Valero V, Hortobagyi GN, Reuben JM, Cristofanilli M. Circulating tumor cells as early predictors of metastatic spread in breast cancer patients with limited metastatic dissemination. *Breast Cancer Res* 2014; **16**: 440 [PMID: 25223629 DOI: 10.1186/s13058-014-0440-8]

147 **Smith MR**, Saad F, Coleman R, Shore N, Fizazi K, Tombal B, Miller K, Sieber P, Karsh L, Damião R, Tammela TL, Egerdie B, Van Poppel H, Chin J, Morote J, Gómez-Veiga F, Borkowski T, Ye Z, Kupic A, Dansey R, Goessl C. Denosumab and bone-metastasis-free survival in men with castration-resistant prostate cancer: results of a phase 3, randomised, placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet* 2012; **379**: 39-46 [PMID: 22093187 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(11)61226-9]

148 **Stopeck AT**, Lipton A, Body JJ, Steger GG, Tonkin K, de Boer RH, Lichinitser M, Fujiwara Y, Yardley DA, Viniegra M, Fan M, Jiang Q, Dansey R, Jun S, Braun A. Denosumab compared with zoledronic acid for the treatment of bone metastases in patients with advanced breast cancer: a randomized, double-blind study. *J Clin Oncol* 2010; **28**: 5132-5139 [PMID: 21060033 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2010.29.7101]

149 **Cristofanilli M**, Budd GT, Ellis MJ, Stopeck A, Matera J, Miller MC, Reuben JM, Doyle GV, Allard WJ, Terstappen LW, Hayes DF. Circulating tumor cells, disease progression, and survival in metastatic breast cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2004; **351**: 781-791 [PMID: 15317891 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa040766]

150 **Hayes DF**, Cristofanilli M, Budd GT, Ellis MJ, Stopeck A, Miller MC, Matera J, Allard WJ, Doyle GV, Terstappen LW. Circulating tumor cells at each follow-up time point during therapy of metastatic breast cancer patients predict progression-free and overall survival. *Clin Cancer Res* 2006; **12**: 4218-4224 [PMID: 16857794 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-05-2821]

151 **Haber DA**, Velculescu VE. Blood-based analyses of cancer: circulating tumor cells and circulating tumor DNA. *Cancer Discov* 2014; **4**: 650-661 [PMID: 24801577 DOI: 10.1158/2159-8290.CD-13-1014]

152 **Grover PK**, Cummins AG, Price TJ, Roberts-Thomson IC, Hardingham JE. Circulating tumour cells: the evolving concept and the inadequacy of their enrichment by EpCAM-based methodology for basic and clinical cancer research. *Ann Oncol* 2014; **25**: 1506-1516 [PMID: 24651410 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mdu018]

153 **Dave B**, Granados-Principal S, Zhu R, Benz S, Rabizadeh S, Soon-Shiong P, Yu KD, Shao Z, Li X, Gilcrease M, Lai Z, Chen Y, Huang TH, Shen H, Liu X, Ferrari M, Zhan M, Wong ST, Kumaraswami M, Mittal V, Chen X, Gross SS, Chang JC. Targeting RPL39 and MLF2 reduces tumor initiation and metastasis in breast cancer by inhibiting nitric oxide synthase signaling. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2014; **111**: 8838-8843 [PMID: 24876273 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1320769111]

154 **Ellis LM**, Bernstein DS, Voest EE, Berlin JD, Sargent D, Cortazar P, Garrett-Mayer E, Herbst RS, Lilenbaum RC, Sima C, Venook AP, Gonen M, Schilsky RL, Meropol NJ, Schnipper LE. American Society of Clinical Oncology perspective: Raising the bar for clinical trials by defining clinically meaningful outcomes. *J Clin Oncol* 2014; **32**: 1277-1280 [PMID: 24638016 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2013.53.8009]

155 **Bonadonna G**, Moliterni A, Zambetti M, Daidone MG, Pilotti S, Gianni L, Valagussa P. 30 years' follow up of randomised studies of adjuvant CMF in operable breast cancer: cohort study. *BMJ* 2005; **330**: 217 [PMID: 15649903 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.38314.622095.8F]

156 **Yauch RL**, Dijkgraaf GJ, Alicke B, Januario T, Ahn CP, Holcomb T, Pujara K, Stinson J, Callahan CA, Tang T, Bazan JF, Kan Z, Seshagiri S, Hann CL, Gould SE, Low JA, Rudin CM, de Sauvage FJ. Smoothened mutation confers resistance to a Hedgehog pathway inhibitor in medulloblastoma. *Science* 2009; **326**: 572-574 [PMID: 19726788 DOI: 10.1126/science.1179386]

157 **Atwood SX**, Li M, Lee A, Tang JY, Oro AE. GLI activation by atypical protein kinase C ι/λ regulates the growth of basal cell carcinomas. *Nature* 2013; **494**: 484-488 [PMID: 23446420 DOI: 10.1038/nature11889]

REVIEW

Carbapenemases: A worldwide threat to antimicrobial therapy

José Miguel Sahuquillo-Arce, Alicia Hernández-Cabezas, Fernanda Yarad-Auad, Elisa Ibáñez-Martínez, Patricia Falomir-Salcedo, Alba Ruiz-Gaitán

José Miguel Sahuquillo-Arce, Grupo de investigación de infecciones respiratorias, Instituto de Investigación Sanitaria - Fundación para la Investigación Hospital La Fe., Torre A, 46026 Valencia, Spain
Alicia Hernández-Cabezas, Fernanda Yarad-Auad, Elisa Ibáñez-Martínez, Patricia Falomir-Salcedo, Alba Ruiz-Gaitán, Servicio de Microbiología, Hospital Universitari i Politécnic La Fe, 46009 Valencia, Spain
Author contributions: All authors contributed equally to this manuscript.
Conflict-of-interest: The authors declare they have no conflicts of interest.
Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/
Correspondence to: José Miguel Sahuquillo-Arce, MD, Grupo de investigación de infecciones respiratorias, Instituto de Investigación Sanitaria - Fundación para la Investigación Hospital La Fe., Bulevar Sur, s/n, Hospital U. y P. La Fe, Torre A, Planta 6ª, 46026 Valencia, Spain. wadjur@hotmail.com
Telephone: +34-96-3862764
Received: July 29, 2014
Peer-review started: July 29, 2014
First decision: October 16, 2014
Revised: November 14, 2014
Accepted: November 27, 2014
Article in press: December 1, 2014
Published online: March 9, 2015

Abstract

Carbapenems are potent β-lactams with activity against extended-spectrum cephalosporinases and β-lactamases. These antibiotics, derived from thienamycn, a carbapenem produced by the environmental bacterium *Streptomyces cattleya*, were initially used as last-resort treatments for severe Gram-negative bacterial infections presenting resistance to most β-lactams but have become an empirical option in countries with high prevalence of Extended Spectrum β-lactamase-producing bacterial infections. Imipenem, the first commercially available carbapenem, was approved for clinical use in 1985. Since then, a wide variety of carbapenem-resistant bacteria has appeared, primarily *Enterobacteriaceae* such as *Escherichia coli* or *Klebsiella pneumoniae* (*K. pneumoniae*), *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and *Acinetobacter baumannii*, presenting different resistance mechanisms. The most relevant mechanism is the production of carbapenem-hydrolyzing β-lactamases, also known as carbapenemases. These enzymes also inactivate all known β-lactams, and some of these enzymes can be acquired through horizontal gene transfer. Moreover, plasmids, transposons and integrons harboring these genes typically carry other resistance determinants, rendering the recipient bacteria resistant to almost all currently used antimicrobials, as is the case for *K. pneumoniae* carbapenemase - or New Delhi metallo-β-lactamases-type enzymes. The recent advent of these enzymes in the health landscape presents a serious challenge. First, the emergence of carbapenemases limits the currently available treatment options; second, these enzymes pose a risk to patients, as some studies have demonstrated high mortality associated with carbapenemase-producing bacterial infections; and third, these circumstances require an extra cost to sanitary systems, which are particularly cumbersome in developing countries. Therefore, emphasis should be placed on the early detection of these enzymes, the prevention of the spread of carbapenemase-producing bacteria and the development of new drugs resistant to carbapenemase hydrolysis.

Key words: Carbapenemases; Origin; Epidemiology; Evolution; Multi-Drug-resistant bacteria

Core tip: Carbapenemase-producing bacteria were a rare curiosity 15 years ago, as these bacteria were primarily detected in hospital settings. However, now carbapenemase-producing bacteria are observed in farms, companion or wild animals and even in distant glaciers, becoming an epidemic. The relevance this subject has acquired can be easily demonstrated through a search in any medical database; more than 1500 articles have been published depicting the exponential isolation of these bacteria since 1990, with an alarming acceleration in the last seven years.

INTRODUCTION

Carbapenems are potent β-lactams with activity against extended-spectrum cephalosporinases and β-lactamases. These antibiotics, derived from thienamycin, a carbapenem produced by the environmental bacterium *Streptomyces cattleya,* were initially used as last-resort treatments for severe Gram-negative bacterial infections presenting resistance to most β-lactams but have become an empirical option in countries with high prevalence of extended spectrum β-lactamase (ESBL)-producing bacterial infections.

Imipenem, the first commercially available carbapenem, was approved for clinical use in 1985. Since then, a wide variety of carbapenem-resistant bacteria has appeared, primarily *Enterobacteriaceae* such as *Escherichia coli* (*E. coli*) or *Klebsiella pneumonia*, *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* (*P. aeruginosa*) and *Acinetobacter baumannii* (*A. baumannii*), presenting different resistance mechanisms.

The most relevant mechanism is the production of carbapenem-hydrolyzing β-lactamases, also known as carbapenemases. These enzymes also inactivate all known β-lactams, and some of these enzymes can be acquired through horizontal gene transfer *via* conjugation, transduction or transformation through outer membrane vesicles. Moreover, plasmids, transposons and integrons harboring these genes typically carry other resistance determinants, rendering the recipient bacteria resistant to almost all currently used antimicrobials, as is the case for *Klebsiella pneumoniae* (*K. pneumoniae*) carbapenemase (KPC) - or New Delhi metallo-β-lactamase (NDM)-type enzymes.

The recent advent of these enzymes in the health landscape presents a serious challenge. First, the emergence of carbapenemases limits the currently available treatment options; second, these enzymes pose a risk to patients, as some studies have demonstrated high mortality associated with carbapenemase-producing bacterial infections; and third, these circumstances require an extra cost to sanitary systems, which are particularly cumbersome in developing countries. Therefore, emphasis should be placed on the early detection of these enzymes, the prevention of the spread of carbapenemase-producing bacteria and the development of new drugs resistant to carbapenemase hydrolysis.

Carbapenemase-producing bacteria were a rare curiosity 15 years ago, as these bacteria were primarily detected in hospital settings. However, now carbapenemase-producing bacteria are observed in farms, companion or wild animals and even in distant glaciers, becoming an epidemic. The relevance this subject has acquired can be easily demonstrated through a search in any medical database; more than 1500 articles have been published depicting the exponential isolation of these bacteria since 1990, with an alarming acceleration in the last seven years.

The objective of this paper is to summarize the current understanding of the epidemiological, biochemical and diagnostic characteristics of carbapenemases.

CLASIFICATION

Carbapenem-hydrolyzing β-lactamases are classified according to Bush, Jacoby and Medeiros[1], updated in 2010[2], proposing a functional classification dividing β-lactamases into 4 groups (1-4) according to the target substrate and inhibition profile of these enzymes and the phenotypic expression of the clinical isolates (Table 1).

This functional classification correlates with the Ambler molecular classification[3], which divides β-lactamases into 4 classes (A-D) according to the amino acid sequence and spatial structure of these molecules. Two large families have been determined based on the hydrolysis active site: serine-β-lactamases (classes A, C and D), possessing a serine residue at the active center, and metallo-β-lactamases (class B), requiring the presence of one or two divalent Zn^{2+} cations[4].

Serine carbapenemases
Class A carbapenemases (functional group 2f): Class A carbapenemases hydrolyze carbapenems, cephalosporins, penicillins and aztreonam and are typically inhibited by clavulanic acid and tazobactam. Characteristically, imipenem susceptibility widely varies from actual resistance to a slight susceptibility reduction that is typically undetected in routine microbiological tests.

Class A carbapenemases have been detected in *Enterobacter cloacae*, *Serratia marcescens* (*S. marcescens*), *Klebsiella* spp. and *E. coli* in the bacterial chromosome or in mobile elements[5-8].

Among these class A enzymes, KPC, *S. marcescens*

Table 1 Carbapenemase classification							
Bush-Jacoby (2010)	Bush-Jacoby-Medeiros (1995)	Molecular class	Distinctive substrate	Inhibited by		Characteristics	Representative enzyme
				CA or TZB	EDTA		
2f	2f	A	Carbapenems	Variable	No	Increased hydrolysis of carbapenems, oxyamino-β-lactams, cephamycins	KPC-2, IMI-1, SME-1
2df		D	Carbapenems	Variable	No	Hydrolizes oxacillin and carbapenems	OXA-23, OXA-48
1e		C	Cephalosporins	No	No	Increased hydrolysis of ceftazidime and often other oxyimino-β-lactams	CMY-10
3a	3	B1	Carbapenems	No	Yes	Broad.spectrum hydrolysis including carbapenems but not monobactams	IMP-1, VIM-1, CcrA, IND-1
3a	3	B3	Cephalosporins	No	Yes	Broad.spectrum hydrolysis including carbapenems but not monobactams	L1, CAU-1, GOB-1, FEZ-1
3b	3	B2	Carbapenems	No	Yes	Preferential hydrolysis of carbapenems	CphA, SFh-1

CA: Clavulanic acid; TZB: Tazobactam; KPC: *Klebsiella pneumoniae* carbapenemase; IMI: Imipenem hydrolyzing B-lactamase; SME: *Serratia marcescens* enzyme; VIM: Verona integron-encoded metallo-β-lactamase; EDTA: Ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid.

enzyme (SME), imipenem hydrolyzing B-lactamase (IMI) and non metallo-carbapenemase of class A (NMC-A) are the most similar in structure, with the largest deviations observed in areas distant from the active site.

SME and the NMC-A/IMI group are the most important chromosomally encoded enzymes, sharing 97% amino acid sequence identity.

Class A carbapenemases enzymes occur rarely and spread depends on the clonal expansion of the bacteria harboring these enzymes. Class A carbapenemases are susceptible to broad-spectrum cephalosporins, but resistant to carbapenems, penicillins, aztreonam and first generation cephalosporins. The production of these enzymes is induced through imipenem and cefoxitin *via* an AmpC type LysR-dependent regulation system involving the proteins SmeR, ImiR and NmcR[9,10].

SMEs have been detected in a small number of *S. marcescens* isolates, whereas IMI/NMC group enzymes have been detected in *Enterobacter* spp[10,11].

KPCs are clinically the most relevant among plasmid-encoded class A carbapenemases. Not only do these enzymes hydrolyze almost all known β-lactams[12], but KPCs are also inserted in mobile genetic elements bearing resistance genes for antimicrobials other than β-lactams. Remarkably, *K. pneumoniae* accumulates and transfers virulence factors, such as plasmids, to other genera[13-17].

To date, 20 different types of KPCs, differing by 1-3 amino acid substitutions and presenting different hydrolysis profiles (www.lahey.org/studies), have been described. Interestingly, these enzymes share 61% homology with SFC-1 from *Serratia fonticola*, another class A carbapenem[18].

KPCs efficiently hydrolyze nitrocefin, cefalotin, cephaloridine, benzylpenicillin, amoxicillin and piperacillin and also imipenem, meropenem, cefotaxime and aztreonam, but with 10-fold lower activity. Remarkably, KPCs present weak hydrolyzing activity on cefoxitin and ceftazidime[4].

Guiana extended spectrum (GES) enzymes were initially classified as ESBL, but subsequent studies have demonstrated that GESs hydrolyze imipenem,

although less efficiently. These enzymes have been detected in *P. aeruginosa* and *K. pneumoniae*, and to date, 24 GES types have been described (www.lahey.org/studies).

Class D (functional group 2df): Class D β-lactamases, also known as oxacillinases (OXAs) due to their ability to hydrolyze oxacillin, are classified according to their hydrolysis spectrum. Broad-spectrum OXA enzymes hydrolyze carbapenems and represent a heterogeneous group including more than 100 genetically different enzymes subdivided into 9 clusters based on amino acid sequence (Table 2)[4]. Carbapenems are weakly hydrolyzed through OXA carbapenemases, rendering high minimum inhibitory concentrations (MICs) below the resistance cut-off value. Nevertheless, OXA-producing bacteria are typically resistant to carbapenems, reflecting concurrent resistance mechanisms, such as permeability defects or the production of other β-lactamases[19,20]. OXA carbapenemases are variably inhibited by clavulanic acid, sulbactam and tazobactam.

The vast majority of OXA carbapenemases, except the OXA-48 cluster, have been detected in *Acinetobacter* spp. isolates, primarily *A. baumannii*, presenting high resistance to carbapenems[21,22].

However, the OXA-48 cluster is the most important among class D carbapenemases. The activity of these enzymes is 10-fold higher than that of other OXA enzymes, and the OXA-48 cluster has been identified in *K. pneumoniae*, from which it has spread to other *Enterobacteriaceae*[23-27].

OXA enzymes hydrolyze penicillins and first generation cephalosporins, but have a weak activity on oxyimino-cephalosporins. OXA-163, an OXA-48-like enzyme with a single amino acid substitution and a four-amino-acid deletion, exhibits lower affinity for carbapenems, but is active on extended-spectrum cephalosporins and partially inhibited by clavulanic acid, mimicking an ESBL phenotypic profile.

Class C (functional group 1e): CMY-10 is the only carbapenem-hydrolyzing enzyme within class C β-

Table 2 Oxacillinase-type clusters

Cluster	Subfamily	Other members	Microorganisms associated
1	OXA-23	OXA-27, OXA-29	*Acinetobacter* spp.
2	OXA-24/40	OXA-25, OXA-26, OXA-72	*Acinetobacter* spp. and *P. aeruginosa*
3	OXA-51	OXA-64-71, OXA-75-78,OXA-83, OXA-84, OXA-86-89, OXA-91, OXA-92, OXA-94, OXA-95	*Acinetobacter* spp.
4	OXA-58		*Acinetobacter* spp.
5	OXA-55	OXA-SHE	*Shewanella* spp.
6	OXA-48	OXA-54, OXA-181, OXA-163, OXA-204, OXA-232, OXA-247, OXA-SAR2	*Enterobacteriaceae*
7	OXA-50	OXA-50a-d, POXB	*P. aeruginosa.*
8	OXA-60	OXA-60a-d	*Ralstonia pickettii*
9	OXA-62		*Pandoraea pnomenusa*

P. aeruginosa: *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*.

lactamases. This enzyme is an extended-spectrum cephalosporinase, reflecting a three-amino-acid deletion in the R2-loop, and has been detected in *Enterobacter cloacae* (*E. cloacae*) in South Korea[28].

Class B or metallo-β-lactamases (functional group 3): Class B or metallo-β-lactamases (MBL) vary greatly in amino acid sequence and molecular structure, but share some features: a divalent cation, primarily Zn^{2+}, for substrate hydrolysis; the hydrolysis of carbapenems, penicillins and cephalosporins, but not monobactams, such as aztreonam, reflecting low affinity interactions; and inhibition through metal chelators, such as ethylene-diaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA), which inhibit the activity of these enzymes through Zn^{2+} sequestration.

In *Enterobacteriaceae*, the expected phenotype includes resistance to amino-, carboxy-, and ureido-penicillins, penicillin-clavulanate combinations, and cefoxitin; decreased susceptibility to piperacillin-tazobactam and oxyimino cephalosporins and elevated MICs compared with the epidemiological cut-off values[19].

MBLs are subdivided into three subclasses, B1, B2 and B3, depending on the primary amino acid sequence and the structural characteristics of the active site, presenting low homology[29].

B1 and B3 subclasses use two Zn^{2+} ions in the active site and have a broad hydrolysis spectrum, whereas subclass B2 employs a single Zn^{2+} ion in the active site and only shows activity on carbapenems[30].

MBLs have been detected in the bacterial chromosome and mobile genetic elements. MBLs in the bacterial chromosome were the first type studied, as these enzymes have been detected in environmental organisms or opportunistic pathogens, such as *Bacillus cereus*, *Aeromonas hydrophila*, *Chryseobacterium* spp. or *Stenotrophomonas maltophilia*[31,32].

Acquired MBLs are easily transferred among different species, as these enzymes can be inserted into mobile genetic elements. These MBLs are primarily classified as B1 subclass enzymes, likely reflecting increased predisposition for insertion into gene cassettes, integrons, transposons or plasmids[33,34].

NDMs have been recently described as MBLs with high dissemination tendencies and have become the most relevant enzymes within this family[35]. NDM-1 has been identified in *Enterobacteriaceae*, and Gram-negative non-fermenters[36,37]. Some variants, such as NDM-4, -5 and -7, present higher efficiencies of carbapenem hydrolysis[38]. The systematical association of NMDs with other resistance determinants and spread rapidity to other bacterial strains poses a serious challenge to sanitary systems worldwide.

IMP (active on imipenem) was first detected in Japan during the 80's[39]. Since then, 48 different subtypes have been described in *Enterobacteriaceae* and Gram-negative non-fermenting rods, particularly *Pseudomonas* and *Acinetobacter*, worldwide (www.lahey.org/studies). These enzymes exhibit a high specificity for hydrolyzing cephalosporins and carbapenems and characteristically, exhibit low activity on temocillin[40]. Enzymatic kinetic differences have been identified among different subtypes, but with low clinical relevance.

Verona integron-encoded metallo-β-lactamase (VIMs), first identified during the 90's, are currently detected worldwide[41], and 41 VIM subtypes have been described (www.lahey.org/studies). VIM-1 and VIM-2 are distributed worldwide and spread easily. Typically, these enzymes exhibit a high specificity for hydrolyzing carbapenems, and different from IMPs, these enzymes also hydrolyze temocillin. The hydrolysis profile varies among different VIM subtypes with no clinical relevance[30].

SPM-1s (São Paulo metallo-β-lactamases) were first identify in Brazil in 2001[42]. These enzymes have a broad hydrolyzing profile, including penicillins, cephalosporins and carbapenems[43]; but due to the associated mobile genetic elements, these enzymes exhibit a low tendency toward spreading.

GIM-1s (German imipenemases) have only been identified in Germany, originally associated with *P. aeruginosa*; however, these enzymes have recently been identified in *Enterobacteriaceae*[4,38,44].

Other acquired MBLs, including SIM, AIM, DIM and the recently described KHM-1 in a Japanese isolate from 1997, exhibit a low dissemination range and are clinically less relevant.

CARBAPENEMASES: MECHANISMS OF ACTION

β-lactamases catalyze the hydrolysis of the β-lactam ring, using water in nucleophilic ring opening, generating an innocuous β-amino acid[45].

Classes A, C and D possess a serine amino acid in the active site, while class B carbapenemases are metallo-enzymes possessing a zinc in the active site[4].

The catalytic mechanism of serine β-lactamases involves acylation, which is common to serine-β-lactamases and penicillin-binding proteins (PBP), and deacylation, which is absent in PBPs and is the essence of antibiotic resistance through serine-β-lactamases[46].

Class A carbapenemases

Class A β-lactamases possess four catalytic residues (Ser70, Lys73, Ser130 and Glu166) and use water as a nucleophile.

First, Lys73 is deprotonated through a concerted double proton transfer from $Lys73N\zeta$ to $Ser130O\gamma$ and from $Ser130O\gamma$ to C3-carboxylate in the substrate; $Lys73N\zeta$-$Ser130O\gamma$-C3-carboxylate in the acyl-enzyme intermediate forms a hydrogen bond network. Second, the acyl-enzyme tetrahedral intermediate is formed, with Glu166 acting as a general base catalyst. This step is the rate-determining process. Third, Lys73 is protonated through the concerted double proton transfer from C3-carboxylate to $Ser130O\gamma$ and from $Ser130O\gamma$ to $Lys73N\zeta$. Finally, the degraded substrate is detached from the enzyme in concert with the transfer of a single proton from $Lys73N\zeta$ to $Ser70O\gamma$ to cleave the $C7$-$Ser70O\gamma$ bond[47].

Plasmidic class A carbapenemases: KPCs, GESs

The active site of KPC-2 contains the catalytic Ser70 residue and harbors the deacylation water molecule that is primed through an interaction with Glu166, Asn170 and Ser70. The oxyanion hole formed by the nitrogen backbones of S70 and Thr237 is partially occluded by the side chain of Ser70, which is somewhat unusual for class A β-lactamases. Cys69, adjacent to Ser70, is involved in a disulfide bond formation with Cys238. This disulfide bond formation is characteristic of class A carbapenemases.

A comparison of the KPC-2 structure with that of non-carbapenemases and previously determined NMC-A and SME-1 carbapenemase structures revealed several active-site alterations unique to carbapenemases. An outward shift of the catalytic Ser70 residue renders the active sites of carbapenemases more shallow, likely facilitating easier access for bulkier substrates. Further space for the α-substituents is likely provided through shifts in Asn132 and Asn170 and concerted movements in the postulated carboxyl-binding pocket to facilitate substrate binding at a slightly different angle to accommodate these α-substituents. Thus, the structure of KPC-2 provides key insights into the carbapenemase activity of emerging Class A β-lactamases[48].

The importance of Asn170, a ligand for the hydrolytic water, is further supported by the lack of this residue in GES-1, an enzyme exhibiting characteristic active-site disulfide bond formation and possessing a structure similar to other known carbapenemases, but lacking carbapenem-hydrolyzing activity. Although Asn170 is replaced with a Gly in GES-1, this residue is present in GES-2 and other class A carbapenemases[49-52].

Cromosoma class A carbapenemases: NMCs, SMEs, and IMIs

Cromosoma class A carbapenemases exhibit sequence differences compared with traditional class A β-lactamases, such as TEM-1 and SHV-1, likely contributing to the unique substrate specificity of these enzymes.

The activity of SME-1 reflects a highly distributed set of interactions that subtly alter the structure of the active-site pocket, although no single position uniquely contributes to carbapenem hydrolysis[53]. Nonetheless, Ser-237 is significant to the carbapenemase activity of SME-1[54]. SME-3 differs from SME-1 by a single amino acid substitution of Tyr for His at position 105 at the entrance of the active site, a position that plays a subtle role in the binding affinities of some substrates[6,10,11,55].

Class D carbapenemases

OXA enzymes present markedly different amino acid sequences, however the most characteristic feature is the presence of an unusual N-carboxylated lysine post-translational modification, a general base for the activation of the serine nucleophile in the acylation reaction, and deacylating water[56-58]. In the first step of the acylation reaction, nucleophilic Ser attacks the carbonyl carbon of the β-lactam ring, leading to ring cleavage and the formation of a stable carbapenem-enzyme acylate. In the second step of the acylation reaction, a water molecule attacks the same carbon, the Ser-carbapenem bond breaks and the inactivated ligand is released from the active site[59].

In addition, some OXAs form dimers, and a dimer-monomer equilibrium has been implicated in the kinetic behavior of these enzymes[60].

The strictly conserved residues that participate in the acylation and deacylation enzymatic reactions of class D β-lactamases include the Ser67 nucleophile[59,61,62], the carboxylated Lys70, which activates Ser67 and is essential for the deacylation reaction[63], and Lys212, which plays a role in the protonation of the antibiotic substrate in concert with the acylation reaction.

The active site of OXA-24 has two main elements. Catalytic Ser-81, Thr-82, Phe-83 and Lys-84 form the first element[62]. As well as establishing contacts with water molecules in the cleft, the hydroxyl group of Ser-81 establishes a weaker hydrogen bond with the Nζ of Lys-84 (3.35 Å) than that observed in other oxacillinases. The relative weakness of this interaction is compensated by the slight movement of Lys-84 within the crevice, forming a hydrogen bond with the side chain nitrogen of the conserved Trp-167.

The conserved motif Ser-128/X/Val-Ile represents the second active site element of OXA-24. The lateral hydroxyl chain of Ser-128 is accommodated in the direction of active serine Ser-81, forming hydrogen bonds with the neighboring residues. Another characteristic feature within this second element is the presence of a non-polar residue (Val-130) unique to class D enzymes and contributing to the broad substrate specificity of

OXA-24.

A hydrophobic barrier established through the specific arrangement of Tyr-112 and Met-223 side chains, which define a tunnel-like entrance to the active site, determines carbapenem substrate specificity. This hydrophobic environment over the active site is stabilized through other hydrophobic contacts involving Thr-111, Trp-115, and Trp-221. The tunnel diameter regulates the shape and chemical nature of the antibiotics accessing the active site[64].

Unexpectedly, the structure of OXA-48 was similar to that of OXA-10, an enzyme without carbapenemase activity, indicating that the hydrolysis of these compounds depends on subtle changes in the active site region. Moreover, the active site groove of OXA-48 is different in shape, dimensions, and charge distribution from that of OXA-24[65].

In OXA-58, the deacylating water molecule approaches the acyl-enzyme species, anchored at Ser-83, from the alpha-face. Additional studies comparing OXA-24, OXA-48 and OXA-58 carbapenemases with OXA-10 support the theory that OXA carbapenemases retain the catalytic machinery associated with class D β-lactamases, and residues located close to the β5-β6 loop might play a role in the mechanism of carbapenem hydrolysis[66,67].

Class B carbapenemases

MBLs require zinc ions for β-lactam ring hydrolysis. The active site has two potential zinc ion binding sites, often referred to as sites 1 and 2[68-70]. His, Asn, Gln, Asp and Cys residues typically form the zinc ligands in the two binding sites, and these residues are not fully conserved between different MBLs.

It has been suggested that metal ions act as Lewis acids based on coordination to the peptide carbonyl oxygen, providing a more electron-deficient carbonyl carbon to facilitate nucleophilic attack. Thus, metal ions stabilize the negative charge developed on the carbonyl oxygen of the tetrahedral intermediate anion. In many other metallo-proteases, metal ions lower the pKa of the coordinated water, thereby increasing the concentration of the metal-bound hydroxide ion. Although different in nature from simple solvated ions, coordinated hydroxide ions are better nucleophiles than water[71].

C-N bond fission is the most energetically difficult process in peptide hydrolysis. This fission reaction could be facilitated through the direct coordination of the departing amine nitrogen to the metal ion[72]. Alternatively, a metal-bound water could act as a general acid catalyst, protonating the amine-nitrogen-leaving group to facilitate C-N bond fission.

The catalytic mechanism suggested for BCII from *Bacteroides fragilis* was based on the crystal structure of this enzyme at a resolution of 2.5 Å, showing only one zinc-ion bound to the enzyme at the His site. Following substrate binding, the zinc-bound water molecule, deprotonated by the Asp120 residue, attacks the carbonyl, forming a negatively charged tetrahedral intermediate, which is stabilized through interactions with the metal ion. The Asp120 residue donates a proton to the nitrogen, and C-N bond cleavage occurs, followed by product dissociation from the enzyme active site[73,74].

In this mechanism, the bridging hydroxide ion is responsible for the nucleophilic attack, generating a negatively charged intermediate, stabilized through the oxyanion hole of the enzyme. The apical water molecule bound to zinc is optimally positioned to donate a proton to the leaving nitrogen, and the newly formed hydroxide ion moves to occupy the vacated Wat1 site, followed by product dissociation from the enzyme active site. This mechanism was initially proposed to involve zinc coordination to the β-lactam nitrogen, which is unlikely because of the relatively low electron density of zinc due to amide-resonance. However, the increased basicity of this ion, suggests that nitrogen binding to zinc likely occurs once the tetrahedral intermediate is formed[72].

An unusual mechanism has been proposed for subclass B2 CphA from *Aeromonas hydrophila* based on the crystal structures of the free enzyme and a reaction intermediate between the enzyme and the substrate biapenem[75]. Nucleophilic attack is performed through a water molecule, which is not coordinated to zinc, but activated through His118 catalysis, followed by C-N bond fission, which occurs prior to nitrogen protonation. This proposed mechanism uses zinc as a Lewis acid to facilitate C-N bond fission and stabilize the leaving group[72,73], whereas most mechanisms use the zinc ion as a Lewis acid to stabilize oxyanion formation from the β-lactam carbonyl oxygen. Rearrangement of the proposed intermediate amine anion, whose negatively charged nitrogen is stabilized through an interaction with the zinc ion, generates a bicyclic intermediate, which is observed in the crystal structure, although this rearrangement might not occur in the active site of the enzyme. A solvent molecule replaces the water molecule used in the nucleophilic attack, protonates the nitrogen and releases the final product[71].

ORIGIN OF CARBAPENEMASES

Bacteria appeared on Earth approximately 3.5 billion years ago. Subsequently, these evolved, differentiated and adapted to new environments, initiating competition among different species for the many resources needed for survival.

One of the survival strategies of early microorganisms involved the production and secretion of antimicrobial molecules that would eliminate any competitor but not affect the producer. To this end, bacteria synthesize both antimicrobials and antimicrobial neutralizers from the molecules already present in the metabolic networks of these organisms. The next step in this biochemical warfare involved the development of resistance mechanisms in non-antimicrobial-producing bacteria.

It has been suggested that antimicrobials developed from signaling molecules, such as those used in *quorum* sensing, while β-lactamases are primarily derived from PBPs, enzymes for the production and maintenance of the bacterial wall[76,77].

Currently, many different biochemical products with antimicrobial or resistance properties are found ubiquitously, as this biochemical warfare has been ongoing for billions of years. Thus, it is only now that we are beginning to understand antimicrobial resistance. β-lactams and β-lactamases regularly occur in nature, therefore to understand the origin and evolution of the carbapenemase enzymes, it is necessary to introduce and explain the term "resistome", *i.e.*, the global set of molecules that confer antimicrobial resistance to microorganisms[78]. According to this theory, antimicrobials act as selectors and mutation accelerators of the resistance mechanisms present in nature; then, these resistance mechanisms are selected and transferred from one bacteria to another, as horizontal gene transfer is advantageous in dynamic environments[79-81]. Moreover, the level of antimicrobial pressure will determine the evolutionary rate[78].

Origin of serine β-lactamases

PBPs are a group of transpeptidases, transglycosylases and carboxypeptidases belonging to the active-site serine family of enzymes, except for one Zn^{2+}-dependent PBP. These enzymes have been divided into low- and high-molecular-weight molecules responsible for building and maintaining the peptidoglycan structure of the bacterial cell wall. To this end, PBPs are fixed to the inner bacterial membrane with the active site facing the periplasmic space[77]. Interestingly, these enzymes cluster into six different groups closely related to different β-lactamases, suggesting that these enzymes developed independently from PBPs under different selection pressures in a two-step evolution to acquire acylation/deacylation properties[77,82-84]. Hall *et al*[85,86] showed that serine β-lactamases are ancient enzymes, over two billion old, which form three different clusters: classes A and B are sister taxa, while class C separated earlier from a common ancestor of classes A and B[85,86]. Recently, a new family of PBPs, PBP-A, has been described in *Cyanobacteria*, and these enzymes represent an intermediate step between class A β-lactamases and PBPs[84].

Phylogenetic analysis revealed that class A carbapenemases generate six related branches sharing 32%-70% amino acid sequence identity and group together with other β-lactamases and low-molecular-weight class C PBPs[77]. This observation suggests that these clusters evolved from different ancestors[18].

Class A carbapenemases existed before carbapenems were clinically used, as chromosomally encoded SME-1 and IMI-1 were detected in *S. marcescens* and *E. cloacae*, respectively, a few years before imipenem was launched[7,10]. Thus, carbapenem use acted as a

selector. Indeed, Walther-Rasmussen *et al*[18] conducted a phylogenetic analysis, and the resulting phylogram showed that NMC-A, SME, KPC and SFC-1 cluster together and could share a common ancestor with carbapenemase activity.

In contrast, GES and SHV-38 have different origins, and only SHV-38 has a known ancestor[87]. Both enzymes cluster with other ESBLs, indicating that the carbapenemase activity of these enzymes evolved through various mutations in response to carbapenem use[18].

Class D β-carbapenemases might have also been derived from low-molecular-weight class C PBPs, and similar to class A, these enzymes predated carbapenem clinical use, as the first member of this family, ARI-1 (subsequently referred to as OXA-23), was identified in 1985 from an *A. baumannii* isolate[88]. Interestingly, BlaR and MecA transducers are included in branches belonging to these β-lactamases, potentially representing reverse evolution from β-lactamases[77,83]. Most OXA carbapenemases are primarily chromosomally encoded in *Acinetobacter* spp. and might represent a natural component of some subgroups[89]. Other OXA carbapenemases have been identified in bacteria, such as *P. aeruginosa* or *Shewanella* spp. Notably, the most clinically relevant enzyme in this family is the OXA-48 cluster, which exhibits the highest carbapenem hydrolysis rate, is plasmid encoded and has been detected in *Enterobacteriaceae*. Interestingly, OXA-48 might have originated from *Shewanella xiamensis*, an environmental bacterium isolated from seepage water that harbors an OXA-48-like chromosomal gene, namely OXA-181. However, the genetic structure of bla$_{OXA-181}$ is different from that of bla$_{OXA-48}$, indicating an unrelated origin. Thus, *Shewanella* spp. might represent a reservoir for OXA-type carbapenemases[90-93].

Origin of MBL

MBLs belong to a superfamily whose members exhibit a four-layered αβ/αβ structure and share five conserved motifs. Many enzymes of this superfamily are involved in hydrolysis and redox processes, mRNA maturation and DNA reparation, suggesting that MBLs could represent divergent evolution from an early ancestor[94].

Bayesian phylogenic studies indicate that subclasses B1 and B2 form one cluster that split approximately 2.2 billion years ago and developed β-lactamase activity approximately 1 billion years ago, whereas B3 is older, splitting earlier from a common ancestor and developing β-lactamase activity approximately 2.2 billion years ago[94,95]. Therefore, although the 3-dimensional structure of these enzymes is similar, with structural features consistent with the enzymatic activity profiles, the amino acid sequences of MBLs significantly diverge[94,95].

MBLs are chromosomally encoded in bacteria from different phyla, including δ-*Proteobacteria*, which are primarily soil inhabitants and bacterial predators, harboring

as many as 30 gene copies, *Firmicutes*, *Bacteroidetes*, and α-, β- and γ-*Proteobacteria*[96,97].

Environmental bacteria exposed to antimicrobial pressure might be a plausible source of MBLs. For example, the sequence analysis of the bla_{NDM-1}-positive IncA/C plasmid revealed that the plant pathogens *Xanthomonas* spp. or *Pseudoxanthomonas* spp. might be the origin of the NDM-1 β-lactamase[98], the pLD209 plasmid containing the *Pseudomonas putida* bla_{VIM-2} is a mosaic of both clinical and environmental bacteria[99], or the bla_{IMP} gene, found in bacteria isolated from glaciers[100].

GENETIC CONTEXT

The expansion of chromosomally encoded carbapenemases, such as SME, IMI or NMC, depends on clonal replication; therefore, although common pathogens can easily spread among humans, the clinical impact of these microorganisms is typically limited to sporadic and local outbreaks that can be controlled.

However, mobile genetic elements carrying carbapenemases are a greater threat and challenge. These elements can be interchanged between different species and rapidly spread beyond clinical control. Indeed, horizontal gene transfer can occur in natural environments and remain unknown.

Among class A, KPCs are the most successful enzymes[101]. bla_{KPC} has been identified in *Enterobacteriaceae*, *Pseudomonas* and *Acinetobacter* species and is typically inserted in TN4401, a TN-3 based transposon that evolves and mobilizes genes at a high frequency[102-105]. Interestingly, bla_{KPC} success has been associated with a single *K. pneumoniae* sequence type, ST-258, which harbors the TN4401 transposon. Naas et al suggested that the transposition of these elements into various-sized plasmids is a recent event[95].

GES has also been identified in different species worldwide, but this enzyme is associated with single outbreaks[4], although a new type of mobile genetic element, namely the integron mobilization unit, has been described for blaGES-5[106]. IMI-2 has been identified in plasmids in *Enterobacter asburiae* and *E. cloacae*, but the clinical import of this enzyme is minimal[107,108].

Class D carbapenemases are transferred from plasmids to bacterial chromosomes and vice versa[109]. bla_{OXA-23} has been identified in certain *A. baumannii* clones and is generally located in a Tn2006 transposon, bracketed by the ISAba1 insertion sequence and associated with other antimicrobial resistance islands[110]. bla_{OXA-48} is associated with TN1999 in *K. pneumoniae* and Tn1999.2 in *E. coli*, where an ISR1 insertion sequence transfers this enzyme from an IncL/M plasmid to the bacterial chromosome. The high conjugative frequency of this plasmid among *Enterobacteriaceae* accounts for its overall success[109,111,112].

Until the emergence of bla_{NDM} type MBLs, bla_{VIM} and bla_{IPM} were the most successful enzymes in this family. These enzymes are associated with IncA/C, IncF, IncHI1, IncL/M, IncN, and IncK incompatibility group plasmids and intercountry, interhospital, intrahospital, interspecies, and intraclonal spread[113]. These genes have primarily been identified on class I integrons as gene cassette arrays with other antimicrobial and antiseptic resistance genes[114,115]. In contrast, in a surprisingly short period of time, the bla_{NDM} gene has become the most disseminated MBL among countries and species[35,116]. However, blaNDM is harbored in highly transferable plasmids containing resistance genes to almost all known antimicrobials[116,117]. Indeed, blaNDM-1 is considered a chimera constructed in *A. baumannii* through the initial capture of a precursor gene by ISCR27 and subsequent fusion to the aphA6/ISAba125 promoter, which was incorporated into the existing large multi-resistance regions of different *Enterobacteriaceae* plasmids. The gene bla_{NDM-1} has been associated with the remnants of the Tn125 transposon, which was identified in the chromosomes or plasmids of *Acinetobacter* spp. and is positioned adjacent to a complete or truncated ble_{MBL} gene[118-121]. The high genetic mobilization of blaNDM-1 has been demonstrated through reports of a new chromosomally located class I Tn402-like structure in *P. aeruginosa*[122].

CMY-10, the only class C carbapenemase, has recently been associated with a new complex class 1 integron within a conjugative plasmid[123].

EPIDEMIOLOGY

blaSME has been identified in some subpopulations of *S. marcescens* located primarily in the United Kingdom and sporadically in North America. This gene has been associated with single cases or small outbreaks, but the spread is most likely hindered through fitness costs associated with the expression of SME protein. However, recently, blaSME has been detected on a genomic island, SmarGI1-1, which can be excised and circularized, likely contributing to the dissemination of this gene among *S. marcescens*[4,18,124,125].

blaIMI/NMC-A has been identified in *Enterobacter* spp. in sporadic cases in the United States, France, Finland, Croatia, Argentina and China[4,38,126].

blaKPC was first described in *K. pneumoniae* in cases in the east coast of the United States, but has now been identified worldwide in other *Enterobacteriaceae* and Gram-negative non-fermenters[12,18,127]. The spread of blaKPC has become an endemic problem in the east coast of the United States, Puerto Rico, Colombia, Greece, Italy, Israel and the east coast of China, and regional or local outbreaks have been reported worldwide[101,128,129]. The high adaptability and inter-genera spread of KPC has been demonstrated by the first KPC-3 outbreak in Canada, involving five different *Enterobacteriaceae* in eight patients[130].

*bla*GES genes have been detected worldwide in both

Enterobacteriaceae and Gram-negative non-fermenters, but these genes pose a minor challenge compared with *bla*KPC. Nevertheless, *bla*GES has been identified in plasmids recovered from environmental samples easily replicated in *E. coli* and *P. aeruginosa*[4,131].

OXA-48-like carbapenemases, a source of frequent nosocomial outbreaks, were first detected in Turkey, but has recently spread primarily across North Africa[132,133]. In France, The Netherlands and Morocco, OXA-48-like carbapenemases have been associated with *K. pneumoniae* ST395, suggesting geographical dispersion through immigration. OXA-181 is a growing concern in the Indian subcontinent, and sporadic cases have been reported worldwide, although most cases have been associated with this geographical area[38]. OXA-163 has also been identified in Argentina and Egypt [38].

Chromosomally encoded MBLs are ubiquitous in environmental bacteria, but acquired MBLs have recently become a global concern. IMP type carbapenemases were first reported in Japan in the late 1980s in *P. aeruginosa*, subsequently these enzymes were identified in *S. marcescens* and are currently primarily detected in *Enterobacteriaceae* and *Pseudomonas* across Eastern Asia[38,39,134-136].

Similarly, VIM-type enzymes have primarily been detected in *Enterobacteriaceae* and *Pseudomonas*. These enzymes were first detected in the 1990s in Italy and France and are now endemic in Greece, Italy, Spain, South Korea and Taiwan[38,41,137,138].

However, the most challenging MBLs are undoubtedly, the NDM-type carbapenemases. These enzymes were first detected in *K. pneumoniae* and *E. coli* in a Swedish patient returning from India, showing the propensity for interspecies spread[117,139]. The Indian subcontinent has been identified as both the origin and reservoir, where the prevalence of these enzymes is approximately 5%-18%[140,141], but the Balkans has also been recently identified a reservoir for NDM-type carbapenemases[142]. NDM producers have been reported worldwide, associated with intercontinental travel[38]. Disturbingly, NDM producers are involved in nosocomial infections and community-acquired infections.

CARBAPENEMASE COSTS

The emergence of carbapenemase-resistant bacteria is a global health threat and a medical challenge, implicating an extremely high cost for hospitals. This cost is associated with prolonged hospital stays, higher health care expenses, and increased mortality, particularly when a second antibiotic is needed for better coverage of the causative pathogen[143]. Significantly, the length of stay in hospital, the hours of mechanical ventilation and the time spent on an intensive care unit also contribute to increased costs[144].

The actual cost of controlling infection has been associated with several factors, and some of these factors, such as new antimicrobial development

(estimated at U$ 1 billion per drug), the need for increased surveillance within each hospital to determine problematic pathogens, enforced isolation procedures to control spread, and education (primarily interns, residents, and medical students who have not yet developed specific treatment habits), are unsuspected.

Other costs involve the aging population and the delivery of quality health care at reasonable prices[143]. For optimal economic understanding, considering that high-cost drugs can also be cost-effective, the clinicians, pharmacists and economists at each hospital should work together to achieve cost-savings with effective antibiotic therapy, rather than making choices based on drug-acquisition costs[144].

With regard to the host, particularly in multi pathological patients, there is a synergy between the severity of the underlying disease and infection with a resistant microorganism. The consequences are higher mortality rates, extended hospitalization and increased costs[145]. A common problem in endemic settings or during outbreaks is that therapeutic options become limited and are not always optimal[146]. Consequently, the appropriate selection of the initial antibiotic therapy before susceptibility tests are available is difficult. Thus, patients under these conditions have poorer clinical outcomes. Indeed, the death rates associated with KPC producers are higher than 50%, while rates associated with MBL producers range from 18%-67%[101].

Other challenges include clinical laboratory testing and the obtained results. Ideally, rapid and optimal susceptibility tests are in demand, but each pathogen varies, even within the same family, reflecting delayed resistant pathogen identification, treatment errors and higher costs[143].

The ability to efficiently treat carbapenemase-producing bacterial infections requires a multifactorial approach, including continuous investigation, the development of new antibiotics and the adequate use currently available treatments, considering that the first approach starts with an appropriate means of infection control[147].

CARBAPENEMASE DETECTION

A series of non-molecular-based tests have been proposed for the detection and identification of carbapenemases, but none of these analyses have 100% specificity or sensitivity. Therefore, the use of routine susceptibility tests to detect carbapenem resistance should be followed by genotypic and phenotypic confirmation.

Accordingly, Clinical Laboratory Standards Institute (CLSI) and European Committee on Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing (EUCAST) breakpoints for carbapenems have been significantly lowered to improve the detection of carbapenem-resistant isolates[148,149].

Both organizations recommend reporting carbapenem MICs, regardless of carbapenemase production, and suggest that special tests for carbapenemase detection

Table 3 Breakpoint and screening cut-off for carbapenemase-producing *Enterobacteriaceae*

| | MIC (mg/L) | | | | Disk-diffusion zone diameter (mm) using 10 μg disks | | | |
| | S breakpoint | | Screening cut-off | | S breakpoint | | Screening cut-off | |
	EUCAST	CLSI	EUCAST	CLSI	EUCAST	CLSI	EUCAST	CLSI
Meropenem	≤ 2	≤ 1	> 0.12	2-4	≥ 22	≥ 23	< 25	16-21
Imipenem	≤ 2	≤ 1	> 1	2-4	≥ 22	≥ 23	< 23	-
Ertapenem	≤ 0.5	≤ 0.5	> 0.12	2-4	≥ 25	≥ 22	< 25	19-21

S: Susceptibility; MIC: Minimum inhibitory concentration; CLSI: Clinical Laboratory Standards Institute; EUCAST: European Committee on Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing.

be performed only for epidemiology purposes and infection control issues. However, partial or total susceptibility to carbapenems has been observed in carbapenemase producers, and carbapenem elevated MICs have been associated with decreased outer membrane permeability or the overexpression of other β-lactamases or chromosomally encoded AmpC cephalosporinases[101,150].

The detection of carbapenemase producers in clinical specimens is based on a careful analysis of the susceptibility results obtained from automated systems, liquid media or disc diffusion tests according to standardized guidelines. The CLSI and EUCAST have defined cut-off values for carbapenemase detection in *Enterobacteriaceae* because carbapenem MICs for carbapenemase-producing bacteria might be below the clinical breakpoints. However, while the CLSI values lie within the intermediate category, the EUCAST values lies within the susceptible range. According to EUCAST epidemiological cut-off values, meropenem offers the best sensitivity and specificity balance (Table 3). Imipenem shows a narrow range between the wild-type bacteria and carbapenemase producers, and ertapenem, although it presents excellent sensitivity, has a variable positive predictive value, depending on the carbapenemase prevalence and presence of different resistance mechanisms[151,152].

Day *et al*[153] recently evaluated the effectiveness of disc diffusion using faropenem to predict carbapenemase activity in *Enterobacteriaceae.* These authors concluded that a zone diameter of 6 mm for a 10 μg faropenem disc predicted carbapenemase activity with a sensitivity (99%) and superior specificity (94%) equivalent to any recommended screening indicator of carbapenemase activity. Moreover, most carbapenemase-producing isolates grow up to the disc, and consequently these bacteria are easily detected. Interestingly, a double inhibition zone with colonies growing up to the disc was observed for isolates carrying OXA-48 carbapenemase.

Automated systems
Automated systems present poor specificity and cannot distinguish carbapenemase producers from isolates with porin loss and ESBL or AmpC overproduction[152]. These systems might not reliably detect all carbapenemase producers[154], particularly when a single carbapenem

is tested[153]. Additionally, discrepancies arise with automated systems, such as Vitek2, which reported meropenem MICs for KPCs that were significantly lower than those obtained through broth microdilution[155]. OXA-48 producers are also poorly detected.

The modification of antibiotic testing panels for the inclusion of synergy tests between carbapenems and β-lactamase inhibitors, such as boronic acid for KPCs, cloxacillin for AmpCs and dipicolinic acid or EDTA for MBLs, would facilitate more stringent interpretive criteria and improve specificity[156].

Modified hodge test
The cloverleaf or modified hodge test (MHT) is based on the inactivation of a carbapenem using carbapenemase-producing organisms. Briefly, an inoculum of the indicator organism *E. coli* ATCC 25922, adjusted to 0.5 McFarland turbidity standards, is used to inoculate the surface of a Mueller-Hinton agar plate. After incubation for 10 min at room temperature, a disc containing 10 μg of meropenem is placed onto the agar plate. Subsequently, 3-5 colonies of the test organisms are inoculated in a straight line from the edge of the disc to the periphery of the plate. The growth of the indicator strain toward the meropenem disc is interpreted as a positive result for carbapenem hydrolysis.

CLSI recommends this test for screening purposes, except for *P. aeruginosa*. An optimization of MHT (PAE-MHT) using *K. pneumoniae* ATCC 700603 as an indicator has demonstrated 100% sensitivity and 98% specificity for detecting carbapenemase activity without indeterminate results, including KPC and carbapenem-susceptible MBL-producing *P. aeruginosa*[157].

The MHT works well for the detection of KPC and OXA-48 producers, but is time consuming, cannot distinguish the type of carbapenemase involved and, most importantly, false positive results have been observed with isolates producing CTX-M-type ESBL or AmpC β-lactamases at high level. Moreover, false negative results may occur, primarily among NDM producers. Adding zinc to the culture medium significantly improves the sensitivity in detecting NDM producers by increasing the stability of the enzyme or modifying porin expression[158]. The replacement of Mueller-Hinton agar with MacConkey agar also increases the sensitivity for MBL or OXA producers. The

enhanced detection reflects the presence of bile salts in the medium, which improve the release of periplasmic enzymes[159].

A modification of the MHT using discs containing carbapenem supplemented with boronic acid, which inhibits both class A carbapenemases and AmpC β-lactamases, can be used to reduce the number of false positives compared with the MHT results obtained using discs containing carbapenem alone or carbapenem supplemented with cloxacillin, which only inhibits AmpC enzymes. The proposed procedure results in high sensitivity and specificity for class A carbapenemase detection, regardless of the carbapenem tested. A low performance level is observed only among mucoid phenotype strains[160].

Overall, MHT, although remaining a convenient screening assay, cannot be used as the sole method for the detection of carbapenemase-positive isolates in the clinical laboratory.

Biochemical tests

Biochemical tests based on the detection of β-lactam ring hydrolysis have been developed for the early identification of carbapenemases in *Enterobacteriaceae* and *P. aeruginosa*.

The Carba NP test is a colorimetric test based on the detection of acidification resulting from imipenem hydrolysis coupled with inhibitors that reliably identify carbapenemase producers and discriminate between the three main types of carbapenemases (Ambler classes A, B and D). Ambler classes A and B are inhibited through tazobactam and EDTA, respectively, while class D production is deduced from the lack of inhibition.

This test is highly sensitive and specific, easy to perform and interpret, cost-effective, adaptable to any laboratory, and the results are obtained within 2 h. Additionally, the Carba NP test is cheaper and faster than molecular techniques and can be used to select isolates for subsequent analyses using polymerase chain reaction (PCR) methods[161,162]. False negative results have been observed using this test, particularly for OXA-48 and GES[163].

The Carba NP test has been evaluated to directly detect carbapenemase-producing *Enterobacteriaceae* from positive blood cultures, yielding high sensitivity and specificity, which might be useful for the rapid detection of carbapenemase producers in endemic countries and outbreak situations and for the early implementation of appropriate antimicrobial therapies[164,165].

The Rapid CARB Screen Kit (Rosco Diagnostica A/S, Taastrup, Denmark) is another method based on the identification of β-lactam ring hydrolysis in the presence of an indicator. This kit is technically easier to use, but the results are more difficult to interpret, and this assay does not discriminate carbapenemase types. Furthermore, the number of false positives and uninterpretable results present another major

disadvantage of this assay. Thus, this kit can be used for the direct detection of carbapenemases in positive urine and blood samples.

Both tests should be used with caution in areas with high OXA-48 prevalence and should be evaluated in epidemiological settings where carbapenemases with lower hydrolytic activity might be detected, *i.e.*, IMP, GES or OXA-198[166].

The Blue-Carba test is a variation of the Carba NP test, validated for the direct detection of carbapenemase-producing strains from bacterial cultures. This test uses tienam instead of the more expensive imipenem monohydrate. The sensitivity and specificity of the Blue-Carba test are similar to those of the Carba NP test, but the former has an additional advantage of detecting *Acinetobacter* OXA-type carbapenemases[167].

Detection of MBLs based on chelating agents

The phenotypic detection of MBL producers in the clinical laboratory is based on the specific inhibition of MBLs using zinc-depriving compounds, such as EDTA, dipicolinic acid, and 1,10-phenanthroline or thiol compounds, such as 2-mercaptopropionic and mercaptoacetic acid.

The double-disc synergy test (DDST) employs a disc containing hydrolyzable β-lactam (typically a carbapenem, although ceftazidime has also been widely used) placed near a disc containing an MBL inhibitor. The formation of a synergistic inhibitory zone indicates MBL production[168].

Alternatively, in the combined disc test (CDT), the inhibition zone of a disc containing β-lactam combined with an inhibitor is compared with that of a disc containing β-lactam alone. An increase in the inhibition zone diameter above a predefined cut-off value indicates MBL activity[169].

Based on similar principles, gradient diffusion methods (*e.g.*, IP/IPI Etest, bioMérieux, France) use strips containing imipenem and imipenem plus EDTA. A MIC reduction greater than or equal to eight-fold in the presence of EDTA indicates MBL activity[170,171]. New E-test strips containing other inhibitors or carbapenem molecules would facilitate MBL detection, but these strips are not yet commercially available.

Another strategy to facilitate easy interpretation, regardless of the carbapenem MIC, is the use of an inhibitor-impregnated agar. EDTA-impregnated agar is prepared by spreading 2 mL of a 5 mmol/L EDTA solution on the surface of a mueller Hinton agar plate (MH). Differences in the inhibition zone of the carbapenem discs are compared between inhibitor-impregnated and a regular MH agar, searching for differences ≥ 10 mm. This technique facilitates the easy detection of simultaneously associated mechanisms of β-lactam resistance and carbapenemase production in clinical isolates[172].

When using methods based on β-lactam-chelator combinations, it is important to consider the potentially detrimental effects of chelating agents on bacterial

growth, which might yield false positive results.

Detection of class A carbapenemases based on boronates

The phenotypic detection of class A carbapenemase production is based on the susceptibility of these enzymes to boronic acid and boronic acid derivatives, *i.e.*, phenylboronic and 3-aminophenylboronic acid (PBA). For MBL detection, DDST, CDT and carbapenemase PBA-impregnated agar techniques are used.

PBA and PBA-combined discs are prepared as previously described[173]. To prepare PBA-impregnated agar, 750 μL of PBA at 10 mg/mL is spread onto a Mueller Hinton agar plate[172].

Because boronic acid derivatives also inhibit AmpC-type β-lactamases, the simultaneous use of cloxacillin, which only inhibits AmpC but not class A enzymes, enhances the specificity of these tests. MH agar containing cloxacillin and discs containing boronic acid alone or meropenem in combination with boronic acid or cloxacillin are also commercially available (MAST, United Kingdom; Rosco, Denmark).

Notably, isolates with both KPC and metallo-beta-lactamase enzymes might not show synergy in inhibitor-based assays and appear highly resistant to carbapenems.

Detection of OXA-48 based on temocillin-resistance

CLSI and EUCAST interpretative criteria exhibit poor sensitivity in the detection of OXA-48 producers. The zone diameters for meropenem in OXA-48-producers can be up to 26 mm, thus < 27 mm must be used as a screening cut-off in countries where OXA-48 is endemic, at the expense of lower specificity[149].

Because OXA-48 carbapenemases confer high-level temocillin resistance, a disc diffusion assay using discs containing 30 μg of temocillin provides a reliable phenotypic test for the detection of OXA-48 in *Enterobacteriaceae*[174].

The combination of both temocillin and piperacillin/tazobactam diameters, < 12 mm and < 16 mm, respectively, is used to identify OXA-48 *Enterobacteriaceae* producers with high sensitivity and specificity[175].

Detection using chromogenic media

Several selective chromogenic media, in which species are distinguished according to colony color, are commercially available.

CHROMagar-KPC medium lacks sensitivity, as this medium only detects carbapenemase producers resistant to high levels of carbapenems. Thus, the detection of low-level resistance, as observed with KPC, IMP, VIM, NDM, and OXA-48, might not be achieved using this medium.

Supercarba medium is a Drigalski agar-based culture medium containing a low concentration of ertapenem, cloxacillin to prevent the growth of non-carbapenemase-producing carbapenem-resistant isolates, and zinc sulfate to improve the expression of MBLs. This medium might be used for the detection of not only KPC and MBL producers but also OXA-48 producers that do not co-express ESBLs. Supercarba medium exhibits higher sensitivity and specificity than other media and is useful for the specific selection of carbapenemase-producers in stools, as this medium inhibits the growth of ESBL producers.

CHROMagar-KPC and Supercarba medium are only suitable for *Enterobacteriaceae* testing because non-enterobacterial non-carbapenemase-producing Gram-negative rods grow on these media[176].

ChromID CARBA is also designed for the specific detection of carbapenemase-producing *Enterobacteriaceae*, and the sensitivity and specificity of this medium is high. ChromID CARBA inhibits all ESBL producers and has demonstrated the excellent detection of CPE, with MICs from 2 to > 32 mg/L, however OXA-48 was only detected at a high inoculum (10^7 CFU/mL)[177].

Oxoid Brilliance CRE Agar exhibits high sensitivity for the detection of KPC and MBL-producing *Enterobacteriaceae*, but lower sensitivity if observed for the detection of OXA-48 producers. The specificity of this agar is relatively low, reflecting the growth of AmpC and ESBL producers that require further confirmation[178].

ChromID CARBA SMART is a new bi-plate combining two chromogenic media to rapidly and reliably identify all carbapenemase-producing *Enterobacteriaceae*, particularly KPC, NDM-1 and OXA-48; however, this medium has not yet been evaluated[179].

Molecular detection of carbapenemase genes

Molecular techniques, primarily based on PCR, are considered the reference standard for the identification and differentiation of carbapenem resistance genes based on the excellent specificity, sensitivity, accuracy and rapidity of these methods. If identification of a carbapenemase is required for epidemiological purposes, then the PCR products are subjected to additional sequencing. These techniques generate results within 4-6 h, or even less when real-time PCR techniques are used. The main disadvantages to the use of these techniques are high costs, requirement of trained technicians, and inability to detect novel carbapenemase genes.

Simplex PCR assays, using various primers and several in-house and commercial multiplex PCR tests, facilitate the simultaneous identification of multiple carbapenemase types[4,180,181], but the development of methods that further shorten the detection time, such as real-time systems, is needed[182,183].

The Xpert MDRO assay (Cepheid, Sunnyvale, CA) uses GeneXpert cartridges for the detection of carbapenemase-producing Gram-negative bacterial colonization directly from rectal swab samples in 47 min[184].

For the detection of the main carbapenemase gene types, PCR and hybridization-based kits, such as Hyplex MBL ID and Hyplex CarbOxa ID kits (BAG Health Care,

Lich, Germany), are commercially available.

Microarray technology facilitates the rapid and reliable identification of multiple resistance determinants. Check-KPC ESBL and Check-MDR CT102 microarray analyses (Check-Points Health BV, Wageningen, Netherlands) have been successfully used for the detection of most clinically relevant carbapenemases within a single reaction[185].

Spectrometry

Spectrometry is based on a reduction in imipenem absorbance in the presence of carbapenemase-containing extracts of bacterial enzymes at a wavelength of 297 nm. This extract is obtained from an overnight culture of the isolate through mechanical lysis using sonication. Spectrometry accurately differentiates between carbapenemase producers and carbapenem-resistant bacteria with non-carbapenemase-mediated resistance mechanisms. Moreover, this method is cheap compared with molecular techniques and has excellent sensitivity and specificity (100% and 98.5%, respectively). However, spectrometry does not discriminate between different types of carbapenemases, is time-consuming and requires trained microbiologists[186]. Therefore, this technique is considered a reference method for the confirmation of carbapenemase activity: however, spectrometry is laborious and technically demanding, which limits the use of this method in reference laboratories.

Matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization-time of flight mass spectrometry

Matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization-time of flight mass spectrometry (MALDI-TOF) is based on the detection of enzyme activity through the direct detection of hydrolysis degradation products, which show a different molecular mass from that of the native molecules[187].

Antibiotics and their degradation products are typically small molecules (< 1000 Da), making the analysis of these compounds difficult because the matrix is also visible in mass spectra and produces interference with high background levels. Thus, for the detection of these molecules, different matrices and modified approaches for sample preparation have been described[188,189].

The MALDI-TOF methodology involves the suspension of a fresh bacterial culture in a buffer, followed by centrifugation. The pellet is subsequently re-suspended in a reaction buffer containing carbapenem. After 1-3 h of incubation at 35 ℃, the reaction mixture is centrifuged, and the supernatant containing carbapenem and carbapenem metabolites is assessed through MALDI-TOF. Carbapenem activity is determined based on the disappearance of the peak corresponding to native carbapenem and the appearance of peaks corresponding to metabolites as a result of carbapenem hydrolysis[190]. All reported studies have presented similar results, demonstrating the excellent sensitivity

and specificity for all carbapenemases, including OXA-type carbapenemases in *Enterobacteriaceae* and *A. baumannii*[191,192].

Manual measurements and analyses of raw spectra, however, can be difficult and require trained microbiologists. Therefore, the availability of software for the automatic acquisition and interpretation of results is desirable in diagnostic laboratories.

The direct detection of carbapenemase activity from positive blood culture is currently being evaluated, having achieved adequate sensitivity[193].

FIGHTING CARBAPENEMASES

The fight against carbapenemase-producing bacteria should be based on three pillars: preventing transmission, avoiding antimicrobial selective pressure and developing new treatments.

Preventing transmission is presently the starting point to win this war. Therapeutic options are limited, particularly for NDM and KPC producers, making prevention the best strategy to avoid life-threatening infections, prolonged hospital stays and increased health care costs[146].

The first step in the prevention of transmission is to emphasize adherence to hand hygiene and standard precautions in daily clinical practice. In addition, the early identification of carriers is needed to apply control measures. Early detection can be achieved passively, selecting potential carriers through risk factor evaluation, or actively, through microbiological screening techniques.

The risk factors for carbapenem-producers are similar to those other multi-drug-resistant bacteria (MDR), including hospitalization, critical illness, surgery, ICU stays, the use of invasive devices and prior exposure to antimicrobial treatments. Recent travel to endemic countries is also important, particularly for medical tourism and military conflicts[194-196].

The active screening of patients is the gold standard to identify carriers. The number and type of patients investigated, the use of cultures, biochemical or molecular tests, and the duration of the surveillance program will depend on the economical characteristics of the country and whether the infection represents an outbreak event or an endemic situation[146].

Once the carriers have been identified, contact precautions and pre-emptive contact isolation must follow. Additionally, environmental decontamination and patient decolonization are recommended[129,197].

Antimicrobial stewardship to avoid antimicrobial selective pressure should be mandatory in sanitary institutions. Antimicrobials act as selectors and accelerators of diversity in resistance mechanisms, promoting MDR and selecting new resistance enzymes[78,198]. Thus, the high prevalence of ESBL-carriers in India encouraged the use of carbapenems as empirical treatment and selected carbapenemase-producers[199]. Nevertheless, this issue is controversial and more research is needed[146].

Finally, the third and most important pillar for

clinical use against carbapenemase producers involves the development of new molecules that are either active against these pathogens or act as inhibitors of carbapenemases, which might extend the life of existing antimicrobials.

New antimicrobials are being developed to fight MDR. Sulfactams are monocyclic β-lactams structurally related to monobactams, such as BAL30072, which exhibit potent activity against MDRs, particularly when combined with colistin or meropenem[200]. Plazomicin is a new-generation aminoglycoside with bactericidal effects on carbapenem-resistant bacteria, although more studies are needed to assess the activity of this antimicrobial[201,202]. TP-434 and GSK2251052 are antimicrobials that target protein synthesis and exhibit a spectrum encompassing multidrug-resistant Gram-negative pathogens[203].

Moreover, carbapenemase inhibitors have also been developed, including Penem derivatives, such as BRL 42715, which inhibit serine β-lactamases, and BLI-489, which inhibits KPC; 1-β-methylcarbapenem compounds, such as J-110,411 and J-11,225, which inhibit classes A and C and IMP-type enzymes; Thiols, such as thiomandelic acids, which inhibit MBLs; and avibactam, which inhibits serine β-lactamases. These compounds will likely extend the life and increase the activity of existing antimicrobials and bring hope in the carbapenemase era[19,204].

CONCLUSION

Carbapenem-resistant bacteria, particularly *Entero-bacteriaceae*, *Pseudomonas* and *Acinetobacter*, have become a challenging health issue worldwide. Fourteen years have passed since Livermore *et al*[205] published the article entitled "Carbapenemases: a problem in waiting?". These authors discussed the emergence of new carbapenem-hydrolyzing enzymes and the possibility that these molecules could pose a threat to infection treatment in the near future. Five years later, Walsh *et al*[206] warned about the perils of MBLs, remarking on the spread of these enzymes through horizontal gene transfer and resistance mechanisms to other antimicrobial families. These authors suggested the development of both surveillance programs and new inhibitors.

Moreover, in 2012, Nordmann *et al*[207] published an article entitled "Carbapenem resistance in *Entero-bacteriaceae*: here is the storm!", stating that carba-penemase-producing *Enterobacteriaceae* constituted a growing threat to public health.

To paraphrase John Donne, "no man is an island", in this case "no country is an island". Thus, now that the storm has arrived, international organizations, such as the World Health Organization, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention and European Centre for Disease Prevention and Control, have called for a worldwide collaboration to contain this epidemic[146]. Migration fluxes, vacations and medical travels or distant military conflicts likely contribute to the spread of resistance genes across the globe, and only through a collaborative global effort, will we successfully address this problem.

REFERENCES

1   **Bush K**, Jacoby GA, Medeiros AA. A functional classification scheme for beta-lactamases and its correlation with molecular structure. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 1995; **39**: 1211-1233 [PMID: 7574506 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.39.6.1211]

2   **Bush K**, Jacoby GA. Updated functional classification of beta-lactamases. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2010; **54**: 969-976 [PMID: 19995920 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.01009-09]

3   **Ambler RP**. The structure of beta-lactamases. *Philos Trans R Soc Lond B Biol Sci* 1980; **289**: 321-331 [PMID: 6109327 DOI: 10.1098/rstb.1980.0049]

4   **Queenan AM**, Bush K. Carbapenemases: the versatile beta-lactamases. *Clin Microbiol Rev* 2007; **20**: 440-458, table of contents [PMID: 17630334 DOI: 10.1128/CMR.00001-07]

5   **Medeiros AA**, Hare RS. β-Lactamase-mediated resistance to penems and carbapenems amongst Enterobacteriaceae, abstract 116. 26th Intersci Conf Antimicrob Agents Chemother 1986. Washington, DC: American Society for Microbiology, 1986

6   **Nordmann P**, Mariotte S, Naas T, Labia R, Nicolas MH. Biochemical properties of a carbapenem-hydrolyzing beta-lactamase from Enterobacter cloacae and cloning of the gene into Escherichia coli. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 1993; **37**: 939-946 [PMID: 8517720 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.37.5.939]

7   **Yang YJ**, Wu PJ, Livermore DM. Biochemical characterization of a beta-lactamase that hydrolyzes penems and carbapenems from two Serratia marcescens isolates. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 1990; **34**: 755-758 [PMID: 2193618 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.34.5.755]

8   **Petrella S**, Ziental-Gelus N, Mayer C, Renard M, Jarlier V, Sougakoff W. Genetic and structural insights into the dissemination potential of the extremely broad-spectrum class A beta-lactamase KPC-2 identified in an Escherichia coli strain and an Enterobacter cloacae strain isolated from the same patient in France. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2008; **52**: 3725-3736 [PMID: 18625772 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.00163-08]

9   **Naas T**, Nordmann P. Analysis of a carbapenem-hydrolyzing class A beta-lactamase from Enterobacter cloacae and of its LysR-type regulatory protein. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1994; **91**: 7693-7697 [PMID: 8052644]

10 **Rasmussen BA**, Bush K, Keeney D, Yang Y, Hare R, O'Gara C, Medeiros AA. Characterization of IMI-1 beta-lactamase, a class A carbapenem-hydrolyzing enzyme from Enterobacter cloacae. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 1996; **40**: 2080-2086 [PMID: 8878585]

11 **Queenan AM**, Shang W, Schreckenberger P, Lolans K, Bush K, Quinn J. SME-3, a novel member of the Serratia marcescens SME family of carbapenem-hydrolyzing beta-lactamases. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2006; **50**: 3485-3487 [PMID: 17005839 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.00363-06]

12 **Yigit H**, Queenan AM, Anderson GJ, Domenech-Sanchez A, Biddle JW, Steward CD, Alberti S, Bush K, Tenover FC. Novel carbapenem-hydrolyzing beta-lactamase, KPC-1, from a carbapenem-resistant strain of Klebsiella pneumoniae. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2001; **45**: 1151-1161 [PMID: 11257029 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.45.4.1151-1161.2001]

13 **Navon-Venezia S**, Chmelnitsky I, Leavitt A, Schwaber MJ, Schwartz D, Carmeli Y. Plasmid-mediated imipenem-hydrolyzing enzyme KPC-2 among multiple carbapenem-resistant Escherichia coli clones in Israel. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2006; **50**: 3098-3101 [PMID: 16940107 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.00438-06]

14 **Villegas MV**, Lolans K, Correa A, Kattan JN, Lopez JA, Quinn JP. First identification of Pseudomonas aeruginosa isolates producing a KPC-type carbapenem-hydrolyzing beta-lactamase. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2007; **51**: 1553-1555 [PMID: 17261621 DOI:

10.1128/AAC.01405-06]

15 **Bratu S**, Brooks S, Burney S, Kochar S, Gupta J, Landman D, Quale J. Detection and spread of Escherichia coli possessing the plasmid-borne carbapenemase KPC-2 in Brooklyn, New York. *Clin Infect Dis* 2007; **44**: 972-975 [PMID: 17342651 DOI: 10.1086/512370]

16 **Miriagou V**, Tzouvelekis LS, Rossiter S, Tzelepi E, Angulo FJ, Whichard JM. Imipenem resistance in a Salmonella clinical strain due to plasmid-mediated class A carbapenemase KPC-2. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2003; **47**: 1297-1300 [PMID: 12654661 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.47.4.1297-1300.2003]

17 **Hossain A**, Ferraro MJ, Pino RM, Dew RB, Moland ES, Lockhart TJ, Thomson KS, Goering RV, Hanson ND. Plasmid-mediated carbapenem-hydrolyzing enzyme KPC-2 in an Enterobacter sp. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2004; **48**: 4438-4440 [PMID: 15504876 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.48.11.4438-4440.2004]

18 **Walther-Rasmussen J**, Høiby N. Class A carbapenemases. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2007; **60**: 470-482 [PMID: 17595289 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dkm226]

19 **Tzouvelekis LS**, Markogiannakis A, Psichogiou M, Tassios PT, Daikos GL. Carbapenemases in Klebsiella pneumoniae and other Enterobacteriaceae: an evolving crisis of global dimensions. *Clin Microbiol Rev* 2012; **25**: 682-707 [PMID: 23034326 DOI: 10.1128/CMR.05035-11]

20 **Poirel L**, Potron A, Nordmann P. OXA-48-like carbapenemases: the phantom menace. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2012; **67**: 1597-1606 [PMID: 22499996 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dks121]

21 **Evans BA**, Hamouda A, Amyes SG. The rise of carbapenem-resistant Acinetobacter baumannii. *Curr Pharm Des* 2013; **19**: 223-238 [PMID: 22894617 DOI: 10.2174/138161213804070285]

22 **Zhao WH**, Hu ZQ. Acinetobacter: a potential reservoir and dispenser for β-lactamases. *Crit Rev Microbiol* 2012; **38**: 30-51 [PMID: 22007992 DOI: 10.3109/1040841X.2011.621064]

23 **Cuzon G**, Ouanich J, Gondret R, Naas T, Nordmann P. Outbreak of OXA-48-positive carbapenem-resistant Klebsiella pneumoniae isolates in France. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2011; **55**: 2420-2423 [PMID: 21343451 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.01452-10]

24 **Giani T**, Conte V, Di Pilato V, Aschbacher R, Weber C, Larcher C, Rossolini GM. Escherichia coli from Italy producing OXA-48 carbapenemase encoded by a novel Tn1999 transposon derivative. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2012; **56**: 2211-2213 [PMID: 22290939 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.00035-12]

25 **Glupczynski Y**, Huang TD, Bouchahrouf W, Rezende de Castro R, Bauraing C, Gérard M, Verbruggen AM, Deplano A, Denis O, Bogaerts P. Rapid emergence and spread of OXA-48-producing carbapenem-resistant Enterobacteriaceae isolates in Belgian hospitals. *Int J Antimicrob Agents* 2012; **39**: 168-172 [PMID: 22115539 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijantimicag.2011.10.005]

26 **Kilic A**, Aktas Z, Bedir O, Gumral R, Bulut Y, Stratton C, Tang YW, Basustaoglu AC. Identification and characterization of OXA-48 producing, carbapenem-resistant Enterobacteriaceae isolates in Turkey. *Ann Clin Lab Sci* 2011; **41**: 161-166 [PMID: 21844575]

27 **Poirel L**, Héritier C, Tolün V, Nordmann P. Emergence of oxacillinase-mediated resistance to imipenem in Klebsiella pneumoniae. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2004; **48**: 15-22 [PMID: 14693513 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.48.1.15-22.2004]

28 **Kim JY**, Jung HI, An YJ, Lee JH, Kim SJ, Jeong SH, Lee KJ, Suh PG, Lee HS, Lee SH, Cha SS. Structural basis for the extended substrate spectrum of CMY-10, a plasmid-encoded class C beta-lactamase. *Mol Microbiol* 2006; **60**: 907-916 [PMID: 16677302 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2958.2006.05146.x]

29 **Palzkill T**. Metallo-β-lactamase structure and function. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 2013; **1277**: 91-104 [PMID: 23163348 DOI: 10.1111/j.1749-6632.2012.06796.x]

30 **Cornaglia G**, Akova M, Amicosante G, Cantón R, Cauda R, Docquier JD, Edelstein M, Frère JM, Fuzi M, Galleni M, Giamarellou H, Gniadkowski M, Koncan R, Libisch B, Luzzaro F, Miriagou V, Navarro F, Nordmann P, Pagani L, Peixe L, Poirel L, Souli M, Tacconelli E, Vatopoulos A, Rossolini GM. Metallo-beta-lactamases

31 **Kuwabara S**, Abraham EP. Some properties of two extracellular beta-lactamases from Bacillus cereus 569/H. *Biochem J* 1967; **103**: 27C-30C [PMID: 4963457]

32 **Walsh TR**, Toleman MA, Poirel L, Nordmann P. Metallo-beta-lactamases: the quiet before the storm? *Clin Microbiol Rev* 2005; **18**: 306-325 [PMID: 15831827 DOI: 10.1128/CMR.18.2.306-325.2005]

33 **Rossolini GM**. Acquired metallo-beta-lactamases: an increasing clinical threat. *Clin Infect Dis* 2005; **41**: 1557-1558 [PMID: 16267726 DOI: 10.1086/497839]

34 **Cornaglia G**, Giamarellou H, Rossolini GM. Metallo-β-lactamases: a last frontier for β-lactams? *Lancet Infect Dis* 2011; **11**: 381-393 [PMID: 21530894 DOI: 10.1016/S1473-3099(11)70056-1]

35 **Rolain JM**, Parola P, Cornaglia G. New Delhi metallo-beta-lactamase (NDM-1): towards a new pandemia? *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2010; **16**: 1699-1701 [PMID: 20874758 DOI: 10.1111/j.1469-0691.2010.03385.x]

36 **Kumarasamy KK**, Toleman MA, Walsh TR, Bagaria J, Butt F, Balakrishnan R, Chaudhary U, Doumith M, Giske CG, Irfan S, Krishnan P, Kumar AV, Maharjan S, Mushtaq S, Noorie T, Paterson DL, Pearson A, Perry C, Pike R, Rao B, Ray U, Sarma JB, Sharma M, Sheridan E, Thirunarayan MA, Turton J, Upadhyay S, Warner M, Welfare W, Livermore DM, Woodford N. Emergence of a new antibiotic resistance mechanism in India, Pakistan, and the UK: a molecular, biological, and epidemiological study. *Lancet Infect Dis* 2010; **10**: 597-602 [PMID: 20705517 DOI: 10.1016/S1473-3099(10)70143-2]

37 **Karthikeyan K**, Thirunarayan MA, Krishnan P. Coexistence of blaOXA-23 with blaNDM-1 and armA in clinical isolates of Acinetobacter baumannii from India. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2010; **65**: 2253-2254 [PMID: 20650909 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dkq273]

38 **Nordmann P**, Poirel L. The difficult-to-control spread of carbapenemase producers among Enterobacteriaceae worldwide. *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2014; **20**: 821-830 [PMID: 24930781 DOI: 10.1111/1469-0691.12719]

39 **Osano E**, Arakawa Y, Wacharotayankun R, Ohta M, Horii T, Ito H, Yoshimura F, Kato N. Molecular characterization of an enterobacterial metallo beta-lactamase found in a clinical isolate of Serratia marcescens that shows imipenem resistance. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 1994; **38**: 71-78 [PMID: 8141584 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.38.1.71]

40 **Miriagou V**, Cornaglia G, Edelstein M, Galani I, Giske CG, Gniadkowski M, Malamou-Lada E, Martinez-Martinez L, Navarro F, Nordmann P, Peixe L, Pournaras S, Rossolini GM, Tsakris A, Vatopoulos A, Cantón R. Acquired carbapenemases in Gram-negative bacterial pathogens: detection and surveillance issues. *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2010; **16**: 112-122 [PMID: 20085605 DOI: 10.1111/j.1469-0691.2009.03116.x]

41 **Lauretti L**, Riccio ML, Mazzariol A, Cornaglia G, Amicosante G, Fontana R, Rossolini GM. Cloning and characterization of blaVIM, a new integron-borne metallo-beta-lactamase gene from a Pseudomonas aeruginosa clinical isolate. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 1999; **43**: 1584-1590 [PMID: 10390207]

42 **Toleman MA**, Simm AM, Murphy TA, Gales AC, Biedenbach DJ, Jones RN, Walsh TR. Molecular characterization of SPM-1, a novel metallo-beta-lactamase isolated in Latin America: report from the SENTRY antimicrobial surveillance programme. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2002; **50**: 673-679 [PMID: 12407123 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dkf210]

43 **Murphy TA**, Simm AM, Toleman MA, Jones RN, Walsh TR. Biochemical characterization of the acquired metallo-beta-lactamase SPM-1 from Pseudomonas aeruginosa. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2003; **47**: 582-587 [PMID: 12543663 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.47.2.582-587.2003]

44 **Hamprecht A**, Poirel L, Göttig S, Seifert H, Kaase M, Nordmann P. Detection of the carbapenemase GIM-1 in Enterobacter cloacae in Germany. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2013; **68**: 558-561 [PMID:

23152484 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dks447]

45   **Fisher JF**, Mobashery S. Three decades of the class A beta-lactamase acyl-enzyme. *Curr Protein Pept Sci* 2009; **10**: 401-407 [PMID: 19538154]

46   **Hata M**, Fujii Y, Tanaka Y, Ishikawa H, Ishii M, Neya S, Tsuda M, Hoshino T. Substrate deacylation mechanisms of serine-beta-lactamases. *Biol Pharm Bull* 2006; **29**: 2151-2159 [PMID: 17077507]

47   **Fujii Y,** Hata M, Hoshino T, Tsuda M. Catalytic mechanism of Class A ß-Lactamase: Role of Lysine 73 and C3-carboxyl group of the substrate penicilin G in the deacylation step. *J Phys Chem B* 2002; **106**: 9687-9695 [DOI: 10.1021/jp021414c]

48   **Ke W**, Bethel CR, Thomson JM, Bonomo RA, van den Akker F. Crystal structure of KPC-2: insights into carbapenemase activity in class A beta-lactamases. *Biochemistry* 2007; **46**: 5732-5740 [PMID: 17441734 DOI: 10.1021/bi700300u]

49   **Frase H**, Shi Q, Testero SA, Mobashery S, Vakulenko SB. Mechanistic basis for the emergence of catalytic competence against carbapenem antibiotics by the GES family of beta-lactamases. *J Biol Chem* 2009; **284**: 29509-29513 [PMID: 19656947]

50   **Frase H**, Toth M, Champion MM, Antunes NT, Vakulenko SB. Importance of position 170 in the inhibition of GES-type β-lactamases by clavulanic acid. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2011; **55**: 1556-1562 [PMID: 21220532 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.01292-10]

51   **Smith CA**, Caccamo M, Kantardjieff KA, Vakulenko S. Structure of GES-1 at atomic resolution: insights into the evolution of carbapenamase activity in the class A extended-spectrum beta-lactamases. *Acta Crystallogr D Biol Crystallogr* 2007; **63**: 982-992 [PMID: 17704567 DOI: 10.1107/S0907444907036955]

52   **Poirel L**, Weldhagen GF, Naas T, De Champs C, Dove MG, Nordmann P. GES-2, a class A beta-lactamase from Pseudomonas aeruginosa with increased hydrolysis of imipenem. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2001; **45**: 2598-2603 [PMID: 11502535]

53   **Majiduddin FK**, Palzkill T. Amino acid residues that contribute to substrate specificity of class A beta-lactamase SME-1. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2005; **49**: 3421-3427 [PMID: 16048956 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.49.8.3421-3427.2005]

54   **Sougakoff W**, Naas T, Nordmann P, Collatz E, Jarlier V. Role of ser-237 in the substrate specificity of the carbapenem-hydrolyzing class A beta-lactamase Sme-1. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 1999; **1433**: 153-158 [PMID: 10446368]

55   **Woodford N**, Tierno PM, Young K, Tysall L, Palepou MF, Ward E, Painter RE, Suber DF, Shungu D, Silver LL, Inglima K, Kornblum J, Livermore DM. Outbreak of Klebsiella pneumoniae producing a new carbapenem-hydrolyzing class A beta-lactamase, KPC-3, in a New York Medical Center. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2004; **48**: 4793-4799 [PMID: 15561858 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.48.12.4793-4799.2004]

56   **Golemi D**, Maveyraud L, Vakulenko S, Samama JP, Mobashery S. Critical involvement of a carbamylated lysine in catalytic function of class D beta-lactamases. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2001; **98**: 14280-14285 [PMID: 11724923 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.241442898]

57   **Fisher JF**, Meroueh SO, Mobashery S. Bacterial resistance to beta-lactam antibiotics: compelling opportunism, compelling opportunity. *Chem Rev* 2005; **105**: 395-424 [PMID: 15700950 DOI: 10.1021/cr030102i]

58   **Leonard DA**, Bonomo RA, Powers RA. Class D β-lactamases: a reappraisal after five decades. *Acc Chem Res* 2013; **46**: 2407-2415 [PMID: 23902256 DOI: 10.1021/ar300327a]

59   **Szarecka A**, Lesnock KR, Ramirez-Mondragon CA, Nicholas HB, Wymore T. The Class D beta-lactamase family: residues governing the maintenance and diversity of function. *Protein Eng Des Sel* 2011; **24**: 801-809 [PMID: 21859796 DOI: 10.1093/protein/gzr041]

60   **Danel F**, Paetzel M, Strynadka NC, Page MG. Effect of divalent metal cations on the dimerization of OXA-10 and -14 class D beta-lactamases from Pseudomonas aeruginosa. *Biochemistry* 2001; **40**: 9412-9420 [PMID: 11478911]

61   **Frère JM**, Dubus A, Galleni M, Matagne A, Amicosante G. Mechanistic diversity of beta-lactamases. *Biochem Soc Trans* 1999;

62   **Paetzel M**, Danel F, de Castro L, Mosimann SC, Page MG, Strynadka NC. Crystal structure of the class D beta-lactamase OXA-10. *Nat Struct Biol* 2000; **7**: 918-925 [PMID: 11017203 DOI: 10.1038/79688]

63   **Schneider KD**, Bethel CR, Distler AM, Hujer AM, Bonomo RA, Leonard DA. Mutation of the active site carboxy-lysine (K70) of OXA-1 beta-lactamase results in a deacylation-deficient enzyme. *Biochemistry* 2009; **48**: 6136-6145 [PMID: 19485421 DOI: 10.1021/bi900448u]

64   **Santillana E**, Beceiro A, Bou G, Romero A. Crystal structure of the carbapenemase OXA-24 reveals insights into the mechanism of carbapenem hydrolysis. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2007; **104**: 5354-5359 [PMID: 17374723 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0607557104]

65   **Docquier JD**, Calderone V, De Luca F, Benvenuti M, Giuliani F, Bellucci L, Tafi A, Nordmann P, Botta M, Rossolini GM, Mangani S. Crystal structure of the OXA-48 beta-lactamase reveals mechanistic diversity among class D carbapenemases. *Chem Biol* 2009; **16**: 540-547 [PMID: 19477418 DOI: 10.1016/j.chembiol.2009.04.010]

66   **De Luca F**, Benvenuti M, Carboni F, Pozzi C, Rossolini GM, Mangani S, Docquier JD. Evolution to carbapenem-hydrolyzing activity in noncarbapenemase class D β-lactamase OXA-10 by rational protein design. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2011; **108**: 18424-18429 [PMID: 22042844 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1110530108]

67   **Verma V**, Testero SA, Amini K, Wei W, Liu J, Balachandran N, Monoharan T, Stynes S, Kotra LP, Golemi-Kotra D. Hydrolytic mechanism of OXA-58 enzyme, a carbapenem-hydrolyzing class D β-lactamase from Acinetobacter baumannii. *J Biol Chem* 2011; **286**: 37292-37303 [PMID: 21880707 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M111.280115]

68   **Fitzgerald PM**, Wu JK, Toney JH. Unanticipated inhibition of the metallo-beta-lactamase from Bacteroides fragilis by 4-morpholineethanesulfonic acid (MES): a crystallographic study at 1.85-A resolution. *Biochemistry* 1998; **37**: 6791-6800 [PMID: 9578564 DOI: 10.1021/bi9730339]

69   **Murphy TA**, Catto LE, Halford SE, Hadfield AT, Minor W, Walsh TR, Spencer J. Crystal structure of Pseudomonas aeruginosa SPM-1 provides insights into variable zinc affinity of metallo-beta-lactamases. *J Mol Biol* 2006; **357**: 890-903 [PMID: 16460758 DOI: 10.1016/j.jmb.2006.01.003]

70   **Carfi A**, Duée E, Galleni M, Frère JM, Dideberg O. 1.85 A resolution structure of the zinc (II) beta-lactamase from Bacillus cereus. *Acta Crystallogr D Biol Crystallogr* 1998; **54**: 313-323 [PMID: 9761898]

71   **Page MI**, Badarau A. The mechanisms of catalysis by metallo beta-lactamases. *Bioinorg Chem Appl* 2008: 576297 [PMID: 18551183 DOI: 10.1155/2008/576297]

72   **Niguel P**, Gensmantel, Proctor P, Page MI. Metal-Ion catalysed hydrolysis of some small beta-lactam antibiotics. *J Chem Soc, Perkin Transactions* 1980; **2**: 1725-1732 [DOI: 10.1039/P29800001725]

73   **Carfi A**, Pares S, Duée E, Galleni M, Duez C, Frère JM, Dideberg O. The 3-D structure of a zinc metallo-beta-lactamase from Bacillus cereus reveals a new type of protein fold. *EMBO J* 1995; **14**: 4914-4921 [PMID: 7588620]

74   **Concha NO**, Rasmussen BA, Bush K, Herzberg O. Crystal structure of the wide-spectrum binuclear zinc beta-lactamase from Bacteroides fragilis. *Structure* 1996; **4**: 823-836 [PMID: 8805566]

75   **Garau G**, Bebrone C, Anne C, Galleni M, Frère JM, Dideberg O. A metallo-beta-lactamase enzyme in action: crystal structures of the monozinc carbapenemase CphA and its complex with biapenem. *J Mol Biol* 2005; **345**: 785-795 [PMID: 15588826 DOI: 10.1016/j.jmb.2004.10.070]

76   **Yim G**, Wang HH, Davies J. Antibiotics as signalling molecules. *Philos Trans R Soc Lond B Biol Sci* 2007; **362**: 1195-1200 [PMID: 17360275 DOI: 10.1098/rstb.2007.2044]

77   **Massova I**, Mobashery S. Kinship and diversification of bacterial penicillin-binding proteins and beta-lactamases. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 1998; **42**: 1-17 [PMID: 9449253 DOI: 10.1093/jac/42.1.1]

27: 58-63 [PMID: 10093707]

78 **Galán JC**, González-Candelas F, Rolain JM, Cantón R. Antibiotics as selectors and accelerators of diversity in the mechanisms of resistance: from the resistome to genetic plasticity in the β-lactamases world. *Front Microbiol* 2013; **4**: 9 [PMID: 23404545 DOI: 10.3389/fmicb.2013.00009]

79 **Dantas G**, Sommer MO. Context matters - the complex interplay between resistome genotypes and resistance phenotypes. *Curr Opin Microbiol* 2012; **15**: 577-582 [PMID: 22954750 DOI: 10.1016/j.mib.2012.07.004]

80 **Pehrsson EC**, Forsberg KJ, Gibson MK, Ahmadi S, Dantas G. Novel resistance functions uncovered using functional metagenomic investigations of resistance reservoirs. *Front Microbiol* 2013; **4**: 145 [PMID: 23760651 DOI: 10.3389/fmicb.2013.00145]

81 **Raz Y**, Tannenbaum E. The influence of horizontal gene transfer on the mean fitness of unicellular populations in static environments. *Genetics* 2010; **185**: 327-337 [PMID: 20194966 DOI: 10.1534/genetics.109.113613]

82 **Bulychev A**, Massova I, Miyashita K, Mobashery S. Nuances of mechanisms and their implications for evolution of the versatile b-lactam hydrolase activity: from biosynthetic enzymes to drug resistance factors. *J Am Chem Soc* 1997; **119**: 7619-7625 [DOI: 10.1021/ja963708f]

83 **Ghuysen JM**. Penicillin-binding proteins. Wall peptidoglycan assembly and resistance to penicillin: facts, doubts and hopes. *Int J Antimicrob Agents* 1997; **8**: 45-60 [PMID: 18611784 DOI: 10.1016/S0924-8579(96)00358-5]

84 **Urbach C**, Fastrez J, Soumillion P. A new family of cyanobacterial penicillin-binding proteins. A missing link in the evolution of class A beta-lactamases. *J Biol Chem* 2008; **283**: 32516-32526 [PMID: 18801739 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M805375200]

85 **Hall BG**, Barlow M. Structure-based phylogenies of the serine beta-lactamases. *J Mol Evol* 2003; **57**: 255-260 [PMID: 14629035 DOI: 10.1007/s00239-003-2473-y]

86 **Hall BG**, Barlow M. Evolution of the serine beta-lactamases: past, present and future. *Drug Resist Updat* 2004; **7**: 111-123 [PMID: 15158767 DOI: 10.1016/s1368-7646(04)00018-4]

87 **Haeggman S**, Löfdahl S, Paauw A, Verhoef J, Brisse S. Diversity and evolution of the class A chromosomal beta-lactamase gene in Klebsiella pneumoniae. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2004; **48**: 2400-2408 [PMID: 15215087 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.48.7.2400-2408]

88 **Paton R**, Miles RS, Hood J, Amyes SG, Miles RS, Amyes SG. ARI 1: beta-lactamase-mediated imipenem resistance in Acinetobacter baumannii. *Int J Antimicrob Agents* 1993; **2**: 81-87 [PMID: 18611526 DOI: 10.1016/0924-8579(93)90045-7]

89 **Héritier C**, Poirel L, Fournier PE, Claverie JM, Raoult D, Nordmann P. Characterization of the naturally occurring oxacillinase of Acinetobacter baumannii. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2005; **49**: 4174-4179 [PMID: 16189095 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.49.10.4174-4179]

90 **Potron A**, Poirel L, Nordmann P. Origin of OXA-181, an emerging carbapenem-hydrolyzing oxacillinase, as a chromosomal gene in Shewanella xiamenensis. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2011; **55**: 4405-4407 [PMID: 21746953 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.00681-11]

91 **Zong Z**. Discovery of bla(OXA-199), a chromosome-based bla(OXA-48)-like variant, in Shewanella xiamenensis. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e48280 [PMID: 23110226 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0048280]

92 **Poirel L**, Héritier C, Nordmann P. Chromosome-encoded ambler class D beta-lactamase of Shewanella oneidensis as a progenitor of carbapenem-hydrolyzing oxacillinase. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2004; **48**: 348-351 [PMID: 14693565 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.48.1.348-351]

93 **Lascols C**, Podglajen I, Verdet C, Gautier V, Gutmann L, Soussy CJ, Collatz E, Cambau E. A plasmid-borne Shewanella algae Gene, qnrA3, and its possible transfer in vivo between Kluyvera ascorbata and Klebsiella pneumoniae. *J Bacteriol* 2008; **190**: 5217-5223 [PMID: 18515416 DOI: 10.1128/JB.00243-08]

94 **Garau G**, Di Guilmi AM, Hall BG. Structure-based phylogeny of the metallo-beta-lactamases. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2005; **49**: 2778-2784 [PMID: 15980349 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.49.7.2778-2784.2005]

95 **Hall BG**, Salipante SJ, Barlow M. The metallo-beta-lactamases fall into two distinct phylogenetic groups. *J Mol Evol* 2003; **57**: 249-254 [PMID: 14629034 DOI: 10.1007/s00239-003-2471-0]

96 **Karlin S**, Brocchieri L, Mrázek J, Kaiser D. Distinguishing features of delta-proteobacterial genomes. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2006; **103**: 11352-11357 [PMID: 16844781]

97 **Stoczko M**, Frère JM, Rossolini GM, Docquier JD. Functional diversity among metallo-beta-lactamases: characterization of the CAR-1 enzyme of Erwinia carotovora. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2008; **52**: 2473-2479 [PMID: 18443127 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.01062-07]

98 **Sekizuka T**, Matsui M, Yamane K, Takeuchi F, Ohnishi M, Hishinuma A, Arakawa Y, Kuroda M. Complete sequencing of the bla(NDM-1)-positive IncA/C plasmid from Escherichia coli ST38 isolate suggests a possible origin from plant pathogens. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e25334 [PMID: 21966500 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0025334]

99 **Marchiaro PM**, Brambilla L, Morán-Barrio J, Revale S, Pasteran F, Vila AJ, Viale AM, Limansky AS. The complete nucleotide sequence of the carbapenem resistance-conferring conjugative plasmid pLD209 from a Pseudomonas putida clinical strain reveals a chimeric design formed by modules derived from both environmental and clinical bacteria. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2014; **58**: 1816-1821 [PMID: 24395220 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.02494-13]

100 **Segawa T**, Takeuchi N, Rivera A, Yamada A, Yoshimura Y, Barcaza G, Shinbori K, Motoyama H, Kohshima S, Ushida K. Distribution of antibiotic resistance genes in glacier environments. *Environ Microbiol Rep* 2013; **5**: 127-134 [PMID: 23757141 DOI: 10.1111/1758-2229.12011]

101 **Nordmann P**, Naas T, Poirel L. Global spread of Carbapenemase-producing Enterobacteriaceae. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2011; **17**: 1791-1798 [PMID: 22000347 DOI: 10.3201/eid1710.110655]

102 **Cuzon G**, Naas T, Nordmann P. Functional characterization of Tn4401, a Tn3-based transposon involved in blaKPC gene mobilization. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2011; **55**: 5370-5373 [PMID: 21844325 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.05202-11]

103 **Luo Y**, Yang J, Ye L, Guo L, Zhao Q, Chen R, Chen Y, Han X, Zhao J, Tian S, Han L. Characterization of KPC-2-producing Escherichia coli, Citrobacter freundii, Enterobacter cloacae, Enterobacter aerogenes, and Klebsiella oxytoca isolates from a Chinese Hospital. *Microb Drug Resist* 2014; **20**: 264-269 [PMID: 24433026 DOI: 10.1089/mdr.2013.0150]

104 **Bryant KA**, Van Schooneveld TC, Thapa I, Bastola D, Williams LO, Safranek TJ, Hinrichs SH, Rupp ME, Fey PD. KPC-4 Is encoded within a truncated Tn4401 in an IncL/M plasmid, pNE1280, isolated from Enterobacter cloacae and Serratia marcescens. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2013; **57**: 37-41 [PMID: 23070154 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.01062-12]

105 **Naas T**, Cuzon G, Villegas MV, Lartigue MF, Quinn JP, Nordmann P. Genetic structures at the origin of acquisition of the beta-lactamase bla KPC gene. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2008; **52**: 1257-1263 [PMID: 18227185 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.01451-07]

106 **Poirel L**, Carrër A, Pitout JD, Nordmann P. Integron mobilization unit as a source of mobility of antibiotic resistance genes. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2009; **53**: 2492-2498 [PMID: 19332679 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.00033-09]

107 **Aubron C**, Poirel L, Ash RJ, Nordmann P. Carbapenemase-producing Enterobacteriaceae, U.S. rivers. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2005; **11**: 260-264 [PMID: 15752444 DOI: 10.3201/eid1102.030684]

108 **Yu YS**, Du XX, Zhou ZH, Chen YG, Li LJ. First isolation of blaIMI-2 in an Enterobacter cloacae clinical isolate from China. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2006; **50**: 1610-1611 [PMID: 16569898 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.50.4.1610-1611]

109 **Walther-Rasmussen J**, Høiby N. OXA-type carbapenemases. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2006; **57**: 373-383 [PMID: 16446375]

110 **Seputiene V**, Povilonis J, Suziedeliene E. Novel variants of AbaR resistance islands with a common backbone in Acinetobacter baumannii isolates of European clone II. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2012; **56**: 1969-1973 [PMID: 22290980 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.05678-11]

111 **Beyrouthy R**, Robin F, Delmas J, Gibold L, Dalmasso G, Dabboussi F, Hamzé M, Bonnet R. IS1R-mediated plasticity of IncL/M plasmids leads to the insertion of bla OXA-48 into the Escherichia coli Chromosome. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2014; **58**: 3785-3790 [PMID: 24752261 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.02669-14]

112 **Potron A**, Poirel L, Nordmann P. Derepressed transfer properties leading to the efficient spread of the plasmid encoding carbapenemase OXA-48. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2014; **58**: 467-471 [PMID: 24189247 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.01344-13]

113 **Peirano G**, Lascols C, Hackel M, Hoban DJ, Pitout JD. Molecular epidemiology of Enterobacteriaceae that produce VIMs and IMPs from the SMART surveillance program. *Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis* 2014; **78**: 277-281 [PMID: 24387958 DOI: 10.1016/j.diagmicrobio.2013.11.024]

114 **Diene SM**, Rolain JM. Carbapenemase genes and genetic platforms in Gram-negative bacilli: Enterobacteriaceae, Pseudomonas and Acinetobacter species. *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2014; **20**: 831-838 [PMID: 24766097 DOI: 10.1111/1469-0691.12655]

115 **Yamamoto M**, Nagao M, Matsumura Y, Hotta G, Matsushima A, Ito Y, Takakura S, Ichiyama S. Regional dissemination of Acinetobacter species harbouring metallo-β-lactamase genes in Japan. *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2013; **19**: 729-736 [PMID: 23009350 DOI: 10.1111/1469-0691.12013]

116 **Bonnin RA**, Poirel L, Nordmann P. New Delhi metallo-β-lactamase-producing Acinetobacter baumannii: a novel paradigm for spreading antibiotic resistance genes. *Future Microbiol* 2014; **9**: 33-41 [PMID: 24328379 DOI: 10.2217/fmb.13.69]

117 **Yong D**, Toleman MA, Giske CG, Cho HS, Sundman K, Lee K, Walsh TR. Characterization of a new metallo-beta-lactamase gene, bla(NDM-1), and a novel erythromycin esterase gene carried on a unique genetic structure in Klebsiella pneumoniae sequence type 14 from India. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2009; **53**: 5046-5054 [PMID: 19770275 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.00774-09]

118 **Toleman MA**, Spencer J, Jones L, Walsh TR. blaNDM-1 is a chimera likely constructed in Acinetobacter baumannii. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2012; **56**: 2773-2776 [PMID: 22314529 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.06297-11]

119 **Jones LS**, Toleman MA, Weeks JL, Howe RA, Walsh TR, Kumarasamy KK. Plasmid carriage of bla NDM-1 in clinical Acinetobacter baumannii isolates from India. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2014; **58**: 4211-4213 [PMID: 24752257 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.02500-14]

120 **Partridge SR**, Iredell JR. Genetic contexts of blaNDM-1. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2012; **56**: 6065-6067; author reply 6071 [PMID: 23074228 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.00117-12]

121 **Dortet L**, Poirel L, Nordmann P. Worldwide dissemination of the NDM-type carbapenemases in Gram-negative bacteria. *Biomed Res Int* 2014; **2014**: 249856 [PMID: 24790993 DOI: 10.1155/2014/249856]

122 **Janvier F**, Jeannot K, Tessé S, Robert-Nicoud M, Delacour H, Rapp C, Mérens A. Molecular characterization of blaNDM-1 in a sequence type 235 Pseudomonas aeruginosa isolate from France. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2013; **57**: 3408-3411 [PMID: 23612200 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.02334-12]

123 **Song JS**, Jang SJ, Lee JJ, Lee JH, Bae IK, Jeong BC, Cha SS, Lee JH, Hong SK, Lee SH. Association of the bla(CMY-10) gene with a novel complex class 1 integron carrying an ISCR1 element in clinical isolates from Korea. *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2010; **16**: 1013-1017 [PMID: 19681956 DOI: 10.1111/j.1469-0691.2009.03002.x]

124 **Marciano DC**, Karkouti OY, Palzkill T. A fitness cost associated with the antibiotic resistance enzyme SME-1 beta-lactamase. *Genetics* 2007; **176**: 2381-2392 [PMID: 17565956 DOI: 10.1534/genetics.106.069443]

125 **Mataseje LF**, Boyd DA, Delport J, Hoang L, Imperial M, Lefebvre B, Kuhn M, Van Caeseele P, Willey BM, Mulvey MR. Serratia marcescens harbouring SME-type class A carbapenemases in Canada and the presence of blaSME on a novel genomic island, SmarGI1-1. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2014; **69**: 1825-1829 [PMID: 24659751 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dku040]

126 **Österblad M**, Kirveskari J, Hakanen AJ, Tissari P, Vaara M, Jalava J. Carbapenemase-producing Enterobacteriaceae in Finland: the first years (2008-11). *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2012; **67**: 2860-2864 [PMID: 22855858 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dks299]

127 **Robledo IE**, Aquino EE, Santé MI, Santana JL, Otero DM, León CF, Vázquez GJ. Detection of KPC in Acinetobacter spp. in Puerto Rico. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2010; **54**: 1354-1357 [PMID: 20038618 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.00899-09]

128 **Cantón R**, Akóva M, Carmeli Y, Giske CG, Glupczynski Y, Gniadkowski M, Livermore DM, Miriagou V, Naas T, Rossolini GM, Samuelsen Ø, Seifert H, Woodford N, Nordmann P. Rapid evolution and spread of carbapenemases among Enterobacteriaceae in Europe. *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2012; **18**: 413-431 [PMID: 22507109 DOI: 10.1111/j.1469-0691.2012.03821.x]

129 **Munoz-Price LS**, De La Cuesta C, Adams S, Wyckoff M, Cleary T, McCurdy SP, Huband MD, Lemmon MM, Lescoe M, Dibhajj FB, Hayden MK, Lolans K, Quinn JP. Successful eradication of a monoclonal strain of Klebsiella pneumoniae during a K. pneumoniae carbapenemase-producing K. pneumoniae outbreak in a surgical intensive care unit in Miami, Florida. *Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol* 2010; **31**: 1074-1077 [PMID: 20738186 DOI: 10.1086/656243]

130 **Leung V**, Loo VG, Frenette C, Domingo MC, Bourgault AM, Mulvey MR, Robson HG. First Canadian outbreak of Enterobacteriaceae-expressing Klebsiella pneumoniae carbapenemase type 3. *Can J Infect Dis Med Microbiol* 2012; **23**: 117-120 [PMID: 23997777]

131 **Girlich D**, Poirel L, Szczepanowski R, Schlüter A, Nordmann P. Carbapenem-hydrolyzing GES-5-encoding gene on different plasmid types recovered from a bacterial community in a sewage treatment plant. *Appl Environ Microbiol* 2012; **78**: 1292-1295 [PMID: 22156421 DOI: 10.1128/AEM.06841-11]

132 **Poirel L**, Naas T, Nordmann P. Diversity, epidemiology, and genetics of class D beta-lactamases. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2010; **54**: 24-38 [PMID: 19721065 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.01512-08]

133 **Potron A**, Kalpoe J, Poirel L, Nordmann P. European dissemination of a single OXA-48-producing Klebsiella pneumoniae clone. *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2011; **17**: E24-E26 [PMID: 21973185 DOI: 10.1111/j.1469-0691.2011.03669.x]

134 **Watanabe M**, Iyobe S, Inoue M, Mitsuhashi S. Transferable imipenem resistance in Pseudomonas aeruginosa. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 1991; **35**: 147-151 [PMID: 1901695]

135 **Tada T**, Miyoshi-Akiyama T, Shimada K, Shimojima M, Kirikae T. IMP-43 and IMP-44 metallo-β-lactamases with increased carbapenemase activities in multidrug-resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2013; **57**: 4427-4432 [PMID: 23836174 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.00716-13]

136 **Chen S**, Feng W, Chen J, Liao W, He N, Wang Q, Sun F, Xia P. Spread of carbapenemase-producing enterobacteria in a southwest hospital in China. *Ann Clin Microbiol Antimicrob* 2014; **13**: 42 [PMID: 25113057 DOI: 10.1186/s12941-014-0042-4]

137 **Bae IK**, Suh B, Jeong SH, Wang KK, Kim YR, Yong D, Lee K. Molecular epidemiology of Pseudomonas aeruginosa clinical isolates from Korea producing β-lactamases with extended-spectrum activity. *Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis* 2014; **79**: 373-377 [PMID: 24792837 DOI: 10.1016/j.diagmicrobio.2014.03.007]

138 **Loli A**, Tzouvelekis LS, Tzelepi E, Carattoli A, Vatopoulos AC, Tassios PT, Miriagou V. Sources of diversity of carbapenem resistance levels in Klebsiella pneumoniae carrying blaVIM-1. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2006; **58**: 669-672 [PMID: 16870645 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dkl302]

139 **Johnson AP**, Woodford N. Global spread of antibiotic resistance: the example of New Delhi metallo-β-lactamase (NDM)-mediated carbapenem resistance. *J Med Microbiol* 2013; **62**: 499-513 [PMID: 23329317 DOI: 10.1099/jmm.0.052555-0]

140 **Perry JD**, Naqvi SH, Mirza IA, Alizai SA, Hussain A, Ghirardi S, Orenga S, Wilkinson K, Woodford N, Zhang J, Livermore DM, Abbasi SA, Raza MW. Prevalence of faecal carriage of Enterobacteriaceae with NDM-1 carbapenemase at military hospitals in Pakistan, and evaluation of two chromogenic media. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2011; **66**: 2288-2294 [PMID: 21788293

DOI: 10.1093/jac/dkr299]

141   **Day KM**, Ali S, Mirza IA, Sidjabat HE, Silvey A, Lanyon CV, Cummings SP, Abbasi SA, Raza MW, Paterson DL, Perry JD. Prevalence and molecular characterization of Enterobacteriaceae producing NDM-1 carbapenemase at a military hospital in Pakistan and evaluation of two chromogenic media. *Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis* 2013; **75**: 187-191 [PMID: 23246367 DOI: 10.1016/j.diagmicrobio.2012.11.006]

142   **Berrazeg M**, Diene S, Medjahed L, Parola P, Drissi M, Raoult D, Rolain J. New Delhi Metallo-beta-lactamase around the world: an eReview using Google Maps. *Euro Surveill* 2014; **19**: pii: 20809 [PMID: 24871756]

143   **Slama TG**. Gram-negative antibiotic resistance: there is a price to pay. *Crit Care* 2008; **12** Suppl 4: S4 [PMID: 18495061 DOI: 10.1186/cc6820]

144   **Wilke MH**. Multiresistant bacteria and current therapy - the economical side of the story. *Eur J Med Res* 2010; **15**: 571-576 [PMID: 21163732 DOI: 10.1186/2047-783X-15-12-571]

145   **Cosgrove SE**. The relationship between antimicrobial resistance and patient outcomes: mortality, length of hospital stay, and health care costs. *Clin Infect Dis* 2006; **42** Suppl 2: S82-S89 [PMID: 16355321]

146   **Savard P**, Perl TM. Combating the spread of carbapenemases in Enterobacteriaceae: a battle that infection prevention should not lose. *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2014; **20**: 854-861 [PMID: 24980472 DOI: 10.1111/1469-0691.12748]

147   **Ricardo Morales I**. [Treatment of extended spectrum betalactamases producing bacteria]. *Rev Chil Infectol* 2003; **20** Suppl 1: 24-27 [DOI: 10.4067/S0716-10182003020100003]

148   **Clinical and Laboratory Standars Institute**. Performance standards for antimicrobial susceptibility testing. CLSI document M100-S24, 2014. Available from: URL: http://www.ctmperu.org.pe/anexos/bibliotecavirtual/exposiciones/guia CLSI 2014.pdf

149   European Committee on Antimicrobial Susceptibility Testing. 2014. Available from: URL: http://www.eucast.org

150   **Nordmann P**, Gniadkowski M, Giske CG, Poirel L, Woodford N, Miriagou V. Identification and screening of carbapenemase-producing Enterobacteriaceae. *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2012; **18**: 432-438 [PMID: 22507110 DOI: 10.1111/j.1469-0691.2012.03815.x]

151   **Vading M**, Samuelsen Ø, Haldorsen B, Sundsfjord AS, Giske CG. Comparison of disk diffusion, Etest and VITEK2 for detection of carbapenemase-producing Klebsiella pneumoniae with the EUCAST and CLSI breakpoint systems. *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2011; **17**: 668-674 [PMID: 20649801 DOI: 10.1111/j.1469-0691.2010.03299.x]

152   **Pasteran F**, Lucero C, Soloaga R, Rapoport M, Corso A. Can we use imipenem and meropenem Vitek 2 MICs for detection of suspected KPC and other-carbapenemase producers among species of Enterobacteriaceae? *J Clin Microbiol* 2011; **49**: 697-701 [PMID: 21159944 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.01178-10]

153   **Day KM**, Pike R, Winstanley TG, Lanyon C, Cummings SP, Raza MW, Woodford N, Perry JD. Use of faropenem as an indicator of carbapenemase activity in the Enterobacteriaceae. *J Clin Microbiol* 2013; **51**: 1881-1886 [PMID: 23576544 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.00720-13]

154   **Harino T**, Kayama S, Kuwahara R, Kashiyama S, Shigemoto N, Onodera M, Yokozaki M, Ohge H, Sugai M. Meropenem resistance in imipenem-susceptible meropenem-resistant Klebsiella pneumoniae isolates not detected by rapid automated testing systems. *J Clin Microbiol* 2013; **51**: 2735-2738 [PMID: 23720796 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.02649-12]

155   **Bulik CC**, Fauntleroy KA, Jenkins SG, Abuali M, LaBombardi VJ, Nicolau DP, Kuti JL. Comparison of meropenem MICs and susceptibilities for carbapenemase-producing Klebsiella pneumoniae isolates by various testing methods. *J Clin Microbiol* 2010; **48**: 2402-2406 [PMID: 20484603]

156   **Woodford N**, Eastaway AT, Ford M, Leanord A, Keane C, Quayle RM, Steer JA, Zhang J, Livermore DM. Comparison of BD Phoenix, Vitek 2, and MicroScan automated systems for detection and inference of mechanisms responsible for carbapenem

157   **Pasteran F**, Veliz O, Rapoport M, Guerriero L, Corso A. Sensitive and specific modified Hodge test for KPC and metallo-beta-lactamase detection in Pseudomonas aeruginosa by use of a novel indicator strain, Klebsiella pneumoniae ATCC 700603. *J Clin Microbiol* 2011; **49**: 4301-4303 [PMID: 22012019 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.05602-11]

158   **Girlich D**, Poirel L, Nordmann P. Value of the modified Hodge test for detection of emerging carbapenemases in Enterobacteriaceae. *J Clin Microbiol* 2012; **50**: 477-479 [PMID: 22116154 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.05247-11]

159   **Lee K**, Kim CK, Yong D, Jeong SH, Yum JH, Seo YH, Docquier JD, Chong Y. Improved performance of the modified Hodge test with MacConkey agar for screening carbapenemase-producing Gram-negative bacilli. *J Microbiol Methods* 2010; **83**: 149-152 [PMID: 20801167 DOI: 10.1016/j.mimet.2010.08.010]

160   **Pasteran F**, Mendez T, Rapoport M, Guerriero L, Corso A. Controlling false-positive results obtained with the Hodge and Masuda assays for detection of class a carbapenemase in species of enterobacteriaceae by incorporating boronic Acid. *J Clin Microbiol* 2010; **48**: 1323-1332 [PMID: 20181912 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.01771-09]

161   **Dortet L**, Poirel L, Nordmann P. Rapid identification of carbapenemase types in Enterobacteriaceae and Pseudomonas spp. by using a biochemical test. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2012; **56**: 6437-6440 [PMID: 23070158 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.01395-12]

162   **Nordmann P**, Poirel L, Dortet L. Rapid detection of carbapenemase-producing Enterobacteriaceae. *Emerg Infect Dis* 2012; **18**: 1503-1507 [PMID: 22932472 DOI: 10.3201/eid1809.120355]

163   **Tijet N**, Boyd D, Patel SN, Mulvey MR, Melano RG. Evaluation of the Carba NP test for rapid detection of carbapenemase-producing Enterobacteriaceae and Pseudomonas aeruginosa. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2013; **57**: 4578-4580 [PMID: 23817380 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.00878-13]

164   **Dortet L**, Poirel L, Nordmann P. Rapid detection of carbapenemase-producing Pseudomonas spp. *J Clin Microbiol* 2012; **50**: 3773-3776 [PMID: 22972829 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.01597-12]

165   **Dortet L**, Bréchard L, Poirel L, Nordmann P. Rapid detection of carbapenemase-producing Enterobacteriaceae from blood cultures. *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2014; **20**: 340-344 [PMID: 23889766 DOI: 10.1111/1469-0691.12318]

166   **Huang TD**, Berhin C, Bogaerts P, Glupczynski Y. Comparative evaluation of two chromogenic tests for rapid detection of carbapenemase in Enterobacteriaceae and in Pseudomonas aeruginosa isolates. *J Clin Microbiol* 2014; **52**: 3060-3063 [PMID: 24850357 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.00643-14]

167   **Pires J**, Novais A, Peixe L. Blue-carba, an easy biochemical test for detection of diverse carbapenemase producers directly from bacterial cultures. *J Clin Microbiol* 2013; **51**: 4281-4283 [PMID: 24108615 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.01634-13]

168   **Lee K**, Lim YS, Yong D, Yum JH, Chong Y. Evaluation of the Hodge test and the imipenem-EDTA double-disk synergy test for differentiating metallo-beta-lactamase-producing isolates of Pseudomonas spp. and Acinetobacter spp. *J Clin Microbiol* 2003; **41**: 4623-4629 [PMID: 14532193]

169   **Yong D**, Lee K, Yum JH, Shin HB, Rossolini GM, Chong Y. Imipenem-EDTA disk method for differentiation of metallo-beta-lactamase-producing clinical isolates of Pseudomonas spp. and Acinetobacter spp. *J Clin Microbiol* 2002; **40**: 3798-3801 [PMID: 12354884 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.40.10.3798-3801.2002]

170   **Khosravi Y**, Loke MF, Chua EG, Tay ST, Vadivelu J. Phenotypic detection of metallo-β-lactamase in imipenem-resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa. *ScientificWorldJournal* 2012; **2012**: 654939 [PMID: 22792048 DOI: 10.1100/2012/654939]

171   **Doyle D**, Peirano G, Lascols C, Lloyd T, Church DL, Pitout JD. Laboratory detection of Enterobacteriaceae that produce carbapenemases. *J Clin Microbiol* 2012; **50**: 3877-3880 [PMID: 22993175 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.02117-12]

172   **Birgy A**, Bidet P, Genel N, Doit C, Decré D, Arlet G, Bingen E. Phenotypic screening of carbapenemases and associated β-lactamases

in carbapenem-resistant Enterobacteriaceae. *J Clin Microbiol* 2012; **50**: 1295-1302 [PMID: 22259214 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.06131-11]

173 **Pasteran F**, Mendez T, Guerriero L, Rapoport M, Corso A. Sensitive screening tests for suspected class A carbapenemase production in species of Enterobacteriaceae. *J Clin Microbiol* 2009; **47**: 1631-1639 [PMID: 19386850 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.00130-09]

174 **van Dijk K**, Voets GM, Scharringa J, Voskuil S, Fluit AC, Rottier WC, Leverstein-Van Hall MA, Cohen Stuart JW. A disc diffusion assay for detection of class A, B and OXA-48 carbapenemases in Enterobacteriaceae using phenyl boronic acid, dipicolinic acid and temocillin. *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2014; **20**: 345-349 [PMID: 23927659 DOI: 10.1111/1469-0691.12322]

175 **Huang TD**, Poirel L, Bogaerts P, Berhin C, Nordmann P, Glupczynski Y. Temocillin and piperacillin/tazobactam resistance by disc diffusion as antimicrobial surrogate markers for the detection of carbapenemase-producing Enterobacteriaceae in geographical areas with a high prevalence of OXA-48 producers. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2014; **69**: 445-450 [PMID: 24055766 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dkt367]

176 **Nordmann P**, Girlich D, Poirel L. Detection of carbapenemase producers in Enterobacteriaceae by use of a novel screening medium. *J Clin Microbiol* 2012; **50**: 2761-2766 [PMID: 22357501 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.06477-11]

177 **Vrioni G**, Daniil I, Voulgari E, Ranellou K, Koumaki V, Ghirardi S, Kimouli M, Zambardi G, Tsakris A. Comparative evaluation of a prototype chromogenic medium (ChromID CARBA) for detecting carbapenemase-producing Enterobacteriaceae in surveillance rectal swabs. *J Clin Microbiol* 2012; **50**: 1841-1846 [PMID: 22461675 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.06848-11]

178 **Cohen Stuart J**, Voets G, Rottier W, Voskuil S, Scharringa J, Van Dijk K, Fluit AC, Leverstein-Van Hall M. Evaluation of the Oxoid Brilliance™ CRE Agar for the detection of carbapenemase-producing Enterobacteriaceae. *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 2013; **32**: 1445-1449 [PMID: 23728736 DOI: 10.1007/s10096-013-1896-7]

179 Biomerieux. Available from: URL: http: //www.biomerieux-diagnostics.com/chromid-carba-smart

180 **Poirel L**, Walsh TR, Cuvillier V, Nordmann P. Multiplex PCR for detection of acquired carbapenemase genes. *Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis* 2011; **70**: 119-123 [PMID: 21398074 DOI: 10.1016/j.diagmicrobio.2010.12.002]

181 **Kaase M**, Szabados F, Wassill L, Gatermann SG. Detection of carbapenemases in Enterobacteriaceae by a commercial multiplex PCR. *J Clin Microbiol* 2012; **50**: 3115-3118 [PMID: 22785190 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.00991-12]

182 **van der Zee A**, Roorda L, Bosman G, Fluit AC, Hermans M, Smits PH, van der Zanden AG, Te Witt R, Bruijnesteijn van Coppenraet LE, Cohen Stuart J, Ossewaarde JM. Multi-centre evaluation of real-time multiplex PCR for detection of carbapenemase genes OXA-48, VIM, IMP, NDM and KPC. *BMC Infect Dis* 2014; **14**: 27 [PMID: 24422880 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2334-14-27]

183 **Monteiro J**, Widen RH, Pignatari AC, Kubasek C, Silbert S. Rapid detection of carbapenemase genes by multiplex real-time PCR. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2012; **67**: 906-909 [PMID: 22232516 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dkr563]

184 **Tenover FC**, Canton R, Kop J, Chan R, Ryan J, Weir F, Ruiz-Garbajosa P, LaBombardi V, Persing DH. Detection of colonization by carbapenemase-producing Gram-negative Bacilli in patients by use of the Xpert MDRO assay. *J Clin Microbiol* 2013; **51**: 3780-3787 [PMID: 24006011 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.01092-13]

185 **Naas T**, Cuzon G, Bogaerts P, Glupczynski Y, Nordmann P. Evaluation of a DNA microarray (Check-MDR CT102) for rapid detection of TEM, SHV, and CTX-M extended-spectrum β-lactamases and of KPC, OXA-48, VIM, IMP, and NDM-1 carbapenemases. *J Clin Microbiol* 2011; **49**: 1608-1613 [PMID: 21325547 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.02607-10]

186 **Bernabeu S**, Poirel L, Nordmann P. Spectrophotometry-based detection of carbapenemase producers among Enterobacteriaceae. *Diagn Microbiol Infect Dis* 2012; **74**: 88-90 [PMID: 22727768 DOI: 10.1016/j.diagmicrobio.2012.05.02]

187 **Sparbier K**, Schubert S, Weller U, Boogen C, Kostrzewa M. Matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization-time of flight mass spectrometry-based functional assay for rapid detection of resistance against β-lactam antibiotics. *J Clin Microbiol* 2012; **50**: 927-937 [PMID: 22205812 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.05737-11]

188 **Hrabák J**, Studentová V, Walková R, Zemlicková H, Jakubu V, Chudácková E, Gniadkowski M, Pfeifer Y, Perry JD, Wilkinson K, Bergerová T. Detection of NDM-1, VIM-1, KPC, OXA-48, and OXA-162 carbapenemases by matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization-time of flight mass spectrometry. *J Clin Microbiol* 2012; **50**: 2441-2443 [PMID: 22553235 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.01002-12]

189 **Pan C**, Xu S, Zhou H, Fu Y, Ye M, Zou H. Recent developments in methods and technology for analysis of biological samples by MALDI-TOF-MS. *Anal Bioanal Chem* 2007; **387**: 193-204 [PMID: 17086385]

190 **Hrabák J**, Walková R, Studentová V, Chudácková E, Bergerová T. Carbapenemase activity detection by matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization-time of flight mass spectrometry. *J Clin Microbiol* 2011; **49**: 3222-3227 [PMID: 21775535]

191 **Carvalhaes CG**, Cayô R, Assis DM, Martins ER, Juliano L, Juliano MA, Gales AC. Detection of SPM-1-producing Pseudomonas aeruginosa and class D β-lactamase-producing Acinetobacter baumannii isolates by use of liquid chromatography-mass spectrometry and matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization-time of flight mass spectrometry. *J Clin Microbiol* 2013; **51**: 287-290 [PMID: 23100344 DOI: 10.1128/JCM.02365-12]

192 **Hooff GP**, van Kampen JJ, Meesters RJ, van Belkum A, Goessens WH, Luider TM. Characterization of β-lactamase enzyme activity in bacterial lysates using MALDI-mass spectrometry. *J Proteome Res* 2012; **11**: 79-84 [PMID: 22013912 DOI: 10.1021/pr200858r]

193 **Carvalhaes CG**, Cayô R, Visconde MF, Barone T, Frigatto EA, Okamoto D, Assis DM, Juliano L, Machado AM, Gales AC. Detection of carbapenemase activity directly from blood culture vials using MALDI-TOF MS: a quick answer for the right decision. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2014; **69**: 2132-2136 [PMID: 24722840]

194 **Gasink LB**, Edelstein PH, Lautenbach E, Synnestvedt M, Fishman NO. Risk factors and clinical impact of Klebsiella pneumoniae carbapenemase-producing K. pneumoniae. *Infect Control Hosp Epidemiol* 2009; **30**: 1180-1185 [PMID: 19860564 DOI: 10.1086/648451]

195 **Papadimitriou-Olivgeris M**, Marangos M, Fligou F, Christofidou M, Bartzavali C, Anastassiou ED, Filos KS. Risk factors for KPC-producing Klebsiella pneumoniae enteric colonization upon ICU admission. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2012; **67**: 2976-2981 [PMID: 22927316 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dks316]

196 **Rogers BA**, Aminzadeh Z, Hayashi Y, Paterson DL. Country-to-country transfer of patients and the risk of multi-resistant bacterial infection. *Clin Infect Dis* 2011; **53**: 49-56 [PMID: 21653302 DOI: 10.1093/cid/cir273]

197 **Ohmagari N**, Kurai H, Yamagishi Y, Mikamo H. Are strict isolation policies based on susceptibility testing actually effective in the prevention of the nosocomial spread of multi-drug-resistant gram-negative rods? *Am J Infect Control* 2014; **42**: 739-743 [PMID: 24969125 DOI: 10.1016/j.ajic.2014.04.003]

198 **Gómez-Zorrilla S**, Camoez M, Tubau F, Periche E, Cañizares R, Dominguez MA, Ariza J, Peña C. Antibiotic pressure is a major risk factor for rectal colonization by multidrug-resistant Pseudomonas aeruginosa in critically ill patients. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2014; **58**: 5863-5870 [PMID: 25049255 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.03419-14]

199 **Hawkey PM**. Prevalence and clonality of extended-spectrum beta-lactamases in Asia. *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2008; **14** Suppl 1: 159-165 [PMID: 18154540 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.00666-12]

200 **Landman D**, Singh M, El-Imad B, Miller E, Win T, Quale J. In vitro activity of the siderophore monosulfactam BAL30072 against contemporary Gram-negative pathogens from New York City, including multidrug-resistant isolates. *Int J Antimicrob Agents* 2014; **43**: 527-532 [PMID: 24796217 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijantimicag.2014.02.017]

201 **Galani I**, Souli M, Daikos GL, Chrysouli Z, Poulakou G,

Psichogiou M, Panagea T, Argyropoulou A, Stefanou I, Plakias G, Giamarellou H, Petrikkos G. Activity of plazomicin (ACHN-490) against MDR clinical isolates of Klebsiella pneumoniae, Escherichia coli, and Enterobacter spp. from Athens, Greece. *J Chemother* 2012; **24**: 191-194 [PMID: 23040681 DOI: 10.1179/1973947812Y. 0000000015]

202   **Almaghrabi R**, Clancy CJ, Doi Y, Hao B, Chen L, Shields RK, Press EG, Iovine NM, Townsend BM, Wagener MM, Kreiswirth B, Nguyen MH. Carbapenem-resistant Klebsiella pneumoniae strains exhibit diversity in aminoglycoside-modifying enzymes, which exert differing effects on plazomicin and other agents. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2014; **58**: 4443-4451 [PMID: 24867988]

203   **Sutcliffe JA**. Antibiotics in development targeting protein synthesis.

Ann N Y Acad Sci 2011; **1241**: 122-152 [PMID: 22191530 DOI: 10.1111/j.1749-6632.2011.06323.x]

204   **King DT**, Strynadka NC. Targeting metallo-β-lactamase enzymes in antibiotic resistance. *Future Med Chem* 2013; **5**: 1243-1263 [PMID: 23859206 DOI: 10.4155/fmc.13.55]

205   **Livermore DM**, Woodford N. Carbapenemases: a problem in waiting? *Curr Opin Microbiol* 2000; **3**: 489-495 [PMID: 11050448]

206   **Walsh TR**. The emergence and implications of metallo-beta-lactamases in Gram-negative bacteria. *Clin Microbiol Infect* 2005; **11** Suppl 6: 2-9 [PMID: 16209700]

207   **Nordmann P**, Dortet L, Poirel L. Carbapenem resistance in Enterobacteriaceae: here is the storm! *Trends Mol Med* 2012; **18**: 263-272 [PMID: 22480775 DOI: 10.1016/j.molmed.2012.03.003]

REVIEW

Hepatocellular carcinoma and multidrug resistance: Past, present and new challenges for therapy improvement

María L Cuestas, José R Oubiña, Verónica L Mathet

María L Cuestas, José R Oubiña, Verónica L Mathet, Instituto de Investigaciones en Microbiología y Parasitología Médica (IMPaM, UBA-CONICET), Facultad de Medicina, Universidad de Buenos Aires-Consejo Nacional de Investigaciones Científicas y Técnicas, Paraguay 2155, Buenos Aires, Argentina

Correspondence to: Verónica L Mathet, PhD, Instituto de Investigaciones en Microbiología y Parasitología Médica (IMPaM, UBA-CONICET), Facultad de Medicina, Universidad de Buenos Aires-Consejo Nacional de Investigaciones Científicas y Técnicas, piso 11 (C1121ABG), Paraguay 2155, Buenos Aires, Argentina. vmathet@yahoo.com
Telephone: +54-11-59509500
Fax: +54-11-49642554

Abstract

Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) is the most frequent form of liver cancer and the third most common cause of cancer-related death in the world. The main risk factor worldwide for this type of malignancy is chronic hepatitis caused by hepatitis B virus and hepatitis C virus infections. Advances in early detection and treatment have improved life expectancy of patients with HCC. However, this disorder remains as a disease with poor prognosis. In fact, epidemiological studies have revealed that there is an 8-mo median survival rate in patients, approximately 20% of whom survive one year while only 5% remain alive after three years. Additionally, HCC is particularly difficult to treat because of its high recurrence rate, and its resistance to conventional chemotherapy is due, among other mechanisms, to several members of the ATP-Binding Cassette protein family involved in drug transport being overexpressed. Fortunately, there is evidence that these patients may benefit from alternative molecular-targeted therapies. This manuscript intends to provide further insight into the etiology and molecular mechanisms related to HCC development and the latest therapeutic approaches to treat this malignancy. The development of effective delivery systems of antitumor drugs able to target the liver parenchyma is also assessed. Finally, the prospects in the development of more efficient drug therapies to overcome multidrug resistance are also examined.

Core tip: Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) is the most frequent malignancy of the liver. Despite the advances in early detection and treatment, this disorder still has a poor prognosis. This manuscript reviews the ongoing knowledge regarding the etiology and molecular mechanisms implicated in HCC development and the therapeutic strategies for the management of this malignancy. Finally, the development of effective delivery systems of antitumor drugs able to target the liver parenchyma as well as the prospects in the development of a more efficient drug therapy to overcome multidrug resistance are also examined.

INTRODUCTION

Liver cancer, which is ranked fifth in frequency of occurrence worldwide and third in cancer mortality, is one of the most frequent types of cancer[1]. Hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC) represents 85%-90% of primary liver cancers and is the main subtype in terms of histologic origin. Its clinical course is aggressive, while frequent recurrence and metastasis are often associated with this malignancy. It is characterized by late presentation, fast progression, limited response to therapy and a very poor survival rate (6%)[2]. Asia and Africa are the countries where HCC is more prevalent; however, there has been a rising trend of HCC in Western countries[3]. Chronic liver diseases, such as chronic hepatitis B (CHB) and CHC[4] are among the major risk factors for HCC development. Other common causes leading to the development of this malignancy are: hemochromatosis, fatty liver diseases unrelated to alcohol consumption (non-alcoholic fatty liver disease), primary biliary cirrhosis, primary sclerosing cholangitis, autoimmune hepatitis, excessive alcohol use, ingestion of food contaminated with aflatoxin, vinyl chloride, and use of radioactive agents such as thorotrast[5,6].

The development of HCC involves several steps of a complex process characterized by both genetic and epigenetic changes that may activate cellular oncogenes, inactivate tumor suppressor genes and/or dysregulate multiple cell signal transduction pathways, such as the Wnt/β-catenin, the Ras-Raf-mitogen-activated protein kinase (MAPK), the phosphoinositide 3-kinase (PI3K)/Akt/mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR) and the transforming growth factor-β (TGF-β) pathways[7-9].

Several potentially curative or palliative approaches to the treatment of HCC are available. The surgical approaches that are most commonly chosen are: surgical resection and orthotopic liver transplantation. However, preserved or adequate liver function is an essential criterion for surgical resection. In this regard, this surgical approach is not a feasible option for HCC patients[10] when the tumor is at an advanced stage, or is located in close proximity to important hepatic vessels within the liver preventing a negative-margin resection, or when there are tumors at multiple sites or there is inadequate remaining hepatic function. Furthermore, about 17%-69% of patients suffer from recurrence, thus limiting their long-term survival at 5 years postoperatively[11]. Orthotopic liver transplantation is considered to be the only curative solution for HCC that cannot be surgically removed. Candidates for this procedure are those patients having solitary HCCs of less than 5 cm in size or up to three nodules, each smaller than 3 cm[12,13]. Nevertheless, this procedure has limited availability due to the great difficulty in finding organ donors[10].

Non-surgical therapeutic approaches for HCC such as radiofrequency ablation (RFA), percutaneous ethanol injection (PEI), transarterial embolization (TAE) and transarterial chemoembolization (TACE) are other therapeutic tools used to substitute first-line procedures; however, the probable course of the disease for the patients undergoing such procedures is still bleak. The annual recurrence rate is approximately 15%-20%, reaching 80%-90% within the 5-year post-treatment period[14,15]. A research study confirms that so far there are no adjuvant therapeutic postoperative regimens to successfully treat HCC.

A clinical investigation indicates that none of the adjuvant therapies is particularly effective in the treatment of HCC after surgery[16]. Systemic chemotherapy with doxorubicin, immunotherapy using interferon and hormonal therapy with tamoxifen, on the other hand, yielded poor results, with no significant survival benefits compared with symptomatic management[17-19]. One important limitation in the chemotherapy for HCC is the emergence of multidrug resistance (MDR) to conventional anti-tumoral agents[20]. This phenotype is commonly related to cancer cells that are able to overexpress drug transporter proteins belonging to the ATP-binding cassette (ABC) superfamily of proteins that move drugs out of cells, such as P-glycoprotein (P-gp), the multidrug resistance-associated proteins (MRPs) and the breast cancer resistance protein (BCRP)[21]. Additionally, current anti-tumoral drugs used in HCC treatment, also promote significant toxicities in other non-target organs affecting patient compliance and adherence to these therapeutic regimens[22]. Enhanced delivery[23] of these commercially available anti-cancer agents to liver parenchyma may provide an opportunity to selectively improve the efficacy of the current therapies and simultaneously reduce the adverse effects that often lead to treatment failure.

Up to now, no succesful systemic chemotherapy for patients with advanced and unresectable HCC is available. However, on November 16, 2007, the Federal and Drug Administration (FDA; United States) had approved sorafenib tosylate (Nexavar® tablets, made by Bayer Pharmaceuticals Corp.), as "a small molecule Raf kinase and VEGF receptor kinase inhibitor, for the treatment of patients with unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC)". Unfortunately, this promising treatment has demonstrated limited survival benefits with very low response rates[24,25]. Therefore, new approaches are urgently needed for: (1) improving the activity of prevailing antichemotherapeutic agents by targeting them to the liver using drug delivery systems designed with targeting moieties; (2) overcoming MDR by sensitizing tumor cells to conventional chemotherapeutics; and (3) improving the prognosis of HCC by

further development of the latest molecular targeting agents, such as sorafenib and rapamycin which - although limited - at present are deemed to be the most effective agents for managing unresectable HCC.

In this analysis we review the available information regarding the latest pharmacotherapy options for the treatment of patients suffering from advanced HCC, including molecular targeting agents. Prospects regarding a more effective pharmacotherapy for liver targeting and avoiding/preventing multidrug resistance in cancer cells are also addressed.

CURRENT THERAPIES FOR HCC

Unfortunately, owing to the asymptomatic nature of early HCC, in a majority of patients, HCC is usually diagnosed at an advanced stage, when most potentially curative therapies such as surgical resection, orthotopic liver transplantation and local ablation display a low efficacy. Moreover, in 60% to 80% of patients with liver cancer, the treatment is complicated by underlying liver cirrhosis and hepatic dysfunction[26]. In these advanced stages, systemic treatments are commonly used; however, they are also minimally effective, have severe side effects, develop high drug resistance, and most importantly, patient survival is not improved. HCC is rarely amenable to radiotherapy, leaving this disease with no effective therapeutic options and a very poor prognosis[27]. Through better understanding the molecular basis of hepatocarcinogenesis (*e.g.*, signal pathways and molecular alterations that promotes tumor growth and cell survival), new treatment modalities have recently emerged including molecular targeted therapy and gene therapy, such as antisense gene targeting.

Surgical therapies

At present, surgical resection and orthotopic liver transplantation offer the only chance for long-term cure of patients suffering from HCC. Surgical resection is an effective treatment for those patients with HCC that is not associated with liver cirrhosis or in patients whose hepatic function is well compensated. This means, that surgical resection is an option for only a small proportion of patients, less than 18%, since underlying chronic liver disease or cirrhosis accounts for about 85%-90% of HCC patients[28]. Thus, both tumor extent and hepatic function must be evaluated pre-operatively to avoid hepatic failure following resection, which is usually a fatal condition possibly requiring urgent liver transplantation. There is a 5-year post-operative survival rate of 40%-70% of duly selected candidates for liver resection; however, relapse takes place in near 70%, especially in patients with cirrhosis[29]. For this reason, orthotopic liver transplantation is considered to be the best choice for those patients suffering from HCC and cirrhosis, showing 5-year post-transplant survival rates of 65%-80% among well-selected candidates. Nevertheless, there is a limitation as to the use of this procedure, since the shortage of human donors is an unfortunate event these days[10]. Due to the strictness of Milan criteria regarding transplantation and the restrictions in finding available donors, scientists are now devoted to exploring other therapies for managing the disease in order to provide a solution for the disadvantages arising from transplantation or surgical resection[30].

Non-surgical therapies

Locoregional therapies: Percutaneous treatments: Percutaneous ablation (PA) is now the first alternative treatment when resection or orthotopic liver transplantation has been ruled out in patients suffering from early-stage HCC. PA can be thermal or chemical. The thermal ablation procedure destroys cancer cells by cryoablation or by heat using lasers, high intensity focused ultrasound, microwaves or radiotherapy. Chemical ablation consists on cancer cells destruction by injecting chemicals - *e.g.,* ethanol/acetic acid - introduced into the tumor mass by means of a very fine needle[10]. The ablative method as a treatment of choice will be based on the size of the tumor.

PEI was introduced in the 1980's, nowadays being the most prevalent kind of PA for treating HCC. Cohort studies and retrospective series analysis have shown that a five - year survival might be possible in 50%-80% of patients having a single tumor smaller than 5 cm in size or up to three nodules, lesser than 3 cm in size[31]. The main drawback of PEI is the high local recurrence rate (33%-43% at three years)[32]. RFA (radiofrequency ablation) is another ablative procedure initially outlined by Rossi *et al*[33], in 1993, and since then, it has become the favorite form of ablation for small tumors. When comparing RFA with PEI, the former showed to be better in relapse prevention and in improving tumor necrosis[30]. However, surgical resection is so far very superior to PA techniques.

Chemoembolization: TAE is another locoregional palliative treatment option in cases where surgical resection or other forms of treatment with curative potential are not advised for specific HCC tumors. The hepatic artery is responsible for the supply of blood to the tumor; therefore, the obstruction caused by TAE produces extended tumor necrosis as a result of ischemia, thus providing the rationale for its wide use in patients with HCC[34]. When this procedure is performed in combination with chemotherapeutic agents such as doxorubicin and cisplatin, usually mixed with lipiodol, it is termed TACE. The addition of chemotherapy aims to enhance the anti-tumoral action of ischemia. Usually, in TACE, anti-neoplasic drugs are mixed with lipiodol. By injecting the patient with a combination of anti-tumoral agents with the radio-opaque contrast agent lipiodol into the hepatic artery, drug delivery to tumor cells is expected to increase. Likewise, the chances of systemic side-effects related to chemotherapy are expected to decrease. Unfortunately, the use of

either TAE alone or TACE, remains a controversial treatment approach for patients with HCC, because some randomized controlled trials have failed to disclose a significant benefit in terms of survival of treated patients as compared with untreated patients[34,35]. Moreover, several studies demonstrated disappointing results, showing that TACE enhances intrahepatic and extrahepatic metastases, and even reduce survival[36]. Accordingly, anti-angiogenic therapy enhances the efficacy of transcatheter arterial embolization for HCC hepatocellular carcinomas[37].

Furthermore, severe side-effects produced by the arterial obstruction and by the toxicity of the injected anti-tumoral agents during the TACE procedure, counteract the anti-tumoral action resulting from arterial obstruction. It should be highlighted that the absence of effects due to chemotherapy is not the result of ineffective drug delivery but of the presence of MDR due to the over-expression of efflux pumps that belongs to the ABC superfamily of protein transporters, as well as to an abnormal p53 function that leads to an inhibition of apoptosis making tumor cells resistant to anti-tumoral treatment[38-40]. Dysfunctional p53 makes tumoral cells also less sensitive to hypoxia.

Radiation therapy

External beam radiation therapy: Before the 1990s, external beam radiation therapy (EBRT) has played a minor role in the primary treatment of HCC. However, EBRT was mainly used in the palliative setting for metastatic disease because of an intolerance of the adjacent normal liver to tolerate radiation that precluded a more intense use of radiation[41].

In 1987, the radiation therapy oncology group outlined the outcomes of a randomized clinical trial including radiotherapy of the whole-liver with a dose of 21 Gy in seven fractions or combined with the radiosensitizer misonidazole[42]. Although a whole-liver EBRT provided a significant palliative effect, the addition of misonidazole did not significantly improve the outcomes[43].

The dose-limiting complication of delivering EBRT to the liver is radiation-induced liver disease (RILD) a clinical entity characterized by the presence of anicteric hepatomegaly and ascites (associated with high levels in sera of hepatic enzymes) that may lead to liver failure and death[44]. Due to this reason, several approaches were designed by researchers at the University of Michigan to administer higher radiation doses to smaller liver portions, in order to produce greater tumor control rates without an increase in the damage to the liver parenchyma that is likely to be caused by radiation[45].

Based on the above, with the advent of intensity-modulated radiation therapy, image-guided radiation therapy and stereotactic body radiation therapy (SBRT; as described below, separately), higher doses could be delivered safely since the radiation dose can be distributed tightly into the tumor while preserving normal tissue in the liver from the effects of high doses of radiation[41].

Selective internal radiotherapy: Intrahepatic radiotherapy, better known as radioembolization or selective internal radiation therapy (SIRT), is a therapy based on the intrahepatic delivery of Yttrium-90 (Y-90)-labeled microspheres into the arteries that supply blood to the tumor, where the microspheres come into contact with tumor cells which are hit by radiation emitted by the radioisotope[46].

The microspheres are an implantable medical device consisting of resin-based or glass-based biocompatible microspheres loaded with Y-90[47,48].

The process of release of the microspheres occurs by using a flexible catheter inserted into the femoral artery which is moved forward by the radiologist until the hepatic artery is reached[47,49].

SIRT demonstrated an 89% treatment response with resin microspheres and 78% with glass microspheres, respectively, in patients suffering from HCC[49]. The median overall survival ranged 16.4-18 mo[50,51].

SIRT is a minimally invasive technique and a well-tolerated therapy. It is a new therapy for treating liver cancer and liver metastases originated from colorectal cancer.

Finally, SIRT represents a new therapeutic option for patients with unresectable HCC. Clinical studies showed an increase in terms of survival when this technique is used in combination with chemotherapy. Noteworthy, SIRT tends to reduce the size of the tumor and allows some patients to become eligible for surgical resection[52].

SBRT: As a means to ablate primary or metastatic liver tumors, technical advances in tumor localization and motion management were achieved.

SBRT has become an optimistic approach for the treatment of liver cancer as a result of the complex character of liver tumor motion along with the priority of decreasing the volume irradiated to the minimum to reduce the probability of RILD.SBRT[45].

Focal, high dose SBRT delivers ablative doses in fewer fractions and highly conformational radiotherapy volumes[43].

To avoid damaging nearby critical structures and organs, doses are minimized using tight margins. A robust immobilization device is thus crucial to achieve a reproducible and accurate setup. Image guidance can be accomplished by using a megavoltage/kilovoltage cone beam computed tomography (CT) or stereoscopic X-rays[43]. The local tumor control of SBRT turns out to exceed that of conventional fraction EBRT[42].

A retrospective analysis carried out by Choi *et al*[53], demonstrated that a dose of 50 Gy of SBRT in 5 or 10 fractions for primary liver tumor produced a median survival of 20 mo. Another study carried out by Tse *et al*[54] using SBRT at a dose of 24-54 Gy in 6 fractions, demonstrated that the median survival rate turned out

to be 13.4 mo.

Although liver metastasis is not the subject of the present review, it is noteworthy to point out that survival outcomes are better in patients with liver metastasis than with HCC. In both groups, there appears to be a dose-response for local control. For HCC, the dose of SBRT should be based on the cirrhotic status. For patients with Child-Pugh A cirrhosis, 48 Gy or higher distributed in 3 fractions is recommended. For patients with Child-Pugh B cirrhosis, more fractionated schemes are suggested (5 fractions of 40 Gy, for example). For liver metastases, doses greater than 48 Gy divided into 3 fractions or 14-26 Gy in one fraction is recommended[43].

Finally, with the use of innovative tools combined with radiotherapy such as advanced imaging and immunotherapy, further advances in liver cancer could be achieved. Research is under way to analyze the way of optimizing radiation delivery by using other procedures such as TACE and sorafenib administration[45].

Systemic treatments

Hormonal therapy: Since 15%-39% of HCC express estrogen receptor (ER), and overexpression of the progesterone receptors was detected in up to 39% of tumors, in the last decades there have been clinical trials with tamoxifen for patients with HCC[55,56]. However, later studies have shown that patients suffering from HCC and receiving tamoxifen did not have a survival benefit, reaching the conclusion that this anti-estrogen drug, either alone or in combination with other chemotherapy agents to treat advanced HCC is ineffective. According to Di Maio *et al*[57], a possible explanation for these unfavorable results resides on the selection of the patients in the clinical trials, since none of them had selected patients based on the expression-status of the hormonal receptor. Therefore, this constitutes a significant problem. It should be pointed out that in breast cancer, for example, it is well known that the adequacy of hormonal treatment is pertinent; however, it is only restricted to those patients having tumors with expressed hormone receptors. Moreover, in some HCC patients, a variant form of the ER alpha (vER) transcript derived from an exon 5-deleted transcript lacking the hormone-binding domain of the receptor, yet having an intact DNA-binding domain keeps constitutive transcriptional activity. These tumors with vER, which account for an important percentage of HCCs, have a bleaker prognosis characterized by faster doubling time and shorter survival[57]. Tamoxifen is ineffective in the treatment of tumors with vER because tamoxifen is not able to bind to the receptor. Thus, by choosing anti-hormonal treatment according to the presence of wild-type or variant ERs in the tumor, a significant improvement to the response rate to tamoxifen is observed[58]. Efficacy of megestrol acetate has been tested in HCC tumors expressing vER in a randomized study of 45 patients with advanced HCC. Although in this study it was observed that megestrol

notoriously increases survival in this reduced group of patients (untreated patients: 7 mo; patients treated with megestrol: 18 mo)[59], an adequately powered randomized trial should be carried out to confirm these results.

As in the case of estrogens, it has been proved that androgens positively influence HCC growth; thus, androgens or luteinizing hormone-releasing hormone agonists (nilutamide, goserelin acetate, triptorelin, flutamide, leuprorelin) will possibly play a part in treating HCC. However, no benefit in terms of survival was found with anti-androgenic treatment in male patients with advanced HCC[60,61].

Finally, hormonal compounds have proved to be totally ineffective as regards patient survival. Although tamoxifen and anti-androgen drugs failed to prolong survival in advanced HCC cases, somatostatin -whose receptor is expressed in HCC - and its synthetic analogs like octreotide may play a role in prolonging survival in patients with advanced disease[57]. However, the results obtained so far are conflicting; therefore - as in the case of megestrol - further studies are required.

Systemic chemotherapy: Many patients seek systemic chemotherapy and for more than 50 years, conventional systemic cancer chemotherapy has been developed with the so-called anti-tumoral agents. However, in patients with HCC, the role of chemotherapy is quite limited due to inefficacy and toxicity of these antineoplastic drugs[62]. Single chemotherapy with cytotoxic agents such as cisplatin or 5-fluorouracil showed a low response rate (< 10%) without a clear benefit in overall survival[63]. In a recent clinical trial involving a large number of HCC patients, systemic administration of doxorubicin has provided a very low response rate (4%)[64].

Combination therapy is broadly regarded as a treatment option and used in oncology practice to enhance the efficacy of systemic chemotherapy. Moreover, it is the only treatment choice for those patients in whom unresectable HCC is not feasible for intra-arterial treatment. Although many regimens have not proved to be efficient for HCC patients, the combination of doxorubicin with paclitaxel (a microtubule stabilizer deemed to be one of the leading anti-tumoral agents in the past 10 years) showed a synergistic anti-tumor activity *in vitro* and *in vivo*[65].

A randomized phase Ⅲ trial assessing doxorubicin combination chemotherapy (cisplatin, interferon, doxorubicin and 5-fluorouracil, PIAF) revealed a higher overall response rate and better survival rates than those of patients receiving doxorubicin; unfortunately, these differences were not statistically significant. Moreover, increased toxicity was also related to PIAF[66].

The result in a double-blind phase Ⅱ multinational study assessing the treatment using sorafenib plus doxorubicin was greater median time to progression, overall survival and progression-free survival than doxorubicin monotherapy with treatment using sora-

fenib[67]. However, the combination therapy of sorafenib and doxorubicin is not yet indicated for routine clinical use.

The poor response nature of HCC to systemic chemotherapy is mainly due to its extreme chemo-resistance. Overexpression of several members belonging to the ABC-transporters superfamily leads to its MDR phenotype. At present, there is an intense search of agents for overcoming MDR, as it is discussed in the last section.

Immunotherapy: Immunotherapy is considered to be a possible treatment choice for those suffering from HCC, mainly as a second-line treatment to prevent relapse. In accordance with previous studies, there is direct correlation between patient survival and the the type and number of immune cells infiltrating the tumor, which indicates that there is a direct effect of immune responses on the disease evolution[68].

Immunotherapy represents an attractive alternative tool based on sensitivity, specificity against tumor cells, on the immune system capacity to renew itself, and its potential to eradicate residual tumors after conventional treatment. Therefore, results from several clinical trials have shown that immune-based therapy can improve outcomes in patients with HCC[69].

A randomized clinical trial demonstrated that there were statistically significant improvements in relapse time and relapse-free survival with the administration of interleukin 2 (IL-2) and anti-CD3 activated peripheral blood mononuclear cell in HCC patients that underwent surgical resection[70].

Interferons (IFNs) have immunomodulatory and anti-proliferative activities on tumor cells, and are widely used as therapy for neoplasias and viral diseases[71]. A randomized study carried out by Lai *et al*[63], reported that recombinant IFN-α turned out to be superior to doxorubicin in terms of survival, tumor response and toxicity in patients with unresectable HCC, both in prolonging survival and in inducing tumor regression.

One area of active research is immunotherapy with cytokine-induced killer cells (CIK)[71]; unfortunately, its efficiency is limited because of its low specificity to cancer cells. Another approach is the tumor-associated antigen (TAA)-pulsed dendritic cells (DC) therapy, but the outcomes remain unsatisfactory due to the poor immunogenicity of TAA that make tumor cells to fail to adequately stimulate DCs for effective presentation to immune cells[72]. A possible method for increasing the uptake of TAAs by DCs is to complex them with an IgG antibody, so that the resulting immune complexes may bind to Fcγ receptors (Fcγ-Rs) on DCs and induce phagocytosis of TAAs, leading to an effective immune response against the tumor cells[73]. Such targeting strategy was achieved by complexing the tumor cell membranes expressing α-Gal epitopes (Gal-α1, 3Gal-β1, 4-GlcNAc-R, α-Gal) with the anti-Gal IgG antibody (a natural antibody comprising 1% of IgG in humans)[74]. This opsonized binding complex may be phagocyted by DC and then enhance TAA presentation to naïve T or CIK cells, which are then activated and attack the remaining tumor cells *in vivo*[75]. In this study, the authors demonstrated that this anti-tumor vaccine could significantly increase the tumor-specific immune responders in circulation and the survival of advanced HCC patients (17.1 mo *vs* 10.1 mo in control groups) with no serious side effects.

In addition, results from a larger trial testing infusion of antigen-presenting cells that included 31 HCC patients receiving autologous tumor lysate-pulsed DC, showed an important 1 year survival (63% *vs* 10%), which supports the idea of immunotherapy for HCC based on DC[76].

Immunotherapy was also supported by rat models, since it was shown that there was a reduction in HCC relapse when administering DC in combination with IL-12 activated T and NK cells[77].

Antigen-specific immunotherapy and Treg (CD25[+] T-cells) depletion are worth mentioning as promising plans of action in physiologically important HCC preclinical models[68]. For example, immunization with a DNA-based synthetic vector (DNAmAFP/704) as an antigen-specific approach for targeting α-fetoprotein (AFP) proved to considerable reduce (65%) the tumor burden in an autochthonous model of a chemically produced hepatocarcinoma. Similarly, CD25[+] T-cell depletion by injecting the PC61 antibody significantly protected against tumor growth in an orthotopic HCC model[68]. Treg-depleting reagent Denileukin diftitox (Ontak) targets the constitutively expressed molecule CD25, thus producing the elimination of circulating Tregs without coordinating depletion of activated CD25-expressing T effector cells[78].

Another research work reported that the *ex vivo* treatment of CD8[+] T cells isolated from HCC patients with CTLA-4 blocking antibodies (ipilimumab) produced an expanded antigen-specific T cell repertoire, suggesting that this monoclonal antibody is likely to be highly effective in the treatment of HCC[79].

Direct reactivation of hyporesponsive tumor-specific T cells by providing T cell growth factors (IL-15, IL-7) or costimulatory agonists (anti-4-1BB, anti-OX40)[80,81] is another possible approach to successfully deal with tumor-mediated immunosuppression.

Furthermore, the use of therapeutic reagents inducing chemokine and adhesion molecule expression through blood vessel activation is also an interesting strategy for HCC treated with immunotherapy, since this kind of strategy may help restore T cell infiltration of the tumor[82].

Finally, it is expected that chemoimmunotherapy, that is, immunotherapy in combination with conventional therapy or other types of immunotherapies will elicit synergistic anti-tumor activity.

It has been earlier suggested that during or immediately following ablative therapy, immunotherapy will have its highest observed efficacy when tumor cells are about to die and the immune response has begun

its activity. In HCC, combined therapy of TAE with intra-tumoral DC infusion produced higher frequencies of AFP-specific T cells in comparison with TAE alone[83,84].

Advantageous therapeutic approaches in HCC will probably include combinations of immunotherapy involving several immune effector mechanisms, such as vaccines and T cell immune-modulators, along with immunotherapy supplemented with molecularly targeted inhibitors of tumor signaling pathways[84].

MOLECULAR TARGETED THERAPY

In the last decades, research on the molecular pathology of HCC has uncovered a plethora of molecules that are critical in the onset and progression of this human disease. With regard to cancer investigation, in order to target key molecules involved in cancer genesis and growth, several compounds for disease treatment were developed. The present section summarizes the status of the different therapeutic compounds developed for the targeting members of different signaling pathways that are crucial in the pathogenesis of HCC, *e.g.*, inhibitors of the epidermal growth factor receptors (EGFR) and the vascular EGFR (VEGFR), families, as well as inhibitors of the TGF-β and the mTOR signaling pathways (Table 1 and Figure 1).

Anti-angiogenic therapy

HCC is one of the most vascularized solid tumors, having high vascular endothelial growth factors (VEGF) and microvessel density levels. In addition, other relevant angiogenic factors involved in HCC pathogenesis are: VEGFs, fibroblast growth factors (FGFs) and platelet-derived growth factors (PDGFs).

VEGF seems to be primary a mediator of angiogenesis in HCC. Moreover, a higher level of VEGF is associated with a more aggressive disease evolution and possible poor treatment response[85]. Therefore, VEGF/VEGFRs and PDGF/PDGFRs signaling pathways are prime targets for the development of anti-angiogenic treatments for cancer. The anti-VEGF antibody bevacizumab and the multi-targeted tyrosine kinase inhibitors (TKI) sunitinib, sorafenib and pazopanib, which inhibit VEGFRs and other receptor tyrosine kinases are agents approved by the FDA to directly aim at the VEGF pathway[86]. So far, the only agent that has been proven to be effective in terms of survival of patients with HCC is sorafenib, which has become the current standard for palliative treatment[86].

Unfortunately, resistance to anti-angiogenic therapy was described (Figure 2). Hypoxia-Inducible Factor-1α and -2α (HIF-1α and HIF-2α) may be caused by the use of anti-angiogenic agents due to constriction of tumor blood vessels, decrease in blood flow and intratumoral hypoxia[87]. HIF-1α and HIF-2α transactivate genes causing tumor angiogenesis, tumor cell growth and energy metabolism, therefore causing anti-angiogenic drugs to become resistant and leading to poor prognosis[88]. It was reported that HCC overexpress HIF-1α and that this overexpression is triggered by tissue hypoxia, aberrant growth factor receptor signaling and mutations in oncogenes and tumor supressor genes[87].

Furthermore, previous cancer experiences have shown that the expression of other angiogenic factors such as the FGF are up-regulated upon anti-VEGF treatment as an alternate escape mechanism. Thus, inhibitors of the FGF pathway such as brivanib were recently investigated for the treatment of advanced HCC as an option for patients with HCC following failure of sorafenib.

Sorafenib: Sorafenib is a multitargeting small molecule that exerts its anti-angiogenic effect through inhibition of VEGFR-1, VEGFR-2, VEGFR-3, CD135 or Fms-like tyrosine kinase-3 (Flt-3), PDGFR-β, and FGF receptor-1 (FGFR-1) promoting the formation of new blood vessels[89]. Sorafenib also acts blocking cellular proliferation mediated by the Raf/MAPK/ERK signaling pathway[89] and inducing both apoptosis and autophagy in human hepatoma cells[90,91]. As previously mentioned, the FDA has approved sorafenib for treating both HCC and renal cell cancer in 2007, and is the first systemic therapy to show some survival advantage. In 2008, a promising prospect for sorafenib monotherapy in the treatment of advanced HCC had been provided by a multicenter double-blind Phase III trial (the Sorafenib HCC Assessment Randomized Protocol) which demonstrated a 44% increase in the median overall survival (10.7 mo in the sorafenib group and 7.9 mo in the placebo group)[24]. In the following year, an Asia-Pacific trial corroborated sorafenib efficacy reporting a median overall survival of 6.5 mo, whereas in the placebo group the reported median overall survival was 4.2 mo[92]. However, problems of drug-toxicity have been reported; among the most frequently observed drug-related adverse events, fatigue, anorexia, diarrhea, rash/desquamation, and hand - foot skin reactions were described[93]. Furthermore, other studies have shown that patients with severe liver dysfunction had a limited life expectancy after treatment with sorafenib (1.5 mo)[94]. In a meta-analysis of five randomized controlled trials encompassing 1462 patients with unresectable HCC, Shen *et al*[95], have recently shown that sorafenib use - as compared with placebo - improved the disease control rate (RR = 1.85, 95%CI: 1.55-2.20, $P < 0.001$), decreased tumor progression (HR = 0.61, 95%CI: 0,51-073, $P < 0.001$) and reduced mortality (HR = 0.71, 95%CI: 0.56-0.89, $P < 0.001$). Interestingly, further subgroup analyses demonstrated that results obtained were not modified by HCC etiology, performance status nor Barcelona Clinic Liver Cancer-stage[95] (Figure 3). Sorafenib has also shown benefit when combined with doxorubicin. In a phase I study combining sorafenib/doxorubicin, all four patients with metastatic HCC maintained stable disease state for more than 1 year of treatment[96]. In a randomized, double-blind, phase II trial, the sorafenib/doxorubicin combination prolonged the median overall survival and progression-free survival when compared with doxorubicin alone[97].

Table 1 Molecular targeted therapy

Type of drug	Drug	Target	Stage of use (for HCC)
Inhibitors of angiogenesis	Sorafenib[1]	VEGFR members	Approved
		PDGFR-β	
		Flt-3	
		FGFR-1	
		Raf/MAPK/ERK signaling pathway	
	Bevacizumab	VEGFR members	Phase Ⅱ
	Sunitinib	VEGFR members	Phase Ⅱ
		PDGFR-α	
		PDGFR-β	
		Flt-3	
		c-Kit	
		RET kinases	
	Pazopanib	VEGFR members	Phase Ⅰ
		PDGFR-α	
		PDGFR-β	
		c-Kit	
	Brivanib	VEGF signaling pathway	Phase Ⅱ
		FGF signaling pathway	
	Axitinib	VEGFR members	Phase Ⅱ / Ⅲ
		PDGFR-α	
		PDGFR-β	
		c-Kit	
	Linifanib	VEGF	Phase Ⅱ
		PDGFR-α	
		PDGFR-β	
	TSU-68	VEGFR-2	Phase Ⅱ
		PDGFR-α	
		PDGFR-β	
		FGFR-1	
		c-Kit	
		Flk-1	
	Foretinib	VEGFR-2	Phase Ⅰ / Ⅱ
		c-Met	
	Dovitinib	VEGFR members	Phase Ⅰ / Ⅱ
		PDGFR-β	
		FGFR members	
		Flt-3	
		c-Kit	
	Ramucirumab	VEGFR-2	Phase Ⅱ
Inhibitors of EGFR	Erlotinib	EGFR/HER-1	Phase Ⅱ
	Lapatinib	EGFR/HER-1	Phase Ⅱ
		HER-2/NEU	
	Gefitinb	EGFR/HER-1	Phase Ⅰ
	Cetuximab	EGFR/HER-1	Phase Ⅱ
Inhibitors of the mTOR pathway	Rapamycin	PI3K/Akt/mTOR pathway	Phase Ⅰ / Ⅱ
	Everolimus	PI3K/Akt/mTOR pathway	Phase Ⅰ / Ⅱ

[1]Sorafenib also induces apoptosis and autophagy. HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma; VEGFR: Vascular endothelial growth factor receptors; Flt-3: Fms-like tyrosine kinase-3; FGFR-1: FGF receptor-1; MAPK: Ras-Raf-mitogen-activated protein kinase; EGFR: Epidermal growth factor receptors; FGF: Fibroblast growth factor; PDGFR: Platelet-derived growth factor receptors; RET: Rearranged during transfection; HER-1: Human epidermal growth factor receptor-1; mTOR: Mammalian target of rapamycin.

A phase Ⅱ multicenter study of combined sorafenib/octreotide showed a higher disease control rate than sorafenib monotherapy (76% *vs* 43%, respectively) achieving an overall survival of 12 mo[98] sorafenib combined with TACE is currently under clinical investigation[99].

Inhibition of autophagy with specific pharmacological inhibitors such as chloroquine, produced more pronounced tumor suppression in HCC *in vivo* and *in vitro*[24]. Thus, the combination of sorafenib and autophagy modulation is a promising therapeutic option in unresectable HCC[91]. Moreover, up-regulation of HIF-2α induced by sorafenib contributes to drug resistance by activating the TGF-α/ EGFR pathway in HCC cells[100], overcoming the negative modulation exerted by HIF-1α (Figure 2).

Bevacizumab: The FDA also approved a recombinant monoclonal anti-VEGF antibody to be used in advanced breast, non-squamous non-small cell lung and colorectal cancers in combination with chemotherapy. In Siegel's Phase Ⅱ study it was shown that bevacizumab as a single agent was effective, showing a 13% rate of objective tumor response and a median overall survival of 12.4 mo in patients suffering from non-metastasized HCC unable to be resected[101]. However, its use was

Figure 1 Hepatocellular carcinoma pathogenetic pathways. Main molecular targets of the major anti-tumoral drugs are indicated. VEGF: Vascular endothelial growth factor; VEGFR: Vascular endothelial growth factor receptors; TGF-β: Transforming growth factor-β; Erk: Extracellular signal-regulated kinase; EGFR: Epidermal growth factor receptors; PDGFR: Platelet-derived growth factor receptors; TGF-β R: TGF-β receptor; RAS: Rat Sarcoma; RAF: Rapidly accelerated fibrosarcoma; MEK: Mitogen-activated protein kinase kinase; c-Myc: Myelocytomatosis cellular oncogene; PTEN: Phosphatase and tensin homology; PI3K: Phosphoinositide 3-kinase.

Figure 2 Proposed mechanisms by which upregulation of hypoxia-inducible factor-2α induced by sorafenib contributes to the resistance by activating the transforming growth factor-α/epidermal growth factor receptors pathway in hepatocellular carcinoma cells. ARNT: Aryl hydrocarbon receptor nuclear translocator; EGFR: Epidermal growth factor receptor; ERK: Extracellular signal-regulated kinase; HIF-1α: Hypoxia-inducible factor-1α; HIF-2α: Hypoxia-inducible factor-2α; PHD: Prolyl hydroxylase; STAT3: Signal transducer and activator of transcription 3; TGF-α: Transforming growth factor-α; VEGF: Vascular endothelial growth factor; VEGFR: Vascular endothelial growth factor receptor. Reprinted from ref. [100] with permission from Elsevier.

Figure 3 Barcelona Clinic Liver Cancer staging system and treatment strategy (2011). HCC: Hepatocellular carcinoma; CLT: Cadaveric liver tansplantation; LDLT: Living donor transplantation; RF: Radiofrequency; PEI: Percutaneous ethanol injection; TACE: Transarterial chemoembolization; PST: Performance status test; PS: Performance status.

associated with considerable bleeding in 11% of cases and thrombosis in 6% of the patients, therefore it is prone to drug-related complications. Patients receiving the combination of bevacizumab with gemcitabine-oxaliplatin (GEMOX)[102] or capecitabine-oxaliplatin[103] responded in up to 20% of cases, however the overall survival rate was 9.6 mo. The administration of these drugs also resulted in considerable toxicity associated with the treatment, causing leukopenia, transaminitis, hypertension and fatigue. To summarize, it has been proved in previous clinical studies that bevacizumab was relatively effective in HCC; therefore, since some severe drug-related complications such as thrombosis, hemorrhage and even death have been reported, further studies are needed to clarify its efficacy and safety.

Sunitinib: Sunitinib is an oral multi-targeted TKI that inhibits VEGFR-1, VEGFR-2, VEGFR-3, PDGFR-α, PDGFR-β, c-kit, Flt3, and rearranged during transfection (RET) kinases. Sunitinib has been approved by the FDA to treat renal adenocarcinoma and gastrointestinal stromal tumors. In a phase Ⅱ clinical trial to analize the efficacy of sunitinib as monotherapeutic agent in advanced stages of HCC, it was reported that this drug shows modest antitumor activity with a very low rate response

and a median overall survival between 8 and 9.8 mo[104]. It is worth mentioning that sunitinib had been negative for its primary overall survival endpoint and proved to have greater toxicity than sorafenib. Thus, based on these results, the use of sunitinib as first line treatment in advanced HCC was not supported, being sorafenib monotherapy the standard of care in these cases. However, when sorafenib fails, sunitinib might be chosen as second-line treatment[105].

Pazopanib: Pazopanib, a synthetic indazolyl-pyrimidine is an oral angiogenesis inhibitor, recently approved by FDA for the treatment of patients with renal cell cancer[106]. This novel multitargeted TKI acts inhibiting VEGFR-1, VEGFR-2, VEGFR-3, PDGFR-α, PDGFR-β and c-Kit. It is still being assessed as potential treatment for HCC[107]. Phase Ⅰ clinical studies established that since the toxicity level of pazopanib is acceptable, it might be a possible option for advanced HCC treatment[108].

Brivanib: Brivanib, a TKI, is the first oral selective dual inhibitor of VEGF and FGF signaling pathways, that has showed encouraging antitumor activity in preclinical and phase Ⅰ studies. In a phase Ⅱ open-label study of brivanib as first-line therapy in patients with unresectable, locally advanced, or metastatic HCC,

brivanib demonstrated promising antitumor activity with a median overall survival of 10 mo. Furthermore, this anti-angiogenic drug showed a manageable safety profile, being fatigue, diarrhea, anorexia, vomiting, hypertension, constipation and nausea the most frequent reported adverse events[109]. In another phase Ⅱ, open label study of brivanib, which this time was assessed as a second-line drug treatment for HCC patients not responding to the administration of anti-angiogenic therapy, showed encouraging results in this group of patients for whom no approved treatment is currently available[110]. Recently, a multinational, randomized, double-blind, phase Ⅲ trial compared brivanib with sorafenib as first-line treatment for HCC. Results demonstrated that both drugs displayed a similar anti-tumor activity, based on secondary efficacy end points, although brivanib was less well-tolerated than sorafenib[111]. Finally, brivanib, as an adjuvant therapy to TACE in patients with HCC, failed to improve overall survival[112].

Axitinib: Axitinib is another multi-targeted TKI with activity against VEGFR-1, VEGFR-2, VEGFR-3, VEGFR-4, PDGFR and c-Kit. This drug has shown promising results for renal cell cancer and thyroid cancer. Phase Ⅱ/Ⅲ trials assessing this medication for HCC are still being planned[113,114].

Linifanib: Linifanib is an innovative and potent selective inhibitor aimed at inhibiting angiogenesis, tumor growth and metastasis. A phase Ⅱ clinical trial in patients undergoing the advanced stages of HCC showed that linifanib is clinically active for unresectable HCC with an acceptable safety profile. The median overall survival was 9.7 mo. A phase Ⅲ trial for comparing linifanib with sorafenib is currently under way[115].

TSU-68: TSU-68 is an oral compound which inhibits VEGFR, PDGFR and FGFR. A phase Ⅰ/Ⅱ clinical trial in patients with advanced HCC has shown promising efficacy with a median overall survival of 13.1 mo and a high safety profile even in patients who had been heavily pre-treated[116].

Foretinib: Foretinib is a novel receptor TKI that targets VEGFR-2 and c-Met that demonstrated significant anti-tumor activities in preclinical models of HCC. At present, phase Ⅰ and Ⅱ clinical trials are under way[117].

Dovitinib
Dovitinib potently inhibits receptor TKs, showing specificity for VEGFR-1, VEGFR-2, VEGFR-3, PDGFR-β, FGFR-1, FGFR-2, FGFR-3, Flt-3 and c-Kit. Several phase Ⅰ/Ⅱ studies have been carried out to assess the efficacy, pharmacokinetics, pharmacodynamics and safety profile of this drug. In xenografts models of human HCC it was reported that this compound reduced angiogenesis and cell proliferation, inducing apoptosis of tumor cells[118].

Ramucirumab: Ramucirumab is a recombinant human monoclonal antibody that binds to the extracellular domain of VEGFR-2. A phase Ⅱ study of ramucirumab as first-line monotherapy in patients with advanced HCC showed that this monoclonal antibody has been well tolerated and has conferred a moderate disease control[119].

Inhibitors of the human EGFR
It has been broadly accepted that the role of growth factors and their receptors is crucial for several cancers to develop and progress, HCC among them[120]. In fact, inhibitors of the human EGFR-1 (HER-1) is usually overexpressed in chronic hepatitis, fibrosis, cirrhosis and HCC cases[121]. EGFR/HER-1 ligands such as epidermal growth factor (EGF), hepatocyte growth factor, TGF-α, TGF-β, and insulin-like growth factors (IGF) were shown to be mitogenic for hepatocytes, therefore contributing significantly to hepatocarcinogenesis[122]. Furthermore, hypomethylation of the EGFR/HER-1 gene was also described to be associated with the development of HCC[123]. Since drugs targeting EGFR have proved to increase survival rates in patients in whom cancer has metastized to the lungs and pancreas[124,125], there is a logic for analyzing the effectiveness of this novel class of compounds in patients with unresectable HCC. Regarding HER-2/NEU and its significance in HCC, the international literature shows conflicting data. Some studies have demonstrated that HER-2/NEU is rarely overexpressed in HCC and might not play a role in this kind of cancer[126], whereas the opposite has been shown by other studies[127].

Erlotinib: Erlotinib is an orally active selective inhibitor of the EGFR/HER-1-related thymidine kinase (TK) enzyme that inhibits its autophosphorylation process[128]. Erlotinib blocks the EGF-dependent growth of tumoral cells at submicromolar concentrations and arrests cell-cycle progression in the G_1 phase[129]. FDA has approved this selective inhibitor of the EGFR/HER-1-related TK enzyme for treating advanced lung and pancreatic cancers. A phase Ⅱ study of the single-agent erlotinib in patients with unresectable HCC reported that tolerance to this drug was good but had a modest benefit in controlling HCC, which was evidenced as a 13-mo discrete prolonged overall survival[130]. However, another phase Ⅱ study demonstrated a median overall survival of 10.75 mo[129]. Interestingly, it was also demonstrated in this study that overall survival between the group of patients that showed high EGFR/HER-1 expression and those with low EGFR/HER-1 expression was not significantly different[129]. This means that there was no correlation with EGFR/HER-1 expression and overall survival. The toxicity to erlotinib was mainly cutaneous and similar in profile to other drugs that target the EGFR/HER-1-related TK activity. A phase Ⅱ, single-arm, open-label trial of erlotinib in combination with bevacizumab obtained encouraging results and a favorable toxicity profile. The

best response showed minor tumor shrinkage, decreased tumor vascularity or increased necrosis. Adverse effects consisted on transaminases elevation, hyperkalemia, diarrhea, proteinuria, gastrointestinal bleed, fatigue and hypertension[130]. Further studies with erlotinib as a single agent or in combination with other agents are needed.

Lapatinib: Lapatinib is a dual inhibitor of EGFR/HER-1 and HER-2/NEU by docking into the ATP-binding site of the two receptors, thus inhibiting their autophosphorylation and the corresponding downstream signaling with consequent down-regulation of MAPK, AKT and p70S6 kinase, inhibiting tumor growth[131]. Clinical studies using lapatinib demonstrated that this drug was well-tolerated and displayed anti-tumor activity in heavily pretreated patients with several solid tumors. The most common adverse effects reported were rash and diarrhea. Lapatinib was recently approved by the FDA for use in metastatic breast cancer[132]. A phase II study of single agent lapatinib in patients with advanced HCC demonstrated that this drug was well-tolerated but revealed a minimal anti-tumoral activity based on the lack of objective responses and an overall survival of 12.6 mo[133]. The use of single-agent lapatinib in advanced HCC was tested in another phase II study which revealed a lower median overall survival of 6.2 mo. Authors reported that this low median survival might be due to the small sample size. Anyway, they concluded that treatment with lapatinib failed to meet predefined efficacy standards and did not have significant activity on HCC[134].

Gefitinib: Gefitinib, an adenosine triphosphate mimetic anilinoquinazoline is an orally active EGFR-TKI that reduces EGF-stimulated tumor cell growth[135]. Results from the Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group's Study E1203 had shown modest activity in advanced HCC with a median overall survival of 6.5 mo[136]. Interestingly, combination of gefitinib and sorafenib has demonstrated synergistic effects to inhibit cell proliferation by promoting apoptosis *in vitro* and tumor growth suppression *in vivo*[99].

Cetuximab: Cetuximab is a chimeric (human and mouse) monoclonal antibody directed against EGFR, approved by the FDA for the treatment of squamous cell carcinoma of the head and neck and metastatic colorectal cancer. In phase II clinical studies in patients with advanced and unresectable HCC, the use of cetuximab - as single agent therapy, as well as in combination therapy with GEMOX - demonstrated modest activity[137,138].

Inhibitors of the mTOR pathway
The PI3K/Akt/mTOR signal pathway is crucial in promoting protein synthesis and is implicated in various cellular functions such as proliferation, differentiation, tumorigenesis and apoptosis. In approximately 15%-41% of HCC patients, activation of this signaling pathway

has been reported[139]. This event is implicated in metastasis, invasion and poor prognosis[140]. Blocking the mTOR pathway confers anti-cancer, anti-angiogenic and immunosuppressive properties. Preclinical data have shown that mTOR inhibitors were effective in both cell growth and tumor vascularity suppression in HCC cell lines and HCC tumor models[141]. According to this, rapamycin - the naturally occurring inhibitor of mTOR - and a number of recently developed rapamycin-analogues inhibit the growth of cell lines derived from multiple tumor types *in vitro* and tumor models *in vivo*. LY294002 is a PI3-kinase inhibitor that decreased the viability of HCC cells by inhibition of Akt activation. Other Akt inhibitors include wortmannin and inhibitor VIII[142].

In addition, cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2) has been recently implicated in the pathogenesis of HCC through Akt activation. According to this, the level of COX-2 expression and Akt phosphorylation is positively correlated in cultured HCC cells and human liver cancer tissues[143]. In this regard, Leng *et al*[143] demonstrated that HCC cells treated with the COX-2 inhibitor celecoxib showed significant reduction of Akt phosphorylation and induced apoptosis.

Sirolimus: Sirolimus (Rapamycin) is a macrolide antibiotic and antifungal drug isolated from *Streptomyces hygroscopicus.* Since it has been proved to have both immunosuppressive and antiproliferative effects, it has been regarded as an adjuvant therapy designed to treat cancer[88]. This specific mTOR inhibitor exerts its action in association with its intracellular receptor FKBP-12. Sirolimus may both inhibit rejection in liver transplantation patients and prevent the recurrence of HCC[144].

Everolimus: Everolimus is an oral inhibitor of mTOR. A phase I/II study carried out in patients with un-resectable or metastatic HCC showed modest anti-tumor activity with a median overall survival of 8.4 mo and a disease control rate of 44%. Everolimus was well tolerated in patients with advanced HCC. The most frequent adverse effects reported were fatigue, hyperglycemia, diarrhea, anemia, leukopenia and lymphopenia, thrombocytopenia, hyponatremia, anorexia, stomatitis and rash[145].

Curcumin
Curcumin is a naturally occurring and biologically active compound extracted from the rhizomes of Curcuma longa. *In vitro*, it was shown that this natural compound was able to induce apoptosis of HCC cell lines. In this regard, Cao *et al*[146] reported that curcumin induced apoptosis in human HepG2 cells through mitochondrial hyperpolarization and damage.

Wang *et al*[147] also demonstrated that in HCC J5 cells, curcumin induced apoptosis *via* Ca^{2+}-regulated mitochondria-dependent pathway.

Furthermore, curcumin has also been shown to

inhibit several angiogenic biomarkers, including VEGF and COX-2 expression[148]. This means that curcumin could be used as a candidate for the combined drug therapy for HCC in the future.

Other drugs
Cediranib blocks VEGFR, PDGFR and c-KIT. Similarly, BIBF-1120 targets VEGFR, PDGFR and FGFR; E-7080 inhibits VEGFR, FGFR, PDGFR and c-KIT; XL-184 targets VEGFR-2, MET and RET; vandetanib targets VEGFR and EGFR; BIIB-022, AVE1642 and cixutumumab inhibits IGF-1R; CT-011 inhibits PD-1/2; MEDI-575 inhibits PDGFR; BAY73-4506 inhibits VEGFR, PDGFR, FGFR-1, Raf, RET, and c-KIT; GC33 inhibits Glypican-3, which is highly expressed in HCC; salirasib blocks ras and mTOR activation, and finally, PI-88, which targets heparanases as well as sulfatases is now in Phase Ⅲ clinical trials for the treatment of HCC[149].

DRUG DELIVERY SYSTEMS AND TARGETING STRATEGIES TO THE LIVER PARENCHYMA OF ANTI-TUMORAL COMPOUNDS

As described above, since HCC is asymptomatic at an early stage, most cases are often diagnosed when the disease has advanced and most of the potentially effective treatments such as surgical resection, orthotopic liver transplantation and local ablation demonstrate poor efficacy. In these advanced stages, systemic treatments are commonly used. However, the efficacy of the current anti-tumoral drugs used in advanced HCC treatment cause significant toxicity in other non-target organs, therefore influencing on the patients' willingness to comply with and adhere to these treatments. Therefore, the effectiveness of treatments using anti-tumoral drugs for advanced HCC significantly depends on their pharmacokinetics, particularly in, their distribution and accumulation in the liver. An interesting approach to enhance anti-HCC drug action is to direct them into the liver by drug delivery systems (DDS) that recognize hepatocyte surface receptors. Thus, those strategies targeting the drug to its site of action, - in this case, the liver - may cause an increase in drug efficacy and a decrease in possible collateral effects in other non-target organs[150]. Indeed, several studies discussed below, have attempted to target anti-tumoral drugs to the liver for the treatment of advanced HCC, using novel formulations including liposomes, polymeric micelles, polymeric nanoparticles, dendrimers, nanocapsules and microspheres.

As mentioned above, since HCC originates from liver parenchyma cells, it is desirable to deliver drugs selectively to hepatocytes. To this end, asialoglycoprotein receptors (ASGPRs) are usually used as liver target due to their high expression on the surface of hepatocytes and

in HCC-derived cell lines. ASGPRs specifically recognize ligands with terminal galactose or N-acetylgalactosamine residues, and endocytose them through an intracellular degradation process. The use of their natural ligand (asialofetuin) or synthetic ligands with galactosylated or lactosylated residues, has achieved significant targeting efficacy to the liver[22,151]. In this regard, Xu et al[152] synthesized a lactobionic acid conjugate of dioleoylphosphatidyl ethanolamine (Lac-DOPE) for targeting of solid lipid docetaxel-loaded nanoparticles. Following this approach, other works used the synthesis of lactosylated liposomes for targeted delivery of doxorubicin to HCC as a possible strategy to treat the disease[153]. Other groups used a cleavable poly(ethylene glycol) (PEG)-lipid [methoxypolyethyleneglycol 2000-cholesteryl hemisuccinate, PEG (2000)-CHEMS] linked *via* an ester bond and a galactosylated lipid {(5-cholesten-3 beta-yl) 4-oxo-4-[2-(lactobionyl amido) ethylamido] butanoate, CHS-ED-LA} to modify doxorubicin. Results demonstrated that modification of liposomes with PEG (2000)-CHEMS and CHS-ED-LA turned out to be a potentially advantageous strategy for HCC therapy[154].

Polymeric micelles also constitute a safe and effective delivery system. Bei et al[155] designed three novel polymers named palmitoyl-trimethyl-chitosan (TPCS)-1, TPCS-2 and lac-TPCS-2, that hold a great potential in the development of nanomedicine for the therapy of liver tumors, especially lac-TPCS-2. On the other hand, polymeric micelles self-assembled from amphiphilic block copolymers of PEGs and poly(D,L-lactide) (PDLLA) with folate as a targeting ligand attached to the distal ends of the PEG (Folate-PEG-PDLLA) were prepared. Such Folate polymeric micelle was demonstrated to selectively deliver the anti-tumoral drug doxorubicin to HCC cells, since they also overexpress surface receptors for folate[156]. Cuestas et al[157] reported the synthesis of galactosylated poly(ethylene oxide)-poly(propylene oxide) block copolymers, proposed for potential targeting to the liver.

The nanoparticle DDS, which uses polymeric material from natural or synthetic sources as a carrier in drug delivery to targeted tissues, has remarkable targeting, slow-release and biodegradable properties that also makes it a promising therapeutical option. Regarding this, Cheng et al[158] reported the use of chitosan and the hepatoma cell-specific binding molecule glycyrrhetinic acid to synthesize glycyrrhetinic acid-modified chitosan (GA-CTS). The anti-tumoral drug 5-fluorouracil (5-FU) was conjugated onto this newly synthesized nano-material, thus forming the corresponding GA-CTS/5-FU nanoparticles. Results demonstrated that these nanoparticles accumulated selectively in the liver blocking tumor growth in an orthotopic liver cancer mouse model[158]. Another group reported the preparation of nanoparticles composed of galactosylated chitosan oligosaccharide and adenosine triphosphate for HCC cell-specific uptake[159].

Figure 4 Mechanisms of multidrug resistance in cancer cells. (1) Active drug efflux by drug transporters, such as Pgp, multidrug resistance-associated protein, and breast cancer resistance protein; (2) Loss of cell surface receptors and/or drug transporters or alterations in membrane lipid composition; (3) Compartmentalization of the drug in cellular vesicles; (4) Altered/increased drug targets; (5) Alterations in cell cycle; (6) Increased drug metabolism/enzymatic inactivation; (7) Active damage repair; and (8) Inhibition of apoptosis. Reprinted with permission from ref. [181].

Figure 5 Summary of Pluronic effects in cancer cells. Pluronic binding with plasma membrane of multidrug resistance (MDR) cancer cells (1) induces membrane fluidization, disruption of membrane microdomains, and inhibition of drug efflux transporters' activity (Pgp shown as an example). Pluronic also reaches mitochondria where it (2, 3) inhibits complexes I and IV of mitochondria respiratory chain and (3) induces inner mitochondrial membrane depolarization. This (4) results in ATP depletion and (5) promotes cytochrome c release and ROS generation in MDR cells. Altogether, the MDR cells respond to a Dox/Pluronic combination by (6) an increased proapoptotic signaling and decreased antiapoptotic defense. Reprinted with permission from ref. [181]. ROS: Reactive oxygen species.

Poly(amidoamine) dendrimers are branched water-soluble polymers defined by consecutive generation numbers (Gn) indicating a parallel increase in size, molecular weight, and number of surface groups available for conjugation of bioactive agents. In this connection, Medina *et al*[160] targeted hepatic cancer cells with pegylated dendrimers displaying N-acetylglucosamine and SP94 peptide ligands. Lactosylated dendrimers were also used as a liver-targeting DDS[161].

An alternative strategy is to use microspheres[162] and nanocapsules[163]. For example, Kang *et al*[163] reported an innovative hepatoma-targeted gene delivery system which was prepared with a combination of a human liver cell-specific bionanocapsule and a tumor cell-specific gene regulation polymer that responded to hyperactivated protein kinase C in liver cells.

OVERCOMING MDR DUE TO OVEREXPRESSION OF ABC PROTEINS

As mentioned above, HCC is a molecular complex tumor with high intrinsic MDR (Figure 4). An increased cellular extrusion of chemotherapeutic drugs due to over-expression of MDR mediating ABC transmembrane proteins leads to a reduced effectiveness with response rates below 10%[164]. Actually, there are 49 known ABC transporters divided into 7 distinct subfamilies of proteins[165]. The most studied proteins were P-gp, MRP1 and BCRP.

A classic approach for overcoming MDR involves the use of low molecular mass ABC inhibitors co-administered with the pharmacotherapeutic agent, such as verapamil and valspodar. However, limited success has been achieved so far with these chemosensitizing agents that inhibit these efflux proteins. New advances to overcome MDR consists on the use of block copolymers of poly(ethylene oxide) (PEO) and poly(propylene oxide) (PPO) also known as poloxamers or Pluronics® and poloxamines or Tetronics® (Figure 5). Poloxamers consist of a central hydrophobic PPO molecule flanked on both sides by two hydrophilic chains of PEO. A slightly different structure is exhibited by poloxamines, which are tetrafunctional block co-polymers with four PEO-PPO blocks joined together by a central ethylene diamine bridge[166]. These surfactants have found a wide range of pharmaceutical, biomedical, clinical and nanotechnological applications. Some of them, such as Pluronic P85 were shown to sensitize MDR tumors refractory to many chemotherapeutic agents[167]. In addition, Cuestas *et al*[168] explored the prospective capacity of PEO-PPOs to overcome MDR in HCC-derived cell lines. Results demonstrated that there is multiple-inhibitory activity of poloxamines on P-gp, MRP1 and BCRP in two human hepatoma cell lines, Huh7 and HepG2[168]. Copolymers of intermediate to high hydrophobicity (*e.g.*, Tetronic® 304, 904 and 1301) inhibited P-gp and BCRP but not MRP1 in both cell lines[168]. This activity was related to both copolymer concentration and hydrophobicity. Conversely, there was no evidence of an inhibitory effect in Tetronic® 1107, a more hydrophilic counterpart[168]. Furthermore, the work by Cuestas *et al*[169], also analyzed for the first time the effect of branched PEO-PPOs on the expression of mRNA encoding for the main ABCs in a human hepatoma cell line and gave evidence of the down-regulation of mRNA levels corresponding to *p-gp* and *bcrp*[169].

All these technological strategies constitute a

positive starting point that will require further research to evaluate their potential efficacy in treating HCC.

FUTURE PERSPECTIVES

HCC remains a disease with poor prognosis despite recent advances in the knowledge of both its pathophysiology and therapy.

Since aberrant epigenetic deregulation events such as hyper-methylation (silencing) of tumor suppressor genes, hypo-methylation (activating) of proto-oncogenes, as well as abnormal expression of histone modifying enzymes and non-coding RNAs (microRNAs and long non-coding RNAs) have been associated with genetic instability and altered gene expression, this landscape should be analyzed as a complex network of crosstalk and cooperation (synergism) leading to HCC. Bearing in mind the potential reversibility of epigenetic changes, plausible next generation treatments might also consider the use of drugs that modify DNA methylation and/or those that promote histone modifications (such as DNA methyl transferases - or histone deacetylases - inhibitors to activate tumor suppressors), either as mono- or combined-treatment, together with conventional chemotherapeutic agents. Moreover, encouraging results obtained with the up-regulation of some anti-tumoral miRNAs (such as adenoviral vectored-miR-122[170], and adeno-associated-miRNA-26a[171], respectively) allow to consider this strategy as a candidate for the treatment of HCC[172].

Although only modest results have been thus far obtained with immunotherapy[173], a plausible use of immune-stimulating monoclonal antibodies (such as anti-CTLA-4/anti-programmed death ligand-1) together with inhibitors of the immune regulatory (suppressor) mechanisms exerted by Tregs and/or - as already demonstrated - locoregional conventional treatments intended to increase immunity and unmask TAA-specific T cell responses[174] might be envisaged as a next approach for HCC treatment. Moreover, the recent development of the calixarene compound OTX008[175] as an inhibitor of galectin 1[176] - a key regulator of extracellular matrix interactions, cell proliferation, invasion, angiogenesis and escape from the immune response by favoring the expansion of Tregs and the differentiation of tolerogenic dendritic cells, as well as by limiting T cell viability, and maintaining T cell anergy - promises a future view of tumor halting by selectively counteracting tumor immune escape[177]. A phase Ⅰ, first-in-man - study of OTX008 treatment to patients with advanced solid tumors is ongoing (Clinical trial NCT01724320). Treating patients suffering from advanced HCC and overcoming MDR still remain an important challenge. Since an association between miR-122 down-regulation and MDR has been established, and an *in vitro* therapeutic effect on MDR of HCC cell lines with adenovirus-vector miR-122 has been reported[178], it seems plausible that miR-122 treatment in human HCC might be worth to evaluate.

In this regard, a very recent report using cabozantinib (a VEGFR and MET inhibitor) demonstrated that patients with HCC with high level expression of phosphorylated-MET (activated by the hepatocyte growth factor) are associated with resistance to adjuvant sorafenib treatment. The dual blockade of VEGFR2 and MET by cabozantinib leads to significant anti-tumor activities in HCC by suppressing both tumor growth and metastasis[179]. Therefore, the use of this drug might help to overcome to some extent the resistance to sorafenib. Likewise, the oral use of tivantinib in a Phase Ⅱ placebo-control study demonstrated promising results in patients with HCC with high level of MET, which might be a second choice therapeutic in treating patients suffering from advanced HCC[180].

The challenge of the heterogeneous nature of HCC - and the corresponding biomarkers - needs the expedited discovery of novel chemotherapeutic and immunotherapeutic agents, in order to have multiple choices for therapy which can then be used alone, in combination and/or sequentially, as wellas the design of technological or pharmaceutical strategies for chemosensitizing HCC cells. Furthermore, despite the availability of several drugs for the treatment of advanced HCC, implementing liver-targeting DDS strategies in general and nanotechnologies in particular may result in future tools to: (1) enhance the efficacy and application of approved drugs to overcome and delay cellular resistance development; (2) limit systemic side effects by promoting selective accumulation in the liver; and (3) increase patient adherence to treatment by reducing administration frequency.

Finally, there are still many unknown technological drawbacks to be faced in the discovery and assessment of new drug candidates, which will demand the design of more suitable drug carriers to deal with their preliminary preclinical assessment.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

REFERENCES

1   **El-Serag HB**, Rudolph KL. Hepatocellular carcinoma: epidemiology and molecular carcinogenesis. *Gastroenterology* 2007; **132**: 2557-2576 [PMID: 17570226]
2   **Hernandez-Vargas H**, Lambert MP, Le Calvez-Kelm F, Gouysse G, McKay-Chopin S, Tavtigian SV, Scoazec JY, Herceg Z. Hepatocellular carcinoma displays distinct DNA methylation signatures with potential as clinical predictors. *PLoS One* 2010; **5**: e9749 [PMID: 20305825 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0009749]
3   **El-Serag HB**, Mason AC. Rising incidence of hepatocellular carcinoma in the United States. *N Engl J Med* 1999; **340**: 745-750 [PMID: 10072408]
4   **Severi T**, van Malenstein H, Verslype C, van Pelt JF. Tumor initiation and progression in hepatocellular carcinoma: risk factors, classification, and therapeutic targets. *Acta Pharmacol Sin* 2010; **31**: 1409-1420 [PMID: 20953207 DOI: 10.1038/aps.2010.142]

5   **Ishikawa Y**, Wada I, Fukumoto M. Alpha-particle carcinogenesis in Thorotrast patients: epidemiology, dosimetry, pathology, and molecular analysis. *J Environ Pathol Toxicol Oncol* 2001; **20**: 311-315 [PMID: 11797840]

6   **Liu Y**, Wu F. Global burden of aflatoxin-induced hepatocellular carcinoma: a risk assessment. *Environ Health Perspect* 2010; **118**: 818-824 [PMID: 20172840 DOI: 10.1289/ehp.0901388]

7   **Aravalli RN**, Steer CJ, Cressman EN. Molecular mechanisms of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology* 2008; **48**: 2047-2063 [PMID: 19003900 DOI: 10.1002/hep.22580]

8   **Tsai WL**, Chung RT. Viral hepatocarcinogenesis. *Oncogene* 2010; **29**: 2309-2324 [PMID: 20228847 DOI: 10.1038/onc.2010.36]

9   **Shiraz OB**, Galehdari H, Yavarian M, Geramizadeh B. Possible down regulation of the p16 gene promoter in individuals with hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepat Mon* 2011; **11**: 719-723 [PMID: 22235214 DOI: 10.5812/kowsar.1735143X.732]

10 **Poon RT**, Fan ST, Tsang FH, Wong J. Locoregional therapies for hepatocellular carcinoma: a critical review from the surgeon's perspective. *Ann Surg* 2002; **235**: 466-486 [PMID: 11923602]

11 **Takayama T**. Surgical treatment for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Jpn J Clin Oncol* 2011; **41**: 447-454 [PMID: 21411469 DOI: 10.1093/jjco/hyr016]

12 **Mor E**, Tur-Kaspa R, Sheiner P, Schwartz M. Treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma associated with cirrhosis in the era of liver transplantation. *Ann Intern Med* 1998; **129**: 643-653 [PMID: 9786813]

13 **Bismuth H**, Majno PE, Adam R. Liver transplantation for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Semin Liver Dis* 1999; **19**: 311-322 [PMID: 10518310]

14 **Bruix J**, Sherman M. Management of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology* 2005; **42**: 1208-1236 [PMID: 16250051]

15 **Kudo M**. Adjuvant therapy after curative treatment for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Oncology* 2011; **81** Suppl 1: 50-55 [PMID: 22212936 DOI: 10.1159/000333259]

16 **Samuel M**, Chow PK, Chan Shih-Yen E, Machin D, Soo KC. Neoadjuvant and adjuvant therapy for surgical resection of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2009; (**1**): CD001199 [PMID: 19160192 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD001199]

17 **Mathurin P**, Rixe O, Carbonell N, Bernard B, Cluzel P, Bellin MF, Khayat D, Opolon P, Poynard T. Review article: Overview of medical treatments in unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma--an impossible meta-analysis? *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 1998; **12**: 111-126 [PMID: 9692685]

18 **Llovet JM**, Sala M, Castells L, Suarez Y, Vilana R, Bianchi L, Ayuso C, Vargas V, Rodés J, Bruix J. Randomized controlled trial of interferon treatment for advanced hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology* 2000; **31**: 54-58 [PMID: 10613728]

19 **Castells A**, Bruix J, Brú C, Ayuso C, Roca M, Boix L, Vilana R, Rodés J. Treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma with tamoxifen: a double-blind placebo-controlled trial in 120 patients. *Gastroenterology* 1995; **109**: 917-922 [PMID: 7657122]

20 **W Rivero C**, Rosso N, Gentile E, Cuestas M, Tiribelli C, Oubiña JR, Mathet VL. Dissimilar expression of multidrug resistance mdr1 and bcrp by the replication of hepatitis C virus: role of the nonstructural 5A protein. *J Viral Hepat* 2013; **20**: e127-e130 [PMID: 23490381 DOI: 10.111/jvh.12028]

21 **Dean M**, Hamon Y, Chimini G. The human ATP-binding cassette (ABC) transporter superfamily. *J Lipid Res* 2001; **42**: 1007-1017 [PMID: 11441126]

22 **Cuestas ML**, Mathet VL, Oubiña JR, Sosnik A. Drug delivery systems and liver targeting for the improved pharmacotherapy of the hepatitis B virus (HBV) infection. *Pharm Res* 2010; **27**: 1184-1202 [PMID: 20333454 DOI: 10.1007/s11095-010-0112-z]

23 **Trevaskis NL**, Charman WN, Porter CJ. Targeted drug delivery to lymphocytes: a route to site-specific immunomodulation? *Mol Pharm* 2010; **7**: 2297-2309 [PMID: 20958081 DOI: 10.1021/mp100259a]

24 **Llovet JM**, Ricci S, Mazzaferro V, Hilgard P, Gane E, Blanc JF, de Oliveira AC, Santoro A, Raoul JL, Forner A, Schwartz M, Porta C, Zeuzem S, Bolondi L, Greten TF, Galle PR, Seitz JF, Borbath I,

Häussinger D, Giannaris T, Shan M, Moscovici M, Voliotis D, Bruix J. Sorafenib in advanced hepatocellular carcinoma. *N Engl J Med* 2008; **359**: 378-390 [PMID: 18650514 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0708857]

25 **Bruix J**, Sherman M. Management of hepatocellular carcinoma: an update. *Hepatology* 2011; **53**: 1020-1022 [PMID: 21374666 DOI: 10.1002/hep.24199]

26 **Thomas MB**, Abbruzzese JL. Opportunities for targeted therapies in hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Clin Oncol* 2005; **23**: 8093-8108 [PMID: 16258107]

27 **Avila MA**, Berasain C, Sangro B, Prieto J. New therapies for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Oncogene* 2006; **25**: 3866-3884 [PMID: 16799628]

28 **Hung H**. Treatment modalities for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Curr Cancer Drug Targets* 2005; **5**: 131-138 [PMID: 15810877]

29 **Duffy JP**, Vardanian A, Benjamin E, Watson M, Farmer DG, Ghobrial RM, Lipshutz G, Yersiz H, Lu DS, Lassman C, Tong MJ, Hiatt JR, Busuttil RW. Liver transplantation criteria for hepatocellular carcinoma should be expanded: a 22-year experience with 467 patients at UCLA. *Ann Surg* 2007; **246**: 502-509; discussion 509-511 [PMID: 17717454]

30 **Salhab M**, Canelo R. An overview of evidence-based management of hepatocellular carcinoma: a meta-analysis. *J Cancer Res Ther* 2011; **7**: 463-475 [PMID: 22269411 DOI: 10.4103/0973-1482.92023]

31 **Lencioni R**, Crocetti L. A critical appraisal of the literature on local ablative therapies for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Clin Liver Dis* 2005; **9**: 301-314, viii [PMID: 15831275]

32 **Lencioni R**, Cioni D, Crocetti L, Bartolozzi C. Percutaneous ablation of hepatocellular carcinoma: state-of-the-art. *Liver Transpl* 2004; **10**: S91-S97 [PMID: 14762847]

33 **Rossi S**, Fomari F, Buscarini L. Percutaneous ultrasound-guided radiofrequency electrocautery for the treatment of small hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Interv Radiol* 1993; **8**: 97-103

34 **Bruix J**, Llovet JM, Castells A, Montañá X, Brú C, Ayuso MC, Vilana R, Rodés J. Transarterial embolization versus symptomatic treatment in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma: results of a randomized, controlled trial in a single institution. *Hepatology* 1998; **27**: 1578-1583 [PMID: 9620330]

35 **Pelletier G**, Roche A, Ink O, Anciaux ML, Derhy S, Rougier P, Lenoir C, Attali P, Etienne JP. A randomized trial of hepatic arterial chemoembolization in patients with unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Hepatol* 1990; **11**: 181-184 [PMID: 2174933]

36 **Lencioni R**. Management of hepatocellular carcinoma with transarterial chemoembolization in the era of systemic targeted therapy. *Crit Rev Oncol Hematol* 2012; **83**: 216-224 [PMID: 22142656 DOI: 10.1016/j.critrevonc.2011.10.008]

37 **Jiang H**, Meng Q, Tan H, Pan S, Sun B, Xu R, Sun X. Antiangiogenic therapy enhances the efficacy of transcatheter arterial embolization for hepatocellular carcinomas. *Int J Cancer* 2007; **121**: 416-424 [PMID: 17330237 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.22655]

38 **Arancia G**, Molinari A, Calcabrini A, Meschini S, Cianfriglia M. Intracellular P-glycoprotein in multidrug resistant tumor cells. *Ital J Anat Embryol* 2001; **106**: 59-68 [PMID: 11729998]

39 **Dart DA**, Picksley SM, Cooper PA, Double JA, Bibby MC. The role of p53 in the chemotherapeutic responses to cisplatin, doxorubicin and 5-fluorouracil treatment. *Int J Oncol* 2004; **24**: 115-125 [PMID: 14654948]

40 **Giménez-Bonafé P**, Tortosa A, Pérez-Tomás R. Overcoming drug resistance by enhancing apoptosis of tumor cells. *Curr Cancer Drug Targets* 2009; **9**: 320-340 [PMID: 19442052]

41 **Fuss M**, Salter BJ, Herman TS, Thomas CR. External beam radiation therapy for hepatocellular carcinoma: potential of intensity-modulated and image-guided radiation therapy. *Gastroenterology* 2004; **127**: S206-S217 [PMID: 15508086]

42 **Leibel SA**, Pajak TF, Massullo V, Order SE, Komaki RU, Chang CH, Wasserman TH, Phillips TL, Lipshutz J, Durbin LM. A comparison of misonidazole sensitized radiation therapy to radiation therapy alone for the palliation of hepatic metastases: results of a Radiation Therapy Oncology Group randomized prospective trial. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 1987; **13**: 1057-1064 [PMID: 3597149]

43   **Tsai CL**, Chung HT, Chu W, Cheng JCH. Radiation therapy for primary and metastatic tumors of the liver. *J Radiat Oncol* 2012; **1**: 227-237 [DOI: 10.1007/513566-012-0045-8]

44   **Dawson LA**, Normolle D, Balter JM, McGinn CJ, Lawrence TS, Ten Haken RK. Analysis of radiation-induced liver disease using the Lyman NTCP model. *Int J Radiat Oncol Biol Phys* 2002; **53**: 810-821 [PMID: 12095546]

45   **Hoffe SE**, Finkelstein SE, Russell MS, Shridhar R. Nonsurgical options for hepatocellular carcinoma: evolving role of external beam radiotherapy. *Cancer Control* 2010; **17**: 100-110 [PMID: 20404793]

46   **Memon K**, Lewandowski RJ, Kulik L, Riaz A, Mulcahy MF, Salem R. Radioembolization for primary and metastatic liver cancer. *Semin Radiat Oncol* 2011; **21**: 294-302 [PMID: 21939859 DOI: 10.1016/j.semradonc.2011.05.004]

47   **Sarfaraz M**, Kennedy AS, Cao ZJ, Sackett GD, Yu CX, Lodge MA, Murthy R, Line BR, Van Echo DA. Physical aspects of yttrium-90 microsphere therapy for nonresectable hepatic tumors. *Med Phys* 2003; **30**: 199-203 [PMID: 12607837]

48   **Rossi L**, Zoratto F, Papa A, Iodice F, Minozzi M, Frati L, Tomao S. Current approach in the treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma. *World J Gastrointest Oncol* 2010; **2**: 348-359 [PMID: 21160806 DOI: 10.4251/wjgo.v2.i9.348]

49   **Vente MA**, Wondergem M, van der Tweel I, van den Bosch MA, Zonnenberg BA, Lam MG, van Het Schip AD, Nijsen JF. Yttrium-90 microsphere radioembolization for the treatment of liver malignancies: a structured meta-analysis. *Eur Radiol* 2009; **19**: 951-959 [PMID: 18989675 DOI: 10.1007/s00330-008-1211-7]

50   **Hilgard P**, Hamami M, Fouly AE, Scherag A, Müller S, Ertle J, Heusner T, Cicinnati VR, Paul A, Bockisch A, Gerken G, Antoch G. Radioembolization with yttrium-90 glass microspheres in hepatocellular carcinoma: European experience on safety and long-term survival. *Hepatology* 2010; **52**: 1741-1749 [PMID: 21038413 DOI: 10.1002/hep.23944]

51   **Zarva A**, Mohnike K, Damm R, Ruf J, Seidensticker R, Ulrich G, Seidensticker M, Pech M, Ricke J, Amthauer H. Safety of repeated radioembolizations in patients with advanced primary and secondary liver tumors and progressive disease after first selective internal radiotherapy. *J Nucl Med* 2014; **55**: 360-366 [PMID: 24516256 DOI: 10.2967/jnumed.113.127662]

52   **Hilgard P**, Müller S, Hamami M, Sauerwein WS, Haberkorn U, Gerken G, Antoch G. [Selective internal radiotherapy (radioembolization) and radiation therapy for HCC--current status and perspectives]. *Z Gastroenterol* 2009; **47**: 37-54 [PMID: 19156591 DOI: 10.1055/5-2008-1028002]

53   **Choi BO**, Jang HS, Kang KM, Lee SW, Kang YN, Chai GY, Choi IB. Fractionated stereotactic radiotherapy in patients with primary hepatocellular carcinoma. *Jpn J Clin Oncol* 2006; **36**: 154-158 [PMID: 16520355 DOI: 10.1093/jjco/hyi236]

54   **Tse RV**, Hawkins M, Lockwood G, Kim JJ, Cummings B, Knox J, Sherman M, Dawson LA. Phase I study of individualized stereotactic body radiotherapy for hepatocellular carcinoma and intrahepatic cholangiocarcinoma. *J Clin Oncol* 2008; **26**: 657-664 [PMID: 18172187 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2007.14.3529]

55   Tamoxifen for early breast cancer: an overview of the randomised trials. Early Breast Cancer Trialists' Collaborative Group. *Lancet* 1998; **351**: 1451-1467 [PMID: 9605801]

56   **Gail MH**, Costantino JP, Bryant J, Croyle R, Freedman L, Helzlsouer K, Vogel V. Weighing the risks and benefits of tamoxifen treatment for preventing breast cancer. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 1999; **91**: 1829-1846 [PMID: 10547390]

57   **Di Maio M**, De Maio E, Morabito A, D'Aniello R, De Feo G, Gallo C, Perrone F. Hormonal treatment of human hepatocellular carcinoma. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 2006; **1089**: 252-261 [PMID: 17261772]

58   **Villa E**, Colantoni A, Grottola A, Ferretti I, Buttafoco P, Bertani H, De Maria N, Manenti F. Variant estrogen receptors and their role in liver disease. *Mol Cell Endocrinol* 2002; **193**: 65-69 [PMID: 12161003]

59   **Villa E**, Ferretti I, Grottola A, Buttafoco P, Buono MG, Giannini F, Manno M, Bertani H, Dugani A, Manenti F. Hormonal therapy with megestrol in inoperable hepatocellular carcinoma characterized by variant oestrogen receptors. *Br J Cancer* 2001; **84**: 881-885 [PMID: 11286465]

60   **Grimaldi C**, Bleiberg H, Gay F, Messner M, Rougier P, Kok TC, Cirera L, Cervantes A, De Greve J, Paillot B, Buset M, Nitti D, Sahmoud T, Duez N, Wils J. Evaluation of antiandrogen therapy in unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma: results of a European Organization for Research and Treatment of Cancer multicentric double-blind trial. *J Clin Oncol* 1998; **16**: 411-417 [PMID: 9469323]

61   **Groupe d'Etude et de Traitement du Carcinome Hépato-cellulaire**. Randomized trial of leuprorelin and flutamide in male patients with hepatocellular carcinoma treated with tamoxifen. *Hepatology* 2004; **40**: 1361-1369 [PMID: 15565568]

62   **Tanaka S**, Arii S. Molecular targeted therapy for hepatocellular carcinoma in the current and potential next strategies. *J Gastroenterol* 2011; **46**: 289-296 [PMID: 21350811 DOI: 10.1007/500535-011-0387-9]

63   **Lai CL**, Wu PC, Chan GC, Lok AS, Lin HJ. Doxorubicin versus no antitumor therapy in inoperable hepatocellular carcinoma. A prospective randomized trial. *Cancer* 1988; **62**: 479-483 [PMID: 2839280]

64   **Gish RG**, Porta C, Lazar L, Ruff P, Feld R, Croitoru A, Feun L, Jeziorski K, Leighton J, Gallo J, Kennealey GT. Phase III randomized controlled trial comparing the survival of patients with unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma treated with nolatrexed or doxorubicin. *J Clin Oncol* 2007; **25**: 3069-3075 [PMID: 17634485]

65   **Jin C**, Li H, He Y, He M, Bai L, Cao Y, Song W, Dou K. Combination chemotherapy of doxorubicin and paclitaxel for hepatocellular carcinoma in vitro and in vivo. *J Cancer Res Clin Oncol* 2010; **136**: 267-274 [PMID: 19693537 DOI: 10.1007/50043 2-009-0658-5]

66   **Yeo W**, Mok TS, Zee B, Leung TW, Lai PB, Lau WY, Koh J, Mo FK, Yu SC, Chan AT, Hui P, Ma B, Lam KC, Ho WM, Wong HT, Tang A, Johnson PJ. A randomized phase III study of doxorubicin versus cisplatin/interferon alpha-2b/doxorubicin/fluorouracil (PIAF) combination chemotherapy for unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 2005; **97**: 1532-1538 [PMID: 16234567]

67   **Abou-Alfa GK**, Johnson P, Knox JJ, Capanu M, Davidenko I, Lacava J, Leung T, Gansukh B, Saltz LB. Doxorubicin plus sorafenib vs doxorubicin alone in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma: a randomized trial. *JAMA* 2010; **304**: 2154-2160 [PMID: 21081728 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2010.1672]

68   **Cany J**, Tran L, Gauttier V, Judor JP, Vassaux G, Ferry N, Conchon S. Immunotherapy of hepatocellular carcinoma: is there a place for regulatory T-lymphocyte depletion? *Immunotherapy* 2011; **3**: 32-34 [PMID: 21524167 DOI: 10.2217/imt.11.29]

69   **Butterfield LH**. Recent advances in immunotherapy for hepatocellular cancer. *Swiss Med Wkly* 2007; **137**: 83-90 [PMID: 17370144]

70   **Takayama T**, Sekine T, Makuuchi M, Yamasaki S, Kosuge T, Yamamoto J, Shimada K, Sakamoto M, Hirohashi S, Ohashi Y, Kakizoe T. Adoptive immunotherapy to lower postsurgical recurrence rates of hepatocellular carcinoma: a randomised trial. *Lancet* 2000; **356**: 802-807 [PMID: 11022927]

71   **Hui D**, Qiang L, Jian W, Ti Z, Da-Lu K. A randomized, controlled trial of postoperative adjuvant cytokine-induced killer cells immunotherapy after radical resection of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Dig Liver Dis* 2009; **41**: 36-41 [PMID: 18818130 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2008.04.007]

72   **Baratin M**, Kayibanda M, Ziol M, Romieu R, Briand JP, Guiller JG, Viguier M. Amino acid modifications in the wild type sequence p53 232-240 overcome the poor immunogenicity of this self tumour epitope. *J Pept Sci* 2002; **8**: 327-334 [PMID: 12148782]

73   **Galili U**, LaTemple DC. Natural anti-Gal antibody as a universal augmenter of autologous tumor vaccine immunogenicity. *Immunol Today* 1997; **18**: 281-285 [PMID: 9190114]

74   **Galili U**, Chen ZC, DeGeest K. Expression of alpha-gal epitopes on ovarian carcinoma membranes to be used as a novel autologous

tumor vaccine. *Gynecol Oncol* 2003; **90**: 100-108 [PMID: 12821349]

75   **Palmer DH**, Midgley RS, Mirza N, Torr EE, Ahmed F, Steele JC, Steven NM, Kerr DJ, Young LS, Adams DH. A phase II study of adoptive immunotherapy using dendritic cells pulsed with tumor lysate in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology* 2009; **49**: 124-132 [PMID: 18980227 DOI: 10.1002/hep.22626]

76   **Lee WC**, Wang HC, Hung CF, Huang PF, Lia CR, Chen MF. Vaccination of advanced hepatocellular carcinoma patients with tumor lysate-pulsed dendritic cells: a clinical trial. *J Immunother* 2005; **28**: 496-504 [PMID: 16113606]

77   **Kayashima H**, Toshima T, Okano S, Taketomi A, Harada N, Yamashita Y, Tomita Y, Shirabe K, Maehara Y. Intratumoral neoadjuvant immunotherapy using IL-12 and dendritic cells is an effective strategy to control recurrence of murine hepatocellular carcinoma in immunosuppressed mice. *J Immunol* 2010; **185**: 698-708 [PMID: 20498356 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.0900187]

78   **Mahnke K**, Schönfeld K, Fondel S, Ring S, Karakhanova S, Wiedemeyer K, Bedke T, Johnson TS, Storn V, Schallenberg S, Enk AH. Depletion of CD4+CD25+ human regulatory T cells in vivo: kinetics of Treg depletion and alterations in immune functions in vivo and in vitro. *Int J Cancer* 2007; **120**: 2723-2733 [PMID: 17315189]

79   **Mizukoshi E**, Nakamoto Y, Arai K, Yamashita T, Sakai A, Sakai Y, Kagaya T, Yamashita T, Honda M, Kaneko S. Comparative analysis of various tumor-associated antigen-specific t-cell responses in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma. *Hepatology* 2011; **53**: 1206-1216 [PMID: 21480325 DOI: 10.1002/hep.24149]

80   **Cheever MA**. Twelve immunotherapy drugs that could cure cancers. *Immunol Rev* 2008; **222**: 357-368 [PMID: 18364014 DOI: 10.1111/j.1600-065X.2008.00604.x]

81   **Pardee AD**, McCurry D, Alber S, Hu P, Epstein AL, Storkus WJ. A therapeutic OX40 agonist dynamically alters dendritic, endothelial, and T cell subsets within the established tumor microenvironment. *Cancer Res* 2010; **70**: 9041-9052 [PMID: 21045144 DOI: 10.1158/0008-5472.CAN-10-1369]

82   **Sato E**, Fujimoto J, Toyoki H, Sakaguchi H, Alam SM, Jahan I, Tamaya T. Expression of IP-10 related to angiogenesis in uterine cervical cancers. *Br J Cancer* 2007; **96**: 1735-1739 [PMID: 17505511]

83   **Mizukoshi E**, Nakamoto Y, Arai K, Yamashita T, Mukaida N, Matsushima K, Matsui O, Kaneko S. Enhancement of tumor-specific T-cell responses by transcatheter arterial embolization with dendritic cell infusion for hepatocellular carcinoma. *Int J Cancer* 2010; **126**: 2164-2174 [PMID: 19739081 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.24882]

84   **Pardee AD**, Butterfield LH. Immunotherapy of hepatocellular carcinoma: Unique challenges and clinical opportunities. *Oncoimmunology* 2012; **1**: 48-55 [PMID: 22720211]

85   **Poon RT**, Lau C, Yu WC, Fan ST, Wong J. High serum levels of vascular endothelial growth factor predict poor response to transarterial chemoembolization in hepatocellular carcinoma: a prospective study. *Oncol Rep* 2004; **11**: 1077-1084 [PMID: 15069550]

86   **Wiedmann MW**, Mössner J. Molecular targeted therapy of hepatocellular carcinoma - results of the first clinical studies. *Curr Cancer Drug Targets* 2011; **11**: 714-733 [PMID: 21599629]

87   **Dai CX**, Gao Q, Qiu SJ, Ju MJ, Cai MY, Xu YF, Zhou J, Zhang BH, Fan J. Hypoxia-inducible factor-1 alpha, in association with inflammation, angiogenesis and MYC, is a critical prognostic factor in patients with HCC after surgery. *BMC Cancer* 2009; **9**: 418 [PMID: 19948069 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2407-9-418]

88   **Wenger JB**, Santos N, Liu Y, Dallas J, Subbiah S, Hochwald S, Huang EH, Dang DT, Allegra CJ, Luesch H, Dang LH. Can we develop effective combination antiangiogenic therapy for patients with hepatocellular carcinoma? *Oncol Rev* 2011; **5**: 177-184 [PMID: 21949574]

89   **Matsuda Y**, Ichida T, Fukumoto M. Hepatocellular carcinoma and liver transplantation: clinical perspective on molecular targeted strategies. *Med Mol Morphol* 2011; **44**: 117-124 [PMID: 21922382 DOI: 10.1007/s00795-011-0547-2]

90   **Shi YH**, Ding ZB, Zhou J, Hui B, Shi GM, Ke AW, Wang XY, Dai Z, Peng YF, Gu CY, Qiu SJ, Fan J. Targeting autophagy enhances sorafenib lethality for hepatocellular carcinoma via ER stress-related apoptosis. *Autophagy* 2011; **7**: 1159-1172 [PMID: 21691147 DOI: 10.4161/auto.7.10.16818]

91   **Zhai B**, Hu F, Jiang X, Xu J, Zhao D, Liu B, Pan S, Dong X, Tan G, Wei Z, Qiao H, Jiang H, Sun X. Inhibition of Akt reverses the acquired resistance to sorafenib by switching protective autophagy to autophagic cell death in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Mol Cancer Ther* 2014; **13**: 1589-1598 [PMID: 24705351 DOI: 10.1158/1535-7163]

92   **Cheng AL**, Kang YK, Chen Z, Tsao CJ, Qin S, Kim JS, Luo R, Feng J, Ye S, Yang TS, Xu J, Sun Y, Liang H, Liu J, Wang J, Tak WY, Pan H, Burock K, Zou J, Voliotis D, Guan Z. Efficacy and safety of sorafenib in patients in the Asia-Pacific region with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma: a phase III randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2009; **10**: 25-34 [PMID: 19095497 DOI: 10.1016/51470-2045(08)70285-7]

93   **Abou-Alfa GK**, Schwartz L, Ricci S, Amadori D, Santoro A, Figer A, De Greve J, Douillard JY, Lathia C, Schwartz B, Taylor I, Moscovici M, Saltz LB. Phase II study of sorafenib in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Clin Oncol* 2006; **24**: 4293-4300 [PMID: 16908937 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2005.01.3441]

94   **Pinter M**, Sieghart W, Graziadei I, Vogel W, Maieron A, Königsberg R, Weissmann A, Kornek G, Plank C, Peck-Radosavljevic M. Sorafenib in unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma from mild to advanced stage liver cirrhosis. *Oncologist* 2009; **14**: 70-76 [PMID: 19144684 DOI: 10.1634/theoncologist.2008.0191]

95   **Shen A**, Tang C, Wang Y, Chen Y, Yan X, Zhang C, Liu R, Wei X, Zhu Y, Zhang H, Wu Z. A systematic review of sorafenib in Child-Pugh A patients with unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2013; **47**: 871-880 [PMID: 24100749 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0b013e3182a87cfd]

96   **Richly H**, Schultheis B, Adamietz IA, Kupsch P, Grubert M, Hilger RA, Ludwig M, Brendel E, Christensen O, Strumberg D. Combination of sorafenib and doxorubicin in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma: results from a phase I extension trial. *Eur J Cancer* 2009; **45**: 579-587 [PMID: 19101137 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2008.10.039]

97   **Keating GM**, Santoro A. Sorafenib: a review of its use in advanced hepatocellular carcinoma. *Drugs* 2009; **69**: 223-240 [PMID: 19228077 DOI: 10.2165/00003495-200969020-00006]

98   **Becker G**, Allgaier HP, Olschewski M, Zähringer A, Blum HE. Long-acting octreotide versus placebo for treatment of advanced HCC: a randomized controlled double-blind study. *Hepatology* 2007; **45**: 9-15 [PMID: 17187405 DOI: 10.1002/hep.21468]

99   **Hoffmann K**, Glimm H, Radeleff B, Richter G, Heining C, Schenkel I, Zahlten-Hinguranage A, Schirrmacher P, Schmidt J, Büchler MW, Jaeger D, von Kalle C, Schemmer P. Prospective, randomized, double-blind, multi-center, Phase III clinical study on transarterial chemoembolization (TACE) combined with Sorafenib versus TACE plus placebo in patients with hepatocellular cancer before liver transplantation - HeiLivCa [ISRCTN24081794]. *BMC Cancer* 2008; **8**: 349 [PMID: 19036146 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2407-8-349]

100   **Zhao D**, Zhai B, He C, Tan G, Jiang X, Pan S, Dong X, Wei Z, Ma L, Qiao H, Jiang H, Sun X. Upregulation of HIF-2α induced by sorafenib contributes to the resistance by activating the TGF-α/EGFR pathway in hepatocellular carcinoma cells. *Cell Signal* 2014; **26**: 1030-1039 [PMID: 24486412 DOI: 10.1016/j.cellsig.2014.01.026]

101   **Siegel AB**, Cohen EI, Ocean A, Lehrer D, Goldenberg A, Knox JJ, Chen H, Clark-Garvey S, Weinberg A, Mandeli J, Christos P, Mazumdar M, Popa E, Brown RS, Rafii S, Schwartz JD. Phase II trial evaluating the clinical and biologic effects of bevacizumab in unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Clin Oncol* 2008; **26**: 2992-2998 [PMID: 18565886 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2007.15.9947]

102   **Zhu AX**, Blaszkowsky LS, Ryan DP, Clark JW, Muzikansky A, Horgan K, Sheehan S, Hale KE, Enzinger PC, Bhargava P, Stuart K. Phase II study of gemcitabine and oxaliplatin in combination with

bevacizumab in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Clin Oncol* 2006; **24**: 1898-1903 [PMID: 16622265 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2005.04.9130]

103   **Sun W**, Haller DG, Mykulowycz K, Rosen M, Soulen M, Capparo M, Faust T, Giantonia B, Olthoff K. Combination of capecitabine and oxaliplatin with bevacizumab in treatment of advanced hepatocellular carcinoma: a phase II study. *J Clin Oncol* 2007; **25** (18S): Abstr 4574

104   **Zhu AX**, Sahani DV, Duda DG, di Tomaso E, Ancukiewicz M, Catalano OA, Sindhwani V, Blaszkowsky LS, Yoon SS, Lahdenranta J, Bhargava P, Meyerhardt J, Clark JW, Kwak EL, Hezel AF, Miksad R, Abrams TA, Enzinger PC, Fuchs CS, Ryan DP, Jain RK. Efficacy, safety, and potential biomarkers of sunitinib monotherapy in advanced hepatocellular carcinoma: a phase II study. *J Clin Oncol* 2009; **27**: 3027-3035 [PMID: 19470923 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2008.20.9908]

105   **Yau T**, Leung RC, Wong H, Chiu J, Chan P, Pang R, Fan ST, Poon RTP. Efficacy and safety of single-agent sunitinib in treating patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma after sorafenib failure: A prospective, open-label, phase II study. *J Clin Oncol* 2011; **29** (Suppl): Abstr 4082

106   **Hamberg P**, Verweij J, Sleijfer S. (Pre-)clinical pharmacology and activity of pazopanib, a novel multikinase angiogenesis inhibitor. *Oncologist* 2010; **15**: 539-547 [PMID: 20511320 DOI: 10.1634/theoncologist.2009-0274]

107   **Kumar R**, Knick VB, Rudolph SK, Johnson JH, Crosby RM, Crouthamel MC, Hopper TM, Miller CG, Harrington LE, Onori JA, Mullin RJ, Gilmer TM, Truesdale AT, Epperly AH, Boloor A, Stafford JA, Luttrell DK, Cheung M. Pharmacokinetic-pharmacodynamic correlation from mouse to human with pazopanib, a multikinase angiogenesis inhibitor with potent antitumor and antiangiogenic activity. *Mol Cancer Ther* 2007; **6**: 2012-2021 [PMID: 17620431 DOI: 10.1158/1535-7163.MCT-07-0193]

108   **Yau T**, Chen PJ, Chan P, Curtis CM, Murphy PS, Suttle AB, Gauvin J, Hodge JP, Dar MM, Poon RT. Phase I dose-finding study of pazopanib in hepatocellular carcinoma: evaluation of early efficacy, pharmacokinetics, and pharmacodynamics. *Clin Cancer Res* 2011; **17**: 6914-6923 [PMID: 21831954 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-11-0793]

109   **Park JW**, Finn RS, Kim JS, Karwal M, Li RK, Ismail F, Thomas M, Harris R, Baudelet C, Walters I, Raoul JL. Phase II, open-label study of brivanib as first-line therapy in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma. *Clin Cancer Res* 2011; **17**: 1973-1983 [PMID: 21349999 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-10-2011]

110   **Finn RS**, Kang YK, Mulcahy M, Polite BN, Lim HY, Walters I, Baudelet C, Manekas D, Park JW. Phase II, open-label study of brivanib as second-line therapy in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma. *Clin Cancer Res* 2012; **18**: 2090-2098 [PMID: 22238246 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-11-1991]

111   **Johnson PJ,** Qin S, Park JW, Poon RTP, Raoul JL, Philip PA, Hsu CH, Hu TH, Heo J, Xu J, Lu L, Chao Y, Boucher E, Han KH, Paik SW, Robles-Aviña J, Kudo M, Yan L, Sobhonslidsuk A, Komov D, Decaens T, Tak WY, Jeng LB, Liu D, Ezzeddine R, Walters I, Cheng AL. Brivanib Versus Sorafenib As First-Line Therapy in Patients With Unresectable, Advanced Hepatocellular Carcinoma: Results From the Randomized Phase III BRISK-FL Study. *J Clin Oncol* 2013; **31**: 3517-3524 [DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2012.48.440]

112   **Kudo M**, Han G, Finn RS, Poon RT, Blanc JF, Yan L, Yang J, Lu L, Tak WY, Yu X, Lee JH, Lin SM, Wu C, Tanwandee T, Shao G, Walters IB, Dela Cruz C, Poulart V, Wang JH. Brivanib as adjuvant therapy to transarterial chemoembolization in patients with hepatocellular carcinoma: A randomized phase III trial. *Hepatology* 2014; **60**: 1697-1707 [PMID: 24996197 DOI: 10.1002/hep.27290]

113   **Escudier B**, Gore M. Axitinib for the management of metastatic renal cell carcinoma. *Drugs R D* 2011; **11**: 113-126 [PMID: 21679004 DOI: 10.2165/11591240-000000000-00000]

114   **Deshpande HA**, Gettinger S, Sosa JA. Axitinib: The evidence of its potential in the treatment of advanced thyroid cancer. *Core Evid* 2009; **4**: 43-48 [PMID: 20694064]

115   **Toh H**, Chen P, Carr BI, Knox JJ, Gill S, Qian J, Qin Q, Ricker JL, Carlson DM, Yong W. Linifanib phase II trial in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC). *J Clin Oncol* 2010; **28** (15s): Abstract 4038

116   **Kanai F**, Yoshida H, Tateishi R, Sato S, Kawabe T, Obi S, Kondo Y, Taniguchi M, Tagawa K, Ikeda M, Morizane C, Okusaka T, Arioka H, Shiina S, Omata M. A phase I/II trial of the oral antiangiogenic agent TSU-68 in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma. *Cancer Chemother Pharmacol* 2011; **67**: 315-324 [PMID: 20390419 DOI: 10.1007/s00280-010-1320-2]

117   **Huynh H**, Ong R, Soo KC. Foretinib demonstrates anti-tumor activity and improves overall survival in preclinical models of hepatocellular carcinoma. *Angiogenesis* 2012; **15**: 59-70 [PMID: 22187171 DOI: 10.1007/s10456-011-9243-z]

118   **Huynh H**, Chow PK, Tai WM, Choo SP, Chung AY, Ong HS, Soo KC, Ong R, Linnartz R, Shi MM. Dovitinib demonstrates antitumor and antimetastatic activities in xenograft models of hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Hepatol* 2012; **56**: 595-601 [PMID: 22027573 DOI: 10.1016/j.hep.2011.09.017]

119   **Zhu AX**, Finn RS, Mulcahy MF, Gurlter JS, Sun W, Schwartz JD, Rojas P, Dontabhaktuni A, Youssoufian H, Stuart KE. A phase II study of ramucirumab as first-line monotherapy in patients with advanced hepatocellualr carcinoma. *J Clin Oncol* 2010; **28** (15s): Abstract 4083

120   **Derynck R**, Goeddel DV, Ullrich A, Gutterman JU, Williams RD, Bringman TS, Berger WH. Synthesis of messenger RNAs for transforming growth factors alpha and beta and the epidermal growth factor receptor by human tumors. *Cancer Res* 1987; **47**: 707-712 [PMID: 3467839]

121   **Fausto N**. Protooncogenes and growth factors associated with normal and abnormal liver growth. *Dig Dis Sci* 1991; **36**: 653-658 [PMID: 2022167]

122   **Fausto N**, Mead JE, Gruppuso PA, Castilla A, Jakowlew SB. Effects of TGF-beta s in the liver: cell proliferation and fibrogenesis. *Ciba Found Symp* 1991; **157**: 165-174; discussion 174-177 [PMID: 1649033]

123   **Kaneko Y**, Shibuya M, Nakayama T, Hayashida N, Toda G, Endo Y, Oka H, Oda T. Hypomethylation of c-myc and epidermal growth factor receptor genes in human hepatocellular carcinoma and fetal liver. *Jpn J Cancer Res* 1985; **76**: 1136-1140 [PMID: 3005205]

124   **Byrne BJ**, Garst J. Epidermal growth factor receptor inhibitors and their role in non-small-cell lung cancer. *Curr Oncol Rep* 2005; **7**: 241-247 [PMID: 15946581]

125   **Hochster HS**, Haller DG, de Gramont A, Berlin JD, Philip PA, Moore MJ, Ajani JA. Consensus report of the international society of gastrointestinal oncology on therapeutic progress in advanced pancreatic cancer. *Cancer* 2006; **107**: 676-685 [PMID: 16847885]

126   **Hsu C**, Huang CL, Hsu HC, Lee PH, Wang SJ, Cheng AL. HER-2/neu overexpression is rare in hepatocellular carcinoma and not predictive of anti-HER-2/neu regulation of cell growth and chemosensitivity. *Cancer* 2002; **94**: 415-420 [PMID: 11900227]

127   **Huang BJ**, Huang TJ, Liang QW, Huang CW, Fang Y. [Quantitative detection of HER-2 oncogene amplification in primary hepatocellular carcinoma using dual FISH technique and its clinical significance]. *Yi Chuan Xue Bao* 2001; **28**: 793-800 [PMID: 11582736]

128   **Thomas MB**, Chadha R, Glover K, Wang X, Morris J, Brown T, Rashid A, Dancey J, Abbruzzese JL. Phase 2 study of erlotinib in patients with unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma. *Cancer* 2007; **110**: 1059-1067 [PMID: 17623837]

129   **Philip PA**, Mahoney MR, Allmer C, Thomas J, Pitot HC, Kim G, Donehower RC, Fitch T, Picus J, Erlichman C. Phase II study of Erlotinib (OSI-774) in patients with advanced hepatocellular cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2005; **23**: 6657-6663 [PMID: 16170173]

130   **Thomas MB**, Morris JS, Chadha R, Iwasaki M, Kaur H, Lin E, Kaseb A, Glover K, Davila M, Abbruzzese J. Phase II trial of the combination of bevacizumab and erlotinib in patients who have advanced hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Clin Oncol* 2009; **27**: 843-850 [PMID: 19139433 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2008.18.3301]

131   **Burris HA**, Hurwitz HI, Dees EC, Dowlati A, Blackwell KL, O'Neil B, Marcom PK, Ellis MJ, Overmoyer B, Jones SF, Harris JL,

Smith DA, Koch KM, Stead A, Mangum S, Spector NL. Phase I safety, pharmacokinetics, and clinical activity study of lapatinib (GW572016), a reversible dual inhibitor of epidermal growth factor receptor tyrosine kinases, in heavily pretreated patients with metastatic carcinomas. *J Clin Oncol* 2005; **23**: 5305-5313 [PMID: 15955900]

132   **Gomez HL**, Doval DC, Chavez MA, Ang PC, Aziz Z, Nag S, Ng C, Franco SX, Chow LW, Arbushites MC, Casey MA, Berger MS, Stein SH, Sledge GW. Efficacy and safety of lapatinib as first-line therapy for ErbB2-amplified locally advanced or metastatic breast cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2008; **26**: 2999-3005 [PMID: 18458039 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2007.14.0590]

133   **Bekaii-Saab T**, Markowitz J, Prescott N, Sadee W, Heerema N, Wei L, Dai Z, Papp A, Campbell A, Culler K, Balint C, O'Neil B, Lee RM, Zalupski M, Dancey J, Chen H, Grever M, Eng C, Villalona-Calero M. A multi-institutional phase II study of the efficacy and tolerability of lapatinib in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinomas. *Clin Cancer Res* 2009; **15**: 5895-5901 [PMID: 19737952 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-09-0465]

134   **Ramanathan RK**, Belani CP, Singh DA, Tanaka M, Lenz HJ, Yen Y, Kindler HL, Iqbal S, Longmate J, Mack PC, Lurje G, Gandour-Edwards R, Dancey J, Gandara DR. A phase II study of lapatinib in patients with advanced biliary tree and hepatocellular cancer. *Cancer Chemother Pharmacol* 2009; **64**: 777-783 [PMID: 19169683 DOI: 10.1007/s00280-009-0927-7]

135   **Schiffer E**, Housset C, Cacheux W, Wendum D, Desbois-Mouthon C, Rey C, Clergue F, Poupon R, Barbu V, Rosmorduc O. Gefitinib, an EGFR inhibitor, prevents hepatocellular carcinoma development in the rat liver with cirrhosis. *Hepatology* 2005; **41**: 307-314 [PMID: 15660382]

136   **O'Dwyer PJ**, Giantonio BJ, Levy DE, Kauh JS, Fitzgerald DB, Benson AB. Gefitinib in advanced unresectable hepátocellular carcinoma: results from the Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group's Study E1203. *J Clin Oncol* 2006; **24**: Abstract 4143

137   **Zhu AX**, Stuart K, Blaszkowsky LS, Muzikansky A, Reitberg DP, Clark JW, Enzinger PC, Bhargava P, Meyerhardt JA, Horgan K, Fuchs CS, Ryan DP. Phase 2 study of cetuximab in patients with advanced hepatocellular carcinoma. *Cancer* 2007; **110**: 581-589 [PMID: 17583545]

138   **Grünwald V**, Wilkens L, Gebel M, Greten TF, Kubicka S, Ganser A, Manns MP, Malek NP. A phase II open-label study of cetuximab in unresectable hepatocellular carcinoma: final results. *J Clin Oncol* 2007; **25**: Abstract 4598

139   **Sieghart W**, Fuereder T, Schmid K, Cejka D, Werzowa J, Wrba F, Wang X, Gruber D, Rasoul-Rockenschaub S, Peck-Radosavljevic M, Wacheck V. Mammalian target of rapamycin pathway activity in hepatocellular carcinomas of patients undergoing liver transplantation. *Transplantation* 2007; **83**: 425-432 [PMID: 17318075]

140   **Zhou L**, Huang Y, Li J, Wang Z. The mTOR pathway is associated with the poor prognosis of human hepatocellular carcinoma. *Med Oncol* 2010; **27**: 255-261 [PMID: 19301157 DOI: 10.1007/s12032-009-9201-4]

141   **Huynh H**, Chow KH, Soo KC, Toh HC, Choo SP, Foo KF, Poon D, Ngo VC, Tran E. RAD001 (everolimus) inhibits tumour growth in xenograft models of human hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Cell Mol Med* 2009; **13**: 1371-1380 [PMID: 18466352 DOI: 10.1111/j.1582-4934.2008.00364.x]

142   **Buontempo F**, Ersahin T, Missiroli S, Senturk S, Etro D, Ozturk M, Capitani S, Cetin-Atalay R, Neri ML. Inhibition of Akt signaling in hepatoma cells induces apoptotic cell death independent of Akt activation status. *Invest New Drugs* 2011; **29**: 1303-1313 [PMID: 20628892 DOI: 10.1007/s10637-010-9486-3]

143   **Leng J**, Han C, Demetris AJ, Michalopoulos GK, Wu T. Cyclooxygenase-2 promotes hepatocellular carcinoma cell growth through Akt activation: evidence for Akt inhibition in celecoxib-induced apoptosis. *Hepatology* 2003; **38**: 756-768 [PMID: 12939602 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2003.50380]

144   **Morard I**, Dumortier J, Spahr L, Hadengue A, Majno P, Morel P, Mentha G, Giostra E. Conversion to sirolimus-based immun-osuppression in maintenance liver transplantation patients. *Liver Transpl* 2007; **13**: 658-664 [PMID: 17457887 DOI: 10.1002/lt.21116]

145   **Zhu AX**, Abrams TA, Miksad R, Blaszkowsky LS, Meyerhardt JA, Zheng H, Muzikansky A, Clark JW, Kwak EL, Schrag D, Jors KR, Fuchs CS, Iafrate AJ, Borger DR, Ryan DP. Phase 1/2 study of everolimus in advanced hepatocellular carcinoma. *Cancer* 2011; **117**: 5094-5102 [PMID: 21538343 DOI: 10.002/cncr.26165]

146   **Cao J**, Liu Y, Jia L, Zhou HM, Kong Y, Yang G, Jiang LP, Li QJ, Zhong LF. Curcumin induces apoptosis through mitochondrial hyperpolarization and mtDNA damage in human hepatoma G2 cells. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2007; **43**: 968-975 [PMID: 17697941 DOI: 10.1016/j.freeradbiomed.2007.06.006]

147   **Wang WH**, Chiang IT, Ding K, Chung JG, Lin WJ, Lin SS, Hwang JJ. Curcumin-induced apoptosis in human hepatocellular carcinoma j5 cells: critical role of ca(+2)-dependent pathway. *Evid Based Complement Alternat Med* 2012; **2012**: 512907 [PMID: 22606206 DOI: 10.1155/2012/512907]

148   **Chintana P**. Role of curcumin on tumor angiogenesis in hepato-cellular carcinoma. *Naresuan University J* 2008; **16**: 239-254

149   **Liu CJ**, Chang J, Lee PH, Lin DY, Wu CC, Jeng LB, Lin YJ, Mok KT, Lee WC, Yeh HZ, Ho MC, Yang SS, Yang MD, Yu MC, Hu RH, Peng CY, Lai KL, Chang SS, Chen PJ. Adjuvant heparanase inhibitor PI-88 therapy for hepatocellular carcinoma recurrence. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 11384-11393 [PMID: 25170226 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i32.11384]

150   **Kasuya T**, Kuroda S. Nanoparticles for human liver-specific drug and gene delivery systems: in vitro and in vivo advances. *Expert Opin Drug Deliv* 2009; **6**: 39-52 [PMID: 19236207 DOI: 10.1517/17425240802622096]

151   **Wu J**, Nantz MH, Zern MA. Targeting hepatocytes for drug and gene delivery: emerging novel approaches and applications. *Front Biosci* 2002; **7**: d717-d725 [PMID: 11861224]

152   **Xu Z**, Chen L, Gu W, Gao Y, Lin L, Zhang Z, Xi Y, Li Y. The performance of docetaxel-loaded solid lipid nanoparticles targeted to hepatocellular carcinoma. *Biomaterials* 2009; **30**: 226-232 [PMID: 18851881 DOI: 10.1016/j.biomaterials.2008.09.014]

153   **Zhou X**, Zhang M, Yung B, Li H, Zhou C, Lee LJ, Lee RJ. Lactosylated liposomes for targeted delivery of doxorubicin to hepatocellular carcinoma. *Int J Nanomedicine* 2012; **7**: 5465-5474 [PMID: 23093902 DOI: 10.2147/IJN.S33965]

154   **Wang S**, Xu H, Xu J, Zhang Y, Liu Y, Deng YH, Chen D. Sustained liver targeting and improved antiproliferative effect of doxorubicin liposomes modified with galactosylated lipid and PEG-lipid. *AAPS PharmSciTech* 2010; **11**: 870-877 [PMID: 20490957 DOI: 10.1208/s12249.010-9450-8]

155   **Bei YY**, Yuan ZQ, Zhang L, Zhou XF, Chen WL, Xia P, Liu Y, You BG, Hu XJ, Zhu QL, Zhang CG, Zhang XN, Jin Y. Novel self-assembled micelles based on palmitoyl-trimethyl-chitosan for efficient delivery of harmine to liver cancer. *Expert Opin Drug Deliv* 2014; **11**: 843-854 [PMID: 24655139 DOI: 10.1517/17425247-2014.893292]

156   **Niu C**, Sun Q, Zhou J, Cheng D, Hong G. Folate-functionalized polymeric micelles based on biodegradable PEG-PDLLA as a hepatic carcinoma-targeting delivery system. *Asian Pac J Cancer Prev* 2011; **12**: 1995-1999 [PMID: 22292640]

157   **Cuestas ML**, Glisoni RJ, Mathet VL, Sosnik A. Lactosylated poly/ethylene oxide)-poly(propylene oxide) block copolymers for potential active targeting: synthesis and physicochemical and self-aggregation characterization. *J Nanopart Res* 2013; **15**: 1389-1410 [DOI: 10.1007/s1151-012-1389-0]

158   **Cheng M**, Chen H, Wang Y, Xu H, He B, Han J, Zhang Z. Optimized synthesis of glycyrrhetinic acid-modified chitosan 5-fluorouracil nanoparticles and their characteristics. *Int J Nanomedicine* 2014; **9**: 695-710 [PMID: 24493926 DOI: 10.2147/IJN.S55255]

159   **Zhu XL**, Du YZ, Yu RS, Liu P, Shi D, Chen Y, Wang Y, Huang FF. Galactosylated chitosan oligosaccharide nanoparticles for hepatocellular carcinoma cell-targeted delivery of adenosine triphosphate. *Int J Mol Sci* 2013; **14**: 15755-15766 [PMID:

23899789 DOI: 10.3390/ijm5140815755]

160 **Medina SH**, Tiruchinapally G, Chevliakov MV, Durmaz YY, Stender RN, Ensminger WD, Shewach DS, Elsayed ME. Targeting hepatic cancer cells with pegylated dendrimers displaying N-acetylgalactosamine and SP94 peptide ligands. *Adv Healthc Mater* 2013; **2**: 1337-1350 [PMID: 23554387 DOI: 10.1002/adhm.201200406]

161 **Arima H**, Yamashita S, Mori Y, Hayashi Y, Motoyama K, Hattori K, Takeuchi T, Jono H, Ando Y, Hirayama F, Uekama K. In vitro and in vivo gene delivery mediated by Lactosylated dendrimer/alpha-cyclodextrin conjugates (G2) into hepatocytes. *J Control Release* 2010; **146**: 106-117 [PMID: 20678990 DOI: 10.1016/j.jconrel.2010.05.030]

162 **Liao YT**, Liu CH, Yu J, Wu KC. Liver cancer cells: targeting and prolonged-release drug carriers consisting of mesoporous silica nanoparticles and alginate microspheres. *Int J Nanomedicine* 2014; **9**: 2767-2778 [PMID: 24940057 DOI: 10.2147/IJN.S60171]

163 **Kang JH**, Oishi J, Kim JH, Ijuin M, Toita R, Jun B, Asai D, Mori T, Niidome T, Tanizawa K, Kuroda S, Katayama Y. Hepatoma-targeted gene delivery using a tumor cell-specific gene regulation system combined with a human liver cell-specific bionanocapsule. *Nanomedicine* 2010; **6**: 583-589 [PMID: 20138242 DOI: 10.1016/j.nano.2010.01.007]

164 **Hoffmann K**, Xiao Z, Franz C, Mohr E, Serba S, Büchler MW, Schemmer P. Involvement of the epidermal growth factor receptor in the modulation of multidrug resistance in human hepatocellular carcinoma cells in vitro. *Cancer Cell Int* 2011; **11**: 40 [PMID: 22088142 DOI: 10.1186/1475-2867-11-40]

165 **Schinkel AH**, Jonker JW. Mammalian drug efflux transporters of the ATP binding cassette (ABC) family: an overview. *Adv Drug Deliv Rev* 2003; **55**: 3-29 [PMID: 12535572 DOI: 10.1016/S0169-409X(02)00169-2]

166 **Moghimi SM**, Hunter AC. Poloxamers and poloxamines in nanoparticle engineering and experimental medicine. *Trends Biotechnol* 2000; **18**: 412-420 [PMID: 10998507 DOI: 10.1016/S0167-7799(00)01485-2]

167 **Sharma AK**, Zhang L, Li S, Kelly DL, Alakhov VY, Batrakova EV, Kabanov AV. Prevention of MDR development in leukemia cells by micelle-forming polymeric surfactant. *J Control Release* 2008; **131**: 220-227 [PMID: 18722489 DOI: 10.1016/j.jconrel.2008.07.031]

168 **Cuestas ML**, Sosnik A, Mathet VL. Poloxamines display a multiple inhibitory activity of ATP-binding cassette (ABC) transporters in cancer cell lines. *Mol Pharm* 2011; **8**: 1152-1164 [PMID: 21591727 DOI: 10.1021/mp2000132]

169 **Cuestas ML**, Castillo AI, Sosnik A, Mathet VL. Downregulation of mdr1 and abcg2 genes is a mechanism of inhibition of efflux pumps mediated by polymeric amphiphiles. *Bioorg Med Chem Lett* 2012; **22**: 6577-6579 [PMID: 23031592 DOI: 10.1016/j.bmcl.2012.09.012]

170 **Ma L**, Liu J, Shen J, Liu L, Wu J, Li W, Luo J, Chen Q, Qian C. Expression of miR-122 mediated by adenoviral vector induces apoptosis and cell cycle arrest of cancer cells. *Cancer Biol Ther* 2010; **9**: 554-561 [PMID: 20150764 DOI: 10.4161/cbt.9.7.11267]

171 **Kota J**, Chivukula RR, O'Donnell KA, Wentzel EA, Montgomery CL, Hwang HW, Chang TC, Vivekanandan P, Torbenson M, Clark KR, Mendell JR, Mendell JT. Therapeutic microRNA delivery suppresses tumorigenesis in a murine liver cancer model. *Cell* 2009; **137**: 1005-1017 [PMID: 19524505 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2009.04.021]

172 **Anestopoulos I**, Voulgaridou GP, Georgakilas AG, Franco R, Pappa A, Panayiotidis MI. Epigenetic therapy as a novel approach in hepatocellular carcinoma. *Pharmacol Ther* 2015; **145**: 103-119 [PMID: 25205159 DOI: 10.1016/j.pharmthera.2014.09.005]

173 **Mikhail S**, Cosgrove D, Zeidan A. Hepatocellular carcinoma: systemic therapies and future perspectives. *Expert Rev Anticancer Ther* 2014; **14**: 1205-1218 [PMID: 25199765 DOI: 10.1586/14737140.2014.949246]

174 **Ali MY**, Grimm CF, Ritter M, Mohr L, Allgaier HP, Weth R, Bocher WO, Endrulat K, Blum HE, Geissler M. Activation of dendritic cells by local ablation of hepatocellular carcinoma. *J Hepatol* 2005; **43**: 817-822 [PMID: 16087270 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2005.04.016]

175 **Espelt MV**, Croci DO, Bacigalupo ML, Carabias P, Manzi M, Elola MT, Muñoz MC, Dominici FP, Wolfenstein-Todel C, Rabinovich GA, Troncoso MF. Novel roles of galectin-1 in hepatocellular carcinoma cell adhesion, polarization, and in vivo tumor growth. *Hepatology* 2011; **53**: 2097-2106 [PMID: 21391228 DOI: 10.1002/hep.24294]

176 **Cerliani JP**, Dalotto-Moreno T, Compagno D, Dergan-Dylon LS, Laderach DJ, Gentilini L, Croci DO, Méndez-Huergo SP, Toscano MA, Salatino M, Rabinovich GA. Study of galectins in tumor immunity: strategies and methods. *Methods Mol Biol* 2015; **1207**: 249-268 [PMID: 25253145 DOI: 10.1007/978-1-4939-1396-1_16]

177 **Astorgues-Xerri L**, Riveiro ME, Tijeras-Raballand A, Serova M, Rabinovich GA, Bieche I, Vidaud M, de Gramont A, Martinet M, Cvitkovic E, Faivre S, Raymond E. OTX008, a selective small-molecule inhibitor of galectin-1, downregulates cancer cell proliferation, invasion and tumour angiogenesis. *Eur J Cancer* 2014; **50**: 2463-2477 [PMID: 25042151 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejca.2014.06.015]

178 **Xu Y**, Xia F, Ma L, Shan J, Shen J, Yang Z, Liu J, Cui Y, Bian X, Bie P, Qian C. MicroRNA-122 sensitizes HCC cancer cells to adriamycin and vincristine through modulating expression of MDR and inducing cell cycle arrest. *Cancer Lett* 2011; **310**: 160-169 [PMID: 21802841 DOI: 10.1016/j.canlet.2011.06.027]

179 **Xiang Q**, Chen W, Ren M, Wang J, Zhang H, Deng DY, Zhang L, Shang C, Chen Y. Cabozantinib suppresses tumor growth and metastasis in hepatocellular carcinoma by a dual blockade of VEGFR2 and MET. *Clin Cancer Res* 2014; **20**: 2959-2970 [PMID: 24700742 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-13-2620]

180 **Santoro A**, Rimassa L, Borbath I, Daniele B, Salvagni S, Van Laethem JL, Van Vlierberghe H, Trojan J, Kolligs FT, Weiss A, Miles S, Gasbarrini A, Lencioni M, Cicalese L, Sherman M, Gridelli C, Buggisch P, Gerken G, Schmid RM, Boni C, Personeni N, Hassoun Z, Abbadessa G, Schwartz B, Von Roemeling R, Lamar ME, Chen Y, Porta C. Tivantinib for second-line treatment of advanced hepatocellular carcinoma: a randomised, placebo-controlled phase 2 study. *Lancet Oncol* 2013; **14**: 55-63 [PMID: 23182627 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(12)70490-4]

181 **Alakhova DY**, Kabanov AV. Pluronics and MDR reversal: an update. *Mol Pharm* 2014; **11**: 2566-2578 [PMID: 24950236]

Drug therapy for Parkinson's disease: An update

Omar ME Abdel-Salam

Omar ME Abdel-Salam, Department of Toxicology and Narcotics, Medical Division, National Research Centre, Cairo 12311, Egypt
Author contributions: Abdel-Salam OME solely contributed to this paper.
Conflict-of-interest: The author declare that there are no conflicting of interest.
Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/
Correspondence to: Omar ME Abdel-Salam, MD, PhD, Department of Toxicology and Narcotics, Medical Division, National Research Centre, Tahrir Street, Cairo 12311, Egypt. omasalam@hotmail.com
Telephone: +2-02-33335996
Fax: +2-02-33370931
Received: June 22, 2014
Peer-review started: June 23, 2014
First decision: July 10, 2014
Revised: January 26, 2015
Accepted: February 9, 2015
Article in press: February 11, 2015
Published online: March 9, 2015

Abstract

Parkinson's disease (PD) is the most common neuro-degenerative movement disorder, affecting about 1% of the population above the age of 65. PD is characterized by a selective degeneration of the dopaminergic neurons of the substantia nigra pars compacta. This results in a marked loss of striatal dopamine and the development of the characteristic features of the disease, i.e., bradykinesia, rest tremor, rigidity, gait abnormalities and postural instability. Other types of neurons/neurotransmitters are also involved in PD, including cholinergic, serotonergic, glutamatergic, adenosine, and GABAergic neurotransmission which might have relevance to the motor, non-motor, neuro-psychiatric and cognitive disturbances that occur in the course of the disease. The treatment of PD relies on replacement therapy with levodopa (L-dopa), the precursor of dopamine, in combination with a peripheral decarboxylase inhibitor (carbidopa or benserazide). The effect of L-dopa, however, declines over time together with the development of motor complications especially dyskinesia in a significant proportion of patients within 5 years of therapy. Other drugs include dopamine-receptor-agonists, catechol-O-methyltransferase inhibitors, monoamine oxidase type B (MAO-B) inhibitors, anticholinergics and adjuvant therapy with the antiviral drug and the N-methyl-D-aspartate glutamate receptor antagonist amantadine. Although, these medications can result in substantial improvements in parkinsonian symptoms, especially during the early stages of the disease, they are often not successful in advanced disease. Moreover, dopaminergic cell death continues over time, emphasizing the need for neuroprotective or neuroregenerative therapies. In recent years, research has focused on non-dopaminergic approach such as the use of A_{2A} receptor antagonists: istradefylline and preladenant or the calcium channel antagonist isradipine. Safinamide is a selective and reversible inhibitor of MAO-B, a glutamate receptor inhibitor as well as sodium and calcium channel blocker. Minocycline and pioglitazone are other agents which have been shown to prevent dopaminergic nigral cell loss in animal models of PD. There is also an evidence to suggest a benefit from iron chelation therapy with deferiprone and from the use of antioxidants or mitochondrial function enhancers such as creatine, alpha-lipoic acid, l-carnitine, and coenzyme Q10.

Key words: Parkinson disease; Levodopa; Dopaminergic drugs; Neuroprotective agents; Non-dopaminergic drugs; Mitochondrial enhancers

Core tip: Parkinson's disease (PD) is a neurodegenerative disorder for which currently there is no cure. The advent

of many therapies such as levodopa (L-dopa), dopamine-receptor-agonists, monoamine oxidase type B inhibitors, and catechol-O-methyltransferase inhibitors helped much to ease the life and to improve health-related quality of life of PD patients. Among these drugs, L-dopa remains the most effective agent for treatment of motor symptoms in PD. These agents provide symptomatic relief for motor symptoms but there is no evidence that these could alter the natural course of the disease and prevent the progressive dopaminergic neuronal loss. There is, however, encouraging data that suggest a benefit from iron chelation therapy with deferiprone and from the use of antioxidants or mitochondrial function enhancers in preventing or delaying the progression of PD.

INTRODUCTION

Idiopathic Parkinson's disease (PD) is a progressive neurodegenerative disease characterized by bradykinesia, tremor, rigidity and impaired postural reflexes. It is the 2nd most common neurodegenerative disorder after Alzheimer's disease. It is estimated to affect approximately 1% of the population over 65 years of age[1,2]. The main neuropathology in PD is the progressive loss of nigrostriatal dopaminergic neurons and consequent striatal dopamine depletion[3]. When there is a loss of about 60%-70% of neurons of the substantia nigra pars compacta (SNc) and the striatal dopamine content is reduced by 70%-80%, symptoms start to appear[4,5]. The definitive diagnosis of PD is based on post-mortem histopathological findings of degeneration and loss of pigmented neurons of the SNc and the presence of intracytoplasmic eosinophilic inclusions bodies (Lewy bodies) and dystrophic neurites (Lewy neurites) present in the remaining dopaminergic neurons of the substantia nigra. The major compound of Lewy bodies is aggregated forms of the normally presynaptically located protein α-synuclein[6]. Abnormal signaling in PD is not confined to nigrostriatal dopaminergic pathwaysrestricted. Other types of neurons/neurotransmitters including cholinergic, serotonergic, glutamatergic, adenosine, and GABAergic neurotransmission are also involved in PD. Alterations in these neurotransmitter systems contributes to the development motor, non-motor, neuropsychiatric and cognitive disturbances that occur in the course of the disease and are possible targets for drug therapy[7,8].

PD is essentially a sporadic disorder, commonly referred to as idiopathic PD, while a minority of cases is familial (approximately 5%)[9]. These rare familial forms of PD are usually of early onset in contrast to the late-onset idiopathic PD. The past few years have witnessed the identification of distinct genetic loci responsible for rare Mendelian forms of PD and both autosomal dominant and recessive patterns of inheritance have been described. The rare genetic forms have helped in understanding the molecular mechanisms involved in PD including protein misfolding and aggregation, mitochondrial defects, and oxidative stress[10]. The cause of idiopathic PD is not yet fully understood, but there is accumulating evidence to support a role for environmental toxin(s) and a genetic background[11,12]. PD can also be caused by drugs especially neuroleptic agents and dopamine-blocking drugs, toxins (manganese, carbon dioxide), head trauma, tumours of basal ganglia. This is termed secondary parkinsonism[13-15].

CURRENT PHARMACOLOGIC THERAPY FOR PARKINSON DISEASE

Classic drugs

Levodopa: The main neurochemical deficit in PD is the progressive loss of dopamine producing neurons in the SNc and subsequent striatal dopamine depletion[16]. This deficit can be partially compensated for by the administration of levodopa (L-dopa) (L-3,4-dihydroxyphenylalanine), the precursor of dopamine (Figure 1). Following oral ingestion, L-dopa is actively transported from the upper small intestine into the circulation by a mechanism specific for large, neutral L-amino acids[17]. L-dopa is subject to high presystemic metabolism to dopamine in the gut by the enzyme L-amino acid decarboxylase, with only approximately 30% of an L-dopa dose reaching the systemic circulation[18]. The small fraction of the drug that reaches the brain after active transport across the blood brain barrier is rapidly converted to dopamine by aromatic L-amino acid decarboxylase. In order to inhibit conversion of L-dopa to dopamine outside the central nervous system, thus limiting systemic side effects, it is combined with a peripherally acting decarboxylase inhibitor (carbidopa or benserazide)[17]. The combined administration of L-dopa with either carbidopa (L-dopa/carbidopa at the dose ratio of 10/1 and 4/1) or benserazide (L-dopa/benserazide 4/1), have nearly tripled L-dopa oral bioavailability, markedly reducing both the required L-dopa therapeutic dose and severity of dopamine-mediated gastrointestinal and cardiovascular side-effects[18]. Ever since its introduction in 1960s, L-dopa has remained the most effective treatment in controlling the symptoms of PD and is considered the gold standard regarding the symptomatic treatment of patients with PD[19]. Compared with other available dopaminergic therapies, dopamine replacement with L-dopa is associated with the greatest improvement in motor function, as assessed by reduced scores in the Unified PD Rating Scale (UPDRS). L-dopa is the preferred therapy in patients above 65 years of age, while those below 65 are better treated with dopamine agonists[20].

Figure 1 Site of action of antiparkinsonian drugs. DA: Dopamine; DOPAC: Dihydroxyphenylacetic acid; MAO-B: Monoamine oxidase-B; L-dopa: Levodopa; COMT: Catechol-O-methyltransferase.

When used as an initial monotherapy, L-dopa delayed the need for supplementary treatment and was well tolerated compared with dopamine agonists; 50% of the patients starting L-dopa received supplementary therapy with-in 3.6 years compared with 2.3 years in case of dopamine agonist monotherapy[21].

However, as the disease progresses, long-term use of L-dopa leads to the development of motor response complications, particularly "wearing-off", "on-off", dyskinesias and dystonias. These L-dopa-associated motor problems result in marked disability and decreased quality of life. End-of-dose or wearing-of phenomenon is the reappearance of motor symptoms before the next scheduled dose of L-dopa. Wearing-of usually emerges within 1-3 years of initiation of levodopa treatment[20-25]. Patients may also report a "delayed-on" that is unusual delay between a given dose of levodopa and the start of its effects. The phenomenon of "no-on" is the failure of a given dose of levodopa to elicit any response. These manifestations are related to variations in gastrointestinal transport and absorption of levodopa. On-off motor oscillations on the other hand are characterized by sudden and unpredictable shifts between functioning "on" and non-functioning "off" states[26].

Under physiological conditions, stimulation of dopamine receptors occurs in a continuous fashion. This contrasts with the effect of L-dopa which because of its short half-life of 90 min, results fluctuations in plasma levodopa levels and in pulsatile, rather than continuous stimulation of striatal dopamine receptors. It is thought that the ability of striatal neurons to take up L-dopa and store dopamine for continuous release is lost in advanced disease because of the diminished number of available neurons. It is suggested that this non-physiological pulsatile stimulation of dopamine receptors, might trigger a dysregulation of many neuro-transmitter systems within the basal ganglia and is the cause for the motor fluctuations and dyskinesias[22,25,27].

Reducing "off" time can be achieved by increasing the dosage of L-dopa. Increase in L-dopa dosage, however, can be associated with hyperkinetic movements or dyskinesias. The latter are involuntary movements other than tremor and most commonly consists of chorea which represent a peak-dose effect when L-dopa brain concentration is highest and is caused by excessive levels of dopamine ("peak-dose dyskinesia")[28]. Dyskinesia can be alleviated through reducing the dose of L-dopa, but only at the expense of worsening parkinsonism and an increase in the number of "off" episodes[22-24]. The risk of developing dyskinesia or wearing-off was found to be closely linked to L-dopa dose. Young age at onset, higher L-dopa dose, low body weight, female gender, and more severe UPDRS Part II were among factors predictive of dyskinesia[29]. The approach to manage wearing-off and dyskinesia involves the addition of drugs which would permit more continuous dopaminergic stimulation, such as dopamine agonists, catechol-O-methyl transferase inhibitors, and monoamine oxidase type B (MAO-B) inhibitors, controlled-release formulation of L-dopa, transdermal delivery (rotigotine), infusion therapies (intravenous L-dopa, subcutaneous application of apomorphine and lisuride, duodenal infusion of L-dopa)[23,24,30] (Figure 2).

One therapeutic modality involves the use of L-dopa-carbidopa intestinal gel delivered continuously through an intrajejunal percutaneous gastrostomy tube. This form of therapy has been proved successful in controlling motor symptoms in advanced disease with fluctuating symptoms unresponsive to conventional oral treatment[31,32]. This treatment reduced "off" time and increased "on" time without troublesome dyskinesia at week 12 compared to baseline[31]. Improved motor complications and improvement in quality of life, autonomy and clinical global status have been reported after long-term treatment (over 7 years) with L-dopa/

Figure 2 Drugs used to treat Parkinson's disease. L-dopa: Levodopa; PD: Parkinson's disease; MAO-B: Monoamine oxidase type B; COMT: Catechol-O-methyltransferase.

carbidopa intestinal gel[32]. It has also been shown that in advanced PD patients, continuous intrajejunal L-dopa-carbidopa intestinal gel infusion maintained stable plasma L-dopa levels with minimal degree of fluctuation in L-dopa, 3-OMD, and carbidopa plasma concentrations during 2-16 h of infusion, thereby, providing continuous dopaminergic stimulation[33]. In a randomized, double-blind trial in adults aged ≥ 30 years with advanced PD and motor complications, the intestinal gel was more effective in decreasing "off" time and in increasing "on" time without troublesome dyskinesia when compared with immediate-release oral L-dopa-carbidopa[34]. L-dopa-carbidopa intestinal gel is not without complications. The technique involves an invasive procedure with attendant surgical and postsurgical complications. There are also problems related to the pump and tube, e.g., dislocation and kinking of the intestinal tube, abdominal pain. Other complications are vitamin deficiency and polyneuropathies[31,32,35]. Subacute axonal neuropathy[36] and refractory seizures and a complex partial status epilepticus[37] likely to be due to vitamin B6 and/or vitamin B12 deficiency have been described under L-dopa-carbidopa intestinal gel infusion. Studies reported increased prevalence of neuropathy in chronic L-dopa treated patients and that cumulative levodopa exposure was significantly and positively associated with the severity of peripheral neuropathy. The cause of neuropathy is not clear but elevated plasma homocysteine level methylmalonic acid and reduced vitamin B12 levels that occurs under high doses of orally administered or continuously infused levodopa/carbidopa might be involved[38,39]. Monitoring vitamin B12/B6 status before and after starting L-dopa-carbidopa intestinal gel infusion and careful observation for signs of peripheral neuropathy have been advised[40].

Dopamine-receptor-agonists: These agents exert their antiparkinsonian effects by acting directly on dopamine receptors, thereby, mimicking the endogenous neurotransmitter. Several dopamine agonists are available for the treatment of PD. These include the ergot derivatives bromocriptine, cabergoline, alpha-dihydroergocryptine, lisuride, pergolide, the non-ergot agonists pramipexole, ropinirole, rotigotine, piribedil as well as apomorphine[41]. The non-ergot group of drugs is currently the most frequently prescribed oral dopamine receptor agonists. These agents are indicated both as an initial monotherapy in early PD to delay the need for L-dopa and in combination with L-dopa in advanced disease, enabling patients to take lower doses of L-dopa, thereby reducing the frequency of L-dopa induced motor complications[42]. The addition of dopamine agonists allows around a 20%-30% reduction in the dose of L-dopa[41]. When used as an initial monotherapy, these agents are effective in controlling motor symptoms. Overtime, however, dopamine receptor agonists lose efficacy and after 3 years of treatment with agonist monotherapy, the number of patients remaining decreases to less than 50%. These patients will then require the addition of L-dopa, so as to achieve better control of their motor symptoms[43]. The rate of discontinuation of dopamine receptor agonists also appears to higher compared with L-dopa monotherapy (20% vs 1% over four years) (due to impulse control disorders, somnolence and light-headedness)[21].

The use of dopamine receptor agonists might have several benefits. First, their use early in the disease is likely to delay or reduce the incidence of dyskinesia,

Table 1 Currently available dopaminergic receptor agonists

Drug	D-receptor specificity	Dose range	Side effects
Ergot derivatives			
Bromocryptine	D2 receptor agonist with partial dopamine D1 antagonist activity	7.5-15 mg/d orally	Risk of developing valvular regurgitation (cumulative and dose-dependent)
Lisuride	D2 receptor agonist (also has a weak dopamine D1 antagonistic, serotonin 5-HT1A agonistic, and 5-HT2B receptor antagonist properties)	0.2-3 mg/d orally	Dry mouth, nausea, weakness, postural hypotension, and headache
Cabergoline	D1 and D2 receptor agonist	0.5-4 mg/d orally	Risk of developing moderate to severe valvular regurgitation
Non-ergot derivatives			
Piribedil	D2/D3 receptor agonist with alpha(2) antagonist properties	150-300 mg/d orally	
Rotigotine transdermal patch	D1, D2, and D3 receptor agonist	2-16 mg patch/d	Patch site reactions, nausea, vomiting, dry mouth, somnolence , peripheral edema, and dyskinesia
Ropinirole (immediate and extended release)	D2/D3 receptor agonist	4-24 mg/d orally	Nausea, dyspepsia, dizziness, back pain, headache, uncontrollable sleep attacks, orthostatic hypotension, leg oedema
Pramipexole (immediate and extended release)	D2/D3 receptor agonist	0.25 - 4.5/d orally (Extended release pramipexole is approved as monotherapy in early PD, as well as an adjunct therapy to levodopa in advanced PD	Somnolence, cognitive adverse events, fatigue, nausea, constipation, and peripheral oedema
Apomorphine	D1 and D2 receptor agonist (also stimulates serotonin and α-adrenergic receptors)	4 mg subcutaneously 20 mg continuously daily *via* a pump system	Local inflammation and granuloma at the subcutaneously infusion site Intravascular thrombotic complications secondary to apomorphine crystal accumulation after *iv* administration

iv: Intravenous.

dystonia, and motor fluctuations resulting from long-term L-dopa therapy, possibly due to better continued rather than pulsatile stimulation of postsynaptic dopamine receptors[44,45]. One recent study showed that an initial treatment with dopamine agonists resulted in 87% lower risk for dyskinesia compared with treatment with L-dopa[46]. Second, dopamine-receptor-agonists are not metabolized to active chemicals, do not produce toxic metabolites or lead to the cytotoxic free radical formation that might be associated with metabolism of dopamine[41,47]. Third, there is also evidence that dopamine-receptor-agonists might slow the progression of disease. Clinical imaging studies targeting dopamine function with by $[^{123}I]\beta$-CIT or $[^{18}F]$Dopa imaging suggested that the rate of loss of $[^{123}I]\beta$-CIT or $[^{18}F]$Dopa uptake in early PD patients treated with dopamine agonists is slower as compared with L-dopa[48]. Table 1 lists the currently available dopaminergic receptor agonists and their side effects.

Ergot derivatives
Bromocryptine: This is the earliest dopamine agonist in use which was introduced in the 1970s as adjunct therapy to L-dopa for PD patients with motor complications[49]. It is structurally related to dopamine and activates postsynaptic dopamine D2 receptors with partial dopamine D1 antagonist activity[50]. Compared with low-dose L-dopa, dyskinesia and dystonia were delayed by early use of bromocriptine, but end-of-dose

failure appeared at a similar time once L-dopa was added. The rate of disease progression, however, was similar whether treatment was initiated with L-dopa or bromocryptine[51]. There was no evidence of a long-term benefit or clinically relevant disease-modifying effect on initiating treatment with bromocryptine. The initially reduced frequency in motor complications was not sustained and motor disability or mortality was not reduced over the long term. Moreover, disability scores and physical functioning were better in the L-dopa than in the bromocriptine treatment group[52]. Patients on bromocriptine have the risk of developing valvular regurgitation which occurs in a cumulative dose-dependent manner[53].

Lisuride: The drug exerts its activity primarily at postsynaptic dopamine D2 receptor sites. It has also a weak dopamine D1 antagonistic and serotonin 5-HT1A agonistic effects[50] as well as 5-HT2B receptor antagonist properties[54]. Lisuride is short-acting with a plasma half-life of 1-3 h. In contrast to bromocriptine, cabergoline, and pergolide, the drug is not associated with fibrotic cardiac valvulopathy[54,55]. Transdermal delivery using lisuride patches has been shown to improve the motor changing rate in advanced PD patients with unpredictable on-off phenomena[56].

Cabergoline: Cabergoline has selective affinity for D2-like dopamine receptors. It has a long plasma

half-life of 65 h[41]. In early PD, initiating therapy with cabergoline improved motor disability and delayed the development of motor complications compared with L-dopa-treated patients[57]. A reduction in daytime sleepiness by 70% was reported following a fast switch-over from the currently used dopamine agonist to a single equivalent dose of cabergoline, administered at bedtime[58]. In patients with motor fluctuations and dyskinesia, cabergoline improved "off" or "on" hours, or both[59], improved "on" with dyskinesia', mean dystonia intensity, time spent in severe "off' condition, severity of "off" periods and allowed the reduction of L-dopa requirements[60]. Side effects of cabergoline include gastric upset, orthostatic hypotension, and ankle edema[59]. There were also reports of constrictive pericarditis, cardiac valvular regurgitation and pleuropulmonary disease (pleural effusion/pulmonary fibrosis)[59,61-63]. The ability of cabergoline (and bromocriptine) to cause fibrotic cardiac valvulopathies and consequent valvular regurgitation appears to be mediated through stimulation of valvular 5-HT(2B) serotonin receptors that might mediate mitogenesis and, in turn, the proliferation of fibroblasts[64,65]. Lisuride and non-ergot dopamine agonists are devoid of 5-HT(2B) agonistic activity and hence might not induce heart valve fibrosis[54,55].

Non-ergolinic dopamine receptor agonists

Piribedil: Piribedil [1-(3,4-methylenedioxybenzyl)]-4-[(2-pyrimidinyl)]piperazine is a D2/D3 receptor agonist with alpha(2) antagonist properties. This last property of piribedil might favorably influence motor function, cognition, mood and the integrity of dopaminergic neurons[66]. In early PD, the administration of piribedil (150-300 mg/d) improved UPDRS Ⅲ over a 7-mo period; the proportion of responders (UPDRS Ⅲ improvement > 30%) was significantly higher for piribedil (42%) than for placebo (14%)[67]. In PD patients insufficiently controlled by L-dopa alone, early combination of piribedil (150 mg) or bromocriptine (25 mg) with L-dopa resulted in similar long-term improvement of motor symptoms (UPDRS Ⅲ) over 12 mo. Piribedil-treated patients, however, required less L-dopa dose increase than those on bromocriptine[68]. In PD patients with motor fluctuations, piribedil improved motor UPDRS scores, and activities of daily living, increased the duration of effect of L-dopa and permitted the mean daily L-dopa dose to be decreased by 17%[69]. Piribedil can also be given as a short single infusion of at 2 to 16 mg to improve motor symptoms, including akinesia in PD patients with fluctuations[70]. The new sublingual formulation of piribedil at a single dose of 60 mg was superior to placebo in improving UPDRS Ⅲ and aborting "off" in patients with advanced PD[71]. In PD presenting with apathy following subthalamic nucleus stimulation, piribedil improved apathy by 46.6% as well as depression[72]. Side effects of piribedil include hallucinations, dyskinesias, dizziness[69], gastrointestinal

complaints[67] and sleep attacks[73].

Rotigotine: This dopamine D1, D2, and D3 receptor agonist is administered through a silicone-based transdermal patch designed for once-daily application. Steady-state plasma levels of rotigotine can be reached between 8 and 12 h, and a stable drug release is maintained throughout the 24-h patch application[74]. Rotigotine patch thus allows constant delivery of the drug and possible continuous dopaminergic stimulation. Rotigotine improved motor scores, and the activities of daily living[75]. The drug is indicated both as monotherapy for the treatment of early PD, and as adjunctive therapy to L-dopa in advanced PD with motor fluctuations, significantly reducing "off" time[76,77]. In patients with early-stage PD, rotigotine was generally well tolerated for up to approximately 6 years[76]. The majority of patients experiencing dyskinesia reported first appearance after starting L-dopa[76]. Most common adverse events reported were application site reactions, nausea, vomiting, dry mouth, somnolence, peripheral edema, and dyskinesia[75-77]. Rotigotine transdermal patch was shown to be of similar efficacy to oral pramipexole in patients with fluctuating PD over 6 mo of treatment. The absolute change in "off" time from baseline compared with placebo was -1.58 h for rotigotine and -1.94 h for pramipexole and responder rates were 67% for pramipexole, 59.7% for rotigotine[78].

Ropinirole: Immediate- and extended-release once-daily formulations of ropinirole are available. Ropinirole prolonged-release formulations has also been shown to delay the onset of dyskinesia in early PD, compared with increasing doses of L-dopa. This was achieved without significant change in UPDR Scale activities of daily living or motor scores[79]. In advanced PD patients not optimally controlled with L-dopa and who suffered troublesome nocturnal disturbance, the extended-release formulation provided 24-h symptom control and improved nocturnal symptoms. In these patients, the drug resulted in reduction in awakenings and in an increase in awake time "on"/"on" without troublesome dyskinesia during night-time and early morning[80-82]. In moderate-to-advanced PD, symptom control could be achieved 2 wk after treatment initiation[83]. Patients on pramipexole could be switched overnight to extended release ropinirole without serious adverse events[84]. Ropinirole most commonly causes nausea and sleepiness, less commonly uncontrollable sleep attacks, vertigo, dyspepsia, orthostatic hypotension, leg oedema, back pain, and headache[81,85]. Gastrointestinal complaints and sleep/fatigue were significantly higher for ropinirole than for pramipexole[86].

Pramipexole: Pramipexole shows high affinity for the D2 subfamily of dopamine receptors. The drug is effective as a symptomatic treatment in early PD,

reducing UPDRS by 4-5 points relative to placebo[87]. When used as a monotherapy in early idiopathic PD, pramipexole was of comparable clinical efficacy to rasagiline[88]. It alleviated L-dopa dyskinesia when used as an "add on" therapy or in place of ergot dopamine agonist[89]. Switching patients with PD from ergot dopamine agonist, e.g., cabergoline to pramipexole, appeared to be well tolerated and effective, but adjustment of pramipexole dose is required in some patients to reduce side effects[90,91]. Significant improvement in the UPDRS was evident after 2 wk of initiating therapy with pramipexole and maintained up to 12 wk of treatment[91]. Pramipexole was associated with significantly low rates of fatigue[92] and improved depressive symptoms[93] in PD patients. There appear, however, to be no significant difference between early and delayed pramipexole initiation on UPDRS total score or striatal dopamine-transporter binding in patients with early PD[94].

Extended release pramipexole is approved as monotherapy in early PD, as well as an adjunct therapy to L-dopa in advanced PD. It has the advantage over the immediate release formulation of improved compliance because of once-daily dosing regimen and steadier plasma levels over 24 h[95]. In patients with early PD not receiving L-dopa or dopamine receptor agonists, once-daily extended-release pramipexole was of similar efficacy to the immediate release preparation (taken 3 times daily) in controlling motor symptoms, and in safety and tolerability[96,97]. In those with motor fluctuations on L-dopa therapy, the addition of either the extended-release and immediate-release preparations was of similar efficacy in improving UPDRS score and off-time compared with placebo, with similar tolerability, and safety[98]. In advanced PD, switching to one daily pramipexole formulation from thrice daily immediate-release tablet formulation was also effective in controlling motor symptoms[99].

Somnolence, fatigue, nausea, constipation, and peripheral oedema are common side effects of pramipexole[87,96]. The drug administered in a single oral dose to healthy young subjects, reduced mean sleep latency and increased total duration of sleep. These effects were not observed with L-dopa and bromocryptine[100]. In early PD, pramipexole monotherapy resulted in higher incidence of cognitive adverse events compared with ropinirole[86]. Other dopamine-receptor-agonists, e.g., rotigotine and cabergoline did not affect cognitive function in patients with early-mild disease. It has been suggested that their combined stimulation of both dopamine (D1 and D2) receptor families might account for preserving cognitive functions compared with pure D2 family stimulation that occurs with pramipexole[101].

Apomorphine: This synthetic morphine derivative exerts antiparkinsonian effects by non-selective stimulation of dopamine receptors. The drug also stimulates serotonin and α-adrenergic receptors. It is currently used in patients with advanced PD for the treatment of persistent and disabling motor fluctuations unresponsive to conventional therapy with L-dopa or dopamine receptor agonists, with or without deep brain stimulation[102]. In late stage PD, apomorphine administered via subcutaneous, intravenous routes or by inhalation, has been shown to result in long term symptomatic improvement, effectively abort "off" episodes and significantly decrease L-dopa equivalent dose[103-106]. Non-motor symptoms as hyperhidrosis, nocturia, urgency of micturition, and fatigue improved as well[106]. Switching patients with refractory motor fluctuations from subcutaneous to intravenous therapy with apomorphine resulted in 59% decrease in their additional oral anti-parkinsonian medication. Dyskinesias also significantly decreased and "off" time was virtually eliminated[104]. Continuous subcutaneous apomorphine infusion proved of symptomatic benefit in those with untreatable motor fluctuations but in whom subthalamic nucleus deep brain stimulation was contraindicated (because of L-dopa-resistant axial motor symptoms and/or cognitive decline). Daily "off" time decreased while "on" time improved together with a significant reduction in mean oral L-dopa equivalent dose[107]. In PD patients undergoing deep brain stimulation, subcutaneous apomorphine reduced the risk of neurologic and respiratory deterioration caused by perioperative withdrawal of dopaminergic medication[108].

Apomorphine causes severe nausea and vomiting. It has been suggested that the activation of human sensory transient receptor potential A1 channels by apomorphine, might contribute to adverse side effects such as nausea and painful injections[109]. The most common side effect to subcutaneous apomorphine is local inflammation at the infusion site[103,107]. Moreover, intravascular thrombotic complications, secondary to apomorphine crystal accumulation, necessitating cardiothoracic surgery, complicate intravenous therapy with apomorphine[104].

Monoamine oxidase inhibitors
Selegiline and rasagiline: Both MAO-A and MAO-B contribute to dopamine metabolism. MAO-A is the main enzyme responsible for the metabolism of the monoamines, noradrenaline, serotonin and dopamine. MAO-B is more specific to dopamine metabolism[110]. MAO-B inhibitors are clinically being used to treat PD by blocking the degradation of dopamine and thereby providing a symptomatic relief in these patients. Selegiline (Deprenyl/Eldepryl) and rasagiline (Azilect) are irreversible selective inhibitors of the enzyme MAO-B. Selegiline, the R-optical enantiomer of deprenyl (phenyl-isopropyl-methyl-propargylamine) was approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) in 1996. Selegiline is a propargyl amphetamine derivative that undergoes extensive first-pass metabolism to L-methamphetamine, L-amphetamine, and desmethyl-deprenyl. Rasagiline [N-propargyl-1-(R)-aminoindan]

is a novel, highly potent irreversible MAO-B inhibitor, recently introduced in the treatment of PD. Rasagiline has received FDA approval in 2006. Rasagiline's major metabolite is aminoindan, which has no amphetamine like properties[111,112] and thus is not likely to cause sleep disturbances compared with selegiline. In patients treated with selective MAO-B inhibitors, the risk of serotonin toxicity due to a concomitant serotonergic agent or hypertensive crisis due to dietary tyramine or sympathomimetic amines appears to be minimal and should not preclude the use of MAO-B inhibitors in treating PD[113]. There is evidence, however, that daily treatment with MAO-B inhibitor may also influence MAO-A activity. Thus in plasma samples from patients with MAO-B inhibitor therapy, there was 70% reduction of MAO-A activity compared with patients without MAO-B inhibitor treatment or healthy controls[114].

Selegiline and rasagiline are effective as initial monotherapy in early PD and as adjunctive therapy in advanced PD[115-117]. MAO-B inhibitors provide mild symptomatic benefit, compared with L-dopa and dopamine agonists. These drugs are indicated for the treatment of akinesia and motor fluctuations associated with L-dopa therapy. Both agents are safe and well tolerated at the recommended daily doses. They might delay the need start L-dopa therapy, reduce disability and reduce the rate of motor fluctuations compared with initial L-dopa therapy[96,118,119]. Rasagiline inhibits MAO-B more potently than selegiline and has the advantage of once-daily dosing and favorable tolerability[116,120]. Rasagiline was effective both as monotherapy in early PD and as adjunctive treatment in advanced PD and motor fluctuations. As monotherapy, however, rasagiline provided modest yet clinically meaningful benefit on motor symptoms (compared to other drugs)[121,122]. Early in the disease, rasagiline monotherapy at 1 mg/d improved symptoms. In advanced PD, rasagiline adjunct therapy (0.5 or 1 mg/d) to L-dopa significantly reduced the total daily "off" time[123]. Rasagiline (1 mg/d), in L-dopa-treated PD patients with motor fluctuations produced a significant improvement over placebo in UPDRS motor "off" score. Rasagiline significantly improved bradykinesia and showed trends for improvements in facial expression, speech, and axial impairment during OFF time[124]. Rasagiline has a rapid beneficial effect on PD symptoms from the first week of therapy. Objective and subjective measures of symptom severity improved at 1 wk (change from baseline in bradykinesia scores and physicians' and patients' global impression). The magnitude of benefit was similar in patients treated with once-daily rasagiline either as monotherapy (1.0 mg) or as adjunct therapy (0.5 mg)[125]. Rasagiline might also possess antidepressant effect. In patients with newly diagnosed PD with comorbid untreated depression, rasagiline monotherapy 1 or 2 mg/d for 8 wk, improved the activity of daily living and motor function as well as symptoms of depression. The latter effect was observed

at the higher dose of 2 mg/d and appeared not to be related to the motor improvement[126]. Motor behavior, motor complications, mood and sleep improved when patients on selegiline were switched to 1 mg rasagiline[127]. Rasagiline monotherapy in early untreated disease also demonstrated better adverse events profile in the incidence of gastrointestinal symptoms and sleep disorders and less incidence of dropout rates compared with pramipexole[88].

The use of selegiline and rasagiline in the early stage of the disease might also improve long-term outcome. L-dopa-treated patients who received selegiline within 5 years from the onset of the disease exhibited significantly lower UPDRS motor scores over 7 years compared with those who received selegiline 9 to 11 years after the onset of the disease[117]. One study suggested that selegiline use (⩾ 3 years) in early PD patients who were of younger age, shorter PD duration, lower UPDRS motor scores was associated with a slower progression of PD[128]. Early-start treatment with rasagiline at a dose of 1 mg/d (though not 2 mg/d) caused a smaller increase in rate of worsening in the UPDRS score between weeks 12 and 36, less worsening in the score between baseline and week 72 compared with the placebo group. The study suggested a disease-modifying effect for rasagiline[129]. In the ADAGIO study, Rascol et al[130], assessed the ability of rasagiline to modify need for additional antiparkinsonian therapy and changes in non-motor and motor changes in patients with untreated early PD. Patients received rasagiline 1 mg/d or 2 mg/d for 72 wk (early-start groups) or placebo for 36 wk followed by rasagiline 1 mg/d or 2 mg/d for 36 wk (delayed-start groups). The findings of the study suggested that rasagiline delayed the need for symptomatic antiparkinsonian drugs.

Recent interest in selegiline and rasagiline has focused on their possible neuroprotective effects that have been delineated in preclinical models of PD[131-133].

Catechol-O-methyltransferase inhibitors
In the presence of aromatic amino acid decarboxylase inhibitors, L-dopa metabolism is predominantly shifted to the formation of 3-O-methyldopa by the enzyme catechol-O-methyltransferase (COMT), which has the highest activity in the liver and kidney[18]. The reversible COMT inhibitors tolcapone and entacapone, are being used as an adjunct to L-dopa for the symptomatic treatment of PD patients with motor fluctuations. These agents extend the elimination half-life of L-dopa by inhibiting the peripheral breakdown of L-dopa, thereby increasing L-dopa bioavailability, which will decrease "of" time and increase "on" time in fluctuating PD patients and allow the dosage of L-dopa/carbidopa to be reduced. Moreover, by stabilizing plasma L-dopa concentrations, tolcapone and entacapone permit a more continuous stimulation of dopamine receptors which in theory would reduce the risk of motor complications[25,134].

Entacapone

When used as an adjunct to concomitant treatment with L-dopa and a dopa decarboxylase inhibitor (DDCI), entacapone showed benefits in the quality of life and activities of daily living and was efficacious in increasing "on" time and decreasing "of" time in PD patients with wearing-off fluctuations[135-140]. Moreover, compared with L-dopa/carbidopa or L-dopa/benserazide, treatment with L-dopa/carbidopa/entacapone resulted in significantly greater improvements in non-motor domains such as depression, personal relationships, and communication[139]. In randomized, open-label study, entacapone was as effective as cabergoline in conjunction with L-dopa in decreasing the daily "off"-time and in improving the quality of life (a decrease of approximately 20% was detected in UPDRS Ⅱ and Ⅲ motor scores, with no differences between the groups). The effect of entacapone, however, was more quickly apparent compared with that of cabergoline[141]. In patients receiving L-dopa and a DDCI, the addition of entacapone improved UPDRS Ⅲ motor scores during the first 6 mo of combined therapy, increased daily "on" time and the response duration to a single morning dose of L-dopa. The mean daily dose of L-dopa did not increase over the 5-year follow-up period, suggesting the long-term efficacy of L-dopa/DDCI and entacapone[142].

Studies suggested that early rather than delayed addition of entacapone to L-dopa/DDCI in PD patients with wearing-off provides a modest clinical benefit over L-dopa/DDCI that is maintained for up to 5 years, with an improvement in UPDR motor scale[143]. In patients with early PD, compared with L-dopa/carbidopa (Sinemet), L-dopa/carbidopa/entacapone (Stalevo) resulted in significantly greater improvement in activities of daily living and subject-reported clinical global impression without increasing motor complications[144]. Studies also suggested that switching from L-dopa/DDCI and entacapone and L-dopa/DDCI provides a significant benefit in PD patients with wearing-off[145]. Comparing immediate and delayed switch to L-dopa/carbidopa/entacapone was in favor of immediate switch in terms of greater motor improvement and quality of life[146].

The most common adverse effect of adding entacapone is the increase in dyskinesia[135,141] which would necessitate reducing the dose of L-dopa. In one study, patients with PD and with mild-to-moderate wearing-off without or with mild dyskinesias were randomly assigned to either receiving the same L-dopa-carbidopa dosage or 15%-25% less total L-dopa-carbidopa amount. The findings showed that either regimen resulted in increase in daily "on" time and a reduction in the daily time spent in "off" 4 wk after the change[147]. In a randomized, open-label trial in patients with wearing-off with conventional L-dopa/DDCI therapy, adjunct therapy with entacapone or increasing dose frequency of L-dopa without an increased total daily dose (dose fractionation) reduced the mean "off"

time, and the rate of motor complications[148].

On the other hand, entacapone did not improve motor scores on the UPDR Scale when used as an adjunct to L-dopa in PD patients who do not experience motor fluctuations[149]. Moreover, initiating L-dopa therapy with L-dopa/carbidopa/entacapone was associated with a shorter time to onset and increased frequency of dyskinesia compared to L-dopa/carbidopa[150]. Entacapone was also non-efficacious in the prevention/delay of motor complications (reviewed by Fox et al[151]). In another study, entacapone (200 mg with each L-dopa dose) was ineffective in reducing the severity of motor symptoms in the "off" state in L-dopa-treated PD patients with motor fluctuations[124]. Dyskinesia is the most common adverse event of entacapone[152,153]. Entacapone was not associated with an increased risk of acute myocardial infarction, stroke, or death in elderly patients with PD[154].

Tolcapone

Tolcapone is a longer acting and more potent COMT inhibitor compared with entacapone[155]. The agent is used in patients with severe motor fluctuations inadequately controlled with entacapone[153]. In patients with advanced PD who were switched to tolcapone because of persisting "off" periods despite treatment with entacapone, there were significant reductions in mean daily off-time duration and L-dopa dose at follow up[156]. The daytime sleepiness, global clinical impression of change, activities of daily living, and quality of life were also significantly improved after adjunctive tolcapone treatment to L-dopa/carbidopa in fluctuating PD patients[157,158]. A randomized, open-label, trial of 150 patients on a stable regimen of L-dopa/DDCI in combination with bromocriptine, lisuride, or pergolide, conducted to assess the efficacy of switching from a dopamine agonist to tolcapone, found the drug to be effective in decreasing daily "off" time, increasing "on" time (as well as other efficacy variables, e.g., UPDR scale Ⅱ, Ⅲ, and Ⅳb and investigator's global assessment scores)[159].

The most common adverse event with tolcapone is dyskinesia which might require decreasing the dose of L-dopa. Elevations of the serum liver enzymes aspartate aminotransferase and alanine aminotransferase have been reported in patients on tolcapone treatment. Therapy with tolcapone thus requires monitoring for of liver function every 2 to 4 wk for 6 mo for hepatotoxicity[156,160,161]. Severe liver injury due to tolcapone, however, appears to be a rare event[160]. In addition, studies on the safety and efficacy of the long-term use of tolcapone concluded that significant liver transaminase elevations were rare and these returned to normal in most patients[162,163]. Tolcapone causes severe diarrhea more often than entacapone[155].

Nebicapone

Nebicapone is a new COMT inhibitor which has been found efficacious for the treatment of motor fluctuations

in PD patients[164]. In randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study, nebicapone 75 mg and 150 mg showed greater effect in increasing "on" time and decreasing "off" time compared with entacapone 200 mg. The drug produced more sustained COMT inhibition compared with entacapone 200 mg. Nebicapone 150 mg increased L-dopa area under the plasma concentration time curve by 48.4% compared to a value of 33.3% after entacapone 200 mg[165]. Nebicapone has the risk of increasing liver transaminases[164].

N-methyl-D-aspartate glutamate receptor antagonism
Amantadine: Amantadine is an antiviral drug which was found to exert beneficial antiparkinsonian effects[166]. As an alternative to L-dopa in early PD, amantadine is associated with improvement in functional disability, and in a subset of PD patients, there is a robust symptomatic improvement[167]. The main current indication of amantadine is, however, as an adjunctive treatment for L-dopa-induced dyskinesia in late-stage PD. Amantadine, is an N-methyl-D-aspartate glutamate receptor antagonist. Increased glutamate transmission contributes to the motor symptoms in PD, and also to the progression of neurodegeneration through excitotoxic mechanisms[168]. Amantadine might also improve apathy and fatigue in PD patients[169]. The drug is well absorbed and widely distributed, little drug being present in the circulation, and is primarily eliminated through the kidneys both by glomerular filtration and tubular secretion. The dose of amantadine, therefore, requires adjustment in in patients with renal dysfunction[170]. In patients with PD on amantadine therapy, plasma amantadine concentration increased according to increasing renal dysfunction[171].

Dyskinesia can improve with amantadine and in a multi-center, double-blind, randomized, placebo-controlled trial, dyskinesia rating scale improved in 64% patients treated with amantadine compared to 16% on placebo[172]. In a randomized placebo-controlled study of 32 patients who have been on stable amantadine therapy for L-dopa-induced dyskinesia over at least one year, dyskinesia duration and intensity (assessed by UPDRS IV items) significantly increased at three-week follow-up after being switched to placebo[173]. Wash-out of amantadine in dyskinetic patients with PD significantly worsened L-dopa induced dyskinesia (with greater worsening of abnormal involuntary movement scale score)[169].

Amantadine is also effective in the treatment of freezing of gait in patients with advanced PD. In one study, freezing of gait improved by treatment with amantadine in 11 patients with advanced PD. The effect, however, decreased in a proportion (approximately 36%) of patients after 4 mo[174]. In a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, multicenter trial of 42 subjects with freezing of gait, 5 d intravenous amantadine attenuated freezing severity and improved patients' mobility[175]. Intravenous administration

of amantadine has also been effective in improving parkinsonian symptoms after surgery[176]. In PD patients with subthalamic nucleus deep brain stimulation and incomplete axial benefit, gait scores significantly improved with amantadine treatment. Patients also reported subjective improvement in speech, gait or balance[177]. Side effects of amantadine includes blurred vision, visual hallucinations, peripheral edema (Malkani et al[174], 2012), reversible corneal edema after long term use[178], auditory hallucinations[179]. Myoclonus, hallucination, or delirium might develop when the plasma concentration of amantadine exceeds 3000 ng/mL[171]. Cardiac arrest, ventricular tachycardia and prolonged QTc interval have been reported following amantadine[180,181].

Studies have shown that amantadine might possess neuroprotective properties. The dug protected rat midbrain cultures from either MPP(+) or lipopolysaccharide. Amantadine possibly exerts its neuroprotective effects through the inhibition of the release of microglial pro-inflammatory factors, and/or an increase in expression of neurotrophic factors such as glial cell line-derived neurotrophic factor released from astroglia[182].

Anticholinergic drugs
The anticholinergic drugs were the first agents to be used in the pharmacological management of PD[183]. Nowadays, however, they have limited place in the treatment of the disease. These drugs are also prescribed to ameliorate extrapyramidal symptoms caused by antipsychotic medications[184], but this also appears to be declining owing to an increase in the use of atypical anti-psychotic agents[185]. When used as monotherapy in early disease or as an adjunct to other antiparkinsonian drugs, anticholinergics are more effective than placebo in control of symptoms. Because of the high risk of cognitive, neuropsychiatric and autonomic adverse events, these agents are best avoided in the elderly[186-188].

The current place of anticholinergic agents in treatment of PD is limited to early cases and in younger patients (i.e., 60 years of age) with troublesome resting tremor because of the evidence that these agents are better than levodopa for tremor[189]. Studies, however, have shown that dopaminergic agents are as effective as anticholinergics in reducing tremor in idiopathic PD. Single-dose challenges with biperiden or apomorphine significantly reduced the amplitude of resting, postural, and action tremor. UPDRS scores for rigidity and akinesia, however, were only reduced by apomorphine[190]. Moreover, the effect of biperiden on the amplitude of the resting tremor was weaker than that of L-dopa had a good effect on the amplitude of the resting tremor[191].

Anticholinergic drugs are of little value in the treatment of rigidity, akinesia, gait dysfunction, or impaired postural reflexes[189]. It has been shown however that trihexyphenidyl might be of benefit in

patients whose axial symptoms worsened after deep brain stimulation of the subthalamic nucleus. In this study UPDRS Ⅱ and Ⅲ decreased in response to the anticholinergic agent[192]. Studies also suggested that the use of anticholinergic drugs early in the disease progression might be of potential benefit in delaying the need for L-dopa treatment[183]. Side effects due to anticholinergic agent include dry mouth, blurred vision, tachycardia, urinary retention, constipation, impaired sweating, and central nervous system effects, *e.g.*, memory impairment, confusion, and hallucinations, especially in older individuals[183,189].

NEWER DRUGS

Adenosine A₂ₐ receptor antagonism

Istradefylline: Istradefylline (KW-6002) is a selective adenosine A2A receptor antagonist which exhibit antiparkinsonian activity without worsening L-dopa induced dyskinesia. Istradefylline is not yet an FDA-approved drug. Istradefylline has been licensed as an anti-parkinsonian drug this year in Japan[193]. Istradefylline exhibits high affinity for A2A receptors, but lower affinities for the other subtypes of adenosine receptors (A1, A2B, and A3) in humans, marmosets, dogs, rats, and mice. The agent does not influence other neurotransmitter receptors, inhibit monoamine oxidases, or catechol-O-methyl transferase[194]. Unlike L-dopa, the chronic administration of istradefylline (and also of other A2A receptor antagonists: SCH 412348, vipadenant and caffeine) to rats did not result in dyskinetic activity or worsen dyskinesias when co-administered with L-dopa[195]. In non-human primates with haloperidol-induced extrapyramidal symptoms (EPS) and catalepsy, A2A receptor antagonists, SCH 412348 and KW-6002 and the A1/A2A receptor antagonist, caffeine significantly increased the time to the onset of EPS. Moreover, SCH 412348 and caffeine significantly reduced haloperidol-induced catalepsy[196]. In 1-methyl-4-phenyl-1,2,3,6-tetrahydropyridine (MPTP)-treated marmosets with L-dopa dyskinesia, single dose acute oral administration of istradefylline enhanced and prolonged the anti-parkinsonian effects of a sub-optimal dose of L-dopa, while its chronic administration did not worsen dyskinesia[197].

When evaluated as monotherapy in patients with early PD, istradefylline 40 mg/d for 12-wk was safe and well tolerated, but failed to significantly improve motor symptoms[198]. In PD patients on L-dopa therapy with motor complications, istradefylline 10, 20 or 40 mg/d, administered as adjunctive treatment to L-dopa for 12 wk in a double-blind study did not affect "off" time duration, though at 40 mg/d it significantly improved the motor score[199]. Other studies, however, showed that istradefylline 20, 40 or 60 mg/d, given once daily for 12 wk to L-dopa-treated patients with motor complications was well tolerated and reduced daily "off" time[200-204]. The most common adverse

event was dyskinesia[200-205]. Other side effects reported with istradefylline were lightheadedness, tremor, constipation, weight decrease[201], nausea, dizziness, and hallucinations[200].

Preladenant: Preladenant (SCH 420814) is an orally bioavailable selective adenosine A2A receptor antagonist in phase Ⅲ development for PD treatment. In MPTP-treated primates, preladenant improved motor ability without causing any dopaminergic-mediated dyskinetic or motor complications. The drug also delayed the onset of EPS symptoms evoked by an acute haloperidol challenge in primates with previous chronic haloperidol treatment[206]. Two randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, ascending-dose studies, showed that the drug was generally well tolerated up to 200 mg/d. Peak plasma concentrations were reached in approximately 1 h and then declined rapidly. Preladenant caused transient mild increases in blood pressure within a few hours of administration[207]. In patients with PD and motor fluctuations who were receiving L-dopa, preladenant at 5 and 10 mg given twice daily for 12 wk reduced the mean daily "off" time relative to baseline. The most common adverse events in the L-dopa/preladenant group *vs* placebo were worsening of PD (11% *vs* 9%), somnolence (10% *vs* 6%), dyskinesia (9% *vs* 13%), nausea (9% *vs* 11%), constipation (8% *vs* 2%), and insomnia (8% *vs* 9%)[208]. In another study, preladenant treatment (5 mg twice a day) for 36 wk as a L-dopa adjunct in subjects with fluctuating PD, provided sustained "off" time reductions (1.4-1.9 h/d) and "on" time increases (1.2-1.5 h/d) relative to the baseline. The main side effects were dyskinesia (33%) and constipation (19%)[209].

Safinamide: Safinamide is a novel anti-parkinsonian drug currently in phase 3 clinical trials, as add-on therapy to L-dopa or a dopamine agonist in early and advanced stage PD. It is an oral alpha-aminoamide derivative, with dopaminergic and non-dopaminergic mechanisms of action involving inhibition of dopamine and noradrenaline reuptake, a selective and reversible inhibition of MAO-B, blockage of voltage-dependent sodium channels, modulation of calcium channels as well as an inhibitor of glutamate release[210-212]. Safinamide is administered once daily at doses of 50 and 100 mg[211]. In an open pilot study, safinamide (100, 150, and 200 mg once a day) improved motor performance when added to a stable dose of dopamine agonist and also decreased motor fluctuations in those treated with L-dopa[213]. Two randomized double-blind studies suggested that safinamide 100 mg/d may be effective as an "add-on" treatment to a dopaminergic agonist in early PD[214,215]. In 24-wk, double-blind study, safinamide 100 mg added to a dopamine agonist improved motor symptoms (UPDRS motor total score)[214]. Safinamide 100 mg/d for 12-mo resulted a lower rate of intervention (increase in

dopamine agonist dose; addition of another dopamine agonist, L-dopa or other PD treatment) and a delay in median time to intervention of 9 d compared with placebo[215]. In both studies, there was no benefit from safinamide 200 mg. A more recent study showed that oral safinamide 50 or 100 mg/d added to L-dopa in patients with PD and motor fluctuations for 24 wk, increased time with no or non-troublesome dyskinesia, decreased "off" time, and improved UPDRS motor scores as well as clinical global impression-change[216]. In MPTP- lesioned dyskinetic macaque monkey made dyskinetic by treatment with L-dopa, pre-treatment with safinamide (3, 10, 20 and 30 mg/kg) dose-dependently reduced dyskinesia scores and prolonged the duration of the antiparkinsonian effect of L-dopa. Moreover, combined amantadine (5 mg/kg) and safinamide (20 mg/kg) exerted additional beneficial effects on L-dopa-induced dyskinesia[217].

Safinamide, also appear to exert neuroprotective effects by blocking the voltage-dependent Na^+ and Ca^{2+} channels and the Ca^{2+}-mediated glutamate release processes. Safinamide provided significant protection against neurological deficit and axonal degeneration in experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis, possibly *via* reduction in the activation of microglia/macrophages, resulting in suppressed microglial superoxide production [218].

Monoamine oxidase inhibition

Zonisamide: Zonisamide (1,2-benzisoxazole-3-methanesulfonamide) is a new antiepileptic drug for treating refractory epilepsy. It is licensed in Europe and the United States for the adjunctive treatment of partial seizures (with or without secondary generalization) in adults. It is also licensed in Europe as monotherapy for adults with newly diagnosed partial epilepsy[219]. The drug inhibits voltage-gated Na^+ channel, T-type voltage-sensitive Ca^{2+} channel, Ca^{2+}-induced Ca^{2+} releasing system, and neuronal depolarization-induced glutamate release; and enhance the release of inhibitory neurotransmitters. The drug has been found by chance to exert beneficial anti-parkinsonian effects. Early studies on patients with PD demonstrated lessening of symptoms, especially wearing-off when using zonisamide (50-200 mg/d) as an "add-on" treatment[220]. When used as an adjunctive therapy in patients with insufficient response to L-dopa treatment, zonisamide (25, or 50 mg/d) resulted in significant motor improvement and reduced the duration of "off" time compared with placebo. Dyskinesia was not increased in zonisamide-treated groups[221]. In two 12-wk, randomized, double-blind trials in PD patients inadequately controlled with L-dopa, zonisamide (25 mg once daily) significantly improved motor function (UPDRS Part III total score), compared with placebo[222]. The drug appears to be generally well tolerated at doses of 25-50 mg/d[221,222]. Zonisamide also led to marked reduction in the severity of impulsive behaviors and global impulsiveness in PD patients with

impulse control disorders who did not improve following a reduction of either L-dopa or dopamine agonists[223].

In experimental models of PD, zonisamide displayed antiparkinsonian and neuroprotective effects[224-228]. Several mechanisms have been proposed including (1) increased expression of astrocyte-mediated neurotrophic and anti-oxidative factors, *e.g.*, astrocyte-derived neurotrophic factor, vascular endothelial growth factor, copper/zinc superoxide dismutase, and manganese superoxide dismutase[227]; (2) upregulating levels of manganese superoxide dismutase[225]; (3) anti-apoptotic effect[225,227-229]; (4) antioxidant effect[227-229]; (5) increased S100β-positive and glial fibrillary acidic protein-positive astrocytes and dopamine turnover[226]; (6) potent and reversible inhibition of MAO-B activity[224]; (7) delta (1) receptor mediated inhibition of the indirect pathway[230]; (8) dopamine release[231]; and (9) prevention of dopamine quinone formation[232]. Table 2 summarizes the findings of randomized double blind studies on novel antiparkinsonian drugs.

Mitochondrial enhancement therapy

Coenzyme Q10: Coenzyme Q10 (CoQ10) or ubiquinone is a lipid-soluble molecule present in all membranes throughout the cell. It acts as an electron carrier in the mitochondrial electron transport chain, located within the inner mitochondrial membrane (transfers an electron between complexes I/II and III). CoQ10 also functions as an antioxidant, thereby protecting cellular membranes and macromolecules (*e.g.*, proteins, lipids, DNA). CoQ10 also regenerates the pool of tocopherol[233-235]. In brains from PD patients postmortem, CoQ10 decreased in the cortex[236]. In a study involving 33 patients with PD, Jiménez-Jiménez *et al*[237] found no difference in serum levels of CoQ10 between patients with PD and controls. In contrast, CoQ10/cholesterol ratio inversely correlated with duration of the disease, total UPDRS score and motor examination of the UPDRS. Treatment with L-dopa or dopamine agonists had no significant effect on CoQ10/cholesterol ratio. Other studies, however, have shown elevation in oxidized form of CoQ10 in plasma[238] or decreased CoQ10 in peripheral blood lymphocytes from patients with PD[239]. Moreover, increased percentage of oxidized to total CoQ10 was detected in the cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) of patients with PD. The concentration of 8-OHdG in the CSF also increased and correlated with concentrations of oxidized to total CoQ10, thereby linking both mitochondrial oxidative damage and oxidative DNA damage in the disease process[240].

In primate model of PD induced by the nigrostriatal toxin MPTP, dopamine cell loss was prevented by treatment with coenzyme Q[241]. In the MPTP rat model of PD, both CoQ10, reduced CoQ10 (ubiquinol) exerted neuroprotective effects against MPTP induced dopamine depletion, loss of tyrosine hydroxylase neurons and the development of alpha-synuclein inclusions in SNc[242]. Orally administered CoQ10 also halted the progression of nigrostriatal degeneration

Table 2 Results of randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trials involving new antiparkinsonian drugs

Drug	Study objective	Outcomes	Adverse events	Ref.
Istradefylline	Evaluated the efficacy and safety of istradefylline, 20 and 40 mg once daily as adjunctive to L-dopa in patients with motor complications (12 wk)	↓ daily change in "off" time *vs* placebo	↑ dyskinesia	[203]
Istradefylline	Evaluated the efficacy and safety of istradefylline, 10, 20 and 40 mg once daily as adjunctive to L-dopa in patients with motor complications (12 wk)	No effect on "off" time duration Improved motor scores at 40 mg	-	[199]
Istradefylline	Evaluated the efficacy of istradefylline at an oral dose of 20 and 40 mg once daily for 12 wk in PD patients with motor complications on levodopa therapy	↓ "off" time *vs* placebo	↑ dyskinesia	[204]
Istradefylline	Evaluated the safety and efficacy of istradefylline 40 mg, as monotherapy in patients with PD	No significant effect in improving motor symptoms	-	[198]
Istradefylline	To evaluate efficacy, safety, and tolerability of istradefylline 20 mg once daily *vs* placebo as an adjunct to levodopa in PD subjects with motor fluctuations	↓ "off" time	Dyskinesia, lightheadedness, tremor, constipation, and weight decrease	[201]
Istradefylline	To evaluate safety and efficacy of istradefylline 20 or 60 mg/d in L-dopa-treated PD subjects with motor complications	↓ "off" time without an increase in "on" time	Dyskinesia, nausea, dizziness, and hallucinations	[200]
Istradefylline	To evaluate safety and efficacy of istradefylline 40 mg/d in L-dopa-treated PD subjects with prominent wearing-off motor fluctuations	↓ "off" time without increased troublesome dyskinesia	-	[202]
Istradefylline	To evaluate safety and efficacy of istradefylline 20 or 40 mg/d in patients with L-dopa-motor fluctuations and peak-dose dyskinesias	↓ "off" time	Severity of dyskinesia was unchanged, but "on" time with dyskinesia increased	[205]
Preladenant	To evaluate efficacy of using preladenant 5 mg twice a day as a levodopa adjunct in subjects with fluctuating PD	↓ "off" time ↑ "on" time throughout the 36-wk treatment relative to the baseline	Dyskinesia and constipation	[209]
Preladenant	To evaluate safety of single and multiple rising preladenant doses compared with placebo	Preladenant was generally well tolerated up to the maximum dose tested (200 mg/d)	Transient mild increases in blood pressure within a few hours after preladenant administration	[207]
Preladenant	To evaluate efficacy and safety of 1, 2, 5, or 10 mg oral preladenant twice daily in patients with PD and motor fluctuations on L-dopa	5 and 10 mg preladenant ↓ "off" time	Worsening of PD, dyskinesia, nausea, constipation, and insomnia	[208]
Safinamide	To evaluate efficacy and safety of safinamide 50 or 100 mg/d, as add-on to L-dopa in the treatment of PD patients with motor fluctuations	↑ total on time with no or nontroublesome dyskinesia, ↓ decreased off time, without worsening dyskinesia	-	[216]
Safinamide	To evaluate efficacy of safinamide 100 or 200 mg/d as add-on treatment to single dopaminergic receptor agonist single in early PD	Safinamide 100 mg/d may be effective as add-on treatment	-	[215]
Safinamide	To evaluate efficacy and safety of once-daily 100 or 200 mg safinamide in patients with early PD receiving a stable dose of a single dopaminergic receptor agonist	Safinamide 100 mg/d improved motor symptoms (UPDRS part III total score)	-	[214]
Zonisamide	To evaluate the efficacy, safety and tolerability of daily doses of 25, 50, and 100 mg of zonisamide as an adjunctive treatment in PD	Zonisamide 25 and 50 mg/d improved motor symptoms (UPDRS part III total score) Zonisamide 50 and 100 mg ↓ "off" time without ↑ dyskinesia	-	[221]
Isradipine	To establish a tolerable and efficacious dosage of isradipine controlled-release in subjects with early PD not requiring dopaminergic therapy	The tolerability of 5, 10, or 20 mg of isradipine was dose dependent No difference in change in UPDRS among dosages	Peripheral oedema and dizziness	[295]
Isradipine	To evaluate safety and tolerability of isradipine controlled release in patients with early PD	Tolerability of isradipine CR 5, 10, 15, or 20 mg was dose dependent Isradipine had no significant effect on blood pressure or PD motor disability	Leg oedema and dizziness	[294]

L-dopa: Levodopa; PD: Parkinson's disease; UPDRS: Unified Parkinson's disease rating scale; CR: Controlled release.

induced in rats by paraquat[243] and in the MPTP mouse model of PD[244].

In patients with PD without motor fluctuations and on stable antiparkinsonian treatment, nanoparticular CoQ10 (100 mg 3 times a day) for 3 mo failed to demonstrate clinical benefit. The formulation used was associated with CoQ10 plasma levels similar to 1200 mg/d of standard formulations[245]. In another randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial, treatment of PD patients with CoQ10 (300-1200 mg/d) increased plasma level in a dose-dependent manner. CoQ10 was well-tolerated and at 1200 mg/d there were significant slowing the progression of PD as measured by the total UPDRS score [246]. Improvements in the total UPDRS were also observed following 2 wk treatment with CoQ10 in 16 subjects with early idiopathic PD. Moreover, F_2-isoprostanes in plasma were significantly reduced in the 400-1200 mg/d dose range (but increased at 2400 mg/d dosage). Symptomatic benefit from CoQ10 appeared to depend on initial plasma ubiquinol and F_2-isoprostanes[247]. More recent phase III randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind clinical trial, however, reported no evidence of clinical benefit (total UPDRS) from treatment with 1200 mg/d or 2400 mg/d in patients who received a diagnosis of PD within 5 years[248,249].

Creatine: Creatine is a naturally occurring amino acid consumed in meat and fish. It is also synthesized in liver, kidneys, and pancreas from glycine, arginine and methionine. The highest concentration of creatine is found in skeletal muscles (95% of body stores) with most of the remaining stores found in the heart, brain and testes. After its synthesis, creatine is released into the blood stream, from where it is taken up by cells against a concentration gradient *via* the creatine transporter. The active form of creatine is phosphorylcreatine (PCr). Creatine kinase is the enzyme catalyzing the reaction of the phosphorylation of creatine to PCr through the transfer of the γ-phosphate group of adenosine triphosphate to the guanidino group of creatine to yield adenosine diphosphate and high-energy PCr. In brain, the active form of creatine or phosphocreatine serves as an energy reserve being a donor of high energy phosphate molecules to adenosine diphosphate to form adenosine triphosphate (ATP). One key function of phosphocreatine is to increase ATP levels in tissue so as to stabilize neuronal membranes. Creatine and phosphocreatine are involved in the shuttle of ATP from the mitochondria, site of synthesis to the site of use in the cytosol[252,253]. Creatine is widely used as a nutritional supplement and ergogenic aid for athletes[254].

In PD patients analysis of whole brain metabolite changes using proton magnetic resonance spectroscopy, indicated higher creatine values, which might reflect greater neuronal energy expenditure early in the disease process that is compensatory[255]. Other researchers detected significantly decreased creatine (as well as N-acetylaspartate, choline, myo-inositol, glutathione and dopamine concentrations) in patients with PD. This decrease in creatine levels possibly reflected impaired energy metabolism due to mitochondrial dysfunction[256]. In the MPTP model of PD in mice, creatine protected against striatal dopamine depletions and loss of substantia nigra tyrosine hydroxylase immunoreactive neurons[257].

Creatine supplementation has been proposed as an adjunct to medication for the treatment of brain-related disorders associated with bioenergetic deficits like PD[258]. Creatine intake seems to be safe in healthy individuals and in patients with PD. in healthy males undergoing aerobic training, creatine supplementation (approximately 10 g/d) over 3 mo does not provoke renal dysfunction. Serum creatinine serum and urinary sodium and potassium were unchanged, while cystatin C levels decreased over time, suggesting an increase in glomerular filtration rate[259]. In patients with PD, creatine 10 g/d was well tolerated[260] and creatine (4 g/d) for 2 years was well tolerated, apart from gastrointestinal complaints. Despite increased serum creatinine levels, other markers of tubular or glomerular renal function, especially cystatin C, remained normal, indicating unaltered kidney function[261]. In patients with PD, a 2-year placebo-controlled randomized clinical trial showed that creatinine improved patient mood and led to a smaller dose increase of dopaminergic therapy. Creatinine, however, had no effect on overall UPDR scale scores or dopamine transporter SPECT[262]. Creatine supplementation (20 g/d for the first 5 d and 5 g/d thereafter) has been shown to enhance the benefits of resistance training in patients with PD[263].

L-Carnitine: Carnitine (3-hydroxy-4-N-trimethy-lammoniobutanoate) is a quaternary amine synthesized in the body from lysine and methionine mainly in liver, kidney, and muscle. Dietary carnitine from meat and dairy products provides 75% of body carnitines. Carnitine or acylcarnitines including acetyl-L-carnitine are important in the oxidation of fatty acids in mitochondria. Acetyl-L-carnitine is a constituent of the inner mitochondrial membrane[264]. In humans, plasma acetyl-L-carnitine and L-carnitine short chain esters increases following oral treatment with acetyl-L-carnitine. CSF concentrations also increases, suggesting that the agent easily crosses the blood-brain barrier[265]. The administration of acetyl L-carnitine in elderly subjects (2 g twice-a-day) improves physical and mental fatigue as well as functional status and cognitive functions[266], Preclinical studies have shown that L-carnitine and its acetyl ester, acetyl-L-carnitine exert neuroprotective effects. Acetyl-L-carnitine act to preserve mitochondrial respiratory chain complex activity in face of inflammatory cytokine insult[267], prevent age-related oxidative mitochondrial decay[268] and maintain mitochondrial respiration and enzyme

activities (NADH dehydrogenase, cytochrome C oxidase and pyruvate dehydrogenase) following contusion spinal cord injury[269]. The neuroprotective effects of acetyl-L-carnitine involves induction of heme oxygenase-1, up-regulation of heat shock protein 60, increased expression of the redox-sensitive transcription factor Nrf2[267], reduction of carbonyl formation and decreased mtDNA deletion[270]. Acetyl-L-carnitine has been reported to protect against MPTP-induced toxicity in the nonhuman primate[271].

N-acetyl cysteine: The brain in PD is exposed to inappropriately high levels of oxygen and nitrogen-derived free radicals. Post-mortem studies of PD brains have detected increased lipid peroxidation products[272] and increased protein carbonyls indicative of protein oxidation[273] as well as reduced glutathione levels[274]. One of the most important intracellular redox buffers and free radical scavengers in brain is glutathione, a tripeptide thiol that consists of glutamate, cysteine and glycine. It exists mainly in a reduced form (GSH) and the ratio of GSH to the oxidized form (GSSG) determines the oxidative status of the cell[275,276]. Therefore a decrease in glutathione bioavailability would have serious consequences on the ability of cells to withstand oxidative burden. Glutathione concentrations can be increased by N-acetyl cysteine, the N-acetyl derivative of the amino acid L-cysteine, which is rapidly hydrolyzed intracellularly to cysteine, the rate limiting substrate for glutathione synthesis[277,278].

There is accumulating evidence to suggest the usefulness of supplementation with N-acetylcysteine in neurodegenerative disorders including PD[277-279]. In transgenic mice overexpressing wild-type human alpha-synuclein, N-acetylcysteine attenuated the loss of dopaminergic terminals at 1 year and also significantly decreased the levels of human alpha-synuclein[280]. Mice lacking the excitatory amino acid transporter EAAC1 have impaired neuronal cysteine uptake and consequent reduced neuronal glutathione content. These mice exhibited age-dependent loss of dopaminergic neurons in the SNPc, nitrosative stress and neuroinflammation, which were alleviated by N-acetylcysteine treatment[281]. In rats in which GSH was depleted by treatment with 2-cyclohexene-1-one, treatment with 1.6 g/kg of N-acetylcysteine rescued the depleted levels of GSH in the brain and restored cognitive deficits[282].

In a recent clinical study, single N-acetylcysteine infusion (150 mg/kg) was able to increase blood GSH redox ratios and increase brain GSH concentrations (measured using 7-T magnetic resonance spectroscopy) in those with PD and Gaucher disease and healthy controls[283].

Alpha lipoic acid: Lipoic acid (thioctic acid, 1,2-dithiolane-3-pentanoic acid) functions as a cofactor in multienzyme complexes that catalyze the oxidative decarboxylation of pyruvate, a-ketoglutarate, and branched-chain α-keto acids. Lipoic acid and its reduced form dihydrolipoic acid are also potent antioxidants capable of scavenging a number of reactive oxygen and nitrogen species. Lipoic acid is rapidly absorbed in the gut and passed to various tissues for catabolism[284]. Alpha lipoic acid is likely to be of benefit in several brain pathologies and neurodegenerative disorders. Chronic treatment with alpha lipoic acid (and also N-acetylcysteine) was found to improve cognition In SAMP8 mice that overexpress amyloid precursor protein[285]. In rat brain glial cultures, alpha-lipoic acid decreased viral double-stranded RNA-stimulated inflammatory signaling by down-regulating interleukin-1β (IL-1β), IL-6, tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α), inducible nitric oxide synthase transcripts. It also prevented cultured glial cytotoxicity[286]. Alpha lipoic acid has been shown to protect dopaminergic neurons in vitro against apoptosis induced by the nigrostriatal toxin 1-methyl-4-phenylpyridinium (MPP+). This effect of was associated with decreased intercellular levels of reactive oxygen species and the mitochondrial transmembrane permeability[287]. It also protected dopaminergic neurons in the animal model of PD induced by stereotaxic injection of 6-hydroxydopamine in rat striatum[288]. It has been suggested that a combination of mitochondrial antioxidants/nutrients could improve mitochondrial function and/or attenuate oxidative damage implicated in PD[289]. The authors found that the combined treatment with alpha-lipoic acid and acetyl-L-carnitine was more effective than either agent alone in protecting SK-N-MC human neuroblastoma cells against rotenone-induced mitochondrial dysfunction and oxidative damage.

Neuroprotective agents
Isradipine: Isradipine is a dihydropyridine calcium channel antagonist, with high affinity for Cav1.3 L-type channels. L-type Ca^{2+} channels with a pore-forming Cav1.3 subunit underlie autonomous pacemaking in adult dopaminergic neurons in the SNPc. This poses a sustained stress on mitochondrial ATP generating oxidative phosphorylation, accelerating cellular aging and death, and rendering dopaminergic more susceptible to the effect of nigrostriatal toxins[290]. Antagonism of these channels with isradipine has been shown to exert neuroprotective effects in animal models of PD[291,292]. Isradipine afforded neuroprotection against the nigrostriatal toxin 6-OHDA injected intrastriatally, sparing dopaminergic fibers and cell bodies[291]. In human neuroblastoma SH-SY5Y cells, isradipine antagonized many effects of rotenone including production of reactive oxygen species, G1/G0 cell cycle arrest, and activation of p53/p21 signaling proteins as well as the decreased expression of the signaling proteins for cell proliferation and survival, Cyclin-dependent kinase 2, cyclin D1, and Akt[292]. Isradipine also reduced L-dopa-induced rotational behavior and abnormal involuntary movements in animal model of L-dopa-induced dyskinesia[293].

Isradipine studies are thus being conducted in

humans to establish the dosage, safety and tolerability of the drug. In these studies, controlled release isradipine 10 mg daily was tolerated by 73% and 87% of patients with early PD, respectively. Peripheral edema and dizziness were most common adverse events encountered[294,295]. Isradipine displayed no significant effect on blood pressure or PD motor disability[294].

Pioglitazone: Pioglitazone is a peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-gamma agonist of the thiazolidinedione class. The administration of this antidiabetic agent has been shown to protect dopaminergic neurons preclinical rodent models of PD[296-299]. The drug also exhibited neuroprotective properties in the non-human primate model of MPTP-induced PD. Significant improvements in clinical rating score was associated with preservation of nigrostriatal dopaminergic markers, *e.g.*, cell counts of tyrosine hydroxylase immunoreactive- and vesicular monoamine transporter-2immunoreactive-nigral neurons[300]. Several mechanisms have been postulated to account for pioglitazone-induced neuroprotection. This included attenuation of toxin-induced glial activation and consequent suppression of pro-inflammatory cytokine (TNF-α, IL-1β, interferon-gamma) release[296,301,302]. Pioglitazone also attenuated oxidative stress[302], interfered with phosphorylation of jun N-terminal kinase and nuclear factor kappa-B, and suppressed cyclooxygenase 2 expression and the subsequent prostaglandin E(2) synthesis[298] and showed dose-dependent modulation of CD68-ir inflammatory cells[286]. Other researchers provided data that pioglitazone is effective in the MPTP mouse model through inhibition of MAO-B[299]. It has been shown that pioglitazone is a specific and reversible inhibitor of human MAO B. Other members of the glitazone class, rosiglitazone and troglitazone are weaker inhibitors of both MAO-A and MAO-B[303].

Minocycline: Minocycline is a second-generation, semi-synthetic tetracycline that received much interest for its dopaminergic neuroprotective effects observed in experimental models of PD. Minocycline inhibits microglial activation[304], exerts antioxidant and anti-inflammatory effects[305], and prevents apoptotic cell death, possibly due to attenuating endoplasmic reticulum stress and mitochondrial dysfunction[306]. Ongoing clinical trials for evaluating the effect of minocycline on disease progression, however, failed to demonstrate clinical benefit for minocycline. An 18-mo phase Ⅱ trial of minocycline 200 mg/d in subjects with early PD, found no effect for the drug in slowing down the progression of disability. Symptomatic treatment of PD symptoms was required in 62% of minocycline, and 60% of placebo-treated subjects[307]. In a randomized, double-blind in patients with Multiple-System-Atrophy Parkinson-type, the progression rate over 48 wk of minocycline 200 mg/d (the change in motor function) did not differ from that of placebo. A significant

deterioration in motor scores occurred in both groups. Positron emission tomography-data in two patients in the minocycline group, however, suggested that minocycline might interfere with microglial activation[308].

Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs
Neuroinflammation is a major contributing factor in the pathogenesis of PD[309]. *In vitro*, several non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) including ibuprofen, aspirin, acetaminophen, meclofenamic acid sodium salt, sulindac sulfide, ketoprofen (but not naproxen and indomethacin) inhibited the formation and stabilization of alpha-synuclein fibrils[310]. In this context, it is to be noted that the use of NSAIDs is frequent among PD patients. The chronic prescription of analgesic drugs was more prevalent in PD patients than in the general population and similar to that in osteoarthritis patients[311]. Several studies have assessed the potential for NSAIDs in lessening the progression of PD. The results of these studies were, however, inconclusive. In one study, the regular use of non-aspirin NSAIDs was associated with a lower risk of PD compared with non-regular users. A lower risk of PD (though of no statistical significance) was also observed among men and women who took 2 or more tablets of aspirin per day[312]. In their study, Wahner et al[313] found that regular use of aspirin ($\geqslant$ 2 pills/wk for at least 1 mo) was associated with a decreased risk of PD; an effect seen only in women. Regular non-aspirin NSAID usage was even associated with a stronger protective effect, particularly those who reported 2 or more years of use. Other researchers provided data that ibuprofen users had a significantly lower PD risk than non-users with this effect of the drug being a dose-dependent one. The same studies found no effect for aspirin, other NSAIDs or acetaminophen in reducing the risk for PD[314,315]. Hernán et al[316], however, found that non-aspirin NSAID use was associated with a higher risk in women and a lower risk in men. Other researchers, found no evidence that NSAID use reduces the risk of PD[317-321], although one study suggested that long-term use of NSAIDs was associated with a slightly lower PD risk[321].

Deferiprone
Studies in humans suggest the accumulation of iron in the substantia nigra of PD patients. Consequently excess iron has been implicated in the pathogenesis of PD[322-325]. One approach to halt nigrostriatal degeneration in PD might therefore involve the reduction of iron-mediated oxidative stress through the use of iron chelators. In a clinical trial in early PD patients, one such iron chelator that is deferiprone slightly improved motor signs at 6 mo and decreased motor handicap progression and iron overload at one year[326]. In a randomized clinical study on 23 patients with early stage PD (< 5 years from diagnosis), deferiprone for 6 mo elicited a non-significant small improvement in the motor UPRDS scores compared to placebo. Magnetic resonance

imaging indicated significantly reduced iron content in the dentate nucleus and caudate nucleus though not in substantia nigra following deferiprone therapy[327]. In these two studies, deferiprone was well tolerated. Side effects were neutropenia or agranulocytosis[326,327]. In one study, treatment with deferiprone for 4 years in 6 patients with neurodegeneration with brain iron accumulation was associated with stabilization in motor symptoms in 5/6 patients[328].

REFERENCES

1   **Zhang ZX**, Román GC. Worldwide occurrence of Parkinson's disease: an updated review. *Neuroepidemiology* 1993; **12**: 195-208 [PMID: 8272179]
2   **de Rijk MC**, Tzourio C, Breteler MM, Dartigues JF, Amaducci L, Lopez-Pousa S, Manubens-Bertran JM, Alpérovitch A, Rocca WA. Prevalence of parkinsonism and Parkinson's disease in Europe: the EUROPARKINSON Collaborative Study. European Community Concerted Action on the Epidemiology of Parkinson's disease. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry* 1997; **62**: 10-15 [PMID: 9010393]
3   **Hirsch EC**. Biochemistry of Parkinson's disease with special reference to the dopaminergic systems. *Mol Neurobiol* 1994; **9**: 135-142 [PMID: 7888089]
4   **Bernheimer H**, Birkmayer W, Hornykiewicz O, Jellinger K, Seitelberger F. Brain dopamine and the syndromes of Parkinson and Huntington. Clinical, morphological and neurochemical correlations. *J Neurol Sci* 1973; **20**: 415-455 [PMID: 4272516]
5   **Meissner W**, Prunier C, Guilloteau D, Chalon S, Gross CE, Bezard E. Time-course of nigrostriatal degeneration in a progressive MPTP-lesioned macaque model of Parkinson's disease. *Mol Neurobiol* 2003; **28**: 209-218 [PMID: 14709785]
6   **Jellinger KA**. Neuropathological spectrum of synucleinopathies. *Mov Disord* 2003; **18** Suppl 6: S2-12 [PMID: 14502650]
7   **Schapira AH**, Bezard E, Brotchie J, Calon F, Collingridge GL, Ferger B, Hengerer B, Hirsch E, Jenner P, Le Novère N, Obeso JA, Schwarzschild MA, Spampinato U, Davidai G. Novel pharmacological targets for the treatment of Parkinson's disease. *Nat Rev Drug Discov* 2006; **5**: 845-854 [PMID: 17016425]
8   **Brichta L**, Greengard P, Flajolet M. Advances in the pharmacological treatment of Parkinson's disease: targeting neurotransmitter systems. *Trends Neurosci* 2013; **36**: 543-554 [PMID: 23876424]
9   **Pankratz N**, Foroud T. Genetics of Parkinson disease. *Genet Med* 2007; **9**: 801-811 [PMID: 18091429]
10   **Riess O**, Krüger R, Hochstrasser H, Soehn AS, Nuber S, Franck T, Berg D. Genetic causes of Parkinson's disease: extending the pathway. *J Neural Transm Suppl* 2006; (**70**): 181-189 [PMID: 17017528]
11   **Di Monte DA**. The environment and Parkinson's disease: is the nigrostriatal system preferentially targeted by neurotoxins? *Lancet Neurol* 2003; **2**: 531-538 [PMID: 12941575]
12   **Chade AR**, Kasten M, Tanner CM. Nongenetic causes of Parkinson's disease. *J Neural Transm Suppl* 2006; (**70**): 147-151 [PMID: 17017522]
13   **Pal P-Kr**, Samii A, Calne DB. Cardinal Features of Early Parkinson's Disease. In: Factor SA, William J, Weiner WJ, editors. Parkinson's Disease: Diagnosis and Clinical Management, First edition. New York: Demos Medical Publishing, 2002: 714
14   **Gunzler SA**, Schoenberg MR, Riley DE, Walter B, Maciunas RJ. Parkinson's Disease and Other Movement Disorders. In: Schoenberg MR, Scott JG, editors. The Little Black Book of Neuropsychology, 2011: 567-644
15   **Morgan J**, Sethi KD. Differential Diagnosis. In: Handbook of Parkinson's Disease, fourth edition. Pahwa R, Lyons KE, editors. New York: Informa Healthcare USA, Inc., 2007: 29-48
16   **Hughes AJ**, Daniel SE, Kilford L, Lees AJ. Accuracy of clinical diagnosis of idiopathic Parkinson's disease: a clinico-pathological study of 100 cases. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry* 1992; **55**: 181-184 [PMID: 1564476]
17   **Lewitt PA**. Levodopa for the treatment of Parkinson's disease. *N Engl J Med* 2008; **359**: 2468-2476 [PMID: 19052127 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMct0800326]
18   **Contin M**, Martinelli P. Pharmacokinetics of levodopa. *J Neurol* 2010; **257**: S253-S261 [PMID: 21080186 DOI: 10.1007/s00415-010-5728-8]
19   **Olanow CW**, Schapira AH. Therapeutic prospects for Parkinson disease. *Ann Neurol* 2013; **74**: 337-347 [PMID: 24038341 DOI: 10.1002/ana.24011]
20   **Cesaro P**, Defebvre L. [Drug treatment of early-stage (de novo and "honeymoon") Parkinson disease]. *Rev Neurol* (Paris) 2014; **170**: 237-246 [PMID: 24673985 DOI: 10.1016/j.neurol.2013.10.015]
21   **Nissen T**, Newman EJ, Grosset KA, Daghem M, Pal G, Stewart M, Odin P, Macphee GJ, Grosset DG. Duration of L-dopa and dopamine agonist monotherapy in Parkinson's disease. *Scott Med J* 2012; **57**: 217-220 [PMID: 23002158 DOI: 10.1258/smj.2012.012121]
22   **Bonuccelli U**, Del Dotto P. New pharmacologic horizons in the treatment of Parkinson disease. *Neurology* 2006; **67**: S30-S38 [PMID: 17030738]
23   **Ondo WG**. Motor complications in Parkinson's disease. *Int J Neurosci* 2011; **121** Suppl 2: 37-44 [PMID: 22035028 DOI: 10.3109/00207454.2011.620198]
24   **Khan TS**. Off spells and dyskinesias: pharmacologic management of motor complications. *Cleve Clin J Med* 2012; **79** Suppl 2: S8-13 [PMID: 22761271 DOI: 10.3949/ccjm.79.s2a.02]
25   **Jankovic J**, Stacy M. Medical management of levodopa-associated motor complications in patients with Parkinson's disease. *CNS Drugs* 2007; **21**: 677-692 [PMID: 17630819]
26   **Kikuchi S**. Motor fluctuations in Parkinson's disease. *J Neurol* 2007; **254** (Suppl 5): 32-40 [DOI: 10.1007/s00415-007-5006-6]
27   **Chan DKY**. Adjuvant treatment to levodopa in patients with motor complications. *Focus on Parkinson's Disease* 2012; **23**: 10-15
28   **Zesiewicz TA**, Sullivan KL, Hauser RA. Levodopa-induced dyskinesia in Parkinson's disease: epidemiology, etiology, and treatment. *Curr Neurol Neurosci Rep* 2007; **7**: 302-310 [PMID: 17618536]
29   **Warren Olanow C**, Kieburtz K, Rascol O, Poewe W, Schapira AH, Emre M, Nissinen H, Leinonen M, Stocchi F; Stalevo Reduction in Dyskinesia Evaluation in Parkinson's Disease (STRIDE-PD) Investigators. Factors predictive of the development of Levodopa-induced dyskinesia and wearing-off in Parkinson's disease. *Mov Disord* 2013; **28**: 1064-1071 [PMID: 23630119 DOI: 10.1002/mds.25364]
30   **Pirtošek Z**. Myths and realities of continuous dopaminergic stimulation. *Psychiatr Danub* 2011; **23**: 80-83 [PMID: 21448103]
31   **Fernandez HH**, Vanagunas A, Odin P, Espay AJ, Hauser RA, Standaert DG, Chatamra K, Benesh J, Pritchett Y, Hass SL, Lenz RA. Levodopa-carbidopa intestinal gel in advanced Parkinson's disease open-label study: interim results. *Parkinsonism Relat Disord* 2013; **19**: 339-345 [PMID: 23287001 DOI: 10.1016/j.parkreldis.2012.11.020]
32   **Zibetti M**, Merola A, Artusi CA, Rizzi L, Angrisano S, Reggio D, De Angelis C, Rizzone M, Lopiano L. Levodopa/carbidopa intestinal gel infusion in advanced Parkinson's disease: a 7-year experience. *Eur J Neurol* 2014; **21**: 312-318 [PMID: 24313838 DOI: 10.1111/ene.12309]
33   **Nyholm D**, Odin P, Johansson A, Chatamra K, Locke C, Dutta S, Othman AA. Pharmacokinetics of levodopa, carbidopa, and 3-O-methyldopa following 16-hour jejunal infusion of levodopa-carbidopa intestinal gel in advanced Parkinson's disease patients. *AAPS J* 2013; **15**: 316-323 [PMID: 23229334 DOI: 10.1208/s12248-012-9439-1]
34   **Olanow CW**, Kieburtz K, Odin P, Espay AJ, Standaert DG, Fernandez HH, Vanagunas A, Othman AA, Widnell KL, Robieson WZ, Pritchett Y, Chatamra K, Benesh J, Lenz RA, Antonini A. Continuous intrajejunal infusion of levodopa-carbidopa intestinal gel for patients with advanced Parkinson's disease: a randomised, controlled, double-blind, double-dummy study. *Lancet Neurol* 2014; **13**: 141-149 [PMID: 24361112 DOI: 10.1016/S1474-4422(13)70293-X]

35   **Jost WH**. Unwanted effects and interaction of intrajejunal levodopa/carbidopa administration. *Expert Opin Drug Saf* 2014; **13**: 447-458 [PMID: 24611456 DOI: 10.1517/14740338.2014.896 336]

36   **Urban PP**, Wellach I, Faiss S, Layer P, Rosenkranz T, Knop K, Weis J. Subacute axonal neuropathy in Parkinson's disease with cobalamin and vitamin B6 deficiency under duodopa therapy. *Mov Disord* 2010; **25**: 1748-1752 [PMID: 20740570 DOI: 10.1002/mds.23342]

37   **Skodda S**, Müller T. Refractory epileptic seizures due to vitamin B6 deficiency in a patient with Parkinson's disease under duodopa® therapy. *J Neural Transm* 2013; **120**: 315-318 [PMID: 22798026 DOI: 10.1007/s00702-012-0856-1]

38   **Toth C**, Breithaupt K, Ge S, Duan Y, Terris JM, Thiessen A, Wiebe S, Zochodne DW, Suchowersky O. Levodopa, methylmalonic acid, and neuropathy in idiopathic Parkinson disease. *Ann Neurol* 2010; **68**: 28-36 [PMID: 20582991 DOI: 10.1002/ana.22021]

39   **Rajabally YA**, Martey J. Neuropathy in Parkinson disease: prevalence and determinants. *Neurology* 2011; **77**: 1947-1950 [PMID: 22049200 DOI: 10.1212/WNL.0b013e31823a0ee4]

40   **Müller T**, van Laar T, Cornblath DR, Odin P, Klostermann F, Grandas FJ, Ebersbach G, Urban PP, Valldeoriola F, Antonini A. Peripheral neuropathy in Parkinson's disease: levodopa exposure and implications for duodenal delivery. *Parkinsonism Relat Disord* 2013; **19**: 501-507; discussion 501 [PMID: 23453891 DOI: 10.1016/j.parkreldis.2013.02.006]

41   **Brooks DJ**. Dopamine agonists: their role in the treatment of Parkinson's disease. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry* 2000; **68**: 685-689 [PMID: 10811688]

42   **Perez-Lloret S**, Rascol O. Dopamine receptor agonists for the treatment of early or advanced Parkinson's disease. *CNS Drugs* 2010; **24**: 941-968 [PMID: 20932066 DOI: 10.2165/11537810-000 000000-00000]

43   **Bonuccelli U**, Pavese N. Dopamine agonists in the treatment of Parkinson's disease. *Expert Rev Neurother* 2006; **6**: 81-89 [PMID: 16466315]

44   **Stowe RL**, Ives NJ, Clarke C, van Hilten J, Ferreira J, Hawker RJ, Shah L, Wheatley K, Gray R. Dopamine agonist therapy in early Parkinson's disease. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2008; (**2**): CD006564 [PMID: 18425954 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD006564]

45   **Bonuccelli U**, Del Dotto P, Rascol O. Role of dopamine receptor agonists in the treatment of early Parkinson's disease. *Parkinsonism Relat Disord* 2009; **15** Suppl 4: S44-S53 [PMID: 20123557 DOI: 10.1016/S1353-8020(09)70835-1]

46   **Chondrogiorgi M**, Tatsioni A, Reichmann H, Konitsiotis S. Dopamine agonist monotherapy in Parkinson's disease and potential risk factors for dyskinesia: a meta-analysis of levodopa-controlled trials. *Eur J Neurol* 2014; **21**: 433-440 [PMID: 24313869 DOI: 10.1111/ene.12318]

47   **Jamrozik Z**, Janik P. Role of dopaminergic receptor agonists in the treatment of Parkinson's disease. *Med Sci Monit* 1997; **3**: RA948-955

48   **Marek K**, Jennings D, Seibyl J. Do dopamine agonists or levodopa modify Parkinson's disease progression? *Eur J Neurol* 2002; **9** Suppl 3: 15-22 [PMID: 12464117]

49   **Calne DB**, Teychenne PF, Leigh PN, Bamji AN, Greenacre JK. Treatment of parkinsonism with bromocriptine. *Lancet* 1974; **2**: 1355-1356 [PMID: 4143315]

50   **Wiesbeck GA**. Dopaminergic compounds: clinical data. In: Spanagel R, Mann KF (editors). Drugs for Relapse Prevention of Alcoholism. Birkhäuser Basel: Switzerland, 2005: 155-161

51   **Hely MA**, Morris JG, Reid WG, Trafficante R. Sydney Multicenter Study of Parkinson's disease: non-L-dopa-responsive problems dominate at 15 years. *Mov Disord* 2005; **20**: 190-199 [PMID: 15551331]

52   **Katzenschlager R**, Head J, Schrag A, Ben-Shlomo Y, Evans A, Lees AJ; Parkinson's Disease Research Group of the United Kingdom. Fourteen-year final report of the randomized PDRG-UK trial comparing three initial treatments in PD. *Neurology* 2008; **71**: 474-480 [PMID: 18579806 DOI: 10.1212/01.wnl.0000310812.43352.66]

53   **Tan LC**, Ng KK, Au WL, Lee RK, Chan YH, Tan NC. Bromocriptine use and the risk of valvular heart disease. *Mov Disord* 2009; **24**: 344-349 [PMID: 18989898 DOI: 10.1002/mds.22228]

54   **Hofmann C**, Penner U, Dorow R, Pertz HH, Jähnichen S, Horowski R, Latté KP, Palla D, Schurad B. Lisuride, a dopamine receptor agonist with 5-HT2B receptor antagonist properties: absence of cardiac valvulopathy adverse drug reaction reports supports the concept of a crucial role for 5-HT2B receptor agonism in cardiac valvular fibrosis. *Clin Neuropharmacol* 2006; **29**: 80-86

55   **Antonini A**, Poewe W. Fibrotic heart-valve reactions to dopamine-agonist treatment in Parkinson's disease. *Lancet Neurol* 2007; **6**: 826-829

56   **Woitalla D**, Müller T, Benz S, Horowski R, Przuntek H. Transdermal lisuride delivery in the treatment of Parkinson's disease. *J Neural Transm Suppl* 2004; (**68**): 89-95 [PMID: 15354393]

57   **Rinne UK**, Bracco F, Chouza C, Dupont E, Gershanik O, Marti Masso JF, Montastruc JL, Marsden CD. Early treatment of Parkinson's disease with cabergoline delays the onset of motor complications. Results of a double-blind levodopa controlled trial. The PKDS009 Study Group. *Drugs* 1998; **55** Suppl 1: 23-30 [PMID: 9483167]

58   **Del Dotto P**, Gambaccini G, Canepara D, Berti C, Bernardini S, Bonuccelli U. Bedtime cabergoline in Parkinson's disease patients with excessive daytime sleepiness induced by dopamine agonists. *Neurol Sci* 2003; **24**: 170-171 [PMID: 14598071]

59   **Geminiani G**, Fetoni V, Genitrini S, Giovannini P, Tamma F, Caraceni T. Cabergoline in Parkinson's disease complicated by motor fluctuations. *Mov Disord* 1996; **11**: 495-500 [PMID: 8866490]

60   **Odin P**, Oehlwein C, Storch A, Polzer U, Werner G, Renner R, Shing M, Ludolph A, Schüler P. Efficacy and safety of high-dose cabergoline in Parkinson's disease. *Acta Neurol Scand* 2006; **113**: 18-24 [PMID: 16367894]

61   **Ling LH**, Ahlskog JE, Munger TM, Limper AH, Oh JK. Constrictive pericarditis and pleuropulmonary disease linked to ergot dopamine agonist therapy (cabergoline) for Parkinson's disease. *Mayo Clin Proc* 1999; **74**: 371-375 [PMID: 10221467]

62   **Townsend M**, MacIver DH. Constrictive pericarditis and pleuropulmonary fibrosis secondary to cabergoline treatment for Parkinson's disease. *Heart* 2004; **90**: e47 [PMID: 15253989]

63   **Pinero A**, Marcos-Alberca P, Fortes J. Cabergoline-related severe restrictive mitral regurgitation. *N Engl J Med* 2005; **353**: 1976-1977 [PMID: 16267335]

64   **Peralta C**, Wolf E, Alber H, Seppi K, Müller S, Bösch S, Wenning GK, Pachinger O, Poewe W. Valvular heart disease in Parkinson's disease vs. controls: An echocardiographic study. *Mov Disord* 2006; **21**: 1109-1113 [PMID: 16622856]

65   **Rasmussen VG**, Østergaard K, Dupont E, Poulsen SH. The risk of valvular regurgitation in patients with Parkinson's disease treated with dopamine receptor agonists. *Mov Disord* 2011; **26**: 801-806 [PMID: 21671508]

66   **Millan MJ**. From the cell to the clinic: a comparative review of the partial D2/D3receptor agonist and α2-adrenoceptor antagonist, piribedil, in the treatment of Parkinson's disease. *Pharmacol Ther* 2010; **128**: 229-273 [PMID: 20600305 DOI: 10.1016/j.pharmthera.2010.06.002]

67   **Rascol O**, Dubois B, Caldas AC, Senn S, Del Signore S, Lees A; Parkinson REGAIN Study Group. Early piribedil monotherapy of Parkinson's disease: A planned seven-month report of the REGAIN study. *Mov Disord* 2006; **21**: 2110-2115 [PMID: 17013922]

68   **Castro-Caldas A**, Delwaide P, Jost W, Merello M, Williams A, Lamberti P, Aguilar M, Del Signore S, Cesaro P; Parkinson-Control Study Group. The Parkinson-Control study: a 1-year randomized, double-blind trial comparing piribedil (150 mg/day) with bromocriptine (25 mg/day) in early combination with levodopa in Parkinson's disease. *Mov Disord* 2006; **21**: 500-509 [PMID: 16267842]

69   **Evidente VG**, Esteban RP, Domingo FM, Carbajal LO, Parazo MA. Piribedil as an adjunct to levodopa in advanced Parkinson's disease: the Asian experience. *Parkinsonism Relat Disord* 2003; **10**:

117-121 [PMID: 14644004]

70 **Simon N**, Micallef J, Reynier JC, Lesourd M, Witjas T, Alicherif A, Azulay JP, Blin O. End-of-dose akinesia after a single intravenous infusion of the dopaminergic agonist piribedil in Parkinson's disease patients: a pharmacokinetic/pharmacodynamic, randomized, double-blind study. *Mov Disord* 2005; **20**: 803-809 [PMID: 15726579]

71 **Rascol O**, Azulay JP, Blin O, Bonnet AM, Brefel-Courbon C, Césaro P, Damier P, Debilly B, Durif F, Galitzky M, Grouin JM, Pennaforte S, Villafane G, Yaici S, Agid Y. Orodispersible sublingual piribedil to abort OFF episodes: a single dose placebo-controlled, randomized, double-blind, cross-over study. *Mov Disord* 2010; **25**: 368-376 [PMID: 20063435 DOI: 10.1002/mds.22922]

72 **Thobois S**, Lhommée E, Klinger H, Ardouin C, Schmitt E, Bichon A, Kistner A, Castrioto A, Xie J, Fraix V, Pelissier P, Chabardes S, Mertens P, Quesada JL, Bosson JL, Pollak P, Broussolle E, Krack P. Parkinsonian apathy responds to dopaminergic stimulation of D2/D3 receptors with piribedil. *Brain* 2013; **136**: 1568-1577 [PMID: 23543483 DOI: 10.1093/brain/awt067]

73 **Gouraud A**, Millaret A, Descotes J, Vial T; French Association of Regional Pharmacovigilance Centres. Piribedil-induced sleep attacks in patients without Parkinson disease: a case series. *Clin Neuropharmacol* 2011; **34**: 104-107 [PMID: 21586915 DOI: 10.1097/WNF.0b013e31821f0d8b]

74 **Zareba G**. Rotigotine: a novel dopamine agonist for the transdermal treatment of Parkinson's disease. *Drugs Today* (Barc) 2006; **42**: 21-28 [PMID: 16511608]

75 **Zhou CQ**, Li SS, Chen ZM, Li FQ, Lei P, Peng GG. Rotigotine transdermal patch in Parkinson's disease: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e69738 [PMID: 23936090 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0069738]

76 **Giladi N**, Boroojerdi B, Surmann E. The safety and tolerability of rotigotine transdermal system over a 6-year period in patients with early-stage Parkinson's disease. *J Neural Transm* 2013; **120**: 1321-1329 [PMID: 23508526 DOI: 10.1007/s00702-013-1001-5]

77 **Nicholas AP**, Borgohain R, Chaná P, Surmann E, Thompson EL, Bauer L, Whitesides J, Elmer LW. A randomized study of rotigotine dose response on 'off' time in advanced Parkinson's disease. *J Parkinsons Dis* 2014; **4**: 361-373 [PMID: 24643203 DOI: 10.3233/JPD-130320]

78 **Poewe WH**, Rascol O, Quinn N, Tolosa E, Oertel WH, Martignoni E, Rupp M, Boroojerdi B; SP 515 Investigators. Efficacy of pramipexole and transdermal rotigotine in advanced Parkinson's disease: a double-blind, double-dummy, randomised controlled trial. *Lancet Neurol* 2007; **6**: 513-520 [PMID: 17509486]

79 **Watts RL**, Lyons KE, Pahwa R, Sethi K, Stern M, Hauser RA, Olanow W, Gray AM, Adams B, Earl NL. Onset of dyskinesia with adjunct ropinirole prolonged-release or additional levodopa in early Parkinson's disease. *Mov Disord* 2010; **25**: 858-866 [PMID: 20461803 DOI: 10.1002/mds.22890]

80 **Reichmann H**, Cooper J, Rolfe K, Martinez-Martin P. Sleep Duration and "on" Time during Different Periods of the Day and Night in Patients with Advanced Parkinson's Disease Receiving Adjunctive Ropinirole Prolonged Release. *Parkinsons Dis* 2011; **2011**: 354760 [PMID: 21687750 DOI: 10.4061/2011/354760]

81 **Hauser RA**, Reichmann H, Lew M, Asgharian A, Makumi C, Shulman KJ. Long-term, open-label study of once-daily ropinirole prolonged release in early Parkinson's disease. *Int J Neurosci* 2011; **121**: 246-253 [PMID: 21244307 DOI: 10.3109/00207454.2010.546538]

82 **Ray Chaudhuri K**, Martinez-Martin P, Rolfe KA, Cooper J, Rockett CB, Giorgi L, Ondo WG. Improvements in nocturnal symptoms with ropinirole prolonged release in patients with advanced Parkinson's disease. *Eur J Neurol* 2012; **19**: 105-113 [PMID: 21699627 DOI: 10.1111/j.1468-1331.2011.03442.x]

83 **Hersh BP**, Earl NL, Hauser RA, Stacy M. Early treatment benefits of ropinirole prolonged release in Parkinson's disease patients with motor fluctuations. *Mov Disord* 2010; **25**: 927-931 [PMID: 20461810 DOI: 10.1002/mds.23040]

84 **Lyons KE**, Pahwa R. An open-label conversion study of pramipexole to ropinirole prolonged release in Parkinson's disease. *Mov Disord* 2009; **24**: 2121-2127 [PMID: 19768728 DOI: 10.1002/mds.22750]

85 **Titlic M**, Tonkic A, Jukic I, Lusic I, Dikanovic M. Side effects of ropinirole in patients with idiopathic Parkinson's disease. *Bratisl Lek Listy* 2008; **109**: 273-275 [PMID: 18700440]

86 **Zagmutt FJ**, Tarrants ML. Indirect comparisons of adverse events and dropout rates in early Parkinson's disease trials of pramipexole, ropinirole, and rasagiline. *Int J Neurosci* 2012; **122**: 345-353 [PMID: 22304415 DOI: 10.3109/00207454.2012.660586]

87 **Kieburtz K**; Parkinson Study Group PramiBID Investigators. Twice-daily, low-dose pramipexole in early Parkinson's disease: a randomized, placebo-controlled trial. *Mov Disord* 2011; **26**: 37-44 [PMID: 20925067 DOI: 10.1002/mds.23396]

88 **Viallet F**, Pitel S, Lancrenon S, Blin O. Evaluation of the safety and tolerability of rasagiline in the treatment of the early stages of Parkinson's disease. *Curr Med Res Opin* 2013; **29**: 23-31 [PMID: 23176073 DOI: 10.1185/03007995.2012.752351]

89 **Utsumi H**, Okuma Y, Kano O, Suzuki Y, Iijima M, Tomimitsu H, Hashida H, Kubo S, Suzuki M, Nanri K, Matsumura M, Murakami H, Hattori N. Evaluation of the efficacy of pramipexole for treating levodopa-induced dyskinesia in patients with Parkinson's disease. *Intern Med* 2013; **52**: 325-332 [PMID: 23370739]

90 **Takahashi H**, Nogawa S, Tachibana H, Kawamura J, Abe T, Ogino Y, Kashihara K, Hamada T, Kowa H; Pramipexole Switching Study (PraSS) Group. Pramipexole safely replaces ergot dopamine agonists with either rapid or slow switching. *J Int Med Res* 2008; **36**: 106-114 [PMID: 18230274]

91 **Ohno H**, Nakajima M, Fujioka S, Iwamoto K, Kawamura M. Overnight switching from ergot-derived dopamine agonists to pramipexole in patients with Parkinson's disease: an open preliminary trial in Japan. *J Clin Neurosci* 2009; **16**: 790-792 [PMID: 19286385 DOI: 10.1016/j.jocn.2008.09.001]

92 **Morita A**, Okuma Y, Kamei S, Yoshii F, Yamamoto T, Hashimoto S, Utsumi H, Hatano T, Hattori N, Matsumura M, Takahashi K, Nogawa S, Watanabe Y, Miyamoto T, Miyamoto M, Hirata K. Pramipexole reduces the prevalence of fatigue in patients with Parkinson's disease. *Intern Med* 2011; **50**: 2163-2168 [PMID: 21963735]

93 **Barone P**, Poewe W, Albrecht S, Debieuvre C, Massey D, Rascol O, Tolosa E, Weintraub D. Pramipexole for the treatment of depressive symptoms in patients with Parkinson's disease: a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet Neurol* 2010; **9**: 573-580 [PMID: 20452823 DOI: 10.1016/S1474-4422(10)70106-X]

94 **Schapira AH**, McDermott MP, Barone P, Comella CL, Albrecht S, Hsu HH, Massey DH, Mizuno Y, Poewe W, Rascol O, Marek K. Pramipexole in patients with early Parkinson's disease (PROUD): a randomised delayed-start trial. *Lancet Neurol* 2013; **12**: 747-755 [PMID: 23726851 DOI: 10.1016/S1474-4422(13)70117-0]

95 **Hametner EM**, Seppi K, Poewe W. Pramipexole extended release in Parkinson's disease. *Expert Rev Neurother* 2011; **11**: 1229-1234 [PMID: 21864066 DOI: 10.1586/ern.11.122]

96 **Hauser RA**. Early pharmacologic treatment in Parkinson's disease. *Am J Manag Care* 2010; **16** Suppl Implications: S100-S107 [PMID: 20297870]

97 **Poewe W**, Rascol O, Barone P, Hauser RA, Mizuno Y, Haaksma M, Salin L, Juhel N, Schapira AH; Pramipexole ER Studies Group. Extended-release pramipexole in early Parkinson disease: a 33-week randomized controlled trial. *Neurology* 2011; **77**: 759-766 [PMID: 21832218 DOI: 10.1212/WNL.0b013e31822affb0]

98 **Schapira AH**, Barone P, Hauser RA, Mizuno Y, Rascol O, Busse M, Salin L, Juhel N, Poewe W; Pramipexole ER Studies Group. Extended-release pramipexole in advanced Parkinson disease: a randomized controlled trial. *Neurology* 2011; **77**: 767-774 [PMID: 21832216 DOI: 10.1212/WNL.0b013e31822affdb]

99 **Takanashi M**, Shimo Y, Hatano T, Oyama G, Hattori N. Efficacy and safety of a once-daily extended-release formulation of pramipexole switched from an immediate-release formulation

in patients with advanced Parkinson's disease: results from an open-label study. *Drug Res* (Stuttg) 2013; **63**: 639-643 [PMID: 23884661 DOI: 10.1055/s-0033-1351257]

100 **Micallef J**, Rey M, Eusebio A, Audebert C, Rouby F, Jouve E, Tardieu S, Blin O. Antiparkinsonian drug-induced sleepiness: a double-blind placebo-controlled study of L-dopa, bromocriptine and pramipexole in healthy subjects. *Br J Clin Pharmacol* 2009; **67**: 333-340 [PMID: 19220275 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2125.2008.03310.x]

101 **Brusa L**, Pavino V, Massimetti MC, Bove R, Iani C, Stanzione P. The effect of dopamine agonists on cognitive functions in non-demented early-mild Parkinson's disease patients. *Funct Neurol* 2013; **28**: 13-17 [PMID: 23731911]

102 **Ribarič S**. The pharmacological properties and therapeutic use of apomorphine. *Molecules* 2012; **17**: 5289-5309 [PMID: 22565480 DOI: 10.3390/molecules17055289]

103 **Pietz K**, Hagell P, Odin P. Subcutaneous apomorphine in late stage Parkinson's disease: a long term follow up. *J Neurol Neurosurg Psychiatry* 1998; **65**: 709-716 [PMID: 9810943]

104 **Manson AJ**, Hanagasi H, Turner K, Patsalos PN, Carey P, Ratnaraj N, Lees AJ. Intravenous apomorphine therapy in Parkinson's disease: clinical and pharmacokinetic observations. *Brain* 2001; **124**: 331-340 [PMID: 11157560]

105 **Grosset KA**, Malek N, Morgan F, Grosset DG. Inhaled apomorphine in patients with 'on-off' fluctuations: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, clinic and home based, parallel-group study. *J Parkinsons Dis* 2013; **3**: 31-37 [PMID: 23938309 DOI: 10.3233/JPD-120142]

106 **Martinez-Martin P**, Reddy P, Antonini A, Henriksen T, Katzenschlager R, Odin P, Todorova A, Naidu Y, Tluk S, Chandiramani C, Martin A, Chaudhuri KR. Chronic subcutaneous infusion therapy with apomorphine in advanced Parkinson's disease compared to conventional therapy: a real life study of non motor effect. *J Parkinsons Dis* 2011; **1**: 197-203 [PMID: 23934921 DOI: 10.3233/JPD-2011-11037]

107 **Drapier S**, Gillioz AS, Leray E, Péron J, Rouaud T, Marchand A, Vérin M. Apomorphine infusion in advanced Parkinson's patients with subthalamic stimulation contraindications. *Parkinsonism Relat Disord* 2012; **18**: 40-44 [PMID: 21890396 DOI: 10.1016/j.parkreldis.2011.08.010]

108 **Slotty PJ**, Wille C, Kinfe TM, Vesper J. Continuous perioperative apomorphine in deep brain stimulation surgery for Parkinson's disease. *Br J Neurosurg* 2014; **28**: 378-382 [PMID: 24073755 DOI: 10.3109/02688697.2013.841859]

109 **Schulze A**, Oehler B, Urban N, Schaefer M, Hill K. Apomorphine is a bimodal modulator of TRPA1 channels. *Mol Pharmacol* 2013; **83**: 542-551 [PMID: 23220749 DOI: 10.1124/mol.112.081976]

110 **Victor D**, Waters C. Monoamine Oxidase Inhibitors in Parkinson's Disease. In: Pahwa R, Lyons KE, Koller W, editors. Handbook of Parkinson's Disease, Third Edition. New York: Marcel Dekker, Inc., 2003: 425-436

111 **Magyar K**. The pharmacology of selegiline. *Int Rev Neurobiol* 2011; **100**: 65-84 [PMID: 21971003 DOI: 10.1016/B978-0-12-386467-3.00004-2]

112 **Knudsen Gerber DS**. Selegiline and rasagiline: twins or distant cousins? *Consult Pharm* 2011; **26**: 48-51 [PMID: 21224199 DOI: 10.4140/TCP.n.2011.48]

113 **Chen JJ**. Pharmacologic safety concerns in Parkinson's disease: facts and insights. *Int J Neurosci* 2011; **121** Suppl 2: 45-52 [PMID: 22035029 DOI: 10.3109/00207454.2011.620193]

114 **Bartl J**, Müller T, Grünblatt E, Gerlach M, Riederer P. Chronic monoamine oxidase-B inhibitor treatment blocks monoamine oxidase-A enzyme activity. *J Neural Transm* 2014; **121**: 379-383 [PMID: 24272680 DOI: 10.1007/s00702-013-1120-z]

115 **Lew MF**, Hauser RA, Hurtig HI, Ondo WG, Wojcieszek J, Goren T, Fitzer-Attas CJ. Long-term efficacy of rasagiline in early Parkinson's disease. *Int J Neurosci* 2010; **120**: 404-408 [PMID: 20504210 DOI: 10.3109/00207451003778744]

116 **Reichmann H**, Jost WH. Efficacy and tolerability of rasagiline in daily clinical use--a post-marketing observational study in patients with Parkinson's disease. *Eur J Neurol* 2010; **17**: 1164-1171 [PMID: 20236308 DOI: 10.1111/j.1468-1331.2010.02986.x]

117 **Mizuno Y**, Kondo T, Kuno S, Nomoto M, Yanagisawa N. Early addition of selegiline to L-Dopa treatment is beneficial for patients with Parkinson disease. *Clin Neuropharmacol* 2010; **33**: 1-4 [PMID: 19935410 DOI: 10.1097/WNF.0b013e3181bbf45c]

118 **Caslake R**, Macleod A, Ives N, Stowe R, Counsell C. Monoamine oxidase B inhibitors versus other dopaminergic agents in early Parkinson's disease. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2009; (**4**): CD006661 [PMID: 19821381 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD006661]

119 **Riederer P**, Laux G. MAO-inhibitors in Parkinson's Disease. *Exp Neurobiol* 2011; **20**: 1-17 [PMID: 22110357 DOI: 10.5607/en.2011.20.1.1]

120 **Leegwater-Kim J**, Bortan E. The role of rasagiline in the treatment of Parkinson's disease. *Clin Interv Aging* 2010; **5**: 149-156 [PMID: 20517484]

121 **Lees A**. Alternatives to levodopa in the initial treatment of early Parkinson's disease. *Drugs Aging* 2005; **22**: 731-740 [PMID: 16156677]

122 **Chen JJ**, Swope DM, Dashtipour K. Comprehensive review of rasagiline, a second-generation monoamine oxidase inhibitor, for the treatment of Parkinson's disease. *Clin Ther* 2007; **29**: 1825-1849 [PMID: 18035186]

123 **Keating GM**, Lyseng-Williamson KA, Hoy SM. Rasagiline: a guide to its use in Parkinson's disease. *CNS Drugs* 2012; **26**: 781-785 [PMID: 22834567 DOI: 10.2165/11207570-000000000-00000]

124 **Stocchi F**, Rabey JM. Effect of rasagiline as adjunct therapy to levodopa on severity of OFF in Parkinson's disease. *Eur J Neurol* 2011; **18**: 1373-1378 [PMID: 21895884 DOI: 10.1111/j.1468-1331.2011.03512.x]

125 **Wilson RE**, Seeberger LC, Silver D, Griffith A, Conner JB, Salzman PM; LEGATO Investigators. Rasagiline: time to onset of antiparkinson effect is similar when used as a monotherapy or adjunct treatment. *Neurologist* 2011; **17**: 318-324 [PMID: 22045282 DOI: 10.1097/NRL.0b013e31822f6872]

126 **Korchounov A**, Winter Y, Rössy W. Combined beneficial effect of rasagiline on motor function and depression in de novo PD. *Clin Neuropharmacol* 2012; **35**: 121-124 [PMID: 22561875 DOI: 10.1097/WNF.0b013e31823b1da8]

127 **Müller T**, Hoffmann JA, Dimpfel W, Oehlwein C. Switch from selegiline to rasagiline is beneficial in patients with Parkinson's disease. *J Neural Transm* 2013; **120**: 761-765 [PMID: 23196982 DOI: 10.1007/s00702-012-0927-3]

128 **Zhao YJ**, Wee HL, Au WL, Seah SH, Luo N, Li SC, Tan LC. Selegiline use is associated with a slower progression in early Parkinson's disease as evaluated by Hoehn and Yahr Stage transition times. *Parkinsonism Relat Disord* 2011; **17**: 194-197 [PMID: 21159539 DOI: 10.1016/j.parkreldis.2010.11.010]

129 **Olanow CW**, Rascol O, Hauser R, Feigin PD, Jankovic J, Lang A, Langston W, Melamed E, Poewe W, Stocchi F, Tolosa E; ADAGIO Study Investigators. A double-blind, delayed-start trial of rasagiline in Parkinson's disease. *N Engl J Med* 2009; **361**: 1268-1278 [PMID: 19776408 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0809335]

130 **Rascol O**, Fitzer-Attas CJ, Hauser R, Jankovic J, Lang A, Langston JW, Melamed E, Poewe W, Stocchi F, Tolosa E, Eyal E, Weiss YM, Olanow CW. A double-blind, delayed-start trial of rasagiline in Parkinson's disease (the ADAGIO study): prespecified and post-hoc analyses of the need for additional therapies, changes in UPDRS scores, and non-motor outcomes. *Lancet Neurol* 2011; **10**: 415-423 [PMID: 21482191 DOI: 10.1016/S1474-4422(11)70073-4]

131 **Jenner P**, Langston JW. Explaining ADAGIO: a critical review of the biological basis for the clinical effects of rasagiline. *Mov Disord* 2011; **26**: 2316-2323 [PMID: 21953831 DOI: 10.1002/mds.23926]

132 **Binda C**, Milczek EM, Bonivento D, Wang J, Mattevi A, Edmondson DE. Lights and shadows on monoamine oxidase inhibition in neuroprotective pharmacological therapies. *Curr Top Med Chem* 2011; **11**: 2788-2796 [PMID: 22039878]

133 **Naoi M**, Maruyama W. Monoamine oxidase inhibitors as

neuroprotective agents in age-dependent neurodegenerative disorders. *Curr Pharm Des* 2010; **16**: 2799-2817 [PMID: 20698822]

134 **Fahn S**, Oakes D, Shoulson I, Kieburtz K, Rudolph A, Lang A, Olanow CW, Tanner C, Marek K; Parkinson Study Group. Levodopa and the progression of Parkinson's disease. *N Engl J Med* 2004; **351**: 2498-2508 [PMID: 15590952]

135 **Mizuno Y**, Kanazawa I, Kuno S, Yanagisawa N, Yamamoto M, Kondo T. Placebo-controlled, double-blind dose-finding study of entacapone in fluctuating parkinsonian patients. *Mov Disord* 2007; **22**: 75-80 [PMID: 17094103]

136 **Grandas F**, Hernández B; PRACTICOMT Study Group. Long-term effectiveness and quality of life improvement in entacapone-treated Parkinson's disease patients: the effects of an early therapeutic intervention. *Eur J Neurol* 2007; **14**: 282-289 [PMID: 17355548]

137 **Jog M**, Panisset M, Suchowersky O, Réhel B, Schecter R. Naturalistic evaluation of entacapone in patients with signs and symptoms of L-dopa wearing-off . *Curr Med Res Opin* 2008; **24**: 3207-3215 [PMID: 18922214 DOI: 10.1185/03007990802430518]

138 **Damier P**, Viallet F, Ziegler M, Bourdeix I, Rerat K. Levodopa/DDCI and entacapone is the preferred treatment for Parkinson's disease patients with motor fluctuations in routine practice: a retrospective, observational analysis of a large French cohort. *Eur J Neurol* 2008; **15**: 643-648 [PMID: 18582341 DOI: 10.1111/j.1468-1331.2008.02165.x]

139 **Fung VS**, Herawati L, Wan Y; Movement Disorder Society of Australia Clinical Research and Trials Group; QUEST-AP Study Group. Quality of life in early Parkinson's disease treated with levodopa/carbidopa/entacapone. *Mov Disord* 2009; **24**: 25-31 [PMID: 18846551 DOI: 10.1002/mds.21878]

140 **Pellicano C**, Benincasa D, Giovannelli M, Buttarelli FR, Ruggieri S, Pontieri FE. Entacapone in elderly Parkinsonian patients experiencing levodopa-related wearing-off: a pilot study. *Neurol Res* 2009; **31**: 74-76 [PMID: 18691454 DOI: 10.1179/174313208X338052]

141 **Deuschl G**, Vaitkus A, Fox GC, Roscher T, Schremmer D, Gordin A; CAMP Study Group. Efficacy and tolerability of Entacapone versus Cabergoline in parkinsonian patients suffering from wearing-off. *Mov Disord* 2007; **22**: 1550-1555 [PMID: 17516484]

142 **Brooks DJ**, Leinonen M, Kuoppamäki M, Nissinen H. Five-year efficacy and safety of levodopa/DDCI and entacapone in patients with Parkinson's disease. *J Neural Transm* 2008; **115**: 843-849 [PMID: 18259682 DOI: 10.1007/s00702-008-0025-8]

143 **Nissinen H**, Kuoppamäki M, Leinonen M, Schapira AH. Early versus delayed initiation of entacapone in levodopa-treated patients with Parkinson's disease: a long-term, retrospective analysis. *Eur J Neurol* 2009; **16**: 1305-1311 [PMID: 19570145 DOI: 10.1111/j.1468-1331.2009.02726.x]

144 **Hauser RA**, Panisset M, Abbruzzese G, Mancione L, Dronamraju N, Kakarieka A; FIRST-STEP Study Group. Double-blind trial of levodopa/carbidopa/entacapone versus levodopa/carbidopa in early Parkinson's disease. *Mov Disord* 2009; **24**: 541-550 [PMID: 19058133 DOI: 10.1002/mds.22343]

145 **Eggert K**, Skogar O, Amar K, Luotonen L, Kuoppamäki M, Leinonen M, Nissinen H, Oertel W. Direct switch from levodopa/benserazide or levodopa/carbidopa to levodopa/carbidopa/entacapone in Parkinson's disease patients with wearing-off: efficacy, safety and feasibility--an open-label, 6-week study. *J Neural Transm* 2010; **117**: 333-342 [PMID: 20013007 DOI: 10.1007/s00702-009-0344-4]

146 **Lew MF**, Somogyi M, McCague K, Welsh M; Lce QoL Study Group. Immediate versus delayed switch from levodopa/carbidopa to levodopa/carbidopa/entacapone: effects on motor function and quality of life in patients with Parkinson's disease with end-of-dose wearing off. *Int J Neurosci* 2011; **121**: 605-613 [PMID: 21843110 DOI: 10.3109/00207454.2011.598982]

147 **Linazasoro G**, Kulisevsky J, Hernández B; Spanish Stalevo Study Group. Should levodopa dose be reduced when switched to stalevo? *Eur J Neurol* 2008; **15**: 257-261 [PMID: 18215153 DOI: 10.1111/j.1468-1331.2007.02047.x]

148 **Destée A**, Rérat K, Bourdeix I. Is there a difference between

levodopa/ dopa-decarboxylase inhibitor and entacapone and levodopa/dopa-decarboxylase inhibitor dose fractionation strategies in Parkinson's disease patients experiencing symptom re-emergence due to wearing-off? The Honeymoon Study. *Eur Neurol* 2009; **61**: 69-75 [PMID: 19039224 DOI: 10.1159/000177938]

149 **Olanow CW**, Kieburtz K, Stern M, Watts R, Langston JW, Guarnieri M, Hubble J; US01 Study Team. Double-blind, placebo-controlled study of entacapone in levodopa-treated patients with stable Parkinson disease. *Arch Neurol* 2004; **61**: 1563-1568 [PMID: 15477510]

150 **Stocchi F**, Rascol O, Kieburtz K, Poewe W, Jankovic J, Tolosa E, Barone P, Lang AE, Olanow CW. Initiating levodopa/carbidopa therapy with and without entacapone in early Parkinson disease: the STRIDE-PD study. *Ann Neurol* 2010; **68**: 18-27 [PMID: 20582993 DOI: 10.1002/ana.22060]

151 **Fox SH**, Katzenschlager R, Lim SY, Ravina B, Seppi K, Coelho M, Poewe W, Rascol O, Goetz CG, Sampaio C. The Movement Disorder Society Evidence-Based Medicine Review Update: Treatments for the motor symptoms of Parkinson's disease. *Mov Disord* 2011; **26** Suppl 3: S2-41 [PMID: 22021173 DOI: 10.1002/mds.23829]

152 **Sampaio C**, Ferreira JJ. Parkinson disease: adjunctive entacapone therapy increases risk of dyskinesia. *Nat Rev Neurol* 2010; **6**: 590-591 [PMID: 21048799 DOI: 10.1038/nrneurol.2010.158]

153 **Entacapone to Tolcapone Switch Study Investigators**. Entacapone to tolcapone switch: Multicenter double-blind, randomized, active-controlled trial in advanced Parkinson's disease. *Mov Disord* 2007; **22**: 14-19 [PMID: 17089403]

154 **Graham DJ**, Williams JR, Hsueh YH, Calia K, Levenson M, Pinheiro SP, Macurdy TE, Shih D, Worrall C, Kelman JA. Cardiovascular and mortality risks in Parkinson's disease patients treated with entacapone. *Mov Disord* 2013; **28**: 490-497 [PMID: 23443994 DOI: 10.1002/mds.25351]

155 **Kaakkola S**. Problems with the present inhibitors and a relevance of new and improved COMT inhibitors in Parkinson's disease. *Int Rev Neurobiol* 2010; **95**: 207-225 [PMID: 21095464 DOI: 10.1016/B978-0-12-381326-8.00009-0]

156 **Canesi M**, Zecchinelli AL, Pezzoli G, Antonini A. Clinical experience of tolcapone in advanced Parkinson's disease. *Neurol Sci* 2008; **29** Suppl 5: S380-S382 [PMID: 19381768 DOI: 10.1007/s10072-008-1052-9]

157 **Ebersbach G**, Hahn K, Lorrain M, Storch A. Tolcapone improves sleep in patients with advanced Parkinson's disease (PD). *Arch Gerontol Geriatr* 2010; **51**: e125-e128 [PMID: 20381177 DOI: 10.1016/j.archger.2010.03.008]

158 **Sethi K**, Factor S, Watts R. Quality of life in Parkinson's disease patients following adjunctive tolcapone therapy: results of an open-label, multicenter, community-based trial. *CNS Spectr* 2010; **15**: 27-32 [PMID: 20394182]

159 **Ries V**, Selzer R, Eichhorn T, Oertel WH, Eggert K; German Tolcapone Study Group. Replacing a dopamine agonist by the COMT-inhibitor tolcapone as an adjunct to L-dopa in the treatment of Parkinson's disease: a randomized, multicenter, open-label, parallel-group study. *Clin Neuropharmacol* 2010; **33**: 142-150 [PMID: 20502133 DOI: 10.1097/WNF.0b013e3181d99d6f]

160 **Olanow CW**, Watkins PB. Tolcapone: an efficacy and safety review (2007). *Clin Neuropharmacol* 2007; **30**: 287-294 [PMID: 17909307]

161 **Ebersbach G**, Storch A. Tolcapone in elderly patients with Parkinson's disease: a prospective open-label multicenter non-interventional trial. *Arch Gerontol Geriatr* 2009; **49**: e40-e44 [PMID: 18835049 DOI: 10.1016/j.archger.2008.08.004]

162 **Lew MF**, Kricorian G. Results from a 2-year centralized tolcapone liver enzyme monitoring program. *Clin Neuropharmacol* 2007; **30**: 281-286 [PMID: 17909306]

163 **Eggert K**, Oertel WH, Lees AJ; German Competence Network on Parkinson's disease. Safety and efficacy of tolcapone in the long-term use in Parkinson disease: an observational study. *Clin Neuropharmacol* 2014; **37**: 1-5 [PMID: 24434524 DOI: 10.1097/WNF.0000000000000008]

164 **Ferreira JJ**, Rascol O, Poewe W, Sampaio C, Rocha JF, Nunes T, Almeida L, Soares-da-Silva P; BIA-3202-202 Study Investigator. A double-blind, randomized, placebo and active-controlled study of nebicapone for the treatment of motor fluctuations in Parkinson's disease. *CNS Neurosci Ther* 2010; **16**: 337-347 [PMID: 20653695 DOI: 10.1111/j.1755-5949.2010.00145.x]

165 **Ferreira JJ**, Almeida L, Cunha L, Ticmeanu M, Rosa MM, Januário C, Mitu CE, Coelho M, Correia-Guedes L, Morgadinho A, Nunes T, Wright LC, Falcão A, Sampaio C, Soares-da-Silva P. Effects of nebicapone on levodopa pharmacokinetics, catechol-O-methyltransferase activity, and motor fluctuations in patients with Parkinson disease. *Clin Neuropharmacol* 2008; **31**: 2-18 [PMID: 18303486 DOI: 10.1097/wnf.0b013e3180645cb0]

166 **Schwab RS**, England AC, Poskanzer DC, Young RR. Amantadine in the treatment of Parkinson's disease. *JAMA* 1969; **208**: 1168-1170 [PMID: 5818715]

167 **Singer C**. Managing the patient with newly diagnosed Parkinson disease. *Cleve Clin J Med* 2012; **79** Suppl 2: S3-S7 [PMID: 22761267 DOI: 10.3949/ccjm.79.s2a.01]

168 **Duty S**. Targeting glutamate receptors to tackle the pathogenesis, clinical symptoms and levodopa-induced dyskinesia associated with Parkinson's disease. *CNS Drugs* 2012; **26**: 1017-1032 [PMID: 23114872 DOI: 10.1007/s40263-012-0016-z]

169 **Ory-Magne F**, Corvol JC, Azulay JP, Bonnet AM, Brefel-Courbon C, Damier P, Dellapina E, Destée A, Durif F, Galitzky M, Lebouvier T, Meissner W, Thalamas C, Tison F, Salis A, Sommet A, Viallet F, Vidailhet M, Rascol O. Withdrawing amantadine in dyskinetic patients with Parkinson disease: the AMANDYSK trial. *Neurology* 2014; **82**: 300-307 [PMID: 24371304 DOI: 10.1212/WNL.0000000000000050]

170 **Aoki FY**, Sitar DS. Clinical pharmacokinetics of amantadine hydrochloride. *Clin Pharmacokinet* 1988; **14**: 35-51 [PMID: 3280212]

171 **Nishikawa N**, Nagai M, Moritoyo T, Yabe H, Nomoto M. Plasma amantadine concentrations in patients with Parkinson's disease. *Parkinsonism Relat Disord* 2009; **15**: 351-353 [PMID: 18823813 DOI: 10.1016/j.parkreldis.2008.08.005]

172 **Sawada H**, Oeda T, Kuno S, Nomoto M, Yamamoto K, Yamamoto M, Hisanaga K, Kawamura T; Amantadine Study Group. Amantadine for dyskinesias in Parkinson's disease: a randomized controlled trial. *PLoS One* 2010; **5**: e15298 [PMID: 21217832 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0015298]

173 **Wolf E**, Seppi K, Katzenschlager R, Hochschorner G, Ransmayr G, Schwingenschuh P, Ott E, Kloiber I, Haubenberger D, Auff E, Poewe W. Long-term antidyskinetic efficacy of amantadine in Parkinson's disease. *Mov Disord* 2010; **25**: 1357-1363 [PMID: 20198649 DOI: 10.1002/mds.23034]

174 **Malkani R**, Zadikoff C, Melen O, Videnovic A, Borushko E, Simuni T. Amantadine for freezing of gait in patients with Parkinson disease. *Clin Neuropharmacol* 2012; **35**: 266-268 [PMID: 23123688 DOI: 10.1097/WNF.0b013e31826e3406]

175 **Lee JY**, Oh S, Kim JM, Kim JS, Oh E, Kim HT, Jeon BS, Cho JW. Intravenous amantadine on freezing of gait in Parkinson's disease: a randomized controlled trial. *J Neurol* 2013; **260**: 3030-3038 [PMID: 24057149 DOI: 10.1007/s00415-013-7108-7]

176 **Raz A**, Lev N, Orbach-Zinger S, Djaldetti R. Safety of perioperative treatment with intravenous amantadine in patients with Parkinson disease. *Clin Neuropharmacol* 2013; **36**: 166-169 [PMID: 24045608 DOI: 10.1097/WNF.0b013e31829bd066]

177 **Chan HF**, Kukkle PL, Merello M, Lim SY, Poon YY, Moro E. Amantadine improves gait in PD patients with STN stimulation. *Parkinsonism Relat Disord* 2013; **19**: 316-319 [PMID: 23218842 DOI: 10.1016/j.parkreldis.2012.11.005]

178 **Chang KC**, Kim MK, Wee WR, Lee JH. Corneal endothelial dysfunction associated with amantadine toxicity. *Cornea* 2008; **27**: 1182-1185 [PMID: 19034138 DOI: 10.1097/ICO.0b013e318180e526]

179 **Gondim Fde A**, Costa HA, Taunay TC, de Oliveira GR, Ferreira JM, Rola FH. Transient amantadine-induced musical hallucinations in a patient with Parkinson's disease. *Mov Disord* 2010; **25**: 1505-1506 [PMID: 20629118 DOI: 10.1002/mds.22553]

180 **Manini AF**, Raspberry D, Hoffman RS, Nelson LS. QT prolongation and Torsades de Pointes following overdose of ziprasidone and amantadine. *J Med Toxicol* 2007; **3**: 178-181 [PMID: 18072173]

181 **Schwartz M**, Patel M, Kazzi Z, Morgan B. Cardiotoxicity after massive amantadine overdose. *J Med Toxicol* 2008; **4**: 173-179 [PMID: 18821491]

182 **Ossola B**, Schendzielorz N, Chen SH, Bird GS, Tuominen RK, Männistö PT, Hong JS. Amantadine protects dopamine neurons by a dual action: reducing activation of microglia and inducing expression of GDNF in astroglia [corrected]. *Neuropharmacology* 2011; **61**: 574-582 [PMID: 21586298 DOI: 10.1016/j.neuropharm.2011.04.030]

183 **Brocks DR**. Anticholinergic drugs used in Parkinson's disease: An overlooked class of drugs from a pharmacokinetic perspective. *J Pharm Pharm Sci* 1999; **2**: 39-46 [PMID: 10952768]

184 **Gjerden P**, Slørdal L, Bramness JG. The use of antipsychotic and anticholinergic antiparkinson drugs in Norway after the withdrawal of orphenadrine. *Br J Clin Pharmacol* 2009; **68**: 238-242 [PMID: 19694744 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2125.2009.03446.x]

185 **Hollingworth SA**, Rush A, Hall WD, Eadie MJ. Utilization of anti-Parkinson drugs in Australia: 1995-2009. *Pharmacoepidemiol Drug Saf* 2011; **20**: 450-456 [PMID: 21322083 DOI: 10.1002/pds.2114]

186 **Katzenschlager R**, Sampaio C, Costa J, Lees A. Anticholinergics for symptomatic management of Parkinson's disease. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2003; (**2**): CD003735 [PMID: 12804486]

187 **Chan DK**. The art of treating Parkinson disease in the older patient. *Aust Fam Physician* 2003; **32**: 927-931 [PMID: 14650790]

188 **Samuel M**, Maidment I, Boustani M, Fox C. Clinical management of Parkinson'sdisease dementia: pitfalls and progress. *Advances in Psychiatric Treatment* 2006; **12**: 121-129 [DOI: 10.1192/apt.12.2.121]

189 **Olanow CW**, Stern MB, Sethi K. The scientific and clinical basis for the treatment of Parkinson disease (2009). *Neurology* 2009; **72**: S1-S136 [PMID: 19470958 DOI: 10.1212/WNL.0b013e3181a1d44c]

190 **Schrag A**, Schelosky L, Scholz U, Poewe W. Reduction of Parkinsonian signs in patients with Parkinson's disease by dopaminergic versus anticholinergic single-dose challenges. *Mov Disord* 1999; **14**: 252-255 [PMID: 10091618]

191 **Milanov I**. A cross-over clinical and electromyographic assessment of treatment for parkinsonian tremor. *Parkinsonism Relat Disord* 2001; **8**: 67-73 [PMID: 11472883]

192 **Baba Y**, Higuchi MA, Abe H, Fukuyama K, Onozawa R, Uehara Y, Inoue T, Yamada T. Anti-cholinergics for axial symptoms in Parkinson's disease after subthalamic stimulation. *Clin Neurol Neurosurg* 2012; **114**: 1308-1311 [PMID: 22516415 DOI: 10.1016/j.clineuro.2012.03.046]

193 **Pinna A**. Adenosine A2A receptor antagonists in Parkinson's disease: progress in clinical trials from the newly approved istradefylline to drugs in early development and those already discontinued. *CNS Drugs* 2014; **28**: 455-474 [PMID: 24687255 DOI: 10.1007/s40263-014-0161-7]

194 **Saki M**, Yamada K, Koshimura E, Sasaki K, Kanda T. In vitro pharmacological profile of the A2A receptor antagonist istradefylline. *Naunyn Schmiedebergs Arch Pharmacol* 2013; **386**: 963-972 [PMID: 23812646 DOI: 10.1007/s00210-013-0897-5]

195 **Jones N**, Bleickardt C, Mullins D, Parker E, Hodgson R. A2A receptor antagonists do not induce dyskinesias in drug-naive or L-dopa sensitized rats. *Brain Res Bull* 2013; **98**: 163-169 [PMID: 23838432 DOI: 10.1016/j.brainresbull.2013.07.001]

196 **Varty GB**, Hodgson RA, Pond AJ, Grzelak ME, Parker EM, Hunter JC. The effects of adenosine A2A receptor antagonists on haloperidol-induced movement disorders in primates. *Psychopharmacology* (Berl) 2008; **200**: 393-401 [PMID: 18594798 DOI: 10.1007/s00213-008-1214-8]

197 **Uchida S**, Tashiro T, Kawai-Uchida M, Mori A, Jenner P, Kanda T. Adenosine A2A-receptor antagonist istradefylline enhances the motor response of L-DOPA without worsening dyskinesia in

MPTP-treated common marmosets. *J Pharmacol Sci* 2014; **124**: 480-485 [PMID: 24681641]

198   **Fernandez HH**, Greeley DR, Zweig RM, Wojcieszek J, Mori A, Sussman NM; 6002-US-051 Study Group. Istradefylline as monotherapy for Parkinson disease: results of the 6002-US-051 trial. *Parkinsonism Relat Disord* 2010; **16**: 16-20 [PMID: 19616987 DOI: 10.1016/j.parkreldis.2009.06.008]

199   **Pourcher E**, Fernandez HH, Stacy M, Mori A, Ballerini R, Chaikin P. Istradefylline for Parkinson's disease patients experiencing motor fluctuations: results of the KW-6002-US-018 study. *Parkinsonism Relat Disord* 2012; **18**: 178-184 [PMID: 22000279 DOI: 10.1016/j.parkreldis.2011.09.023]

200   **Stacy M**, Silver D, Mendis T, Sutton J, Mori A, Chaikin P, Sussman NM. A 12-week, placebo-controlled study (6002-US-006) of istradefylline in Parkinson disease. *Neurology* 2008; **70**: 2233-2240 [PMID: 18519872 DOI: 10.1212/01.wnl.0000313834.22171.17]

201   **Hauser RA**, Shulman LM, Trugman JM, Roberts JW, Mori A, Ballerini R, Sussman NM; Istradefylline 6002-US-013 Study Group. Study of istradefylline in patients with Parkinson's disease on levodopa with motor fluctuations. *Mov Disord* 2008; **23**: 2177-2185 [PMID: 18831530 DOI: 10.1002/mds.22095]

202   **LeWitt PA**, Guttman M, Tetrud JW, Tuite PJ, Mori A, Chaikin P, Sussman NM; 6002-US-005 Study Group. Adenosine A2A receptor antagonist istradefylline (KW-6002) reduces "off" time in Parkinson's disease: a double-blind, randomized, multicenter clinical trial (6002-US-005). *Ann Neurol* 2008; **63**: 295-302 [PMID: 18306243 DOI: 10.1002/ana.21315]

203   **Mizuno Y**, Kondo T; Japanese Istradefylline Study Group. Adenosine A2A receptor antagonist istradefylline reduces daily OFF time in Parkinson's disease. *Mov Disord* 2013; **28**: 1138-1141 [PMID: 23483627 DOI: 10.1002/mds.25418]

204   **Mizuno Y**, Hasegawa K, Kondo T, Kuno S, Yamamoto M; Japanese Istradefylline Study Group. Clinical efficacy of istradefylline (KW-6002) in Parkinson's disease: a randomized, controlled study. *Mov Disord* 2010; **25**: 1437-1443 [PMID: 20629136 DOI: 10.1002/mds.23107]

205   **Hauser RA**, Hubble JP, Truong DD; Istradefylline US-001 Study Group. Randomized trial of the adenosine A(2A) receptor antagonist istradefylline in advanced PD. *Neurology* 2003; **61**: 297-303 [PMID: 12913187]

206   **Hodgson RA**, Bedard PJ, Varty GB, Kazdoba TM, Di Paolo T, Grzelak ME, Pond AJ, Hadjtahar A, Belanger N, Gregoire L, Dare A, Neustadt BR, Stamford AW, Hunter JC. Preladenant, a selective A(2A) receptor antagonist, is active in primate models of movement disorders. *Exp Neurol* 2010; **225**: 384-390 [PMID: 20655910 DOI: 10.1016/j.expneurol.2010.07.011]

207   **Cutler DL**, Tendolkar A, Grachev ID. Safety, tolerability and pharmacokinetics after single and multiple doses of preladenant (SCH420814) administered in healthy subjects. *J Clin Pharm Ther* 2012; **37**: 578-587 [PMID: 22676397 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2710.2012.01349.x]

208   **Hauser RA**, Cantillon M, Pourcher E, Micheli F, Mok V, Onofrj M, Huyck S, Wolski K. Preladenant in patients with Parkinson's disease and motor fluctuations: a phase 2, double-blind, randomised trial. *Lancet Neurol* 2011; **10**: 221-229 [PMID: 21315654 DOI: 10.1016/S1474-4422(11)70012-6]

209   **Factor SA**, Wolski K, Togasaki DM, Huyck S, Cantillon M, Ho TW, Hauser RA, Pourcher E. Long-term safety and efficacy of preladenant in subjects with fluctuating Parkinson's disease. *Mov Disord* 2013; **28**: 817-820 [PMID: 23589371 DOI: 10.1002/mds.25395]

210   **Fariello RG**. Safinamide. *Neurotherapeutics* 2007; **4**: 110-116 [PMID: 17199024]

211   **Müller T**. Current status of safinamide for the drug portfolio of Parkinson's disease therapy. *Expert Rev Neurother* 2013; **13**: 969-977 [PMID: 24053341 DOI: 10.1586/14737175.2013.827488]

212   **Richel DJ**, Colly LP, Lurvink E, Willemze R. Comparison of the antileukaemic activity of 5 aza-2-deoxycytidine and arabinofuranosyl-cytosine in rats with myelocytic leukaemia. *Br J Cancer* 1988; **58**: 730-733 [PMID: 2465015 DOI: 10.1517/135437

84.2014.897694]

213   **Stocchi F**, Vacca L, Grassini P, De Pandis MF, Battaglia G, Cattaneo C, Fariello RG. Symptom relief in Parkinson disease by safinamide: Biochemical and clinical evidence of efficacy beyond MAO-B inhibition. *Neurology* 2006; **67**: S24-S29 [PMID: 17030737]

214   **Stocchi F**, Borgohain R, Onofrj M, Schapira AH, Bhatt M, Lucini V, Giuliani R, Anand R; Study 015 Investigators. A randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial of safinamide as add-on therapy in early Parkinson's disease patients. *Mov Disord* 2012; **27**: 106-112 [PMID: 21913224 DOI: 10.1002/mds.23954]

215   **Schapira AH**, Stocchi F, Borgohain R, Onofrj M, Bhatt M, Lorenzana P, Lucini V, Giuliani R, Anand R; Study 017 Investigators. Long-term efficacy and safety of safinamide as add-on therapy in early Parkinson's disease. *Eur J Neurol* 2013; **20**: 271-280 [PMID: 22967035 DOI: 10.1111/j.1468-1331.2012.03840.x]

216   **Borgohain R**, Szasz J, Stanzione P, Meshram C, Bhatt M, Chirilineau D, Stocchi F, Lucini V, Giuliani R, Forrest E, Rice P, Anand R; Study 016 Investigators. Randomized trial of safinamide add-on to levodopa in Parkinson's disease with motor fluctuations. *Mov Disord* 2014; **29**: 229-237 [PMID: 24323641 DOI: 10.1002/mds.25751]

217   **Grégoire L**, Jourdain VA, Townsend M, Roach A, Di Paolo T. Safinamide reduces dyskinesias and prolongs L-DOPA antiparkinsonian effect in parkinsonian monkeys. *Parkinsonism Relat Disord* 2013; **19**: 508-514 [PMID: 23402994 DOI: 10.1016/j.parkreldis.2013.01.009]

218   **Morsali D**, Bechtold D, Lee W, Chauhdry S, Palchaudhuri U, Hassoon P, Snell DM, Malpass K, Piers T, Pocock J, Roach A, Smith KJ. Safinamide and flecainide protect axons and reduce microglial activation in models of multiple sclerosis. *Brain* 2013; **136**: 1067-1082 [PMID: 23518709 DOI: 10.1093/brain/awt041]

219   **Dupont S**, Stefan H. Zonisamide in clinical practice. *Acta Neurol Scand Suppl* 2012; (**194**): 29-35 [PMID: 23106523 DOI: 10.1111/ane.12017]

220   **Murata M**, Horiuchi E, Kanazawa I. Zonisamide has beneficial effects on Parkinson's disease patients. *Neurosci Res* 2001; **41**: 397-399 [PMID: 11755227]

221   **Murata M**, Hasegawa K, Kanazawa I; Japan Zonisamide on PD Study Group. Zonisamide improves motor function in Parkinson disease: a randomized, double-blind study. *Neurology* 2007; **68**: 45-50 [PMID: 17200492]

222   **Yang LP**, Perry CM. Zonisamide: in Parkinson's disease. *CNS Drugs* 2009; **23**: 703-711 [PMID: 19594199 DOI: 10.2165/00023210-200923080-00007]

223   **Bermejo PE**, Ruiz-Huete C, Anciones B. Zonisamide in managing impulse control disorders in Parkinson's disease. *J Neurol* 2010; **257**: 1682-1685 [PMID: 20509031 DOI: 10.1007/s00415-010-5603-7]

224   **Sonsalla PK**, Wong LY, Winnik B, Buckley B. The antiepileptic drug zonisamide inhibits MAO-B and attenuates MPTP toxicity in mice: clinical relevance. *Exp Neurol* 2010; **221**: 329-334 [PMID: 19948168 DOI: 10.1016/j.expneurol.2009.11.018]

225   **Kawajiri S**, Machida Y, Saiki S, Sato S, Hattori N. Zonisamide reduces cell death in SH-SY5Y cells via an anti-apoptotic effect and by upregulating MnSOD. *Neurosci Lett* 2010; **481**: 88-91 [PMID: 20600601 DOI: 10.1016/j.neulet.2010.06.058]

226   **Choudhury ME**, Moritoyo T, Kubo M, Kyaw WT, Yabe H, Nishikawa N, Nagai M, Matsuda S, Nomoto M. Zonisamide-induced long-lasting recovery of dopaminergic neurons from MPTP-toxicity. *Brain Res* 2011; **1384**: 170-178 [PMID: 21320474 DOI: 10.1016/j.brainres.2011.02.017]

227   **Choudhury ME**, Sugimoto K, Kubo M, Iwaki H, Tsujii T, Kyaw WT, Nishikawa N, Nagai M, Tanaka J, Nomoto M. Zonisamide up-regulated the mRNAs encoding astrocytic anti-oxidative and neurotrophic factors. *Eur J Pharmacol* 2012; **689**: 72-80 [PMID: 22659113 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejphar.2012.05.012]

228   **Yürekli VA**, Gürler S, Nazıroğlu M, Uğuz AC, Koyuncuoğlu HR. Zonisamide attenuates MPP+-induced oxidative toxicity through modulation of Ca2+ signaling and caspase-3 activity in neuronal PC12 cells. *Cell Mol Neurobiol* 2013; **33**: 205-212 [PMID:

23229024 DOI: 10.1007/s10571-012-9886-3]

229   **Condello S**, Currò M, Ferlazzo N, Costa G, Visalli G, Caccamo D, Pisani LR, Costa C, Calabresi P, Ientile R, Pisani F. Protective effects of zonisamide against rotenone-induced neurotoxicity. *Neurochem Res* 2013; **38**: 2631-2639 [PMID: 24142350 DOI: 10.1007/s11064-013-1181-2]

230   **Yamamura S**, Ohoyama K, Nagase H, Okada M. Zonisamide enhances delta receptor-associated neurotransmitter release in striato-pallidal pathway. *Neuropharmacology* 2009; **57**: 322-331 [PMID: 19482038 DOI: 10.1016/j.neuropharm.2009.05.005]

231   **Gluck MR**, Santana LA, Granson H, Yahr MD. Novel dopamine releasing response of an anti-convulsant agent with possible anti-Parkinson's activity. *J Neural Transm* 2004; **111**: 713-724 [PMID: 15168218]

232   **Asanuma M**, Miyazaki I, Diaz-Corrales FJ, Miyoshi K, Ogawa N, Murata M. Preventing effects of a novel anti-parkinsonian agent zonisamide on dopamine quinone formation. *Neurosci Res* 2008; **60**: 106-113 [PMID: 18022268]

233   **Crane FL**. Biochemical functions of coenzyme Q10. *J Am Coll Nutr* 2001; **20**: 591-598 [PMID: 11771674]

234   **Kagan VE**, Tyurina YY, Witt E. Role of Coenzyme Q and Superoxide in Vitamin E Cycling. In: Quinn PJ (editor). Fat-Soluble Vitamins. New York: Springer Science, 1998: 491-507

235   **Martin SF**, Burón I, Espinosa JC, Castilla J, Villalba JM, Torres JM. Coenzyme Q and protein/lipid oxidation in a BSE-infected transgenic mouse model. *Free Radic Biol Med* 2007; **42**: 1723-1729 [PMID: 17462540]

236   **Hargreaves IP**, Lane A, Sleiman PM. The coenzyme Q10 status of the brain regions of Parkinson's disease patients. *Neurosci Lett* 2008; **447**: 17-19 [PMID: 18840506 DOI: 10.1016/j.neulet.2008.09.069]

237   **Jiménez-Jiménez FJ**, Molina JA, de Bustos F, García-Redondo A, Gómez-Escalonilla C, Martínez-Salio A, Berbel A, Camacho A, Zurdo M, Barcenilla B, Enríquez de Salamanca R, Arenas J. Serum levels of coenzyme Q10 in patients with Parkinson's disease. *J Neural Transm* 2000; **107**: 177-181 [PMID: 10847558]

238   **Sohmiya M**, Tanaka M, Tak NW, Yanagisawa M, Tanino Y, Suzuki Y, Okamoto K, Yamamoto Y. Redox status of plasma coenzyme Q10 indicates elevated systemic oxidative stress in Parkinson's disease. *J Neurol Sci* 2004; **223**: 161-166 [PMID: 15337618]

239   **Mischley LK**, Allen J, Bradley R. Coenzyme Q10 deficiency in patients with Parkinson's disease. *J Neurol Sci* 2012; **318**: 72-75 [PMID: 22542608 DOI: 10.1016/j.jns.2012.03.023]

240   **Isobe C**, Abe T, Terayama Y. Levels of reduced and oxidized coenzyme Q-10 and 8-hydroxy-2'-deoxyguanosine in the cerebrospinal fluid of patients with living Parkinson's disease demonstrate that mitochondrial oxidative damage and/or oxidative DNA damage contributes to the neurodegenerative process. *Neurosci Lett* 2010; **469**: 159-163 [PMID: 19944739 DOI: 10.1016/j.neulet.2009.11.065]

241   **Horvath TL**, Diano S, Leranth C, Garcia-Segura LM, Cowley MA, Shanabrough M, Elsworth JD, Sotonyi P, Roth RH, Dietrich EH, Matthews RT, Barnstable CJ, Redmond DE. Coenzyme Q induces nigral mitochondrial uncoupling and prevents dopamine cell loss in a primate model of Parkinson's disease. *Endocrinology* 2003; **144**: 2757-2760 [PMID: 12810526]

242   **Cleren C**, Yang L, Lorenzo B, Calingasan NY, Schomer A, Sireci A, Wille EJ, Beal MF. Therapeutic effects of coenzyme Q10 (CoQ10) and reduced CoQ10 in the MPTP model of Parkinsonism. *J Neurochem* 2008; **104**: 1613-1621 [PMID: 17973981]

243   **Muthukumaran K**, Leahy S, Harrison K, Sikorska M, Sandhu JK, Cohen J, Keshan C, Lopatin D, Miller H, Borowy-Borowski H, Lanthier P, Weinstock S, Pandey S. Orally delivered water soluble Coenzyme Q10 (Ubisol-Q10) blocks on-going neurodegeneration in rats exposed to paraquat: potential for therapeutic application in Parkinson's disease. *BMC Neurosci* 2014; **15**: 21 [PMID: 24483602 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2202-15-21]

244   **Muroyama A**. An alternative medical approach for the neuro-protective therapy to slow the progression of Parkinson's disease. *Yakugaku Zasshi* 2013; **133**: 849-856 [PMID: 23903224]

245   **Storch A**, Jost WH, Vieregge P, Spiegel J, Greulich W, Durner J,

Müller T, Kupsch A, Henningsen H, Oertel WH, Fuchs G, Kuhn W, Niklowitz P, Koch R, Herting B, Reichmann H. Randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial on symptomatic effects of coenzyme Q(10) in Parkinson disease. *Arch Neurol* 2007; **64**: 938-944 [PMID: 17502459]

246   **Shults CW**, Oakes D, Kieburtz K, Beal MF, Haas R, Plumb S, Juncos JL, Nutt J, Shoulson I, Carter J, Kompoliti K, Perlmutter JS, Reich S, Stern M, Watts RL, Kurlan R, Molho E, Harrison M, Lew M. Effects of coenzyme Q10 in early Parkinson disease: evidence of slowing of the functional decline. *Arch Neurol* 2002; **59**: 1541-1550 [PMID: 12374491]

247   **Seet RC**, Lim EC, Tan JJ, Quek AM, Chow AW, Chong WL, Ng MP, Ong CN, Halliwell B. Does high-dose coenzyme Q10 improve oxidative damage and clinical outcomes in Parkinson's disease? *Antioxid Redox Signal* 2014; **21**: 211-217 [PMID: 24410614 DOI: 10.1089/ars.2013.5801]

248   **Beal MF**. A phase III clinical trial of coenzyme Q10 (QE3) in early Parkinson's disease: Parkinson Study Group QE3 Investigators [abstract]. *Mov Disord* 2012; **27** (Suppl 1): 346

249   **Beal MF**, Oakes D, Shoulson I, Henchcliffe C, Galpern WR, Haas R, Juncos JL, Nutt JG, Voss TS, Ravina B, Shults CM, Helles K, Snively V, Lew MF, Griebner B, Watts A, Gao S, Pourcher E, Bond L, Kompoliti K, Agarwal P, Sia C, Jog M, Cole L, Sultana M, Kurlan R, Richard I, Deeley C, Waters CH, Figueroa A, Arkun A, Brodsky M, Ondo WG, Hunter CB, Jimenez-Shahed J, Palao A, Miyasaki JM, So J, Tetrud J, Reys L, Smith K, Singer C, Blenke A, Russell DS, Cotto C, Friedman JH, Lannon M, Zhang L, Drasby E, Kumar R, Subramanian T, Ford DS, Grimes DA, Cote D, Conway J, Siderowf AD, Evatt ML, Sommerfeld B, Lieberman AN, Okun MS, Rodriguez RL, Merritt S, Swartz CL, Martin WR, King P, Stover N, Guthrie S, Watts RL, Ahmed A, Fernandez HH, Winters A, Mari Z, Dawson TM, Dunlop B, Feigin AS, Shannon B, Nirenberg MJ, Ogg M, Ellias SA, Thomas CA, Frei K, Bodis-Wollner I, Glazman S, Mayer T, Hauser RA, Pahwa R, Langhammer A, Ranawaya R, Derwent L, Sethi KD, Farrow B, Prakash R, Litvan I, Robinson A, Sahay A, Gartner M, Hinson VK, Markind S, Pelikan M, Perlmutter JS, Hartlein J, Molho E, Evans S, Adler CH, Duffy A, Lind M, Elmer L, Davis K, Spears J, Wilson S, Leehey MA, Hermanowicz N, Niswonger S, Shill HA, Obradov S, Rajput A, Cowper M, Lessig S, Song D, Fontaine D, Zadikoff C, Williams K, Blindauer KA, Bergholte J, Propsom CS, Stacy MA, Field J, Mihaila D, Chilton M, Uc EY, Sieren J, Simon DK, Kraics L, Silver A, Boyd JT, Hamill RW, Ingvoldstad C, Young J, Thomas K, Kostyk SK, Wojcieszek J, Pfeiffer RF, Panisset M, Beland M, Reich SG, Cines M, Zappala N, Rivest J, Zweig R, Lumina LP, Hilliard CL, Grill S, Kellermann M, Tuite P, Rolandelli S, Kang UJ, Young J, Rao J, Cook MM, Severt L, Boyar K. A randomized clinical trial of high-dosage coenzyme Q10 in early Parkinson disease: no evidence of benefit. *JAMA Neurol* 2014; **71**: 543-552 [PMID: 24664227 DOI: 10.1001/jamaneurol.2014.131]

250   **Bessman SP**, Carpenter CL. The creatine-creatine phosphate energy shuttle. *Annu Rev Biochem* 1985; **54**: 831-862 [PMID: 3896131]

251   **McCandless DW**. Creatine Treatment. In: Epilepsy: Animal and Human Correlations. 2012: 329-336

252   **Wyss M**, Kaddurah-Daouk R. Creatine and creatinine metabolism. *Physiol Rev* 2000; **80**: 1107-1213 [PMID: 10893433]

253   **Snow RJ**, Murphy RM. Creatine and the creatine transporter: a review. *Mol Cell Biochem* 2001; **224**: 169-181 [PMID: 11693194]

254   **Guerrero-Ontiveros ML**, Wallimann T. Creatine supplementation in health and disease. Effects of chronic creatine ingestion in vivo: down-regulation of the expression of creatine transporter isoforms in skeletal muscle. *Mol Cell Biochem* 1998; **184**: 427-437 [PMID: 9746337]

255   **Levin BE**, Katzen HL, Maudsley A, Post J, Myerson C, Govind V, Nahab F, Scanlon B, Mittel A. Whole-brain proton MR spectroscopic imaging in Parkinson's disease. *J Neuroimaging* 2014; **24**: 39-44 [PMID: 23228009 DOI: 10.1111/j.1552-6569.2012.00733.x]

256   **Gröger A**, Kolb R, Schäfer R, Klose U. Dopamine reduction in

the substantia nigra of Parkinson's disease patients confirmed by in vivo magnetic resonance spectroscopic imaging. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e84081 [PMID: 24416192 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0084081]

257 **Klivenyi P**, Gardian G, Calingasan NY, Yang L, Beal MF. Additive neuroprotective effects of creatine and a cyclooxygenase 2 inhibitor against dopamine depletion in the 1-methyl-4-phenyl-1,2,3,6-tetrahydropyridine (MPTP) mouse model of Parkinson's disease. *J Mol Neurosci* 2003; **21**: 191-198 [PMID: 14645986]

258 **Adhihetty PJ**, Beal MF. Creatine and its potential therapeutic value for targeting cellular energy impairment in neurodegenerative diseases. *Neuromolecular Med* 2008; **10**: 275-290 [PMID: 19005780 DOI: 10.1007/s12017-008-8053-y]

259 **Gualano B**, Ugrinowitsch C, Novaes RB, Artioli GG, Shimizu MH, Seguro AC, Harris RC, Lancha AH. Effects of creatine supplementation on renal function: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled clinical trial. *Eur J Appl Physiol* 2008; **103**: 33-40 [PMID: 18188581 DOI: 10.1007/s00421-007-0669-3]

260 **NINDS NET-PD Investigators**. A pilot clinical trial of creatine and minocycline in early Parkinson disease: 18-month results. *Clin Neuropharmacol* 2008; **31**: 141-150 [PMID: 18520981 DOI: 10.1097/WNF.0b013e3181342f32]

261 **Bender A**, Samtleben W, Elstner M, Klopstock T. Long-term creatine supplementation is safe in aged patients with Parkinson disease. *Nutr Res* 2008; **28**: 172-178 [PMID: 19083405 DOI: 10.1016/j.nutres.2008.01.001]

262 **Bender A**, Koch W, Elstner M, Schombacher Y, Bender J, Moeschl M, Gekeler F, Müller-Myhsok B, Gasser T, Tatsch K, Klopstock T. Creatine supplementation in Parkinson disease: a placebo-controlled randomized pilot trial. *Neurology* 2006; **67**: 1262-1264 [PMID: 17030762]

263 **Hass CJ**, Collins MA, Juncos JL. Resistance training with creatine monohydrate improves upper-body strength in patients with Parkinson disease: a randomized trial. *Neurorehabil Neural Repair* 2007; **21**: 107-115 [PMID: 17312085]

264 **Pettegrew JW**, Levine J, McClure RJ. Acetyl-L-carnitine physical-chemical, metabolic, and therapeutic properties: relevance for its mode of action in Alzheimer's disease and geriatric depression. *Mol Psychiatry* 2000; **5**: 616-632 [PMID: 11126392]

265 **Parnetti L**, Gaiti A, Mecocci P, Cadini D, Senin U. Pharmacokinetics of IV and oral acetyl-L-carnitine in a multiple dose regimen in patients with senile dementia of Alzheimer type. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol* 1992; **42**: 89-93 [PMID: 1541322]

266 **Malaguarnera M**, Gargante MP, Cristaldi E, Colonna V, Messano M, Koverech A, Neri S, Vacante M, Cammalleri L, Motta M. Acetyl L-carnitine (ALC) treatment in elderly patients with fatigue. *Arch Gerontol Geriatr* 2008; **46**: 181-190 [PMID: 17658628]

267 **Calabrese V**, Ravagna A, Colombrita C, Scapagnini G, Guagliano E, Calvani M, Butterfield DA, Giuffrida Stella AM. Acetylcarnitine induces heme oxygenase in rat astrocytes and protects against oxidative stress: involvement of the transcription factor Nrf2. *J Neurosci Res* 2005; **79**: 509-521 [PMID: 15641110]

268 **Long J**, Gao F, Tong L, Cotman CW, Ames BN, Liu J. Mitochondrial decay in the brains of old rats: ameliorating effect of alpha-lipoic acid and acetyl-L-carnitine. *Neurochem Res* 2009; **34**: 755-763 [PMID: 18846423 DOI: 10.1007/s11064-008-9850-2]

269 **Patel SP**, Sullivan PG, Lyttle TS, Rabchevsky AG. Acetyl-L-carnitine ameliorates mitochondrial dysfunction following contusion spinal cord injury. *J Neurochem* 2010; **114**: 291-301 [PMID: 20438613 DOI: 10.1111/j.1471-4159.2010.06764.x]

270 **Alves E**, Binienda Z, Carvalho F, Alves CJ, Fernandes E, de Lourdes Bastos M, Tavares MA, Summavielle T. Acetyl-L-carnitine provides effective in vivo neuroprotection over 3,4-methylenedioxymethamphetamine-induced mitochondrial neurotoxicity in the adolescent rat brain. *Neuroscience* 2009; **158**: 514-523 [PMID: 19015003 DOI: 10.1016/j.neuroscience.2008.10.041]

271 **Bodis-Wollner I**, Chung E, Ghilardi MF, Glover A, Onofrj M, Pasik P, Samson Y. Acetyl-levo-carnitine protects against MPTP-induced parkinsonism in primates. *J Neural Transm Park Dis Dement Sect* 1991; **3**: 63-72 [PMID: 2064731]

272 **Yoritaka A**, Hattori N, Uchida K, Tanaka M, Stadtman ER, Mizuno Y. Immunohistochemical detection of 4-hydroxynonenal protein adducts in Parkinson disease. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1996; **93**: 2696-2701 [PMID: 8610103]

273 **Alam ZI**, Daniel SE, Lees AJ, Marsden DC, Jenner P, Halliwell B. A generalised increase in protein carbonyls in the brain in Parkinson's but not incidental Lewy body disease. *J Neurochem* 1997; **69**: 1326-1329 [PMID: 9282961]

274 **Sian J**, Dexter DT, Lees AJ, Daniel S, Agid Y, Javoy-Agid F, Jenner P, Marsden CD. Alterations in glutathione levels in Parkinson's disease and other neurodegenerative disorders affecting basal ganglia. *Ann Neurol* 1994; **36**: 348-355 [PMID: 8080242]

275 **Meister A**, Anderson ME. Glutathione. *Annu Rev Biochem* 1983; **52**: 711-760 [PMID: 6137189]

276 **Meister A**. Glutathione biosynthesis and its inhibition. *Methods Enzymol* 1995; **252**: 26-30 [PMID: 7476692]

277 **Arakawa M**, Ito Y. N-acetylcysteine and neurodegenerative diseases: basic and clinical pharmacology. *Cerebellum* 2007; **6**: 308-314 [PMID: 17853088 DOI: 10.1080/14734220601142878]

278 **Berk M**, Malhi GS, Gray LJ, Dean OM. The promise of N-acetylcysteine in neuropsychiatry. *Trends Pharmacol Sci* 2013; **34**: 167-177 [PMID: 23369637 DOI: 10.1016/j.tips.2013.01.001]

279 **Martínez-Banaclocha MA**. N-acetyl-cysteine in the treatment of Parkinson's disease. What are we waiting for? *Med Hypotheses* 2012; **79**: 8-12 [PMID: 22546753 DOI: 10.1016/j.mehy.2012.03.021]

280 **Clark J**, Clore EL, Zheng K, Adame A, Masliah E, Simon DK. Oral N-acetyl-cysteine attenuates loss of dopaminergic terminals in alpha-synuclein overexpressing mice. *PLoS One* 2010; **5**: e12333 [PMID: 20808797 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0012333]

281 **Berman AE**, Chan WY, Brennan AM, Reyes RC, Adler BL, Suh SW, Kauppinen TM, Edling Y, Swanson RA. N-acetylcysteine prevents loss of dopaminergic neurons in the EAAC1-/- mouse. *Ann Neurol* 2011; **69**: 509-520 [PMID: 21446024 DOI: 10.1002/ana.22162]

282 **Choy KH**, Dean O, Berk M, Bush AI, van den Buuse M. Effects of N-acetyl-cysteine treatment on glutathione depletion and a short-term spatial memory deficit in 2-cyclohexene-1-one-treated rats. *Eur J Pharmacol* 2010; **649**: 224-228 [PMID: 20868666 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejphar.2010.09.035]

283 **Holmay MJ**, Terpstra M, Coles LD, Mishra U, Ahlskog M, Öz G, Cloyd JC, Tuite PJ. N-Acetylcysteine boosts brain and blood glutathione in Gaucher and Parkinson diseases. *Clin Neuropharmacol* 2013; **36**: 103-106 [PMID: 23860343 DOI: 10.1097/WNF.0b013e31829ae713]

284 **Lodge JK**, Packer L. Natural sources of lipoic acid in plant and animal tissues. In: Packer L, Hiramatsu M, Yoshikawa K, editors. Antioxidant Food Supplements in Human Health. New York: Academic Press, 1999: 121-134

285 **Farr SA**, Poon HF, Dogrukol-Ak D, Drake J, Banks WA, Eyerman E, Butterfield DA, Morley JE. The antioxidants alpha-lipoic acid and N-acetylcysteine reverse memory impairment and brain oxidative stress in aged SAMP8 mice. *J Neurochem* 2003; **84**: 1173-1183 [PMID: 12603840]

286 **Scumpia PO**, Kelly-Scumpia K, Stevens BR. Alpha-lipoic acid effects on brain glial functions accompanying double-stranded RNA antiviral and inflammatory signaling. *Neurochem Int* 2014; **64**: 55-63 [PMID: 24269587 DOI: 10.1016/j.neuint.2013.11.006]

287 **Li DW**, Li GR, Lu Y, Liu ZQ, Chang M, Yao M, Cheng W, Hu LS. α-lipoic acid protects dopaminergic neurons against MPP+-induced apoptosis by attenuating reactive oxygen species formation. *Int J Mol Med* 2013; **32**: 108-114 [PMID: 23615851 DOI: 10.3892/ijmm.2013.1361]

288 **de Araújo DP**, De Sousa CN, Araújo PV, Menezes CE, Sousa Rodrigues FT, Escudeiro SS, Lima NB, Patrocínio MC, Aguiar LM, Viana GS, Vasconcelos SM. Behavioral and neurochemical effects of alpha-lipoic Acid in the model of Parkinson's disease induced by unilateral stereotaxic injection of 6-ohda in rat. *Evid Based Complement Alternat Med* 2013; **2013**: 571378 [PMID: 24023579 DOI: 10.1155/2013/571378]

289 **Zhang H**, Jia H, Liu J, Ao N, Yan B, Shen W, Wang X, Li X, Luo C, Liu J. Combined R-alpha-lipoic acid and acetyl-L-carnitine exerts efficient preventative effects in a cellular model of Parkinson'

s disease. *J Cell Mol Med* 2010; **14**: 215-225 [PMID: 20414966 DOI: 10.1111/j.1582-4934.2008.00390.x]

290   **Chan CS**, Gertler TS, Surmeier DJ. A molecular basis for the increased vulnerability of substantia nigra dopamine neurons in aging and Parkinson's disease. *Mov Disord* 2010; **25** Suppl 1: S63-S70 [PMID: 20187241 DOI: 10.1002/mds.22801]

291   **Ilijic E**, Guzman JN, Surmeier DJ. The L-type channel antagonist isradipine is neuroprotective in a mouse model of Parkinson's disease. *Neurobiol Dis* 2011; **43**: 364-371 [PMID: 21515375 DOI: 10.1016/j.nbd.2011.04.007]

292   **Yu X**, Li X, Jiang G, Wang X, Chang HC, Hsu WH, Li Q. Isradipine prevents rotenone-induced intracellular calcium rise that accelerates senescence in human neuroblastoma SH-SY5Y cells. *Neuroscience* 2013; **246**: 243-253 [PMID: 23664925 DOI: 10.1016/j.neuroscience.2013.04.062]

293   **Schuster S**, Doudnikoff E, Rylander D, Berthet A, Aubert I, Ittrich C, Bloch B, Cenci MA, Surmeier DJ, Hengerer B, Bezard E. Antagonizing L-type Ca2+ channel reduces development of abnormal involuntary movement in the rat model of L-3,4-dihydroxyphenylalanine-induced dyskinesia. *Biol Psychiatry* 2009; **65**: 518-526 [PMID: 18947822 DOI: 10.1016/j.biopsych.2008.09.008]

294   **Simuni T**, Borushko E, Avram MJ, Miskevics S, Martel A, Zadikoff C, Videnovic A, Weaver FM, Williams K, Surmeier DJ. Tolerability of isradipine in early Parkinson's disease: a pilot dose escalation study. *Mov Disord* 2010; **25**: 2863-2866 [PMID: 20818667 DOI: 10.1002/mds.23308]

295   **Parkinson Study Group**. Phase II safety, tolerability, and dose selection study of isradipine as a potential disease-modifying intervention in early Parkinson's disease (STEADY-PD). *Mov Disord* 2013; **28**: 1823-1831 [PMID: 24123224 DOI: 10.1002/mds.25639]

296   **Breidert T**, Callebert J, Heneka MT, Landreth G, Launay JM, Hirsch EC. Protective action of the peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-gamma agonist pioglitazone in a mouse model of Parkinson's disease. *J Neurochem* 2002; **82**: 615-624 [PMID: 12153485]

297   **Hunter RL**, Choi DY, Ross SA, Bing G. Protective properties afforded by pioglitazone against intrastriatal LPS in Sprague-Dawley rats. *Neurosci Lett* 2008; **432**: 198-201 [PMID: 18207323 DOI: 10.1016/j.neulet.2007.12.019]

298   **Xing B**, Liu M, Bing G. Neuroprotection with pioglitazone against LPS insult on dopaminergic neurons may be associated with its inhibition of NF-kappaB and JNK activation and suppression of COX-2 activity. *J Neuroimmunol* 2007; **192**: 89-98 [PMID: 17976742]

299   **Quinn LP**, Crook B, Hows ME, Vidgeon-Hart M, Chapman H, Upton N, Medhurst AD, Virley DJ. The PPARgamma agonist pioglitazone is effective in the MPTP mouse model of Parkinson's disease through inhibition of monoamine oxidase B. *Br J Pharmacol* 2008; **154**: 226-233 [PMID: 18332857 DOI: 10.1038/bjp.2008.78]

300   **Swanson CR**, Joers V, Bondarenko V, Brunner K, Simmons HA, Ziegler TE, Kemnitz JW, Johnson JA, Emborg ME. The PPAR-γ agonist pioglitazone modulates inflammation and induces neuroprotection in parkinsonian monkeys. *J Neuroinflammation* 2011; **8**: 91 [PMID: 21819568 DOI: 10.1186/1742-2094-8-91]

301   **Hirsch EC**, Breidert T, Rousselet E, Hunot S, Hartmann A, Michel PP. The role of glial reaction and inflammation in Parkinson's disease. *Ann N Y Acad Sci* 2003; **991**: 214-228 [PMID: 12846989]

302   **Hunter RL**, Dragicevic N, Seifert K, Choi DY, Liu M, Kim HC, Cass WA, Sullivan PG, Bing G. Inflammation induces mitochondrial dysfunction and dopaminergic neurodegeneration in the nigrostriatal system. *J Neurochem* 2007; **100**: 1375-1386 [PMID: 17254027]

303   **Binda C**, Aldeco M, Geldenhuys WJ, Tortorici M, Mattevi A, Edmondson DE. Molecular Insights into Human Monoamine Oxidase B Inhibition by the Glitazone Anti-Diabetes Drugs. *ACS Med Chem Lett* 2011; **3**: 39-42 [PMID: 22282722]

304   **Casarejos MJ**, Menéndez J, Solano RM, Rodríguez-Navarro JA, García de Yébenes J, Mena MA. Susceptibility to rotenone is increased in neurons from parkin null mice and is reduced by

minocycline. *J Neurochem* 2006; **97**: 934-946 [PMID: 16573651]

305   **Faust K**, Gehrke S, Yang Y, Yang L, Beal MF, Lu B. Neuroprotective effects of compounds with antioxidant and anti-inflammatory properties in a Drosophila model of Parkinson's disease. *BMC Neurosci* 2009; **10**: 109 [PMID: 19723328 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2202-10-109]

306   **Huang CL**, Lee YC, Yang YC, Kuo TY, Huang NK. Minocycline prevents paraquat-induced cell death through attenuating endoplasmic reticulum stress and mitochondrial dysfunction. *Toxicol Lett* 2012; **209**: 203-210 [PMID: 22245251 DOI: 10.1016/j.toxlet.2011.12.021]

307   **NINDS NET-PD Investigators**. A randomized, double-blind, futility clinical trial of creatine and minocycline in early Parkinson disease. *Neurology* 2006; **66**: 664-671 [PMID: 16481597]

308   **Dodel R**, Spottke A, Gerhard A, Reuss A, Reinecker S, Schimke N, Trenkwalder C, Sixel-Döring F, Herting B, Kamm C, Gasser T, Sawires M, Geser F, Köllensperger M, Seppi K, Kloss M, Krause M, Daniels C, Deuschl G, Böttger S, Naumann M, Lipp A, Gruber D, Kupsch A, Du Y, Turkheimer F, Brooks DJ, Klockgether T, Poewe W, Wenning G, Schade-Brittinger C, Oertel WH, Eggert K. Minocycline 1-year therapy in multiple-system-atrophy: effect on clinical symptoms and [(11)C] (R)-PK11195 PET (MEMSA-trial). *Mov Disord* 2010; **25**: 97-107 [PMID: 20014118 DOI: 10.1002/mds.22732]

309   **Hirsch EC**, Hunot S. Neuroinflammation in Parkinson's disease: a target for neuroprotection? *Lancet Neurol* 2009; **8**: 382-397 [PMID: 19296921 DOI: 10.1016/S1474-4422(09)70062-6]

310   **Hirohata M**, Ono K, Morinaga A, Yamada M. Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs have potent anti-fibrillogenic and fibril-destabilizing effects for alpha-synuclein fibrils in vitro. *Neuropharmacology* 2008; **54**: 620-627 [PMID: 18164319 DOI: 10.1016/j.neuropharm.2007.11.010]

311   **Brefel-Courbon C**, Grolleau S, Thalamas C, Bourrel R, Allaria-Lapierre V, Loï R, Micallef-Roll J, Lapeyre-Mestre M. Comparison of chronic analgesic drugs prevalence in Parkinson's disease, other chronic diseases and the general population. *Pain* 2009; **141**: 14-18 [PMID: 19062167 DOI: 10.1016/j.pain.2008.04.026]

312   **Chen H**, Zhang SM, Hernán MA, Schwarzschild MA, Willett WC, Colditz GA, Speizer FE, Ascherio A. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and the risk of Parkinson disease. *Arch Neurol* 2003; **60**: 1059-1064 [PMID: 12925360]

313   **Wahner AD**, Bronstein JM, Bordelon YM, Ritz B. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs may protect against Parkinson disease. *Neurology* 2007; **69**: 1836-1842 [PMID: 17984451]

314   **Chen H**, Jacobs E, Schwarzschild MA, McCullough ML, Calle EE, Thun MJ, Ascherio A. Nonsteroidal antiinflammatory drug use and the risk for Parkinson's disease. *Ann Neurol* 2005; **58**: 963-967 [PMID: 16240369]

315   **Gao X**, Chen H, Schwarzschild MA, Ascherio A. Use of ibuprofen and risk of Parkinson disease. *Neurology* 2011; **76**: 863-869 [PMID: 21368281 DOI: 10.1212/WNL.0b013e31820f2d79]

316   **Hernán MA**, Logroscino G, García Rodríguez LA. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and the incidence of Parkinson disease. *Neurology* 2006; **66**: 1097-1099 [PMID: 16606925]

317   **Hancock DB**, Martin ER, Stajich JM, Jewett R, Stacy MA, Scott BL, Vance JM, Scott WK. Smoking, caffeine, and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs in families with Parkinson disease. *Arch Neurol* 2007; **64**: 576-580 [PMID: 17420321]

318   **Bornebroek M**, de Lau LM, Haag MD, Koudstaal PJ, Hofman A, Stricker BH, Breteler MM. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and the risk of Parkinson disease. *Neuroepidemiology* 2007; **28**: 193-196 [PMID: 17851257]

319   **Manthripragada AD**, Schernhammer ES, Qiu J, Friis S, Wermuth L, Olsen JH, Ritz B. Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug use and the risk of Parkinson's disease. *Neuroepidemiology* 2011; **36**: 155-161 [PMID: 21508649 DOI: 10.1159/000325653]

320   **Driver JA**, Logroscino G, Lu L, Gaziano JM, Kurth T. Use of non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and risk of Parkinson's disease: nested case-control study. *BMJ* 2011; **342**: d198 [PMID: 21252104 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.d198]

321 **Becker C**, Jick SS, Meier CR. NSAID use and risk of Parkinson disease: a population-based case-control study. *Eur J Neurol* 2011; **18**: 1336-1342 [PMID: 21457177 DOI: 10.1111/j.1468-1331.2011.03399.x]

322 **Dexter DT**, Wells FR, Agid F, Agid Y, Lees AJ, Jenner P, Marsden CD. Increased nigral iron content in postmortem parkinsonian brain. *Lancet* 1987; **2**: 1219-1220 [PMID: 2890848]

323 **Sofic E**, Riederer P, Heinsen H, Beckmann H, Reynolds GP, Hebenstreit G, Youdim MB. Increased iron (III) and total iron content in post mortem substantia nigra of parkinsonian brain. *J Neural Transm* 1988; **74**: 199-205 [PMID: 3210014]

324 **Kaur D**, Andersen J. Does cellular iron dysregulation play a causative role in Parkinson's disease? *Ageing Res Rev* 2004; **3**: 327-343 [PMID: 15231240]

325 **Qureshi GA**, Qureshi AA, Memon SA, Parvez SH. Impact of selenium, iron, copper and zinc in on/off Parkinson's patients on L-dopa therapy. *J Neural Transm Suppl* 2006; (**71**): 229-236 [PMID: 17447433]

326 **Moreau C**, Devos D, Kluza J, Laloux C, Petrault M, Devedjian JC, Ryckewaert G, Garcon G, Rouaix N, Jissendi P, Dujardin K, Kreisler A, Simonin C, Destee A, Defebvre L, Marchetti P, Bordet R. Disease modifying strategy based upon iron chelation in Parkinson's disease: A translational study [abstract]. *Mov Disord* 2012; **27** (Suppl 1): 404

327 **Dexter DT**, Martin-Bastida A, Kabba C, Piccini P, Sharp D, Ward R, Newbold R. A pilot 6 months efficacy and safety study utilising the iron chelator deferiprone in early stage Parkinson's disease [abstract]. *Mov Disord* 2014; **29** (Suppl 1): 633

328 **Cossu G**, Abbruzzese G, Matta G, Murgia D, Melis M, Ricchi V, Galanello R, Barella S, Origa R, Balocco M, Pelosin E, Marchese R, Ruffinengo U, Forni GL. Efficacy and safety of deferiprone for the treatment of pantothenate kinase-associated neurodegeneration (PKAN) and neurodegeneration with brain iron accumulation (NBIA): results from a four years follow-up. *Parkinsonism Relat Disord* 2014; **20**: 651-654 [PMID: 24661465 DOI: 10.1016/j.parkreldis.2014.03.002]

REVIEW

Role of opioid receptor heterodimerization in pain modulation and tolerance development

Annu Mudgal, Santosh Pasha

Annu Mudgal, Santosh Pasha, Peptide Synthesis Laboratory, CSIR/Institute of Genomics and Integrative Biology, Delhi 110007, India
Annu Mudgal, Santosh Pasha, Academy of Scientific and Innovative Research, New Delhi 110025, India

Correspondence to: Dr. Santosh Pasha, Peptide Synthesis Laboratory, CSIR/Institute of Genomics and Integrative Biology, Mall Road, Delhi 110007, India. spasha@igib.res.in
Telephone: +91-11-27666156
Fax: +91-11-27667471

Abstract

Protein to protein interactions leading to homo/heteromerization of receptor is well documented in literature. These interactions leading to dimeric/oligomers formation of receptors are known to modulate their function, particularly in case of G-protein coupled receptors. The opioid receptor heteromers having changed pharmacological properties than the constituent protomers provides preferences for novel drug targets that could lead to potential analgesic activity devoid of tolerance and physical dependence. Heterodimerization of opioid receptors appears to generate novel binding properties with improved specificity and lack of side effects. Further the molecules which can interact simultaneously to both the protomers of the heteromer, or to both the binding sites (orthosteric and allosteric) of a receptor protein could be potential therapeutic molecules. This review highlights the recent advancements in exploring the plausible role of heteromerization of opioid receptors in induction of tolerance free antinociception.

Core tip: Endogenous opioid peptides are known for their analgesic effects. However their analgesic effect is downplayed by the side-effect of tolerance development. To maintain homeostasis to their effect, other endogenous anti-opioid peptides works parallel to it. The present work highlights the role of anti-opiates in development of tolerance to opiate drugs.

Mudgal A, Pasha S. Role of opioid receptor heterodimerization in pain modulation and tolerance development. *World J Pharmacol* 2015; 4(1): 144-159 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3192/full/v4/i1/144.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5497/wjp.v4.i1.144

OPIOID RECEPTOR HETEROMERIZATION

Introduction

Opioid system comprising endogenous opioid peptides and receptors is mainly expressed in the central nervous

system[1]. A prominent role is played by the opioid system in modulation of nociception, neuroendocrine physiology, autonomic functions and reward processing[2]. Opioid receptors are a part of the G-protein coupled receptors (GPCRs) family. There exist three types of homologous opioid GPCRs *viz.* mu opioid receptor (MOR), delta opioid receptor (DOR) and Kappa opioid receptor (KOR)[3]. Extensive studies have been done to enunciate their implications in pain control, mood disorders and drug abuse[4,5]. GPCRs are seven transmembrane spanning proteins, which represent powerful targets to modulate both, the physiological and pathological states as they are involved in many biological processes. Regulation of GPCR activity is through various mechanisms *viz.* phosphorylation, endocytosis, desensitization, *etc.* is substantially evident. Among these, the interactions leading to heteromerization in which one protein receptor interacts with other protein receptor particularly modulates the GPCR function[6]. Decades of research over opioid pharmacology has discovered the complexity underlying the physiology of opioid system[7]. Various homotypic and heterotypic interactions have been revealed among the three types of opioid receptors (μ, KOR and DOR), when they are expressed in heterologous cells[8-10], which were considered as single units functionally. As a result the ligand binding and signaling properties get altered for these receptors. However occurrences of such interactions in live cells and *ex vivo* have not been reported until now and even no clue was there whether they were physiologically relevant. Protein complexes give rise to functional interactions within intracellular partners, resulting from shared association or downstream effectors competition. However, these interactions are highly debated whether they occur at neuronal level through signaling pathways or at molecular level exhibiting physical association of receptors by direct contact and with existing tools it is very difficult to claim any specific answer for them.

Recent reports shed some light over the functional interactions across receptors, by analysing the opioid drug effects for MOR and DOR receptors *in vivo*[11]. Well known example is of DORs to have implication in opioid tolerance development to morphine[12]. To further explore on this growing notion a "two-state dimer receptor model" has been recently proposed to understand and interpret heteromer operation by binding to lead molecules[13]. A receptor is a cellular macromolecular assembly which specifically transduces chemical signals inside and between cells. Whereas a receptor heterodimer is composed of two units and its biochemical properties may be different from its individual protomers[14]. This could be either due to some sort of intermolecular interaction or allosteric interaction which leads to the changes in binding properties of other protomer upon ligand binding to the first protomer. Thus generating novel pharmacological and signalling properties[15] which when targeted by specific ligands leads to improved efficacy with reduced undesirable effects[16]. Such specific ligands could be dualsteric compounds and may interact simultaneously to both the protomers or to the orthosteric site of one and then allosterically modulating the other protomer. In case of the allosteric interactions receptor subtype-selectivity is achieved and it may also modulate the efficacy as well as intracellular signaling pathway activation. The occurrence of opioid receptor heteromers uncovers a new side of novel drug targets which could be capable of combating a variety of diseases with potentially fewer side effects.

Since all the aspects of receptor physiology, pharmacology, trafficking, signaling, ligand affinities, etc. are affected due to the heteromer formation, it offers a very useful handle to obtain reliable macroscopic dissociation constant (K_D) values from binding data for biphasic kinetics. A new parameter, degree of cooperativity (Dc) could quantitatively define the intramolecular communication within the dimer. This new parameter has enabled vision of the occurrence of receptor heterodimers unfolding the new functional and pharmacological perspectives for GPCRs[17].

Initially the opioid receptors heteromerization was studied in artificial cell systems but now the focus has been shifted to its *in vivo* relevance. Many compounds have been identified that could selectively target the opioid heteromers of DOR with KOR and MOR influencing the opioid analgesic effect and modulating its ethanol consumption side effect. In some cases the differences in receptor trafficking properties have been attributed to the specific physiological response produced by the heteromers in comparison to their homomeric counterparts. For opioid receptor heteromers the easier detection of pharmacological profile modification has been achieved which has enabled the consideration of making opioid drugs like morphine more effective while restricting its side effects[18]. One of the examples is of DOR ligands which have shown potentiation of morphine's efficiency. Although, the molecular mechanism underlying such observations is still not clear, they have been attributed to the modulation of receptor function due to physical association between them. This hypothesis has been supported by the existence of mu-delta receptors complexes in live cells and the enhancement of their binding and signaling activity by antagonist occupancy of receptors. Thereby suggesting that heterodimeric association of opioid receptors could be used as a model to develop novel drug compounds for pain modulation[19].

An important aspect of opioid pharmacology is the establishment of the side effect, tolerance and dependence[20]. Tolerance may be defined as a phenomenon in which an increased amount of drug is required to produce the same level of drug effect after repeated use of the drug. Development of tolerance involves complex biochemical procedures at the cellular as well as sub-cellular level. Though many mechanisms have been proposed for the same but due to conflicting reports, no mechanism is yet universally accepted.

Figure 1 Anti-opioid model for tolerance and physical dependence.

Several lines of evidence propose that development of opioid tolerance may have multiple causes involving complex physiological adaptations, but majorly includes molecular level receptor trafficking.

The classical approach attributes opioid tolerance development and physical dependence in the body to the changes that occur at the receptor level *viz*. desensitization, down-regulation or internalization of opioid receptors. But it could not completely explain all the aspects of tolerance and physical dependence which gave rise to an alternative model, the "anti-opioid model"[21], shown in Figure 1. This model postulates the existence of an anti-opioid system within the body which works parallel to the endogenous opioid system, to neutralize the antinociceptive opioid effects upon chronic treatment. Certain endogenous neuropeptides such as Phe-Met-Arg-Phe-NH$_2$ (FMRFa), Phe-Leu-Phe-Gln-Pro-Gln-Phe-NH$_2$ (NPFF), Tyr-Pro-Leu-Gly-NH$_2$ (Tyr-MIF-1) and orphanin FQ/nociceptin, exhibits anti-opioid effects. These peptides mediate their biological effects through a different set of receptors, distinct from opioid receptors[22] which are also G protein-coupled receptors[23,24]. Together these peptides and their receptors are known to have role in the development of tolerance and physical dependence upon chronic administration of opioids.

Taking for example, morphine chronic treatment should increase the release of anti-opioid peptides which thereby will lead to attenuation of the morphine antinociceptive effects. Further opioid treatment will cause more release of anti-opioid which will induce tolerance to the opioid effects. The residual excess of anti-opioid left after termination of opioid administration, is partially responsible for the withdrawal syndrome. This model suggest the participation of NPFF in modulation of

opioid effects and therefore present them as important targets for novel pharmacological agents which can intensify the opioid antinociceptive effects by modulating endogenous opioid function. In view of this point, the agonists of the anti-opioid system would block the opioid effect whereas their antagonists are expected to potentiate it. Such hypothesis broadens the vision to describe the role of NPFF system in the control of opioid function mainly in supraspinal regions. In particular, NPFF exhibiting anti-opioid effects emerges as a modulator of the opioid effects along with having significant role in the development of opioid tolerance and physical dependence.

This story has another side to be viewed, where experimental evidences have shown that NPFF exhibits opioid-like effects and it also potentiates in both the spinal as well as supraspinal regions the analgesic effect of morphine. Earlier NPFF has been placed in the anti-opioid category inspite of demonstration of both pro- and anti-opioid effects because the underlying mechanisms were not clear. However, recent studies are revealing the complexities of NPFF effects on opioid analgesic activity and thereby limiting the use of anti-opioid term to describe the physiological role of NPFF[25].

Evidences for opioid receptor heteromerization

Opioid GPCRs appear to form homo/heteromers having altered ligand binding and activation of G-protein[26,27]. The opioid receptor heteromerization was believed to occur intracellularly, where the two receptors may have physical association, thereby operating as homo/heteromers with distinct signaling and trafficking properties as compared to their monomeric counterparts[11]. The concept of homo/heteromers prevails from the reports on heteromerization of many GPCRs including

MOR and DOR[8,9]. The first example of role of heteromerization in pharmacological diversity was observed in studies on DOR and KOR receptors[28]. These studies exhibited the ligand binding, functional and trafficking properties of DOR/KOR complex that are distinct from those of each individual receptor[8]. *In vivo* operation of these mechanisms indeed is still unresolved in GPCR research[11]. Until now, there is very little evidence supporting the *in vivo* co-expression of MOR/DOR receptors. Few examples have been reported in dorsal root ganglia[29], spinal cord[19], rostroventral medulla[11] and in a limited number of brain areas which are tested by specific antibodies raised particularly against these heteromers[30]. Various studies *viz.* coimmunoprecipitation and bioluminescence resonance energy transfer studies suggest physical association between MOR and DOR receptors upon co-expression[19,31], although their distinct localization and activation have been recently reported in studies on mice[32]. It is revealed from one of the study that chronic administration of morphine upregulates the MOR/DOR dimers[30] and during this the activation of the DOR subunit in the dimer results in degradation of MOR and cellular response[33].

A study supporting MOR/DOR heteromer formation demonstrating oligomerization of MOR receptor dimers into heteromer complex formation with DOR receptor following prolonged morphine treatment, and the influence on these interactions of DOR receptors. The changes in association were measured by förster resonance energy transfer (FRET), the mobility of receptors by fluorescence correlation spectroscopy and the degree of oligomerization by number analysis. Moreover the structural interpretation was done *via* computational modelling. With morphine there was little effect on the diffusion properties and interaction with G proteins of MOR. On the other hand, presence of DOR increases the oligomerization along with association of MOR receptors with G-proteins upon morphine treatment, indicating correlation of functional properties of MOR with its oligomerization[34].

Amongst the GPCR heteromers studied so far, opioid receptors were the first to be exhaustively studied *via* functional (changes in pharmacology), biochemical (immunoprecipitation, cross linking) and biophysical (FRET, BRET) methods. The affinity for heteromer formation is same for all the opioid receptors[35]. For example DOR can heteromerize with either MOR[36] or/ and KOR[37]. Taking a deep insight into the heteromers formed could reveal the presence of opioid receptor subtypes that have been pharmacologically defined, but not ascribed as splice variants. This could be exemplified by delta opioid receptor subtype 1 (DOR1) [preferred (D-Pen2,D-Pen5)enkephalin (DPDPE) and 7-Benzylidenenaltrexone (BNTX)] and DOR2 (preferred deltorphin Ⅱ and naltriben), as DOR1 forms DOR/KOR heteromer and DOR2 forms DOR/MOR heteromer. Conversely in other study more pronounced affinity was observed for DOR/MOR heteromer by DOR1 (BNTX)

ligand[10]. Supporting the previous observations, some behavioural effects *viz.* ethanol consumption, of DOR1 ligands are affected by disruption of MOR, partially confirming involvement of DOR1 in DOR/MOR heteromer[38]. Similarly exists the subtypes of MOR and KOR receptors. MOR antagonist naloxonazine inhibits MOR1 only out of the two MOR1 and MOR2. In case of KOR three subtypes have been pharmacologically identified out of which KOR1 binds arylacetamides, KOR2 does not, while KOR3[39] is insensitive to KOR (U50,488) ligand. Interestingly the subtypes being classified for various opioid receptors may be same, *e.g.*, MOR2 may be DOR2[40], whereas DOR1 and KOR2 may be the same DOR/KOR heteromer[41].

Another example includes the co-immunoprecipitation of MOR1 and DOR1 in the central nervous system tissue[19] which have been selectively recognized by the antibodies for DOR/MOR heteromer *in vitro* and *in vivo* as well[42]. Furthermore, only a single ligand, 6'-guanidinonaltrindole (6'-GNTI), has been identified that selectively activates a heteromer *in vitro* and produces a biological effect *in vivo*[43]. Although there is ongoing debate over the *in vivo* role of DOR/MOR or DOR/KOR heteromers, some evidences do exist for their existence *in vivo*.

Taking together the synergism between DOR and KOR receptor agonists and the reports on co-localization of opioid receptors from spinal region, DOR receptor agonist DPDPE was proposed to interact with DOR recognition site in an allosteric DOR/KOR heteromer. This heteromer is said to be allosteric because this model considers that upon norBNI binding to KOR recognition site induces conformational changes in the other protomer of the heteromer, DOR which results in antagonism of DPDPE antinociception. Another support for this observation came from a study on porcine ileum where DOR and KOR receptors were found co-localized and norBNI significantly antagonized the DOR selective agonists[44]. Thus reinforcing the existence of DOR1 receptor as DOR/ KOR heteromer in the mouse spinal cord and that the two subunits are allosterically coupled[45].

In another study the DOR agonist deltorphin-Ⅱ has been reported as functional agonist of the MOR/DOR heteromer, which not only induced desensitization but also inhibited the adenylyl cyclase through a pertussis toxin-insensitive G-protein. Stimulation of the heteromer MOR/DOR lead to the activation of $G_{\alpha z}$, which was demonstrated by the incorporation of $GTP\gamma^{35}S$, whereas, individual activation of separate MOR and DOR receptors activated $G_{\alpha i}$ preferably. This specific behaviour has been attributed to the shared involvement of both receptors distal carboxyl tails, so that truncation of distal carboxyl tail of one of the receptor modified the selective ligand-binding pocket of the other. The significance of the role of distal carboxyl tails in the receptor interaction could be viewed from the reduction in their co-immunoprecipitation upon truncation of the carboxyl tails of both the receptors.

Thereby suggesting the occurrence of interaction upon co-expression only, indicating the generation of MOR/DOR heteromer by a co-translational mechanism[46].

One of the studies further provides new understandings of the MOR/DOR receptor heteromer trafficking *via* clathrin and dynamin endocytic machinery. The insight of this mechanism was that MOR/DOR receptor heteromers internalization by DOR agonists needed the modification of MOR agonist binding to MOR/DOR heteromer caused by the DOR agonists which occupied both the receptors binding pockets and remained intact in a morphine tolerance model[47]. Another study suggested the existence of DOR/KOR heteromers in the sensory neurons of rat and the modulation of DOR agonist responses *via* KOR antagonists through the allosteric interaction of the protomers[48].

Opioid receptors are known for modulation of all levels of brain function including autonomic, sensory, emotional and cognitive processing. A very recent study has provided a proof-of-principle brain atlas using the MOR/DOR interacting model for the co-expression of GPCRs *in vivo*[11]. And now it has become an established fact that MOR and DOR receptors have functional interactions *in vivo* but still the underlying mechanism is still unresolved. To gain an insight of the existence of MOR/DOR heteromer in brain a double knock-in, redMOR/greenDOR (red protein mcherry tagged and green fluorescent protein tagged) mice model was generated. The data has been reported for the mapping of both receptors throughout the nervous system and is accessible online offering subcellular level visualization of opioid receptor atlas with associated MOR/DOR. Further where co-immunoprecipitation revealed heteromerization of receptors, high-order processing of forebrain suggested system-level interactions between MOR and DOR receptors as they were detected in separate neurons. On the contrary, subcortical networks highlighted co-localization which is crucial for eating, perception, sexual behaviours and response to aversive stimuli[11].

Although in literature all the three possible receptor heterodimer formations have been reported for the three known opioid receptors *viz.* KOR/MOR, MOR/DOR and KORDOR, the most importantly known and proven till date has been the heteromer MOR/DOR. Apart from this there is another interesting possibility of opioid receptors forming heteromers with other receptors outside their family having distinct pharmacological properties, different affinities for ligands as well as different signaling and receptor trafficking.

Astonishingly recent reports have identified and proposed the presence of some sort of association within the cell membrane between opioid and anti-opioid NPFF receptors. A study performed on rats revealed strong and long-lasting antinociceptive effects induced by NPFF when administered intrathecally along with potentiation of the morphine-induced analgesia[49]. This model proposed NPFF as a functional DOR/opioid

autoreceptor antagonist causing an increase in the release of endogenous opioid peptides in spinal cord[50].

Another *in vitro* study done on SH-SY5Y cells showed a physical interaction between NPFF2 and MOR receptors, explaining the anti-opioid activity of NPFF2 receptors. By promoting a heteromeric association with MOR receptors, NPFF agonists cause changes in the diffusion properties of MOR receptors, as if they are moving MOR receptors away from their signaling associates. As a consequence, the response to opioids is reduced. The modulation of the delivery and trafficking of DOR/opioid receptors at the cell surface is assumed to be a means for regulating MOR receptor function, hence opioid analgesia and tolerance[51]. Likewise, the molecular mechanism described here for NPFF, comparable to the diffusion-trap system of the synapse, could represent another way to modulate the opioid response.

NPFF2 receptors exert a nonreciprocal antagonism on opioid receptors. Although, many other peptides including the opioid peptides, have been known to modulate the opioid receptors activity but it is only NPFF which exerts the antiopioid activity. To study this, a model SH2-D9 has been provided which enables the characterization of the molecular mechanisms involved in NPFF and opioid receptors interaction[52].

It is clearly evident at various, behavioural and receptor levels that NPFF and opioid systems interact. Though the most extensively studied physiological function is nociception, others like reward, locomotion, feeding, and intestinal motility are also affected. The two reciprocate each other as endogenous opioids are implied in analgesia upon spinal injection of NPFF and upon chronic opioid treatment, the endogenous NPFF peptides results in analgesic tolerance/hyperalgesia. These pharmacological modifications could be explained by the cellular anti-opioid effect of NPFF which has been attributed to the heteromerization mediated direct cross-talk between the two types of receptors studied in model cell lines. The validation of this hypothesis on endogenous receptors in neurons is a great challenge which will unveil some new perspectives for pain modulation and tolerance development[53]. This review focuses on the latest developments in the field of opioid receptor heteromerization and role in tolerance development.

PHARMACOLOGY AND THERAPEUTIC POTENTIAL OF OPIOID RECEPTOR HETEROMERS

Previously opioid receptors were considered as monomers and the selection of ligands binding to these receptors was based on observed pharmacological parameters. However, recent evidence from converging methodologies suggests that opioid receptors are expressed as homo/heterodimers. Opioid receptors homo/heteromerization

Table 1 Alteration of receptor properties by heteromerization over the years

Year of study	Receptors involved	Mode of study	Possible mechanism for interaction	Changes in binding properties	Heteromer specific ligands	Changes in G-protein activation and coupling	Possible therapeutic implications	Ref.
2000	MOR/DOR	In vivo	Direct interaction (heterodimers are preferred)	Decrease in affinity for selective agonists			Pain relief	George et al[9]
2000	MOR/DOR	In vivo	Direct interaction (heterodimers are preferred)	Allosteric effect of DOR ligands on MOR binding			Pain relief	Gomes et al[10]
2004	MOR/DOR	In vivo	Direct interaction (heterodimers are preferred)			Decrease in G protein coupling	Pain relief	Gomes et al[19]
2000	MOR/DOR	In vivo	Direct interaction (heterodimers are preferred)			Allosteric effect of DOR ligands on MOR coupling; signaling through a β-arrestin2-mediated pathway	Pain relief	Rozenfeld et al[6]
2007	MOR/DOR						Pain relief	Hasbi et al[84]
2005	MOR/DOR	COS-7 and CHO-K1 cells	Direct interaction (heterodimers are preferred)			Shift in coupling from Gαi to Gαz	Pain relief, tolerance development	Fan et al[46]
2003	KOR/DOR	Mouse spinal cord	Direct interaction (heterodimers are preferred)				Pain relief	Portoghese et al[45]
2001	KOR/DOR	Porcine ileum	Direct interaction (heterodimers are preferred)				Pain relief	Poonyachoti et al[44]
2010	MOR/DOR	HEK-293 cells	Direct interaction (heterodimers are preferred)				Pain relief	Yekkirala et al[57]
2005	MOR/DOR	In vivo	Direct interaction (heterodimers are preferred)		Specific heteromer activation by the agonist 6-GNTI		Pain relief	Waldhoer et al[43]
2014	DOR/KOR	In vivo (rat trigeminal ganglia)	Allosteric interactions				Thermal allodynia	Erbs et al[11]

MOR: Mu homologous opioid G-protein coupled receptors; DOR: Delta homologous opioid G-protein coupled receptors; KOR: Kappa homologous opioid G-protein coupled receptors.

is assumed to play a role in the activation of receptors and their internalization. This review focuses on advancements in the field of opioid receptor heteromerization and its impact on their pharmacological behaviour, and is summarised in Table 1. Since the theory behind heteromerization is still unknown, various models have been devised to identify the neurotransmitters binding to opioid receptors and their activation mediated by the allosteric interactions taking place between the protomers. Although there is a lack of a model predicting heteromerization signalling, functional data supports their occurrence as well as effects produced by them in response to a single neurotransmitter[54].

It has been very recently known that heterodimerization of opioid receptors modulates their pharmacology. The variation in the opioid receptor number, their distribution and the post-translational modifications may have great impact on the various adaptive changes following the acute (*e.g.*, desensitization) and chronic (*e.g.*, tolerance and down-regulation) opioid administration. Although each protomer of the heteromer is distinct, the heteromer too on the whole represents a distinct entity. Therefore depending on the heteromer different affinities and efficacies are expected for compounds. Thus the existence of opioid receptors heteromers open up a new field for the identification of compounds with improved specificity and reduced undesirable effects as they generate novel pharmacological and signaling properties.

Several laboratories have indeed started using this interesting therapeutic approach to design such compounds. In first the dual compounds have moderate affinity for the two receptors whereas in second case the "dimeric" compounds would activate simultaneously both the receptors of the heterodimer. Out of these the second would serve to be an excellent tool for detection

of heteromerization in natural tissues. Many such heteromer specific compounds do exist which have been identified serendipitously. These rationally designed dualsteric GPCR agonists have allowed the simultaneous exploitation of favourable characteristics of orthosteric and allosteric receptors and prove to be a promising new approach for the achievement of fine-tuned GPCR modulation[55]. Following this approach it is expected that more rational (perhaps modelling based) approaches will emerge in the future.

The dualsteric ligands would enable both *in vivo* heteromer localization as well as their dynamics. Moreover, tissue-selective expression of opioid receptors would also enable prevention of the opioid induced side-effects *viz.* constipation and respiratory depression. In addition, the alteration of heteromers expression during morphine tolerance development could represent unexplored and selective targets for the pain modulation and reversing the development of tolerance and physical dependence[56].

LIGANDS TARGETING OPIOID HETEROMERS

Out of the ligands identified so far that are selective for the opioid receptor types, some may exhibit selectivity towards the heteromer in a differential manner in comparison to the individual receptors. In this context, various studies have been initiated to evaluate the classical MOR and DOR ligands selectivity towards MOR/DOR heteromer and also some MOR/DOR heteromer selective compounds have been identified and synthesized.

Given below are some examples of ligands targeting opioid receptor heteromers having analgesic effects *in vivo* and their possible role in side-effects, *e.g.*, tolerance.

Classical MOR agonists
Morphine has long been known as one of the choice analgesic used to treat chronic pain, but its usage is restricted due to the development of tolerance and physical dependence. To overcome this shortcoming, various strategies have been considered to enhance the potency of morphine while limiting its abuse. The most important out of them is using a combination of drugs, to increase the effectiveness of morphine.

Measurement of intracellular calcium release *via* chimeric G proteins or GTPγS binding has enabled the examination of the signaling properties of both the classical and clinically used MOR agonists (DAMGO, morphine, fentanyl and methadone) which is done in the cells stably expressing homo/heteromeric opioid receptors[57]. The potencies of these agonists increased to almost 7-12 folds higher in MOR/DOR heteromers than in MOR homomers and showing no significant results in DOR homomers. Whereas the DOR selective antagonist, naltrindole, antagonized the morphine,

fentanyl and methadone mediated signaling exclusively in MOR/DOR heteromers expressing cells and also the antinociceptive effects of these drugs in monkeys[58]. Thus, suggesting MOR/DOR heteromers as prime targets for exhibiting antinociception and in tolerance development of these drugs.

Studies have shown that selective ligands activate distinct signaling pathways in cells expressing MOR/DOR heteromers in comparison to the cells expressing MOR homomers. As for example, DAMGO activates $G\alpha_{i/o}$-mediated signaling in MOR alone expressing cells while β-arrestin mediated signaling is activated in MOR/DOR heteromers expressing cells[59]. Since the β-arrestin mediated signaling is known for involvement in tolerance development, the MOR/DOR heteromers are suggested to play a role in the same[60].

Various *in vivo* studies have revealed that modulation of morphine-mediated antinociception involves MOR/DOR heteromers like morphine antinociception is enhanced by endogenous DOR agonist, Leu-enkephalin, by synthetic analog of enkephalin, FK33824 or by DOR opioid antagonist, TIPPΨ[19].

Further studies have promoted the DOR involvement in morphine tolerance development. Like in one study DOR receptor antagonist, naltrindole have been shown to block the morphine tolerance development[61] and in other study the DOR knockout mice did not developed the antinociceptive tolerance to morphine[62,63].

Recent reports have shown increased levels of MOR/DOR heteromers in brain and spinal regions following the morphine chronic treatment, using heteromer selective antibodies[30]. Another study using (transactivator of transcription) peptide (GRKKRRQRRRPQ) (TAT) peptide which targets the transmembrane 1 of MOR, preventing its heteromerization, demonstrated prevention of morphine tolerance development upon pretreatment with TAT[33]. Thus clearly indicating the crucial role of MOR/DOR heteromers in morphine induced anti-nociceptive tolerance.

Further studies have shown that MOR subunits interactions or interactions with other G-proteins are not disturbed by the morphine treatment rather it destabilizes the MOR/DOR heteromers. This could be seen in a recent study which shows that activation of the DOR protomer in MOR/DOR heteromer causes degradation of MOR protomer rather than recycling and thus decreasing its cellular response[33]. This is explained on the basis of sizes where MOR/DOR heteromers can be easily transferred to the lysosomal pathway as compared to MOR homomers which are larger in size, through more accessible sites for proteolysis or modifications, such as ubiquitination. Finally, proposing MOR/DOR heteromer as a suitable example to demonstrate the role of GPCR heteromerization causing differences in the cellular responses[34].

Classical DOR agonists
The antinociceptive effects of DOR selective agonist SNC80 have clearly depicted the involvement of

MOR/DOR heteromers. It was also shown in cells co-expressing a chimeric G-protein with either opioid receptor heteromers or individual receptor homomers that SNC80 induced intracellular calcium release only in cells expressing MOR/DOR heteromers[64]. Additionally MOR knockout animals did not showed the antinociceptive effect of SNC80 which was right shifted by almost 3-fold and with DOR knockouts the right shift was almost 6-fold[64]. Combining these results emphasized on the necessary presence of both MOR and DOR for the antinociceptive activity of SNC80. Further in a study combination of highly selective MOR agonists with DOR antagonists (and vice versa) were used to explore MOR/DOR heteromer mediated signaling.

As for example reversal of the MOR mediated signaling from β-arrestin-mediated into Gαi/o-mediated, in cells co-expressing MOR/DOR heteromers by blocking of the DOR by its selective antagonist which also resulted to enhancement of morphine-mediated antinociception[19,59].

These results highlight the functioning of DOR ligands in allosteric modulation of MOR (protomer) activity among the MOR/DOR heteromer. Moreover, in a report loss of the antidepressant and anxiolytic effects of the DOR agonist, UFP-512, were shown using a fusion of TAT peptide to the peptide corresponding to the distal C-tail of DOR to disrupt MOR/DOR heteromers signifying their potential role in anxiety and depression[65].

Heteromer specific ligands

Many studies have reported that receptor heteromerization leads to new binding properties[8-10], suggesting that heteromerization induces an alteration in the conformation of the ligand-binding site. The identification of an agonist, 6'-GNTI [6'-guanidinyl-17-(cyclopropylmethyl)-6,7-dehydro-4,5a-epoxy-3,14-dihydroxy-6,7-2',3' indolomorphinan], an analgesic showing relative selectivity for DOR/KOR heteromers, supports the notion that receptors within a heteromer are capable of adopting active conformations that are absent in their homomeric counterparts[43]. 6'-guanidinonaltrindole precisely activates only the opioid receptor heteromers and not homomers[43]. Occurrence of heterodimers is tissue-specific as can be seen from the example of 6-GNTI which upon administration to spinal region induces analgesia but not in the brain. This study has given a proof-in-principle for the compounds targeting opioid heterodimers that they could be a better probe with increased analgesia and lesser side effects.

Another example is of a DOR1 selective agonist, 2-methyl-4 alpha alpha-(3-hydroxyphenyl)-1,2,3,4,-4a,5,12,12 alpha alpha-octahydro-quinolino[2,3,3-g]isoquinoline (TAN-67), which is known for reducing ethanol consumption in mice. The study reveals that its activity depends on presence of both the DOR and MOR receptors suggesting DOR1 to be a DOR/MOR heteromer which exhibited reduced ethanol

consumption without dysphoria production. One more such example is of CYM51010 which is a MOR/DOR heteromer selective agonist[66]. The biasing of CYM51010 towards the MOR/DOR heteromer was determined by the tail-flick antinociception assay which demonstrated analgesic activity comparable to morphine and during chronic administration it resulted in lesser tolerance development in comparison to morphine[66]. Further the MOR/DOR heteromer selective antibody treatment although partially but significantly blocked CYM51010-induced β-arrestin recruitment, GTPγS binding and intrathecal antinociception[66] reinforcing the result that CYM51010 exhibited its effect mainly through activation of MOR/DOR heteromer. Thereby, proposing CYM51010 as potent analgesic with lesser tolerance development as compared to morphine.

In addition, drug "cocktails" targeting homo/heteromers could be therapeutically valuable. As for example an opioid cocktail comprising of morphine and either methadone or DAMGO enhances the morphine induced endocytosis. It is benefitted by the homomeric MOR resulting into reduced development of tolerance and dependence[67].

Dualsteric/dual ligands (allosteric ligands)

Dualsteric ligands represent a novel mode of targeting GPCRs as they can bind simultaneously to both, the orthosteric and allosteric sites of a receptor protein or two receptors present in the near vicinity or heterodimers[68], as shown in Figure 2. This approach facilitates the exploitation by a single compound, of both the orthosteric and the allosteric sites. The orthosteric interaction on one hand provides high affinity for binding and activation of receptors, the allosteric interaction on the other hand results in receptor subtype-selectivity thereby modulating both the efficacy and the activation of intracellular signaling pathway. With the increase in reports on allosteric interactions for GPCRs and the insight of spatial geometry of ligand/GPCR/complexes, the rational design of dualsteric ligands promises the achievement of finely tuned GPCR modulation.

GPCRs physical interaction is becoming progressively more recognized. The mechanism behind allosteric modulation of receptor function may possibly be provided through these interactions. Such allosteric interactions are expected to occur in a way that when a ligand binds to one protomer, it behaves as an allosteric enhancer of the other protomer[69]. Apart from allosteric modulations, heteromerization also affects the ligand recognition, G protein-coupling and trafficking. One such example is of opioid receptor heteromers having difference in ligand recognition at the receptor heteromer. According to recent models only one G protein binds to two receptor units meaning that in case of a heteromer it will have to select a particular G protein it should bind to as these receptors are usually coupled to different G proteins[70].

Figure 2 Dualsteric ligand mediated activation of the heteromer.

Following this rational the attempts of synthesizing heteromer selective ligands has given rise to the generation of dual ligands *viz.* the mu-delta agonist-antagonist (MDAN) series of ligands linked by a spacer of variable length. Out of these the ligand MDAN21 consists of two pharmacophores, MOR agonist MA19 and DOR antagonist DN20, which are separated by a 21-atom spacer[71]. In comparison to morphine, MDAN21 exhibited 100-times greater potency without significant development of tolerance and dependence[71]. Furthermore, this ligand also immobilized the heteromer at the cell surface possibly by bridging both the protomers and thereby inhibiting the MOR receptor internalization in cells expressing MOR/DOR heteromers[72]. More examples of such ligands are ENTI, which comprises of oxymorphone (high affinity μ-agonist) linked by a spacer arm to a low affinity DOR antagonist and DM-SNC80, containing naltrexone (high affinity μ-antagonist) joined by a spacer arm to a low affinity DOR agonist[73]. Though, the analgesic activity and the side effects of these ligands have not yet been adequately evaluated. These studies altogether, projects dual ligands crucial role in the examination of both the *in vitro* and *in vivo* properties of MOR/DOR heteromers.

Certain endogenously occurring amphiactive peptides as MERF, containing overlapping opioid and anti-opioid peptide sequences represent important molecules to study these protein-protein interactions that modulate endogenous opioid function[74]. Also anti-opioid peptides which bind to specific anti-opioid receptors attenuate opioid analgesia and are also involved in tolerance development and physical dependence. Thus in accordance to anti-opioid hypothesis, if the anti-opioid receptors can be blocked by a suitably designed peptide which can block or act as an antagonist at anti-opioid receptors, then the tolerance development and physical dependence might be reduced or attenuated.

In this connection, based on MERF and well known modulation of opioid system by NPFF/FMRFa peptides a chimeric peptide, of Met-enkephalin (YGGFM) and FMRFa, YFa (YGGFMKKKFMRFamide) was previously designed by our group[75]. The tetrapeptide (YGGF) sequence is a common endogenous opioid peptides allosteric (message) sequence that activates the receptor and cascades the intracellular signaling pathways. Whereas, the (FMRFamide) sequence is a positive allosteric modulator of anti-opioid receptors and here is orthosteric (address) sequence having

role in opioid effect modulation and development of tolerance. YFa can bind to opioid receptors through its N-terminus Tyr-Gly-Gly-Phe (YGGF), (allosteric, message) sequence and to anti-opioid receptors through its C-terminus Phe-Met-Arg-Phe (FMRFamide), (orthosteric, address) sequence, which are separated by 3-lysine residues based on Schwyzer compartment theory[76].

YFa induced naloxone-reversible antinociception suggesting opioid receptors mediated analgesia it potentiated morphine induced antinociception and attenuated tolerance development to morphine analgesia, upon intraperitoneal administration[77]. Antagonist and protein expression studies revealed that YFa produces tolerance free KOR specific antinociception[77] may be due to its ability to adopt a helical conformation. In addition, it induced after 4 d pretreatment, cross tolerance to 20 mg/kg morphine analgesia with 80 mg/kg YFa[78] and these results have been further substantiated by forskolin-stimulated cAMP inhibition and Eu-GTP-γS binding studies[79]. Moreover, smooth muscle contraction study performed on ileum of guinea pig and vas deferens of mouse revealed role of anti-opioid receptors in normalizing the effects mediated by opioid receptors[80]. These observations proposed the role of this amphiactive peptide in pain modulation.

OPIOID RECEPTOR HETEROMER TRAFFICKING

Opioid receptor heteromerization has lead to the alteration of opioid ligand properties and it also affects the trafficking of receptors in the cell culture model systems[19,81-83]. A number of studies have reported the heteromers trafficking from an intracellular compartment to the cell surface. On the other hand a few studies have examined the MOR/DOR heteromers trafficking from the cell surface to an intracellular compartment (endocytosis) among which some conflicts about their presence only at the cell surface while others presume their pre-assembling in the endoplasmic reticulum prior being trafficked to the cell surface. To exemplify this one of study was done with MOR expressing cells in which DOR expression could be induced and it was revealed that the two receptors form heteromers only when present at the cell surface as this required the interactions with G proteins. Another study reported MOR/DOR heteromers presence in the endoplasmic reticulum where they were associated with Gαz protein, using BRET in combination with cell fractionation[84]. These two conflicting results having differences in the detection of heteromerization site is due to the disparity of the experimental conditions. The first study used induction of DOR expression in MOR expressing cells which is staggered receptor expression while the other study specifically picked up co-expressing MOR/luciferase and DOR/GFP.

Figure 3 Dualsteric ligand induced regulation of opioid receptors heteromer. Without agonist treatment, about 15% of the receptors are intracellular and G protein trimers are associated with each other with GDP bound to Gα subunits. Upon exposure to agonist, the receptor is activated and coupled to G proteins, triggering the exchange of GDP with GTP and dissociation of Gα from Gβγ subunits, which in turn activate down-stream effectors. Activation of the receptor also causes translocation and activation of GRKs, which phosphorylated the receptor in intracellular domains. Receptor phosphorylation enhances binding of β-arrestins, leading to uncoupling of receptors from G proteins. β-arrestins bind to clathrin and initiate movement of receptors into clathrin-coated pits, which are pinched by dynamin to become endosomes. Low pH in endosomes facilitates dissociation of agonists from the receptor and dephosphorylation of the receptor is believed to occur here. Internalized receptors are routed to two different pathways. Some are sorted to recycling endosomes and returned to plasma membranes. Alternatively, the receptors lead to degradation forming lysosomes. GRK: G-protein coupled receptor kinase; GDP: Guanosine-5'-diphosphate; GTP: Guanosine-5'-triphosphate.

Another twist arises with the studies claiming heteromer endocytosis to be probe selective, by showing that some of the agonists (damgo, Deltorphin Ⅱ, SNC80, methadone) induces the MOR/DOR heteromers endocytosis but others (DPDPE, DSLET) do not[42]. Furthermore, studies report blocking of MOR selective agonist induced endocytosis by the DOR selective antagonists[81]. Additionally, endocytosed MOR/DOR heteromers were found to be targeted for degradation whereas the MOR homomers were found to be recycled back to the cell surface[81]. Overall these studies proposed that changes in receptor trafficking properties are due to heteromerization, as shown in Figure 3.

Further studies using a MOR/DOR heteromer selective dual ligand, MDAN21, revealed blocking of heteromer endocytosis, it was successfully induced by the combination of individual monovalent pharmacophores (DN20 and MA19). This observation highlighted the importance of the 21-atom spacer in MDAN21 joining the two pharmacophores, which has effectively bridged the protomers, thereby immobilizing the MOR/DOR heteromer and preventing its internalization. Further studies are still required for the characterization of the underlying mechanisms involved in the differential trafficking of MOR/DOR heteromers.

In one of the study it was shown that chaperone proteins are required for the efficient cell surface expression of MOR/DOR heteromers while examination of their biosynthesis and maturation. Therefore in MOR and DOR co-expressing cells the heteromer was found

to localize in the Golgi apparatus significantly, clearly indicating the requirement of presence of receptor transport protein 4 for cell surface expression of the heteromer[42]. The heteromer was protected from ubiquitination and proteasomal degradation by this chaperone during folding and maturation[42]. Although the role of this chaperone in the unique binding and signaling properties of the MOR/DOR heteromer is not clear.

Taking the other side of the story and looking at the antibodies which have been classically used as analytical tools for the identification, localization and quantification of different antigens including hormones and pathogens. Last decade has seen their usage as therapeutic agents in experimental and clinical medicine[85]. They have significant advantage of electivity, potency and efficacy over the conventional chemical drug-based therapies which makes them more effective in the treatment of various conditions *viz.* cancer and immune disorders. Additionally they have shown direct impact on signaling pathways within the targeted cells either by binding to the cell surface proteins or acting on their intracellular targets. A study on generation of heteromer specific antibody reported a MOR-DOR heteromer selective antibody that enabled examination of up-regulation of the heteromer in endogenous tissue upon chronic morphine treatment. This subtractive immunization strategy could be used for the generation of MOR-DOR heteromer selective antibodies and also to generate other antibodies selective for other GPCR heteromers.

This would then help in studying the physiological and pathophysiological conditions and the role of GPCR heteromers in them[30].

Screening for ligands targeting the MOR/DOR heteromer and their pharmacology in pain-regulation

The above mentioned studies put forward the MOR/DOR heteromers as potential targets for the development of novel therapeutics in treatment of pain with lesser side-effects due to their unique pharmacological and signaling properties. Since this would require high-throughput screening (HTS) of a large number of compounds leading to the identification of MOR/DOR heteromer selective ligands, suitable screening assays have to be determined[86].

All the observations of this study points towards the anti-analgesic role of the DOR/MOR heteromer in case of thermal nociception. The anti-analgesic effect exhibited by the combined treatment of methadone and naltriben was dependent DOR dependent, as it was not present in the DOR knockout mice. Moreover, reversal of the anti-analgesic effect was demonstrated which may be either due to the increase in degradation of DORs or by selective blocking of signaling only from the DOR/MOR heteromers but not MORs[87]. Thus below we describe a few of the HTS assays suitable for the heteromer selective ligand screening.

HTS using calcium signaling

Out of the several assays *viz.* adenylyl cyclase/cAMP, phospholipase C/Ca^{2+}, or Rho, that are used to measure the G-protein mediated signaling which could be used for HTS, the one measuring the intracellular Ca^{2+} release is commonly used for the screening of ligands to Gαq coupled receptors. Furthermore, measuring the intracellular Ca^{2+} release could also be used in the screening of ligands for Gαi or Gαs coupled receptors, because of the development of chimeric G-proteins (Gαq$_s$ or Gαq$_i$) which provide for these receptors the calcium readout, that do not normally signal *via* the Gαq pathway[88]. Therefore by monitoring the release of intracellular Ca^{2+}, the activation of opioid receptors co-expressed with chimeric Gαq$_i$ protein can be detected.

Recently, a screening assay has been reported which uses the terminal-carboxyl truncated GPCRs fused to chimeric Gαq$_i$ proteins for the detection of heteromer-mediated signaling. These fused receptors do not induce the intracellular Ca^{2+} release upon agonist binding; it is only observed upon their co-expression with the wild-type receptors[88]. The co-expression of wild-type MOR and Gαq$_i$-fused DOR receptor allowed the detection of Ca^{2+} release for MOR/DOR heteromers[88]. The most important advantage of this method is it detects only the heteromer mediated signaling in heteromers expressing cells. To exemplify, this assay has been used with a compound ADL5859 which exhibited weak signals in case of MOR/DOR

heteromers as compared to DOR homomers[88]. Thus proving that Ca^{2+} signaling based assays could be very useful in the identification of heteromer-selective compounds.

HTS using β-arrestin signaling

The two subtypes of β-arrestin (1 and 2) exhibit 78% homology and contain binding sites for clathrin and the β2-adaptin subunit in their C-terminal tail which allows them to function as adaptor proteins and target GPCRs to clathrin coated pits for endocytosis[89,90]. The different opioid receptor subtypes exhibit different requirements for binding β-arrestin (type 1 and 2)[91] that could lead to different signaling outcomes[92,93], as shown in Figure 4. Glutathione S-transferase pull down assays show that the third intracellular loop and the C-terminal tail of DOR and only the C-terminal tail of KOR can interact with β-arrestin 1 or β-arrestin 2[91]. These studies did not observe any interaction between β-arrestin 1/2 and MOR. However, studies in HEK-293 cells using β-arrestin 2 tagged to GFP or in striatal neurons using dominant negative β-arrestin 2 show that agonist activated MOR can recruit β-arrestin 2[94,95] although the efficacy of recruitment is agonist dependent[96]. Interestingly, mice lacking β-arrestin 2 potentiated and increased duration of the analgesic effect induced by morphine underscoring the importance of β-arrestin 2 in mediating MOR function[97]. In the case of DOR, a BRET assay suggested that receptor phosphorylation promoted receptor selectivity for β-arrestin 2 over β-arrestin 1 without affecting the stability of the receptor-β-arrestin complex[98]. However, another study used fluorescence and co-immunoprecipitation to show that agonist treated DOR bound and recruited β-arrestin (1 and 2) to the plasma membrane[99]. In addition, it has been shown that over expression of type 1 β-arrestin leads to an attenuation of DOR and KOR but not MOR mediated activation of G-proteins and inhibition of cAMP levels[100].

In addition to being involved in the attenuation of G protein mediated signaling, studies have shown that β-arrestins can induce a sustained extracellular signal-regulated kinases (ERK) phosphorylation that is distinct from the transient G-protein mediated ERK phosphorylation[101]. A recent study showed that MOR ligands such as etorphine and fentanyl, but not morphine or methadone, induced phosphorylation of ERK through a β-arrestin dependent pathway. This led to the translocation of phosphorylated ERK to the nucleus leading to an increase in the activity of Elk-1 and in the transcription of G-protein coupled receptor kinases 2 and β-arrestin 2[102]. More recently, a study showed that heterodimerization between MOR and DOR promotes the recruitment of type 2 β-arrestin onto the plasma membrane thereby changing the spatio-temporal dynamics of ERK mediated signaling that are quite distinct from those observed with the

Figure 4 Hypothesis about the role of receptor internalization in the development of opioid tolerance. A: In the presence of "non-internalizing" opioids, exemplified by morphine, receptor signaling is rapidly terminated by receptor phosphorylation and β-arrestin binding. The desensitized receptors remain inactivated in the plasma membrane leading to signaling desensitization and opioid tolerance; B: In contrast, "internalizing" opioids such as DAMGO [D-Ala2, N-MePhe4, Gly-ol]-enkephalin lead to receptor desensitization by phosphorylation and β-arrestin binding but also to rapid receptor internalization and resensitization counteracting signaling desensitization and opioid tolerance.

MOR homodimer. Altogether, these studies show that β-arrestins plays crucial role in mediating opioid receptor signaling by serving as a switch between G protein dependent and independent signaling mechanisms[103].

Role of anti-opioid compounds in tolerance development

Recent researches have though made somewhat clear the mechanism underlying pain, but still the opioids are the most powerful analgesics, inspite of their limitation of tolerance development and dependence following chronic exposure. To overcome this, a hypothesis has been proposed according to which the chronic administration of opioids is counteracted by anti-opioid system that produces opposite effects[21]. This hypothesis has been supported by a number of experimental and clinical data which clearly shows that opiates activate anti-opioid systems, producing opposite and long-lasting effects which results in opioid induced hyperalgesia (OIH) thereby reducing the analgesic effects (tolerance)[104]. Since the molecular mechanisms that underlie OIH are not clear, this phenomenon is attributed to the sensitization of pronociceptive pathways in response to opioid treatment. Some other adverse effects *viz*. dependence and abstinence syndrome, may also involve the activation of anti-opioid systems[21]. Therefore it is assumed that compounds that can block the stimulation of anti-opioid systems could lead to the prevention of opioid tolerance development and thus limit the side effects developing due to chronic opioid exposure. This may be due to some sort of physical association between the opioid and anti-opioid receptors[105].

Looking at the other side of the story the discovery of a potent NPFF receptors (anti-opioid) selective antagonist, upon systemic administration prevents the hyperalgesia development which consequently opposes the associated decrease in analgesic effect induced by heroin. This observation reinforces the hypothesis that opioid tolerance development is not only due to a reduction in cellular responsiveness but could also be arising from the secondary up-regulation of the antiopioid systems having pronociceptive properties which renders long-lasting enhancement in pain sensitivity[106].

Looking at the other side of the story suggests that NPFF plays an important role in pain modulation, opioid tolerance development and several other physiological processes[106]. Recent reports proposed the discovery of a potent NPFF receptors (anti-opioid) selective antagonist, RF9 which upon systemic administration prevents the OIH development which consequently opposes the associated decrease in analgesic effect induced by heroin. These observations clearly mark NPFF receptors as part of anti-opioid system and put forward their antagonists as useful therapeutic agents for the improvement of opioids efficacy during chronic pain treatment[23].

Based on certain endogenous amphiactive peptides as MERF, which represent important molecules to study presence of homo/heteromer as well as their interactions that modulate endogenous opioid function[74] a chimeric peptide YFa (YGGFMKKKFMRFamide-YFa) was designed by our group. YFa can bind to opioid receptors through its N-terminus Tyr-Gly-Gly-Phe (YGGF), (allosteric, message) sequence and to anti-opioid receptors through its C-terminus Phe-Met-Arg-Phe (FMRFamide), (orthosteric, address) sequence, separated by 3-lysine

residues based on Schwyzer compartment theory.

Following the same lines of scrutiny presently in our group another dualsteric ligand NPYFa (YGGFM-KKKPQRFamide) based on YFa, having mammalian anti-opioid sequence in order to achieve a more potent and tolerance free chimeric peptide. NPYFa contains both endogenous opioid (YGGFM; Met-enkephalin) at N-terminus and anti-opioid (NPFF-endogenous mammalian peptide)[107] at C-terminus (C-terminal modified analogue of YFa), separated by 3 lysine residues. Pharmacological profiling of dualsteric ligand NPYFa is in progress.

CONCLUSION

Decades of research over opioid receptors has recently discovered heteromers existence, opening new ways of investigating the functioning of opioid receptors. This has also given insight to how heteromerization affects the receptor trafficking and vice versa. This review highlighted the dualsteric ligand approach targeting opioid heteromers with improved analgesic efficacy and less tolerance development. Rationally designed dualsteric GPCR agonists targeting opioid receptors heteromers allows exploitation of binding, orthosteric or orthosteric and allosteric sites of two distinct receptors simultaneously. This could be due to orthosteric receptor activation which may be followed by the allosteric subtype-selectivity further leading to intracellular signaling pathway selectivity. Further understanding of such mechanisms enables the selection of ligands with enhanced intrinsic efficacy and lesser side effects.

REFERENCES

1   **Le Merrer J**, Becker JA, Befort K, Kieffer BL. Reward processing by the opioid system in the brain. *Physiol Rev* 2009; **89**: 1379-1412 [PMID: 19789384 DOI: 10.1152/physrev.00005.2009]

2   **Feng Y**, He X, Yang Y, Chao D, Lazarus LH, Xia Y. Current research on opioid receptor function. *Curr Drug Targets* 2012; **13**: 230-246 [PMID: 22204322 DOI: 10.2174/138945012799201612]

3   **Filizola M**, Devi LA. Grand opening of structure-guided design for novel opioids. *Trends Pharmacol Sci* 2013; **34**: 6-12 [PMID: 23127545 DOI: 10.1016/j.tips.2012.10.002]

4   **Pradhan AA**, Befort K, Nozaki C, Gavériaux-Ruff C, Kieffer BL. The delta opioid receptor: an evolving target for the treatment of brain disorders. *Trends Pharmacol Sci* 2011; **32**: 581-590 [PMID: 21925742 DOI: 10.1016/j.tips.2011.06.008]

5   **Lutz PE**, Kieffer BL. Opioid receptors: distinct roles in mood disorders. *Trends Neurosci* 2013; **36**: 195-206 [PMID: 23219016 DOI: 10.1016/j.tins.2012.11.002]

6   **Rozenfeld R**, Devi LA. Receptor heteromerization and drug discovery. *Trends Pharmacol Sci* 2010; **31**: 124-130 [PMID: 20060175 DOI: 10.1016/j.tips.2009.11.008]

7   **Massotte D**. In vivo opioid receptor heteromerization: where do we stand? *Br J Pharmacol* 2015; **172**: 420-434 [PMID: 24666391 DOI: 10.1111/bph.12702]

8   **Jordan BA**, Devi LA. G-protein-coupled receptor heterodimerization modulates receptor function. *Nature* 1999; **399**: 697-700 [PMID: 10385123 DOI: 10.1038/21441]

9   **George SR**, Fan T, Xie Z, Tse R, Tam V, Varghese G, O'Dowd BF. Oligomerization of mu- and delta-opioid receptors. Generation of

10 **Gomes I**, Jordan BA, Gupta A, Trapaidze N, Nagy V, Devi LA. Heterodimerization of mu and delta opioid receptors: A role in opiate synergy. *J Neurosci* 2000; **20**: RC110 [PMID: 11069979]

11 **Erbs E**, Faget L, Scherrer G, Matifas A, Filliol D, Vonesch JL, Koch M, Kessler P, Hentsch D, Birling MC, Koutsourakis M, Vasseur L, Veinante P, Kieffer BL, Massotte D. A mu-delta opioid receptor brain atlas reveals neuronal co-occurrence in subcortical networks. *Brain Struct Funct* 2015; **220**: 677-702 [PMID: 24623156 DOI: 10.1007/s00429-014-0717-9]

12 **Cahill CM**, Holdridge SV, Morinville A. Trafficking of delta-opioid receptors and other G-protein-coupled receptors: implications for pain and analgesia. *Trends Pharmacol Sci* 2007; **28**: 23-31 [PMID: 17150262 DOI: 10.1016/j.tips.2006.11.003]

13 **Franco R**, Casadó V, Mallol J, Ferrada C, Ferré S, Fuxe K, Cortés A, Ciruela F, Lluis C, Canela EI. The two-state dimer receptor model: a general model for receptor dimers. *Mol Pharmacol* 2006; **69**: 1905-1912 [PMID: 16501032 DOI: 10.1124/mol.105.020685]

14 **Ferré S**, Baler R, Bouvier M, Caron MG, Devi LA, Durroux T, Fuxe K, George SR, Javitch JA, Lohse MJ, Mackie K, Milligan G, Pfleger KD, Pin JP, Volkow ND, Waldhoer M, Woods AS, Franco R. Building a new conceptual framework for receptor heteromers. *Nat Chem Biol* 2009; **5**: 131-134 [PMID: 19219011 DOI: 10.1038/nchembio0309-131]

15 **Hosohata Y**, Vanderah TW, Burkey TH, Ossipov MH, Kovelowski CJ, Sora I, Uhl GR, Zhang X, Rice KC, Roeske WR, Hruby VJ, Yamamura HI, Lai J, Porreca F. delta-Opioid receptor agonists produce antinociception and [35S]GTPgammaS binding in mu receptor knockout mice. *Eur J Pharmacol* 2000; **388**: 241-248 [PMID: 10675732 DOI: 10.1016/S0014-2999(99)00897-3]

16 **Casadó V**, Cortés A, Mallol J, Pérez-Capote K, Ferré S, Lluis C, Franco R, Canela EI. GPCR homomers and heteromers: a better choice as targets for drug development than GPCR monomers? *Pharmacol Ther* 2009; **124**: 248-257 [PMID: 19664655 DOI: 10.1016/j.pharmthera.2009.07.005]

17 **Franco R**, Casadó V, Cortés A, Mallol J, Ciruela F, Ferré S, Lluis C, Canela EI. G-protein-coupled receptor heteromers: function and ligand pharmacology. *Br J Pharmacol* 2008; **153** Suppl 1: S90-S98 [PMID: 18037920 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjp.0707571]

18 **Franco R**, Casadó V, Cortés A, Pérez-Capote K, Mallol J, Canela E, Ferré S, Lluis C. Novel pharmacological targets based on receptor heteromers. *Brain Res Rev* 2008; **58**: 475-482 [PMID: 18620000 DOI: 10.1016/j.brainresrev.2008.06.002]

19 **Gomes I**, Gupta A, Filipovska J, Szeto HH, Pintar JE, Devi LA. A role for heterodimerization of mu and delta opiate receptors in enhancing morphine analgesia. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2004; **101**: 5135-5139 [PMID: 15044695 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0307601101]

20 **van Rijn RM**, Whistler JL, Waldhoer M. Opioid-receptor-heteromer-specific trafficking and pharmacology. *Curr Opin Pharmacol* 2010; **10**: 73-79 [PMID: 19846340 DOI: 10.1016/j.coph.2009.09.007]

21 **Rothman RB**. A review of the role of anti-opioid peptides in morphine tolerance and dependence. *Synapse* 1992; **12**: 129-138 [PMID: 1362289 DOI: 10.1002/syn.890120206]

22 **Allard M**, Geoffre S, Legendre P, Vincent JD, Simonnet G. Characterization of rat spinal cord receptors to FLFQPQRFamide, a mammalian morphine modulating peptide: a binding study. *Brain Res* 1989; **500**: 169-176 [PMID: 2557956 DOI: 10.1016/0006-8993(89)90311-9]

23 **Simonin F**, Schmitt M, Laulin JP, Laboureyras E, Jhamandas JH, MacTavish D, Matifas A, Mollereau C, Laurent P, Parmentier M, Kieffer BL, Bourguignon JJ, Simonnet G. RF9, a potent and selective neuropeptide FF receptor antagonist, prevents opioid-induced tolerance associated with hyperalgesia. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2006; **103**: 466-471 [PMID: 16407169 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0502090103]

24 **Simonin F**. Neuropeptide FF receptors as therapeutic targets. *Drugs Future* 2006; **31**: 603-609 [DOI: 10.1358/dof.2006.031.07.1007143]

25 **Roumy M**, Zajac JM. Neuropeptide FF, pain and analgesia. *Eur J Pharmacol* 1998; **345**: 1-11 [PMID: 9593588]

26 **Kroeze WK**, Sheffler DJ, Roth BL. G-protein-coupled receptors at

novel functional properties. *J Biol Chem* 2000; **275**: 26128-26135 [PMID: 10842167 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M000345200]

a glance. *J Cell Sci* 2003; **116**: 4867-4869 [PMID: 14625380 DOI: 10.1242/jcs.00902]

27   **Devi LA**. Heterodimerization of G-protein-coupled receptors: pharmacology, signaling and trafficking. *Trends Pharmacol Sci* 2001; **22**: 532-537 [PMID: 11583811 DOI: 10.1016/S0165-6147(00)01799-5]

28   **Hipser C**, Bushlin I, Gupta A, Gomes I, Devi LA. Role of antibodies in developing drugs that target G-protein-coupled receptor dimers. *Mt Sinai J Med* 2010; **77**: 374-380 [PMID: 20687183 DOI: 10.1002/msj.20199]

29   **Wang HB**, Zhao B, Zhong YQ, Li KC, Li ZY, Wang Q, Lu YJ, Zhang ZN, He SQ, Zheng HC, Wu SX, Hökfelt TG, Bao L, Zhang X. Coexpression of delta- and mu-opioid receptors in nociceptive sensory neurons. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2010; **107**: 13117-13122 [PMID: 20615975 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1008382107]

30   **Gupta A**, Mulder J, Gomes I, Rozenfeld R, Bushlin I, Ong E, Lim M, Maillet E, Junek M, Cahill CM, Harkany T, Devi LA. Increased abundance of opioid receptor heteromers after chronic morphine administration. *Sci Signal* 2010; **3**: ra54 [PMID: 20647592 DOI: 10.1126/scisignal.2000807]

31   **Wang D**, Sun X, Bohn LM, Sadée W. Opioid receptor homo- and heterodimerization in living cells by quantitative bioluminescence resonance energy transfer. *Mol Pharmacol* 2005; **67**: 2173-2184 [PMID: 15778451 DOI: 10.1124/mol.104.010272]

32   **Scherrer G**, Imamachi N, Cao YQ, Contet C, Mennicken F, O'Donnell D, Kieffer BL, Basbaum AI. Dissociation of the opioid receptor mechanisms that control mechanical and heat pain. *Cell* 2009; **137**: 1148-1159 [PMID: 19524516 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2009.04.019]

33   **He SQ**, Zhang ZN, Guan JS, Liu HR, Zhao B, Wang HB, Li Q, Yang H, Luo J, Li ZY, Wang Q, Lu YJ, Bao L, Zhang X. Facilitation of μ-opioid receptor activity by preventing δ-opioid receptor-mediated codegradation. *Neuron* 2011; **69**: 120-131 [PMID: 21220103 DOI: 10.1016/j.neuron.2010.12.001]

34   **Golebiewska U**, Johnston JM, Devi L, Filizola M, Scarlata S. Differential response to morphine of the oligomeric state of μ-opioid in the presence of δ-opioid receptors. *Biochemistry* 2011; **50**: 2829-2837 [PMID: 21361347 DOI: 10.1021/bi101701x]

35   **Zheng H**, Chu J, Qiu Y, Loh HH, Law PY. Agonist-selective signaling is determined by the receptor location within the membrane domains. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2008; **105**: 9421-9426 [PMID: 18599439 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0802253105]

36   **Chu P**, Murray S, Lissin D, von Zastrow M. Delta and kappa opioid receptors are differentially regulated by dynamin-dependent endocytosis when activated by the same alkaloid agonist. *J Biol Chem* 1997; **272**: 27124-27130 [PMID: 9341153 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.272.43.27124]

37   **van Rijn RM**, Whistler JL. The only way is up: preventing opioid tolerance by promoting cell surface expression of MOR-DOR heterodimers? *Mol Interv* 2008; **8**: 277-280 [PMID: 19144899 DOI: 10.1124/mi.8.6.4]

38   **van Rijn RM**, Whistler JL. The delta(1) opioid receptor is a heterodimer that opposes the actions of the delta(2) receptor on alcohol intake. *Biol Psychiatry* 2009; **66**: 777-784 [PMID: 19576572 DOI: 10.1016/j.biopsych.2009.05.019]

39   **Clark JA**, Liu L, Price M, Hersh B, Edelson M, Pasternak GW. Kappa opiate receptor multiplicity: evidence for two U50,488-sensitive kappa 1 subtypes and a novel kappa 3 subtype. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther* 1989; **251**: 461-468 [PMID: 2553920]

40   **Wolozin BL**, Pasternak GW. Classification of multiple morphine and enkephalin binding sites in the central nervous system. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1981; **78**: 6181-6185 [PMID: 6273857 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.78.10.6181]

41   **Bhushan RG**, Sharma SK, Xie Z, Daniels DJ, Portoghese PS. A bivalent ligand (KDN-21) reveals spinal delta and kappa opioid receptors are organized as heterodimers that give rise to delta(1) and kappa(2) phenotypes. Selective targeting of delta-kappa heterodimers. *J Med Chem* 2004; **47**: 2969-2972 [PMID: 15163177 DOI: 10.1021/jm0342358]

42   **Décaillot FM**, Rozenfeld R, Gupta A, Devi LA. Cell surface targeting of mu-delta opioid receptor heterodimers by RTP4. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2008; **105**: 16045-16050 [PMID: 18836069 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0804106105]

43   **Waldhoer M**, Fong J, Jones RM, Lunzer MM, Sharma SK, Kostenis E, Portoghese PS, Whistler JL. A heterodimer-selective agonist shows in vivo relevance of G protein-coupled receptor dimers. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2005; **102**: 9050-9055 [PMID: 15932946 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0501112102]

44   **Poonyachoti S**, Portoghese PS, Brown DR. Characterization of opioid receptors modulating neurogenic contractions of circular muscle from porcine ileum and evidence that delta- and kappa-opioid receptors are coexpressed in myenteric neurons. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther* 2001; **297**: 69-77 [PMID: 11259529]

45   **Portoghese PS**, Lunzer MM. Identity of the putative delta1-opioid receptor as a delta-kappa heteromer in the mouse spinal cord. *Eur J Pharmacol* 2003; **467**: 233-234 [PMID: 12706480 DOI: 10.1016/S0014-2999(03)01599-1]

46   **Fan T**, Varghese G, Nguyen T, Tse R, O'Dowd BF, George SR. A role for the distal carboxyl tails in generating the novel pharmacology and G protein activation profile of mu and delta opioid receptor hetero-oligomers. *J Biol Chem* 2005; **280**: 38478-38488 [PMID: 16159882 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M505644200]

47   **Kabli N**, Martin N, Fan T, Nguyen T, Hasbi A, Balboni G, O'Dowd BF, George SR. Agonists at the δ-opioid receptor modify the binding of μ-receptor agonists to the μ-δ receptor hetero-oligomer. *Br J Pharmacol* 2010; **161**: 1122-1136 [PMID: 20977461 DOI: 10.1111/j.1476-5381.2010.00944.x]

48   **Berg KA**, Rowan MP, Gupta A, Sanchez TA, Silva M, Gomes I, McGuire BA, Portoghese PS, Hargreaves KM, Devi LA, Clarke WP. Allosteric interactions between δ and κ opioid receptors in peripheral sensory neurons. *Mol Pharmacol* 2012; **81**: 264-272 [PMID: 22072818 DOI: 10.1124/mol.111.072702]

49   **Roussin A**, Serre F, Gouardères C, Mazarguil H, Roumy M, Mollereau C, Zajac JM. Anti-analgesia of a selective NPFF2 agonist depends on opioid activity. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2005; **336**: 197-203 [PMID: 16129413 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2005.08.060]

50   **Mauborgne A**, Bourgoin S, Poliénor H, Roumy M, Simonnet G, Zajac JM, Cesselin F. The neuropeptide FF analogue, 1DMe, acts as a functional opioid autoreceptor antagonist in the rat spinal cord. *Eur J Pharmacol* 2001; **430**: 273-276 [PMID: 11711042 DOI: 10.1016/S0014-2999(01)01384-X]

51   **Zhang X**, Bao L, Guan JS. Role of delivery and trafficking of delta-opioid peptide receptors in opioid analgesia and tolerance. *Trends Pharmacol Sci* 2006; **27**: 324-329 [PMID: 16678916 DOI: 10.1016/j.tips.2006.04.005]

52   **Mollereau C**, Mazarguil H, Zajac JM, Roumy M. Neuropeptide FF (NPFF) analogs functionally antagonize opioid activities in NPFF2 receptor-transfected SH-SY5Y neuroblastoma cells. *Mol Pharmacol* 2005; **67**: 965-975 [PMID: 15608144 DOI: 10.1124/mol.104.004614]

53   **Moulédous L**, Mollereau C, Zajac JM. Opioid-modulating properties of the neuropeptide FF system. *Biofactors* 2010; **36**: 423-429 [PMID: 20803521 DOI: 10.1002/biof.116]

54   **Franco R**. G-protein-coupled receptor heteromers or how neurons can display differently flavored patterns in response to the same neurotransmitter. *Br J Pharmacol* 2009; **158**: 23-31 [DOI: 10.1111/j.1476-5381.2009.00181.x]

55   **Mohr K**, Tränkle C, Kostenis E, Barocelli E, De Amici M, Holzgrabe U. Rational design of dualsteric GPCR ligands: quests and promise. *Br J Pharmacol* 2010; **159**: 997-1008 [PMID: 20136835 DOI: 10.1111/j.1476-5381.2009.00601.x]

56   **Zaghouani H**, Hoeman CM, Adkins B. Neonatal immunity: faulty T-helpers and the shortcomings of dendritic cells. *Trends Immunol* 2009; **30**: 585-591 [PMID: 19846341]

57   **Yekkirala AS**, Kalyuzhny AE, Portoghese PS. Standard opioid agonists activate heteromeric opioid receptors: evidence for morphine and [d-Ala(2)-MePhe(4)-Glyol(5)]enkephalin as selective μ-δ agonists. *ACS Chem Neurosci* 2010; **1**: 146-154 [PMID: 22816017 DOI: 10.1021/cn9000236]

58   **Yekkirala AS**, Banks ML, Lunzer MM, Negus SS, Rice KC,

Portoghese PS. Clinically employed opioid analgesics produce antinociception via μ-δ opioid receptor heteromers in Rhesus monkeys. *ACS Chem Neurosci* 2012; **3**: 720-727 [PMID: 23019498 DOI: 10.1021/cn300049m]

59   **Rozenfeld R**, Devi LA. Receptor heterodimerization leads to a switch in signaling: beta-arrestin2-mediated ERK activation by mu-delta opioid receptor heterodimers. *FASEB J* 2007; **21**: 2455-2465 [PMID: 17384143 DOI: 10.1096/fj.06-7793com]

60   **Bohn LM**, Gainetdinov RR, Lin FT, Lefkowitz RJ, Caron MG. Mu-opioid receptor desensitization by beta-arrestin-2 determines morphine tolerance but not dependence. *Nature* 2000; **408**: 720-723 [PMID: 11130073 DOI: 10.1038/35047086]

61   **Abdelhamid EE**, Sultana M, Portoghese PS, Takemori AE. Selective blockage of delta opioid receptors prevents the development of morphine tolerance and dependence in mice. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther* 1991; **258**: 299-303 [PMID: 1649297]

62   **Nitsche JF**, Schuller AG, King MA, Zengh M, Pasternak GW, Pintar JE. Genetic dissociation of opiate tolerance and physical dependence in delta-opioid receptor-1 and preproenkephalin knock-out mice. *J Neurosci* 2002; **22**: 10906-10913 [PMID: 12486185]

63   **Zhu Y**, King MA, Schuller AG, Nitsche JF, Reidl M, Elde RP, Unterwald E, Pasternak GW, Pintar JE. Retention of supraspinal delta-like analgesia and loss of morphine tolerance in delta opioid receptor knockout mice. *Neuron* 1999; **24**: 243-252 [PMID: 10677041 DOI: 10.1016/S0896-6273(00)80836-3]

64   **Metcalf MD**, Yekkirala AS, Powers MD, Kitto KF, Fairbanks CA, Wilcox GL, Portoghese PS. The δ opioid receptor agonist SNC80 selectively activates heteromeric μ-δ opioid receptors. *ACS Chem Neurosci* 2012; **3**: 505-509 [PMID: 22860219 DOI: 10.1021/cn3000394]

65   **Kabli N**, Nguyen T, Balboni G, O'Dowd BF, George SR. Antidepressant-like and anxiolytic-like effects following activation of the μ-δ opioid receptor heteromer in the nucleus accumbens. *Mol Psychiatry* 2014; **19**: 986-994 [PMID: 24061495 DOI: 10.1038/mp.2013.115]

66   **Gomes I**, Gupta A, Devi LA. G-protein-coupled heteromers: regulation in disease. *Methods Enzymol* 2013; **521**: 219-238 [PMID: 23351742 DOI: 10.1016/B978-0-12-391862-8.00012-0]

67   **He L**, Fong J, von Zastrow M, Whistler JL. Regulation of opioid receptor trafficking and morphine tolerance by receptor oligomerization. *Cell* 2002; **108**: 271-282 [PMID: 11832216]

68   **Portoghese PS**. From models to molecules: opioid receptor dimers, bivalent ligands, and selective opioid receptor probes. *J Med Chem* 2001; **44**: 2259-2269 [PMID: 11428919 DOI: 10.1021/jm010158]

69   **Gomes I**, Ijzerman AP, Ye K, Maillet EL, Devi LA. G protein-coupled receptor heteromerization: a role in allosteric modulation of ligand binding. *Mol Pharmacol* 2011; **79**: 1044-1052 [PMID: 21415307 DOI: 10.1124/mol.110.070847]

70   **Ferré S**, Franco R. Oligomerization of G-protein-coupled receptors: a reality. *Curr Opin Pharmacol* 2010; **10**: 1-5 [PMID: 20015687 DOI: 10.1016/j.coph.2009.11.002]

71   **Daniels DJ**, Lenard NR, Etienne CL, Law PY, Roerig SC, Portoghese PS. Opioid-induced tolerance and dependence in mice is modulated by the distance between pharmacophores in a bivalent ligand series. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2005; **102**: 19208-19213 [PMID: 16365317 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0506627102]

72   **Yekkirala AS**, Kalyuzhny AE, Portoghese PS. An immuno-cytochemical-derived correlate for evaluating the bridging of heteromeric mu-delta opioid protomers by bivalent ligands. *ACS Chem Biol* 2013; **8**: 1412-1416 [PMID: 23675763 DOI: 10.1021/cb400113d]

73   **Harvey JH**, Long DH, England PM, Whistler JL. Tuned-Affinity Bivalent Ligands for the Characterization of Opioid Receptor Heteromers. *ACS Med Chem Lett* 2012; **3**: 640-644 [PMID: 23585918 DOI: 10.1021/ml300083p]

74   **Roumy M**, Lorenzo C, Mazères S, Bouchet S, Zajac JM, Mollereau C. Physical association between neuropeptide FF and micro-opioid receptors as a possible molecular basis for anti-opioid activity. *J Biol Chem* 2007; **282**: 8332-8342 [PMID: 17224450 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M606946200]

75   **Gupta S**, Pasha S, Gupta YK, Bhardwaj DK. Chimeric peptide of Met-enkephalin and FMRFa induces antinociception and

attenuates development of tolerance to morphine antinociception. *Peptides* 1999; **20**: 471-478 [PMID: 10458517 DOI: 10.1016/S0196-9781(99)00028-5]

76   **Schwyzer R**. Peptide-membrane interactions and a new principle in quantitative structure-activity relationships. *Biopolymers* 1991; **31**: 785-792 [PMID: 1657234 DOI: 10.1002/bip.360310624]

77   **Vats ID**, Dolt KS, Kumar K, Karar J, Nath M, Mohan A, Pasha MA, Pasha S. YFa, a chimeric opioid peptide, induces kappa-specific antinociception with no tolerance development during 6 days of chronic treatment. *J Neurosci Res* 2008; **86**: 1599-1607 [PMID: 18183621 DOI: 10.1002/jnr.21605]

78   **Gupta K**, Vats ID, Gupta YK, Saleem K, Pasha S. Lack of tolerance and morphine-induced cross-tolerance to the analgesia of chimeric peptide of Met-enkephalin and FMRFa. *Peptides* 2008; **29**: 2266-2275 [PMID: 18930087 DOI: 10.1016/j.peptides.2008.09.013]

79   **Kumar K**, Kumar S, Kurupati RK, Seth MK, Mohan A, Hussain ME, Pasha S. Intracellular cAMP assay and Eu-GTP-γS binding studies of chimeric opioid peptide YFa. *Eur J Pharmacol* 2011; **650**: 28-33 [PMID: 20887721 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejphar.2010.09.026]

80   **Kumar K**, Goyal R, Mudgal A, Mohan A, Pasha S. YFa and analogs: investigation of opioid receptors in smooth muscle contraction. *World J Gastroenterol* 2011; **17**: 4523-4531 [PMID: 22110284 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v17.i40.4523]

81   **Milan-Lobo L**, Whistler JL. Heteromerization of the μ- and δ-opioid receptors produces ligand-biased antagonism and alters μ-receptor trafficking. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther* 2011; **337**: 868-875 [PMID: 21422164 DOI: 10.1124/jpet.111.179093]

82   **Waldhoer M**, Bartlett SE, Whistler JL. Opioid receptors. *Annu Rev Biochem* 2004; **73**: 953-990 [PMID: 15189164 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.biochem.73.011303.073940]

83   **Gupta A**, Décaillot FM, Devi LA. Targeting opioid receptor heterodimers: strategies for screening and drug development. *AAPS J* 2006; **8**: E153-E159 [PMID: 16584123 DOI: 10.1208/aapsj080118]

84   **Hasbi A**, Nguyen T, Fan T, Cheng R, Rashid A, Alijaniaram M, Rasenick MM, O'Dowd BF, George SR. Trafficking of preassembled opioid mu-delta heterooligomer-Gz signaling complexes to the plasma membrane: coregulation by agonists. *Biochemistry* 2007; **46**: 12997-13009 [PMID: 17941650 DOI: 10.1021/bi701436w]

85   **Gupta A**, Heimann AS, Gomes I, Devi LA. Antibodies against G-protein coupled receptors: novel uses in screening and drug development. *Comb Chem High Throughput Screen* 2008; **11**: 463-467 [PMID: 18673273 DOI: 10.2174/138620708784911465]

86   **Fujita W**, Gomes I, Devi LA. Heteromers of μ-δ opioid receptors: new pharmacology and novel therapeutic possibilities. *Br J Pharmacol* 2015; **172**: 375-387 [PMID: 24571499 DOI: 10.1111/bph.12663]

87   **Milan-Lobo L**, Enquist J, van Rijn RM, Whistler JL. Anti-analgesic effect of the mu/delta opioid receptor heteromer revealed by ligand-biased antagonism. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e58362 [PMID: 23554887 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0058362]

88   **van Rijn RM**, Harvey JH, Brissett DI, DeFriel JN, Whistler JL. Novel screening assay for the selective detection of G-protein-coupled receptor heteromer signaling. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther* 2013; **344**: 179-188 [PMID: 23097213 DOI: 10.1124/jpet.112.198655]

89   **Luttrell LM**. Regulators of CPCR activity: the arrestins. In: Devi LA, editor. The G-protein coupled receptor handbook, 2005: 159-198

90   **DeWire SM**, Ahn S, Lefkowitz RJ, Shenoy SK. Beta-arrestins and cell signaling. *Annu Rev Physiol* 2007; **69**: 483-510 [PMID: 17305471 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.physiol.69.022405.154749]

91   **Cen B**, Xiong Y, Ma L, Pei G. Direct and differential interaction of beta-arrestins with the intracellular domains of different opioid receptors. *Mol Pharmacol* 2001; **59**: 758-764 [PMID: 11259620]

92   **Oakley RH**, Laporte SA, Holt JA, Caron MG, Barak LS. Differential affinities of visual arrestin, beta arrestin1, and beta arrestin2 for G protein-coupled receptors delineate two major classes of receptors. *J Biol Chem* 2000; **275**: 17201-17210 [PMID: 10748214 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M910348199]

93   **Tohgo A**, Choy EW, Gesty-Palmer D, Pierce KL, Laporte S, Oakley RH, Caron MG, Lefkowitz RJ, Luttrell LM. The stability of the G protein-coupled receptor-beta-arrestin interaction determines the mechanism and functional consequence of ERK activation. *J Biol Chem* 2003; **278**: 6258-6267 [PMID: 12473660 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M212231200]

94   **Bohn LM**, Dykstra LA, Lefkowitz RJ, Caron MG, Barak LS. Relative opioid efficacy is determined by the complements of the G protein-coupled receptor desensitization machinery. *Mol Pharmacol* 2004; **66**: 106-112 [PMID: 15213301 DOI: 10.1124/mol.66.1.106]

95   **Haberstock-Debic H**, Kim KA, Yu YJ, von Zastrow M. Morphine promotes rapid, arrestin-dependent endocytosis of mu-opioid receptors in striatal neurons. *J Neurosci* 2005; **25**: 7847-7857 [PMID: 16120787 DOI: 10.1523/JNEUROSCI.5045-04.2005]

96   **Groer CE**, Tidgewell K, Moyer RA, Harding WW, Rothman RB, Prisinzano TE, Bohn LM. An opioid agonist that does not induce mu-opioid receptor--arrestin interactions or receptor internalization. *Mol Pharmacol* 2007; **71**: 549-557 [PMID: 17090705 DOI: 10.1124/mol.106.028258]

97   **Bohn LM**, Lefkowitz RJ, Gainetdinov RR, Peppel K, Caron MG, Lin FT. Enhanced morphine analgesia in mice lacking beta-arrestin 2. *Science* 1999; **286**: 2495-2498 [PMID: 10617462 DOI: 10.1126/science.286.5449.2495]

98   **Qiu Y**, Loh HH, Law PY. Phosphorylation of the delta-opioid receptor regulates its beta-arrestins selectivity and subsequent receptor internalization and adenylyl cyclase desensitization. *J Biol Chem* 2007; **282**: 22315-22323 [PMID: 17565992 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M611258200]

99   **Zhang X**, Wang F, Chen X, Li J, Xiang B, Zhang YQ, Li BM, Ma L. Beta-arrestin1 and beta-arrestin2 are differentially required for phosphorylation-dependent and -independent internalization of delta-opioid receptors. *J Neurochem* 2005; **95**: 169-178 [PMID: 16181421 DOI: 10.1111/j.1471-4159.2005.03352.x]

100   **Cheng ZJ**, Yu QM, Wu YL, Ma L, Pei G. Selective interference of beta-arrestin 1 with kappa and delta but not mu opioid receptor/G protein coupling. *J Biol Chem* 1998; **273**: 24328-24333 [PMID: 9733719]

101   **Ahn S**, Shenoy SK, Wei H, Lefkowitz RJ. Differential kinetic and spatial patterns of beta-arrestin and G protein-mediated ERK activation by the angiotensin II receptor. *J Biol Chem* 2004; **279**: 35518-35525 [PMID: 15205453 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M405878200]

102   **Zheng H**, Loh HH, Law PY. Beta-arrestin-dependent mu-opioid receptor-activated extracellular signal-regulated kinases (ERKs) Translocate to Nucleus in Contrast to G protein-dependent ERK activation. *Mol Pharmacol* 2008; **73**: 178-190 [PMID: 17947509 DOI: 10.1124/mol.107.039842]

103   **Alfaras-Melainis K**, Gomes I, Rozenfeld R, Zachariou V, Devi L. Modulation of opioid receptor function by protein-protein interactions. *Front Biosci* (Landmark Ed) 2009; **14**: 3594-3607 [PMID: 19273296]

104   **Simonnet G**, Rivat C. Opioid-induced hyperalgesia: abnormal or normal pain? *Neuroreport* 2003; **14**: 1-7 [PMID: 12544821 DOI: 10.1097/00001756-200301200-00001]

105   **Elhabazi K**, Trigo JM, Mollereau C, Moulédous L, Zajac JM, Bihel F, Schmitt M, Bourguignon JJ, Meziane H, Petit-demoulière B, Bockel F, Maldonado R, Simonin F. Involvement of neuropeptide FF receptors in neuroadaptive responses to acute and chronic opiate treatments. *Br J Pharmacol* 2012; **165**: 424-435 [PMID: 21718302 DOI: 10.1111/j.1476-5381.2011.01563.x]

106   **Ossipov MH**, Lai J, Vanderah TW, Porreca F. Induction of pain facilitation by sustained opioid exposure: relationship to opioid antinociceptive tolerance. *Life Sci* 2003; **73**: 783-800 [PMID: 12801599 DOI: 10.1016/S0024-3205(03)00410-7]

107   **Gouardères C**, Jhamandas K, Sutak M, Zajac JM. Role of opioid receptors in the spinal antinociceptive effects of neuropeptide FF analogues. *Br J Pharmacol* 1996; **117**: 493-501 [PMID: 8821539 DOI: 10.1111/j.1476-5381.1996.tb15217.x]

MINIREVIEWS

Chemoprevention of gastrointestinal cancers by natural honey

Mohamed MM Abdel-Latif

Mohamed MM Abdel-Latif, Department of Clinical Pharmacy, Faculty of Pharmacy, Assiut University, Assiut 71526, Egypt
Author contributions: Abdel-Latif MMM solely contributed to this work.
Conflict-of-interest: The author has no conflict of interest related to the manuscript.
Correspondence to: Dr. Mohamed MM Abdel-Latif, Department of Clinical Pharmacy, Faculty of Pharmacy, Assiut University, Assiut 71526, Egypt. abdel-latif@mailcity.com
Telephone: +20-88-2331711
Fax: +20-88-2332776

Abstract

Gastrointestinal cancers are the most common human cancers in both men and women worldwide. Several epidemiological and experimental studies suggest a relationship between gastrointestinal cancers risk and dietary factors. Natural honey has been widely used in traditional medicine for many centuries to treat a wide range of ailments and complaints. Honey contains various components that exhibit wide activities including antibacterial, anti-inflammatory, antioxidant and anticancer properties. The anticancer effects of honey are mediated *via* diverse mechanisms, including inhibition of proliferation, induction of apoptosis, suppression of free radicals and modulation of inflammatory signalling pathways. The present review assesses the chemopreventive effects of natural honey and its components in the modulation of gastrointestinal cancers and its modes of action in the prevention of the development of gastrointestinal tumors. Honey can be an approach as a cancer-preventive strategy which merits further experimental and clinical research in the near future.

Key words: Honey; Gastrointestinal; Cancer; Chemo-prevention; Anticancer

Core tip: Natural honey has been widely used in traditional medicine to treat a wide range of ailments and complaints. Honey contains various components that exhibit wide activities including antibacterial, anti-inflammatory, antioxidant and anticancer properties. The present review assesses the chemopreventive effects of natural honey and its components in the modulation and prevention of gastrointestinal cancers.

GASTROINTESTINAL CANCERS

Cancer is a leading cause of death worldwide. It strikes more than one third of the world population and it's the cause of more than 20% of all deaths[1]. Gastrointestinal cancers (cancers of the digestive

system) include cancers of the esophagus, gallbladder, liver, pancreas, stomach, small intestine, large intestine (colon) and rectum. The risk of gastrointestinal cancers varies greatly by individual ethnic group, lifestyles and risk factors[2]. Considering the magnitude of the problem of cancer and the failure of conventional therapy of affects greatly the mortality rates for many types of cancers, new approaches to control of cancer and discovery of new agents is of great importance.

In recent years, with rising prevalence of gastro-intestinal cancers by several factors such as changing lifestyle and improved screening and diagnosis, besides the obstacles of the current cancer therapy (chemotherapy and radiotherapy), there has been a great trend towards the use of dietary factors and natural products among cancer patients[3,4]. The incidence of gastrointestinal cancers varies considerably from place to place and from time to time. It is clear that environmental factors play an important part in the development of these cancers and that many of these factors may be preventible. Oesophageal adenocarcinoma has been dramatically rising over the past decades[5], and this rise in this cancer has been associated with an increased prevalence of gastroesophageal reflux disease and Barrett's esophagus. Fruit and vegetable consumption has been reported to have a protective effect and associated with a lower risk of oesophageal cancer. Gastric adenocarcinoma is the second leading cause of cancer worldwide[5]. Foods that are smoked, dried, or pickled have been associated with an increased risk of gastric cancer[6,7]. Vegetable and fruit intake has consistently been associated with a decreased incidence of gastric cancer[8]. Pancreatic cancer is also one of the most devastating cancers, with a 5-year survival of only 6%[9]. High dietary fiber intake, vegetable and fruit intake reduces pancreatic cancer risk[10]. Colorectal cancer is also one of the leading cancers in both men and women in several countries[11], and several epidemiological and experimental studies suggest a link between colon cancer risk and dietary factors[12,13].

CANCER CHEMPREVENTION

Carcinogenesis is a multistep process induced by molecular and genetic changes that disrupt signaling pathways regulating proliferation, apoptosis and differentiation[14]. The search for anticancer agents from natural sources for prevention and treatment of cancer is of a considerable interest in recent years. Several approaches are explored for the prevention and treatment of cancer including chemoprevention in animal models and clinical trials[15]. Dietary supple-ments and natural compounds are one approach is used to reverse or prevent the development of cancer by modulating the molecular processes of initiation, promotion, and progression stages. It has been reported that diet components such as turmeric, garlic,

Figure 1 Variety of natural honey.

ginger, cruciferous vegetables and green tea play an important role in cancer prevention[16,17]. The role of diet and prevention of gastrointestinal cancers is evolving and much data from basic science and animal models. Natural honey has been recently the focus of basic research and clinical studies for its several therapeutic benefits including cancer.

NATURAL HONEY

Since ancient times, natural honey has been widely used as a conventional medicine, and is extensively used for its therapeutic effects in recent years. Ancient Egyptians, Chinese, Greeks and Romans employed honey for wounds and diseases of the intestine[18]. In the Holy Quran, Almighty Allah mentioned the special ability of honey to heal and cure disease. Scientific research has proven the therapeutic benefits of honey in treating several human diseases. The physical properties of natural honey depend on water content, temperature, the type of flora and the proportion of its sugars. The color of the honey varies according to the floral source and its mineral content, which usually ranges from water white to dark amber (Figure 1).

TYPES OF NATURAL HONEY

A large number of natural honeys are available worldwide and are either locally produced or imported from other countries. The type of natural honey depends on which species of plants were flowering when the bees were producing the honey. Honey from a single floral source greatly varies from honey of the same floral source that obtained from different locations or seasons. The percentage of fructose, glucose, amount and type of amino acids and the organic acids vary by floral source. The floral source affects not only the physicochemical properties of the honey, but also the antimicrobial activity of honey[19-21]. Different types of honey differ in their color, flavor and density. The antibacterial quality of honey varies among different types of honey depending on geographical locations, seasonal source, harvesting,

Table 1 Composition of natural honey[18,31]	
Component	Average (value per 100 g)
Carbohydrates	82.4 g
Fructose	38.5 g
Glucose	31 g
Sucrose	1 g
Other sugars	11.7 g
Dietary fiber	0.2 g
Fat	0 g
Protein	0.3 g
Water	17.1 g
Riboflavin (Vit. B2)	0.038 mg
Niacin (Vit. B3)	0.121 mg
Pantothenic acid (Vit. B5)	0.068 mg
Pyridoxine (Vit. B6)	0.024 mg
Folate (Vit. B9)	0.002 mg
Vitamin C	0.5 mg
Calcium	6 mg
Iron	0.42 mg
Magnesium	2 mg
Phosphorus	4 mg
Potassium	52 mg
Sodium	4 mg
Zinc	0.22 mg

purity and storage conditions[22-24]. A survey of the antibacterial activity of 52 samples of 24 types of honey of Saudi and some international honeys revealed that the antibacterial activity of the majority of the investigated honeys did not show large variations[25]. The equivalent phenol percent concentrations for the majority of honeys ranged between 5.5% and 7.9%. It was also noticed in this study that there was no relationship between color and antibacterial activity of honey. The antimicrobial activity of honey could be attributed to several factors like the osmotic effect of honey, acidity, the presence of hydrogen peroxide, the presence of antibacterial phytochemical components and the *in-vivo* antibacterial activity of honey[22,26-29]. *In-vitro* antioxidant activity of Saudi Sidr honey "monofloral type of honey" revealed a strong antioxidant activity[30]. Furthermore, pretreatment with Sidr honey prior to the administration of CCl4 significantly prevented the increase of the serum levels of enzyme markers and reduced oxidative stress in rats.

COMPOSITION OF NATURAL HONEY

The composition of natural honey varies, depending on many factors such as the geographical areas, source of honeybee food, climate, environmental conditions and the processing it undergoes[31-35]. Honey contains about 200 substances including fructose, glucose, amino acids, vitamins, minerals, water and enzymes[18,31], as shown in Table 1. Natural honey uses a combination of components, including hydrogen peroxide, acidity, osmotic effect, high sugar concentration and polyphenols to prevent diseases and fight infection. All natural honey contains flavonoides, phenolic acids,

Figure 2 Actions of natural honey.

ascorbic acid, tocopherols, catalase, superoxide dismutase, reduced glutathione[18,36]. Some of these flavonoids and phenolic compounds include chrysin, kaempferol, quercetin, pinobanksin, pinocembrin, luteolin, apigenin, genistein, naringenin, hesperetin, *P*-coumaric acid, gallic acid, ellagic acid, ferulic acid, syringic acid, caffeic acid and vanillic acid. Natural honey and its components have been shown to possess a wide range of medicinal properties such as anti-inflammatory, gastroprotective, antioxidant, antitumor and anticancer effects[37-41]. Figure 2 depicts some of the actions of natural honey.

Potential mechanisms of honey actions were found to include regulation of cell cycle, induction of apoptosis, activation of mitochondrial pathway, inhibition of angiogenesis and modulation of oxidative stress. Honey can inhibit the development of cancer by blocking the three stages of carcinogenesis (initiation, promotion and progression). The inhibitory effect of honey on carcinogenesis can be attributed to the presence of its active components, especially flavonoids and phenolic constituents. Honey plays an important role in preventing inflammatory tissues from producing free radicals[42]. Caffeic acid phenethyl ester (CAPE), an active component of propolis, has many biological and pharmacological activities including antioxidant, antiinflammatory, antiviral action, anti-proliferative effect, apoptosis-inducing effect and anticancer effect[43-46]. Caffeic acid esters have been shown to have an inhibitory effect on tumor cell proliferation and transformation by the down regulation of many cellular enzymatic pathways including protein tyrosine kinase, cycloxygenase and ornithine decarboxylase pathways[47-50].

NATURAL HONEY AND GASTROINTESTINAL INFLAMMATION

Inflammation plays an important role in the development of several diseases including gastrointestinal diseases and cancer[51,52]. Inflammation is recognized as a risk factor for gastric inflammation and *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*) infection and clinical intervention by natural products such as honey may provide an approach for reducing inflammation and *H. pylori*-associated diseases, particularly gastric cancer.

Honey contains many phenolic compounds such as ellagic acid, gallic acid, caffeic acid, quercetin and chrysin, which correlated to its antioxidant and anti-inflammatory activities[36,52,53]. It was suggested that honey and its components can inhibit inflammation *via* inactivation of nuclear factor kappa-B (NF-κB) and inhibition of transcription of genes for pro-inflammatory mediators such as COX-2, tumor necrosis factor-α (TNF-α), interleukin 6 (IL-6) and inducible nitric oxide synthase[54,55]. Gelam honey has shown to have anti-inflammatory effects by reducing the edema size and inhibiting the production of the pro-inflammatory mediators nitric oxide, prostaglandin E2, TNF-α, and IL-6 in rats[56]. Honey has been reported to potentiate the gastric protection effects of sucralfate against ammonia-induced gastric lesions in rats[57]. Alagwu has reported that honey intake caused cytoprotection on the gastric mucosa of albino rats[58]. Oral administration of honey has been reported to protect against gastrointestinal infection such as gastritis, duodenitis and gastric ulcer caused by bacteria[59-61]. Nasutia *et al*[62] demonstrated that oral pretreatment of honey prevented indomethacin-induced gastric lesions in rats. Perfusion of the stomach with isotonic honey resulted in a marked reduction of the lesions caused by ethanol and indomethacin in rats[38,63].

NATURAL HONEY AND *H. PYLORI* INFECTION

H. pylori infection represents the most common risk factor underlying chronic inflammation and gastric cancer[64,65]. *H. pylori* can lead to mucosal inflammation and cancer development through several mechanisms including *H. pylori* virulence factors such as CagA and VacA genotypes and inflammatory mediators that induce cellular signalling alterations in gastric cells[65]. The intake of honey also helps treat *H. pylori* infection[66]. Natural honey from New Zealand and Saudi Arabia at concentrations 20% (v/v) inhibited the growth of *H. pylori in vitro*[67,68]. Honey had an inhibitory effect on *H. pylori in vitro* at solutions of both 10% and 20% honey[67]. al Somal *et al*[59] also found that Manuka honey from New Zealand, at concentrations as low as 5% v/v, completely inhibit the growth of *H. pylori,* and that 2.5% v/v partially inhibits the growth of *H. pylori*[68]. Osmotic effects were shown to be the most important parameter for killing *H. pylori* as all carbohydrate solutions > or = 15% (v/v) inhibited 100% of the *H. pylori*. The therapeutic effect of honey was attributed to the antibacterial properties[68,69]. Osato *et al*[70] also reported that commercial honeys and the artificial solution were effective as Manuka honey in inhibiting growth of all *H. pylori* isolates at concentrations 15% v/v. It has also been reported that the use of honey with triple therapy regimen may help shorten the time required to eliminate *H. pylori* from stomach lining of patients with gastritis or duodenal ulcer caused by *H. pylori* infection[71].

H. pylori has been shown to activate mitogen-activated protein kinases and transcription factors such as AP-1 and NF-κB that regulate cell proliferation and differentiation in gastric epithelial cells using several different bacterial components and host signaling pathways[72,73]. NF-κB and activator protein-1 (AP-1) are key regulators of inflammation and signaling cascades that lead to carcinogenesis. There are numerous agents including honey have been reported to suppress NF-κB activation and act as potential chemopreventive agents for inflammation and cancer[74]. CAPE blocked *H. pylori*-induced NF-κB and AP-1 expression in gastric cancer cells, and CAPE also suppressed *H. pylori*-induced cell proliferation and production of the cytokines TNF-α and IL-8 and COX-2 expression[55]. Therefore, the inhibition of these molecules by CAPE could result in suppression of many genes during *H. pylori*-induced inflammation. Wu *et al*[75] demonstrated that the activity of NF-κB and the expression of matrix metalloproteinase-9, IL-1beta, and IL-8 in gastric cancer cells by *H. pylori* significantly reversed by CAPE treatment, which suggested that CAPE could be promising adjuvant agent against gastric cancer. In Monogolian gerbils, CAPE treatment elicited anti-inflammatory effects on *H. pylori*-induced chronic gastritis. CAPE significantly inhibited *H. pylori*-stimulated NF-κB activation and mRNA expression of several inflammatory factors in a dose-dependent manner, and prevented degradation of IκB-alpha and phosphorylation of p65 in gastric cancer cells[76].

NATURAL HONEY AND GASTROINTESTINAL CANCERS

There are many research studies support the use of natural honey for cancer prevention and treatment, especially cancers of the gastrointestinal tract. Nutritional studies have indicated that consumption of honey modulates the risk of the development of gastric cancer, and also honey induced apoptosis in gastric mucosa[77]. It was postulated that CAPE may be a promising adjuvant treatment in gastric cancer[78]. The chemopreventive actions of honey and its components have been also studied in various colon cancer models. Gelam and Nenas honeys suppressed the growth of HT 29 colon cancer cells by inducing DNA damage and apoptosis and suppressing inflammation[79]. Jaganathan also demonstrated the anti-proliferative effect of Caffeic acid, one of the phenolic constituents of honey, inhibited in the colon cancer cells HCT15 and HT29[80]. Honey induced apoptosis by causing the depletion of intracellular non-protein thiols and reduced the mitochondrial membrane potential and increased generation of reactive oxygen species. Furthermore, honey constituents induced apoptosis in colon cancer cells[81]. Orsolić *et al*[82] showed that honey exerted anti-metastatic effect in a murine

tumor model with colon carcinoma. Supplementation of diet with honey and Nigella sativa had a protective effect against methylnitrosourea-induced oxidative stress, inflammatory response and carcinogenesis in Sprague Dawely rats[83]. Caffeic acid esters derivatives inhibited azoxymethane-induced colonic colonie pre-neoplastic lesions, ornithine decarboxylase, tyrosine protein kinase, and lipoxygenase activities and aberrant crypt foci formation, which are relevant to colon carcinogenesis in rat colon[50]. Caffeic acid and its ester are potent inhibitors of human colon adenocarcinoma cell growth[84]. Dietary administration of phenylethyl-3-methylcaffeate significantly inhibited the incidence and multiplicity of invasive, noninvasive adenocarcinomas of the colon, and also suppressed the colon tumor volume by 43% compared to the control diet, and also inhibited the formation in colonic tumors by 15%-30% in the animals[48]. Gribel' *et al*[85] indicated that honey possessed moderate antitumor effect and pronounced antitumor activity of 5-flurouracil and cyclophosphamide against five different strains of rat and mouse tumors. Furthermore, honey potentiated the antitumor activity of the chemotherapeutic drugs 5-fluorouracil and cyclophosphamide in colorectal cancer cells[86,87].

The anticancer effects of natural honey and its components on liver cancer cells have been investigated in a number of studies[88-90]. Treatment of hepatocellular carcinoma HepG2 cells with bee honey and Nigella sativa led to a significant decrease in both the number of viable HepG2 cells and the levels of nitric oxide and improved the total antioxidant status and caspase-3 activity, especially in HepG2 cells treated with higher doses of bee honey Nigella sativa (20% and 5000 μg/mL)[88]. It has been reported that Spanish honeys were most effective in protecting against food mutagen-induced DNA damage in HepG2 cells, which was attributed to its antioxidant and free radical scavenging properties[89]. Gelam honey was selectively cytotoxic to liver cancer cells and found that the IC$_{50}$ value of gelam honey towards HepG2 was 25% whereas it was 70% for normal human hepatocytes (WRL-68)[90]. Abdel Aziz *et al*[91] reported that honey extracts exerted cytotoxic, antimetastatic and anti-angiogenic effects in HepG2 cells. Treatment with diethylnitrosamine induced hepatic cancer in rats and the neoplastic hepatic cells were reduced in the liver of honey-treated DEN-induced rats[92]. These studies indicate that honey has an anticancer effect on various types of cancer cells and exerts its protective effect against the development of cancer by modulating the molecular and cellular mechanisms of carcinogenesis stages. Some of the mechanisms by which honey may exert its anticancer effects are cell cycle arrest, activation of mitochondrial pathway, induction of mitochondrial outer membrane permeabilization, induction of apoptosis, modulation of oxidative stress, amelioration of inflammation, modulation of insulin signaling, and inhibition of angiogenesis[37].

The effect of honey was also investigated in pancreatic cancer. Caffeic acid phenethyl ester induced apoptosis in human pancreatic cancer cells by activation of caspase-3/caspase-7 and mitochondrial dysfunction[93]. Treatment with CAPE slightly restored the expression of E-cadherin and markedly reversed the transforming growth factor-β-induced overexpression of vimentin at 24 h in Human pancreatic cancer cells (PANC-1) cells. CAPE suppressed the expression of Twist 2 and growth of PANC-1 xenografts without significant toxicity in an orthotopic pancreatic cancer model. These data suggest that CAPE could suppress the epithelial-mesenchymal transition in pancreatic cancer[94].

CONCLUSION

Natural honey has many therapeutic benefits and medical uses. The different effects of natural honey including anti-inflammatory antioxidants and anticancer effects highlight its importance in the prevention of gastrointestinal cancers and improvement of cancer therapies. Some evidence of the anticancer effects of honey has been reported from *in-vitro* and *in-vivo* studies in gastrointestinal cancers, however, further investigation of anticancer effects of honey in animal and clinical studies are required to prove its therapeutic efficacy in chemoprevention strategies.

REFERENCES

1   **Jemal A**, Bray F, Center MM, Ferlay J, Ward E, Forman D. Global cancer statistics. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2011; **61**: 69-90 [PMID: 21296855 DOI: 10.3322/caac.20107]

2   **Jemal A**, Center MM, DeSantis C, Ward EM. Global patterns of cancer incidence and mortality rates and trends. *Cancer Epidemiol Biomarkers Prev* 2010; **19**: 1893-1907 [PMID: 20647400 DOI: 10.1158/1055-9965.EPI-10-0437]

3   **Oh B**, Butow P, Mullan B, Beale P, Pavlakis N, Rosenthal D, Clarke S. The use and perceived benefits resulting from the use of complementary and alternative medicine by cancer patients in Australia. *Asia Pac J Clin Oncol* 2010; **6**: 342-349 [PMID: 21114784 DOI: 10.1111/j.1743-7563.2010.01329.x]

4   **Zanini S**, Marzotto M, Giovinazzo F, Bassi C, Bellavite P. Effects of Dietary Components on Cancer of the Digestive System. *Crit Rev Food Sci Nutr* 2014; Epub ahead of print [PMID: 24841279]

5   **Blot WJ**, Devesa SS, Kneller RW, Fraumeni JF. Rising incidence of adenocarcinoma of the esophagus and gastric cardia. *JAMA* 1991; **265**: 1287-1289 [PMID: 1995976]

6   **Coggon D**, Barker DJ, Cole RB, Nelson M. Stomach cancer and food storage. *J Natl Cancer Inst* 1989; **81**: 1178-1182 [PMID: 2746670]

7   **Graham S**, Haughey B, Marshall J, Brasure J, Zielezny M, Freudenheim J, West D, Nolan J, Wilkinson G. Diet in the epidemiology of gastric cancer. *Nutr Cancer* 1990; **13**: 19-34 [PMID: 2300492]

8   **Kono S**, Hirohata T. Nutrition and stomach cancer. *Cancer Causes Control* 1996; **7**: 41-55 [PMID: 8850434]

9   **Yeo TP**, Hruban RH, Leach SD, Wilentz RE, Sohn TA, Kern SE, Iacobuzio-Donahue CA, Maitra A, Goggins M, Canto MI, Abrams RA, Laheru D, Jaffee EM, Hidalgo M, Yeo CJ. Pancreatic cancer. *Curr Probl Cancer* 2002; **26**: 176-275 [PMID: 12399802]

10 **Howe GR**, Burch JD. Nutrition and pancreatic cancer. *Cancer Causes Control* 1996; **7**: 69-82 [PMID: 8850436]

11 **Wingo PA**, Tong T, Bolden S. Cancer statistics, 1995. *CA Cancer J Clin* 1995; **45**: 8-30 [PMID: 7528632]

12 **Wynder EL**, Shigematsu T. Environmental factors of cancer of the colon and rectum. *Cancer* 1967; **20**: 1520-1561 [PMID: 6038396]

13 **Reddy BS**. Diet and colon cancer: evidence from human and

animal model studies. In: Reddy BS, Cohen LA (editors). Diet, Nutrition and Cancer: A Critical Evaluation. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press, 1986: 47-65

14   **López-Lázaro M**. A new view of carcinogenesis and an alternative approach to cancer therapy. *Mol Med* 2010; **16**: 144-153 [PMID: 20062820 DOI: 10.2119/molmed.2009.00162]

15   **Boone CW**, Kelloff GJ, Malone WE. Identification of candidate cancer chemopreventive agents and their evaluation in animal models and human clinical trials: a review. *Cancer Res* 1990; **50**: 2-9 [PMID: 2403415]

16   **Surh YJ**. Cancer chemoprevention with dietary phytochemicals. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2003; **3**: 768-780 [PMID: 14570043]

17   **Chun KS**, Kim EH, Lee S, Hahm KB. Chemoprevention of gastrointestinal cancer: the reality and the dream. *Gut Liver* 2013; **7**: 137-149 [PMID: 23560148 DOI: 10.5009/gnl.2013.7.2.137]

18   **Bogdanov S**, Jurendic T, Sieber R, Gallmann P. Honey for nutrition and health: a review. *J Am Coll Nutr* 2008; **27**: 677-689 [PMID: 19155427]

19   **Liu JR**, Ye YL, Lin TY, Wang YW, Peng CC. Effect of floral sources on the antioxidant, antimicrobial, and anti-inflammatory activities of honeys in Taiwan. *Food Chem* 2013; **139**: 938-943 [PMID: 23561193 DOI: 10.1016/j.foodchem.2013.02.015]

20   **Gorjanović SZ**, Alvarez-Suarez JM, Novaković MM, Pastor FT, Pezo L, Battino M, Sužnjević DŽ. Comparative analysis of antioxidant activity of honey of different floral sources using recently developed polarographic and various spectrophotometric assays. *J Food Comp Anal* 2013; **30**: 13-18 [DOI: 10.1016/j.jfca.2012.12.004]

21   **Alvarez-Suarez JM**, Giampieri F, Battino M. Honey as a source of dietary antioxidants: structures, bioavailability and evidence of protective effects against human chronic diseases. *Curr Med Chem* 2013; **20**: 621-638 [PMID: 23298140]

22   **Mandal MD**, Mandal S. Honey: its medicinal property and antibacterial activity. *Asian Pac J Trop Biomed* 2011; **1**: 154-160 [PMID: 23569748 DOI: 10.1016/S2221-1691(11)60016-6]

23   **Wilkinson JM**, Cavanagh HM. Antibacterial activity of 13 honeys against Escherichia coli and Pseudomonas aeruginosa. *J Med Food* 2005; **8**: 100-103 [PMID: 15857217]

24   **Irish J**, Blair S, Carter DA. The antibacterial activity of honey derived from Australian flora. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e18229 [PMID: 21464891 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0018229]

25   **Halawani E**, Shohayeb M. Survey of the antibacterial activity of Saudi and some international honeys. *J Microbiol Antimicrob* 2011; **3**: 94-101

26   **Kwakman PH**, te Velde AA, de Boer L, Speijer D, Vandenbroucke-Grauls CM, Zaat SA. How honey kills bacteria. *FASEB J* 2010; **24**: 2576-2582 [PMID: 20228250]

27   **Kwakman PH**, Zaat SA. Antibacterial components of honey. *IUBMB Life* 2012; **64**: 48-55 [PMID: 22095907 DOI: 10.1002/iub.578]

28   **Wahdan HA**. Causes of the antimicrobial activity of honey. *Infection* 1998; **26**: 26-31 [PMID: 9505176]

29   **Allen KL**, Molan PC, Reid GM. A survey of the antibacterial activity of some New Zealand honeys. *J Pharm Pharmacol* 1991; **43**: 817-822 [PMID: 1687577]

30   **Al-Yahya M**, Mothana R, Al-Said M, Al-Dosari M, Al-Musayeib N, Al-Sohaibani M, Parvez MK, Rafatullah S. Attenuation by CCl4-Induced Oxidative Stress and Hepatonephrotoxicity by Saudi Sidr Honey in Rats. *Evid Based Complement Alternat Med* 2013; **2013**: 569037 [PMID: 23533498 DOI: 10.1155/2013/569037]

31   **White JW**. Composition of honey. In: Crane E, editor. Honey: A Comprehensive Survey. London: Heinemann, 1979: 157-192

32   **Viuda-Martos M**, Ruiz-Navajas Y, Fernandez-Lopez J, Perez-Alvarez JA. Functional properties of honey, propolis, and royal jelly. *J Food Sci* 2008; **73**: R117-124

33   **Gheldof N**, Wang XH, Engeseth NJ. Identification and quantification of antioxidant components of honeys from various floral sources. *J Agric Food Chem* 2002; **50**: 5870-5877 [PMID: 12358452]

34   **Azeredo L da C**, Azeredo MAA, De Souza SR, Dutra VML.

35   **Aljadi AM**, Kamaruddin MY. Evaluation of the phenolic contents and antioxidant capacities of two Malaysian floral honeys. *Food Chem* 2004; **85**: 513-518 [DOI: 10.1016/S0308-8146(02)00596-4]

36   **Eteraf-Oskouei T**, Najafi M. Traditional and modern uses of natural honey in human diseases: a review. *Iran J Basic Med Sci* 2013; **16**: 731-742 [PMID: 23997898]

37   **Erejuwa OO**, Sulaiman SA, Wahab MS. Effects of honey and its mechanisms of action on the development and progression of cancer. *Molecules* 2014; **19**: 2497-2522 [PMID: 24566317 DOI: 10.3390/molecules19022497]

38   **Gharzouli K**, Amira S, Gharzouli A, Khennouf S. Gastroprotective effects of honey and glucose-fructose-sucrose-maltose mixture against ethanol-, indomethacin-, and acidified aspirin-induced lesions in the rat. *Exp Toxicol Pathol* 2002; **54**: 217-221 [PMID: 12484559]

39   **Al-Waili NS**, Saloom KY, Al-Waili TN, Al-Waili AN, Akmal M, Al-Waili FS, Al-Waili HN. Influence of various diet regimens on deterioration of hepatic function and hematological parameters following carbon tetrachloride: a potential protective role of natural honey. *Nat Prod Res* 2006; **20**: 1258-1264 [PMID: 17127519]

40   **Kassim M**, Achoui M, Mustafa MR, Mohd MA, Yusoff KM. Ellagic acid, phenolic acids, and flavonoids in Malaysian honey extracts demonstrate in vitro anti-inflammatory activity. *Nutr Res* 2010; **30**: 650-659 [PMID: 20934607 DOI: 10.1016/j.nutres.2010.08.008]

41   **Ahmed S**, Othman NH. Honey as a potential natural anticancer agent: a review of its mechanisms. *Evid Based Complement Alternat Med* 2013; **2013**: 829070 [PMID: 24363771 DOI: 10.1155/2013/829070]

42   **Bilsel Y**, Bugra D, Yamaner S, Bulut T, Cevikbas U, Turkoglu U. Could honey have a place in colitis therapy? Effects of honey, prednisolone, and disulfiram on inflammation, nitric oxide, and free radical formation. *Dig Surg* 2002; **19**: 306-311; discussion 311-312 [PMID: 12207075]

43   **Chen YJ**, Shiao MS, Wang SY. The antioxidant caffeic acid phenethyl ester induces apoptosis associated with selective scavenging of hydrogen peroxide in human leukemic HL-60 cells. *Anticancer Drugs* 2001; **12**: 143-149 [PMID: 11261888]

44   **Lee YJ**, Liao PH, Chen WK, Yang CY. Preferential cytotoxicity of caffeic acid phenethyl ester analogues on oral cancer cells. *Cancer Lett* 2000; **153**: 51-56 [PMID: 10779629]

45   **Usia T**, Banskota AH, Tezuka Y, Midorikawa K, Matsushige K, Kadota S. Constituents of Chinese propolis and their antiproliferative activities. *J Nat Prod* 2002; **65**: 673-676 [PMID: 12027739]

46   **Nomura M**, Kaji A, Ma W, Miyamoto K, Dong Z. Suppression of cell transformation and induction of apoptosis by caffeic acid phenethyl ester. *Mol Carcinog* 2001; **31**: 83-89 [PMID: 11429785]

47   **Nagaoka T**, Banskota AH, Tezuka Y, Saiki I, Kadota S. Selective antiproliferative activity of caffeic acid phenethyl ester analogues on highly liver-metastatic murine colon 26-L5 carcinoma cell line. *Bioorg Med Chem* 2002; **10**: 3351-3359 [PMID: 12150882]

48   **Rao CV**, Desai D, Rivenson A, Simi B, Amin S, Reddy BS. Chemoprevention of colon carcinogenesis by phenylethyl-3-methylcaffeate. *Cancer Res* 1995; **55**: 2310-2315 [PMID: 7757981]

49   **Borrelli F**, Izzo AA, Di Carlo G, Maffia P, Russo A, Maiello FM, Capasso F, Mascolo N. Effect of a propolis extract and caffeic acid phenethyl ester on formation of aberrant crypt foci and tumors in the rat colon. *Fitoterapia* 2002; **73** Suppl 1: S38-S43 [PMID: 12495708]

50   **Rao CV**, Desai D, Simi B, Kulkarni N, Amin S, Reddy BS. Inhibitory effect of caffeic acid esters on azoxymethane-induced biochemical changes and aberrant crypt foci formation in rat colon. *Cancer Res* 1993; **53**: 4182-4188 [PMID: 8364913]

51   **Sun B**, Karin M. The therapeutic value of targeting inflammation in gastrointestinal cancers. *Trends Pharmacol Sci* 2014; **35**: 349-357 [PMID: 24881011 DOI: 10.1016/j.tips.2014.04.011]

52   **Khuda-Bukhsh AR**, Das S, Saha SK. Molecular approaches

Protein contents and physicochemical properties in honey samples of Apis mellifera of different floral origins. *Food Chem* 2003; **80**: 249-254 [DOI: 10.1016/S0308-8146(02)00261-3]

toward targeted cancer prevention with some food plants and their products: inflammatory and other signal pathways. *Nutr Cancer* 2014; **66**: 194-205 [PMID: 24377653 DOI: 10.1080/01635581.2014.864420]

53   **Hussein SZ**, Yusoff KM, Makpol S, Yusof YA. Antioxidant capacities and total phenolic contents increase with gamma irradiation in two types of Malaysian honey. *Molecules* 2011; **16**: 6378-6395 [PMID: 21796076 DOI: 10.3390/molecules16066378]

54   **Hussein SZ**, Mohd Yusoff K, Makpol S, Mohd Yusof YA. Gelam honey attenuates carrageenan-induced rat paw inflammation via NF-κB pathway. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e72365 [PMID: 24015236 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0072365]

55   **Abdel-Latif MM**, Windle HJ, Homasany BS, Sabra K, Kelleher D. Caffeic acid phenethyl ester modulates Helicobacter pylori-induced nuclear factor-kappa B and activator protein-1 expression in gastric epithelial cells. *Br J Pharmacol* 2005; **146**: 1139-1147 [PMID: 16247412]

56   **Hussein SZ**, Mohd Yusoff K, Makpol S, Mohd Yusof YA. Gelam Honey Inhibits the Production of Proinflammatory, Mediators NO, PGE(2), TNF-α, and IL-6 in Carrageenan-Induced Acute Paw Edema in Rats. *Evid Based Complement Alternat Med* 2012; **2012**: 109636 [PMID: 22919407 DOI: 10.1155/2012/109636]

57   **Ali AT**, Al Swayeh OA. Honey potentiates the gastric protection effects of sucralfate against ammonia-induced gastric lesions in rats. *Saudi J Gastroenterol* 2003; **9**: 117-123 [PMID: 19861814]

58   **Alagwu EA**, Nneli RO, Egwurugwu JN, Osim EE. Gastric cytoprotection and honey intake in albino rats. *Niger J Physiol Sci* 2011; **26**: 39-42 [PMID: 22314985]

59   **al Somal N**, Coley KE, Molan PC, Hancock BM. Susceptibility of Helicobacter pylori to the antibacterial activity of manuka honey. *J R Soc Med* 1994; **87**: 9-12 [PMID: 8308841]

60   **Haffejee IE**, Moosa A. Honey in the treatment of infantile gastroenteritis. *Br Med J* (Clin Res Ed) 1985; **290**: 1866-1867 [PMID: 3924286]

61   **Alnaqdy A**, Al-Jabri A, Al Mahrooqi Z, Nzeako B, Nsanze H. Inhibition effect of honey on the adherence of Salmonella to intestinal epithelial cells in vitro. *Int J Food Microbiol* 2005; **103**: 347-351 [PMID: 16099316]

62   **Nasutia C**, Gabbianellib R, Falcionib G, Cantalamessa F. Antioxidative and gastroprotective activities of anti-inflammatory formulations derived from chestnut honey in rats. *Nut Res* 2006; **26**: 130-137 [DOI: 10.1016/j.nutres.2006.02.007]

63   **Ali AT**. Prevention of ethanol-induced gastric lesions in rats by natural honey, and its possible mechanism of action. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 1991; **26**: 281-288 [PMID: 1853150]

64   **Ali ATM**. Natural honey accelerates healing of indomethacin-induced antral ulcers in rats. *Saudi Med J* 1995; **16**: 161-166

65   **Smith MG**, Hold GL, Tahara E, El-Omar EM. Cellular and molecular aspects of gastric cancer. *World J Gastroenterol* 2006; **12**: 2979-2990 [PMID: 16718776]

66   **Lamb A**, Chen LF. Role of the Helicobacter pylori-induced inflammatory response in the development of gastric cancer. *J Cell Biochem* 2013; **114**: 491-497 [PMID: 22961880 DOI: 10.1002/jcb.24389]

67   **Drouin E**. Helicobacter pylori: novel therapies. *Can J Gastroenterol* 1999; **13**: 581-583 [PMID: 10519955]

68   **Ali AT**, Chowdhury MN, al Humayyd MS. Inhibitory effect of natural honey on Helicobacter pylori. *Trop Gastroenterol* 1991; **12**: 139-143 [PMID: 1841451]

69   **Ndip RN**, Malange Takang AE, Echakachi CM, Malongue A, Akoachere JF, Ndip LM, Luma HN. In-vitro antimicrobial activity of selected honeys on clinical isolates of Helicobacter pylori. *Afr Health Sci* 2007; **7**: 228-232 [PMID: 21499488]

70   **Osato MS**, Reddy SG, Graham DY. Osmotic effect of honey on growth and viability of Helicobacter pylori. *Dig Dis Sci* 1999; **44**: 462-464 [PMID: 10080135]

71   **Nzeako BC**, Al-Namaani F. The antibacterial activity of honey on helicobacter pylori. *Sultan Qaboos Univ Med J* 2006; **6**: 71-76 [PMID: 21748138]

72   **Lamb A**, Chen LF. The many roads traveled by Helicobacter

pylori to NFκB activation. *Gut Microbes* 2010; **1**: 109-113 [PMID: 21326919]

73   **Seo JH**, Lim JW, Kim H, Kim KH. Helicobacter pylori in a Korean isolate activates mitogen-activated protein kinases, AP-1, and NF-kappaB and induces chemokine expression in gastric epithelial AGS cells. *Lab Invest* 2004; **84**: 49-62 [PMID: 14631383]

74   **Ralhan R**, Pandey MK, Aggarwal BB. Nuclear factor-kappa B links carcinogenic and chemopreventive agents. *Front Biosc*i (Schol Ed) 2009; **1**: 45-60 [PMID: 19482682]

75   **Wu CS**, Chen MF, Lee IL, Tung SY. Predictive role of nuclear factor-kappaB activity in gastric cancer: a promising adjuvant approach with caffeic acid phenethyl ester. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2007; **41**: 894-900 [PMID: 18090157]

76   **Toyoda T**, Tsukamoto T, Takasu S, Shi L, Hirano N, Ban H, Kumagai T, Tatematsu M. Anti-inflammatory effects of caffeic acid phenethyl ester (CAPE), a nuclear factor-kappaB inhibitor, on Helicobacter pylori-induced gastritis in Mongolian gerbils. *Int J Cancer* 2009; **125**: 1786-1795 [PMID: 19610061 DOI: 10.1002/ijc.24586]

77   **Ghaffari A**, Somi MH, Safaiyan A, Modaresi J, Ostadrahimi A. Honey and apoptosis in human gastric mucosa. *Health Promot Perspect* 2012; **2**: 53-59 [PMID: 24688918 DOI: 10.5681/hpp.2012.007]

78   **Ribeiro U**, Safatle-Ribeiro AV. Caffeic acid phenethyl ester (CAPE) may be a promising adjuvant treatment in gastric cancer. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2007; **41**: 871-873 [PMID: 18090154]

79   **Wen CT**, Hussein SZ, Abdullah S, Karim NA, Makpol S, Mohd Yusof YA. Gelam and Nenas honeys inhibit proliferation of HT 29 colon cancer cells by inducing DNA damage and apoptosis while suppressing inflammation. *Asian Pac J Cancer Prev* 2012; **13**: 1605-1610 [PMID: 22799375]

80   **Jaganathan SK**. Growth inhibition by caffeic acid, one of the phenolic constituents of honey, in HCT 15 colon cancer cells. *ScientificWorldJournal* 2012; **2012**: 372345 [PMID: 22649289 DOI: 10.1100/2012/372345]

81   **Jaganathan SK**, Mandal M. Involvement of non-protein thiols, mitochondrial dysfunction, reactive oxygen species and p53 in honey-induced apoptosis. *Invest New Drugs* 2010; **28**: 624-633 [PMID: 19705065 DOI: 10.1007/s10637-009-9302-0]

82   **Orsolić N**, Knezević A, Sver L, Terzić S, Hackenberger BK, Basić I. Influence of honey bee products on transplantable murine tumours. *Vet Comp Oncol* 2003; **1**: 216-226 [PMID: 19379183 DOI: 10.1111/j.1476-5810.2003.00029.x]

83   **Mabrouk GM**, Moselhy SS, Zohny SF, Ali EM, Helal TE, Amin AA, Khalifa AA. Inhibition of methylnitrosourea (MNU) induced oxidative stress and carcinogenesis by orally administered bee honey and Nigella grains in Sprague Dawely rats. *J Exp Clin Cancer Res* 2002; **21**: 341-346 [PMID: 12385575]

84   **Rao CV**, Desai D, Kaul B, Amin S, Reddy BS. Effect of caffeic acid esters on carcinogen-induced mutagenicity and human colon adenocarcinoma cell growth. *Chem Biol Interact* 1992; **84**: 277-290 [PMID: 1423745]

85   **Gribel' NV**, Pashinskiĭ VG. [The antitumor properties of honey]. *Vopr Onkol* 1990; **36**: 704-709 [PMID: 2378090]

86   **Wattenberg LW**. Chemoprevention of cancer by naturally occurring and synthetic compounds. In: Wattenberg LW, Lipkin M, Boone CW, Kellof GJ. Cancer Chemoprevention. Boca Ranton: CRC Press, 1986: 19-40

87   **Hakim L**, Alias E, Makpol S, Ngah WZ, Morad NA, Yusof YA. Gelam honey and ginger potentiate the anti cancer effect of 5-FU against HCT 116 colorectal cancer cells. *Asian Pac J Cancer Prev* 2014; **15**: 4651-4657 [PMID: 24969899]

88   **Hassan MI**, Mabrouk GM, Shehata HH, Aboelhussein MM. Antineoplastic effects of bee honey and Nigella sativa on hepato-cellular carcinoma cells. *Integr Cancer Ther* 2012; **11**: 354-363 [PMID: 21147814 DOI: 10.1177/1534735410387422]

89   **Haza AI**, Morales P. Spanish honeys protect against food mutagen-induced DNA damage. *J Sci Food Agric* 2013; **93**: 2995-3000 [PMID: 23504582 DOI: 10.1002/jsfa.6129]

90   **Jubri Z**, Narayanan NNN, Karim NA, Ngah WZW. Antipro-liferative activity and apoptosis induction by gelam honey on liver

cancer cell line. *Int J Appl Sci Technol* 2012; **2**: 135-141

91   **Abdel Aziz A**, Rady H, Amer M, Kiwan H. Effect of some honey bee extracts on the proliferation, proteolytic and gelatinolytic activities of the hepatocellular carcinoma Hepg2 cell line. *Aust J Basic Appl Sci* 2009; **3**: 2754-2769

92   **El-kott AF**, Kandeel AA, El-Aziz SFA, Ribea HM. Anti-tumor effects of bee honey on PCNA and P53 expression in the rat hepatocarcinogenesis. *Int J Cancer Res* 2012; **8**: 130-139

93   **Chen MJ**, Chang WH, Lin CC, Liu CY, Wang TE, Chu CH, Shih SC, Chen YJ. Caffeic acid phenethyl ester induces apoptosis of human pancreatic cancer cells involving caspase and mitochondrial dysfunction. *Pancreatology* 2008; **8**: 566-576 [PMID: 18824880 DOI: 10.1159/000159843]

94   **Chen MJ**, Shih SC, Wang HY, Lin CC, Liu CY, Wang TE, Chu CH, Chen YJ. Caffeic Acid phenethyl ester inhibits epithelial-mesenchymal transition of human pancreatic cancer cells. *Evid Based Complement Alternat Med* 2013; **2013**: 270906 [PMID: 23662124 DOI: 10.1155/2013/270906]

Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**

8226 Regency Drive, Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA

Telephone: +1-925-223-8242

Fax: +1-925-223-8243

E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com

Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx

http://www.wjgnet.com

World Journal of

Pharmacology

World Journal of *Pharmacology*

A peer-reviewed, online, open-access journal of pharmacology

Editorial Board

2011-2015

The *World Journal of Pharmacology* Editorial Board consists of 476 members, representing a team of worldwide experts in pharmacology. They are from 44 countries, including Argentina (1), Australia (12), Austria (3), Belarus (1), Belgium (3), Brazil (5), Bulgaria (1), Canada (13), Chile (2), China (45), Czech Republic (2), Denmark (2), Egypt (2), Finland (3), France (13), Germany (7), Greece (17), Hungary (6), Iceland (1), India (10), Iran (4), Ireland (1), Israel (13), Italy (40), Japan (31), Malaysia (1), Mexico (1), Netherlands (11), New Zealand (2), Poland (3), Portugal (2), Russia (1), Saint Kitts and Nevis (1), Saudi Arabia (1), Serbia (1), Singapore (7), South Korea (10), Spain (22), Sweden (4), Switzerland (2), Thailand (2), Turkey (6), United Kingdom (21), and United States (140).

World Journal of
Pharmacology

Contents

Contents

ABOUT COVER

Editorial Board Number of *World Journal of Pharmacology*, Stanislav Gueorguiev Yanev, MD, Associate Professor, Department Drug Toxicology, Institute of Neurobiology, Bulgarian Academy of Sciences Acad.G.Bonchev Str., bl.23 1113 Sofia, Bulgaria

AIM AND SCOPE

World Journal of Pharmacology (*World J Pharmacol*, *WJP*, online ISSN 2220-3192, DOI: 10.5497) is a peer-reviewed open access academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians.

WJP covers topics concerning neuropsychiatric pharmacology, cerebrovascular pharmacology, geriatric pharmacology, anti-inflammatory and immunological pharmacology, antitumor pharmacology, anti-infective pharmacology, metabolic pharmacology, gastro-intestinal and hepatic pharmacology, respiratory pharmacology, blood pharmacology, urinary and reproductive pharmacology, pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics, clinical pharmacology, and drug toxicology.

We encourage authors to submit their manuscripts to *WJP*. We will give priority to manuscripts that are supported by major national and international foundations and those that are of great basic and clinical significance.

INDEXING/ABSTRACTING

World Journal of Pharmacology is now indexed in Digital Object Identifier.

FLYLEAF

EDITORS FOR THIS ISSUE

EDITORIAL

Enhanced permeability and retention effect based nanomedicine, a solution for cancer

Jun Fang

Jun Fang, Research Institute of Drug Delivery Science, Sojo University, Kumamoto 860-0082, Japan
Jun Fang, Laboratory of Microbiology and Oncology, Faculty of Pharmaceutical Science, Sojo University, Kumamoto 860-0082, Japan

Correspondence to: Jun Fang, MD, PhD, Associate Professor, Research Institute of Drug Delivery Science, Sojo University, Ikeda 4-22-1, Kumamoto 860-0082, Japan. fangjun@ph.sojo-u.ac.jp
Telephone: +81-96-3264137
Fax: +81-96-3265048

Abstract

Tumor-targeting is becoming more and more important for cancer chemotherapy. Though many molecular-target drugs have been developed in the past two decades which shed some light on targeted tumor therapy, clinical results of those molecular-target drugs are not so encouraging especially for solid tumors, problems mostly relating to the heterogeneity and mutations of target molecules in human solid tumors. More general tumor-targeting strategy is thus anticipated. In this regard, the enhanced permeability and retention (EPR) effect which is a unique phenomenon of solid tumors based on the anatomical and pathophysiological nature of tumor blood vessels, is receiving more and more attentions. This EPR effect now served as a standard for tumor-targeted macromolecular anticancer therapy, namely nanomedicine. Many nanoplatforms have been developed as targeted drug delivery systems, including liposome, polymeric micelles, polymer conjugate, nanoparticles. Ample macromolecular drugs are now approved for clinical use or in clinical stage development, all of which by taking advantage of EPR effect, show superior *in vivo* pharmacokinetics and remarkable tumor selectivity, resulting in improved antitumor effects with less adverse effects. We thus believe EPR-based nanomedicine will be a solution for cancer in the future, whereas further consideration of factors involved in EPR effect and strategies to augment/improve EPR effect are warranted.

Core tip: Current cancer chemotherapy is less effective with adverse side effects, mostly due to lack of tumor-selectivity. Thus tumor-targeting is known the key for successful chemotherapy. Molecular-target therapy is such a strategy but the clinical results are disappointing probably due to the diversity of cancer-related molecules and enormous mutations. A more general tumor-targeting strategy is based on the unique

physiophathological and anatomical features of solid tumors - enhanced permeability and retention (EPR) effect. Accordingly nanomedicine has been developed, with promising therapeutic potential and very less side effects. We thus believe EPR-based nanomedicine will be a solution for cancer in the future.

INTRODUCTION

Cancer remains the major threat to human health in most advanced countries in the world. While surgical removal is effective to small and confined early-stage tumors, use of anticancer drugs (chemotherapy) is a less invasive option for cancer patients. Though there is more than 70-year history of chemotherapy, the clinical results of conventional chemotherapy is far from successful. The major problem is the lack of tumor selectivity of conventional anticancer drugs which are mostly small molecular drugs, namely non-selective delivery of cytotoxic drugs to normal vital organs and tissues results in less antitumor effect and severe adverse side effects. Thus, it is an urgent need to develop therapeutic strategies to selectively target tumors.

Development of molecular-target drugs is a remarkable progress in the past two decades, which usually focuses on specific genes or molecules that are highly expressed in tumors and essential for tumor growth. A successful example is imatinib, an inhibitor of the *BCR/ABL* oncogene product, which shows high efficacy in patients with chronic myeloid leukemia (CML) though it is not curative[1]. However, many recent clinical results using those molecular-target drugs are disappointing especially for solid tumors[2,3]. The problems probably relate to the intrinsic heterogeneity and mutations of cancer-related molecules in human solid tumors[4,5]. Namely, in most solid tumors, multiple mutated genes (10 to > 100) exist[4], different cells have distinct genetic lesions even in the same tumor[5], and the critical mutation is not always clear. Thus such a highly specific molecular approach seems to be premature or imperfect, not mentioning the toxic effects as well as enormous and inappropriate expense of these drugs.

A more general tumor-targeting strategy is focusing on the unique anatomical and pathophysiological features of solid tumors leading to high vascular permeability (Table 1, Figure 1), which facilitates delivery of macromolecules (*i.e.*, larger than 40 kDa) selectively into tumor tissues but with very less distribution in

Table 1 Unique characteristics and factors involved in enhanced permeability and retention effect

Active angiogenesis and high vascular density
Extensive production of vascular mediators that facilitate extraravasation
    Bradykinin
    Nitric oxide
    Vascular permeability factor/vascular endothelial growth factor
    Prostaglandins
    Collagenase (matrix metalloproteinases, or MMPs)
    Peroxynitrite
Defective vascular architecture, for example, lack of smooth muscle layer cells, lack of or fewer receptors for angiotensin II, large gap in endothelial cell-cell junctions, anomalous conformation of tumor vasculature (*e.g.*, branching or stretching)
Impaired lymphatic clearance of macromolecules and lipids from interstitial tissue (→ prolonged retention of these substances)

normal tissues[6]. This phenomenon is coined enhanced permeability and retention (EPR) effect that was first reported by Matsumura and Maeda in 1986[7], and is now considered a landmark principle in the development of anticancer drugs.

In this concept of EPR based tumor-targeted therapy, nanotechnology is introduced in cancer chemotherapy, namely nanomedicine. Many nanoplatforms have been developed as targeted drug delivery systems, including liposome, polymeric micelles, polymer conjugate, nanoparticles. For example, Doxil, a PEGylated liposome formulation of doxorubicin, is an FDA approved drug for the treatment of Kaposi sarcoma and other cancers. Other clinically used nanomedicine includes DaunoXome (nonpegylated liposomal daunorubicin), DepoCyt (nonpegylated liposomal cytarabine), Myocet (nonpegylated liposomal doxorubicin), Oncaspar (pegylated L-asparaginase), Abraxane (albumin-based paclitaxel), and Genexol-PM (paclitaxel-containing polymeric micelles, approved in South Korea). Much more liposome, polymeric or micellar drugs are in clinical stage development[8,9]. All these macromolecular drugs, by taking advantage of EPR effect, show superior *in vivo* pharmacokinetics and remarkable tumor selectivity, resulting in improved antitumor effects with less adverse effects[8,9].

It should be noted that EPR effect is the first and necessary step for successful anticancer chemotherapy, however many factors are involved in EPR effect, by which the EPR based tumor drug delivery could be further augmented, such as angiotensin II induced hypertension, nitroglycerin/nitric oxide, carbon monoxide[6,10]. Combination of these factors with macromolecular drugs may become useful strategies for more effective antitumor nanomedicine. In addition, another important issue for satisfied nanomedicine is the fate of nano-drugs after accumulation in tumor tissues by EPR effect. The ideal condition is the active drug component in nano-drugs should be released gradually in tumor tissues, otherwise the intact nano-drugs will show less antitumor effect tough they accumulate in tumor
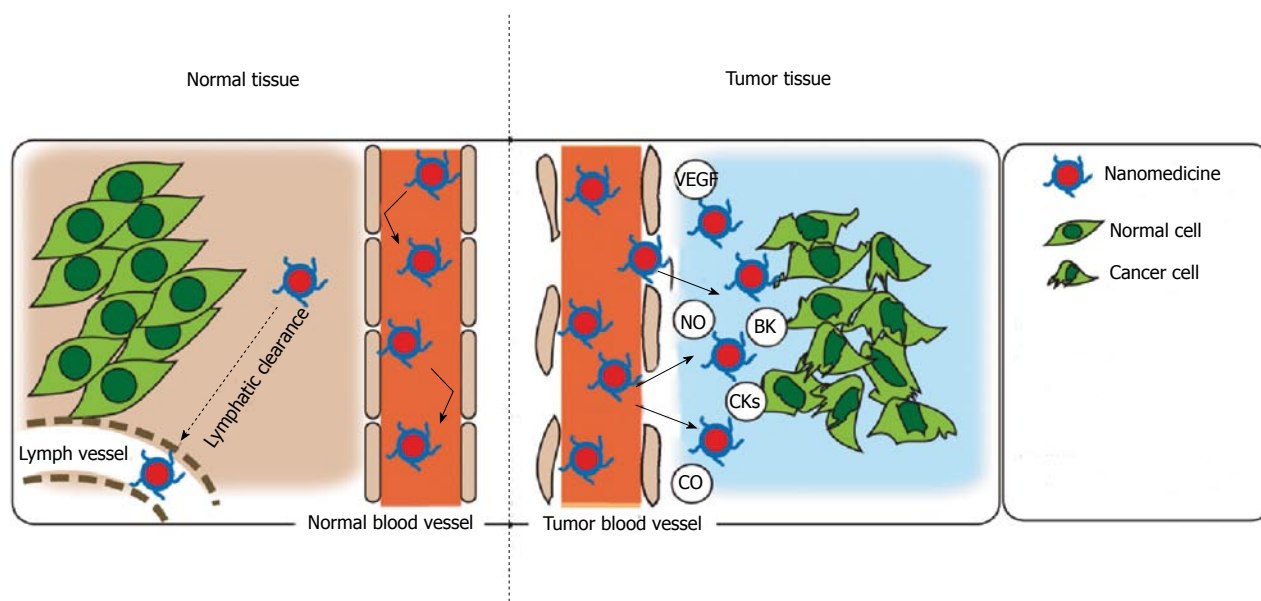
Figure 1 Abnormal characteristics and factors of solid tumors that influence the enhanced permeability and retention effect. Graphical image is from ref.[14] with permission. NO: Nitric oxide; BK: Bradykinin; CO: Carbon monoxide; CKs: Cytokines; VEGF: Vascular endothelial growth factor.

with high concentration[10,11]. One successful strategy regarding this issue is the utilization of the acidic pH (*e.g.*, 6.5-6.7) of tumors. Maeda *et al*[10] recently reported a tumor environment/pH responsive poly(N-(2-hydroxypropyl)methacrylamide) conjugated pirarubicin (P-THP), which behaves as polymeric conjugate/micelle in circulation, but liberates free THP in acidic tumor environment, resulting a remarkable antitumor effect[11]. This P-THP therapy was also translated into clinic successfully; in a patient with advanced prostate cancer with multiple lung metastasis, P-THP treatment resulted in complete remission of metastatic tumor nodules in the lung, with significantly decreased levels of prostate specific antigen (PSA, from 1472 ng/mL to 0.067 ng/mL); no severe side effects were observed and no evidence of disease relapse has been recorded for 12 mo since the administration of P-THP (unpublished data).

Another issue should be addressed is that, EPR effect is the phenomenon of blood vessels, so it may varies depending on the patient/tumor's pathological characteristics and conditions. Namely tumors with less blood vessels, *e.g.*, pancreatic cancer, always show less EPR effect. The EPR effect is heterogeneous even in a single tumor nodule. Thus further augmentation of EPR effect is important or necessary for treating such tumors, which could be achieved by modulating the vascular mediators in tumor such as using angiotensin II, nitric oxide/nitroglycerin, angiotensin II converting enzyme inhibitor and carbon monoxide, all of which increase EPR effect by 2-10 times and some of them (*i.e.*, angiotensin II) were proven in clinic[6,10,12,13].

EPR effect is now becoming the "gold standard" for design and development of cancer drug, we believe EPR-based nanomedicine that is becoming a promising paradigm of anticancer strategy, will be a solution for cancer in the future.

REFERENCES

1 **Druker BJ**, Talpaz M, Resta DJ, Peng B, Buchdunger E, Ford JM, Lydon NB, Kantarjian H, Capdeville R, Ohno-Jones S, Sawyers CL. Efficacy and safety of a specific inhibitor of the BCR-ABL tyrosine kinase in chronic myeloid leukemia. *N Engl J Med* 2001; **344**: 1031-1037 [PMID: 11287972]

2 **Sosman JA**, Kim KB, Schuchter L, Gonzalez R, Pavlick AC, Weber JS, McArthur GA, Hutson TE, Moschos SJ, Flaherty KT, Hersey P, Kefford R, Lawrence D, Puzanov I, Lewis KD, Amaravadi RK, Chmielowski B, Lawrence HJ, Shyr Y, Ye F, Li J, Nolop KB, Lee RJ, Joe AK, Ribas A. Survival in BRAF V600-mutant advanced melanoma treated with vemurafenib. *N Engl J Med* 2012; **366**: 707-714 [PMID: 22356324 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1112302]

3 **Tol J**, Koopman M, Cats A, Rodenburg CJ, Creemers GJ, Schrama JG, Erdkamp FL, Vos AH, van Groeningen CJ, Sinnige HA, Richel DJ, Voest EE, Dijkstra JR, Vink-Börger ME, Antonini NF, Mol L, van Krieken JH, Dalesio O, Punt CJ. Chemotherapy, bevacizumab, and cetuximab in metastatic colorectal cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2009; **360**: 563-572 [PMID: 19196673 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa0808268]

4 **Vogelstein B**, Papadopoulos N, Velculescu VE, Zhou S, Diaz LA, Kinzler KW. Cancer genome landscapes. *Science* 2013; **339**: 1546-1558 [PMID: 23539594 DOI: 10.1126/science.1235122]

5 **Gerlinger M**, Rowan AJ, Horswell S, Larkin J, Endesfelder D, Gronroos E, Martinez P, Matthews N, Stewart A, Tarpey P, Varela I, Phillimore B, Begum S, McDonald NQ, Butler A, Jones D, Raine K, Latimer C, Santos CR, Nohadani M, Eklund AC, Spencer-Dene B, Clark G, Pickering L, Stamp G, Gore M, Szallasi Z, Downward J, Futreal PA, Swanton C. Intratumor heterogeneity and branched evolution revealed by multiregion sequencing. *N Engl J Med* 2012; **366**: 883-892 [PMID: 22397650 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1113205]

6 **Fang J**, Nakamura H, Maeda H. The EPR effect: Unique features of tumor blood vessels for drug delivery, factors involved, and limitations and augmentation of the effect. *Adv Drug Deliv Rev* 2011; **63**: 136-151 [PMID: 20441782 DOI: 10.1016/j.addr.2010.04.009]

7 **Matsumura Y**, Maeda H. A new concept for macromolecular therapeutics in cancer chemotherapy: mechanism of tumoritropic accumulation of proteins and the antitumor agent smancs. *Cancer Res* 1986; **46**: 6387-6392 [PMID: 2946403]

8 **Torchilin V**. Tumor delivery of macromolecular drugs based on the EPR effect. *Adv Drug Deliv Rev* 2011; **63**: 131-135 [PMID:

20304019 DOI: 10.1016/j.addr.2010.03.011]

9   **Duncan R**, Vicent MJ. Polymer therapeutics-prospects for 21st century: the end of the beginning. *Adv Drug Deliv Rev* 2013; **65**: 60-70 [PMID: 22981753 DOI: 10.1016/j.addr.2012.08.012]

10 **Maeda H**, Nakamura H, Fang J. The EPR effect for macromolecular drug delivery to solid tumors: Improvement of tumor uptake, lowering of systemic toxicity, and distinct tumor imaging in vivo. *Adv Drug Deliv Rev* 2013; **65**: 71-79 [PMID: 23088862 DOI: 10.1016/j.addr.2012.10.002]

11 **Nakamura H**, Etrych T, Chytil P, Ohkubo M, Fang J, Ulbrich K, Maeda H. Two step mechanisms of tumor selective delivery of N-(2-hydroxypropyl)methacrylamide copolymer conjugated with pirarubicin via an acid-cleavable linkage. *J Control Release* 2014;

174: 81-87 [PMID: 24269967 DOI: 10.1016/j.jconrel.2013.11.011]

12 **Nagamitsu A**, Greish K, Maeda H. Elevating blood pressure as a strategy to increase tumor-targeted delivery of macromolecular drug SMANCS: cases of advanced solid tumors. *Jpn J Clin Oncol* 2009; **39**: 756-766 [PMID: 19596662 DOI: 10.1093/jjco/hyp074]

13 **Fang J**, Liao L, Yin H, Nakamura H, Shin T, Maeda H. Enhanced bacterial tumor delivery by modulating the EPR effect and therapeutic potential of Lactobacillus casei. *J Pharm Sci* 2014; **103**: 3235-3243 [PMID: 25041982 DOI: 10.1002/jps.24083]

14 **Nakamura H**, Jun F, Maeda H. Development of next-generation macromolecular drugs based on the EPR effect: challenges and pitfalls. *Expert Opin Drug Deliv* 2015; **12**: 53-64 [PMID: 25425260 DOI: 10.1517/17425247.2014.955011]

REVIEW

Lipoprotein based drug delivery: Potential for pediatric cancer applications

Nirupama Sabnis, W Paul Bowman, Andras G Lacko

Nirupama Sabnis, Andras G Lacko, Department of Integrated Physiology and Anatomy, University of North Texas Health Science Center, Fort Worth, TX 76107, United States

W Paul Bowman, Andras G Lacko, Department of Pediatrics, University of North Texas Health Science Center, Fort Worth, TX 76107, United States

W Paul Bowman, Cook Children's Medical Center, Fort Worth, TX 76107, United States

Correspondence to: Andras G Lacko, PhD, Department of Pediatrics, University of North Texas Health Science Center, 3500 Camp Bowie Blvd, Fort Worth, TX 76107, United States. andras.lacko@unthsc.edu
Telephone: +1-817-7352132

Abstract

While survival rates for patients with childhood cancers have substantially improved, the quality of life of the survivors is often adversely impacted by the residual effects of chemo and radiation therapy. Because of the existing metabolic and physiological disparities between pediatric and adult patients, the treatment of pediatric cancer patients poses special challenges to oncologists. While numerous clinical trials being conducted, to improve treatment outcomes for pediatric cancer patients, new approaches are required to increase the efficacy and to minimize the drug related toxic side effects. Nanotechnology is a potentially effective tool to overcome barriers to effective cancer therapeutics including poor bioavailability and non-specific targeting. Among the nano-delivery approaches, lipoprotein based formulations have shown particularly strong promise to improve cancer therapeutics. The present article describes the challenges faced in the treatment of pediatric cancers and reviews the potential of lipoprotein-based therapeutics for these malignancies.

Key words: Drug delivery; Lipoprotein; Nanoparticles; Pediatric cancers; High density lipoprotein

Core tip: While survival rates for patients with childhood cancers have improved, the quality of life of survivors is often adversely impacted by the residual effects of therapy. Consequently, new approaches will be required to increase the efficacy and to minimize the drug related toxic side effects of pediatric cancer therapy. Nanotechnology is a potentially effective tool to improve cancer chemotherapy *via* enhanced bioavailability and specific targeting. Lipoprotein based formulations have shown particularly strong promise to improve cancer therapeutics. The present article describes the challenges faced in the treatment of pediatric cancers and reviews the potential of lipoprotein-based therapeutics for these malignancies.

Sabnis N, Bowman WP, Lacko AG. Lipoprotein based drug delivery: Potential for pediatric cancer applications. *World J Pharmacol* 2015; 4(2): 172-179 Available from: URL: http://

INTRODUCTION

Although cancer is the leading cause of death in children above 1 year of age in Europe and the Unites States, more than 80% of the children diagnosed with cancer are expected to survive, subsequent to treatment, though 40% will suffer through adulthood from the long term consequences of the treatment administered during childhood[1,2]. While advances in the chemotherapy of pediatric malignancies have produced major improvements in survival over the last several years, treatment-related side effects remain a major concern.

The recently developed nanotechnology-based drug delivery vehicles (nano-DDVs) are directed toward overcoming the shortcomings of the currently employed chemotherapeutic agents, including poor solubility, limited bioavailability and inadequate stability[3-6]. Additionally most of these nano DD systems target specific sites by either passive or active transport mechanisms[7-10] and thus minimize the systemic exposure of normal tissues to the drug. Nanotechnology has also been shown to improve localized drug delivery by selective administration routes in order to overcome anatomical or physiological barriers, such as the blood brain barrier in the central nervous system[11-13]. Currently available treatment modalities for pediatric malignancies involve chemotherapy, surgery, radiation, bone marrow transplant and immune based therapy. These treatments are often accompanied by short and long-term side effects, resulting in deterioration of physiological functions among the survivors that impact the quality of life well into adulthood[14]. While current therapeutic approaches have markedly improved the prognosis for survival of pediatric cancer patients, a significant portion of childhood malignancies remain resistant to current regimens, leading to progressive disease and death[15]. Hence there is an urgent need to develop novel therapeutic strategies for pediatric cancers, in addition to reducing the residual toxicities. This review aims to focus on the challenges involved in treating pediatric cancers and the potential for overcoming these barriers *via* nanotechnology in general, utilizing lipoprotein based nano DDV in particular.

PEDIATRIC CANCERS ARE DIFFERENT FROM ADULT CANCERS

Pediatric cancers are different from adult malignancies because they often originate from cellular populations that have not completed the process of terminal differentiation[16-18]. Childhood cancers are often the result of genetic changes that take place very early in life, sometimes even before birth. Unlike many cancers in adults, childhood cancers are thus not strongly linked to lifestyle or environmental risk factors. Accordingly, children are very rarely diagnosed with ovarian, breast, colon or lung carcinomas that frequently occur in adults. Although childhood cancers are often more aggressive and remain undetected until an advanced stage is reached, due to the advances in therapeutics over past decades pediatric cancers tend to be more easily curable than adult cancers. The most common cancers diagnosed in children are given in Table 1.

According to the Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results (SEER) Program of the National Cancer Institute a 5-year relative survival rate for all cancers combined has increased from 61.7% in 1975-1977 to 81.4% in 1999-2006, among children from 0 to 19 years of age (NCI SEERS 2010)[20]. Between 1975 and 2007 the mortality rates for non-Hodgkin lymphoma decreased by 75% followed by 60% reduction in mortality statistics for acute lymphoblastic leukemia (ALL) and acute myeloid leukemia (AML)[20].

As a result, non-Hodgkin lymphomas and ALL are now among the most curable childhood cancers. These improvements in the prognoses of selected malignancies can be attributed to the improved risk assessment, supportive care, the development of new drugs directed at specific targets and most importantly, enrollment of large numbers of patients in well-designed prospective clinical trials. However, the survival rates for children with other solid tumors, including most bone and soft tissue sarcomas and brain tumors have not improved as dramatically over past four decades.

THERAPEUTIC CHALLENGES IN PEDIATRIC ONCOLOGY

The differences between the metabolic capacity, drug bio-distribution, organ function and absorption in response to drug therapy of children and that of adults are well known[21-23]. In addition, pediatric patients are less likely to have underlying health related issues as compared to adult populations undergoing treatment. The developmental changes profoundly affect the responses of children to medications and to related therapies[24]. All these factors affect the way in which treatment modalities are designed and applied to pediatric populations.

Designing formulations for pediatric patients is often complex because this age group is further sub-divided into different groups, based on differences in biology and metabolic capacity. These groupings represent preterm newborn infants, term newborn infants (0-27 d), infants and toddlers (28 d-23 mo), preschool children (2-5 years), school children (6-11 years) and adolescents (12-18 years)[25]. Each sub-category displays different biochemical functions and capabilities[18,24] while the level of cognitive development may also impact the effectiveness of drug formulations for cancer therapy[26]. Because most pediatric cancers

Table 1 Frequently encountered pediatric malignancies[19]		
Type of cancer	**Definition/characteristics**	**% Incidence 2005**
Leukemia	Leukemia is cancer of the body's blood-forming tissues, including the bone marrow and the lymphatic system	34
Brain and central nervous system tumors	Normal cells in the brain or the spinal cord change and grow uncontrollably, forming a mass	23
Neuroblastoma	It is a neuroendocrine tumor, most frequently originating in one of the adrenal glands, in addition to nerve tissues in the neck, chest, abdomen, or pelvis	7
Wilm's tumor or nephroblastoma	Cancer of kidney that occurs in children	5
Lymphoma (Hodgkins and Non-Hodgkins)	Blood cell tumor that develops from lymphocytes	12
Rhabdomyosarcoma	Cancer of soft tissues where the cancer cells originate from skeletal muscle progenitor	3
Bone cancer	Osteosarcoma and Ewing's sarcoma are the most common malignancies of bone	4
Germ cell tumors	Germ cells tumors typically emerge from gonads but may also originate in other parts of the body, while arising from embryonic germ cell "rests"	N/A

N/A: Statistics not available.

are rare; hence sample size is often a major concern regarding the design and performance of clinical trials.

Clinical trials involving pediatric patients are further restricted by the hesitancy of ethical review committees toward drug trials in children and the reluctance of pharmaceutical companies to invest in these costly ventures in view of the limited children's pharmaceutical market. Another challenge faced by pediatric oncologists while designing clinical trials, is determining the appropriate dosages of a drug for administration, especially as they apply to combination therapy. Even though the mechanism of action and the effective dose of most drugs in adults are known, a linear dose-per-kg correlation may not be appropriate for small children. Kearns *et al*[24] reviewed key maturational changes that account for differences in drug metabolism and disposition of drug formulations in pediatric populations *vs* those in adults. Gastric emptying time, gastric and duodenal pH, intestinal transit time, secretion and activity of bile and pancreatic fluid, bacterial colonization and transporters, such as P-glycoprotein (P-gp) are important factors for drug absorption[24], whereas key factors explaining differences in drug distribution between the pediatric population and adults are organ size, membrane permeability, plasma protein concentration and characteristics, endogenous substances in plasma, total body and extracellular water, fat content, regional blood flow and transporters such as P-gp, which is present not only in the gut, but also in liver, kidney, brain and other tissues[23].

Cancer therapeutics *via* nano drug delivery vehicle (DDV) is an emerging field that is yet to be fully investigated in children. The toxicological aspects of the exposure to nanoparticles will need to be thoroughly assessed to establish their safety for children, before the application of these formulations in pediatric oncology. These challenges notwithstanding, the application of nano DDVs in cancer therapeutics represents one of the most promising and rapidly expanding approaches based on the number of research reports and clinical trials in progress. Consequently, it is likely that, in due time, nano DDVs will be broadly applied in pediatric oncology.

Nanomedicine based therapeutics in children

The multiple advantageous features of nano DDVs, including high payload capacity, favorable biodistribution and pharmacokinetic profiles make them ideal candidates. Another advantage of most nano DDVs is their multimodal loading capability. The surface or core of the DDV may be loaded with multiple agents, so that treatment and monitoring of treatment *via* imaging can occur simultaneously (theranostics). Metals, chelators and/or radioisotopes may be included for CT and MRI or PET/SPECT imaging or *in vivo* imaging[27-29]. The ease of tracking nano DDVs *in vivo*, presents a unique opportunity for monitoring drug distribution on a patient by patient basis to determine whether drug accumulation is sufficient for a desirable therapeutic effect.

The potential of using nanomedicine to improve the diagnosis and the treatment of pediatric cancers has been extensively documented[30-32]. Several biologically based formulations have been applied in the form of nano DDVs[33-38] (including cross-linked liposomes, lipids, chitosan, lactic acid conjugates, *etc.*[36-38]) and chemical constructs (including polymer based, dendrimers, flo dots, quantum dots, ceramic, metal based, *etc.*).

As a result of research and development in nano DDV over past decade, several nano DDV formulations already made their way to the market including polymer-based poly(lactide-co-glycolide) nanocarriers, liposomes and abraxane[39,40]. However, all of these formulations are designated for use in adults. Similar formulations are currently in different phases of clinical trials in pediatric populations (Table 2); however, none has reached the clinic yet.

LIPOPROTEIN BASED NANO DDVS

An ideal DDV is expected to have excellent loading capacity, therapeutic shielding, biocompatibility and selective targeting capability. An effective DDV formulation should also be able to accommodate multimodal

Table 2 Drug delivery formulations currently undergoing clinical trials for pediatric cancers

FDA approved Formulations	Drug	Phase of pediatric clinical trial	Type of cancer	Ref.
Abraxane	Paclitaxel	Preclinical	Rhabdomyosarcoma Osteosarcoma Neuroblastoma	[30]
Nab paclitaxel	Paclitaxel	Phase I and II	Rhabdomyosarcoma, neuroblastoma	[41]
Doxil	Doxorubicin	Phase I and II	Refractory or recurrent Rhabdomyosarcoma, Neuroblastoma, Pontine glioma	[31]
DaunoXome	Daunorubicin	Phase III	AIDS related Kaposi Sarcoma, pediatric in acute myeloid leukemia refractory/relapsed	[32]
L-Annamycin	L-Annamycin	Phase I	Acute lymphocytic and acute myloid Leukemia	[42]
Depocyte (liposomalformulation)	Cytarabine	Phase I	Acute lymphocytic leukemia Recurrent brain tumor	[43] [44]
Marquibo	Vincristine sulfate	Phase I Phase II	Sarcoma Neuroblastoma	[45]
CPX 351	Cytarabine and daunorubicin	Phase I	Relapsed leukemia or lymphoma	[46]

FDA: United States Food and Drug Administration.

anti-cancer and /or contrast agents (for tumor imaging) and exhibit minimum undesirable side reactions by avoiding interactions with off target sites. Lipoprotein-inspired DDVs possess most of these desirable features and thus represent a promising platform for pediatric cancer therapeutics[35,47-50].

Lipoproteins are natural transport vehicles for shuttling lipids and lipophilic molecules in an aqueous milieu to organs of the body in mammals[51]. Although there are several classes of lipoproteins differing in size, buoyant density and the constituent apolipoproteins present, they exhibit common chemical characteristics that include a hydrophobic core surrounded by an amphiphilic shell of a phospholipid/cholesterol monolayer and several apolipoproteins. There are four major classes of lipoproteins present in the human/mammalian circulation (Figure 1), including chylomicron (75-1000 nm/ApoB-48), very low density lipoprotein (30-80 nm/ApoB-1000), low density lipoprotein (LDL) (18–25 nm/ApoB-100) and high density lipoprotein (HDL) (5-12 nm/ApoA-I, A-II, -E and -C)[47,52,53]. Due to their unique structural/functional properties lipoproteins are considered an excellent model DDVs for transporting and delivering chemotherapeutic agents[47].

Lipoprotein DDVs may be artificially assembled in different ways to transport drugs or imaging agents to desired sites[34,35]. Depending on the chemical nature of the payload and the method of formulation these DDVs may be loaded either by covalent modification of the phospholipid or protein component, intercalation of the agent into phospholipid or encapsulation into the hydrophobic core of the DDV[47,54,55].

Drug delivery *via* LDL and HDL receptors: Carcinogenesis is a multifaceted process that involves immense reorganization of signaling pathways, genetic information, structural constituents and energy

metabolism of the cell[56,57]. As a result, cancer cells exhibit markedly elevated metabolic/energy requirements to sustain the tumor proliferation and migration functions[58]. These changes are induced and facilitated by mutating growth factor receptors resulting in constitutive signaling to key metabolic pathways[50,59]. In addition to basic nutrients, cancer cells have an excessive need for many other substances including cholesterol for membrane biogenesis[60]. One of the mechanisms that cancer cells use to meet this requirement is by over-expressing the LDL and HDL lipoprotein receptors[59,61-63]. Drug delivery strategies have been developed using both LDL and HDL receptor targeting DDVs[64-67] as well as liposome DDVs modified by LDL receptor ligands[68,69]. The drug carrying reconstituted HDL (rHDL) nanoparticles targeted to Scavenger receptor B-1 (SR-B1) function as a "magic bullet" and enhance the therapeutic efficacy of the enclosed drugs toward malignant tumors[70]. The over-expression of the SR-B1 receptor in malignant tissues has the potential to facilitate the enhanced selective delivery of anti-cancer agents to tumors thus providing a marked improvement of the current chemotherapy regimens, including the limiting of off-target toxicity[59,61,62].

Why use the rHDL nanoparticles for drug delivery of anti-cancer drugs in pediatric oncology?

While numerous studies employed liposomes to produce improved solubility and bioavailability of anti-cancer agents, due to their small size, rHDL nanoparticles accrue substantial additional therapeutic benefits (Figure 1) *via* their enhanced capability to penetrate the tumor microenvironment, including its vasculature and stroma. This is anticipated to be a major advantage when treating pediatric cancers since these tumors are often associated with stroma. The rHDL DDVs have
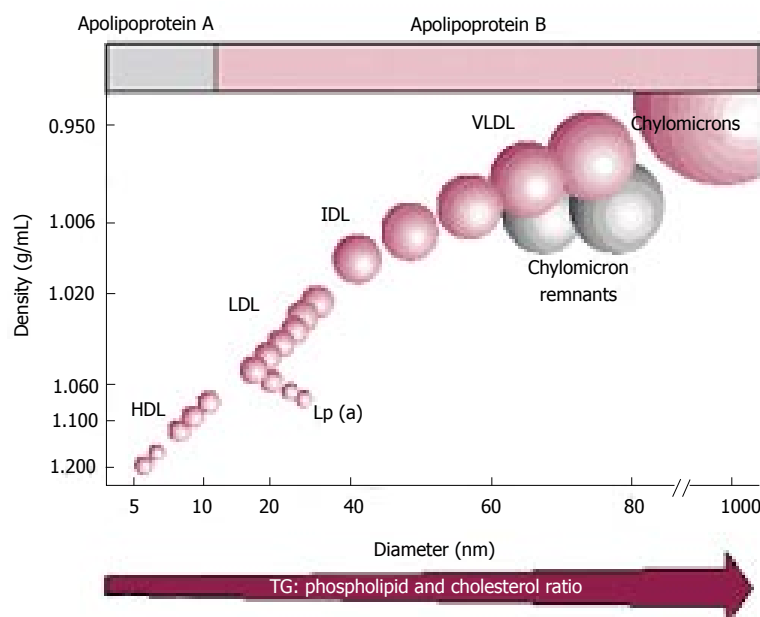
Figure 1 Size and density distribution of lipoproteins.
HDL: High density lipoprotein; IDL: Intermediate density lipoprotein; VLDL: Very low density lipoprotein; LDL: Low density lipoprotein.

been evaluated regarding their efficacy and capacity to perform targeted delivery of cancer drugs[61,62,71]. In addition, the rHDL DDVs are comprised of endogenous biocompatible ingredients that have already been injected into human subjects during cholesterol metabolism trials[72].

Due to their structural similarity to their natural counterparts, rHDLs effectively avoid recognition by the reticuloendothelial system that clears foreign substances, and thus fail to trigger immune responses in contrast to other synthetic DDVs including liposomes[73]. Additional advantages of the rHDL DDVs include extended retention time in circulation, stability and cytoplasmic drug delivery to circumvent drug resistance that may develop during chemotherapy. Also lesser amounts of drug are likely to be required for achieving the same cytotoxic effect compared with the drug used in its free form[67]. Although these advantages of lipoprotein based nano DDV could be beneficial to all types of cancer patients, pediatric patients are anticipated to benefit the most by the extended safety, long drug retention time and enhanced therapeutic efficacy.

Our laboratory has focused on studies of targeted drug delivery, including optimization of the rHDL nanoparticle *via* attachment of targeting molecules. Mooberry *et al*[61] have shown that the uptake of paclitaxel by ovarian cancer cells from rHDL DDVs could thus be substantially enhanced by covalently attaching a folic acid residue to the apolipoprotein component of the nanoparticle. Similarly, Parker *et al*[74] exploited the overexpression of folate receptors in tumor cells by conjugating folic acid to the apolipoprotein B component of an LDL-like DDV and thus specifically targeted drugs, transported by the lipoprotein vehicle. These studies suggest that lipoprotein DDVs could be specifically functionalized for targeting surface antigens (including receptors) that are overexpressed by malignant tumors[48,60]. Overall, as described above, lipoproteins possess many desirable characteristics that enable them to serve as natural or synthetic drug transporters. While lipoproteins were proposed as efficient DDVs over thirty years ago, perhaps surprisingly, no lipoprotein formulation has so far been approved for clinical application to date. The recent upsurge in interest to develop lipoprotein DDVs will perhaps spawn the needed energy and investment to fully take advantage of this robust, natural drug carrier for therapeutic purposes in general and pediatric formulations in particular.

FUTURE PERSPECTIVE FOR PEDIATRIC CANCER CHEMOTHERAPY

Conventional cancer chemotherapy has traditionally been associated with undesirable side effects that are especially troublesome during the treatment of pediatric patients. Researchers have drawn attention to the multidimensional benefits of lipoprotein based DDVs including their biocompatibility and stability that enable them to minimize these side effects *via* specifically targeting malignant cells and tumors while avoiding normal tissues[48,59,61,63,75]. Several clinical studies have demonstrated that HDL-type formulations have been safely administered to human subjects[76-78]. Selection of patients for rHDL driven chemotherapy could be based on the SR-B1 expression levels of each specific tumor involved; thus, provide a new bio-marker for eventual personalized therapy. There are numerous additional membrane proteins which could be used as targets for functionalized rHDL. This feature of rerouting DDVs from their endogenous receptors and steering them to specific sites[71] could further enhance the potential of the rHDL nanoparticles to facilitate the development of a robust personalized therapy regimen for pediatric cancers. Despite the major advances in

pediatric cancer research, there are several malignancies afflicting children that remain resistant to therapy. In addition, extension of 5 year survival or even producing permanent remission is often accompanied by harmful long lasting and debilitating side effects in pediatric cancer patients. Perhaps improved treatment modalities developed *via* novel nanoparticle formulations and specifically involving lipoprotein type carriers will provide the needed tools to overcome the current barriers to successful pediatric cancer therapy.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

REFERENCES

1   **Vassal G**, Zwaan CM, Ashley D, Le Deley MC, Hargrave D, Blanc P, Adamson PC. New drugs for children and adolescents with cancer: the need for novel development pathways. *Lancet Oncol* 2013; **14**: e117-e124 [PMID: 23434337 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(13)70013-5]

2   **Kaatsch P**. Epidemiology of childhood cancer. *Cancer Treat Rev* 2010; **36**: 277-285 [PMID: 20231056 DOI: 10.1016/j.ctrv.2010.02.003]

3   **Felice B**, Prabhakaran MP, Rodríguez AP, Ramakrishna S. Drug delivery vehicles on a nano-engineering perspective. *Mater Sci Eng C Mater Biol Appl* 2014; **41**: 178-195 [PMID: 24907751 DOI: 10.1016/j.msec.2014.04.049]

4   **Rastogi V**, Yadav P, Bhattacharya SS, Mishra AK, Verma N, Verma A, Pandit JK. Carbon nanotubes: an emerging drug carrier for targeting cancer cells. *J Drug Deliv* 2014; **2014**: 670815 [PMID: 24872894 DOI: 10.1155/2014/670815]

5   **Matsumura Y**. The drug discovery by nanomedicine and its clinical experience. *Jpn J Clin Oncol* 2014; **44**: 515-525 [PMID: 24755547 DOI: 10.1093/jjco/hyu046]

6   **Bottini M**, Sacchetti C, Pietroiusti A, Bellucci S, Magrini A, Rosato N, Bottini N. Targeted nanodrugs for cancer therapy: prospects and challenges. *J Nanosci Nanotechnol* 2014; **14**: 98-114 [PMID: 24730253]

7   **Petkar KC**, Chavhan SS, Agatonovik-Kustrin S, Sawant KK. Nanostructured materials in drug and gene delivery: a review of the state of the art. *Crit Rev Ther Drug Carrier Syst* 2011; **28**: 101-164 [PMID: 21663574]

8   **Chakraborty M**, Jain S, Rani V. Nanotechnology: emerging tool for diagnostics and therapeutics. *Appl Biochem Biotechnol* 2011; **165**: 1178-1187 [PMID: 21847590 DOI: 10.1007/s12010-011-9336-6]

9   **Chandra S**, Nigam S, Bahadur D. Combining unique properties of dendrimers and magnetic nanoparticles towards cancer theranostics. *J Biomed Nanotechnol* 2014; **10**: 32-49 [PMID: 24724497]

10 **Dobbelstein M**, Moll U. Targeting tumour-supportive cellular machineries in anticancer drug development. *Nat Rev Drug Discov* 2014; **13**: 179-196 [PMID: 24577400 DOI: 10.1038/nrd4201]

11 **Vidu R**, Rahman M, Mahmoudi M, Enachescu M, Poteca TD, Opris I. Nanostructures: a platform for brain repair and augmentation. *Front Syst Neurosci* 2014; **8**: 91 [PMID: 24999319 DOI: 10.3389/fnsys.2014.00091]

12 **Dinda SC**, Pattnaik G. Nanobiotechnology-based drug delivery in brain targeting. *Curr Pharm Biotechnol* 2013; **14**: 1264-1274 [PMID: 24910011]

13 **Muthu MS**, Leong DT, Mei L, Feng SS. Nanotheranostics - application and further development of nanomedicine strategies for advanced theranostics. *Theranostics* 2014; **4**: 660-677 [PMID:

24723986 DOI: 10.7150/thno.8698]

14 **van Ginkel PR**, Sareen D, Subramanian L, Walker Q, Darjatmoko SR, Lindstrom MJ, Kulkarni A, Albert DM, Polans AS. Resveratrol inhibits tumor growth of human neuroblastoma and mediates apoptosis by directly targeting mitochondria. *Clin Cancer Res* 2007; **13**: 5162-5169 [PMID: 17785572 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-07-0347]

15 **Kersey JH**. Fifty years of studies of the biology and therapy of childhood leukemia. *Blood* 1998; **92**: 1838 [PMID: 9716617]

16 American cancer society's website. What are the differences between cancers in adults and children? [cited 2014 Feb 03]. Available from: URL: http://www.cancer.org/cancer/leukemiainchildren/detailedguide/childhood-leukemia-differences-children-adults

17 **Sosnik A**, Seremeta KP, Imperiale JC, Chiappetta DA. Novel formulation and drug delivery strategies for the treatment of pediatric poverty-related diseases. *Expert Opin Drug Deliv* 2012; **9**: 303-323 [PMID: 22257003 DOI: 10.1517/17425247.2012.655268]

18 **Bowles A**, Keane J, Ernest T, Clapham D, Tuleu C. Specific aspects of gastro-intestinal transit in children for drug delivery design. *Int J Pharm* 2010; **395**: 37-43 [PMID: 20478372 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijpharm.2010.04.048]

19 Childhood Cancer overview from American Society of Clinical Oncology (ASCO). Cancer in Children from Centers for Disease Control and Prevention [cited 2014 June; updated 2009 Jul 30]. Available from: URL: http://www.cancer.org/cancer/cancerinchildren/detailedguide/cancer-in-children-types-of-childhood-cancers

20 **Kaatsch P**, Sikora E, Pawelec G. Types of childhood cancers statistics: (June 2010). "Epidemiology of childhood cancer". *Cancer treatment reviews* 2010; **36**: 277-285

21 **Ginsberg G**, Hattis D, Sonawane B, Russ A, Banati P, Kozlak M, Smolenski S, Goble R. Evaluation of child/adult pharmacokinetic differences from a database derived from the therapeutic drug literature. *Toxicol Sci* 2002; **66**: 185-200 [PMID: 11896285]

22 **Yanni S**. Disposition and interaction of biotherapeutics in pediatric populations. *Curr Drug Metab* 2012; **13**: 882-900 [PMID: 22475271]

23 **Strolin Benedetti M**, Whomsley R, Baltes EL. Differences in absorption, distribution, metabolism and excretion of xenobiotics between the paediatric and adult populations. *Expert Opin Drug Metab Toxicol* 2005; **1**: 447-471 [PMID: 16863455]

24 **Kearns GL**, Abdel-Rahman SM, Alander SW, Blowey DL, Leeder JS, Kauffman RE. Developmental pharmacology--drug disposition, action, and therapy in infants and children. *N Engl J Med* 2003; **349**: 1157-1167 [PMID: 13679531]

25 International Conference on Harmonisation of Technical Requirements for Registration of Pharmaceuticals for Human Use, ICH E 11, Clinical Investigation of Medicinal Products in the Paediatric Population (CPMP/ICH/2711/99) (London, 2000, The US: International Conference on Harmonisation, Guidance on E 11 Clinical Investigation of Medicinal Products in Pediatric Population; Notice. Federal Register, 2000, 65). Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2003: 78493-78494

26 **Committee for medicinal products for human use (chmp)**. Reflection paper: formulations of choice for the paediatric population. European medicines agency pre-authorization evaluation of medicines for human use (London, 28 July 2006. EMEA/CHMP/PEG/194810/2005). Available from: URL: http://www.ema.europa.eu/docs/en_GB/document_library/Scientific_guideline/2009/09/WC500003782.pdf

27 **Pérez-Medina C**, Abdel-Atti D, Zhang Y, Longo VA, Irwin CP, Binderup T, Ruiz-Cabello J, Fayad ZA, Lewis JS, Mulder WJ, Reiner T. A modular labeling strategy for in vivo PET and near-infrared fluorescence imaging of nanoparticle tumor targeting. *J Nucl Med* 2014; **55**: 1706-1711 [PMID: 25060196]

28 **Rangger C**, Helbok A, Sosabowski J, Kremser C, Koehler G, Prassl R, Andreae F, Virgolini IJ, von Guggenberg E, Decristoforo C. Tumor targeting and imaging with dual-peptide conjugated multifunctional liposomal nanoparticles. *Int J Nanomedicine* 2013; **8**: 4659-4671 [PMID: 24353415 DOI: 10.2147/IJN.S51927]

29   **Lee J**, Lee TS, Ryu J, Hong S, Kang M, Im K, Kang JH, Lim SM, Park S, Song R. RGD peptide-conjugated multimodal NaGdF4: Yb3+/Er3+ nanophosphors for upconversion luminescence, MR, and PET imaging of tumor angiogenesis. *J Nucl Med* 2013; **54**: 96-103 [PMID: 23232276 DOI: 10.2967/jnumed.112.108043]

30   **Zhang L**, Marrano P, Kumar S, Leadley M, Elias E, Thorner P, Baruchel S. Nab-paclitaxel is an active drug in preclinical model of pediatric solid tumors. *Clin Cancer Res* 2013; **19**: 5972-5983 [PMID: 23989978 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-13-1485]

31   **Marina NM**, Cochrane D, Harney E, Zomorodi K, Blaney S, Winick N, Bernstein M, Link MP. Dose escalation and pharmacokinetics of pegylated liposomal doxorubicin (Doxil) in children with solid tumors: a pediatric oncology group study. *Clin Cancer Res* 2002; **8**: 413-418 [PMID: 11839657]

32   **Kaspers GJ**, Zimmermann M, Reinhardt D, Gibson BE, Tamminga RY, Aleinikova O, Armendariz H, Dworzak M, Ha SY, Hasle H, Hovi L, Maschan A, Bertrand Y, Leverger GG, Razzouk BI, Rizzari C, Smisek P, Smith O, Stark B, Creutzig U. Improved outcome in pediatric relapsed acute myeloid leukemia: results of a randomized trial on liposomal daunorubicin by the International BFM Study Group. *J Clin Oncol* 2013; **31**: 599-607 [PMID: 23319696 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2012.43.7384]

33   **Yang Y**, Wang S, Wang Y, Wang X, Wang Q, Chen M. Advances in self-assembled chitosan nanomaterials for drug delivery. *Biotechnol Adv* 2014; **32**: 1301-1316 [PMID: 25109677 DOI: 10.1016/j.biotechadv.2014.07.007]

34   **Ng KK**, Lovell JF, Zheng G. Lipoprotein-inspired nanoparticles for cancer theranostics. *Acc Chem Res* 2011; **44**: 1105-1113 [PMID: 21557543]

35   **Sabnis N**, Lacko AG. Drug delivery via lipoprotein-based carriers: answering the challenges in systemic therapeutics. *Ther Deliv* 2012; **3**: 599-608 [PMID: 22834404]

36   **Winter PM**. Perfluorocarbon nanoparticles: evolution of a multimodality and multifunctional imaging agent. *Scientifica* (Cairo) 2014; **2014**: 746574 [PMID: 25024867 DOI: 10.1155/2014/746574]

37   **Bazak R**, Houri M, El Achy S, Kamel S, Refaat T. Cancer active targeting by nanoparticles: a comprehensive review of literature. *J Cancer Res Clin Oncol* 2015; **141**: 769-784 [PMID: 25005786]

38   **Saenz del Burgo L**, Pedraz JL, Orive G. Advanced nanovehicles for cancer management. *Drug Discov Today* 2014; **19**: 1659-1670 [PMID: 24981660 DOI: 10.1016/j.drudis.2014.06.020]

39   **Sosnik A**, Carcaboso AM. Nanomedicines in the future of pediatric therapy. *Adv Drug Deliv Rev* 2014; **73**: 140-161 [PMID: 24819219 DOI: 10.1016/j.addr.2014.05.004]

40   **Federman N**, Denny CT. Targeting liposomes toward novel pediatric anticancer therapeutics. *Pediatr Res* 2010; **67**: 514-519 [PMID: 20118828 DOI: 10.1203/PDR.0b013e3181d601c5]

41   **Celgene Corporation**. To Find a Safe Dose and Show Early Clinical Activity of Weekly Nab-paclitaxel in Pediatric Patients with Recurrent/ Refractory Solid Tumors [updated 2014 Aug 11]. Available from: URL: http://clinicaltrials.gov/show/NCT01962103

42   **Callisto Pharmaceuticals, Inc**. Callisto Pharmaceuticals Opens L-Annamycin Phase I Clinical Trial in Pediatric Relapsed or Refractory Acute Leukemia. Available from: URL: http://www.prnewswire.co.uk/news-releases/callisto-pharmaceuticals-opens-l-annamycin-phase-i-clinical-trial-in-pediatric-relapsed-or-refractory-acute-leukemia-153539655.html

43   **Seif AE**, Reilly AF, Rheingold SR. Intrathecal liposomal cytarabine in relapsed or refractory infant and pediatric leukemias: the Children's Hospital of Philadelphia experience and review of the literature. *J Pediatr Hematol Oncol* 2010; **32**: e349-e352 [PMID: 20962675 DOI: 10.1097/MPH.0b013e3181ec0c25]

44   **Benesch M**, Siegler N, Hoff Kv, Lassay L, Kropshofer G, Müller H, Sommer C, Rutkowski S, Fleischhack G, Urban C. Safety and toxicity of intrathecal liposomal cytarabine (Depocyte) in children and adolescents with recurrent or refractory brain tumors: a multi-institutional retrospective study. *Anticancer Drugs* 2009; **20**: 794-799 [PMID: 19617818 DOI: 10.1097/CAD.0b013e32832f4abe]

45   **Spectrum Pharmaceuticals, Inc**. To Evaluate the Safety, Activity and Pharmacokinetics of Marqibo in Children and Adolescents with Refractory Cancer.. Available from: URL: http://clinicaltrials.gov/show/NCT01222780

46   **Children's Hospital Medical Center, Cincinnati**. Safety Study of CPX-351 in Children with Relapsed Leukemia or Lymphoma In: ClinicalTrials.gov [Internet]. Bethesda (MD): National Library of Medicine (US). Available from: URL: http://clinicaltrials.gov/show/NCT01943682 NLM Identifier: NCT01943682

47   **Bricarello DA**, Smilowitz JT, Zivkovic AM, German JB, Parikh AN. Reconstituted lipoprotein: a versatile class of biologically-inspired nanostructures. *ACS Nano* 2011; **5**: 42-57 [PMID: 21182259 DOI: 10.1021/nn103098m]

48   **Basha R**, Sabnis N, Heym K, Bowman WP, Lacko AG. Targeted nanoparticles for pediatric leukemia therapy. *Front Oncol* 2014; **4**: 101 [PMID: 24860784 DOI: 10.3389/fonc.2014.00101]

49   **Johnson R**, Sabnis N, McConathy WJ, Lacko AG. The potential role of nanotechnology in therapeutic approaches for triple negative breast cancer. *Pharmaceutics* 2013; **5**: 353-370 [PMID: 24244833 DOI: 10.3390/pharmaceutics5020353]

50   **Zhang L**, Zhang S, Ruan SB, Zhang QY, He Q, Gao HL. Lapatinib-incorporated lipoprotein-like nanoparticles: preparation and a proposed breast cancer-targeting mechanism. *Acta Pharmacol Sin* 2014; **35**: 846-852 [PMID: 24902791 DOI: 10.1038/aps.2014.26]

51   **Mulkidjanian AY**, Galperin MY, Koonin EV. Co-evolution of primordial membranes and membrane proteins. *Trends Biochem Sci* 2009; **34**: 206-215 [PMID: 19303305 DOI: 10.1016/j.tibs.2009.01.005]

52   **Gotto AM**, Pownall HJ, Havel RJ. Introduction to the plasma lipoproteins. *Methods Enzymol* 1986; **128**: 3-41 [PMID: 3523141]

53   **Chapman MJ**. Animal lipoproteins: chemistry, structure, and comparative aspects. *J Lipid Res* 1980; **21**: 789-853 [PMID: 7003040]

54   **Hermanson G**. Bioconjugate Techniques. San Diego, CA: Academic Press; 1996

55   **Krieger M**, Smith LC, Anderson RG, Goldstein JL, Kao YJ, Pownall HJ, Gotto AM, Brown MS. Reconstituted low density lipoprotein: a vehicle for the delivery of hydrophobic fluorescent probes to cells. *J Supramol Struct* 1979; **10**: 467-478 [PMID: 229357]

56   **Hanahan D**, Weinberg RA. Hallmarks of cancer: the next generation. *Cell* 2011; **144**: 646-674 [PMID: 21376230 DOI: 10.1016/j.cell.2011.02.013]

57   **Biswas S**, Lunec J, Bartlett K. Non-glucose metabolism in cancer cells--is it all in the fat? *Cancer Metastasis Rev* 2012; **31**: 689-698 [PMID: 22706846 DOI: 10.1007/s10555-012-9384-6]

58   **Warburg O**. [Origin of cancer cells]. *Oncologia* 1956; **9**: 75-83 [PMID: 13335077 DOI: 10.1126/science.123.3191.309]

59   **Sabnis N**, Nair M, Israel M, McConathy WJ, Lacko AG. Enhanced solubility and functionality of valrubicin (AD-32) against cancer cells upon encapsulation into biocompatible nanoparticles. *Int J Nanomedicine* 2012; **7**: 975-983 [PMID: 22393294 DOI: 10.2147/IJN.S28029]

60   **Vander Heiden MG**, Cantley LC, Thompson CB. Understanding the Warburg effect: the metabolic requirements of cell proliferation. *Science* 2009; **324**: 1029-1033 [PMID: 19460998 DOI: 10.1126/science.1160809]

61   **Mooberry LK**, Nair M, Paranjape S, McConathy WJ, Lacko AG. Receptor mediated uptake of paclitaxel from a synthetic high density lipoprotein nanocarrier. *J Drug Target* 2010; **18**: 53-58 [PMID: 19637935 DOI: 10.3109/10611860903156419]

62   **McConathy WJ**, Paranjape S, Mooberry L, Lacko AG. Validation of the reconstituted high-density lipoprotein (rHDL) drug delivery platform using dilauryl fluorescein (DLF). *Drug Deliv Transl Res* 2011; **1**: 113–120

63   **McConathy WJ**, Nair MP, Paranjape S, Mooberry L, Lacko AG. Evaluation of synthetic/reconstituted high-density lipoproteins as delivery vehicles for paclitaxel. *Anticancer Drugs* 2008; **19**: 183-188 [PMID: 18176115 DOI: 10.1097/CAD.0b013e3282f1da86]

64   **Andalib S**, Varshosaz J, Hassanzadeh F, Sadeghi H. Optimization of LDL targeted nanostructured lipid carriers of 5-FU by a full factorial design. *Adv Biomed Res* 2012; **1**: 45 [PMID: 23326776 DOI: 10.4103/2277-9175.100147]

65   **Shao T**, Li X, Ge J. Target drug delivery system as a new scarring modulation after glaucoma filtration surgery. *Diagn Pathol* 2011; **6**: 64 [PMID: 21736763 DOI: 10.1186/1746-1596-6-64]

66   **Shahzad MM**, Mangala LS, Han HD, Lu C, Bottsford-Miller J, Nishimura M, Mora EM, Lee JW, Stone RL, Pecot CV, Thanapprapasr D, Roh JW, Gaur P, Nair MP, Park YY, Sabnis N, Deavers MT, Lee JS, Ellis LM, Lopez-Berestein G, McConathy WJ, Prokai L, Lacko AG, Sood AK. Targeted delivery of small interfering RNA using reconstituted high-density lipoprotein nanoparticles. *Neoplasia* 2011; **13**: 309-319 [PMID: 21472135]

67   **Sabnis N**, Pratap S, Akopova I, Bowman PW, Lacko AG. Pre-Clinical Evaluation of rHDL Encapsulated Retinoids for the Treatment of Neuroblastoma. *Front Pediatr* 2013; **1**: 6 [PMID: 24459664 DOI: 10.3389/fped.2013.00006]

68   **Liu M**, Li W, Larregieu CA, Cheng M, Yan B, Chu T, Li H, Mao SJ. Development of synthetic peptide-modified liposomes with LDL receptor targeting capacity and improved anticancer activity. *Mol Pharm* 2014; **11**: 2305-2312 [PMID: 24830852 DOI: 10.1021/mp400759d]

69   **Markakis KP**, Koropouli MK, Grammenou-Savvoglou S, van Winden EC, Dimitriou AA, Demopoulos CA, Tselepis AD, Kotsifaki EE. Implication of lipoprotein associated phospholipase A2 activity in oxLDL uptake by macrophages. *J Lipid Res* 2010; **51**: 2191-2201 [PMID: 20332422 DOI: 10.1194/jlr.M003558]

70   **Lacko AG**, Nair M, Paranjape S, Mooberry L, McConathy WJ. Trojan horse meets magic bullet to spawn a novel, highly effective drug delivery model. *Chemotherapy* 2006; **52**: 171-173 [PMID: 16691026]

71   **Zheng G**, Chen J, Li H, Glickson JD. Rerouting lipoprotein nanoparticles to selected alternate receptors for the targeted delivery of cancer diagnostic and therapeutic agents. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2005; **102**: 17757-17762 [PMID: 16306263]

72   **van Capelleveen JC**, Brewer HB, Kastelein JJ, Hovingh GK. Novel therapies focused on the high-density lipoprotein particle. *Circ Res* 2014; **114**: 193-204 [PMID: 24385512 DOI: 10.1161/CIRCRESAHA.114.301804]

73   **Zhang WL**, Gu X, Bai H, Yang RH, Dong CD, Liu JP. Nanostructured lipid carriers constituted from high-density lipoprotein components for delivery of a lipophilic cardiovascular drug. *Int J Pharm* 2010; **391**: 313-321 [PMID: 20214958 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijpharm.2010.03.011]

74   **Parker N**, Turk MJ, Westrick E, Lewis JD, Low PS, Leamon CP. Folate receptor expression in carcinomas and normal tissues determined by a quantitative radioligand binding assay. *Anal Biochem* 2005; **338**: 284-293 [PMID: 15745749]

75   **Yang M**, Chen J, Cao W, Ding L, Ng KK, Jin H, Zhang Z, Zheng G. Attenuation of nontargeted cell-kill using a high-density lipoprotein-mimicking peptide--phospholipid nanoscaffold. *Nanomedicine* (Lond) 2011; **6**: 631-641 [PMID: 21718175 DOI: 10.2217/nnm.11.10]

76   **Smith JD**. Apolipoprotein A-I and its mimetics for the treatment of atherosclerosis. *Curr Opin Investig Drugs* 2010; **11**: 989-996 [PMID: 20730693]

77   **Tuteja S**, Rader DJ. High-density lipoproteins in the prevention of cardiovascular disease: changing the paradigm. *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 2014; **96**: 48-56 [PMID: 24713591 DOI: 10.1038/clpt.2014.79]

78   **Tardif JC**. Emerging high-density lipoprotein infusion therapies: fulfilling the promise of epidemiology? *J Clin Lipidol* 2010; **4**: 399-404 [PMID: 21122683 DOI: 10.1016/j.jacl.2010.08.018]

REVIEW

Progress in pancreatic cancer therapeutics: The potential to exploit molecular targets

Kiruthikah Thillai, Debashis Sarker, Paul Ross

Kiruthikah Thillai, Debashis Sarker, Paul Ross, Department of Medical Oncology, Guy's and St Thomas NHS Trust, SE19RT London, United Kingdom

Author contributions: All authors contributed to this manuscript.

Correspondence to: Dr. Paul Ross, Department of Medical Oncology, Guy's and St Thomas NHS Trust, Great Maze Pond, SE19RT London, United Kingdom. paul.ross@gstt.nhs.uk
Telephone: +44-207-1887188
Fax: +44-207-1887534

Abstract

Pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma is an aggressive and devastating disease associated with poor survival outcomes. Even though significant advances have been made towards understanding the intricate pathology of this cancer, several important aspects remain unknown. Recently, key genetic mutations within the tumour have been identified, but the exact role they play in tumourigenesis has yet to be determined. For many years, the micro-tumour environment and stroma was thought to aid proliferation but there is now emerging research that suggests the contrary. Several novel targeted agents in pre-clinical and early clinical studies have been promising but it remains to be seen whether they will have a significant impact on patient outcomes. In this review we discuss the unique nature of pancreatic cancer biology, current treatment options and summarise the latest results from pre-clinical and clinical research. We also discuss the future strategies that are needed to improve outcomes for this disease.

Key words: Pancreatic cancer; Adenocarcinoma; Targeted therapy; Genomics; Stroma; KRAS; Chemotherapy

Core tip: Pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma is a cancer with several significant genetic aberrations that have recently been identified by international research efforts. Despite these findings, standard therapy for advanced disease consists primarily of chemotherapy. In the last few years two new chemotherapy regimens, FOLFIRINOX and Gemcitabine/Nab-paclitaxel, have demonstrated survival benefits in large phase III trials resulting in a change to current practise. However, the advent of targeted treatments has not yet had a significant impact in this disease compared with other malignancies. Current research strategies include developing therapies directed towards the RAS-RAK-MEK pathway, PI3K-AKT-mTOR pathway, notch pathway and immunotherapies to name but a few, with several clinical trials underway. It is likely that the heterogeneous nature of pancreatic cancer necessitates a more personalised approach to management with targeted treatment guided by predictive biomarkers.

Thillai K, Sarker D, Ross P. Progress in pancreatic cancer therapeutics: The potential to exploit molecular targets. *World*

INTRODUCTION

Pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma (PDAC) is the 5th leading cause of cancer related mortality worldwide. Despite significant research efforts, 5-year survival for all stages remains stagnant at 3%-5%[1,2]. More than 80% of patients present with inoperable or advanced disease, so there remains an urgent need for more effective systemic treatments[3]. Although newer combination chemotherapy regimens offer improved survival outcomes, therapeutic options are limited and do not fully exploit the unique biology of the disease. To date no predictive or prognostic biomarker has been validated for use. This review will discuss current management and emerging therapeutic concepts.

THE MOLECULAR BIOLOGY OF PDAC

Pancreatic cancer is a genetic disease, the biology of which is both intricate and highly heterogeneous. Several extensive genomic studies have confirmed that the development of PDAC results from several complex genetic aberrations with mutations in both oncogenes and tumour suppressor genes[4]. The progression from the pre-malignant dysplastic cellular transformations to the final development of PDAC is associated with increasing mutational changes, confirming the importance of such genetic variations in cancer development. Nearly all pancreatic cancers harbour a KRAS mutation and the majority are also associated with inactivation of CDKN2a/INK4a, TP53 and DPC4/SMaD4[4-7]. Several groups have aimed to accurately depict the genomics of PDAC with each reporting numerous activating mutations. Importantly, there was heterogeneity amongst the different pancreatic tumours with several key pathways responsible for cancer progression differing between patient samples[7]. Clonal mutations found in metastatic lesions were identified in primary cancers but due to the unstable genetic nature of PDAC, these initial mutations continued to evolve resulting in heterogeneity amongst the different metastatic deposits in the same patient. This complex genetic landscape results in an aggressive pathology, often refractory to treatment resulting in poor survival outcomes.

A recent addition to the understanding of PDAC comes from recent studies that have identified a group of pancreatic cancer cells that display stem cell properties[4,8]. These cells appear to have the ability of self-renewal and asymmetric division. Preliminary data suggests that patients with tumours containing cancer stem cells (CSCs) are associated with poorer overall survival (OS). The identification of CSCs and the signalling pathways that they regulate, has led to newer therapeutic targets such as WnT, Hedgehog and Notch. Further research is needed to see whether these can be successfully exploited to produce meaningful clinical outcomes.

Despite promising pre-clinical studies, several chemotherapeutics and targeted agents have failed to reproduce positive results in patients (Table 1). One explanation for this relates to the complex micro-tumour environment that surrounds the cancer cells and the difficulties replicating this *in-vitro*. A significant bulk of the pancreatic tumour comprises not of malignant cells but of the encompassing dense fibrotic stromal matrix[9]. This micro-tumour environment results from the extensive desmoplastic reaction seen in PDAC and consists of an abundant extracellular matrix, pancreatic stellate cells, fibroblasts, immune cells, inflammatory cells and vasculature all of which were previously thought to aid proliferation, invasion and metastatic spread whilst also preventing adequate drug delivery leading to chemotherapy-resistance[10-14]. The success of nab-paclitaxel (as discussed later) appear to manipulate the distinct characteristics of the stroma for therapeutic benefit[15].

However recent emerging research using genetically modified mouse models suggest that depletion of the stroma (by genetic or pharmacological targeting of the Hedgehog[16] pathway) results in an unexpected increase in tumour vascularity and proliferation, thereby resulting in more aggressive tumours with reduced survival[17]. Furthermore, transgenic mice with the ability to delete αSMA+ myofibroblasts in pancreatic cancer also demonstrated reduced survival[18]. Both studies suggest that rather than a promoter of cancer growth, the stroma (or at least part of it) may paradoxically act to suppress proliferation and angiogenesis thus targeting the stroma should be performed with caution. An intricate and crucial part of PDAC, further research into the stroma is needed in order to exploit its presence for therapeutic benefit.

CHEMOTHERAPY

Until recently the standard treatment for inoperable or metastatic disease was with the nucleoside analogue gemcitabine. This was based on the results of a phase III trial in 1997 of 126 patients with advanced PDAC. Patients were randomised to receive gemcitabine (gemcitabine 1000 mg/m^2 weekly × 7 followed by 1 wk of rest, then weekly × 3 every 4 wk thereafter), or to fluorouracil (5-FU) (600 mg/m^2 once weekly)[19]. Both arms continued treatment until progression or unacceptable toxicities and the primary end point was clinical benefit, measured using a combined score of pain, performance status (PS) and weight loss. Clinical benefit response was experienced by 23.8% of gemcitabine-treated patients compared with 4.8% of 5-FU-treated patients (P = 0.0022). There was also a modest survival benefit with gemcitabine with a 12-mo

Table 1 Phase Ⅲ trials with gemcitabine combination chemotherapy regimens

Date published	Target	Ref.	Sample size (n)	Treatment	OS (mo)	P value
2001	MMP	Bramhall *et al*[100]	414	Marimastat and Gem *vs* Gem	5.4 5.4	0.95
2004	FT	Van Cutsem *et al*[31]	688	Tipifarnib and Gem *vs* Gem + Placebo	5.9 6.3	0.75
2009	EGFR	Moore *et al*[61]	569	Erlotinib and Gem *vs* Gem	6.2 5.9	0.038
2008	EGFR/VEGF	Van Cutsem *et al*[88]	301	Gem, Erlotinib and Bevacizumab *vs* Gem, Erlotinib and Placebo	7.1 6.0	0.2087
2010	VEGF	Kindler *et al*[87]	535	Gem and Bevacizumab *vs* Gem and Placebo	5.8 5.9	0.95
2010	EGFR	Philip *et al*[75]	745	Gem *vs* Gem and cetuximab	5.9 6.3	0.23
2011	VEGF	Kindler *et al*[101]	630	Axitinib and Gem *vs* Gem	8.5 8.3	0.54
2012	VEGF, BRAF, PDGFR-B	Gonçalves *et al*[102]	104	Sorafenib and Gem *vs* Gem	8.0 9.2	0.23

Gem: Gemcitabine; OS: Overall survival; MMP: Matrix metalloproteinase; FT: Farnesyl transferase; EGFR: Epidermal growth factor receptor; VEGF: Vascular endothelial growth factor; PDGFR-B: Platelet derived growth factor receptor-B.

Table 2 Phase Ⅲ trials with targeted treatment in metastatic pancreatic cancer

Date published	Regimen	Ref.	Sample size (n)	Median OS (mo)	P value
2001	Gem *vs* Gem + 5FU	Berlin *et al*[103]	322	5.4 6.7	0.09
2004	Gem *vs* Gem + Irinotecan	Rocha Lima *et al*[104]	360	6.6 6.3	0.789
2005	Gem *vs* GemOx	Louvet *et al*[105]	326	7.1 9.0	0.13
2007	Gem *vs* Gem + cape	Herrmann *et al*[106]	319	7.2 8.4	0.234
2006	Gem *vs* Gem + Irinotecan	Stathopoulos *et al*[107]	145	6.4 6.5	0.970
2006	Gem *vs* Gem + Cisplatin	Heinemann *et al*[108]	195	6.0 7.5	0.15

Gem: Gemcitabine; 5FU: 5-Fluoruracil; GemOx: Gemcitabine + Oxaliplatin; cape: Capecitabine.

survival of 18% *vs* 2% (P = 0.0025) with a median OS of 5.6 m for patients treated with gemcitabine and 4.4 mo for those with 5-FU. Treatment was well tolerated and gemcitabine became standard treatment for inoperable and advanced disease.

Numerous clinical trials with various chemotherapy agents combined with gemcitabine ensued (Table 2) and following several disappointing outcomes, the majority of preclinical work focused on developing new targeted treatments. However, the most significant advances in PDAC management were with two new chemotherapy combinations that have recently demonstrated benefits over gemcitabine in large phase Ⅲ trials and thus changed current practise. The combined treatment of oxaliplatin, irinotecan, leucovorin and fluorouracil (FOLFIRINOX) was associated with a median OS of 11.1 mo compared with 6.8 mo in patients treated with gemcitabine alone (HR for death 0.57, 95%CI: 0.45-0.73, $P \leqslant 0.001$)[20,21]. This phase Ⅲ trial of 342 patients with PS 0 or 1 also demonstrated increases in median progression free survival (PFS) (6.4

m *vs* 3.3 m, $P \leqslant 0.001$) and objective response rate (ORR) (31.6 *vs* 9.4, $P \leqslant 0.001$)). Approved for use in first line metastatic disease, in practise this regimen is generally reserved for patients with an excellent performance status as unsurprisingly, toxicity was also significantly increased with this 3-drug combination. More recently a phase Ⅲ trial compared combined nab-paclitaxel and gemcitabine with gemcitabine alone in patients with metastatic disease[22]. Median OS was 8.5 mo with the combination chemotherapy and 6.7 mo with gemcitabine (95%CI: 0.62-0.83, $P <$ 0.001). ORR was significantly increased at 23% *vs* 7% ($P <$ 0.001), leading to interest in the potential use as a means of down staging locally advanced disease. A further pre-specified sub-group analysis concluded that baseline Karnofsky score (KS), presence of liver metastases, age and number of metastatic sites were independent prognostic factors for OS and PFS[23]. Common adverse events of grade 3 or higher included neutropenia (38% in nab-paclitaxel and gemcitabine arm and 27% in the gemcitabine arm), fatigue (17% and 7%) and

neuropathy (17% and 1%). Nab-paclitaxel is a colloidal suspension of 130 nm particles homogenised in human serum albumin that is bound to paclitaxel. Pancreatic cancers are known to overexpress Secreted protein acidic and rich in cysteine (SPARC) and nab-paclitaxel improves efficacy *via* SPARC-albumin binding[24]. Preclinical models have confirmed that SPARC overexpression in the stroma promotes cell invasion and metastatic spread. Higher levels of SPARC appeared to correlate with improved survival in the original phase I/II trial of gemcitabine and nab-paclitaxel (mOS was 17.8 m in the high SPARC group compared with 8.1 m in the low SPARC group, *P* = 0.431). Further research is needed to confirm whether SPARC has the potential to be used as a predictive marker. The recently reported results from a prospective randomised adjuvant study have also suggested the prognostic significance of over-expressed SPARC in patients undergoing resection with curative intent. Disease free survival (DFS) was 7.4 mo in patients with higher levels of SPARC compared to 12.1 m in those with lower levels (*P* = 0.041) and OS was 14.1 and 25.6 m respectively (*P* = 0.011)[25,26]. Without a direct head- to -head trial of both combination chemotherapy regimens, it is difficult to ascertain whether FOLFIRINOX or gemcitabine and nab-paclitaxel is superior and both are now standard practise. However single agent gemcitabine remains treatment of choice for those patients that are not suitable for combination therapy.

RAS-RAF-MEK PATHWAY

Approximately 30% of all patients with solid malignancies have tumours that exhibit oncogenic Ras mutations[27]. In PDAC this figure is much higher as an excess of 95% have a small GTPase KRAS mutation resulting in a dominant activated form. These mutations cause the protein to be constitutively activated, which leads to aberrant down-stream signalling and increased proliferation[28]. Following the discovery of the Ras family, a concerted effort was made to develop agents that could block mutated Ras function with little success.

As KRAS requires binding to the plasma membrane *via* farnesylation or geranylgeranylation in order to become activated, several farnesyltransferase inhibitors (FFIs) have been developed but have proved ineffective in clinical trials. Two phase II trials using FFIs were negativeand a randomised doubled blind phase III trial of 688 patients comparing gemcitabine with or without the FFI tipifarnib, demonstrated no significant survival benefit in the combination arm compared with standard treatment[29-31]. A further study demonstrated that binding of mammalian PDEδ to KRAS using small molecule inhibitors can suppress oncogenic RAS signalling by virtue of selective binding to the prenyl-binding pocket of PDEδ and in PDAC cell lines resulted in reduced cell proliferation[32]. Other approaches include the development of small molecules that target son of

sevenless (SOS) mediated nucleotide exchange and subsequently target KRAS[33] and recently KRASG12C inhibitors have demonstrated therapeutic potential by allosterically allowing KRAS to favour GDP over GTP[34]. Another recent approach to targeting KRAS is by the combined MEK/BCL-XL inhibition, a method developed after identification in a pooled shRNA screen[35]. This combination resulted in significant apoptosis in several KRAS mutated cell lines.

A recent pre-clinical study demonstrated a novel way of targeting KRAS in transgenic mouse models using an siRNA delivery system (Local drug EluteR or LODER)[36]. This model capitalises on the effects of siRNA and knockdown of KRAS, but *via* an innovative platform of a controlled and prolonged delivery for therapeutic benefit. The LODER against KRAS (siG12D LODER) decreased KRAS levels in pancreatic cancer cell lines resulting in reduced proliferation and epidermal-mesenchymal transition. Within *in-vivo* models, the growth of human pancreatic cancer cells was impaired and mouse survival was increased compared to controls. A phase 1 study in patients with locally advanced disease treated with siG12D LODER is on-going[37], and a further phase II study of siG12D LODER in combination with chemotherapy plans to open early next year[38]. Whilst these results are promising in the pursuit of an anti-KRAS therapy, it remains to be seen whether this can be translated in to an efficacious treatment in clinical trials.

With the limited success of inhibiting Ras, efforts have moved towards targeting downstream signalling activity. There are two main pathways that have been extensively interrogated, mitogen-activated protein kinases (MAPK) and phosphoinositide 3 kinase (PI3K) signalling (Figure 1). BRaf inhibitors, such as vemurafenib, work downstream from Ras and have had considerable success in Raf mutant tumours such as melanoma[39]. However, evidence now supports that there is a paradoxical up regulation of MAPK signalling when Raf is inhibited in KRAS mutated tumours[40]. In pancreatic cancer where Raf is wild type and Ras is nearly always mutated, Raf inhibitors create feedback activation of the MAPK signalling pathway therefore it is likely that targeting downstream by MEK inhibition will offer more promising results. Phase I/II clinical trials of various MEK inhibitors in combination with gemcitabine are currently underway following positive pre clinical work[41,42], Results from a phase IIa trial of 60 patients treated with gemcitabine in combination with the allosteric oral Mek1/2 inhibitor refametinib were presented at ASCO 2104. The best result was partial response in 35% of patients with median duration of response at 3.8 mo (117 d 95%CI: 83-265). Time to progression was 7.4 mo[43,44]. KRAS mutations were identified in 39 patients (65%) and the results suggested a trend towards improved survival outcomes in patients with KRAS wild type tumours. The OS for the KRAS mutant subgroup was 6.6 mo compared with 18.2
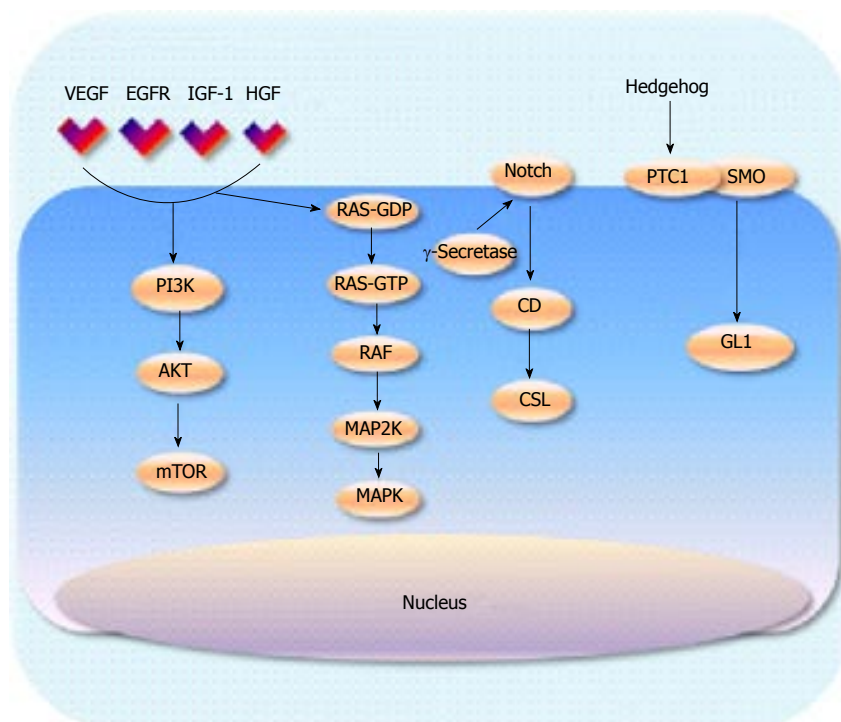
Figure 1 Simplified diagram of oncogenic targets in pancreatic cancer. The binding of ligands (including VEGF, EGF, IGF-1 and HGF) to receptors activates signalling pathways including the PI3K-Akt and the Ras pathways affecting downstream targets such as mTOR and MAPK. VEGF: Vascular endothelial growth factor; EGF: Epidermal growth factor; IGF-1: Insulin growth like factor-1; HGF: Hepatocyte growth factor; PI3K: Phosphatidylinositide 3-kinases; mTOR: Mammalian target of rapamycin; RAS: Rat activated sarcoma; GDP: Guanosine diphosphate; GTP: Guanosine triphosphate; MAP: Mitogen activated kinase; CD: Cytoplasmic domain; PTC1: Patched; SMO: Smooth muscle, GL1.

mo (HR = 0.27).

PI3K-MTOR PATHWAY

PI3K is an enzyme that lies downstream from RAS and is responsible for the activation of AKT, which in turn leads to activation of mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR) (Figure 1). In normal tissue the PI3K-AKT pathway inhibits apoptosis and cell proliferation, thus deregulation of this pathway leads to unregulated cell[45]. Several PI3K inhibitors have been developed and are currently being investigated in a number of malignancies. Preliminary studies using transgenic mice have demonstrated reduced pancreatic tumour growth when PI3K is inhibited and therefore PI3K remains a valid therapeutic target that warrants further attention[46]. The dual PI3K/PDK inhibitor rigosertib, has demonstrated safety and some efficacy when combined with gemcitabine in pre-treated patients with advanced disease[47] and a phase III trial in combination with chemotherapy is underway[48].

mTOR has been identified as a critical effector in cell signalling and the drug everolimus, an oral inhibitor of mTOR, has had success against solid tumours such as metastatic renal cell cancers and breast cancers, but also in pancreatic neuroendocrine tumours[49-51]. Preclinical studies showed that inhibition of the mTOR pathway suppressed proliferation in pancreatic cancer cell lines[52]. However in a phase II study of 33 patients with gemcitabine refractory metastatic PDAC, there were no complete or partial responses and median PFS was 1.8 mo and OS was 4.5 mo[53]. A phase 1 trial combining gemcitabine with temsirolimus, another mTOR inhibitor, resulted in significant toxicity without any partial or complete responses. The commonly used anti-diabetic drug metformin is also known to inhibit mTOR and epidemiological studies have linked metformin use with reduced risk of developing malignancies[54,55]. Metformin is now the focus of a clinical trial and is being used in combination with chemotherapy[56]. Novel agents that comprise of both mTOR complex 1 and 2 inhibitors (mTORC1/2) have shown promising efficacy in cancer cells *in vitro.* One such agent, INK-128, led to pancreatic cancer cell apoptosis and necrosis *in vitro*. Furthermore INK-128 resulted in increased sensitivity of pancreatic cancer cells to gemcitabine suggesting potential benefit when used in combination with chemotherapy[57]. Other positive results have been reported with dual PI3K/mTOR kinase inhibitors *in vitro*[58]. Recently inhibitors against the p110δ isoform of PI3K demonstrated inactivation of regulatory T cells leading to CD8[+] cytotoxic cells and subsequent tumour regression in murine models[59]. Despite limited results in clinical trials thus far, recent pre-clinical efforts are more promising and the PI3K/AKT/mTOR signalling cascade remains an important pathway for future research.

EPIDERMAL GROWTH FACTOR RECEPTOR

The epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR) has also emerged as an attractive therapeutic target for many malignancies. EGFR is a member of the erbB/human EGFR family of tyrosine kinases and when bound to a ligand, a conformational change is induced leading to dimerisation with other receptors[60]. This results in the activation of several cascades including the Ras/MAP kinase pathway and the PI3K/Akt/mTOR pathway.

Several small molecules have been developed that block EGFR with varying degrees of success. The only targeted drug to be approved for the management of advanced PDAC so far is the tyrosine kinase inhibitor (TKI) erlotinib when administered in combination with gemcitabine. A phase III trial (PA.3) randomly assigned 569 patients with advanced disease to receive standard gemcitabine plus erlotinib (100 or 150 mg/d orally) or placebo[61]. The trial was double blinded with a primary end point of overall survival. The results showed a modest but significant survival benefit in the combination arm (6.24 m *vs* 5.91 m HR = 0.82, 95%CI: 0.69-0.99, $P \leqslant 0.038$), which led to FDA approval. Although the benefits appeared to be small, an unplanned retrospective subgroup analysis led the authors to hypothesise that patients who developed a skin rash on treatment experienced a higher disease control rate. Patients that were younger than 65 ($P = 0.1$) and those with a good PS ($P = 0.03$) were more likely to develop a rash. The median OS in patients with a grade 0, 1 or 2 rash were 5.3 m, 5.8 m and 10.5 m respectively with 1 year survival rates of 16%, 9% and 43% ($P < 0.001$). This was further assessed in a study correlating rash and survival outcomes, by analysing combined data from the PA.3 trial and a phase III trial using erlotinib in advanced non-small cell lung cancer (BR.21)[62,63]. They found that the presence of grade 2 or higher rash correlated with improvements in PFS and disease control. These findings were echoed in a retrospective study of 174 patients that found that high-severity rash was associated with longer OS[64].

However, molecular studies have not been able to identify EGFR and KRAS mutations as predictive biomarkers of survival benefit and no association between KRAS mutation or EGFR gene copy number with rash has been identified. Erlotinib in combination with capecitabine has also been shown to have some activity in gemcitabine refractory patients as evidenced by a phase II trial combining capecitabine and erlotinib in patients with advanced PDAC. The primary end point was response and this was found to be 10% of all 30 patients with a median OS of 6.5 mo[65]. A further phase III trial comparing combined capecitabine and erlotinib followed by gemcitabine on progression compared with gemcitabine and erlotinib followed by capecitabine is on-going[66].

An alternative anti EGFR TKI, gefitinib, demonstrated anti-proliferative effects in the pre clinical setting and this has translated to positive survival benefit in patients with non small cell EGFR mutated lung cancer[67]. Gefitinib combined with gemcitabine has been assessed in a phase II trial of 53 patients with locally advanced or metastatic PDAC. Patients were treated with gefitinib (250 mg) once daily and gemcitabine at the standard dose and schedule. 6 mo PFS was 30% with a median PFS of 4.1 mo. The 1-year survival rate was measured at 7.3 mo. Whilst these results were comparable to the PA 3 trial, there has yet to be a randomised trial of gefitinib to demonstrate significant benefit over single

agent gemcitabine[68].

The anti-EGFR antibody cetuximab has shown significant clinical activity in both colorectal cancers and head and neck tumours in patients with wild type KRAS[69,70]. Despite the majority of patients with pancreatic cancer having KRAS mutations, preclinical activity suggested that it might be a useful therapy in advanced PDAC due to EGFR overexpression[71-73]. A phase II trial evaluated gemcitabine and cetuximab in 41 treatment-naïve patients stratified according to EGFR expression using immunohistochemistry (4 patients were 1+, 20 patients were 2+ and 17 patient were 3+)[74]. Cetuximab was administered at a loading dose of 400 mg/m^2 followed by 250 mg/m^2 weekly and gemcitabine was administered 1000 mg/m^2 weekly for 7 wk and then 100 mg/m^2 every week for three weeks followed by a week's rest. Five patients achieved a partial response (12.5%) and 26 patients (63.4%) had disease stability. Median TTP was 3.8 mo and the median OS was 7.1 mo. Survival at 1 year was 31.7%. Toxicities were as previously reported with cetuximab chemotherapy combinations, most notably rash (87.7%), nausea (61.0%), weight loss (58.5%) and diarrhoea (53.7%). Despite the promising results from this phase II trial, this was not reproduced in 2 phase III trials. The S0205 trial conducted by the southwest oncology group (SWOG) reported that in 766 patients treated with either gemcitabine or gemcitabine plus cetuximab, there was no survival benefit seen in the combination arm[75]. A further trial combining gemcitabine and cisplatin with or without the addition of cetuximab, recruited 40 patients. Seven patients had a documented response in the antibody arm compared to 5 in the control arm but again no survival benefit was seen with cetuximab[76]. A further negative phase II trial with gemcitabine and oxaliplatin with the addition of cetuximab recruited 64 patients. Patients received a combination of gemcitabine at 100 mg/m^2 on day 1 with oxaliplatin at 100 mg/m^2 on day 2, every 2 wk. Cetuximab was administered at a loading dose of 400 mg/m^2 followed by weekly dose of 250 mg/m^2. Although well tolerated, the findings (response rate 33%, median time to PFS 3.9 mo and OS 7.1 mo) were not superior to previously seen results using the chemotherapy combination alone[77]. The results of a phase II trial presented at ASCO 2013, portrayed a significant survival benefit at 1 year with gemcitabine combined with the anti-EGFR antibody nimotuzumab compared to gemcitabine alone (34.4% *vs* 19.5%, $P = 0.034$, HR = 0.69) and the combination was well tolerated[78]. A phase II study of nimotuzumab in pre-treated patients with advanced PDAC was also encouraging and a randomised placebo controlled phase IIb/IIIa study comparing the combination of gemcitabine and nimotuzumab compared to gemcitabine and placebo has recently closed to recruitment and the results are awaited[78].

Although EGFR remains a critical receptor in pancreatic cell proliferation and metastatic spread, with

the exception of the modest benefits seen in the PA3 trial, there have not been any positive results with EGFR targeted therapy in large randomised trials. Whilst monoclonal antibodies that target EGFR have demonstrated efficacy in other solid tumours, its distribution within pancreatic cancer cells is not well known and may be an explanation for poor outcomes. It is also possible that the optimum doses and methods of drug delivery have not yet been elucidated. With regards to erlotinib and gefitinib, the excellent results that have been demonstrated in several large clinical trials in lung cancer have not been reproduced in PDAC and are likely due to the lack of activating mutations seen in these tumours. There is not enough evidence to suggest that even in those with an activating mutation, this can predict response to anti-EGFR therapy. Thus disappointingly expression or mutation of EGFR has not emerged so far as a predictive or prognostic biomarker[79-81]. Unlike lung and colon tumours KRAS mutation is not mutually exclusive with EGFR activation. Initiation of KRAS mutated PDAC appears to be dependent on EGF activation and a recent study reported that EGF inhibition has limited therapeutic benefit in tumours with p53 inactivation[82]. The study hypothesised that p53 loss might "reactivate" the PI3K/AKT and the STAT pathway independent from EGF activation suggesting EGFR inhibitors may only be of clinical benefit in patients with p53 wild type tumours.

ANGIOGENIC THERAPY

Angiogenesis describes the process by which a tumour initiates the formation of new vessels through remodelling of existing vasculature[83]. Once the "angiogenic switch" is initiated, the complex process of new vessel formation begins and subsequently plays a key role in tumour growth[84]. VEGF is vital to angiogenesis and is therefore a potential target in many tumour types with variable outcomes in clinical trials[85]. Anti-VEGF antibodies have been used without much success in pancreatic cancer. Bevacizumab, which offers improved outcomes in colorectal and ovarian cancer, is a monoclonal antibody that decreases the formation of new blood vessels *in vivo* and improves drug delivery to the cancer cell. A phase Ⅱ trial of bevacizumab and gemcitabine in patients with advanced PDAC, demonstrated that in 52 patients, 19% had a partial response and 48% had stable disease[86]. The median OS was 8.8 mo with a 6-mo survival of 77%. This led to 2 phase Ⅲ trials, both of which were disappointingly negative. The CALGB 80303 study treated patients with gemcitabine with or without bevacizumab[87,88]. 602 patients were enrolled and both overall response rate and 1 year survival outcomes failed to reach statistical benefit in the combination arm. The AViTA trial, comparing the combination of gemcitabine and erlotinib with the addition of bevacizumab was also negative[88]. Despite the changes in the vasculature seen in patients treated with these drugs, no benefit has been shown when targeting VEGF and the exact mechanism of failure remains unknown but is likely to be in part due to the hypovascularity of the surrounding stroma[11].

IMMUNOTHERAPY

Interest in immunotherapy has had a recent resurgence following the results of several positive clinical trials in solid malignancies including melanoma and prostate cancer[89,90]. Success has been more modest in pancreatic cancer although several newer agents remain under investigation. Based on the understanding that the innate immune system can distinguish between cancer cells and "normal self", exploitation of the immune system has been a topic of research for several decades. Not only do immune-deficient mice develop malignancies, evidence has also shown that patients with cancer develop B and T cells that can recognise antigens released by pancreatic tumour cells. The immune response created by the patient is invariably unsuccessful at eliminating malignancy but this reaction can be enhanced for therapeutic gain. Theoretically, immunotherapy should be active in pancreatic cancer, as the dense stroma is enriched with immune cells such as T cell and macrophages.

A recent positive trial presented at the Gastrointestinal Cancers Symposium in 2014 demonstrated significant survival benefit when combining two specific anti-cancer vaccines compared with monotherapy. GVAX is a vaccine made from 2 pancreatic cancer cell lines that have been irradiated to secrete granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor causing stimulation of the immune system[91]. Administered intra-dermally after low dose cyclophosphamide, it inhibits regulatory T cells. CRS-207 is made of live-attenuated Listeria monocytogenes engineered to stimulate an immune response against a protein called mesothelin that is expressed at high levels in pancreatic cancer cell lines. This phase Ⅱ trial compared the combination of CRS-207 and GVAX with GVAX alone with positive outcomes. Ninety patients with pre-treated PDAC were randomly assigned at a ratio of 2:1 to be treated with 2 dose of CY/GVAX followed by 4 doses of CRS-207 or 6 doses of CY/GVAX every three weeks. The primary end point was OS with safety, clinical response and immune response secondary. At the interim analysis median OS was 6.1 m with the combination treatment compared with 3.9 m for GVAX therapy. (HR = 0.59, two sided Log Rank *P* = 0.03). One-year survival was doubled with combination treatment (24% *vs* 12%). Following the encouraging results from the interim analysis, crossover was allowed. Toxicities included fevers, rigors and lymphopaenia, but were minimal and were not cumulative. Several other studies are due to open comparing combination CY/GVAX and CRS-207 with chemotherapy in the second line setting or in combination with immune checkpoint inhibitors of programmed death 1 (PD1) and its ligand PD-L1. PD1, which is a T-cell co-inhibitory receptor, and PD-L1 have shown considerable responses in certain

solid tumours including melanoma and lung cancers. An international phase 1 study using the intravenous anti-PD-L1 antibody treated 75 patients, 14 of whom had pancreatic cancer. Objective responses were seen in patients with non-small lung cancer, melanoma, renal and ovarian cancer but not in those with PDAC[92]. However there remains potential benefit with PD-1 in combination with other compounds. Recently the effects of PD-1 immunosuppression were enhanced when used in combination with chimeric antigen reception (CAR) T-cell therapy in Her2 transgenic mice. Further research with this combination is on going. A phase 1 study combining the agonist CD40 monoclonal antibody (CP-870,893) in combination with gemcitabine demonstrated tolerability and resulted in 4 out of 22 patients with advanced PDAC achieving a partial response suggesting that further clinical trials are warranted.

The results from a phase III trial assessing the GV1001 vaccine, a promiscuous class II epitope vaccine, recently reported no benefit when used in combination with gemcitabine and capecitabine compared to chemotherapy alone and was therefore terminated early[93]. Several other immunological treatments remain under review. The anti-CTLA4 antibody that has been approved for use in melanoma, also demonstrated no initial responders to therapy. However in this phase II trial of 27 patients, 1 patient had a significant delayed response[94]. Single agent ipilimumab has not been taken forward to a phase III trial but its safety when used in combination with gemcitabine is currently being assessed in an early phase trial[95]. As it has been suggested that immunotherapy is most successful in the absence of large disease burden, several clinical trials are assessing immunotherapy in the post-operative setting or as maintenance therapy following response to chemotherapy.

HEDGEHOG INHIBITORS

The hedgehog (Hh) pathway has been identified as another important signalling cascade in multiple cancers suggesting its potential as a therapeutic target. Two transmembrane proteins have been identified that activate the Hh signalling pathway, the tumour suppressor patched protein (PTCI) and smoothened (SMO) an oncogenic protein[96-98]. Pre-clinical studies have established that human pancreatic stellate cells (as seen in the stroma) express high levels of smoothened protein and low levels of Hh ligands unlike the pancreatic cancer cells, which demonstrate the converse expression pattern[11]. The majority of Hh inhibitors that have been developed target SMO. In transgenic Kras mutated mice the administration of a Hh inhibitor IPI-926 depleted the surrounding stroma enhancing the drug delivery of gemcitabine[11]. A phase Ib trial of IPI-926 in combination with gemcitabine demonstrated acceptable tolerability in 16 patients with untreated metastatic PDAC. Common AEs in-

cluded fatigue, thrombocytopenia, anaemia, nausea, diarrhoea, vomiting and dose reductions of IPI-926 were required in 3 patients. DR of gemcitabine occurred in 11 patients. Five sixteenths (31%) had a radiological response while median PFS was more than 7 mo with 74% patients alive after 6 mo of entry in to the study. Whilst these results were promising, a phase II trial was terminated early at the interim analysis as patients in the combination arm experienced worse outcomes than those on single agent gemcitabine[99]. These disappointing results may be partly explained by the results from recent pre-clinical studies suggesting the importance of the stroma (as discussed earlier) where depletion led to increased tumour growth[16,17].

However further research with Hh inhibitors are on-going. A single-arm study with the Hh inhibitor vismodegib combined with the chemotherapy regimen gemcitabine and nab-paclitaxel, presented an interim analysis at GI ASCO 2014[16]. Eighty percent of the 59 patients treated had stable disease or better. Median PFS was 5.5 mo and OS was 10 mo. Patient recruitment is on-going and based on the preliminary results, the final survival data is eagerly awaited.

CONCLUSION

The current prognosis for advanced PDAC remains poor, highlighting the urgent need for more effective systemic therapies. In order to develop targeted treatments and improve outcomes, research efforts needs to focus on three key areas; a greater understanding of the unique biology of PDAC and the key signalling pathways, comprehension of the unique desmoplastic reaction and micro-tumour environment, and the development of predictive and prognostic biomarkers. It may be that the future of pancreatic cancer treatment will see combining standard chemotherapy with targeted treatments to achieve better outcomes. It is likely that PDAC treatment will be dictated by the biology of the individual tumour rather than the "one shoe fits all" approach that is used today. The last few years have seen significant results towards this in the pre-clinical setting but it remains to be seen whether they can be translated into meaningful clinical outcomes.

REFERENCES

1   **WHO.int.** Cancer. International Childhood Cancer Day 2015. Available from: URL: http://www.who.int/cancer/en/
2   **Ryan DP**, Hong TS, Bardeesy N. Pancreatic adenocarcinoma. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **371**: 1039-1049 [PMID: 25207767 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMra1404198]
3   **Siegel R**, Naishadham D, Jemal A. Cancer statistics, 2013. *CA Cancer J Clin* 2013; **63**: 11-30 [PMID: 23335087 DOI: 10.3322/caac.21166]
4   **Hidalgo M**. New insights into pancreatic cancer biology. *Ann Oncol* 2012; **23** Suppl 10: x135-x138 [PMID: 22987949 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mds313]
5   **Feldmann G**, Beaty R, Hruban RH, Maitra A. Molecular genetics of pancreatic intraepithelial neoplasia. *J Hepatobiliary Pancreat Surg* 2007; **14**: 224-232 [PMID: 17520196 DOI: 10.1007/

s00534-006-1166-5]

6   **Hezel AF**, Kimmelman AC, Stanger BZ, Bardeesy N, Depinho RA. Genetics and biology of pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma. *Genes Dev* 2006; **20**: 1218-1249 [PMID: 16702400 DOI: 10.1101/gad.1415606]

7   **Jones S**, Zhang X, Parsons DW, Lin JC, Leary RJ, Angenendt P, Mankoo P, Carter H, Kamiyama H, Jimeno A, Hong SM, Fu B, Lin MT, Calhoun ES, Kamiyama M, Walter K, Nikolskaya T, Nikolsky Y, Hartigan J, Smith DR, Hidalgo M, Leach SD, Klein AP, Jaffee EM, Goggins M, Maitra A, Iacobuzio-Donahue C, Eshleman JR, Kern SE, Hruban RH, Karchin R, Papadopoulos N, Parmigiani G, Vogelstein B, Velculescu VE, Kinzler KW. Core signaling pathways in human pancreatic cancers revealed by global genomic analyses. *Science* 2008; **321**: 1801-1806 [PMID: 18772397 DOI: 10.1126/science.1164368]

8   **Hermann PC**, Huber SL, Herrler T, Aicher A, Ellwart JW, Guba M, Bruns CJ, Heeschen C. Distinct populations of cancer stem cells determine tumor growth and metastatic activity in human pancreatic cancer. *Cell Stem Cell* 2007; **1**: 313-323 [PMID: 18371365 DOI: 10.1016/j.stem.2007.06.002]

9   **Mahadevan D**, Von Hoff DD. Tumor-stroma interactions in pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma. *Mol Cancer Ther* 2007; **6**: 1186-1197 [PMID: 17406031 DOI: 10.1158/1535-7163.MCT-06-0686]

10   **Liss AS**, Thayer SP. Therapeutic targeting of pancreatic stroma. Available from: URL: http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK98931/

11   **Olive KP**, Jacobetz MA, Davidson CJ, Gopinathan A, McIntyre D, Honess D, Madhu B, Goldgraben MA, Caldwell ME, Allard D, Frese KK, Denicola G, Feig C, Combs C, Winter SP, Ireland-Zecchini H, Reichelt S, Howat WJ, Chang A, Dhara M, Wang L, Rückert F, Grützmann R, Pilarsky C, Izeradjene K, Hingorani SR, Huang P, Davies SE, Plunkett W, Egorin M, Hruban RH, Whitebread N, McGovern K, Adams J, Iacobuzio-Donahue C, Griffiths J, Tuveson DA. Inhibition of Hedgehog signaling enhances delivery of chemotherapy in a mouse model of pancreatic cancer. *Science* 2009; **324**: 1457-1461 [PMID: 19460966 DOI: 10.1126/science.1171362]

12   **Michl P**, Gress TM. Improving drug delivery to pancreatic cancer: breaching the stromal fortress by targeting hyaluronic acid. *Gut* 2012; **61**: 1377-1379 [PMID: 22661496 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2012-302604]

13   **Neesse A**, Krug S, Gress TM, Tuveson DA, Michl P. Emerging concepts in pancreatic cancer medicine: targeting the tumor stroma. *Onco Targets Ther* 2013; **7**: 33-43 [PMID: 24379681 DOI: 10.2147/OTT.S38111]

14   **Neesse A**, Frese KK, Chan DS, Bapiro TE, Howat WJ, Richards FM, Ellenrieder V, Jodrell DI, Tuveson DA. SPARC independent drug delivery and antitumour effects of nab-paclitaxel in genetically engineered mice. *Gut* 2014; **63**: 974-983 [PMID: 24067278 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2013-305559]

15   **Minchinton AI**, Tannock IF. Drug penetration in solid tumours. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2006; **6**: 583-592 [PMID: 16862189 DOI: 10.1038/nrc1893]

16   **Jesus-Acosta D**. A phase II study of vimodegib, a hedgehog (Hh) pathway inhibitor, combined with gemciatbine and nab-paclitaxel (nab-P) in patients (pts) with untreated metastatic pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma (PDA). *J Clinic Oncol* 2014; **32** suppl 3: abstr 257

17   **Rhim AD**, Oberstein PE, Thomas DH, Mirek ET, Palermo CF, Sastra SA, Dekleva EN, Saunders T, Becerra CP, Tattersall IW, Westphalen CB, Kitajewski J, Fernandez-Barrena MG, Fernandez-Zapico ME, Iacobuzio-Donahue C, Olive KP, Stanger BZ. Stromal elements act to restrain, rather than support, pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma. *Cancer Cell* 2014; **25**: 735-747 [PMID: 24856585 DOI: 10.1016/j.ccr.2014.04.021]

18   **Özdemir BC**, Pentcheva-Hoang T, Carstens JL, Zheng X, Wu CC, Simpson TR, Laklai H, Sugimoto H, Kahlert C, Novitskiy SV, De Jesus-Acosta A, Sharma P, Heidari P, Mahmood U, Chin L, Moses HL, Weaver VM, Maitra A, Allison JP, LeBleu VS, Kalluri R. Depletion of carcinoma-associated fibroblasts and fibrosis induces immunosuppression and accelerates pancreas cancer with reduced survival. *Cancer Cell* 2014; **25**: 719-734 [PMID: 24856586 DOI: 10.1016/j.ccr.2014.04.005]

19   **Burris HA**, Moore MJ, Andersen J, Green MR, Rothenberg ML, Modiano MR, Cripps MC, Portenoy RK, Storniolo AM, Tarassoff P, Nelson R, Dorr FA, Stephens CD, Von Hoff DD. Improvements in survival and clinical benefit with gemcitabine as first-line therapy for patients with advanced pancreas cancer: a randomized trial. *J Clin Oncol* 1997; **15**: 2403-2413 [PMID: 9196156]

20   **Conroy T**, Desseigne F, Ychou M, Bouché O, Guimbaud R, Bécouarn Y, Adenis A, Raoul JL, Gourgou-Bourgade S, de la Fouchardière C, Bennouna J, Bachet JB, Khemissa-Akouz F, Péré-Vergé D, Delbaldo C, Assenat E, Chauffert B, Michel P, Montoto-Grillot C, Ducreux M. FOLFIRINOX versus gemcitabine for metastatic pancreatic cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **364**: 1817-1825 [PMID: 21561347 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1011923]

21   **Papadatos-Pastos D**, Thillai K, Rabbie R, Ross P, Sarker D. FOLFIRINOX - a new paradigm in the treatment of pancreatic cancer. *Expert Rev Anticancer Ther* 2014; **14**: 1115-1125 [PMID: 25204327 DOI: 10.1586/14737140.2014.957188]

22   **Von Hoff DD**, Goldstein D, Renschler MF. Albumin-bound paclitaxel plus gemcitabine in pancreatic cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2014; **370**: 479-480 [PMID: 24476438 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMc1314761]

23   **Tabernero J**, Chiorean EG, Infante JR, Hingorani SR, Ganju V, Weekes C, Scheithauer W, Ramanathan RK, Goldstein D, Penenberg DN, Romano A, Ferrara S, Von Hoff DD. Prognostic factors of survival in a randomized phase III trial (MPACT) of weekly nab-paclitaxel plus gemcitabine versus gemcitabine alone in patients with metastatic pancreatic cancer. *Oncologist* 2015; **20**: 143-150 [PMID: 25582141 DOI: 10.1634/theoncologist.2014-0394]

24   **Arnold SA**, Rivera LB, Miller AF, Carbon JG, Dineen SP, Xie Y, Castrillon DH, Sage EH, Puolakkainen P, Bradshaw AD, Brekken RA. Lack of host SPARC enhances vascular function and tumor spread in an orthotopic murine model of pancreatic carcinoma. *Dis Model Mech* 2010; **3**: 57-72 [PMID: 20007485 DOI: 10.1242/dmm.003228]

25   **Sinn M**, Sinn BV, Striefler JK, Stieler J, Pelzer U, Prinzler J, Neuhaus P, Dietel M, Dörken B, Oettle H, Riess H, Denkert C. SPARC in pancreatic cancer; Results from the CONKO-001 study. ASCO annual meeting 4016. *J Clin Oncol* 2013; **31** suppl: abstr 4016

26   **Von Hoff DD**, Ramanathan RK, Borad MJ, Laheru DA, Smith LS, Wood TE, Korn RL, Desai N, Trieu V, Iglesias JL, Zhang H, Soon-Shiong P, Shi T, Rajeshkumar NV, Maitra A, Hidalgo M. Gemcitabine plus nab-paclitaxel is an active regimen in patients with advanced pancreatic cancer: a phase I/II trial. *J Clin Oncol* 2011; **29**: 4548-4554 [PMID: 21969517 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2011.36.5742]

27   **Kanda M**, Matthaei H, Wu J, Hong SM, Yu J, Borges M, Hruban RH, Maitra A, Kinzler K, Vogelstein B, Goggins M. Presence of somatic mutations in most early-stage pancreatic intraepithelial neoplasia. *Gastroenterology* 2012; **142**: 730-733.e9 [PMID: 22226782 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2011.12.042]

28   **Hruban RH**, van Mansfeld AD, Offerhaus GJ, van Weering DH, Allison DC, Goodman SN, Kensler TW, Bose KK, Cameron JL, Bos JL. K-ras oncogene activation in adenocarcinoma of the human pancreas. A study of 82 carcinomas using a combination of mutant-enriched polymerase chain reaction analysis and allele-specific oligonucleotide hybridization. *Am J Pathol* 1993; **143**: 545-554 [PMID: 8342602]

29   **Macdonald JS**, McCoy S, Whitehead RP, Iqbal S, Wade JL, Giguere JK, Abbruzzese JL. A phase II study of farnesyl transferase inhibitor R115777 in pancreatic cancer: a Southwest oncology group (SWOG 9924) study. *Invest New Drugs* 2005; **23**: 485-487 [PMID: 16133800]

30   **Cohen SJ**, Ho L, Ranganathan S, Abbruzzese JL, Alpaugh RK, Beard M, Lewis NL, McLaughlin S, Rogatko A, Perez-Ruixo JJ, Thistle AM, Verhaeghe T, Wang H, Weiner LM, Wright JJ, Hudes GR, Meropol NJ. Phase II and pharmacodynamic study of the farnesyltransferase inhibitor R115777 as initial therapy in patients

with metastatic pancreatic adenocarcinoma. *J Clin Oncol* 2003; **21**: 1301-1306 [PMID: 12663718 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2003.08.040]

31 **Van Cutsem E**, van de Velde H, Karasek P, Oettle H, Vervenne WL, Szawlowski A, Schoffski P, Post S, Verslype C, Neumann H, Safran H, Humblet Y, Perez Ruixo J, Ma Y, Von Hoff D. Phase III trial of gemcitabine plus tipifarnib compared with gemcitabine plus placebo in advanced pancreatic cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2004; **22**: 1430-1438 [PMID: 15084616]

32 **Zimmermann G**, Papke B, Ismail S, Vartak N, Chandra A, Hoffmann M, Hahn SA, Triola G, Wittinghofer A, Bastiaens PI, Waldmann H. Small molecule inhibition of the KRAS-PDEδ interaction impairs oncogenic KRAS signalling. *Nature* 2013; **497**: 638-642 [PMID: 23698361]

33 **Maurer T**, Garrenton LS, Oh A, Pitts K, Anderson DJ, Skelton NJ, Fauber BP, Pan B, Malek S, Stokoe D, Ludlam MJ, Bowman KK, Wu J, Giannetti AM, Starovasnik MA, Mellman I, Jackson PK, Rudolph J, Wang W, Fang G. Small-molecule ligands bind to a distinct pocket in Ras and inhibit SOS-mediated nucleotide exchange activity. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2012; **109**: 5299-5304 [PMID: 22431598]

34 **Ostrem JM**, Peters U, Sos ML, Wells JA, Shokat KM. K-Ras(G12C) inhibitors allosterically control GTP affinity and effector interactions. *Nature* 2013; **503**: 548-551 [PMID: 24256730]

35 **Corcoran RB**, Cheng KA, Hata AN, Faber AC, Ebi H, Coffee EM, Greninger P, Brown RD, Godfrey JT, Cohoon TJ, Song Y, Lifshits E, Hung KE, Shioda T, Dias-Santagata D, Singh A, Settleman J, Benes CH, Mino-Kenudson M, Wong KK, Engelman JA. Synthetic lethal interaction of combined BCL-XL and MEK inhibition promotes tumor regressions in KRAS mutant cancer models. *Cancer Cell* 2013; **23**: 121-128 [PMID: 23245996]

36 **Zorde Khvalevsky E**, Gabai R, Rachmut IH, Horwitz E, Brunschwig Z, Orbach A, Shemi A, Golan T, Domb AJ, Yavin E, Giladi H, Rivkin L, Simerzin A, Eliakim R, Khalaileh A, Hubert A, Lahav M, Kopelman Y, Goldin E, Dancour A, Hants Y, Arbel-Alon S, Abramovitch R, Shemi A, Galun E. Mutant KRAS is a druggable target for pancreatic cancer. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2013; **110**: 20723-20728 [PMID: 24297898]

37 **Silenseed Ltd**. Phase 1 - Escalating dose study of siG12D LODER (Local Drug EluteR) in patients with advanced adenocarcinoma of the pancreas and a single dose study of siG12D LODER (Local drug EluteR) in patients with operable adenocarcinoma of the pancreas. In: ClinicalTrials.gov [Internet]. Bethesda (MD): National Library of Medicine (US). Available from: URL: https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01188785 NLM Identifier: NCT01188785

38 **Silenseed Ltd**. A phase II study of siG12D LODER in combination with chemotherapy in paitents with unresectable locally advanced pancreatic cancer. In: ClinicalTrials.gov [Internet]. Bethesda (MD): National Library of Medicine (US). Available from: URL: https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01676259 NLM Identifier: NCT01676259

39 **Chapman PB**, Hauschild A, Robert C, Haanen JB, Ascierto P, Larkin J, Dummer R, Garbe C, Testori A, Maio M, Hogg D, Lorigan P, Lebbe C, Jouary T, Schadendorf D, Ribas A, O'Day SJ, Sosman JA, Kirkwood JM, Eggermont AM, Dreno B, Nolop K, Li J, Nelson B, Hou J, Lee RJ, Flaherty KT, McArthur GA. Improved survival with vemurafenib in melanoma with BRAF V600E mutation. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **364**: 2507-2516 [PMID: 21639808 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1103782]

40 **Hatzivassiliou G**, Song K, Yen I, Brandhuber BJ, Anderson DJ, Alvarado R, Ludlam MJ, Stokoe D, Gloor SL, Vigers G, Morales T, Aliagas I, Liu B, Sideris S, Hoeflich KP, Jaiswal BS, Seshagiri S, Koeppen H, Belvin M, Friedman LS, Malek S. RAF inhibitors prime wild-type RAF to activate the MAPK pathway and enhance growth. *Nature* 2010; **464**: 431-435 [PMID: 20130576 DOI: 10.1038/nature08833]

41 **GlaxoSmithKline**. Study of GSK1120212 plus gemcitabine vs placebo plus gemcitabine in metastatic pancreatic cancer. In: ClinicalTrials.gov [Internet]. Bethesda (MD): National Library of Medicine (US). Available from: URL: https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01231581 NLM Identifier: NCT01231581

42 **Merck KGaA**. Trial of gemcitabine with or without MSC1936369B in pancreatic cancer. In: ClinicalTrials.gov [Internet]. Bethesda (MD): National Library of Medicine (US). Available from: URL: https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01016483 NLM Identifier: NCT01016483

43 **Bayer**. Combination with gemcitabine in advanced pancreatic cancer (BAGPAC). In: ClinicalTrials.gov [Internet]. Bethesda (MD): National Library of Medicine (US). Available from: URL: https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01251640 NLM Identifier: NCT01251640

44 **Riess H**, Van Laethem JL, Martens UM, Heinemann V, Michl P, Peeters M, Van Brummelen D, Weekes CD, Dueland S, Schmiegel WH, Giurescu M, Garosi VL, Schulz A, Seidel H, Childs BH, Teufel M. Phase II study of the MEK inhibitor refametinib (BAY 86-9766) in combination with gemcitabine in patietns with unresectable, locally advacned, or metastatic pancreatic cancer. 2014 ASCO annual meeting 4025. *J Clin Oncol* 2014; **32**: 5s (suppl; abstr 4129)

45 **Falasca M**, Selvaggi F, Buus R, Sulpizio S, Edling CE. Targeting phosphoinositide 3-kinase pathways in pancreatic cancer--from molecular signalling to clinical trials. *Anticancer Agents Med Chem* 2011; **11**: 455-463 [PMID: 21521159 DOI: 10.2174/187152011795677382]

46 **Eser S**, Reiff N, Messer M, Seidler B, Gottschalk K, Dobler M, Hieber M, Arbeiter A, Klein S, Kong B, Michalski CW, Schlitter AM, Esposito I, Kind AJ, Rad L, Schnieke AE, Baccarini M, Alessi DR, Rad R, Schmid RM, Schneider G, Saur D. Selective requirement of PI3K/PDK1 signaling for Kras oncogene-driven pancreatic cell plasticity and cancer. *Cancer Cell* 2013; **23**: 406-420 [PMID: 23453624 DOI: 10.1016/j.ccr.2013.01.023]

47 **Ma WW**, Messersmith WA, Dy GK, Weekes CD, Whitworth A, Ren C, Maniar M, Wilhelm F, Eckhardt SG, Adjei AA, Jimeno A. Phase I study of Rigosertib, an inhibitor of the phosphatidylinositol 3-kinase and Polo-like kinase 1 pathways, combined with gemcitabine in patients with solid tumors and pancreatic cancer. *Clin Cancer Res* 2012; **18**: 2048-2055 [PMID: 22338014 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-11-2813]

48 **Onconova Therapeutics, Inc**. Gemcitabine and ON 01910.Na in previously untreated metasatic pancreatic cancer (ONTRAC). In: ClinicalTrials.gov [Internet]. Bethesda (MD): National Library of Medicine (US). Available from: URL: https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01360853 NLM Identifier: NCT01360853

49 **Motzer RJ**, Escudier B, Oudard S, Hutson TE, Porta C, Bracarda S, Grünwald V, Thompson JA, Figlin RA, Hollaender N, Urbanowitz G, Berg WJ, Kay A, Lebwohl D, Ravaud A. Efficacy of everolimus in advanced renal cell carcinoma: a double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled phase III trial. *Lancet* 2008; **372**: 449-456 [PMID: 18653228 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(08)61039-9]

50 **André F**, O'Regan R, Ozguroglu M, Toi M, Xu B, Jerusalem G, Masuda N, Wilks S, Arena F, Isaacs C, Yap YS, Papai Z, Lang I, Armstrong A, Lerzo G, White M, Shen K, Litton J, Chen D, Zhang Y, Ali S, Taran T, Gianni L. Everolimus for women with trastuzumab-resistant, HER2-positive, advanced breast cancer (BOLERO-3): a randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled phase 3 trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2014; **15**: 580-591 [PMID: 24742739 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(14)70138-X]

51 **Yao JC**, Shah MH, Ito T, Bohas CL, Wolin EM, Van Cutsem E, Hobday TJ, Okusaka T, Capdevila J, de Vries EG, Tomassetti P, Pavel ME, Hoosen S, Haas T, Lincy J, Lebwohl D, Öberg K. Everolimus for advanced pancreatic neuroendocrine tumors. *N Engl J Med* 2011; **364**: 514-523 [PMID: 21306238 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1009290]

52 **Matsubara S**, Ding Q, Miyazaki Y, Kuwahata T, Tsukasa K, Takao S. mTOR plays critical roles in pancreatic cancer stem cells through specific and stemness-related functions. *Sci Rep* 2013; **3**: 3230 [PMID: 24231729 DOI: 10.1038/srep03230]

53 **Wolpin BM**, Hezel AF, Abrams T, Blaszkowsky LS, Meyerhardt JA, Chan JA, Enzinger PC, Allen B, Clark JW, Ryan DP, Fuchs CS. Oral mTOR inhibitor everolimus in patients with gemcitabine-refractory metastatic pancreatic cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2009; **27**:

193-198 [PMID: 19047305 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2008.18.9514]

54   **Dowling RJ**, Zakikhani M, Fantus IG, Pollak M, Sonenberg N. Metformin inhibits mammalian target of rapamycin-dependent translation initiation in breast cancer cells. *Cancer Res* 2007; **67**: 10804-10812 [PMID: 18006825]

55   **Evans JM**, Donnelly LA, Emslie-Smith AM, Alessi DR, Morris AD. Metformin and reduced risk of cancer in diabetic patients. *BMJ* 2005; **330**: 1304-1305 [PMID: 15849206 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.38415.708634.F7]

56   Academisch Medisch Centrum - Universiteit van Amsterdam (AMC-UvA). Metformin combined with chemotherapy for pancreatic cancer(GEM). In: ClinicalTrials.gov [Internet]. Bethesda (MD): National Library of Medicine (US). Available from: URL: https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01210911 NLM Identifier: NCT01210911

57   **Lou HZ**, Weng XC, Pan HM, Pan Q, Sun P, Liu LL, Chen B. The novel mTORC1/2 dual inhibitor INK-128 suppresses survival and proliferation of primary and transformed human pancreatic cancer cells. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2014; **450**: 973-978 [PMID: 24971544 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2014.06.081]

58   **Tang JY**, Dai T, Zhang H, Xiong WJ, Xu MZ, Wang XJ, Tang QH, Chen B, Xu M. GDC-0980-induced apoptosis is enhanced by autophagy inhibition in human pancreatic cancer cells. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2014; **453**: 533-538 [PMID: 25285629 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2014.09.115]

59   **Ali K**, Soond DR, Piñeiro R, Hagemann T, Pearce W, Lim EL, Bouabe H, Scudamore CL, Hancox T, Maecker H, Friedman L, Turner M, Okkenhaug K, Vanhaesebroeck B. Inactivation of PI(3)K p110δ breaks regulatory T-cell-mediated immune tolerance to cancer. *Nature* 2014; **510**: 407-411 [PMID: 24919154 DOI: 10.1038/nature13444]

60   **Zhang H**, Berezov A, Wang Q, Zhang G, Drebin J, Murali R, Greene MI. ErbB receptors: from oncogenes to targeted cancer therapies. *J Clin Invest* 2007; **117**: 2051-2058 [PMID: 17671639 DOI: 10.1172/JCI32278]

61   **Moore MJ**, Goldstein D, Hamm J, Figer A, Hecht JR, Gallinger S, Au HJ, Murawa P, Walde D, Wolff RA, Campos D, Lim R, Ding K, Clark G, Voskoglou-Nomikos T, Ptasynski M, Parulekar W. Erlotinib plus gemcitabine compared with gemcitabine alone in patients with advanced pancreatic cancer: a phase III trial of the National Cancer Institute of Canada Clinical Trials Group. *J Clin Oncol* 2007; **25**: 1960-1966 [PMID: 17452677 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2006.07.9525]

62   **Wacker B**, Nagrani T, Weinberg J, Witt K, Clark G, Cagnoni PJ. Correlation between development of rash and efficacy in patients treated with the epidermal growth factor receptor tyrosine kinase inhibitor erlotinib in two large phase III studies. *Clin Cancer Res* 2007; **13**: 3913-3921 [PMID: 17606725 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-06-2610]

63   **Shepherd FA**, Rodrigues Pereira J, Ciuleanu T, Tan EH, Hirsh V, Thongprasert S, Campos D, Maoleekoonpiroj S, Smylie M, Martins R, van Kooten M, Dediu M, Findlay B, Tu D, Johnston D, Bezjak A, Clark G, Santabárbara P, Seymour L. Erlotinib in previously treated non-small-cell lung cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2005; **353**: 123-132 [PMID: 16014882 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa050753]

64   **Stepanski EJ**, Reyes C, Walker MS, Satram-Hoang S, Leon L, Wojtowicz-Praga S, Miller PJ, Houts AC, Schwartzberg LS. The association of rash severity with overall survival: findings from patients receiving erlotinib for pancreatic cancer in the community setting. *Pancreas* 2013; **42**: 32-36 [PMID: 22699203 DOI: 10.1097/MPA.0b013e318254f19a]

65   **Kulke MH**, Blaszkowsky LS, Ryan DP, Clark JW, Meyerhardt JA, Zhu AX, Enzinger PC, Kwak EL, Muzikansky A, Lawrence C, Fuchs CS. Capecitabine plus erlotinib in gemcitabine-refractory advanced pancreatic cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2007; **25**: 4787-4792 [PMID: 17947726]

66   **Heinemann V**. Capecitabine/erlotinib followed of gemcitabine versus gemcitabine/erlotinib followed of capecitabine. In: ClinicalTrials.gov [Internet]. Bethesda (MD): National Library of Medicine (US). Available from: URL: https://www.clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT00440167 NLM Identifier: NCT00440167

67   **Zhou X**, Zheng M, Chen F, Zhu Y, Yong W, Lin H, Sun Y, Han X. Gefitinib inhibits the proliferation of pancreatic cancer cells via cell cycle arrest. *Anat Rec* (Hoboken) 2009; **292**: 1122-1127 [PMID: 19645012 DOI: 10.1002/ar.20938]

68   **Fountzilas G**, Bobos M, Kalogera-Fountzila A, Xiros N, Murray S, Linardou H, Karayannopoulou G, Koutras AK, Bafaloukos D, Samantas E, Christodoulou C, Economopoulos T, Kalogeras KT, Kosmidis P. Gemcitabine combined with gefitinib in patients with inoperable or metastatic pancreatic cancer: a phase II Study of the Hellenic Cooperative Oncology Group with biomarker evaluation. *Cancer Invest* 2008; **26**: 784-793 [PMID: 18798073 DOI: 10.1080/07357900801918611]

69   **Bonner JA**, Harari PM, Giralt J, Cohen RB, Jones CU, Sur RK, Raben D, Baselga J, Spencer SA, Zhu J, Youssoufian H, Rowinsky EK, Ang KK. Radiotherapy plus cetuximab for locoregionally advanced head and neck cancer: 5-year survival data from a phase 3 randomised trial, and relation between cetuximab-induced rash and survival. *Lancet Oncol* 2010; **11**: 21-28 [PMID: 19897418 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(09)70311-0]

70   **Van Cutsem E**, Köhne CH, Láng I, Folprecht G, Nowacki MP, Cascinu S, Shchepotin I, Maurel J, Cunningham D, Tejpar S, Schlichting M, Zubel A, Celik I, Rougier P, Ciardiello F. Cetuximab plus irinotecan, fluorouracil, and leucovorin as first-line treatment for metastatic colorectal cancer: updated analysis of overall survival according to tumor KRAS and BRAF mutation status. *J Clin Oncol* 2011; **29**: 2011-2019 [PMID: 21502544 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2010.33.5091]

71   **Bruns CJ**, Harbison MT, Davis DW, Portera CA, Tsan R, McConkey DJ, Evans DB, Abbruzzese JL, Hicklin DJ, Radinsky R. Epidermal growth factor receptor blockade with C225 plus gemcitabine results in regression of human pancreatic carcinoma growing orthotopically in nude mice by antiangiogenic mechanisms. *Clin Cancer Res* 2000; **6**: 1936-1948 [PMID: 10815919]

72   **Bloomston M**, Bhardwaj A, Ellison EC, Frankel WL. Epidermal growth factor receptor expression in pancreatic carcinoma using tissue microarray technique. *Dig Surg* 2006; **23**: 74-79 [PMID: 16717472 DOI: 10.1159/000093497]

73   **Uegaki K**, Nio Y, Inoue Y, Minari Y, Sato Y, Song MM, Dong M, Tamura K. Clinicopathological significance of epidermal growth factor and its receptor in human pancreatic cancer. *Anticancer Res* 1997; **17**: 3841-3847 [PMID: 9427790]

74   **Xiong HQ**, Rosenberg A, LoBuglio A, Schmidt W, Wolff RA, Deutsch J, Needle M, Abbruzzese JL. Cetuximab, a monoclonal antibody targeting the epidermal growth factor receptor, in combination with gemcitabine for advanced pancreatic cancer: a multicenter phase II Trial. *J Clin Oncol* 2004; **22**: 2610-2616 [PMID: 15226328 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2004.12.040]

75   **Philip PA**, Benedetti J, Corless CL, Wong R, O'Reilly EM, Flynn PJ, Rowland KM, Atkins JN, Mirtsching BC, Rivkin SE, Khorana AA, Goldman B, Fenoglio-Preiser CM, Abbruzzese JL, Blanke CD. Phase III study comparing gemcitabine plus cetuximab versus gemcitabine in patients with advanced pancreatic adenocarcinoma: Southwest Oncology Group-directed intergroup trial S0205. *J Clin Oncol* 2010; **28**: 3605-3610 [PMID: 20606093 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2009.25.7550]

76   **Cascinu S**, Berardi R, Labianca R, Siena S, Falcone A, Aitini E, Barni S, Di Costanzo F, Dapretto E, Tonini G, Pierantoni C, Artale S, Rota S, Floriani I, Scartozzi M, Zaniboni A. Cetuximab plus gemcitabine and cisplatin compared with gemcitabine and cisplatin alone in patients with advanced pancreatic cancer: a randomised, multicentre, phase II trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2008; **9**: 39-44 [PMID: 18077217 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(07)70383-2]

77   **Kullmann F**, Hollerbach S, Dollinger MM, Harder J, Fuchs M, Messmann H, Trojan J, Gäbele E, Hinke A, Hollerbach C, Endlicher E. Cetuximab plus gemcitabine/oxaliplatin (GEMOXCET) in first-line metastatic pancreatic cancer: a multicentre phase II study. *Br J Cancer* 2009; **100**: 1032-1036 [PMID: 19293797 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6604983]

78   **Strumberg D**. Phase II, randomized, double-blind placebo-

controlled trial of nimotuzumab plus gemcitabine compared with gemcitabine alone in patients (pts) with advanced pancreatic cancer (PC). *J Clin Oncol* 2013; **31**: (suppl; abstr 4009)

79   **Immervoll H**, Hoem D, Kugarajh K, Steine SJ, Molven A. Molecular analysis of the EGFR-RAS-RAF pathway in pancreatic ductal adenocarcinomas: lack of mutations in the BRAF and EGFR genes. *Virchows Arch* 2006; **448**: 788-796 [PMID: 16598499 DOI: 10.1097/MPA.0b013e3181b8feb0]

80   **Kwak EL**, Jankowski J, Thayer SP, Lauwers GY, Brannigan BW, Harris PL, Okimoto RA, Haserlat SM, Driscoll DR, Ferry D, Muir B, Settleman J, Fuchs CS, Kulke MH, Ryan DP, Clark JW, Sgroi DC, Haber DA, Bell DW. Epidermal growth factor receptor kinase domain mutations in esophageal and pancreatic adenocarcinomas. *Clin Cancer Res* 2006; **12**: 4283-4287 [PMID: 16857803 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-06-0189]

81   **Faller BA**, Burtness B. Treatment of pancreatic cancer with epidermal growth factor receptor-targeted therapy. *Biologics* 2009; **3**: 419-428 [PMID: 19774209]

82   **Navas C**, Hernández-Porras I, Schuhmacher AJ, Sibilia M, Guerra C, Barbacid M. EGF receptor signaling is essential for k-ras oncogene-driven pancreatic ductal adenocarcinoma. *Cancer Cell* 2012; **22**: 318-330 [PMID: 22975375 DOI: 10.1016/j.ccr.2012.08.001]

83   **Hanahan D**, Folkman J. Patterns and emerging mechanisms of the angiogenic switch during tumorigenesis. *Cell* 1996; **86**: 353-364 [PMID: 8756718]

84   **Bergers G**, Benjamin LE. Tumorigenesis and the angiogenic switch. *Nat Rev Cancer* 2003; **3**: 401-410 [PMID: 12778130 DOI: 10.1038/nrc1093]

85   **Jain RK**, Duda DG, Clark JW, Loeffler JS. Lessons from phase III clinical trials on anti-VEGF therapy for cancer. *Nat Clin Pract Oncol* 2006; **3**: 24-40 [PMID: 16407877 DOI: 10.1038/ncponc0403]

86   **Kindler HL**, Friberg G, Singh DA, Locker G, Nattam S, Kozloff M, Taber DA, Karrison T, Dachman A, Stadler WM, Vokes EE. Phase II trial of bevacizumab plus gemcitabine in patients with advanced pancreatic cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2005; **23**: 8033-8040 [PMID: 16258101 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2005.01.9661]

87   **Kindler HL**, Niedzwiecki D, Hollis D, Sutherland S, Schrag D, Hurwitz H, Innocenti F, Mulcahy MF, O'Reilly E, Wozniak TF, Picus J, Bhargava P, Mayer RJ, Schilsky RL, Goldberg RM. Gemcitabine plus bevacizumab compared with gemcitabine plus placebo in patients with advanced pancreatic cancer: phase III trial of the Cancer and Leukemia Group B (CALGB 80303). *J Clin Oncol* 2010; **28**: 3617-3622 [PMID: 20606091 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2010.28.1386]

88   **Van Cutsem E**, Vervenne WL, Bennouna J, Humblet Y, Gill S, Van Laethem JL, Verslype C, Scheithauer W, Shang A, Cosaert J, Moore MJ. Phase III trial of bevacizumab in combination with gemcitabine and erlotinib in patients with metastatic pancreatic cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2009; **27**: 2231-2237 [PMID: 19307500 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2008.20.0238]

89   **Hodi FS**, O'Day SJ, McDermott DF, Weber RW, Sosman JA, Haanen JB, Gonzalez R, Robert C, Schadendorf D, Hassel JC, Akerley W, van den Eertwegh AJ, Lutzky J, Lorigan P, Vaubel JM, Linette GP, Hogg D, Ottensmeier CH, Lebbé C, Peschel C, Quirt I, Clark JI, Wolchok JD, Weber JS, Tian J, Yellin MJ, Nichol GM, Hoos A, Urba WJ. Improved survival with ipilimumab in patients with metastatic melanoma. *N Engl J Med* 2010; **363**: 711-723 [PMID: 20525992 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1003466]

90   **May KF**, Gulley JL, Drake CG, Dranoff G, Kantoff PW. Prostate cancer immunotherapy. *Clin Cancer Res* 2011; **17**: 5233-5238 [PMID: 21700764 DOI: 10.1158/1078-0432.CCR-10-3402]

91   **Le DT**, Wang-Gillam A, Picozzi V, Greten TF, Crocenzi TS, Springett GM, Morse M, Zeh H, Cohen DJ, Fine RL, Onners B, Uram JN, Laheru D, Murphy A, Skoble J, Lemmens E, Grous JJ, Dubensky T, Brockstedt DG, Jaffee EM. A phase 2, randomized trial of GVAX pancreas and CRS-207 immunotherapy versus GVAZ alone in patients with metastatic pancreatic adenocarcinoma; Updated results. *J Clin Oncol* 2014; **32**: (suppl 3; abstr 177)

92   **Brahmer JR**, Tykodi SS, Chow LQ, Hwu WJ, Topalian SL, Hwu P, Drake CG, Camacho LH, Kauh J, Odunsi K, Pitot HC, Hamid O, Bhatia S, Martins R, Eaton K, Chen S, Salay TM, Alaparthy S, Grosso JF, Korman AJ, Parker SM, Agrawal S, Goldberg SM, Pardoll DM, Gupta A, Wigginton JM. Safety and activity of anti-PD-L1 antibody in patients with advanced cancer. *N Engl J Med* 2012; **366**: 2455-2465 [PMID: 22658128 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa1200690]

93   **Middleton G**, Silcocks P, Cox T, Valle J, Wadsley J, Propper D, Coxon F, Ross P, Madhusudan S, Roques T, Cunningham D, Falk S, Wadd N, Harrison M, Corrie P, Iveson T, Robinson A, McAdam K, Eatock M, Evans J, Archer C, Hickish T, Garcia-Alonso A, Nicolson M, Steward W, Anthoney A, Greenhalf W, Shaw V, Costello E, Naisbitt D, Rawcliffe C, Nanson G, Neoptolemos J. Gemcitabine and capecitabine with or without telomerase peptide vaccine GV1001 in patients with locally advanced or metastatic pancreatic cancer (TeloVac): an open-label, randomised, phase 3 trial. *Lancet Oncol* 2014; **15**: 829-840 [PMID: 24954781 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(14)70236-0]

94   **Royal RE**, Levy C, Turner K, Mathur A, Hughes M, Kammula US, Sherry RM, Topalian SL, Yang JC, Lowy I, Rosenberg SA. Phase 2 trial of single agent Ipilimumab (anti-CTLA-4) for locally advanced or metastatic pancreatic adenocarcinoma. *J Immunother* 2010; **33**: 828-833 [PMID: 20842054 DOI: 10.1097/CJI.0b013e3181eec14c]

95   **Northwestern University**. Ipililmumab and gemcitabine hydroch-loride in treating patients with stage III-IV or recurrent pancreatic cancer that cannot be removed by surgery. In: ClinicalTrials.gov [Internet]. Bethesda (MD): National Library of Medicine (US). Available from: URL: https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01473940 NLM Identifier: NCT01473940

96   **McMahon AP**, Ingham PW, Tabin CJ. Developmental roles and clinical significance of hedgehog signaling. *Curr Top Dev Biol* 2003; **53**: 1-114 [PMID: 12509125]

97   **Xie J**, Murone M, Luoh SM, Ryan A, Gu Q, Zhang C, Bonifas JM, Lam CW, Hynes M, Goddard A, Rosenthal A, Epstein EH, de Sauvage FJ. Activating Smoothened mutations in sporadic basal-cell carcinoma. *Nature* 1998; **391**: 90-92 [PMID: 9422511 DOI: 10.1038/34201]

98   **Amakye D**, Jagani Z, Dorsch M. Unraveling the therapeutic potential of the Hedgehog pathway in cancer. *Nat Med* 2013; **19**: 1410-1422 [PMID: 24202394 DOI: 10.1038/nm.3389]

99   **Infinity Pharmaceuticals, Inc.** A study evaluating IPI-926 in combination with gemcitabine in patients with metastatic pancreatic cancer. In: ClinicalTrials.gov [Internet]. Bethesda (MD): National Library of Medicine (US). Available from: URL: https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01130142 NLM Identifier: NCT01130142

100 **Bramhall SR**, Rosemurgy A, Brown PD, Bowry C, Buckels JA. Marimastat as first-line therapy for patients with unresectable pancreatic cancer: a randomized trial. *J Clin Oncol* 2001; **19**: 3447-3455 [PMID: 11481349]

101 **Kindler HL**, Ioka T, Richel DJ, Bennouna J, Létourneau R, Okusaka T, Funakoshi A, Furuse J, Park YS, Ohkawa S, Springett GM, Wasan HS, Trask PC, Bycott P, Ricart AD, Kim S, Van Cutsem E. Axitinib plus gemcitabine versus placebo plus gemcitabine in patients with advanced pancreatic adenocarcinoma: a double-blind randomised phase 3 study. *Lancet Oncol* 2011; **12**: 256-262 [PMID: 21306953 DOI: 10.1016/S1470-2045(11)70004-3]

102 **Gonçalves A**, Gilabert M, François E, Dahan L, Perrier H, Lamy R, Re D, Largillier R, Gasmi M, Tchiknavorian X, Esterni B, Genre D, Moureau-Zabotto L, Giovannini M, Seitz JF, Delpero JR, Turrini O, Viens P, Raoul JL. BAYPAN study: a double-blind phase III randomized trial comparing gemcitabine plus sorafenib and gemcitabine plus placebo in patients with advanced pancreatic cancer. *Ann Oncol* 2012; **23**: 2799-2805 [PMID: 22771827 DOI: 10.1093/annonc/mds135]

103 **Berlin JD**, Catalano P, Thomas JP, Kugler JW, Haller DG, Benson AB. Phase III study of gemcitabine in combination with fluorouracil versus gemcitabine alone in patients with advanced pancreatic carcinoma: Eastern Cooperative Oncology Group Trial E2297. *J Clin Oncol* 2002; **20**: 3270-3275 [PMID: 12149301 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2002.11.149]

104 **Rocha Lima CM**, Sherman CA, Brescia FJ, Brunson CY, Green

MR. Irinotecan/gemcitabine combination chemotherapy in pancreatic cancer. *Oncology* (Williston Park) 2001; **15**: 46-51 [PMID: 11301841]

105   **Louvet C**, Labianca R, Hammel P, Lledo G, Zampino MG, André T, Zaniboni A, Ducreux M, Aitini E, Taïeb J, Faroux R, Lepere C, de Gramont A. Gemcitabine in combination with oxaliplatin compared with gemcitabine alone in locally advanced or metastatic pancreatic cancer: results of a GERCOR and GISCAD phase III trial. *J Clin Oncol* 2005; **23**: 3509-3516 [PMID: 15908661 DOI: 10.1200/ JCO.2005.06.023]

106   **Herrmann R**, Bodoky G, Ruhstaller T, Glimelius B, Bajetta E, Schüller J, Saletti P, Bauer J, Figer A, Pestalozzi B, Köhne CH, Mingrone W, Stemmer SM, Tàmas K, Kornek GV, Koeberle D, Cina S, Bernhard J, Dietrich D, Scheithauer W. Gemcitabine plus capecitabine compared with gemcitabine alone in advanced pancreatic cancer: a randomized, multicenter, phase III trial of the Swiss Group for Clinical Cancer Research and the Central European Cooperative Oncology Group. *J Clin Oncol* 2007; **25**: 2212-2217 [PMID: 17538165 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2006.09.0886]

107   **Stathopoulos GP**, Syrigos K, Aravantinos G, Polyzos A, Papakotoulas P, Fountzilas G, Potamianou A, Ziras N, Boukovinas J, Varthalitis J, Androulakis N, Kotsakis A, Samonis G, Georgoulias V. A multicenter phase III trial comparing irinotecan-gemcitabine (IG) with gemcitabine (G) monotherapy as first-line treatment in patients with locally advanced or metastatic pancreatic cancer. *Br J Cancer* 2006; **95**: 587-592 [PMID: 16909140 DOI: 10.1038/sj.bjc.6603301]

108   **Heinemann V**, Quietzsch D, Gieseler F, Gonnermann M, Schönekäs H, Rost A, Neuhaus H, Haag C, Clemens M, Heinrich B, Vehling-Kaiser U, Fuchs M, Fleckenstein D, Gesierich W, Uthgenannt D, Einsele H, Holstege A, Hinke A, Schalhorn A, Wilkowski R. Randomized phase III trial of gemcitabine plus cisplatin compared with gemcitabine alone in advanced pancreatic cancer. *J Clin Oncol* 2006; **24**: 3946-3952 [PMID: 16921047 DOI: 10.1200/JCO.2005.05.1490]

REVIEW

Appropriate prescribing in the elderly: Current perspectives

Amanda Hanora Lavan, John O'Grady, Paul Francis Gallagher

Amanda Hanora Lavan, John O'Grady, Paul Francis Gallagher, Department of Geriatric Medicine, Cork University Hospital, Cork, Ireland

Author contributions: All the authors contributed to this work.

Conflict-of-interest: None.

Open-Access: This article is an open-access article which was selected by an in-house editor and fully peer-reviewed by external reviewers. It is distributed in accordance with the Creative Commons Attribution Non Commercial (CC BY-NC 4.0) license, which permits others to distribute, remix, adapt, build upon this work non-commercially, and license their derivative works on different terms, provided the original work is properly cited and the use is non-commercial. See: http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc/4.0/

Correspondence to: Dr. Paul Francis Gallagher, PhD, FRCPI, Consultant Physician, Department of Geriatric Medicine, Cork University Hospital, Cork, Wilton, Co., Cork, Ireland. paul.gallagher1@hse.ie
Telephone: +353-21-4921302
Fax: +353-21-4922829

Received: July 27, 2014
Peer-review started: July 28, 2014
First decision: September 16, 2014
Revised: March 20, 2015
Accepted: May 8, 2015
Article in press: May 11, 2015
Published online: June 9, 2015

Abstract

Advances in medical therapeutics have undoubtedly contributed to health gains and increases in life expectancy over the last century. However, there is growing evidence to suggest that therapeutic decisions in older patients are frequently suboptimal or potentially inappropriate and often result in negative outcomes such as adverse drug events, hospitalisation and increased healthcare resource utilisation. Several factors influence the appropriateness of medication selection in older patients including age-related changes in pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics, high numbers of concurrent medications, functional status and burden of co-morbid illness. With ever-increasing therapeutic options, escalating proportions of older patients worldwide, and varying degrees of prescriber education in geriatric pharmacotherapy, strategies to assist physicians in choosing appropriate pharmacotherapy for older patients may be helpful. In this paper, we describe important age-related pharmacological changes as well as the principal domains of prescribing appropriateness in older people. We highlight common examples of drug-drug and drug-disease interactions in older people. We present a clinical case in which the appropriateness of prescription medications is reviewed and corrective strategies suggested. We also discuss various approaches to optimising prescribing appropriateness in this population including the use of explicit and implicit prescribing appropriateness criteria, comprehensive geriatric assessment, clinical pharmacist review, prescriber education and computerized decision support tools.

Key words: Elderly; Inappropriate prescribing; Polypharmacy; Beers criteria; Screening Tool of Older Person's potentially inappropriate Prescriptions/Screening Tool to Alert to Right Treatment; Adverse drug reactions

Core tip: In this paper we discuss the challenges and complexities of prescribing for older people. We describe the important age-related changes in pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics that influence prescribing decisions and we highlight commonly encountered examples of drug-drug and drug-disease interactions. We present a detailed analysis of a complex clinical case in which several instances of potentially inappropriate prescribing exist and we suggest corrective actions. We explore a range of strategies aimed at optimizing prescribing appropriateness for older people including prescribing criteria, comprehensive geriatric assessment, clinical pharmacy interventions and computerized decision supports.

INTRODUCTION

Over the last century, there have been dramatic increases in life expectancy owing largely to improvements in living standards and advances in diagnostics, pharmaceutical medicine and therapeutics. This is reflected in worldwide changes in population demographics, with ever-increasing numbers of older people. The United Nations define "older people" as being aged 60 years or older with the oldest old being 80 years or older. In 1990, 9.2% of the world's population was aged at least 60 years old. In 2013, this proportion was 11.3% and by 2050, it is estimated that 21.2% of the world's population will be aged 60 years and over[1]. The largest numbers of older adults currently reside in developed countries, however by 2050 it is estimated they will reside in developing countries. Presently the older population is predominantly female with an expected improvement in male mortality expected in the coming years[1].

Though increased longevity is to be celebrated, it is well established that increasing age brings with it an increase in the burden of co-morbidity and a corresponding increase in the consumption of medications. Appropriate selection and prescription of curative and preventative medicines is an essential element of high quality healthcare for older people, who are the greatest consumers of healthcare resources in most developed nations[2]. One in eight Americans is aged over 65 years, but this small proportion of the population consumes the greatest proportion of prescription medications[3]. Similarly, older Europeans consume over twice as many healthcare resources than their younger counterparts[4]. In the United Kingdom approximately one fifth of the population is aged over 65 years, but this group receives 45% of all dispensed drugs[5]. In Ireland, 11% of the population is over 65 years but account for up to 50% of medications dispensed through its reimbursement service[6]. In the United States approximately 30% of community-dwelling older adults are regularly prescribed five or more medications[7]. This number rises in hospitalized older patients and in nursing home residents, perhaps reflecting a greater disease burden.

It is estimated that older people consume approximately 40% of all over-the-counter (OTC) medications sold in the United States[8]. Concurrent use of OTC medication with regular prescription medications places patients at higher risk of adverse outcomes; one study reported that 46% of older patients were concurrently taking OTC medications with regular prescription medications and 1 in 25 of these patients were at risk of significant drug interactions[7]. In addition, there is emerging evidence that the consumption of complementary and alternative medicines amongst older adults is steadily increasing[9]. A recent study showed a significant rise in the use of herbal remedies in those aged $\geq$ 65 years from 13.2% in 2002 to 19.5% in 2007[10].

Prescribing for older patients with multiple chronic illnesses, especially frailer older patients with cognitive and functional impairments, presents many unique challenges, particularly with respect to the following variables: (1) polypharmacy; (2) altered pharmacokinetic and pharmacodynamic responses; (3) balancing the risk of harm *vs* long term therapeutic benefit; and (4) paucity of robust scientific evidence for use of commonly prescribed medications in older, frail patients with limited life expectancy.

Prescribers must be cognizant of important age-related anatomical, biochemical and physiological changes that affect drug pharmacokinetics, pharmacodynamics and homeostatic mechanisms. They must also be aware of the potential for interaction with concurrently prescribed drugs and co-existing disease states. Prescribers should have an appreciation of the potentially low therapeutic yield in very frail older patients with poor life expectancy where the risk of certain treatments can exceed the potential clinical benefit. These important tenets of appropriate prescribing for older patients are briefly summarised below.

Pharmacokinetics and ageing

The key pharmacokinetic changes commonly associated with ageing are summarized in Table 1. A more detailed description follows. Drug absorption is generally unaltered in healthy older people; however certain conditions may affect the rate of drug absorption. Drugs with anticholinergic effects may reduce saliva secretion, thus impeding the rate, but not necessarily the amount of drug absorbed through the oral mucosa, *e.g.,* buccal midazolam and sublingual nitrate. The rate of absorption of subcutaneous, intramuscular and transdermal medications can be affected by reduced tissue perfusion. Conversely, prokinetic agents such as domperidone or erythromycin can increase the rate of delivery of an oral drug to its absorption site. Reductions in small bowel active transport mechanisms can affect the extent of absorption of iron and vitamin B12. Intravenous absorption is generally not affected.

Plasma drug concentration is inversely related to its volume of distribution (Vd), which in turn, is dependent on the hydrophilic and lipophilic volumes in the body. As people age, there is a reduction in muscle mass and body water content with a proportionate increase in body fat[11]. Consequently, the Vd for hydrophilic drugs (*e.g.,* lithium) is reduced; this may result in toxicity if drugs are not dose-adjusted. Lipophilic drugs (*e.g.,* antipsychotic medications) have a higher Vd in older people, and therefore have an increased elimination

Table 1 Pharmacokinetics and ageing	
Absorption	↓ amount of saliva
	↑ gastric pH
	↓ gastric acid secretion
	↑ gastric emptying time
	↓ gastric surface area
	↓ gastrointestinal motility
	↓ active transport mechanisms
Distribution	↓ cardiac output
	↑ peripheral vascular resistance
	↓ renal blood flow
	↓ hepatic blood flow
	↓ body water
	↑ body fat tissue
	↓ serum albumin levels
	↑ for lipid soluble and decrease for water soluble drugs
Metabolic	↓ microsomal hepatic oxidation
	↓ clearance
	↑ steady state levels
	↑ half lives
	↑ levels of active metabolites
	↓ first pass metabolism due to reduced ↓ blood flow
Excretion	↓ in renal perfusion
	↓ in renal size
	↓ in glomerular filtration rate
	↓ tubular secretion
	↓ in tubular reabsorption

↑: Increased; ↓: Reduced.

half-life, prolonged drug effect and accumulation with continued use thus increasing the potential for toxicity and adverse drug events (ADEs)[12].

Most drugs bind to protein (*e.g.,* albumin and α-1 glycoprotein) when circulating in plasma compartments, with only the unbound drug being pharmacologically active. In healthy older people, changes in serum albumin concentrations are minimal. In older people with chronic illnesses and malnutrition, serum albumin concentrations can be significantly reduced, leading to a reduction in bound drug concentrations and higher serum levels of free drug. This affects commonly prescribed drugs such as sodium valproate, warfarin and antipsychotics, thus increasing the potential for drug toxicity and adversity in patients with diminished circulating albumin. This is particularly relevant to frail, older hospitalised patients.

Hepatic mass and perfusion declines with age, thus reducing the liver's capacity for first pass metabolism[13]. Commonly prescribed drugs such as verapamil, amitriptyline and morphine may have higher bioavailability at standard doses in older people, thus leading to greater potential for adverse effects if not dose-adjusted. An example of this includes the risk of first dose hypotension with antihypertensive medications that have a high extraction ratio. This ratio would be reduced in older patients thus leading to greater bioavailability after hepatic extraction and thus greater potential for significant first-dose hypotension, so caution is needed when initiating antihypertensive treatment in an older patient with respect to dose and time of administration.

Table 2 Common cytochrome P450 isoenzyme inhibitors and inducers	
Enzyme inhibitors	**Enzyme inducers**
Amiodarone	Carbamazepine
Allopurinol	Ethanol
Cimetidine	Isoniazid
Citalopram, sertraline	Phenytoin
Ciprofloxacin	Phenobarbital
Diltiazem, verapamil	Rifampcin
Fluxetine, paroxetine	St. Johns Wort
Erythromycin, clarithromycin	
Fluconazole, ketoconazole	
Omeprazole	
Sulphonamides	
Grapefruit Juice	

Another important consideration is the possibility of drugs interacting through inhibition and induction of cytochrome p450 isoenzymes. Commonly encountered enzyme inducers and inhibitors are detailed in Table 2. Enzyme induction may take several weeks to occur and may result in treatment failure in those taking multiple medications, *e.g.,* a patient may fail to respond to "drug A" because "drug B" has induced a cytochrome p450 isoenzyme which metabolizes "drug A".

With ageing, well-documented changes occur in renal size, perfusion and function (see Table 1)[14]. This is of particular relevance to older patients who are prescribed renally excreted drugs where reduced elimination can lead to increased and potentially toxic drug accumulation (Table 3). Glomerular filtration rate (GFR) should be estimated using readily available formulas such as the Cockcroft and Gault[15] and Modification of Diet in Renal Disease[16]. Prescribers should be aware that serum creatinine concentration alone is an unreliable marker of renal function in the elderly owing to reductions in muscle volume. Indeed, approximately 50% of those with normal creatinine levels have a reduced estimate GFR (eGFR)[17].

Pharmacodynamics and ageing

Older people often have significantly different pharmacodynamic responses than their younger counterparts to similar drug concentrations. Differences can be caused by a shift in receptor affinity, density, post-receptor events at the cellular level, or in adaptive homeostatic response mechanisms. Pathologic organ changes may also affect pharmacodynamic responses, particularly in frail older patients[17]. Prescribers should be aware of commonly encountered age-related pharmacodynamic differences as listed in Table 4. Some clinically relevant examples are present in Table 5. Generally, it is recommended to initiate medications at the smallest possible dose and titrate slowly according to response.

Polypharmacy

Polypharmacy is often defined by the number of prescribed medications, with ≥ 6 drugs being a common

Table 3 Common used drug classes which require dose adjustment with chronic kidney disease

Drug class	Adjust dose in CKD stage 1-3	Avoid in CKD stages 4 and 5
ACE-inhibitors and Angiotensin 2 receptor blockers	All ACE inhibitors	Olmesartan
Diuretics	Potassium-sparing and thiazide diuretics	Potassium-sparing and thiazide diuretics
Beta-blockers	Acebutolol, atenolol, bisoprolol, nadolol, sotalol	Sotalol
Lipid lowering agents	Pravastatin, rosuvastatin, fibrates	Glyburide, metformin, exanitide
Hypoglycaemic agents	Gliclazide, acarbose, insulin, gliptins	
Analgesia (NSAIDs and opioids)	Codeine, tramadol, morphine, oxycodone,	All NSAIDs, pethidine
Psychotropic agents	Lithium, gabapentin, pregabalin, topiramate, vigabatrin, bupropion, duloxetine, paroxetine, venlafaxine	
Miscellaneous	Allopurinol, colchicine, digoxin	Dabigatran
		Rivaroxaban (CI stage 5, dose adjust in stage 4 CKD)
		Apixaban (CI stage 5, dose adjust in stage 4)

CKD: Chronic kidney disease; ACE-inhibitors: Angiotensin-converting-enzyme inhibitor; NSAIDs: Non-Steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs; CI: Contraindicated.

Table 4 Age-associated changes in pharmacodynamic response to commonly prescribed drugs

Drug type	Specific drug	Pharmacodynamic response in older people	Potential clinical consequence
Analgesia	Morphine	↑	Excessive sedation, confusion, constipation, respiratory depression
Anticoagulant	Warfarin	↑	Increased bleeding risk
	Dabigatran in those ≥ 75 yr with a body weight of < 50 kg)		
Cardiovascular system drugs	Angiotensin II receptor blockers	↑	Hypotension
	Diltiazem	↑	
	Enalapril	↑	
	Verapamil	↑	
	Propranolol	↓	
Diuretics	Frusemide	↓	Reduced diuretic effect at standard doses
	Bumetanide	↑	
Psychoactive drugs	Diazepam	↑	Excessive sedation, confusion, postural sway, falls
	Midazolam	↑	
	Temazepam	↑	
	Haloperidol	↑	
	Traizolam	↑	
Others	Levodopamine	↑	Dyskinesia, confusion, hallucinations

↑: Increased pharmacodynamic response; ↓: Reduced pharmacodynamic response.

Table 5 Commonly used drugs - comparison of prescription between older and younger patients

Drug	Typical dose in younger patient (< 65 yr)	Typical dose in older patient (≥ 65 yr)	Reason for different dose in the elderly
Anti-arrhythmics			
Digoxin	Loading dose is 1-1.5 mg in divided doses over 24 h	Loading dose is 1 mg in divided doses over 24 h	Water soluble contributing to increased plasma levels in the elderly
	Maintenance dose 125-250 mcg OD	Maintenance dose 62.5-125 mcg OD	
Anti-coagulants			
Warfarin	Standard initiation dose, *e.g.*, 10 mg daily for two days	Lower initiation dose, *e.g.*, 5 mg daily for two days	Increased sensitivity to anticoagulant effect
Dabigatran	150 mg BD	Patient > 80 yr 110 mg BD	Increased sensitivity to anticoagulant effect
		Patient 75-80 yr 150 mg BD in setting or normal eGFR	
Anti-hypertensive			
Ramipril	Initiation dose 2.5 mg	Initiation dose 1.25 mg	Lower initial dose and gradual dose titration required (higher risk of ADE in the elderly)
Psychoactive drugs			
Diazepam	2 mg TDS	1 mg BD	Lipid soluble with higher volume of distribution in older people thus contributing to a prolonged duration of effect

OD: Once daily; BD: Twice daily; TDS: Three time daily.

Table 6 Important drug interactions in older patients

Drug	Drug	Interaction	Effect
Anti- hypertensive agents	NSAID	NSAID antagonizes hypotensive effect	↓ antihypertensive effect
Aspirin	NSAID, oral corticosteroids	↑ risk of peptic ulceration	Peptic ulceration
Calcium channel blockers	Enzyme inducers	↑ clearance of calcium channel blocker	↓ anti-hypertensive effect
Digoxin	Diuretics	Diuretic-induced hypokalaemia	↑ effect of digoxin (arrhythmia, toxicity)
Digoxin	Amiodarone, Ditiazem, Verapamil	↓ clearance of digoxin	↑ effect of digoxin (arrhythmia, toxicity)
TCA	Enzyme inhibitors	↓ clearance of TCA	Arrhythmia, confusion, orthostatic hypotension, falls
Phenytoin	Enzyme inhibitors	↓ clearance of phenytoin	↑ effect of phenytoin, toxicity
Thyroxine	Enzyme inducers	↑ clearance of thyroxine	↓ effect of thyroxine

NSAID: Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug; TCA: Tricyclic anti-depressants.

cut-off point[18]. Another definition of polypharmacy is the prescription of at least one drug without valid clinical indication[19]. Increasing numbers of medications is associated with a higher risk of ADEs with resultant increased frequency of hospitalisation, negative health outcomes and increased healthcare resource utilisation[20-25]. The risk of an adverse drug reaction (ADR) when taking two concurrent medications is 13%[26]. This risk rises to 38% in patients taking 4 medications and to 82% in those taking ⩾ 7 medications[26]. Polypharmacy can often be indicative of prescribing cascades, *i.e.,* where a new drug is used to treat a negative effect of an existing drug. Clearly, prescription of medications in such circumstances is inappropriate.

Prescription of multiple drugs impacts negatively on adherence and compliance. Clinicians are sometimes unaware of their patients complete prescription record perhaps because of multiple prescribers or under-reporting by patients at time of consultation. Frank *et al*[27] reported that almost 4 out of 10 patients were taking drugs unbeknownst to their doctors, and approximately 1 out of 20 patients were not taking medications listed on their prescription record. Prescribers should make every effort to obtain an accurate medication list. Pharmacy reconciliation protocols are useful for this purpose in hospital environments. Tools such as the Structured History of Medications can also be very useful in this regard, though they are time consuming to complete[28].

Drug interactions
One drug can interact with another drug through pharmacokinetic or pharmacodynamic mechanisms. Gurwitz *et al*[29] reported that drug interactions accounted for 13% of preventable prescribing errors. The risk increases with rising numbers of prescribed drugs and with multiple attending prescribers[30]. A study of over sixteen hundred older outpatients across six European countries found that 46% had at an important drug interaction with 1 in 10 having the potential for severe consequence[31]. Table 6 details some commonly encountered and potentially significant drug-drug interactions in older people.

Drugs can often worsen co-existing medical condi-

tions. The risk of drug-disease interactions is higher in older adults who are on multiple medications to treat multiple conditions. Lindblad *et al*[32,33] reported that 15%-40% of hospitalized older adults were prescribed a drug that could potentially exacerbate a co-existing condition, *e.g.,* use of non-dihydropyridine calcium antagonists with heart failure. In the community-dwelling elderly, the prevalence of drug-disease interactions ranges from 6% to 30%[34-37]. Commonly encountered drug-disease interactions, which have the potential for clinically significant negative outcomes in older patients, are presented in Figure 1. Prescription of these medications in these clinical circumstances is potentially inappropriate, particularly if safer alternatives are available.

Appropriate prescribing
So far, we have described circumstances where prescribing decisions in older patients can be considered to be potentially inappropriate, *i.e.,* where the risk of a negative outcome exceeds the potential therapeutic gain. The term "appropriate prescribing" extends well beyond the aforementioned pharmacological principles to encompass a range of actions and attitudes that characterise the quality of prescribing that should be achieved in everyday practice[38] (summarised in Figure 2). This term encompasses several important domains including patient choice, therapeutic expectation, scientific and technical rationalisation and the general good for society[38]. A discussion of pharmacoeconomic rationalisation is beyond the scope of this paper, but it is becoming increasingly important that prescribers are economically just in their decisions so that the greatest number can receive the greatest benefit and that older individuals can be offered the least expensive available therapeutic options.

Inappropriate prescribing (IP) is a commonly used term. It pertains to use of medications that may cause more harm than good and perhaps, more importantly, the under-prescription of clinically indicated medications[38]. IP has been identified in 12%-40% of residents in long-term care facilities and in 14%-23% of community-dwelling older people[39,40]. The association between IP and negative outcomes such as ADRs has been shown in numerous studies in Europe[41,42], the

Figure 1 Common encountered clinically significant drug-disease interactions in older patients. The following conditions may be exacerbated by prescription of the *drug classes* listed below.TCA: Tricyclic anti-depressants; NSAID: Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug; SSRIs: Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors.

United States[43-45] and Asia[46].

Clinical judgments of prescribing appropriateness with respect to therapeutic benefit are often difficult to make because of insufficient scientific evidence for the older population. Those with multiple co-morbidities and multiple medications are often poorly represented in clinical trials and physicians often have to extrapolate scientific evidence from the use of medications in younger, unrepresentative patient populations, with fewer illness and fewer concurrent medications. Only 2.1% of patients recruited to trials investigating the efficacy of non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) were aged 65 years and over, with less than 0.1% over 75 years[47]. Nonetheless, NSAIDs are commonly used to treat musculoskeletal disorders in older patients. It is well established that the risk of adverse events of NSAIDs such as peptic ulcer disease is much higher in older people. Indeed, inappropriate use of NSAIDs is a commonly encountered ADR in elderly inpatients[48], usually through incorrect dose, prolonged duration or failure to recognize impairment of renal function.

Figure 2 Important considerations when evaluating the quality of prescribing decisions in older people.

Under-prescribing of essential, often preventative medication is perhaps an even bigger concern than misuse of medications in older patients, particularly when the potential outcome of not treating the condition can be catastrophic[49]. The risk of cardio-embolic stroke in those with atrial fibrillation increases with age (1.2% to 2.5% annual risk in persons aged 60-69 years *vs* 7.3%-13.7% annual risk in persons aged 80 years and over)[50-52] but many do not receive evidence-based preventative anticoagulation[53]. The Irish Longitudinal Study on Ageing recently reported that 30% of patients had a potential prescribing omission (PPO), the most common PPO being appropriate anti-hypertensive therapy[54]. Prescribing omissions were twice as common as inappropriate prescriptions[55]. Even greater proportions of hospitalised older patients are reported to have potentially inappropriate prescribing omissions, with Barry *et al*[55] reporting 57% prevalence of prescribing omissions in one prospective study of over 600 hospitalised older patients in Ireland. The elderly have a higher burden of co-morbid illnesses, *e.g.*, a single patient may have hypertension, diabetes mellitus, chronic obstructive airways disease, dementia and recurrent falls. Every effort should be made to appropriately treat all illnesses bearing in mind the principles of appropriate prescribing as previously discussed.

Other considerations
Prescribing appropriateness must also take into account a patient's capacity to comply with the prescription as well as their physical ability to take the medication.

In older adults post coronary artery bypass grafting it was found that in-hospital education was paramount in helping patients adhere to their medication regimens[56]. However, it must be acknowledged that almost 25% of patients aged ≥ 80 years will have significant cognitive deficits and memory deficits can often contribute to improper medication use as patients can have difficulty understanding instructions[57]. Patients may fail to remember to take their medicines or may even take multiple doses concurrently thus placing them at an increased risk of adverse drug events[42]. Prescribers have a responsibility to ensure that medications can be taken safely and reliably. Sometimes this requires simple written instructions, the use of doset boxes or blister-packs, or direct supervision of administration by a carer or relative. Physical impairments such as hearing loss, visual loss and impaired manual dexterity can also impact on adherence to prescribed medications, thus resulting in poor therapeutic yield and consequent negative outcomes.

Clearly, prescribing for older patients is complex and sometimes time-consuming particularly when all of the aforementioned variables are considered. In addition, older patients are a heterogeneous group, with wide variation in physical, cognitive and functional status. The most important clinical question when deciding on prescribing appropriateness is whether or not there is a clear clinical indication for the treatment. This requires a clear diagnosis and a clear expectation of the therapeutic goal. Evaluation of the therapeutic goal must take into account the scientific rational of using a drug as well as the potential benefit to improving the

Table 7   Key considerations when prescribing for older patients

Use non-pharmacological treatment whenever possible

Include the patient (and carer where appropriate) in prescribing decisions

Ensure each medication has an appropriate indication and a clear therapeutic goal (this involves careful clinical assessment and appreciation of time to obtain treatment effect and life expectancy)

Start at the smallest dose and titrate slowly according to response and efficacy

Use the simplest dosing regimen (*e.g.*, once a day preferable to three times per day) and most appropriate formulation

Provide verbal and written instructions on indication, time and route of administration and potential adverse effects of each medication

Regularly review prescriptions in the context of co-exiting disease states, concurrent medications, functional and cognitive status and therapeutic expectation

Be aware that new presenting symptoms may be due to an existing medication, drug-drug interaction or drug-disease interaction (avoid prescribing cascade)

When stopping a medication check that it can be stopped abruptly or whether it needs to be tapered, *e.g.*, long-term steroids, benzodiazepines

Is it safe to start the medication in question?
Anti-coagulation in the presence of falls or uncontrolled hypertension?
Anti-hypertensive in presence of symptomatic orthostatic hypotension?
Anti-platelet with recent peptic ulcer disease?
Is monitoring required and is this feasible? *e.g.,* coagulation monitoring with anti-coagulation, potassium level monitoring with spironolactone
Can the patient reliably take the medication as prescribed?

Safety

Could the new medication worsen an existing disease state or cause clinically significant drug-drug interactions?
Is dose-adjustment requried? Are renal and liver functions normal?

Cautions

Options

Dosage

Are other treatment options more appropriate?
Non-pharmacological treatment? *e.g.,* balance retraining
Is there a safer alternative but equally effective pharmacological treatment, *e.g.,* an ACE-inhibitor would be a more appropriate choice of antihypertensive in an elderly patient with hyptertension, diabetes and chronic constipation than a calcium channel blocker as it will have a dual role of treating hypertension and preventing diabetic nephropathy and will not exacerbate constipation

What dose is appropriate for the patient?
In general is recommended to start with the lowest possible dose and titrate to effect
Is a loading dose required? *e.g.*, digoxin, warfarin
What route? *e.g.*, can the patient swallow, has the patient the dexterity to use inhalers, would syrup or suppository be a more appropriate formulation?
What frequency? Choose lowest available frequency

Figure 3 Influential factors when prescribing for the elderly with some examples.

condition. Prescribers must ensure that people take the appropriate medicine at the correct dose; thereby minimizing risks of adversity (see Table 7).

A case history, displayed in Table 8, illustrates the complexities of making appropriate prescribing decisions in older people and also some of the negative clinical consequences of IP decisions. Other examples of important considerations with respect to prescribing safety, cautions, dosage and therapeutic options are presented in Figure 3.

ADVERSE DRUG EVENTS AND ADRS

An adverse drug event (ADE) is defined as "any injury resulting from the use of a drug"[58]. This broad definition encompasses any harm caused directly by the medication and any event that occurs during its use (including dose reductions and harm from discontinuation of the drug). An ADR is defined as a "response to a drug which is noxious and unintended and which occurs at doses normally used in man for prophylaxis, diagnosis, or therapy of disease or for the modification of physiologic function"[58,59].

Unsurprisingly, ADEs are highly prevalent in the elderly. Those with multiple co-morbidities and who are prescribed multiple medications are at the highest risk. It is widely accepted that the crude prevalence rate of ADEs in community-dwelling older people is approximately 30%[60]. One study reported that ADEs accounted for 1 in 10 of all emergency

Table 8   Clinical example

An 80-year-old lady is referred with a four day history of general malaise, nausea, vomiting and recurrent falls. Her past medical history includes paroxysmal atrial fibrillation, non-obstructive coronary artery disease, hypertension, recurrent episodes of acute gout, dependent lower limb edema and "vertigo/dizziness". Prior to this episode she was functionally independent and had normal cognition

Her medications were as follows: Simvastatin 40 mg daily; Verapamil 240 mg daily; Quinine Sulphate 300 mg daily, Perindopril 5 mg/Indapamide 1.5 mg daily; Digoxin 250 mcg daily; Diclofenac 75 mg twice daily; Frusemide 40 mg daily; Betahistine 16 g three times per day; Paracetamol 1 g as required; Warfarin as per INR (target INR 2-3); Flurazepam 30 mg nocte. She was not taking OTC medications

On assessment she was pale and tired. Supine blood pressure was 122/70 mmHg; erect blood pressure after one minute was 92/62 mmHg

Pulse was 52 beats per minute. She had no clinical signs of congestive cardiac failure. She scored 9/10 on a short mental test score

Investigations showed a eGFR of 38 mL/min, serum potassium 2.8 mmol/L (low) and serum sodium 126 mmol/L (low). Haemoglobin was 10.2 g/dL with MCV 72fl (hypochromic microcytic anemia)

When evaluating the appropriateness of an older person's prescription medications it is important to consider the following two questions:

  1 Is there a clinical indication for the drug?

  2 Could the drug be contributing to the presenting symptoms?

Using this approach each medication should be evaluated in turn and corrective action implemented

Medication	Clinical indication?	Contributing to presenting symptoms?	Action taken?
Simvastatin 40 mg	Yes (hyperlipidaemia, high cardiovascular risk)	Could cause muscle cramps and myopathy which could lead to falls (note patient prescribed quinine)	Check fasting lipid profile and creatine phosphokinase. Revise dose according to target lipid levels
Verapamil 240 mg	Yes (hypertension, arrhythmia)	Could cause hypotension and bradycardia. Increased risk of myopathy when prescribed with simvastatin	Consider discontinuation. Beta-blocker may be more appropriate choice as rate controlling agent
Quinine 300 mg	No clear indication	No	Muscle cramps may be due to statin. Review choice of statin. Discontinue Quinine
Perindopril 5 mg	Yes (hypertension)	Could contribute to postural hypotension and acute renal injury	Consider temporary withdrawal while investigating cause of renal dysfunction
Indapamide 1.5 mg	Yes (hypertension)	Could contribute to postural hypotension, acute renal injury, hyponatraemia and hypokalaemia. Can precipitate digoxin toxicity, hyperuricaemia and recurrent episodes of gout	Discontinue
Digoxin 250 mcg	Yes (atrial fibrillation)	Symptoms of digoxin toxicity. Dose too high given level of renal dysfunction	Discontinue. Beta-blocker may be more appropriate choice of rate controlling agent
Diclofenac 75 mg	Yes (acute gout)	Yes. Diclofenac may be causing renal impairment. Gastritis/peptic ulcer disease should also be considered because of nausea, vomiting and microcytic anemia. NSAIDs should not be prescribed with warfarin because of significantly increased risk of bleeding	Discontinue. Consider addition of allopurinol for gout prophylaxis
Frusemide 40 mg	Yes (hypertension)	Yes (hypotension, hyponatraemia, hypokalaemia, renal impairment)	Frusemide is not required as an anti-hypertensive in this patient. It has been prescribed to treat dependent lower limb edema. Leg elevation and compression stockings would be more appropriate
Betahistine 16 mg	No (prescribed for dizziness which is actually related to orthostatic hypotension)	No	Discontinue. No indication
Paracetamol 1 g	Yes (pain)	No	Continue
Warfarin	Yes (atrial fibrillation embolic prophylaxis)	May be contributing to anemia. Should not be co-prescribed with diclofenac as there is an increased risk of bleeding	Investigate cause of anemia. Consider future suitability for anticoagulation if high falls risk persists
Flurazepam 30 mg	No	Yes (falls, malaise)	Contact GP and pharmacy for prescription history. Do not suddenly discontinue because of risk of benzodiazepine withdrawal

INR: International normalized ratio; OTC: Over-the-counter; eGFR: Estimated glomerular filtration rate; MCV: Mean corpuscular volume.

department attendances in those aged ≥ 65 years[61]. Approximately one third of those with an ADE had a potential drug interaction. The most common offending medications were NSAIDs, antibiotics, anticoagulants, diuretics, hypoglycemic agents, β-blockers, calcium-channel blockers, and chemotherapeutic agents[61]. ADEs are common in hospitalized older patients, with prevalence rates of up to 25% being reported in some studies[44,62-64]. Most ADEs are predictable with 27% of ADEs in community-dwelling older patients[30] and 42% of ADEs in nursing home facilities thought to be avoidable[63].

One large study of over 18000 hospital admissions found that ADRs were responsible for 1 in 16 hospitalisations (6.5%), 4% of hospital bed capacity and 0.15% of deaths[65]. In the United States, it has been

reported that ADRs are amongst the leading causes of death[59]. The majority of ADRs (> 80%) in older people are predictable in that they are related to the known pharmacological effect of the drug and often escalate with increasing dose[66].

PRESCRIBING APPROPRIATENESS CRITERIA

With changing demographics and ever-increasing availability of therapeutic agents, the frequency of IP in older patients is not abating. Various strategies to identify, measure and reduce potentially inappropriate prescribing have been the focus of worldwide research endeavors over the last thirty years. A detailed analysis of all such endeavors is beyond the scope of this paper. Instead we will focus on the principal prescribing appropriateness criteria, their relationship to adverse healthcare outcomes and the evidence to support their role in optimising prescribing appropriateness.

Explicit criteria for appropriate prescribing comprise lists of medications that are known to cause harm in older adults; either through predictable pharmacological or predictable physiological mechanisms. In general, they have been developed from expert consensus techniques[67]. Explicit criteria can often be utilised in the absence of detailed clinical data[68]. However, this may also be a limitation, particularly in older patients, where clinical detail is an essential requirement for any treatment decision, particularly in relation to burden of co-morbidity[69], patient preference and consideration of previously unsuccessful treatment approaches. Furthermore, explicit criteria need regular updating so as to incorporate emerging evidence.

Beers criteria focus principally on over-prescribing and mis-prescribing. They comprise a list drugs that are inappropriate to prescribe for the elderly under any circumstances and a list of drugs that should be avoided with particular clinical illnesses and syndromes[70-73]. Screening Tool of Older Person's potentially inappropriate Prescriptions (STOPP)/Screening Tool to Alert to Right Treatment (START) Criteria are organised according to physiological system and include criteria that highlight when medications should be considered in older people, with certain conditions, where no contraindication exists, *e.g.,* anticoagulation in patients with atrial fibrillation and calcium and vitamin D supplementation in patients with osteoporosis[74,75]. Table 9 summarises the principal explicit prescribing criteria, their advantages and disadvantages.

Implicit criteria focus on several domains of prescribing appropriateness. The medication appropriateness index (MAI) is the most widely cited implicit tool which measures prescribing appropriateness according to 10 criteria including indication, effectiveness, dose, administration, drug-drug and drug-disease interactions and cost[76,77]. Clinical expertise and detailed clinical and pharmaceutical information is required to apply some

of the criteria, thus making this tool time consuming to use in everyday clinical practice. The MAI does not address prescribing omissions. Three of the MAI criteria (indication, effectiveness and duplication) can be combined as a measure of unnecessary polypharmacy, one study of 384 frail older patients at the point of hospital discharge showing that 44% were prescribed at least one unnecessary drug, the most common drug classes being gastrointestinal, central nervous system and therapeutic nutrients or minerals[78]. Another study of 397 frail elderly inpatients showed that 365 patients (92%) met at least one MAI criterion, the most common problems being use of the most expensive drugs (70%), impractical directions (55%), and incorrect dosages (51%)[79]. One advantage of the MAI is that it encompasses elements for drug prescribing that are applicable to any medication and to any clinical condition in any clinical setting. The Assessment of Underutilisation (AOU) of Medications tool is based on an instrument reported by Lipton *et al*[80] and simply requires the user to match the patient's active illnesses to his/her prescription drugs thus establishing if a condition is under-treated by omission of an indicated medication. One study showed that 64% of older patients had evidence of under prescribing according to the AOU instrument[81]. The labeling of a prescription as "potentially inappropriate" implies that the prescription in question should be predictive of an adverse outcome. Ideally, the drugs highlighted by explicit IP criteria should be associated with preventable ADEs. Prospective use of IP screening criteria should, theoretically curtail the occurrence of ADEs.

The reported prevalence rates of potentially inappropriate prescribing according to various explicit criteria range from 24% to 44% depending on the populations and proportions of criteria applied[82]. The reported associations between IP and adverse outcomes also vary. Pasina *et al*[83] showed the prevalence of at least one PIM was 20.1% and 20.3% according to the 2003 and 2012 iterations of Beers' criteria respectively. However an association between IP and health outcomes was not demonstrated. Conversely, medications listed in STOPP[48] criteria have been associated with a higher proportion of patients requiring admission to hospital because of IP-related adverse events than those listed in Beers' criteria (11.5% *vs* 6%, respectively). A recently published randomised controlled trial of 400 older hospitalized patients showed that unnecessary polypharmacy, incorrect dosing, and potential drug-drug and drug-disease interactions were significantly lower at time of discharge and for up to 6 mo post discharge when patients were screened with STOPP/START criteria within 72 h of hospitalization (absolute risk reduction 37.5%, number needed to screen to yield improvement in MAI = 2.8)[75]. Reduction of underutilisation of clinically indicated medications was also observed (absolute risk reduction 21.2% with a number need to yield reduction of 4.7). However, a recent systematic review of the application

Table 9 Explicit criteria for potentially inappropriate prescribing in older patients

Explicit criteria	Advantages	Disadvantages
Beers criteria[70]	Assesses prescribing quality Useful for education	Several drugs unavailable outside United States Does not include underuse of drugs, drug-drug interactions or duplicate drugs No under-prescribing indicators
Beers criteria[71]	Concise explanation of inappropriateness Severity ratings of adverse outcomes Assesses prescribing quality Useful for education	Several drugs unavailable outside United States Does not include underuse of drugs, drug-drug interactions or duplicate drugs No under-prescribing indicators
Beers criteria[72]	Concise explanation of inappropriateness Severity ratings of adverse outcomes Can be used by computerized clinical information systems	Several drugs unavailable outside the United States Controversy over some drugs labeled as inappropriate No drug to drug interaction No drug disease interactions No under prescribing
Beers criteria[73]	Concise explanation of inappropriateness Structured according to therapeutic classes and organ systems Drug disease interactions	Several drugs unavailable outside United States No drug-drug interaction No under prescribing
STOPP/START[74]	Organised by physiological system Concise list on inappropriate medications Includes drug and disease interactions, therapeutic duplications and prescribing omissions	Does not suggest safer alternatives Does not address certain domains of prescribing, *e.g.*, indication
McLeod criteria[113]	Concise list of inappropriate medications with safer alternatives suggested Useful for education	Obsolete indicators, *e.g.*, beta blockers in heart failure No under-prescribing indicators Several drugs unavailable outside United States
IPET 2000 (Improved prescribing in the elderly tool)[114]	Concise Useful for education	Not comprehensive Predominantly cardiovascular and psychotropic drugs No under-prescribing indicators
Zhans criteria[115]	Less restrictive than previous criteria	Several drugs unavailable outside United States No drug to drug interaction No drug disease interactions No under-prescribing indicators
French Consensus Panel List[116]	Concise explanation of inappropriateness Includes drug duplications Safer alternatives suggested	No clinical studies to date No under prescribing
Rancourt[117]	26 Drug drug interactions 10 drug duplications	Large number of criteria to get through in clinical practice Data only on long term care setting
Australian Prescribing Indicators Tool[118]	Includes drug duplication Includes under-prescribing	Not validated and time consuming Derived from Australian data sources limiting international applicability
Norwegian General Practice (NORGEP) Criteria[119]	Can be applied to medication list with no clinical information	No drug prescribing No drug-disease interactions No studies to date outside Norway
Priscus List[120]	Provides therapeutic alternatives Recommendations on dose adjusting and monitoring	No studies to date published outside Germany
Thailand Criteria[121]	Drug interactions Drug disease interactions	No studies to date outside country of origin

of STOPP/START criteria concluded that there was limited evidence found in relation to the clinical and economic impact of the STOPP/START criteria. This is the subject of ongoing research endeavors as described below.

All prescribing appropriateness criteria are designed to assist decision-making and not to substitute good clinical decision-making. However, for prescribing appropriateness criteria to continue to facilitate decision-making they will need to remain clinically valid *via* regular updates in tandem with evolving clinical evidence and new medications. No criteria exist specifically for guidance of prescribing in frail older long term care residents with reduced life expectancy and indeed this cohort is likely to increase with changing demographics and prolonged survival[66].

OTHER APPROACHES TO OPTIMIZING PRESCRIBING APPROPRIATENESS IN OLDER PATIENTS

Comprehensive geriatric assessment

Geriatric medicine multidisciplinary teams comprise doctors, nurses, pharmacists and other allied health professionals who offer detailed assessment of older patients' physical, cognitive and functional abilities as well as optimization of medications. Several trials have shown improvements in all domains of prescribing appropriateness following comprehensive geriatric assessment (CGA). Schmader *et al*[84] demonstrated a significant reduction in the prevalence of potentially inappropriate prescribing, including under-prescribing,

in older inpatients that were randomised to receive CGA when compared to routine inpatient care. In the same study, outpatients who received CGA were shown to have a 35% reduction in the risk of a serious ADEs and prescribing omissions when compared with standard care[84].

Saltvedt *et al*[85] reported a lower prevalence of anticholinergic drug use and potential drug interactions at hospital discharge in acutely ill elderly patients who were randomized to receive inpatient CGA compared with standard hospital care. In addition, antipsychotic drugs were more likely to be withdrawn in the intervention cohort. An Australian study of 154 long term care residents with challenging behavior showed that an intervention comprising two case conferences between a care of the elderly physician, general practitioner, pharmacist and nursing home staff resulted in significant improvements in the prevalence of IP, particularly with respect to the use of benzodiazepines[86]. A Finnish study of 400 patients with cardiovascular disease showed a significant improvement in the use of evidence-based cardiovascular medications following geriatrician review with subsequent improvement in risk factor profile, but no improvement in three year cardiovascular morbidity or mortality[87].

CGA affords a complete overview of an older patient's health status and functional abilities and enables the prescriber to make informed prescribing decisions in the context of such variables. However, comprehensive geriatric assessment is time-consuming and resource intensive and is, in reality, only applicable to patients attending hospital, either as an inpatient or as an outpatient. It is not feasible in most health services for all older patients to undergo comprehensive geriatric assessment, thereby limiting the value of this approach at the population level.

Clinical pharmacy intervention
Clinical pharmacists perform systematic assessments of a patients' medication regimen and generate pharmaceutical care plans with the aim of optimizing the clinical impact of treatment, minimizing adverse effects of treatment and reducing waste[88]. An intervention comprising detailed review of medications by a clinical pharmacist with subsequent recommendations for the attending physician including patient counseling showed significant improvement in MAI scores over a twelve month period when compared to usual outpatient care[89]. However, there were no improvements in other outcomes including ADEs and healthcare use. Similarly, Crotty *et al*[90] reported improvements in MAI scores and a lower hospital re-admission rate in older patients whose medications were reviewed and discussed in detail by doctors and pharmacists. However, significant reductions in ADEs and other adverse outcomes were not identified. In Belgium, one hospital-based study has shown that a combined pharmacy and geriatrician intervention improves prescribing appropriateness[91].

Similar to CGA, specialist pharmacy input is resource intensive and is, in reality, confined to patients attending the hospital. Not all pharmacists have specialist training in geriatric pharmacotherapy and the success of this intervention depends upon the availability of the medical record to the pharmacist as well as the acceptance of the pharmaceutical care plan by both the patient and the prescribing physician. Therefore, clinical pharmacists need to work in close liaison with prescribers. The impact of the community pharmacist with no specialist training in geriatric pharmacotherapy on prescribing appropriateness has not been studied.

Prescriber education, audit and feedback
Several studies have shown that most physicians receive inadequate training in geriatric pharmacotherapy at an undergraduate and postgraduate level[92-94]. Therefore, educational strategies targeted specifically at those who prescribe for older patients would appear to be highly relevant. Numerous studies have investigated the impact of different educational approaches on the quality of prescribing in older patients, with mixed results. In general, interactive approaches with direct feedback that target multiple disciplines[53,95,96] are more effective than passive approaches involving didactic lectures and written dissemination of educational and feedback material[97,98]. However, most of these studies pertain to specific drugs or drug classes, *e.g.*, antibiotics[99], psychotropic drugs[100,101] analgesics[101] or avoidance of potentially inappropriate anticholinergic drugs[95]. The effect of educational interventions on broader measures of prescribing appropriateness and on health-related outcomes remains to be seen.

A recent systematic review investigated whether education interventions improved prescribing by undergraduate students and postgraduate junior physicians. No definitive answer was found. The trials included were small and flawed in their methodology. The better quality studies used the World Health Organization guide that directs students through a six-step problem-solving process when prescribing. Improvement in prescribing skills has been demonstrated in simulated environments. However, further research is required into the long-term benefits of such educational interventions[102].

Electronic prescribing and computerized alerts
Electronic prescribing systems provide user-guidance in relation to medication selection, dosage, price, potential interactions and need for monitoring[103,104]. They have the added potential of reducing prescribing errors of transcription when transferring between places of care, *e.g.*, from hospital to community, or from community to nursing home thereby improving communication[105]. Though challenging and costly to install, these tools can be applied at the point of medication initiation with great potential to minimize ADEs[106].

Existing electronic prescribing systems have been developed for the general adult population and are not specifically refined for elderly patients with complex co-morbidities and altered pharmacokinetics

and pharmacodynamics. Therefore, existing tools may not be suitable for use in older patients. Furthermore, physicians often over-ride the therapeutic flags generated by computerised systems[107] perhaps because many of them are perceived as being falsely positive or clinically unimportant, *e.g.,* a sodium level only marginally below the laboratory reference range may be acceptable in clinical practice. If physicians are overloaded with computerised alerts, they are unlikely to respond to true high-risk safety situations. A disadvantage of computerised prescribing systems is that they are dependent on the quality of the computer programming. There have been reports that computerized decision support systems have themselves resulted in medication errors and related adverse drug events[107-109]. Therefore, computerized decision support systems should be used to enhance a prescribing decision or to flag a potentially inappropriate prescription but can never substitute a comprehensive clinical assessment.

Several exiting research projects are currently underway in Europe[110,111] and the United States[112], the aim being to develop software engines to optimize prescribing appropriateness and to investigate the clinical and economic impacts of their utilisation. A new Software ENgine for the Assessment and optimization of drug and non-drug Therapy in Older persons (SENATOR) trial is presently recruiting throughout seven European centres (http://www.senator-project.eu/). It will assess and optimise drug and non-drug therapy in older persons with multimorbidity and provide recommendations to the attending clinician. The software engine aims to simultaneously reduce inappropriate prescribing, ADRs, and costs alongside optimising medications.

CONCLUSION

Prescribing for older patients presents many unique challenges. Prescribers must be aware of the key pharmacological differences in older people and the principal domains of prescribing appropriateness as described in this paper. Criteria are available to assist prescribers in appropriate decision making, but cannot replace good clinical judgment and cannot be applied in a "one size fits all" manner. Data are limited as to the health-outcome and economic effects of prescribing appropriateness criteria, but important research is ongoing into these areas. Continuous prescriber education at undergraduate and postgraduate level and regular audit of prescribing practice is very important. CGA and clinical pharmacist input are clearly of benefit in optimizing prescribing appropriateness, particularly in hospitalised older patients. However, these interventions are resource intensive. Exciting research into computerized prescribing supports for older people is ongoing. Finally, more older patients with complex co-morbidities should participate in clinical trials to ensure that evidence-based practice and guideline development is based on the testing and use of drugs in representative populations.

REFERENCES

1   **United Nations**. World Population Ageing 2013. Available from: URL: http://www.un.org/en/development/desa/population/publications/pdf/ageing/WorldPopulationAgeing2013.pdf

2   **Chrischilles EA**, Foley DJ, Wallace RB, Lemke JH, Semla TP, Hanlon JT, Glynn RJ, Ostfeld AM, Guralnik JM. Use of medications by persons 65 and over: data from the established populations for epidemiologic studies of the elderly. *J Gerontol* 1992; **47**: M137-M144 [PMID: 1512428 DOI: 10.1093/geronj/47.5.M137]

3   **National Centre for Health Statistics.** Health, United States, 2013: With Special Feature on Prescription Drugs. Hyattsville (MD): National Center for Health Statistics (US), 2014 [PMID: 24967476]

4   **O'Connor K**, O'Mahony D. Drugs and Ageing. In: Liston R, Mulkerrin EC, editors. Medicine for older patients: cases and practice. Dublin, Ireland: Eireann Healthcare Publications, 2003: 205

5   **Wynne HA**, Blagburn J. Drug treatment in an ageing population: practical implications. *Maturitas* 2010; **66**: 246-250 [PMID: 20399044 DOI: 10.1016/j.maturitas.2010.03.004]

6   **Richardson K**, Moore P, Pekdar J, Galvin R, Bennett K, Kenny RA. The Irish Longitudinal Study on Ageing. Polypharmacy in adults over 50 in Ireland: Opportunities for cost saving and improved healthcare [accessed 2012 Dec]. Available from: URL: http://tilda.tcd.ie/assets/pdf/PolypharmacyReport.pdf

7   **Qato DM**, Alexander GC, Conti RM, Johnson M, Schumm P, Lindau ST. Use of prescription and over-the-counter medications and dietary supplements among older adults in the United States. *JAMA* 2008; **300**: 2867-2878 [PMID: 19109115 DOI: 10.1001/jama.2008.892]

8   **Hanlon JT**, Fillenbaum GG, Ruby CM, Gray S, Bohannon A. Epidemiology of over-the-counter drug use in community dwelling elderly: United States perspective. *Drugs Aging* 2001; **18**: 123-131 [PMID: 11346126 DOI: 10.2165/00002512-200118020-00005]

9   **Cheung CK**, Wyman JF, Halcon LL. Use of complementary and alternative therapies in community-dwelling older adults. *J Altern Complement Med* 2007; **13**: 997-1006 [PMID: 18047447 DOI: 10.1089/acm.2007.0527]

10   **Wu CH**, Wang CC, Kennedy J. Changes in herb and dietary supplement use in the U.S. adult population: a comparison of the 2002 and 2007 National Health Interview Surveys. *Clin Ther* 2011; **33**: 1749-1758 [PMID: 22030445 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinthera.2011.09.024]

11   **Meyer BR**. Clinical pharmacology and ageing. In: Evans JG, Williams TF, Beattie BL, Michael JP, Wilcock G, editors. Oxford textbook of geriatric medicine. 2nd ed. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2003: 127-136

12   **Resnick NM**. Geriatric medicine. In: Fouci AS, Braunwald E, Isselbacher KJ, editors. Harrison's principles of internal medicine, vol 1. 14th ed. New York: McGraw-Hill Companies Inc, 1998: 37-46

13   **Woodhouse KW**, Wynne HA. Age-related changes in liver size and hepatic blood flow. The influence on drug metabolism in the elderly. *Clin Pharmacokinet* 1988; **15**: 287-294 [PMID: 3203484 DOI: 10.2165/00003088-198815050-00002]

14   **Mangoni AA**, Jackson SH. Age-related changes in pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics: basic principles and practical applications. *Br J Clin Pharmacol* 2004; **57**: 6-14 [PMID: 14678335 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2125.2003.02007.x]

15   **Cockcroft DW**, Gault MH. Prediction of creatinine clearance from serum creatinine. *Nephron* 1976; **16**: 31-41 [PMID: 1244564 DOI: 10.1159/000180580]

16   **Levey AS**, Bosch JP, Lewis JB, Greene T, Rogers N, Roth D. A more accurate method to estimate glomerular filtration rate from serum creatinine: a new prediction equation. Modification of Diet in Renal Disease Study Group. *Ann Intern Med* 1999; **130**: 461-470

[PMID: 10075613 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-130-6-199903160-000 02]

17   **Corsonello A**, Pedone C, Corica F, Mussi C, Carbonin P, Antonelli Incalzi R. Concealed renal insufficiency and adverse drug reactions in elderly hospitalized patients. *Arch Intern Med* 2005; **165**: 790-795 [PMID: 15824299 DOI: 10.1001/archinte.165.7.790]

18   **Bushardt RL**, Massey EB, Simpson TW, Ariail JC, Simpson KN. Polypharmacy: misleading, but manageable. *Clin Interv Aging* 2008; **3**: 383-389 [PMID: 18686760 DOI: 10.2147/CIA.S2468]

19   **Hanlon JT**, Schmader KE, Ruby CM, Weinberger M. Suboptimal prescribing in older inpatients and outpatients. *J Am Geriatr Soc* 2001; **49**: 200-209 [PMID: 11207875 DOI: 10.1046/j.1532-5415.2001.49042.x]

20   **Holbrook AM**, Pereira JA, Labiris R, McDonald H, Douketis JD, Crowther M, Wells PS. Systematic overview of warfarin and its drug and food interactions. *Arch Intern Med* 2005; **165**: 1095-1106 [PMID: 15911722 DOI: 10.1001/archinte.165.10.1095]

21   **Juurlink DN**, Mamdani MM, Kopp A, Rochon PA, Shulman KI, Redelmeier DA. Drug-induced lithium toxicity in the elderly: a population-based study. *J Am Geriatr Soc* 2004; **52**: 794-798 [PMID: 15086664 DOI: 10.1111/j.1532-5415.2004.52221.x]

22   **Shorr RI**, Ray WA, Daugherty JR, Griffin MR. Concurrent use of nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs and oral anticoagulants places elderly persons at high risk for hemorrhagic peptic ulcer disease. *Arch Intern Med* 1993; **153**: 1665-1670 [PMID: 8333804 DOI: 10.1001/archinte.1993.00410140047006]

23   **Battistella M**, Mamdami MM, Juurlink DN, Rabeneck L, Laupacis A. Risk of upper gastrointestinal hemorrhage in warfarin users treated with nonselective NSAIDs or COX-2 inhibitors. *Arch Intern Med* 2005; **165**: 189-192 [PMID: 15668365 DOI: 10.1001/archinte.165.2.189]

24   **Juurlink DN**, Mamdani M, Kopp A, Laupacis A, Redelmeier DA. Drug-drug interactions among elderly patients hospitalized for drug toxicity. *JAMA* 2003; **289**: 1652-1658 [PMID: 12672733 DOI: 10.1001/jama.289.13.1652]

25   **Onder G**, Pedone C, Landi F, Cesari M, Della Vedova C, Bernabei R, Gambassi G. Adverse drug reactions as cause of hospital admissions: results from the Italian Group of Pharmacoepidemiology in the Elderly (GIFA). *J Am Geriatr Soc* 2002; **50**: 1962-1968 [PMID: 12473007 DOI: 10.1046/j.1532-5415.2002.50607.x]

26   **Goldberg RM**, Mabee J, Chan L, Wong S. Drug-drug and drug-disease interactions in the ED: analysis of a high-risk population. *Am J Emerg Med* 1996; **14**: 447-450 [PMID: 8765105 DOI: 10.1016/S0735-6757(96)90147-3]

27   **Frank C**, Godwin M, Verma S, Kelly A, Birenbaum A, Seguin R, Anderson J. What drugs are our frail elderly patients taking? Do drugs they take or fail to take put them at increased risk of interactions and inappropriate medication use? *Can Fam Physician* 2001; **47**: 1198-1204 [PMID: 11421047]

28   **Prins MC**, Drenth-van Maanen AC, Kok RM, Jansen PA. Use of a structured medication history to establish medication use at admission to an old age psychiatric clinic: a prospective observational study. *CNS Drugs* 2013; **27**: 963-969 [PMID: 23959814 DOI: 10.1007/s40263-013-0103-9]

29   **Gurwitz JH**, Field TS, Harrold LR, Rothschild J, Debellis K, Seger AC, Cadoret C, Fish LS, Garber L, Kelleher M, Bates DW. Incidence and preventability of adverse drug events among older persons in the ambulatory setting. *JAMA* 2003; **289**: 1107-1116 [PMID: 12622580 DOI: 10.1001/jama.289.9.1107]

30   **Tamblyn RM**, McLeod PJ, Abrahamowicz M, Laprise R. Do too many cooks spoil the broth? Multiple physician involvement in medical management of elderly patients and potentially inappropriate drug combinations. *CMAJ* 1996; **154**: 1177-1184 [PMID: 8612253]

31   **Beard K**. Adverse reactions as a cause of hospital admission in the aged. *Drugs Aging* 1992; **2**: 356-367 [PMID: 1504448 DOI: 10.2165/00002512-199202040-00008]

32   **Lindblad CI**, Hanlon JT, Gross CR, Sloane RJ, Pieper CF, Hajjar ER, Ruby CM, Schmader KE. Clinically important drug-disease interactions and their prevalence in older adults. *Clin Ther* 2006; **28**: 1133-1143 [PMID: 16982290 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinthera.2006.08.006]

33   **Lindblad CI**, Artz MB, Pieper CF, Sloane RJ, Hajjar ER, Ruby CM, Schmader KE, Hanlon JT. Potential drug-disease interactions in frail, hospitalized elderly veterans. *Ann Pharmacother* 2005; **39**: 412-417 [PMID: 15687479 DOI: 10.1345.aph.1E467]

34   **Chin MH**, Wang LC, Jin L, Mulliken R, Walter J, Hayley DC, Karrison TG, Nerney MP, Miller A, Friedmann PD. Appropriateness of medication selection for older persons in an urban academic emergency department. *Acad Emerg Med* 1999; **6**: 1232-1242 [PMID: 10609925]

35   **Giron MS**, Wang HX, Bernsten C, Thorslund M, Winblad B, Fastbom J. The appropriateness of drug use in an older nondemented and demented population. *J Am Geriatr Soc* 2001; **49**: 277-283 [PMID: 11300238 DOI: 10.1046/j.1532-5415.2001.4930277.x]

36   **Gosney M**, Tallis R. Prescription of contraindicated and interacting drugs in elderly patients admitted to hospital. *Lancet* 1984; **2**: 564-567 [PMID: 6147611 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(84)90775-X]

37   **Hanlon JT**, Schmader KE, Boult C, Artz MB, Gross CR, Fillenbaum GG, Ruby CM, Garrard J. Use of inappropriate prescription drugs by older people. *J Am Geriatr Soc* 2002; **50**: 26-34 [PMID: 12028243 DOI: 10.1046/j.1532-5415.2002.50004.x]

38   **Spinewine A**, Schmader KE, Barber N, Hughes C, Lapane KL, Swine C, Hanlon JT. Appropriate prescribing in elderly people: how well can it be measured and optimised? *Lancet* 2007; **370**: 173-184 [PMID: 17630041 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(07)61091-5]

39   **Willcox SM**, Himmelstein DU, Woolhandler S. Inappropriate drug prescribing for the community-dwelling elderly. *JAMA* 1994; **272**: 292-296 [PMID: 8028142 DOI: 10.1001/jama.272.4.292]

40   **Ennis KJ**, Reichard RA. Maximizing drug compliance in the elderly. Tips for staying on top of your patients' medication use. *Postgrad Med* 1997; **102**: 211-213, 218, 223-224 [PMID: 9300029 DOI: 10.3810/pgm.1997.09.323]

41   **Hamilton H**, Gallagher P, Ryan C, Byrne S, O'Mahony D. Potentially inappropriate medications defined by STOPP criteria and the risk of adverse drug events in older hospitalized patients. *Arch Intern Med* 2011; **171**: 1013-1019 [PMID: 21670370 DOI: 10.1001/archinternmed.2011.215]

42   **Lindley CM**, Tully MP, Paramsothy V, Tallis RC. Inappropriate medication is a major cause of adverse drug reactions in elderly patients. *Age Ageing* 1992; **21**: 294-300 [PMID: 1514459 DOI: 10.1093/ageing/21.4.294]

43   **Lund BC**, Carnahan RM, Egge JA, Chrischilles EA, Kaboli PJ. Inappropriate prescribing predicts adverse drug events in older adults. *Ann Pharmacother* 2010; **44**: 957-963 [PMID: 20460558 DOI: 10.1345/aph.1M657]

44   **Page RL**, Ruscin JM. The risk of adverse drug events and hospital-related morbidity and mortality among older adults with potentially inappropriate medication use. *Am J Geriatr Pharmacother* 2006; **4**: 297-305 [PMID: 17296535 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjopharm.2006.12.008]

45   **Hanlon JT**, Schmader KE. What types of inappropriate prescribing predict adverse drug reactions in older adults? *Ann Pharmacother* 2010; **44**: 1110-1111 [PMID: 20460555 DOI: 10.1345/aph.1P182]

46   **Liu CL**, Peng LN, Chen YT, Lin MH, Liu LK, Chen LK. Potentially inappropriate prescribing (IP) for elderly medical inpatients in Taiwan: a hospital-based study. *Arch Gerontol Geriatr* 2012; **55**: 148-151 [PMID: 21820189 DOI: 10.1016/j.archger.2011.07.001]

47   **Rochon PA**, Berger PB, Gordon M. The evolution of clinical trials: inclusion and representation. *CMAJ* 1998; **159**: 1373-1374 [PMID: 9861206]

48   **Gallagher P**, O'Mahony D. STOPP (Screening Tool of Older Persons' potentially inappropriate Prescriptions): application to acutely ill elderly patients and comparison with Beers' criteria. *Age Ageing* 2008; **37**: 673-679 [PMID: 18829684 DOI: 10.1093/ageing/afn197]

49   **Rochon PA**, Gurwitz JH. Prescribing for seniors: neither too much nor too little. *JAMA* 1999; **282**: 113-115 [PMID: 10411177 DOI: 10.1001/jama.282.2.113]

50   **Wolf PA**, Abbott RD, Kannel WB. Atrial fibrillation as an independent risk factor for stroke: the Framingham Study. *Stroke* 1991; **22**: 983-988 [PMID: 1866765 DOI: 10.1161/01.STR.22.8.983]

51   **Lake FR**, Cullen KJ, de Klerk NH, McCall MG, Rosman DL. Atrial fibrillation and mortality in an elderly population. *Aust N Z J Med* 1989; **19**: 321-326 [PMID: 2789508 DOI: 10.1111/j.1445-5994.1989.tb00271.x]

52   **Furberg CD**, Psaty BM, Manolio TA, Gardin JM, Smith VE, Rautaharju PM. Prevalence of atrial fibrillation in elderly subjects (the Cardiovascular Health Study). *Am J Cardiol* 1994; **74**: 236-241 [PMID: 8037127 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9149(94)90363-8]

53   **Elliott RA**, Woodward MC, Oborne CA. Antithrombotic prescribing in atrial fibrillation: application of a prescribing indicator and multidisciplinary feedback to improve prescribing. *Age Ageing* 2002; **31**: 391-396 [PMID: 12242203 DOI: 10.1093/ageing/31.5.391]

54   **Galvin R**, Moriarty F, Cousins G, Cahir C, Motterlini N, Bradley M, Hughes CM, Bennett K, Smith SM, Fahey T, Kenny RA. Prevalence of potentially inappropriate prescribing and prescribing omissions in older Irish adults: findings from The Irish LongituDinal Study on Ageing study (TILDA). *Eur J Clin Pharmacol* 2014; **70**: 599-606 [PMID: 24493365 DOI: 10.1007/s00228-014-1651-8]

55   **Barry PJ**, Gallagher P, Ryan C, O'mahony D. START (screening tool to alert doctors to the right treatment)--an evidence-based screening tool to detect prescribing omissions in elderly patients. *Age Ageing* 2007; **36**: 632-638 [PMID: 17881418 DOI: 10.1093/ageing/afm118]

56   **Sengstock D**, Vaitkevicius P, Salama A, Mentzer RM. Under-prescribing and non-adherence to medications after coronary bypass surgery in older adults: strategies to improve adherence. *Drugs Aging* 2012; **29**: 93-103 [PMID: 22239673 DOI: 10.2165/11598500-000000000-00000]

57   **Murray MD**, Morrow DG, Weiner M, Clark DO, Tu W, Deer MM, Brater DC, Weinberger M. A conceptual framework to study medication adherence in older adults. *Am J Geriatr Pharmacother* 2004; **2**: 36-43 [PMID: 15555477 DOI: 10.1016/S1543-5946(04)90005-0]

58   Medicines and Healthcare products Regulatory Agency. Available from: URL: http://www.gov.uk/government/organisations/medicines-and-healthcare-products-regulatory-agency

59   Adverse Drug Events, Adverse Drug Reactions and Medication Errors. VA center for Medication Safety and VHA Pharmacy Benefits Management Strategic Healthcare Group and the Medical Advisory Panel Nov 2006. Available from: URL: http://www.va.gov/ms/professionals/medications/adverse_drug_reaction_faq.pdf

60   **Hanlon JT**, Schmader KE, Koronkowski MJ, Weinberger M, Landsman PB, Samsa GP, Lewis IK. Adverse drug events in high risk older outpatients. *J Am Geriatr Soc* 1997; **45**: 945-948 [PMID: 9256846]

61   **Hohl CM**, Dankoff J, Colacone A, Afilalo M. Polypharmacy, adverse drug-related events, and potential adverse drug interactions in elderly patients presenting to an emergency department. *Ann Emerg Med* 2001; **38**: 666-671 [PMID: 11719747 DOI: 10.1067/mem.2001.119456]

62   **O'Connor MN**, Gallagher P, Byrne S, O'Mahony D. Adverse drug reactions in older patients during hospitalisation: are they predictable? *Age Ageing* 2012; **41**: 771-776 [PMID: 22456465 DOI: 10.1093/ageing/afs046]

63   **Gurwitz JH**, Field TS, Avorn J, McCormick D, Jain S, Eckler M, Benser M, Edmondson AC, Bates DW. Incidence and preventability of adverse drug events in nursing homes. *Am J Med* 2000; **109**: 87-94 [PMID: 10967148 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9343(00)00451-4]

64   **Tangiisuran B**, Wright J, Van der Cammen T, Rajkumar C. Adverse drug reactions in elderly: challenges in identification and improving preventative strategies. *Age Ageing* 2009; **38**: 358-359 [PMID: 19420141 DOI: 10.1093/ageing/afp050]

65   **Pirmohamed M**, James S, Meakin S, Green C, Scott AK, Walley TJ, Farrar K, Park BK, Breckenridge AM. Adverse drug reactions as cause of admission to hospital: prospective analysis of 18 820 patients. *BMJ* 2004; **329**: 15-19 [PMID: 15231615 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.329.7456.15]

66   **Rawlins MD**, Thompson JP. Pathogenesis of adverse drug reactions. In: Davies DM, editor. Textbook of adverse drug reactions. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1977: 44 [DOI: 10.1017/S0033291700016500]

67   **Campbell SM**, Cantrill JA. Consensus methods in prescribing research. *J Clin Pharm Ther* 2001; **26**: 5-14 [PMID: 11286603 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2710.2001.00331.x]

68   **Anderson GM**, Beers MH, Kerluke K. Auditing prescription practice using explicit criteria and computerized drug benefit claims data. *J Eval Clin Pract* 1997; **3**: 283-294 [PMID: 9456428 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2753.1997.t01-1-00005.x]

69   **Boyd CM**, Darer J, Boult C, Fried LP, Boult L, Wu AW. Clinical practice guidelines and quality of care for older patients with multiple comorbid diseases: implications for pay for performance. *JAMA* 2005; **294**: 716-724 [PMID: 16091574 DOI: 10.1001/jama.294.6.716]

70   **Beers MH**, Ouslander JG, Rollingher I, Reuben DB, Brooks J, Beck JC. Explicit criteria for determining inappropriate medication use in nursing home residents. UCLA Division of Geriatric Medicine. *Arch Intern Med* 1991; **151**: 1825-1832 [PMID: 1888249 DOI: 10.1001/archinte.1991.00400090107019]

71   **Beers MH**. Explicit criteria for determining potentially inappropriate medication use by the elderly. An update. *Arch Intern Med* 1997; **157**: 1531-1536 [PMID: 9236554 DOI: 10.1001/archinte.1997.00440350031003]

72   **Fick DM**, Cooper JW, Wade WE, Waller JL, Maclean JR, Beers MH. Updating the Beers criteria for potentially inappropriate medication use in older adults: results of a US consensus panel of experts. *Arch Intern Med* 2003; **163**: 2716-2724 [PMID: 14662625 DOI: 10.1001/archinte.163.22.2716]

73   **American Geriatrics Society 2012 Beers Criteria Update Expert Panel.** American Geriatrics Society updated Beers Criteria for potentially inappropriate medication use in older adults. *J Am Geriatr Soc* 2012; **60**: 616-631 [PMID: 22376048 DOI: 10.1111/j.1532-5415.2012.03923.x]

74   **Gallagher P**, Ryan C, Byrne S, Kennedy J, O'Mahony D. STOPP (Screening Tool of Older Person's Prescriptions) and START (Screening Tool to Alert doctors to Right Treatment). Consensus validation. *Int J Clin Pharmacol Ther* 2008; **46**: 72-83 [PMID: 18218287 DOI: 10.5414/CPP46072]

75   **Gallagher PF**, O'Connor MN, O'Mahony D. Prevention of potentially inappropriate prescribing for elderly patients: a randomized controlled trial using STOPP/START criteria. *Clin Pharmacol Ther* 2011; **89**: 845-854 [PMID: 21508941 DOI: 10.1038/clpt.2011.44]

76   **Hanlon JT**, Schmader KE, Samsa GP, Weinberger M, Uttech KM, Lewis IK, Cohen HJ, Feussner JR. A method for assessing drug therapy appropriateness. *J Clin Epidemiol* 1992; **45**: 1045-1051 [PMID: 1474400 DOI: 10.1016/0895-4356(92)90144-C]

77   **Samsa GP**, Hanlon JT, Schmader KE, Weinberger M, Clipp EC, Uttech KM, Lewis IK, Landsman PB, Cohen HJ. A summated score for the medication appropriateness index: development and assessment of clinimetric properties including content validity. *J Clin Epidemiol* 1994; **47**: 891-896 [PMID: 7730892 DOI: 10.1016/0895-4356(94)90192-9]

78   **Hajjar ER**, Hanlon JT, Sloane RJ, Lindblad CI, Pieper CF, Ruby CM, Branch LC, Schmader KE. Unnecessary drug use in frail older people at hospital discharge. *J Am Geriatr Soc* 2005; **53**: 1518-1523 [PMID: 16137281 DOI: 10.1111/j.1532-5415.2005.53523.x]

79   **Hanlon JT**, Artz MB, Pieper CF, Lindblad CI, Sloane RJ, Ruby CM, Schmader KE. Inappropriate medication use among frail elderly inpatients. *Ann Pharmacother* 2004; **38**: 9-14 [PMID: 14742785 DOI: 10.1345/aph.1D313]

80   **Lipton HL**, Bero LA, Bird JA, McPhee SJ. The impact of clinical pharmacists' consultations on physicians' geriatric drug prescribing. A randomized controlled trial. *Med Care* 1992; **30**: 646-658 [PMID: 1614233 DOI: 10.1097/00005650-199207000-00006]

81   **Steinman MA**, Landefeld CS, Rosenthal GE, Berthenthal D, Sen S, Kaboli PJ. Polypharmacy and prescribing quality in older people.

J Am Geriatr Soc 2006; **54**: 1516-1523 [PMID: 17038068 DOI: 10.1111/j.1532-5415.2006.00889.x]

82   **Blanco-Reina E**, Ariza-Zafra G, Ocafia-Riola R, Leon-Ortiz M. 2012 American Geriatrics Society Beers criteria: enhanced applicability for detecting potentially inappropriate medications in European older adults? A comparison with the Screening Tool of Older Person's Potentially inappropriate Prescriptions. *J Am Geriatr Soc* 2014; **62**: 1217-1223 [PMID: 24917083 DOI: 10.111/jps.12891]

83   **Pasina L**, Djade CD, Tettamanti M, Franchi C, Salerno F, Corrao S, Marengoni A, Marcucci M, Mannucci PM, Nobili A. Prevalence of potentially inappropriate medications and risk of adverse clinical outcome in a cohort of hospitalized elderly patients: results from the REPOSI Study. *J Clin Pharm Ther* 2014; **39**: 511-515 [PMID: 24845066 DOI: 10.1111/jcpt.12178]

84   **Schmader KE**, Hanlon JT, Pieper CF, Sloane R, Ruby CM, Twersky J, Francis SD, Branch LG, Lindblad CI, Artz M, Weinberger M, Feussner JR, Cohen HJ. Effects of geriatric evaluation and management on adverse drug reactions and suboptimal prescribing in the frail elderly. *Am J Med* 2004; **116**: 394-401 [PMID: 15006588 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjmed.2003.10.031]

85   **Saltvedt I**, Spigset O, Ruths S, Fayers P, Kaasa S, Sletvold O. Patterns of drug prescription in a geriatric evaluation and management unit as compared with the general medical wards: a randomised study. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol* 2005; **61**: 921-928 [PMID: 16307267 DOI: 10.1007/s00228-005-0046-2]

86   **Crotty M**, Halbert J, Rowett D, Giles L, Birks R, Williams H, Whitehead C. An outreach geriatric medication advisory service in residential aged care: a randomised controlled trial of case conferencing. *Age Ageing* 2004; **33**: 612-617 [PMID: 15385274 DOI: 10.1093/ageing/afh213]

87   **Strandberg TE**, Pitkala KH, Berglind S, Nieminen MS, Tilvis RS. Multifactorial intervention to prevent recurrent cardiovascular events in patients 75 years or older: the Drugs and Evidence-Based Medicine in the Elderly (DEBATE) study: a randomized, controlled trial. *Am Heart J* 2006; **152**: 585-592 [PMID: 16923435 DOI: 10.1016/j.ahj.2006.02.006]

88   **Holland R**, Smith R, Harvey I. Where now for pharmacist led medication review? *J Epidemiol Community Health* 2006; **60**: 92-93 [PMID: 16415254 DOI: 10.1136/jech.2005.035188]

89   **Hanlon JT**, Weinberger M, Samsa GP, Schmader KE, Uttech KM, Lewis IK, Cowper PA, Landsman PB, Cohen HJ, Feussner JR. A randomized, controlled trial of a clinical pharmacist intervention to improve inappropriate prescribing in elderly outpatients with polypharmacy. *Am J Med* 1996; **100**: 428-437 [PMID: 8610730 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9343(97)89519-8]

90   **Crotty M**, Rowett D, Spurling L, Giles LC, Phillips PA. Does the addition of a pharmacist transition coordinator improve evidence-based medication management and health outcomes in older adults moving from the hospital to a long-term care facility? Results of a randomized, controlled trial. *Am J Geriatr Pharmacother* 2004; **2**: 257-264 [PMID: 15903284 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjopharm.2005.01.001]

91   **Spinewine A**, Swine C, Dhillon S, Lambert P, Nachega JB, Wilmotte L, Tulkens PM. Effect of a collaborative approach on the quality of prescribing for geriatric inpatients: a randomized, controlled trial. *J Am Geriatr Soc* 2007; **55**: 658-665 [PMID: 17493184 DOI: 10.1111/j.1532-5415.2007.01132.x]

92   **Eleazer GP**, Doshi R, Wieland D, Boland R, Hirth VA. Geriatric content in medical school curricula: results of a national survey. *J Am Geriatr Soc* 2005; **53**: 136-140 [PMID: 15667390 DOI: 10.1111/j.1532-5415.2005.53023.x]

93   **Bragg EJ**, Warshaw GA. ACGME requirements for geriatrics medicine curricula in medical specialties: progress made and progress needed. *Acad Med* 2005; **80**: 279-285 [PMID: 15734811 DOI: 10.1097/00001888-200503000-00014]

94   **Warshaw GA**, Bragg EJ. The training of geriatricians in the United States: three decades of progress. *J Am Geriatr Soc* 2003; **51**: S338-S345 [PMID: 12823665 DOI: 10.1046/j.1365-2389.2003.51345.x]

95   **van Eijk ME**, Avorn J, Porsius AJ, de Boer A. Reducing prescribing of highly anticholinergic antidepressants for elderly people: randomised trial of group versus individual academic detailing. *BMJ* 2001; **322**: 654-657 [PMID: 11250852 DOI: 10.1136/bmj.322.7287.654]

96   **Stein CM**, Griffin MR, Taylor JA, Pichert JW, Brandt KD, Ray WA. Educational program for nursing home physicians and staff to reduce use of non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs among nursing home residents: a randomized controlled trial. *Med Care* 2001; **39**: 436-445 [PMID: 11317092 DOI: 10.1097/00005650-200105000-00004]

97   **Pimlott NJ**, Hux JE, Wilson LM, Kahan M, Li C, Rosser WW. Educating physicians to reduce benzodiazepine use by elderly patients: a randomized controlled trial. *CMAJ* 2003; **168**: 835-839 [PMID: 12668540]

98   **Fick DM**, Maclean JR, Rodriguez NA, Short L, Heuvel RV, Waller JL, Rogers RL. A randomized study to decrease the use of potentially inappropriate medications among community-dwelling older adults in a southeastern managed care organization. *Am J Manag Care* 2004; **10**: 761-768 [PMID: 15623266]

99   **Lutters M**, Harbarth S, Janssens JP, Freudiger H, Herrmann F, Michel JP, Vogt N. Effect of a comprehensive, multidisciplinary, educational program on the use of antibiotics in a geriatric university hospital. *J Am Geriatr Soc* 2004; **52**: 112-116 [PMID: 14687324 DOI: 10.1111/j.1532-5415.2004.52019.x]

100   **Crotty M**, Whitehead C, Rowett D, Halbert J, Weller D, Finucane P, Esterman A. An outreach intervention to implement evidence based practice in residential care: a randomized controlled trial [ISRCTN67855475]. *BMC Health Serv Res* 2004; **4**: 6 [PMID: 15066200 DOI: 10.1186/1472-6963-4-6]

101   **Rahme E**, Choquette D, Beaulieu M, Bessette L, Joseph L, Toubouti Y, LeLorier J. Impact of a general practitioner educational intervention on osteoarthritis treatment in an elderly population. *Am J Med* 2005; **118**: 1262-1270 [PMID: 16271911 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjmed.2005.03.026]

102   **Ross S**, Loke YK. Do educational interventions improve prescribing by medical students and junior doctors? A systematic review. *Br J Clin Pharmacol* 2009; **67**: 662-670 [PMID: 19594535 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2125.2009.03395.x]

103   **Bates DW**, Gawande AA. Improving safety with information technology. *N Engl J Med* 2003; **348**: 2526-2534 [PMID: 12815139 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMsa020847]

104   **Garg AX**, Adhikari NK, McDonald H, Rosas-Arellano MP, Devereaux PJ, Beyene J, Sam J, Haynes RB. Effects of computerized clinical decision support systems on practitioner performance and patient outcomes: a systematic review. *JAMA* 2005; **293**: 1223-1238 [PMID: 15755945 DOI: 10.1001/jama.293.10.1223]

105   **Weiner M**, Callahan CM, Tierney WM, Overhage JM, Mamlin B, Dexter PR, McDonald CJ. Using information technology to improve the health care of older adults. *Ann Intern Med* 2003; **139**: 430-436 [PMID: 12965971 DOI: 10.7326/0003-4819-139-5_Part_2-200309021-00010]

106   **Tamblyn R**, Huang A, Perreault R, Jacques A, Roy D, Hanley J, McLeod P, Laprise R. The medical office of the 21st century (MOXXI): effectiveness of computerized decision-making support in reducing inappropriate prescribing in primary care. *CMAJ* 2003; **169**: 549-556 [PMID: 12975221]

107   **Koppel R**, Metlay JP, Cohen A, Abaluck B, Localio AR, Kimmel SE, Strom BL. Role of computerized physician order entry systems in facilitating medication errors. *JAMA* 2005; **293**: 1197-1203 [PMID: 15755942 DOI: 10.1001/jama.293.10.1197]

108   **Zhan C**, Hicks RW, Blanchette CM, Keyes MA, Cousins DD. Potential benefits and problems with computerized prescriber order entry: analysis of a voluntary medication error-reporting database. *Am J Health Syst Pharm* 2006; **63**: 353-358 [PMID: 16452521 DOI: 10.2146/ajhp050379]

109   **Horsky J**, Kuperman GJ, Patel VL. Comprehensive analysis of a medication dosing error related to CPOE. *J Am Med Inform Assoc* 2005; **12**: 377-382 [PMID: 15802485 DOI: 10.1197/jamia.M1740]

110   Development and clinical trials of a new Software ENgine for the Assessment & Optimization of drug and non-drug Therapy in Older

peRsons. Available from: URL: http://www.senator-project.eu/
111 **University College Cork**. Clinical Trial of a New Software ENgine for the Assessment & Optimization of Drug and Non-drug Therapy in Older peRsons (SENATOR). In: ClinicalTrials.gov [Internet]. Bethesda (MD): National Library of Medicine (US). [updated 2014 Mar 28]. Available from: URL: https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02097654 NLM Identifier: NCT02097654
112 **Baystate Medical Center**. Using Clinical Alerts to Decrease Inappropriate Medication Prescribing. In: ClinicalTrials.gov [Internet]. Bethesda (MD): National Library of Medicine (US). [updated 2014 Mar 7]. Available from: URL: http://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT01034761 NLM Identifier: NCT01034761
113 **McLeod PJ**, Huang AR, Tamblyn RM, Gayton DC. Defining inappropriate practices in prescribing for elderly people: a national consensus panel. *CMAJ* 1997; **156**: 385-391 [PMID: 9033421]
114 **Naugler CT**, Brymer C, Stolee P, Arcese ZA. Development and validation of an improving prescribing in the elderly tool. *Can J Clin Pharmacol* 2000; **7**: 103-107 [PMID: 10958706]
115 **Zhan C**, Sangl J, Bierman AS, Miller MR, Friedman B, Wickizer SW, Meyer GS. Potentially inappropriate medication use in the community-dwelling elderly: findings from the 1996 Medical Expenditure Panel Survey. *JAMA* 2001; **286**: 2823-2829 [PMID: 11735757 DOI: 10.1001/jama.286.22.2823]

116 **Laroche ML**, Charmes JP, Merle L. Potentially inappropriate medications in the elderly: a French consensus panel list. *Eur J Clin Pharmacol* 2007; **63**: 725-731 [PMID: 17554532 DOI: 10.1007/s00228-007-0324-2]
117 **Rancourt C**, Moisan J, Baillargeon L, Verreault R, Laurin D, Grégoire JP. Potentially inappropriate prescriptions for older patients in long-term care. *BMC Geriatr* 2004; **4**: 9 [PMID: 15488143 DOI: 10.1186/1471-2318-4-9]
118 **Basger BJ**, Chen TF, Moles RJ. Inappropriate medication use and prescribing indicators in elderly Australians: development of a prescribing indicators tool. *Drugs Aging* 2008; **25**: 777-793 [PMID: 18729548 DOI: 10.2165/00002512-200825090-00004]
119 **Rognstad S**, Brekke M, Fetveit A, Spigset O, Wyller TB, Straand J. The Norwegian General Practice (NORGEP) criteria for assessing potentially inappropriate prescriptions to elderly patients. A modified Delphi study. *Scand J Prim Health Care* 2009; **27**: 153-159 [PMID: 19462339 DOI: 10.1080/02813430902992215]
120 **Holt S**, Schmiedl S, Thürmann PA. Potentially inappropriate medications in the elderly: the PRISCUS list. *Dtsch Arztebl Int* 2010; **107**: 543-551 [PMID: 20827352 DOI: 10.3238/arztebl.2010.0543]
121 **Winit-Watjana W**, Sakulrat P, Kespichayawattana J. Criteria for high-risk medication use in Thai older patients. *Arch Gerontol Geriatr* 2008; **47**: 35-51 [PMID: 17675177 DOI: 10.1016/j.archger.2007.06.006]

MINIREVIEWS

Therapeutic options and vaccine development in the treatment of leishmaniasis

Jill E Weatherhead, Laila Woc-Colburn

Jill E Weatherhead, Laila Woc-Colburn, National School of Tropical Medicine, Baylor College of Medicine, Houston, TX 77030, United States
Jill E Weatherhead, Laila Woc-Colburn, Department of Medicine, Baylor College of Medicine, Houston, TX 77030, United States
Jill E Weatherhead, Department of Pediatrics, Baylor College of Medicine, Houston, TX 77030, United States

Author contributions: All the authors contributed to the paper.

Conflict-of-interest: The authors declare that they have no competing interests.

Correspondence to: Laila Woc-Colburn, MD, DTM&H, FACP, Department of Medicine, Baylor College of Medicine, Room BCM164A, One Baylor Plaza, BCM113, Houston, TX 77030, United States. woccolbu@bcm.edu
Telephone: +1-713-7981199
Fax: +1-713-7982299

Abstract

Early treatment of leishmaniasis is critical to achieve cure, prevent psychological and social distress, and prevent transmission of disease. Untreated Leishmaniasis-cutaneous leishmaniasis, mucocutaneous leishmaniasis and visceral leishmaniasis - results in disfiguring scars and high rates of morbidity and mortality in highly endemic regions of the world. However, cure rates with available therapeutics are limited due to cost, therapeutic toxicity and the growing rate of resistance. New therapeutic targets for medications and vaccine development are under investigation to provide improved healing and efficacy for the treatment of *Leishmania spp*.

Key words: Leishmania; Visceral; Cutaneous; Mucocutaneous; Amphoterecin; Vaccine

Core tip: Leishmaniasis is an old disease, hard to diagnose and even harder to treat. Limited treatment is available. Early treatment of leishmaniasis is critical to achieve cure, prevent psychological and social distress, and prevent transmission of disease. Untreated Leishmaniasis - cutaneous leishmaniasis, mucocutaneous leishmaniasis and visceral leishmaniasis - results in disfiguring scars and high rates of morbidity and mortality in highly endemic regions of the world. Cure rates with available therapeutics are limited due to cost, therapeutic toxicity and the growing rate of resistance. There is an emergent need for development of new therapeutic options with improved tolerability, improved healing process minimizing scarring, and improved efficacy amongst all *Leishmania spp*.

INTRODUCTION

Leishmania spp. are intracellular protozoa transmitted between mammals by the bite of a female sandfly, genus *Phlebotmus* in the Old World (the Middle East, Asia, Eastern Europe, Western Europe, and Africa) and genus *Lutzomyia* in the New World (Central and South America)[1,2]. A variety of animals, including humans, can be infected with *Leishmania spp.* and many animals serve as natural reservoirs[1]. Leishmaniasis is endemic in 98 countries with an estimated prevalence of 12 million people infected and 350 million people at risk of infection[1-4]. There are more than 20 known *Leishmania spp.* that cause human disease[1,5,6]. *Leishmania spp.* cause four main human syndromes: Cutaneous leishmaniasis (CL), diffuse cutaneous leishmaniasis (DCL), mucocutaneous leishmaniasis (MCL) and visceral leishmaniasis (VL). The clinical syndrome varies based on the *Leishmania spp.*, the geographic location and the host immune system[1,6,7]. However, all forms of leishmaniasis are severely debilitating and affect the livelihood of those living in endemic areas of the world. An estimated loss of 2357000 disability-adjusted life years (DALYs) is attributed to leishmaniasis alone[7,8].

CL accounts for approximately 1.2 million new cases of Leishmaniasis per year reported in 83 countries[4]. The majority of CL cases occur in Afghanistan, Algeria, Brazil, Colombia, Iran, Peru, Ethiopia, Costa Rica, North Sudan, Saudi Arabia and Syria[3,6,8,9]. CL is typically caused by *Leishmania major* (*L. major*), *Leishmania tropica* (*L. tropica*), *Leishmania infantum* (*L. infantum*) and *Leishmania donovani* (*L. donovani* in the old world and *L. mexicana*, *L. amazonensis*), *Leishmania guyanensis* (*L. guyanensis*), *Leishmania panamensis* (*L. panamensis*) and *Leishmania braziliensis* (*L. braziliensis*) in the new world[1,8]. It may present as a single ulcerative or nodular lesion near the site of the sandfly bite on uncovered areas of the body[1]. In some cases, however, individuals may have a more severe diffuse infection called DCL, with nodular lesions of variable size in various locations (DCL)[1,10]. Lesions evolve over weeks to months and may resolve spontaneously over months to years. Treatment of primary CL depends on the *Leishmania spp.*, the geographic region, and the clinical presentation[9]. For many species of leishmaniasis, cutaneous disease is self-limiting and will be cured over time. In Old World leishmaniasis, *L. major* spontaneously heals in 40%-70% of cases at 3 mo and close to 100% of cases by 12 mo, whereas *L. tropica* spontaneously resolves in less than 1% of cases at 3 mo and close to 100% by 3 years[9]. In New World leishmaniasis, *L. mexicana* may resolve spontaneously within 3-4 mo but *L. braziliensis*, *L. panamensis, L. guyanensis* and *L. peruviana* may take more than 6 mo to self-resolve[9]. After resolution patients may be left with disfiguring cutaneous scars[1]. Scarring caused by CL has a distinctive appearance particularly when involving sensitive areas such as the face. Scars often have a central depressed surface that is covered by rounded hyper-pigmented skin[11]. Years after spontaneous resolution, CL lesions have the potential to relapse, a condition known as leishmaniasis recidivans[1]. Despite the possibility a lesion will self-heal, initiation of treatment, either systemic or local therapy, may hasten resolution of disease and may prevent further transformation to MCL[1].

MCL occurs most commonly due to progression of CL caused by *L. braziliensis*. Metastasis of the parasite into the mucosal tissue causes significant tissue destruction and disfigurement[1,9]. Almost 90% of MCL occurs in Bolivia, Brazil, and Peru; up to 30% of *L. braziliensis* cases progress to mucocutaneous disease[6,9]. MCL typically involves the nose, palate, pharynx, and larynx and occurs months to years after resolution of the primary lesions[1]. Ulcerated lesions of the nasal septum, which may lead to perforation and deformities of the nasal pyramid, larynx, and pharynx, can cause significant morbidity and social rejection[12]. Mucocutaneous disease always requires treatment for cure; however, it may be refractory to current available therapeutic chemotherapy. With continued destruction of mucosal membranes, patients are at risk for secondary super-infections and severe malnutrition[1]. Because of the risk of secondary morbidity and mortality, systemic treatment is preferred[9].

VL, also known as Kala azar, is caused by *L. donovani* in India, Pakistan, China and several countries in Africa and by *L. infantum* in the Mediterranean region and in the New World[1,8]. VL occurs secondary to proliferation of parasites in macrophages in the liver, spleen and bone marrow which causes hepatosplenomegaly and bone marrow suppression with subsequent pancytopenia and immunosuppression[1]. There are an estimated 200000-400000 new cases of VL each year with a case fatality rate of more than 10%[3,4,6]. Bangladesh, Brazil, Ethiopia, India, South Sudan and Sudan report over 90% of all VL cases worldwide[4,6]. Without treatment, VL is almost universally fatal[1,8]. Systemic therapy is the current standard of care.

An appropriate cellular immune response is essential for the control and eradication of leishmania in the human host. With exposure to leishmania, the host T cells produce cytokines, specifically interferon gamma (INF-γ) and tumor necrosis factor-alpha (TNF-α), that activate host macrophages[12]. The activation of host macrophages produces nitric oxide (NO), peri-nitrate and oxygen derivates that are directly involved with leishmania killing and eradication[7,12]. Patients with immunocompromised conditions such as human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) are at increased risk of progressive, debilitating disease states. Interestingly, patients who recover from leishmaniasis often have a spectrum of resistance to re-infection or acquired anti-leishmanial immunity. Host resistance is mediated by both innate and adaptive immune responses including activation of macrophages, dendritic cells, and antigen specific CD4 and CD8 T cells[7]. These host responses allow for immunity against re-infection and

highlight possible new avenues for therapeutic drug development.

CURRENT TREATMENT

Leishmania spp. vary in their sensitivity to available drugs[8]. The choice of treatment is based on the region where the infection was acquired, local experience with treatment, and known species resistance patterns[8]. Currently the gold standard therapy for most forms of leishmaniasis remains pentavalent antimony (Sb^v), meglumine antimoniate, or sodium stibogluconate[1]. The mechanism of action against *Leishmania spp.* is still poorly understood and thought to act on the parasite indirectly through augmentation of the host's macrophage parasiticidal activity[1]. Sb^v can be administered by intravenous (typical dose of 20 mg/kg), intramuscular or intra-lesion route and typically requires at least 20-28 d course of treatment[1,8,9,13]. Despite its common use, Sb^v have different cure rates between species, ranging from 60%-80%[8,9,11]. Furthermore, recent studies involving the use of Sb^v in children showed significantly lower cure rates and significantly higher metabolic elimination of the drug compared with adults[14]. Adverse effects are also common with Sb^v and include cardiotoxicity such as arrhythmias, QTc prolongation, and sudden cardiac death; elevated aminotransaminases; elevated pancreatic enzymes; pancytopenia; and electrolyte abnormalities[1]. Because of these adverse effects, administration of Sb^v is highly restricted in pregnant and lactating women, infants, and patient with drug sensitivities[15]. Intralesional injections of Sb^v are the most established local therapy available for the treatment of CL and do not cause the same systemic adverse effects as intravenous and intramuscular formulations. However, there is a lack of standardization of dosing and treatment regimens with varying cure rates among geographic regions due to the development of resistance[16]. While intralesional injections do not cause significant systemic adverse effects, local therapy can cause itching, erythema, pain, and hyperpigmentation of the lesion, and put the patient at increased risk of bacterial super infection[9]. Sb^v chemotherapeutic agents currently available for the treatment of Leishmaniasis are toxic, costly, and not readily available in every community, and require a long duration of therapy as well as daily systemic administration with medical monitoring. These limitations promote poor treatment adherence within a community[1,17]. Due to the wider geographic distribution of leishmaniasis, the toxic chemoprophylaxis treatment available and the emergence of drug resistant *Leishmania* strains, new antimicrobial therapies and strategies are being developed to address the growing problem[1,3,7].

SYSTEMIC TREATMENT

Systemic therapies are recommend in complex CL,

Table 1 Common therapeutic options for treatment of leishmaniasis

Medication	Disease	Dosing	Adverse effects	Ref.
Antimony Sodium stibogluconate	CL, VL	IM, IV, IL	IM/IV: Cardiotoxicity, elevated aminotransaminases, elevated pancreatic enzymes, pancytopenia, electrolyte abnormalities IL: pain, hyperpigmentation, risk of bacterial infection	[1,13,15,89]
Amphotericin	CL, MCL, VL	IV	Renal insufficiency, electrolyte abnormalities	[1,13,18,20]
Pentamidine	CL, VL	IM, IV	Hypoglycemia, elevated amiontransaminases, nausea, vomiting, bone marrow toxicity, nephrotoxicity, cardiotoxicity	[1,13,22,23]
Miltefosine	VL, CL, MCL	PO	Vomiting, nausea, diarrhea, teratogen	[1,13,15,18]
Paromomycin	CL, VL	IM, PO, topically	Ototoxicity, vestibular instability, nephrotoxicity	[1,22]
Pentoxyfylline	CL, MCL	PO	Nausea, vomiting, headache, dizziness	[27]
Azoles	CL, VL	PO	Hepatic toxicity	[1,17]
Imiquimod	CL	Topical	Irritation at site of application	[1,11]
Thermotherapy	CL	Topical	Pain, post-inflammatory hyperpigmentation	[16,17,30]
Cryotherapy	CL	Topical	Local blistering, secondary bacterial infection	[8,16]
Phototherapy	CL	Topical	Pain	[30]

CL: Cutaneous leishmaniasis; VL: Visceral leishmaniasis; MCL: Mucocutaneous leishmaniasis; IM: Intramuscular; IV: Intravenous; IL: Intralesional; PO: Oral.

MCL and VL[9] (Table 1). However, current alternative systemic agents to Sb^v are limited.

Amphotericin B

More recent clinical trials and clinical experience have highlighted the use of polyenes such as Amphotericin B in the treatment of leishmaniasis. Both liposomal and deoxycholate formulations have been found to have high affinity to the ergosterol membrane of *Leishmania spp.* and create membrane instability[1,18]. In areas of India, Bangladesh, Bhutan and Nepal where high resistance of Sb^v exists, Amphotericin B is the therapeutic drug of choice for VL. In these studies, using high doses of Amphotericin 10 mg/kg and 15 mg/kg demonstrated cure rates of 96% and 100% after a single dose[8,18]. In other areas where resistance to Sb^v is not as high but drug toxicity is a concern, such as in patients co-infected with *Leishmania spp.*

and HIV, and in travelers returning from regions where VL is endemic, Liposomal Amphotericin B again is the recommended drug of choice[8]. Treatment of CL and MCL caused by *L. braziliensis* requires systemic therapy. Studies comparing Liposomal Amphotericin B to Sb[v] have shown superior results when treated with Liposomal Amphotericin B[19,20]. There is no standard dosing regimen for treatment of VL with Amphotericin B; however, lower dosing using Liposomal Amphotericin B at 3 mg/kg per day administered intravenously for days 1-5, 14 and 21 (total 21 mg/kg) has been used to treat CL, although further studies to evaluate optimal dose and duration are still needed[13,20,21]. Despite the promising results of Amphotericin formulations there remain many limitations including the need for intravenous administration, the significant cost of the medication, the limited availability of the medication, the emergence of *Leishmania spp*. resistance, and the significant adverse effect profile including renal insufficiency and electrolyte abnormalities[1,18]. Despite its high cost, cost analysis studies have shown the expense for total treatment with a shorter duration of therapy with Liposomal Amphotericin is less than with full treatment with Sb[v][19].

Pentamidine

Pentamidine isethionate is an intravenous or intramuscular formulation used to treat cutaneous Leishmaniasis caused by *L. amazonensis, L. guyanensis, L. panamensis* and *L. peruviana*. Pentamidine also serves as an alternative agent for patients with recurrence of cutaneous *L. braziliensis* or an alternative agent for recurrent VL after treatment failure with Sb[v] or amphotericin[9,11]. The mechanism of action remains unknown but studies suggest the drug may target protozoa mitochondria and interfere with biosynthesis of macromolecules[1,9,22]. The optimal dosing of pentamidine is currently unknown with proposed dosing of 2-4 mg/kg per day *im* or *iv* for 21 d[13]. Adverse effects of Pentamidine include hypoglycemia, worsening of diabetes, elevated aminotransaminases, musculoskeletal pain, anorexia, nausea, vomiting, headaches, bone marrow toxicity, nephrotoxicity, and cardiotoxicity with arrhythmias, heart failure and hypotension[1,22,23]. The extensive side effect profile limits the use of pentamidine.

Paromomycin

An alternative systemic agent against leishmaniasis is Paromomycin, an aminoglycoside antibiotic that blocks protein synthesis through binding of 16S ribosomal RNA. Paromomycin can be administered intramuscularly, orally, or topically[1,22]. Paromomycin has been shown to be effective against CL and VL in areas with susceptible protozoa, although cure rates vary greatly amongst geographic locations[16]. It can be used alone or in combination with Sb[v] or amphotericin B and has been associated with increasing time to resolution of lesions caused specifically by *L. major*[1]. A

Phase 3 clinical study evaluating the efficacy of topical combination therapy with 15% Paromomycin and 0.5% Gentamicin applied to each lesion once a day for 20 d to treat CL has shown promise in advancing cure rates with reduced systemic absorption[24,25]. Phase 2 trials using topical paromomycin plus gentamicin formulation showed a 6 mo cure rate of 87% compared to paromomycin alone at 60%[26]. Despite these advancements, paromomycin has limiting adverse effects of systemic formulations, which include ototoxicity, vestibular instability and nephrotoxicity, as well as with the topical formulations, which include erythema, pain, edema as well as ototoxicity[1,22].

Miltefosine

Miltefosine, an alkylphosphocholine, is a promising oral agent, recently approved by the United States Food and Drug Administration (FDA) to treat VL, complicated CL and MCL cases that do not respond to first line therapeutics[1,23-25,27]. In adults, the treatment regimen consists of one 50-mg oral capsule twice a day for 28 consecutive days[13]. The oral formulation of miltefosine alleviates the risk, cost, and time demands of daily intramuscular or intravenous injections[14,18]. The mechanism of action is associated with interruption of phospholipid biosynthesis and alkyl-lipid metabolism in specific *Leishmania spp*[22]. As with other therapeutics to treat leishmania, the efficacy of Miltefosine is variable based on species and geographic location[14]. Studies in children specifically showed promising results comparing Miltefosine to the standard of care, Sb[v], for treatment of CL[14]. Miltefosine has been shown to be effective against CL by *L. major* but may also be effective in new world CL with *L. panamensis*[1]. Additional studies have shown improved cure rates in treating VL in India particularly when used in combination with paromomycin[1,15]. However, other New World studies have shown inferiority of miltefosine to Sb[v] in the treatment of CL in Colombia. The finding of inferiority in this particular study was thought to be species specific. Treatment of CL with Miltefosine in Colombia demonstrated a cure rate of only 69.8%, which fell to 49% when administered to patient with lesions caused by *L. braziliensis*[15]. Miltefosine tends to be well tolerated with minimal non-specific adverse effects, including vomiting, nausea, diarrhea, and headache. However, miltefosine is a teratogen and an abortifacient and must be used with caution in females of reproductive age[1,18]. Females of reproduction age who are taking Miltefosine should be provided with contraception during the course of treatment as well as for 5 mo post-therapy[13,15]. Miltefosine also remains costly and requires prolonged therapy presenting additional barriers to therapeutic adherence[15].

Pentoxifylline

Pentoxyfylline, a xanthine derivative, is an orally administered immunomodulator that is an attractive therapeutic alternative for CL and MCL. *In vitro* there is

no evidence that pentoxifylline directly kills *Leishmania spp*. but the major contribution of pentoxifylline is reduction of the TNF-α mediated tissue damage caused by *Leishmania spp*[28]. Pentoxyfylline blocks the transcription of TNF-α mRNA from macrophages leading to reduction in TNF-α synthesis, decreases leukocyte migration, and decreases leukocyte adhesion[28]. Pentoxifylline also causes significant vasodilation and increase in red blood cell flexibility for improved circulation and migration of host defense cells to the damaged tissue[12,28]. While Pentoxyfylline has been demonstrated to reduce the concentration of TNF-α in damaged tissue caused by *Leishmania spp*. in CL and MCL, monotherapy has not been associated with cure[28]. Pentoxyfylline is more commonly used as an adjuvant immunomodulating therapeutic agent[28]. In combination therapy regimens, pentoxifylline allows for reduction in the inflammatory response and promotes improved defense against protozoa by Sb^v[12]. Recent studies have shown higher cure rates and reduction of time to cure using combination of Sb^v and pentoxifylline. The reduction in time to cure has allowed for shorter Sb^v dosing regimens reducing the risk of adverse effects, the total cost of therapy, and the total hospital stay associated with prolonged Sb$^{v[8,12,28]}$. Along with the improved efficacy, pentoxifylline is associated with minimal adverse effects even with chronic use[12]. Adverse effects including nausea, vomiting, dizziness and headache occur in less than 2.2% of patients[28]. Additionally there are reports of safe use in children although large clinical trials are currently not available[12].

Azoles

Azoles, *e.g.,* posaconazole, itraconazole, fluconazole and ketoconazole, are oral therapeutic alternatives for treatment of Leishmaniasis. Azoles inhibit ergosterol synthesis through alteration of sterol demethylation causing the accumulation of sterols[1,17,27,29]. Decreased production of ergosterol, which composes the cell wall, inhibits leishmania growth and causes structural instability of the protozoa[27,29]. *In vitro* murine studies suggest azoles have anti-parasitic activity against certain *Leishmania spp.* causing VL such as *L. infantum* but are less active against *L. donovani*[27]. Ketoconazole and fluconazole have also been shown to hasten healing of CL caused by *L. mexicana, L. panamensis* and *L major*[1,29]. While several *in vitro* studies demonstrate effective anti-parasitic activity, clinical studies have not been as promising[1]. One clinical study did show comparable outcomes of Ketoconazole to standard Sb^v in the treatment of *L. panamensis* CL, although more recent studies have shown clinical benefit is achieved only with high dosing[29]. Azoles given at high doses expose patients to significant hepatic toxicity[1,17]. In order to reduce the high dosing, further studies evaluating azoles in combination with other therapeutic options may provide increased efficacy at lower dosing[17,27]. Topical imiquimod in combination with itraconazole has been shown to have better cure rates when either of the therapeutics were used alone[17].

LOCAL TREATMENTS

Local treatments can be used to treat CL when the *Leishmania spp.* has low potential to advance to MCL; there are a limited number of lesions (less than four); the lesions are small (< 4-5 cm); the lesions are not localized on delicate areas of the body; and the host is not immunosuppressed[9,23]. The use of local agents is favorable in these circumstances as they tend to have less systemic toxicity and allow for outpatient treatment regimens[9]. Local therapies are currently considered first line treatment in most cases of CL[9]. Despite these advantages, there is a need for standardization and highly scrutinized efficacy studies for the use of local therapies[23].

Imiquimod

Imiquimod, a topical imidazole quinolone cream, is a potent immune-modulator and Toll-like receptor 7 agonist that induces macrophage activation through production of pro-inflammatory cytokines interleukin-2, INF-γ and TNF-α[1,11]. Direct activation of macrophages mediates intracellular killing of *Leishmania spp.*[11]. Topical imiquimod can be used as monotherapy; however, the rate of treatment failure is currently unknown. When used alone imiquimod has demonstrated rapid initial healing but failed to maintain response after treatment was stopped. As a result, when imiquimod is used as monotherapy, patients may need a prolonged treatment course to ensure therapeutic cure[11]. More commonly imiquimod is added in combination with Sb$^{v[1,11]}$. Addition of imiquimod cream to a Sb^v based regimen to treat Sb^v-resistant CL showed increased rate of cure and higher sustained treatment response compared with persons treated with Sb^v alone[11,23]. Combination therapy also had increased rates of healing and an improved overall cosmetic effect with reduced scarring and reduced hyperpigmentation of the wounds compared to Sb^v therapy alone[11,23]. Imiquimod has been associated with lower treatment cost and fewer adverse effects compared to standard of care due to reduced need for prolonged Sb$^{v[11]}$. Imiquimod is generally well tolerated with the main adverse effect being irritation at the site of application[1].

Cryotherapy

Cryotherapy uses liquid nitrogen applied directly to CL lesions and has been proven effective in Old World CL including *L. tropica, L aethiopica* and *L infantum*, as well as New World CL that has low potential to progress to MCL such as *L. mexicana, L. panamensis and L. amazonensis*[1,8]. Application of liquid nitrogen is completed 2-3 times each session and repeated every 1-4 wk until complete healing of the lesion is achieved[9]. When used as monotherapy, cryotherapy has shown cure rates superior to spontaneous healing

and comparable to intralesional Sb^v[16]. However, superior results are observed with Cryotherapy in combination with intralesional Sb^v, with a cure rate of 89% compared to cryotherapy alone (75%) or intralesional Sb^v alone (67.8%)[1,9,16,17]. Cryotherapy, while safe and effective, can be painful and cause post-inflammatory hyperpigmentation[16,17,30]. The availability of cryotherapy in endemic regions of the world as well as unknown relapse rates further limit its consistent use as a therapeutic option for CL[16,17].

Thermotherapy

Thermotherapy, *i.e.,* heating the CL lesion to 50 degree Celsius for 30 s once weekly for 4 wk, has been used for the treatment of New world CL caused by *Leishmania spp.* with low likelihood of progression to MCL, such as *L. mexicana, L. panamensis, L. amazonensis*[1,8,9]. Through application of heat radiofrequency, the protozoa are directly killed[9]. Compared to intralesional or parenteral Sb^v, the duration of therapy and the adverse effects were reduced when using thermotherapy monotherapy[16]. Thermotherapy may put patients at risk for local blistering and secondary bacterial infection during the healing period[16]. CO2 Laser is a type of thermotherapy which operates through thermolysis on damaged tissues without causing damage to the surrounding healthy tissue. The CO2 laser is used in one single session and has been shown to be more effective than combined therapy of cryotherapy plus intralesional Sb^v[9]. With disfiguring facial lesions or lesions at sites at risk of significant scaring, CO2 thermotherapy may be an alternative therapeutic option[8]. Despite the positive effects of thermotherapy on healing of wounds, cure rates remain variable from 48%-83% amongst different *Leishmania spp*[16]. While shown to be effective in certain species, thermotherapy requires costly advanced technology equipment and adjuvant medications including local anesthetic and prophylactic antibiotics that are not readily available in endemic areas[8,16].

Phototherapy

Photodynamic therapy is an additional new treatment modality that uses light-mediated cytolysis of protozoa. The photodynamic therapy is applied once weekly for a total of 4 wk and does not induce drug resistance even after repeated applications[9,30]. Conventionally, photodynamic therapy requires activation of a topical photosensitizer, usually aminolevulinic acid (ALA) or methyl aminolevulinate, followed by irradiation by a visible light source[30]. Activation of the photosensitizer in the presence of oxygen results in the generation of reactive oxygen species, activation of host macrophages and subsequent destruction of the infected tissue[30]. This process can be time consuming and expensive and requires specialized technology[30]. New technology is emerging that uses daylight activation of the topical photosensitizers, abolishing the need for specialized light sources[30]. It has proven to be effective in the

treatment of CL caused by both *L. major* and *L. tropica*, with an overall cure rate of 88.9%; however, efficacy is dependent on weather conditions in geographic locations[30]. Adverse effects associated with phototherapy include pain caused by the sudden activation of the photosensitizer[30].

Approach to chemotherapeutics selection

Choosing the appropriate initial therapy for a patient with leishmaniasis is dependent on the disease (CL, MCL, DCL or VL), the geographic location, the *Leishmania spp.*, and the state of the host immune response.

Currently the WHO recommends pentavalent antimonial, sodium stibogluonate 20 mg/kg per day for 21 d, and IV, as first line therapy for CL and VL[10,21]. However, Liposomal amphotericin B has been found to be as effective in treatment of VL, and superior in treatment for MCL, and better tolerated compared to Sb^v. As a result the US FDA has approved amphotericin B as first line therapy for VL caused by *L .infantum* and *L. donovani*[21]. Patients with CL, DCL and MCL caused by *L. braziliensis*, patients in the New World with leishmaniasis of unknown species, and patients with complicated CL including lesions on the face or lesions over the joints should also be treated with Liposomal amphotericin B 3 mg/kg on Days 1-5, 14, 21[20,21,30]. All patients with VL, CL, DCL or MCL who are immunocompromised should be treated with systemic therapy, either antimony or amphotericin B, as treatment failure and disease progression is more common in this group[21]. Due to the reduced side effects and reduced duration of therapy, Liposomal Amphotericin B should be the first line therapy in immunocompromised patients if available. Miltefosine is an appropriate alternative to Amphotericin B in DCL, MCL and VL caused by *L. donovani* and *L. infantum*[10,21].

For cutaneous disease that has low potential to advance to MCL; is caused by species other than *L. braziliensis*; where the patient has a limited number of lesions (less than four); where the lesions are small (< 4-5 cm); where the lesions are not localized on delicate areas; and where the host is not immunosuppressed; topical therapies such as intra-lesional chemotherapeutics, thermotherapy, phototherapy or cryotherapy or combination therapies should be used as first line therapy are to minimize adverse effects[20,31].

Vaccines

Preventative and therapeutic vaccines are recognized as the most efficacious and most cost-effective protection against leishmaniasis. Currently there is no licensed vaccine against human leishmaniasis; however, several vaccine candidates have been tried and several others are currently under further investigation. Vaccine development has been challenging due to the complexity of the protozoa pathogenesis and the interaction with the host cell-mediated immune response[2,7]. Despite the complexity of vaccine development, the cost-

effectiveness of leishmania vaccines makes further investigation, production and clinical development an attractive endeavor. Cost-analysis studies have shown that a vaccine even with a relatively short duration of protection will affect cost savings and prevent cases of leishmaniasis. The study found that a vaccine with 10 years protection used in endemic areas such as Brazil, Bolivia, Colombia, Ecuador, Peru and Venezuela that have a country-wide incidence of at least 0.03% in a total population of approximately 308 million people could prevent 41000-144784 CL cases at a cost less than the cost of chemotherapy[10]. This held true for vaccines with 5 years of protection as well[10]. Leishmania vaccines currently receiving attention include a live leishmania vaccine, whole killed or fractions of leishmania, live attenuated and DNA vaccines.

Live parasites were first tried for vaccine development by isolating *L. major* promastigotes from free culture and injecting into the patient. While promising results from live parasite exposure were identified, the standardization and quality control were lacking and concerns about possibility of transmission remain valid[7]. While live vaccines may prevent future infection, they are not currently reasonable options for vaccine development.

First generation vaccines consisting of whole killed leishmania or fractions of the protozoa have also been explored. Killed isolated *L. amazonensis* has been used as a therapeutic vaccine in combination with chemotherapy and has been shown to reduce the required dose of Sb^v to achieve cure[7]. Furthermore, in Venezuela autoclaved killed *L. mexicana* has been used to treat patients with Sb^v non-responsive CL[7]. Killed vaccines are valuable due to their safety in administration[32]. Despite the potential therapeutic value and minimal safety profile of killed leishmania vaccines, preventive vaccines have not shown significant protection[32]. In studies of autoclaved *L. major* vaccine, the host did not mount a robust immunogenic response. However, with better adjuvants that are able to maintain effector memory cell activation to achieve protection, the vaccine potency increases[32]. Addition of different adjuvants including alum, saponin, cationic liposomes and MPL-A have all been studied and are associated with significant cell mediated immune response, humoral immune response and reduced parasite load[32]. If an adequate adjuvant is used to produce improved immunogenicity with standardized preparation, it is possible that killed leishmaniasis vaccines may be candidates for further vaccine discovery as they are safe, low cost, stable, and composed of the complete protozoa spectrum of antigens[7,32,33].

Live attenuated, recombinant proteins and DNA vaccines are new vaccine strategies under consideration[7]. While some target proteins are conserved proteins across species, others are species and life cycle stage specific, making them limited in use[7]. Important recombinant protein candidate vaccines to date include

surface expressed glycoprotein leishmaniolysin (gp63); Leishmania activated C kinase (LACK); parasite surface antigen (PSA); Leishmania-derived recombinant poly-protein (Leish-111f); serine proteases; LEISH-F1; and LEISH-F2[7,33]. LEISH-F1, three recombinant proteins conserved in *L. donovani*, *L. chagasi* and *L. braziliensis*, respectively, and LEISH-F2 re-designed recombinant protein have undergone phase 1 and phase 2 clinical trials with significant success against CL and VL in multiple target locations[33]. Both LEISH-F1 and LEISH-F2 have proven to be immunogenic, safe and well tolerated[33]. The next generation LEISH-F3, another recombinant protein vaccine, is currently under investigation in phase 1 clinical trials for VL[32-34]. Mucosal vaccination through oral and intranasal vaccine, using Leishmanial antigen, has shown promise in mice with *L. amazonensis* in protection against developing CL[35]. Additional mechanisms of combining recombinant parasite-derived nucleoside hydrolase with antigens from the sand fly genus *Lutzomyia* for *L. mexicana* CL have also been under investigation with initial successful results[10,33]. Naked DNA vaccines are another new approach that have shown promise in animal models[7,33]. Cloned genes encoding the target proteins are expressed in mammalian plasmids and injected intra-dermally or intramuscularly[7]. Replication within the host leads to expression of the recombinant proteins for longer periods of time in order to sustain a more robust immunologic response[7]. As no pathogenic organisms are used, the potential for infection is non-existent. It is possible that these DNA vaccines may be used therapeutically for CL cure as well[7]. Studies of live-attenuated leishmaniasis and naked DNA vaccines are limited, as vaccine development is still in its early stages. However great strides have been achieved recently in the development of safe, immunogenic vaccines[7].

Lastly, to achieve control of Leishmaniasis, control of animal reservoirs must also be addressed. *L infantum* is a primarily zoonotic disease, affecting millions of dogs around the world, and remains a source of leishmania transmission. To break the cycle of transmission new canine vaccine candidates are also under further investigation[7].

CONCLUSION

Early treatment of leishmaniasis is critical to achieve cure, prevent psychological and social distress, and prevent transmission of disease[17]. Untreated Leishmaniasis - CL, MCL and VL - result in disfiguring scars and high rates of morbidity and mortality in highly endemic regions of the world[11]. Cure rates with available therapeutics are limited due to cost, therapeutic toxicity and the growing rate of resistance[11]. The growing rate of drug resistance amongst all therapeutic options is of particular concern as little is known about the mechanism of resistance[22]. There is an emergent need for development of new therapeutic

options with improved tolerability, improved healing process minimizing scarring, and improved efficacy amongst all *Leishmania spp*[11]. Despite this need, the challenges associated with therapeutic development are vast due to parasite diversity across continents, the complexity of the host response, and the lack of full understanding of protozoa pathogenesis[23]. Gaining greater understanding on the pathogenesis of the disease and the interaction with host immune response might unveil new therapeutic targets, particularly for vaccine development.

REFERENCES

1   **McGwire BS**, Satoskar AR. Leishmaniasis: clinical syndromes and treatment. *QJM* 2014; **107**: 7-14 [PMID: 23744570 DOI: 10.1093/qjmed/hct116]

2   **Stockdale L**, Newton R. A review of preventative methods against human leishmaniasis infection. *PLoS Negl Trop Dis* 2013; **7**: e2278 [PMID: 23818997 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pntd.0002278]

3   **Desjeux P**. The increase in risk factors for leishmaniasis worldwide. *Trans R Soc Trop Med Hyg* 2001; **95**: 239-243 [PMID: 11490989 DOI: 10.1016/S0035-9203(01)90223-8]

4   **Alvar J**, Vélez ID, Bern C, Herrero M, Desjeux P, Cano J, Jannin J, den Boer M. Leishmaniasis worldwide and global estimates of its incidence. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e35671 [PMID: 22693548 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0035671]

5   **Kumar R**, Engwerda C. Vaccines to prevent leishmaniasis. *Clin Transl Immunology* 2014; **3**: e13 [PMID: 25505961 DOI: 10.1038/cti.2014.4]

6   **World Health Organization**. Leishmaniasis. [accessed 2015 Jan 23]. Available from: URL: http://www.who.int/leishmaniasis/en/

7   **Mutiso JM**, Macharia JC, Kiio MN, Ichagichu JM, Rikoi H, Gicheru MM. Development of Leishmania vaccines: predicting the future from past and present experience. *J Biomed Res* 2013; **27**: 85-102 [PMID: 23554800 DOI: 10.7555/JBR.27.20120064]

8   **Hodiamont CJ**, Kager PA, Bart A, de Vries HJ, van Thiel PP, Leenstra T, de Vries PJ, van Vugt M, Grobusch MP, van Gool T. Species-directed therapy for leishmaniasis in returning travellers: a comprehensive guide. *PLoS Negl Trop Dis* 2014; **8**: e2832 [PMID: 24787001 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pntd.0002832]

9   **Monge-Maillo B**, López-Vélez R. Therapeutic options for old world cutaneous leishmaniasis and new world cutaneous and mucocutaneous leishmaniasis. *Drugs* 2013; **73**: 1889-1920 [PMID: 24170665 DOI: 10.1007/s40265-013-0132-1]

10   **Bacon KM**, Hotez PJ, Kruchten SD, Kamhawi S, Bottazzi ME, Valenzuela JG, Lee BY. The potential economic value of a cutaneous leishmaniasis vaccine in seven endemic countries in the Americas. *Vaccine* 2013; **31**: 480-486 [PMID: 23176979 DOI: 10.1016/j.vaccine.2012.11.032]

11   **Arevalo I**, Tulliano G, Quispe A, Spaeth G, Matlashewski G, Llanos-Cuentas A, Pollack H. Role of imiquimod and parenteral meglumine antimoniate in the initial treatment of cutaneous leishmaniasis. *Clin Infect Dis* 2007; **44**: 1549-1554 [PMID: 17516397 DOI: 10.1086/518172]

12   **Ribeiro de Jesus A**, Luna T, Pacheco de Almeida R, Machado PR, Carvalho EM. Pentoxifylline down modulate in vitro T cell responses and attenuate pathology in Leishmania and HTLV-I infections. *Int Immunopharmacol* 2008; **8**: 1344-1353 [PMID: 18687297 DOI: 10.1016/j.intimp.2008.03.020]

13   **Centers for Disease Control and Prevention**. Leishmaniasis. [accessed 2015 Jan 23]. Available from: URL: http://www.cdc.gov/parasites/leishmaniasis

14   **Rubiano LC**, Miranda MC, Muvdi Arenas S, Montero LM, Rodríguez-Barraquer I, Garcerant D, Prager M, Osorio L, Rojas MX, Pérez M, Nicholls RS, Gore Saravia N. Noninferiority of miltefosine versus meglumine antimoniate for cutaneous leishmaniasis in children. *J Infect Dis* 2012; **205**: 684-692 [PMID: 22238470 DOI: 10.1093/infdis/jir816]

15   **Vélez I**, López L, Sánchez X, Mestra L, Rojas C, Rodríguez E. Efficacy of miltefosine for the treatment of American cutaneous leishmaniasis. *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 2010; **83**: 351-356 [PMID: 20682881 DOI: 10.4269/ajtmh.2010.10-0060]

16   **Bailey MS**. Editorial commentary: local treatments for cutaneous leishmaniasis. *Clin Infect Dis* 2013; **57**: 381-383 [PMID: 23633110 DOI: 10.1093/cid/cit275]

17   **Al-Mutairi N**, Alshiltawy M, El Khalawany M, Joshi A, Eassa BI, Manchanda Y, Gomaa S, Darwish I, Rijhwani M. Tropical medicine rounds: Treatment of Old World cutaneous leishmaniasis with dapsone, itraconazole, cryotherapy, and imiquimod, alone and in combination. *Int J Dermatol* 2009; **48**: 862-869 [PMID: 19673049 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-4632.2008.04010.x]

18   **Singh N**, Kumar M, Singh RK. Leishmaniasis: current status of available drugs and new potential drug targets. *Asian Pac J Trop Med* 2012; **5**: 485-497 [PMID: 22575984 DOI: 10.1016/S1995-7645(12)60084-4]

19   **Solomon M**, Baum S, Barzilai A, Scope A, Trau H, Schwartz E. Liposomal amphotericin B in comparison to sodium stibogluconate for cutaneous infection due to Leishmania braziliensis. *J Am Acad Dermatol* 2007; **56**: 612-616 [PMID: 17276541 DOI: 10.1016/j.jaad.2006.06.044]

20   **Wortmann G**, Zapor M, Ressner R, Fraser S, Hartzell J, Pierson J, Weintrob A, Magill A. Lipsosomal amphotericin B for treatment of cutaneous leishmaniasis. *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 2010; **83**: 1028-1033 [PMID: 21036832 DOI: 10.4269/ajtmh.2010.10-0171]

21   **Ramanathan R**, Talaat KR, Fedorko DP, Mahanty S, Nash TE. A species-specific approach to the use of non-antimony treatments for cutaneous leishmaniasis. *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 2011; **84**: 109-117 [PMID: 21212212 DOI: 10.4269/ajtmh.2011.10-0437]

22   **Kaur G**, Rajput B. Comparative analysis of the omics technologies used to study antimonial, amphotericin B, and pentamidine resistance in leishmania. *J Parasitol Res* 2014; **2014**: 726328 [PMID: 24900912 DOI: 10.1155/2014/726328]

23   **Reveiz L**, Maia-Elkhoury AN, Nicholls RS, Romero GA, Yadon ZE. Interventions for American cutaneous and mucocutaneous leishmaniasis: a systematic review update. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e61843 [PMID: 23637917 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0061843]

24   **Ravis WR**, Llanos-Cuentas A, Sosa N, Kreishman-Deitrick M, Kopydlowski KM, Nielsen C, Smith KS, Smith PL, Ransom JH, Lin YJ, Grogl M. Pharmacokinetics and absorption of paromomycin and gentamicin from topical creams used to treat cutaneous leishmaniasis. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2013; **57**: 4809-4815 [PMID: 23877689 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.00628-13]

25   **Clinical trials.gov**. Phase 3 Study to Evaluate WR 279,396 vs. Paromomycin Alone to Treat Cutaneous Leishmaniasis (in Tunisia) [accessed 2015 Jan 23]. Available from: URL: https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT00606580

26   **Sosa N**, Capitán Z, Nieto J, Nieto M, Calzada J, Paz H, Spadafora C, Kreishman-Deitrick M, Kopydlowski K, Ullman D, McCarthy WF, Ransom J, Berman J, Scott C, Grogl M. Randomized, double-blinded, phase 2 trial of WR 279,396 (paromomycin and gentamicin) for cutaneous leishmaniasis in Panama. *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 2013; **89**: 557-563 [PMID: 23857024 DOI: 10.4269/ajtmh.12-0736]

27   **de Macedo-Silva ST**, Urbina JA, de Souza W, Rodrigues JC. In vitro activity of the antifungal azoles itraconazole and posaconazole against Leishmania amazonensis. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e83247 [PMID: 24376670 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0083247]

28   **Lessa HA**, Machado P, Lima F, Cruz AA, Bacellar O, Guerreiro J, Carvalho EM. Successful treatment of refractory mucosal leishmaniasis with pentoxifylline plus antimony. *Am J Trop Med Hyg* 2001; **65**: 87-89 [PMID: 11508396]

29   **Saenz RE**, Paz H, Berman JD. Efficacy of ketoconazole against Leishmania braziliensis panamensis cutaneous leishmaniasis. *Am J Med* 1990; **89**: 147-155 [PMID: 2166429 DOI: 10.1016/0002-9343(90)90292-L]

30   **Enk CD**, Nasereddin A, Alper R, Dan-Goor M, Jaffe CL, Wulf

HC. Cutaneous leishmaniasis responds to daylight-activated photodynamic therapy: proof of concept for a novel self-administered therapeutic modality. *Br J Dermatol* 2015; **172**: 1364-1370 [PMID: 25363817 DOI: 10.1111/bjd.13490]

31   **Brown M**, Noursadeghi M, Boyle J, Davidson RN. Successful liposomal amphotericin B treatment of Leishmania braziliensis cutaneous leishmaniasis. *Br J Dermatol* 2005; **153**: 203-205 [PMID: 16029352 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2133.2005.06670.x]

32   **Thakur A**, Kaur H, Kaur S. Evaluation of the immunoprophylactic potential of a killed vaccine candidate in combination with different adjuvants against murine visceral leishmaniasis. *Parasitol Int* 2015; **64**: 70-78 [PMID: 25316605 DOI: 10.1016/j.parint.2014.10.003]

33   **Beaumier CM**, Gillespie PM, Hotez PJ, Bottazzi ME. New vaccines for neglected parasitic diseases and dengue. *Transl Res* 2013; **162**: 144-155 [PMID: 23578479 DOI: 10.1016/j.trsl.2013.03.006]

34   **Clinical trials.gov**. Phase 1 LEISH-F3 SLA-SE Vaccine Trial in Healthy Adult Volunteers [accessed 2015 Jan 23]. Available from: URL: https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02071758.

35   **de Matos Guedes HL**, da Silva Costa BL, Chaves SP, de Oliveira Gomes DC, Nosanchuk JD, De Simone SG, Rossi-Bergmann B. Intranasal vaccination with extracellular serine proteases of Leishmania amazonensis confers protective immunity to BALB/c mice against infection. *Parasit Vectors* 2014; **7**: 448 [PMID: 25239157 DOI: 10.1186/1756-3305-7-448]

MINIREVIEWS

Challenges and opportunities in the treatment of ulcerative colitis

Sunil Ashokrao Nirmal, Sunil Shivaji Gangurde, Pratiksha Shankar Dumbre, Subodh Chandra Pal, Subhash Chandra Mandal

Sunil Ashokrao Nirmal, Department of Pharmacognosy, Pravara Rural College of Pharmacy, Loni, Maharashtra 413736, India
Sunil Shivaji Gangurde, Biotechnology Centre, Post Graduate Institute, Dr. PDKV, Maharashtra 413736, India
Pratiksha Shankar Dumbre, Sarswati Vidyabhavan College of Pharmacy, Mumbai, Maharashtra 413736, India
Subodh Chandra Pal, Department of Pharmacognosy, NDMVP's College of Pharmacy, Nasik, Maharashtra 413736, India
Subhash Chandra Mandal, Pharmacognosy and Phytotherapy Research Laboratory, Division of Pharmacognosy, Department of Pharmaceutical Technology, Jadavpur University, Kolkata 700032, India

Author contributions: Nirmal SA collected data about ulcerative colitis; Gangurde SS contributed to manuscript preparation; Dumbre PS contributed to manuscript preparation and editing data; Pal SC collected data about various plants used for the treatment of ulcerative colitis; Mandal SC collected data about various plants used for the treatment of ulcerative colitis.

Conflict-of-interest: All the authors do not have any conflict of interest.

Correspondence to: Dr. Sunil Ashokrao Nirmal, Associate Professor, Head, Department of Pharmacognosy, Pravara Rural College of Pharmacy, Loni, Tal- Rahata, Dist-Ahmednagar, Maharashtra 413736, India. nirmalsunil@rediffmail.com
Telephone: +91-97-66126772
Fax: +91-24-22273528

Abstract

Ulcerative colitis (UC) is an inflammatory destructive disease of the large intestine occurred usually in the rectum and lower part of the colon as well as the entire colon. Drug therapy is not the only choice for UC treatment and medical management should be as a comprehensive whole. Many synthetic drugs are available for the treatment of UC like 5-aminosalicylic acid, oral or systemic corticosteroids, immunomodulator, *etc*. but these drugs are associated with many serious side effects after long term use or have certain disadvantage or not suitable for the use in some patients. In short synthetic drugs have many disadvantages and for this reason effective and safe alternative drug treatment for the UC is the challenge. Herbal drugs are found to be very promising results of the treatment of UC and enzymatic level. Researchers explored many herbal drugs for the treatment and even many more may found effective in the treatment of UC. At this point we feel herbal medicine is the better alternative for the treatment of UC.

Key words: Ulcerative colitis; Herbal drugs; Synthetic drugs

Core tip: Ulcerative colitis (UC) is one of the diseases of gastro intestinal tract having many serious complications. Many synthetic drugs are available for the treatment of UC but they have many serious side effects after long term use. This review presents potential of traditional/

herbal drugs in the treatment of ulcerative colitis. Herbal drugs have great potential with safety which could be better alternative to synthetic drugs.

INTRODUCTION

Ulcerative colitis (UC) is chronic idiopathic inflammatory bowel disorders (IBD) in which patients require lifelong treatment[1]. Corticosteroids, immunosuppressants and antitumour necrosis factor (TNF) antibodies are used in conventional treatment of IBD but due to long term use they are associated with very serious side effects like malignancy[2,3] and this is the reason nowdays patients prefer complementary and alternative medicine (CAM) as it is more safe compared to synthetic drugs. This is proved by a survey conducted to observe patients preference for CAM drugs[4]. CAM treatment involves use of herbal medicine, dietary supplementation like probiotics and prebiotics and acupuncture and moxibustion treatments in IBD patients[5].

SOME FACTS ABOUT UC

Incidence of UC depends on gender, age, and geography[6,7] but men and women have an equal risk for UC. IBD is more prevalent in young people (10-19 years age), but it can occur at any age. Caucasians have more risk than Africans for the incidence of IBD while Asian and South American have lower incidences. Smokers have lower than incidences of UC than other patients. Study showed that smoking protects against UC. Breast feeding reduces risk of UC. Left-handed people have a significantly higher risk for IBDs than others. Persons with history of depression or anxiety have higher risk of UC because depression alters immunity and makes person more susceptible to UC[6,8].

SYMPTOMS OF UC

Ulcerative colitis can be diagnosed by symptoms like fever, fever with chills, loss of appetite, weight loss, impaired growth in children, tenesmus, ulcers and fistulae, recurrent diarrhea[7,9,10], presence of blood is observed in stools, constipation, an ache around the top of the hipbone, or cramps in the middle of the abdomen, bloating, nausea, vomiting, anemia, toxic megacolon, abdominal pain and distention, dehydration, and malnutrition[6,8,11], colon cancer, arthritis, red eyes, vision impairment and diseases of the liver and bile ducts.

SIDE EFFECTS OF SYNTHETIC DRUGS

Both medications and surgery have been used for the treatment of UC[9]. Generally surgery is done for life-threatening complications. As there is no perfect medication for UC, the goals of treatment with synthetic drug is to prevent remissions of UC and to improve the quality of patients life[12,13]. Table 1 summarizes various drugs used for the treatment of UC with their side effects.

INFLAMMATORY MEDIATORS

Humoral immunity is increased in IBD patients that can be confirmed by increased levels of immune globulins (IgG1)[21] and autoantibodies[22,23]. Same thing is evidenced when mucosal plasma cells from UC patients showed increased levels of IgG1[21]. Anticolon and antineutrophil antibodies are observed in UC patients[22,23]. Exaggerated Th2 response - elevated interleukin-5 (IL-5) profile is observed in UC patients[24]. Levels of various cytokines such as IL-1, IL-6, IL-8 and tumor necrosis factor-alpha (TNF-α) are found elevated in IBD[25,26].

OXIDATIVE STRESS IN ULCERATIVE COLITIS

It is observed that level of oxidative stress is increased in the intestinal mucosa of ulcerative colitis patients. Oxidative DNA damage may occur in IDB patients, which can be evidenced by production of 8-hydroxy-deoxyguanosine (8-OHdG). Levels of vitamins A and E are found to reduce in UC patients as compared to normal persons. Mucosal biopsies of UC patients showed increased reactive oxygen intermediates, DNA oxidation products (8-OHdG), and iron in inflamed tissue compared to normal at the same time levels of copper and zinc is found reduced which acts as cofactors for the endogenous antioxidant superoxide dismutase[27]. Reactive oxygen species (ROS) activate nuclear factor-kappa B (NF-κB) which increases production of TNF-α and again TNF-α cause production of ROS. In this way a cycle in induced by increased oxidative stress.

ROLE OF GLYCOSAMINOGLYCANS

Glycosaminoglycans (GAGs) is a important substance that affect permeability and immune/inflammatory reactions of the colon. Altered GAG content in the colon of IBD patients is observed. UC patients showed abnormal distribution of GAGs, with significantly greater amounts of total glycosaminoglycans, heparan sulfate, and hyaluronic acid than normal person[28]. It is hypothesize that change in negatively charged sulfated compounds can affect the passage of substances through the colonic mucosa, leading to leakage of proteins and fluids, thrombosis, and extensive remo-

Table 1 Allopatic drugs used for the treatment of ulcerative colitis and their side effects

Drug	Use	Dosage form	Disadvantages	Ref.
5-aminosalicylic acid compounds	Treatment of tissue inflammation	Enema or orally	Enema solution cannot reach high enough to treat inflammation in the upper colon and if taken orally, however, the stomach and upper small intestine absorb most of the drug before it reaches the colon	[13]
Sulfasalazine	Decreasing intestinal inflammation and relieving symptoms of abdominal pain, diarrhea, and rectal bleeding	Orally	Nausea, heartburn, headache, anemia, skin rashes, and in rare instances, hepatitis and kidney inflammation. In men, sulfasalazine can reduce the sperm count	[14]
Olsalazine (consists of two 5-ASA molecules linked together)	Decreasing intestinal inflammation and relieving symptoms of abdominal pain, diarrhea, and rectal bleeding	Orally	Secretory diarrhea	[15]
Corticosteroids (prednisone, prednisolone, hydrocortisone, *etc.*)	Corticosteroids do not require direct contact with inflamed intestinal tissues to be effective. These are potent anti-inflammatory agents	Orally, intravenous	Some patients become corticosteroid dependent and consistently develop symptoms of colitis Whenever the corticosteroid dose is below a certain level. Common side effects include rounding of the face (moon face), acne, increased body hair, diabetes, weight gain, high blood pressure, cataracts, glaucoma, increased susceptibility to infections, muscle weakness, depression, insomnia, mood swings, personality changes, irritability, and thinning of bones (osteoporosis) with an accompanying increased risk of compression fractures of the spine. Children on corticosteroids can experience stunted growth	[16]
Immunomodulator medications	Immunomodulators decrease tissue inflammation by reducing the population of immune cells and/or by interfering with their production of proteins that promote immune activation and inflammation	Orally	Risks of infection due to weakened immunity	[17]
Azathoprine and 6-Mercaptopurine	These are used mainly in the following situations, UC and CD patients with severe diseases not responding to corticosteroids, patients experiencing undesirable corticosteroid-related side effects, patients dependent on corticosteroids and unable to discontinue them without developing relapses		Increased vulnerability to infections, inflammation of the liver (hepatitis) and pancreas (pancreatitis), and bone marrow toxicity (interfering with the formation of cells that circulate in the blood). 6-MP can reduce the sperm count in men When the partners of male patients on 6-MP conceive, there is a higher incidence of miscarriages and vaginal bleeding. There also are respiratory difficulties in the newborn	[18]
Methotrexate	Helpful in treating patients with moderate to severe CD who neither respond to 6-MP and azathioprine nor tolerate these two medications	Orally or intramuscular	Development of liver cirrhosis when the medication is given over a prolonged period of time (years). Low white blood cell counts and inflammation of the lungs. Methotrexate should not be used in pregnancy	[19]
Cyclosporine	Treatment of severe UC. It is useful in fulminant UC and severely ill patients who do not respond to systemic corticosteroids	Orally as well as intravenously	High blood pressure, renal function impairment, tingling sensations in the extremities, anaphylactic shock and seizures	[20]

5-ASA: 5-aminosalicylic acid; UC: Ulcerative colitis; CD: Crohn's disease.

deling observed in UC and IBD[29]. These changes leads to the inflammatory process as hyaluronic acid can interact directly with lymphocytes, inhibit macrophage response to cytokines, and increase phagocytosis. GAG content has been associated with alteration in the distribution of macrophages reactive to TNF-α[30].

ROLE OF HERBAL MEDICINES IN THE TREATMENT OF ULCERATIVE COLITIS

Herbal medicine means use of folk and/or traditional medicinal practice by using plants and/or plant extracts for the treatment of various diseases or disorders. Eighty percent population from developing country depends on herbal medicines for the treatment of their diseases. Recent studies showed that about 20%-26% patients use TCM therapies for the treatment of GI symptoms and another observation is that generally patients having chronic GI disorders use or prefer TCM therapies[31,32]. This use of TCM for the treatment of IBD is spread to Western world and in many Asian countries[33]. In ancient times Chinese people's are using herbals for the treatment of UC and this is evidenced by Chinese literature. The main intention of using herbals for the treatment of UC was the belief that natural drugs are safe and around 30% peoples think that herbal preparations don't cause any harm or side effects. Herbal drugs contains numerous chemicals and that is the reason its effect is unpredictable[34]. Today, TCM is most popular way of treatment for UC in Eastern Asian

Table 2 Medicinal plants used for the treatment of ulcerative colitis with their mechanism of action

Sr. No.	Plant	Mechanism	Ref.
1	*Acacia ferruginea*	Acacia ferruginea extract significantly resist UC *via* modulation of oxidant/anti-oxidant balance and inhibition of inflammatory mediators. Extract inhibited the activation and translocation of transcription factors (NF-κB subunits (p65/p50)	[37]
2	*Passiflora edulis*	Passiflora edulis peel can significantly resist 2,4,6-trinitrobenzenesulphonic acid-induced ulcerative colitis by modulating microbiota and could be used as a source of fiber and polyphenols in the prevention of oxidative stress through the improvement of serum and tissue antioxidant status	[38]
3	*Arnebia euchroma*	Effectiveness of a hydroxynaphthoquinone fraction from Arnebia euchroma was evaluated with TNBS-induced UC. The underlying mechanism may be associated with TNF-α inhibition in colonic tissue with the dose of 10 mg/kg	[39]
4	*Cannabis*	Cannabis had been used successfully to relieve the symptoms associated with IBD by inhalational route	[40]
5	*Rhizophora apiculata*	R. apiculata significantly resist acetic acid induced colitis in experimental mouse model by increasing anti-oxidant enzymes such as SOD and GSH and reducing LPO, NO and inflammatory mediators such as MPO, LDH, iNOS, COX-2 and TNF-α expressions. And also inhibits the translocation of NF-κB p65 and p50 subunits	[41]
6	*Hymenaea stigonocarpa*	Total flavonoid of stem bark extract and fruit pulp flour of Hymenaea stigonocarpa significantly resist TNBS-induced colonic damage in rats. Its mechanism may be related to inhibition of MPO and AP activities, reduction in colon MDA content, and counteraction of GSH depletion induced by inflammatory process	[42]
7	*Helicteres angustifolia*	Aqueous extract of Helicteres angustifolia significantly resist UC induced by TNBS by keeping balance of inflammatory factors in blood and also by improving increasing expression of IL-10 and decreasing the expressions of IL-6 and TNF-α	[43]
8	*Ilex kudingcha*	Methanol extracts of Ilex kudingcha increased glutathione and reduced colonic myeloperoxidase and malondialdehyde levels in the colon tissue and prevented edema, mucosal damage and loss of crypts. It also decreased anti-inflammatory effects by decreasing the levels of TNF-α, IL-1β and IL-6 in the colon tissues on 3% DSS-induced UC in mice	[44]
9	*Peony*	TGP showed positive effect in 2,4,6-trinitrobenzene sulfonic acid TNBS/ethanol-induced colitis by significant improvements of DAI, CMDI, HPS, and MPO activity. Moreover, administration of TGP (50 or 100 mg/kg per day) decreased the up-regulated levels of serum TNF-α and IL-1β, and expression of TNF-α and IL-1β mRNA and protein in colonic tissues, and increased the serum IL-10 and colonic IL-10 mRNA and protein level	[45]
10	*Olea europaea*	Total phenolic secoiridoid of oleuropein, the major phenolic secoiridoid in Olea europaea significantly resisted dextran sodium sulfate-induced chronic colitis in mice. It decreased inflammatory cell and released the inflammatory cytokines IL-1β and IL-6 with increased IL-10 levels in colon tissue. The anti-inflammatory mechanism of oleuropein was associated with the suppression of the phosphorylation of p38 mitogen-activated protein kinase and might be mediated by up-regulation of annexin A1	[46]
11	*Plumbagin plants*	Naphthoquinone constituent of Plumbagin plants significantly resist ulcerative colitis in mice by reducing the levels of proinflammatory cytokines (TNF-α, IFN-γ, and IL-17) but cytokine levels remained unaffected with restoration of goblet cells in colon of mice	[47]
12	*Euphorbia granuleta*	Alcohol extracts of Euphorbia granuleta (Euphorpiaceae) significantly resist UC by reducing the pro-inflammatory cytokine TNF-α and colonic MDA contents	[48]
13	*Amaranthus roxburghianus*	Combination of hydroalcoholic extract of roots of A. roxburghianus and piperine showed minimal ulceration, hemorrhage, necrosis and leucocyte infiltration and significantly reduced malondialdehyde and myeloperoxidase levels and increased glutathione levels in blood and tissue	[49]
14	*Curcumin*	Oral curcumin extract decreases colon injury with decreased inflammatory reactions, lipid peroxidation, apoptotic cell death, and modulating p38- and JNK-MAPK pathways in acetic acid-induced colitis	[50]
15	*Bauhinia tomentosa*	Extract of Bauhinia tomentosa significantly inhibit colitis by regulating the antioxidant and inflammatory mediators with decreasing myeloperoxidase, tumor necrosis factor and inducible nitric oxide synthase expression on acetic acid induced ulcerative colitis	[51]
16	*Cistanche tubulosa*	Echinacoside enriched extract of Cistanche tubulosa significantly resist DSS-induced colitis by protecting intestinal epithelium from inflammatory injury and by upregulating TGF-β1 which enhanced *in vitro* wound healing activity as well as with an increase in the number of Ki67(+) proliferating cells in diseased colons	[52]
17	*Garcinia kola*	A natural biflavonoid, kolaviron from the seeds of Garcinia kola significantly increase the inflammatory mediators, IL-1β and tumour necrosis factor alpha, in the colon of DSS-induced ulcerative colitis in rats The anti-colitis effect of kolaviron is related to its intrinsic anti-inflammatory and anti-oxidative properties	[53]
18	*Marine mangrove Avicennia marina*	Marine mangrove Avicennia marina extract significantly decreased the colonic lipid peroxides, glutathione peroxidase, serum nitric oxide and significantly increased the colonic and erythrocyte superoxide dismutase and glutathione levels against acetic acid-induced colitis due to the presence of higher levels of decanoic acid, DEHA, pentanoic acid, pyrrolidine, 4-chlorophenyl, thiazolidinones, and arabinopyranoside (flavonoid)	[54]
19	*Soy extract*	FSG with standardized isoflavone and stable BBI content exert cumulative or synergistic protection based on protease inhibition and ER-ligand activity in colitic rats. It improved the severity of colitis, by decreasing the TNBS-induced rise in gut permeability, visceral sensitivity, faecal proteolytic activity and PAR-2 expression at all post-TNBS points	[55]

20	*Aegle marmelos*	Effect of Aegle marmelos unripe fruit extract was studied on acetic acid induced ulcerative colitis and indomethacin-induced enterocolitis in Wistar albino rats. Its mechanism is related with protection in mast cell degranulation by significantly decreasing the MDA levels and increased SOD activity. Extract produced anti-inflammatory, antioxidant, and mast cell stabilizing effects demonstrating protective effect in inflammatory bowel disease	[56]
21	*Andrographis paniculata*	A. panculata extract at a dose of 1800 mg daily were found to be effective in the treatment of ulcerative colitis	[57]
22	*Terminalia chebula*	Fruit pulp of Terminalia chebula TCE (600 mg/kg) shows healing effect against acetic acid induced colitis in rats. TCE showed antibacterial activity and both TCE and SS enhanced the antioxidants, but decreased free radicals and myeloperoxidase activities affected in acetic acid-induced colitis	[58]
23	*American ginseng*	HAG cause apoptosis and suppress mouse colitis through a p53-mediated mechanism. HAG might be very effective in targeting the inflammatory cells and cancer cells since it induces apoptosis of inflammatory cells and cell cycle arrest in both p53-/- and WT p53 colon cancer cells	[59]
24	*Vaccinium myrtillus*	Anthocyanins from Vaccinium myrtillus were shown to have antioxidative and anti-inflammatory effects are useful in the treatment of UC	[60]
25	*Moringa oleifera and Citrus sinensis*	Results show that a combination of Moringa oleifera root extracts with Citrus sinensis fruit rind extract is effective in the treatment of UC and results are comparable with the standard drug prednisolone. The combination reduced the levels of MPO and MDA in blood and tissue	[61]
26	*Lavandula intermedia*	Lavandula intermedia protected acute colitis in a mouse model of caused by Citrobacter rodentium. It reduced intestinal tissue damage, and decreased infiltration of neutrophils and macrophages, with reduced levels of TNF-α, IFN-γ, IL-22, macrophage inflammatory protein-2α, and inducible nitric oxide synthase expression	[62]
27	*Chelidonium majus*	The CA, a constituent of Chelidonium majus L., has protective effects against DSS-induced UC. CA was found to regulate levels of IL-6 and tumor necrosis factor-α in serum. In colonic tissues, prostaglandin E(2) production levels and COX-2 and HIF-1α expression levels were increased by DSS, but CA attenuated increases in COX-2 and HIF-1α levels	[63]
28	*Boswellia serrata*	Extracts of the plant Boswellia serrata showed significant reduction in lipid peroxidation and SOD level and GPx glutathione level increased significantly. The activity might be due to presence of antioxidant substances	[64]
29	*Apple polyphenol extract*	Apple extract treatment reduced the severity of colitis. Apple polyphenols reduced the degradation of tissue transglutaminase protein occurring through calpain action. The efficacy of apple extract is mediated by its effects on COX-2 and TNF-α. The unbalance between calpain and tissue transglutaminase may play a role in colonic damage and future therapeutic interventions in ulcerative colitis can target this mechanisms	[65]
30	*Cordia dichotoma*	The bark of Cordia dichotoma f. (Boraginaceae) was used in the treatment of ulcerative colitis. Apigenin (5 mg/kg, *p.o.*) isolated from methanol extract of C. dichotoma bark showed significant healing and reduction in inflammatory enzymes when screened for UC	[66,67]
31	*Vitex negundo*	Ethanol extract of Vitex negundo Linn. (Verbenaceae) root is effective in the treatment of UC. Extract reduced MPO and MDA levels in blood and tissue	[68]

UC: Ulcerative colitis; TNBS: 2,4,6-trinitrobenzene sulfonic acid; IBD: Inflammatory bowel disorders; SOD: Superoxide dismutase; GSH: Glutathione; LPO: Lipid peroxides; NO: Nitric oxide; MPO: Myeloperoxidase; LDH: Lactate dehydrogenase; iNOS: Nitric oxide synthase; COX-2: Cyclooxygenase-2; TNF-α: Tumor necrosis factor-α; AP: Alkaline phosphatase; MDA: Malondialdehyde; DSS: Dextran sulfate sodium; TGP: Total glucosides of peony; CMDI: Colon macroscopic damage index; DAI: Disease activity index; HPS: Histopathological score; IL: Interleukin; TGF: Transforming growth factor; DEHA: Diethylhydroxylamine; FSG: Fermented soy germ extract; BBI: Bowman-birk bnhibitors; ER: Estrogen receptor; HAG: Hexane fraction of American ginseng; CA: Chelidonic acid; HIF-1α: Hypoxia induced factor-1α; GPx: Glutathione peroxidase.

countries. Slippery elm, fenugreek, devil's claw, Mexican yam, tormentil, and Wei tong ning (a TCM) are some of the herbal remedies for the treatment of IBD[34,35]. Chen *et al*[36] compared TCM and synthetic drugs for the management of UC and result showed that 118 cases of UC patients were treated with integration of TCM and 86 cases of UC were treated with prednisone as controls (Table 2).

CONCLUSION

Ulcerative colitis is a chronic disease condition in which patients need to be treated with medicines throughout their lives to either to prevent relapse or to reduce other threats. This is the way by which quality of life of patients suffering from UC can be improved. Many synthetic drugs prescribed for the treatment of UC are associated with large side effects. Large number of herbal medicines is available with promising results for the treatment of UC. Now it is proved that herbal medicines and TCM can treat conditions of ulcerative colitis. We feel it is the duty of physicians to guide UC patients to inform them regarding availability of TCM treatment which is more effective and safe. These herbal medicines have opened new avenues for the treatment of UC. Thus we feel that herbal medicines are better option for the treatment of UC.

REFERENCES

1 **Kane SV**, Robinson A. Review article: understanding adherence to medication in ulcerative colitis - innovative thinking and evolving concepts. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2010; **32**: 1051-1058 [PMID: 20815833 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2010.04445]
2 **Toruner M**, Loftus EV, Harmsen WS, Zinsmeister AR, Orenstein R, Sandborn WJ, Colombel JF, Egan LJ. Risk factors for opportunistic infections in patients with inflammatory bowel disease.

Gastroenterology 2008; **134**: 929-936 [PMID: 18294633 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2008.01.012]

3   **Lichtenstein GR**, Rutgeerts P, Sandborn WJ, Sands BE, Diamond RH, Blank M, Montello J, Tang L, Cornillie F, Colombel JF. A pooled analysis of infections, malignancy, and mortality in infliximab- and immunomodulator-treated adult patients with inflammatory bowel disease. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2012; **107**: 1051-1063 [PMID: 22613901 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2012.89]

4   **Fernández A**, Barreiro-de Acosta M, Vallejo N, Iglesias M, Carmona A, González-Portela C, Lorenzo A, Domínguez-Muñoz JE. Complementary and alternative medicine in inflammatory bowel disease patients: frequency and risk factors. *Dig Liver Dis* 2012; **44**: 904-908 [PMID: 22795615 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2012.06.008]

5   **Hilsden RJ**, Verhoef MJ, Rasmussen H, Porcino A, DeBruyn JC. Use of complementary and alternative medicine by patients with inflammatory bowel disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2011; **17**: 655-662 [PMID: 20848543 DOI: 10.1002/ibd.21360]

6   **van Staa TP**, Cooper C, Brusse LS, Leufkens H, Javaid MK, Arden NK. Inflammatory bowel disease and the risk of fracture. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **125**: 1591-1597 [PMID: 14724810 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2003.09.027]

7   **Thuraisingam A**, Leiper K. Medical management of ulcerative colitis. *Hosp Med* 2003; **64**: 703-707 [PMID: 14702780 DOI: 10.12968/hosp.2003.64.12.2360]

8   **Diculescu M**, Ciocîrlan M, Ciocîrlan M, Pițigoi D, Becheanu G, Croitoru A, Spanache S. Folic acid and sulfasalazine for colorectal carcinoma chemoprevention in patients with ulcerative colitis: the old and new evidence. *Rom J Gastroenterol* 2003; **12**: 283-286 [PMID: 14726972]

9   **Raychaudhuri SP**, Raychaudhuri SK. Role of NGF and neurogenic inflammation in the pathogenesis of psoriasis. *Prog Brain Res* 2004; **146**: 433-437 [PMID: 14699978 DOI: 10.1016/S0079-6123(03]

10   **Lichtenstein GR**. Evaluation of bone mineral density in inflammatory bowel disease: current safety focus. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2003; **98**: S24-S30 [PMID: 14697915 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjgastroenterol.2003.11.003]

11   **Winther KV**, Jess T, Langholz E, Munkholm P, Binder V. Survival and cause-specific mortality in ulcerative colitis: follow-up of a population-based cohort in Copenhagen County. *Gastroenterology* 2003; **125**: 1576-1582 [PMID: 14724807 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2003.09.036]

12   **Solem CA**, Loftus EV, Tremaine WJ, Sandborn WJ. Venous thromboembolism in inflammatory bowel disease. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2004; **99**: 97-101 [PMID: 14687149 DOI: 10.1046/j.1572-0241.2003.04026.x]

13   **Russinko PJ**, Agarwal S, Choi MJ, Kelty PJ. Obstructive nephropathy secondary to sulfasalazine calculi. *Urology* 2003; **62**: 748 [PMID: 14550462 DOI: 10.1016/S0090-4295(03]

14   **Loftus EV**, Kane SV, Bjorkman D. Systematic review: short-term adverse effects of 5-aminosalicylic acid agents in the treatment of ulcerative colitis. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2004; **19**: 179-189 [PMID: 14723609 DOI: 10.1111/j.0269-2813.2004.01827.x]

15   **Edmond LM**, Hopkins MJ, Magee EA, Cummings JH. The effect of 5-aminosalicylic acid-containing drugs on sulfide production by sulfate-reducing and amino acid-fermenting bacteria. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2003; **9**: 10-17 [PMID: 12656132 DOI: 10.1097/00054725-200301000-00002]

16   **Card T**, West J, Hubbard R, Logan RF. Hip fractures in patients with inflammatory bowel disease and their relationship to corticosteroid use: a population based cohort study. *Gut* 2004; **53**: 251-255 [PMID: 14724159 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2003.026799]

17   **Corominas H**, Baiget M. Clinical utility of thiopurine S-methyl-transferase genotyping. *Am J Pharmacogenomics* 2004; **4**: 1-8 [PMID: 14987117 DOI: 10.2165/00129785-200404010-00001]

18   **Menachem Y**, Gotsman I. Clinical manifestations of pyoderma gangrenosum associated with inflammatory bowel disease. *Isr Med Assoc J* 2004; **6**: 88-90 [PMID: 14986464]

19   **Feagan BG**. Maintenance therapy for inflammatory bowel disease. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2003; **98**: S6-S17 [PMID: 14697913 DOI: 10.1016/j.amjgastroenterol.2003.11.002]

20   **Keven K**, Sahin M, Kutlay S, Sengul S, Erturk S, Ersoz S, Erbay B. Immunoglobulin deficiency in kidney allograft recipients: comparative effects of mycophenolate mofetil and azathioprine. *Transpl Infect Dis* 2003; **5**: 181-186 [PMID: 14987202 DOI: 10.1111/j.1399-3062.2003.00035.x]

21   **Kett K**, Rognum TO, Brandtzaeg P. Mucosal subclass distribution of immunoglobulin G-producing cells is different in ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease of the colon. *Gastroenterology* 1987; **93**: 919-924 [PMID: 3308623]

22   **Das KM**, Dasgupta A, Mandal A, Geng X. Autoimmunity to cytoskeletal protein tropomyosin. A clue to the pathogenetic mechanism for ulcerative colitis. *J Immunol* 1993; **150**: 2487-2493 [PMID: 8450225]

23   **Duerr RH**, Targan SR, Landers CJ, Sutherland LR, Shanahan F. Anti-neutrophil cytoplasmic antibodies in ulcerative colitis. Comparison with other colitides/diarrheal illnesses. *Gastroenterology* 1991; **100**: 1590-1596 [PMID: 2019365]

24   **Blumberg RS**, Strober W. Prospects for research in inflammatory bowel disease. *JAMA* 2001; **285**: 643-647 [PMID: 11176874 DOI: 10.1001/jama.285.5.643]

25   **Mahida YR**, Ceska M, Effenberger F, Kurlak L, Lindley I, Hawkey CJ. Enhanced synthesis of neutrophil-activating peptide-1/interleukin-8 in active ulcerative colitis. *Clin Sci* (Lond) 1992; **82**: 273-275 [PMID: 1312411]

26   **MacDonald TT**, Murch SH. Aetiology and pathogenesis of chronic inflammatory bowel disease. *Baillieres Clin Gastroenterol* 1994; **8**: 1-34 [PMID: 8003737 DOI: 10.1016/S0950-3528(06]

27   **Lih-Brody L**, Powell SR, Collier KP, Reddy GM, Cerchia R, Kahn E, Weissman GS, Katz S, Floyd RA, McKinley MJ, Fisher SE, Mullin GE. Increased oxidative stress and decreased antioxidant defenses in mucosa of inflammatory bowel disease. *Dig Dis Sci* 1996; **41**: 2078-2086 [PMID: 8888724 DOI: 10.1007/BF02093613]

28   **Symonds DA**. The glycosaminoglycans of the human colon in inflammatory and neoplastic conditions. *Arch Pathol Lab Med* 1978; **102**: 146-149 [PMID: 580362]

29   **Murch SH**, MacDonald TT, Walker-Smith JA, Levin M, Lionetti P, Klein NJ. Disruption of sulphated glycosaminoglycans in intestinal inflammation. *Lancet* 1993; **341**: 711-714 [PMID: 8095623 DOI: 10.1016/0140-6736(93]

30   **Vantrappen G**, Geboes K. Glycosaminoglycans and the gut. *Lancet* 1993; **341**: 730-731 [PMID: 8095632]

31   **Comar KM**, Kirby DF. Herbal remedies in gastroenterology. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2005; **39**: 457-468 [PMID: 15942431 DOI: 10.1097/01.mcg.0000165650.09500.3a]

32   **Tillisch K**. Complementary and alternative medicine for gastrointestinal disorders. *Clin Med* 2007; **7**: 224-227 [PMID: 17633940 DOI: 10.7861/clinmedicine.7-3-224]

33   **D'Inca R**, Garribba AT, Vettorato MG, Martin A, Martines D, Di Leo V, Buda A, Sturniolo GC. Use of alternative and complementary therapies by inflammatory bowel disease patients in an Italian tertiary referral centre. *Dig Liver Dis* 2007; **39**: 524-529 [PMID: 17433794 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2007.03.001]

34   **Langmead L**, Rampton DS. Review article: complementary and alternative therapies for inflammatory bowel disease. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2006; **23**: 341-349 [PMID: 16422993 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2006.02761.x]

35   **Langmead L**, Makins RJ, Rampton DS. Anti-inflammatory effects of aloe vera gel in human colorectal mucosa in vitro. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2004; **19**: 521-527 [PMID: 14987320 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2004.01874.x]

36   **Chen Q**, Zhang H. Clinical study on 118 cases of ulcerative colitis treated by integration of traditional Chinese and Western medicine. *J Tradit Chin Med* 1999; **19**: 163-165 [PMID: 10921142]

37   **Sakthivel KM**, Guruvayoorappan C. Protective effect of Acacia ferruginea against ulcerative colitis via modulating inflammatory mediators, cytokine profile and NF-κB signal transduction pathways. *J Environ Pathol Toxicol Oncol* 2014; **33**: 83-98 [PMID: 24941292 DOI: 10.1615/JEnvironPatholToxicolOncol.2014008425]

38   **Cazarin CB**, da Silva JK, Colomeu TC, Batista AG, Vilella CA, Ferreira AL, Junior SB, Fukuda K, Augusto F, de Meirelles LR, Zollner Rde L, Junior MR. Passiflora edulis peel intake and ulcerative colitis: approaches for prevention and treatment. *Exp Biol Med* (Maywood) 2014; **239**: 542-551 [PMID: 24623393 DOI: 10.1177/1535370214525306]

39   **Fan HY**, Zhang ZL, Liu K, Yang MY, Lv WH, Che X, Xu H, Song WW. Effectiveness of a hydroxynaphthoquinone fraction from Arnebia euchroma in rats with experimental colitis. *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 9318-9327 [PMID: 24409058 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i48.9318]

40   **Storr M**, Devlin S, Kaplan GG, Panaccione R, Andrews CN. Cannabis use provides symptom relief in patients with inflammatory bowel disease but is associated with worse disease prognosis in patients with Crohn's disease. *Inflamm Bowel Dis* 2014; **20**: 472-480 [PMID: 24407485 DOI: 10.1097/01.MIB.0000440982.79036.d6]

41   **V VP**, C G. Protective effect of marine mangrove Rhizophora apiculata on acetic acid induced experimental colitis by regulating anti-oxidant enzymes, inflammatory mediators and nuclear factor-kappa B subunits. *Int Immunopharmacol* 2014; **18**: 124-134 [PMID: 24269623 DOI: 10.1016/j.intimp.2013.11.007]

42   **Orsi PR**, Seito LN, Di Stasi LC. Hymenaea stigonocarpa Mart. ex Hayne: A tropical medicinal plant with intestinal anti-inflammatory activity in TNBS model of intestinal inflammation in rats. *J Ethnopharmacol* 2014; **151**: 380-385 [PMID: 24211392 DOI: 10.1016/j.jep.2013.10.056]

43   **Gao YQ**, Su D, Hu Y, Lin H, Zhang WX, Dai WB. Effect of Helicteres angustifolia on rats with ulcerative colitis. *Zhongyaocai* 2013; **36**: 597-600 [PMID: 24134009]

44   **Song JL**, Qian Y, Li GJ, Zhao X. Anti-inflammatory effects of kudingcha methanol extract (Ilex kudingcha C.J. Tseng) in dextran sulfate sodium-induced ulcerative colitis. *Mol Med Rep* 2013; **8**: 1256-1262 [PMID: 23969782 DOI: 10.3892/mmr.2013.1635]

45   **Zhang Y**, Zhou R, Zhou F, Cheng H, Xia B. Total glucosides of peony attenuates 2,4,6-trinitrobenzene sulfonic acid/ethanol-induced colitis in rats through adjustment of TH1/TH2 cytokines polarization. *Cell Biochem Biophys* 2014; **68**: 83-95 [PMID: 23771723 DOI: 10.1007/s12013-013-9696-3]

46   **Giner E**, Recio MC, Ríos JL, Giner RM. Oleuropein protects against dextran sodium sulfate-induced chronic colitis in mice. *J Nat Prod* 2013; **76**: 1113-1120 [PMID: 23758110 DOI: 10.1021/np400175b]

47   **Pile JE**, Navalta JW, Davis CD, Sharma NC. Interventional effects of plumbagin on experimental ulcerative colitis in mice. *J Nat Prod* 2013; **76**: 1001-1006 [PMID: 23742275 DOI: 10.1021/np3008792]

48   **Awaad AS**, El-Meligy RM, Al-Jaber NA, Al-Muteeri HS, Zain ME, Alqasoumi SI, Alafeefy AM, Donia Ael R. Anti-ulcerative colitis activity of compounds from Euphorbia granuleta Forssk. *Phytother Res* 2013; **27**: 1729-1734 [PMID: 23580316 DOI: 10.1002/ptr.4985]

49   **Nirmal SA**, Ingale JM, Pattan SR, Bhawar SB. Amaranthus roxburghianus root extract in combination with piperine as a potential treatment of ulcerative colitis in mice. *J Integr Med* 2013; **11**: 206-212 [PMID: 23570686 DOI: 10.3736/jintegrmed2013022]

50   **Topcu-Tarladacalisir Y**, Akpolat M, Uz YH, Kizilay G, Sapmaz-Metin M, Cerkezkayabekir A, Omurlu IK. Effects of curcumin on apoptosis and oxidoinflammatory regulation in a rat model of acetic acid-induced colitis: the roles of c-Jun N-terminal kinase and p38 mitogen-activated protein kinase. *J Med Food* 2013; **16**: 296-305 [PMID: 23566056 DOI: 10.1089/jmf.2012.2550]

51   **Kannan N**, Guruvayoorappan C. Protective effect of Bauhinia tomentosa on acetic acid induced ulcerative colitis by regulating antioxidant and inflammatory mediators. *Int Immunopharmacol* 2013; **16**: 57-66 [PMID: 23538025 DOI: 10.1016/j.intimp.2013.03.008]

52   **Jia Y**, Guan Q, Jiang Y, Salh B, Guo Y, Tu P, Du C. Amelioration of dextran sulphate sodium-induced colitis in mice by echinacoside-enriched extract of Cistanche tubulosa. *Phytother Res* 2014; **28**: 110-119 [PMID: 23512684 DOI: 10.1002/ptr.4967]

53   **Farombi EO**, Adedara IA, Ajayi BO, Ayepola OR, Egbeme EE. Kolaviron, a natural antioxidant and anti-inflammatory

phytochemical prevents dextran sulphate sodium-induced colitis in rats. *Basic Clin Pharmacol Toxicol* 2013; **113**: 49-55 [PMID: 23336970 DOI: 10.1111/bcpt.12050]

54   **Rise CL**, Prabhu VV, Guruvayoorappan C. Effect of marine mangrove Avicennia marina (Forssk.) Vierh against acetic acid-induced ulcerative colitis in experimental mice. *J Environ Pathol Toxicol Oncol* 2012; **31**: 179-192 [PMID: 23216642 DOI: 10.1615/JEnvironPatholToxicolOncol.v31.i2.90]

55   **Moussa L**, Bézirard V, Salvador-Cartier C, Bacquié V, Lencina C, Lévêque M, Braniste V, Ménard S, Théodorou V, Houdeau E. A low dose of fermented soy germ alleviates gut barrier injury, hyperalgesia and faecal protease activity in a rat model of inflammatory bowel disease. *PLoS One* 2012; **7**: e49547 [PMID: 23166707 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0049547]

56   **Behera JP**, Mohanty B, Ramani YR, Rath B, Pradhan S. Effect of aqueous extract of Aegle marmelos unripe fruit on inflammatory bowel disease. *Indian J Pharmacol* 2012; **44**: 614-618 [PMID: 23112424 DOI: 10.4103/0253-7613.100389]

57   **Sandborn WJ**, Targan SR, Byers VS, Rutty DA, Mu H, Zhang X, Tang T. Andrographis paniculata extract (HMPL-004) for active ulcerative colitis. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2013; **108**: 90-98 [PMID: 23044768 DOI: 10.1038/ajg.2012.340]

58   **Gautam MK**, Goel S, Ghatule RR, Singh A, Nath G, Goel RK. Curative effect of Terminalia chebula extract on acetic acid-induced experimental colitis: role of antioxidants, free radicals and acute inflammatory marker. *Inflammopharmacology* 2013; **21**: 377-383 [PMID: 22956243 DOI: 10.1007/s10787-012-0147-3]

59   **Poudyal D**, Cui X, Mai Le P, Davis T, Hofseth AB, Jin Y, Chumanevich AA, Wargovich MJ, Nagarkatti M, Nagarkatti PS, Windust A, Hofseth LJ. A limited role of p53 on the ability of a Hexane fraction of American ginseng to suppress mouse colitis. *J Biomed Biotechnol* 2012; **2012**: 785739 [PMID: 22899889 DOI: 10.1155/2012/785739]

60   **Biedermann L**, Mwinyi J, Scharl M, Frei P, Zeitz J, Kullak-Ublick GA, Vavricka SR, Fried M, Weber A, Humpf HU, Peschke S, Jetter A, Krammer G, Rogler G. Bilberry ingestion improves disease activity in mild to moderate ulcerative colitis - an open pilot study. *J Crohns Colitis* 2013; **7**: 271-279 [PMID: 22883440 DOI: 10.1016/j.crohns.2012.07.010]

61   **Gholap PA**, Nirmal SA, Pattan SR, Pal SC, Mandal SC. Potential of Moringa oleifera root and Citrus sinensis fruit rind extracts in the treatment of ulcerative colitis in mice. *Pharm Biol* 2012; **50**: 1297-1302 [PMID: 22849565 DOI: 10.3109/13880209.2012.674142]

62   **Baker J**, Brown K, Rajendiran E, Yip A, DeCoffe D, Dai C, Molcan E, Chittick SA, Ghosh S, Mahmoud S, Gibson DL. Medicinal lavender modulates the enteric microbiota to protect against Citrobacter rodentium-induced colitis. *Am J Physiol Gastrointest Liver Physiol* 2012; **303**: G825-G836 [PMID: 22821949 DOI: 10.1152/ajpgi.00327]

63   **Kim DS**, Kim SJ, Kim MC, Jeon YD, Um JY, Hong SH. The therapeutic effect of chelidonic acid on ulcerative colitis. *Biol Pharm Bull* 2012; **35**: 666-671 [PMID: 22687399 DOI: 10.1248/bpb.35.666]

64   **Hartmann RM**, Morgan Martins MI, Tieppo J, Fillmann HS, Marroni NP. Effect of Boswellia serrata on antioxidant status in an experimental model of colitis rats induced by acetic acid. *Dig Dis Sci* 2012; **57**: 2038-2044 [PMID: 22451119 DOI: 10.1007/s10620-012-2134-3]

65   **D'Argenio G**, Mazzone G, Tuccillo C, Ribecco MT, Graziani G, Gravina AG, Caserta S, Guido S, Fogliano V, Caporaso N, Romano M. Apple polyphenols extract (APE) improves colon damage in a rat model of colitis. *Dig Liver Dis* 2012; **44**: 555-562 [PMID: 22381211 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2012.01.009]

66   **Ganjare AB**, Nirmal SA, Patil AN. Use of apigenin from Cordia dichotoma in the treatment of colitis. *Fitoterapia* 2011; **82**: 1052-1056 [PMID: 21745550 DOI: 10.1016/j.fitote.2011.06.008]

67   **Ganjare AB**, Nirmal SA, Rub RA, Patil AN, Pattan SR. Use of Cordia dichotoma bark in the treatment of ulcerative colitis. *Pharm*

Biol 2011; **49**: 850-855 [PMID: 21696332 DOI: 10.3109/13880209. 2010.551539]

68   **Zaware BB**, Nirmal SA, Baheti DG, Patil AN, Mandal SC. Potential of Vitex negundo roots in the treatment of ulcerative colitis in mice. *Pharm Biol* 2011; **49**: 874-878 [PMID: 21591873 DOI: 10.3109/13880209.2010.551778]

ORIGINAL ARTICLE

Basic Study

Protective effect of fu-qi granule on carbon tetrachloride-induced liver fibrosis in rats

Lin Zhong, Yan-Ling Sun, Wen-Li Shi, Xiao Ma, Zhe Chen, Jia-Bo Wang, Rui-Sheng Li, Xue-Ai Song, Hong-Hong Liu, Yan-Ling Zhao, Xiao-He Xiao

Lin Zhong, Xiao Ma, Zhe Chen, Pharmacy College, Chengdu University of Traditional Chinese Medicine, Chengdu 611137, Sichuan Province, China

Yan-Ling Sun, Division I, Second Hepatobiliary Surgery Center, 302 Military Hospital of China, Beijing 100039, China

Wen-Li Shi, Xue-Ai Song, Hong-Hong Liu, Department of Integrative Medical Center, 302 Military Hospital of China, Beijing 100039, China

Jia-Bo Wang, Yan-Ling Zhao, Xiao-He Xiao, China Military Institute of Chinese Medicine, 302 Military Hospital of China, Beijing 100039, China

Rui-Sheng Li, Research and Technology Service Center, 302 Military Hospital of China, Beijing 100039, China

Correspondence to: Yan-Ling Zhao, Professor, China Military Institute of Chinese Medicine, 302 Military Hospital of China, 100#, the 4th Ring Road, Beijing 100039, China. zhaoyl2855@126.com
Telephone: +86-10-66933320
Fax: +86-10-66933320

Abstract

AIM: To investigate the efficacy of fu-qi granule (FQG) on carbon tetrachloride (CCl$_4$) induced liver fibrosis in rats and the underlying mechanisms.

METHODS: Sixty rats were randomly divided into six

groups: normal control group, CCl$_4$ induced liver fibrosis group, AnluoHuaxianWan group and three treatment groups of FQG. Treatment of rats with intraperitoneal injection of carbon tetrachloride solution at 0.3 mL per 100 g body weigh twice a week for 8 wk. The normal control group the rats were given the media (olive oil) at the same time. In the first 2 wk, rats were raised with feedstuff (80% corn meal, 20% lard, 0.5% cholesterol). Serum samples were collected for alanine transaminase, aspartate aminotransferase, alkaline phosphatase, albumin, total protein assay and typical histopathological changes was observed in Hematoxylin-eosin staining sections. Smooth muscle alpha actin (α-SMA) was analyzed with immunohistochemistry. Mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR) and hypoxia-inducible factor-1 (HIF-1α) expressions were detected by Western blotting. Tissue inhibitor of matrix metalloproteinases-1 (TIMP-1) and matrix metalloproteinases-9 (MMP-9) were measured with semi-quantitative reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction.

RESULTS: FQG significantly reduced the serum levels of alanine transaminase, aspartate aminotransferase, alkaline phosphatase and increased the serum contents of albumin, total protein in rats with liver fibrosis. Moreover, FQG promoted extracellular matrix degradation by increasing MMP-9 and inhibiting TIMP-1 and α-SMA. mTOR and HIF-1α expression in liver significantly decreased in the rats treated with FQG.

CONCLUSION: The results indicated that FQG significantly reverse fibrosis induced by CCl$_4$, which should be developed as a new and promising preparation for the prevention of liver fibrosis.

Key words: Protective effect; Fu-qi granule; Carbon tetrachloride; Mammalian target of rapamycin/p70S6K signal pathway; Liver fibrosis

Core tip: Fu-qi granule (FQG) is traditional Chinese medicine preparation to prove the antifibrotic properties of traditional Chinese drug composed of six medicinal herbs in rats treated with carbon tetrachloride. we checked activities of liver enzymes, histopathological changes within the liver as well as the expression of mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR) and hypoxia-inducible factor-1 and tissue inhibitor of matrix metalloproteinases-1 and matrix metalloproteinases-9. FQG can attenuate liver fibrosis induced by carbon tetrachloride *via* mTOR/p70S6K signal transduction pathway.

INTRODUCTION

As one of the common response to different kinds of liver injuries, such as autoimmune diseases, metabolic diseases, alcohol abuse, cholestatic liver disease[1], together with hepatitis. Liver fibrosis usually results in hepatic microstructure distortion and liver dysfunction with characterization of extracellular matrix (ECM) overproduction and irregular deposition in liver tissues[2], which seriously threatens human health. Therefore, it could be given a hint that the prevention of the progression from liver injury to liver cirrhosis may due to interruption and reversion of hepatic fibrosis.

Although there are many pathways and targets involving in liver fibrogenesis, however, by now, the mammalian targets of rapamycin (mTOR)/p70S6 kinase (p70S6K) signal pathways are receiving more and more attentions. It is reported that mTOR which were an regarded as an internal evolutionarily hidebound kinase, are taking advantage of controling serine threonine synthesis *via* phosphorylation of its downstream targets[3]. Being a mitogen-activated protein kinase, the p70S6K is playing an extremely major role in cell life cycle survival, proliferation or regulation[4]. Additionally, mTOR/p70S6K signaling pathways inhibited hepatic stellate cell (HSC) proliferation, which could be as an effective anti-fibrotic strategy[5].

Currently, several agents have showed promising anti-fibrogenesis effect in liver[6]. However, there still seems a long way to apply the agents in the clinical application[7]. Having been used for thousands of years in China, Traditional Chinese medicines (TCM) has been playing a special role in liver diseases treatment from a unique perspective[8]. With good therapeutic effects on liver fibrosis, traditional Chinese medicine has attracted more and more attentions and people are trying to explore new preparation of TCM and investigating the potential mechanisms[9]. Since TCM has specific characteristics with multi-constituents, multi-ways and less side effects, studies on traditional Chinese medicine with anti-fibrosis effects have been shown more important in today[10].

Fu-qi granule (FQG) is a new type with traditional Chinese medicine preparation. It was prepared by the astragalus membranaceus (Fisch.), broussonetia papyrifera (L.), poria cocos (Schw.) and angelica sinensis (Oliv.) *via* water extraction. Then the extraction was filtrated and the filtration liquid was enriched and dried to powder. The powder was mixed with Equus asinus L and Fermentative cordycepic fungal powder and the mixture was added dextrin to the preparation of FQG. These plants are chosen for the anti-fibrosis agent is because of their pharmacological properties and clinical curative effect is better against liver fibrosis in 302 Military Hospital of China.

Based on the theory of TCM, liver fibrosis is characterized by humidity, fever, blood-stasis, poison, and both gas and yin asthenia[11,12]. Therefore, FQG is used to treat liver fibrosis by clearing heart and damp,

removing stasis and toxin in the liver. In modern pharmacy, Astragalus membranaceus and Poria cocos were also widely investigated in liver desease. Astragalosides was a potent chemical ingredient and it can protect acute liver injury and fibrogensis[13]. In addition, in order to compare the anti-fibrotic effecacy of FQG, AnluoHuaxianWan group (ALHXW) was also used as a positive-control drug in the experiment. According to the basic theories of TCM and results of modern pharmacology, the aim of this research is looking into the function of FQG regarding anti-liver fibrosis. Meanwhile, its underlying mechanisms on FQG for liver fibrosis were also investigated.

MATERIALS AND METHODS

Materials
The composition of FQG included Astragalus membranaceus (Fisch.), Angelica sinensis (Oliv.), Poria cocos (Schw.), Broussonetia papyrifera (L.), Equus asinus L. and Fermentative cordycepic fungal powder. It was prepared by the Astragalus membranaceus (Fisch.), Angelica sinensis (Oliv.), Poria cocos (Schw.) and Broussonetia papyrifera (L.) *via* water extraction. Then the extraction was filtrated and the filtration liquid was enriched and dried to powder. The powder were mixed with Equus asinus L and Fermentative cordycepic fungal powder and the mixture was added dextrin to the preparation of FQG.

Animals and treatments
Sixty Sprague-Dawley male rats (180-200 g) were obtained from Experimental Animal Center of Medical Sciences of Chinese People's Liberation Army (Beijing, China). Animal certificate was SCXK-(Army) 2012-0004.

Rats were housed 5 per cage with food and water ad libitum. All procedures involving animals and their care were following the regulations of the Committee on use of Human and Animal Subjects in Teaching and Research of the 302 Military Hospital of China. A total of 60 rats were randomly divided into six groups: normal control group, CCl$_4$ induced liver fibrosis group, ALHXW and three treatment groups of FQG (*n* = 10, respectively). Except for the normal control group, all the rats were administered with carbon tetrachloride solution (CCl$_4$ dissolved in olive oil, 5:5, v/v) at 0.3 mL/100 g body weight for the first time by intraperitoneal injection, and then with carbon tetrachloride solution (CCl$_4$ dissolved in olive oil, 3:7, v/v) at 0.3 mL per 100 g body weigh twice a week for 8 wk[14,15]. The normal control group the rats were given the media (olive oil) at the same time. In the first 2 wk, rats were raised with feedstuff (80% corn meal, 20% lard, 0.5% cholesterol)[16].

At the end of the 8th week, the ALHXW was oral administered with ALHXW (2.16 g/kg per day), which used for a positive-control drug. The treatment group was treated with high, medium and low doses of FQG

(5.4, 2.7 and 1.35 g/kg per day, respectively) by oral administration. The control group and CCl$_4$ induced liver fibrosis group were given equivalent saline every day for 6 wk. All animals were anesthetized after the last administration. Blood was taken from the inferior vena cava, centrifuged at 3000 r/min, 4 ℃, for 10 min, and serum was kept at -20 ℃ for assay. Liver samples were taken and washed immediately with ice cold saline. Subsequently, the liver was divided into two parts. One was immediately stored at -80 ℃ for future experiment, and the other one was fixed in 4% formalin solution for histopathologic examination.

Serum biochemical analysis
Serum levels of alanine transaminase (ALT), aspartate aminotransferase (AST), alkaline phosphatase (ALP), albumin (ALB) and total protein (TP) were measured by commercially available kits (Mindray bio-medical electronics co, LTD. Shenzhen, China) according to the manufacturer's instructions.

Histopathological examination
Left lobe liver tissues were fixed in 4% buffered paraformaldehyde and dehydrated with different graded alcohol series. After paraffin embedded, and cut into 5 μm sections, they were stained with hematoxylin and eosin (HE) for histopathological examination.

Immunohistochemical staining
The same part of liver in each group was fixed with 4% paraformaldehyde, dehydrated by ethanol gradients, paraffin embedded, sectioned into thickness of 5 microns, and underwent regular dewaxing. Endogenous peroxidase activity was blocked with 3% H$_2$O$_2$. After microwave treatment with 0.1 mol/L citrate buffer and blockage of non-specific antigen with horse serum, rabbit polyclonal antibody against rat Smooth muscle alpha actin (α-SMA) (Calbiochem Biotechnology, San Diego, CA, United States) (1:150 diluted in blocking buffer) was added, followed by overnight incubation at 4 ℃. The membrane was washed three times with 0.1% Tween-PBS. Antibody-antigen complexes were detected with DAB as the substrate. An interstitial brown stellate structure was regarded as positive for α-SMA.

Western blot analysis for mTOR and hypoxia-inducible factor-1
The liver tissues were washed with PBS and total cell lysates were prepared by adding cell lysis buffer (50 mmol/L Tris·HCl, pH = 8.0, 150 mmol/L solid acid sodium, 1% TritonX-100). The proteins were separated by electrophoresis on 10% SDS-PAGE gel with Bio-Rad electrophoresis system[17], (Bio-Rad Laboratories, Hercules, CA, United States). The membrane was blocked and incubated with primary antibodies overnight at 4 ℃. The primary antibodies, phospho-mTOR (serine 2448) and hypoxia-inducible factor-1α (HIF-1α) (Cell signaling TECHNOLOGY), were used for detection of

Figure 1 Serum alanine transaminase, aspartate aminotransferase, alkaline phosphatase, albumin and total protein levels. I: Control group; II: Model group; III: ALHXW group; IV: High-dose of FQG groups; V: Medium-dose of FQG; VI: Low-dosage of FQG group. ALT: Alanine transaminase; AST: Aspartate aminotransferase; ALP: Alkaline phosphatase; ALB: Albumin; TP: Total protein; FQG: Fu-qi granule.

mTOR and HIF-1α, respectively. GAPDH protein was used as the internal control.

Reverse transcription polymerase chain reaction analysis of tissue inhibitor of matrix metalloproteinases-1 and matrix metalloproteinases-9

Total RNA was extracted from liver tissues of each group with Trizol reagent (Takara Biotechnology Dalian CO., LTD.) according to the manufacturer's protocol. The isolated RNA was dissolved in RNase-free water stored at -80 ℃ immediately. RNA was quantified by optical density measurement at 260 nm on a spectro-photometer.

Reverse transcription reaction was performed with 2 μg of total RNA, which was used for polymerase chain reaction (PCR) amplification of cDNA products. The PCR of β-actin cDNA, which was used as an internal control, was carried out in the same tubes as for the genes. The products of PCR amplification were analyzed by electrophoresis on 1.5% agarose gel. The PCR product signal intensities were measured by scanning the gels. Tissue inhibitor of matrix metalloproteinases-1 (TIMP-1) and matrix metalloproteinases-9 (MMP-9) densitometric measurement was normalized with the internal control β-actin. The primers used were as follows: TIMP-1, Forward GACCACCTTATACCAGCGTT and Reverse TCGAGACCCCAAGGTATTG; MMP-9, Forward CTGTATGGCTTCTGTCCTA and Reverse GGCTT-CCTCCGTGATT.

Statistical analysis
Results were expressed as mean ± SD. Test data were analyzed with one-way variance (SPSS 20.0). Deviations with $P < 0.05$ were considered the presence of statistically significant.

RESULTS

FQG rescues CCl₄-induced live functional damage
The blood serum AST, ALT, ALB, ALP and TP activity in various experiment groups is seen in Figure 1. Activity of ALT, AST, ALP have increased markedly, both serum ALB and TP activity were created a dramatic decreased in CCl₄-duplicate liver fibrosis group ($P < 0.05$). Whereas three treatment groups of FQG showed the opposite response, which serum ALT, AST and ALP activities in rats were significantly improvement and the levels of ALB, TP were increased respectively higher than model group.

FQG protect liver damage induced by CCl₄
In order to evaluate the pathological changes in liver tissue, HE stain methods were employed in examin-ation of liver tissue. Liver tissues of the group with normal saline have inerratic lobular composition with central veios and hepatic cords (Figure 2A). In the CCl₄ group, serious injuries such as fibrous tissues hyperplasia, formed complete septa and pseudo lobule was observed in liver morphology ($P < 0.05$) (Figure

Figure 2 Effect of fu-qi granule on histopathological changes of liver (hematoxylin and eosin × 10). A: Control group; B: Model group; C: ALHXW group; D: High-dose of FQG-treated rats; E: Medium-dosage of FQG-treated rats; F: Low-dose of FQG-treated rats. Black arrow represents the pathological section. FQG: Fu-qi Granule.

2B). In the groups treated with ALHXW, high dosages and middle dosages with FQG groups correspondingly appear alleviate tissue destroy compared with model group (Figure 2C-E). However, low-dose of FQG groups had no obvious effect ($P < 0.05$, Figure 2F).

FQG inhibits α-SMA expression in CCl₄ treated rats

Compared with control group, α-SMA expression was increased significantly in the model group by method of immunohistochemical assay (Figure 3A and B). In the FQG treated rats groups with high-dose and meddle-dose, α-SMA expression of the liver tissues was noticeable reduction compared with CCl₄ induced model groups (Figure 3D and E). Besides, expression of α-SMA was drastically diminished in rats does by high-dose of FQG compare with ALHXW and low-dose of FQG (Figure 3C and F).

HIF-1α and mTOR protein expression

The mTOR and HIF-1α expression was detected undergo Western blotting. Studies have discovered that mTOR and HIF-1α expressions with hepatic tissue in models group were markedly increased, however, it was to observe the expression of mTOR and HIF-1α was significantly lowered in experimental rats with FQG intragastric administration group (Figure 4).

Detection of MMP-9 and TIMP-9 with reverse transcription-PCR

The results of semiquantitative reverse transcription-PCR (RT-PCR) expressions of MMP-9 and TIMP-1 in the hepatic tissues of different groups are exhibited in Figure 5. Experimental results showed that TIMP-1 expression dramatically stronger in treated with carbon tetrachloride than normal group, and its expression declined sharply in rats treated with high dosage of FQG. In contrast, the expression of MMP-9 was inferior in rats injected with CCl₄ relatively physiological saline, which down-regulation could obviously inhibit by treated with FQG.

DISCUSSION

Liver fibrosis induced by CCl₄ works as a kind of classic model in anti-fibrosis agents exploring and evaluation[18]. In the course of CCl₄ being transformed to free radicals, the cytochrome P450 plays a most important role. Furtherly, lipid oxidation reactions were initiated by free radicals and leaded to liver cell damnification, retrograde, and even death. This kind of stimulation again and again can definitely form liver fibrosis[19]. It will further worsening or permanence of cirrhosis. Thus, the prevention and reversal of fibrosis is an important means to prevent the formation of liver cirrhosis[20]. Some studies evidence suggests that liver is likely to recover from fibrosis[21]. Recently research on treatment of liver fibrosis by TCM preparation has made some progress, such as ALHXW was typically used to cure this disease in this area, and marketed in china (National Drug permit Registry Z20010098). Chinese medicinal preparations showed the influences on liver fibrosis mainly embodied itself in composition with abundant

Figure 3 Immunohistochemical analysis of α-smooth muscle actin in liver from rats with liver fibrosis (× 10). A: Control group; B: Model group; C: ALHXW group; D: High-dosage of FQG-treated rats; E: Medium-dosage of FQG-treated rats; F: Low-dosage of FQG-treated rats. Black arrow represents the pathological section. FQG: Fu-qi granule.

Figure 4 Western blot analysis of mammalian target of rapamycin and hypoxia-inducible factor-1α expression. A: Control group; B: Model group; C: ALHXW group; D: High-dosage of FQG-treated rats; E: Medium-dosage of FQG-treated rats; F: Low-dosage of FQG-treated rats. mTOR: Mammalian target of rapamycin; HIF-1α: Hypoxia-inducible factor-1 α; FQG: Fu-qi granule.

and complex[22,23].

The research adopt FQG to examine the therapeutic effects on hepatic fibrosis. ALT and AST is an enzyme, Increasing of which were considered due to damage of liver cell. ALP is an ectoenzyme of plasma membrane, its ascension is partly a reflection of hepatocyte plasma membrane was damaged. The other, ALB, TP were depressed. In this study, compared with model rats *via* CCl₄ treatment, effect of FQG makes serum ALT, AST and ALP levels significantly lowered, in the same time,

20131220-result of TIMP-1 determination

20131220-result of MMP-9 determination

Figure 5 Effect of Fu-qi granule on expression of tissue inhibitor of matrix metalloproteinases-1 and matrix metalloproteinases-9 in carbon tetrachloride induced fibrotic liver of rats. A: Normal control; B: Model control; C: ALHXW group; D: High-dosage of FQG-treated rats; E: Medium-dosage of FQG-treated rats; F: Low-dosage of FQG-treated rats; M: Marker; TIMP-1: 455 bp; MMP-9: 679 bp; TIMP-1: Tissue inhibitor of matrix metalloproteinases-1; MMP-9: Matrix metalloproteinases-9; FQG: Fu-qi granule.

Figure 6 Mammalian target of rapamycin/P70S6 kinase signaling pathway activation maybe participate in the process of liver fibrosis. FQG is the major negative-regulation target of mTOR. FQG paradoxically down-regulates the expression of mTOR and HIF-1α by Western blot. Then subsequently inhibit the activation of mTOR/p70S6K pathway. mTOR: Mammalian target of rapamycin; p70S6K: P70S6 kinase; FQG: Fu-qi granule; TIMP: Tissue inhibitor of matrix metalloproteinases; HIF-1α: Hypoxia-inducible factor-1 α.

it also elevated activity of serum ALB and TP in rats with treated FQG. These results exhibited an obvious therapeutic effect for liver fibrosis.

From a cellular perspective, in general, HSCs activation is the most important characteristic of liver fibrosis. During the process of HSC activation, α-SMA has started to overexpression, which is mostly found in smooth muscle cell. Increasing of α-SMA activated HSCs resulting in collagen fibers protein were secretion, ultimately leads to fibrosis. In this research, immunohistochenical suggested that α-SMA expression was obviously increased in rats with CCl₄ stimulate. However, its expression was markedly improvement in rats with treated FQG. This study showed that FQG could inhibit the activity of HSC, thus emerging anti-fibrosis effect.

TIMPs was served as a vital factor in the process of liver fibrosis. It was secreted through activated HSC and can produce a variety of cytokines that are significantly increased in liver fibrosis[24]. MMPs are able to degrade ECM, and play a critical role in preventing inflammation and tumor progression[25]. Under physiological conditions, the expressions of TIMPs and MMP-9 are in dynamic equilibrium to maintain the stability of ECM in liver[26]. RT-PCR analysis of TIMP-1 and MMP-9 showed that FQGs could effectively inhibit TIMP-1 protein expressions, meanwhile, MMP-9 was enhanced during hepatic fibrosis in rats. This result also indicated that the regulation of TIMP-1 and MMP-9 levels can promote degradation of ECM.

Activation of HSC is the core of liver fibrosis, clinical treatment of hepatic fibrosis is sticks chiefly to intervene activation process[27]. mTOR is one of the phosphoinositide 3-kinase related kinases family members and plays a vital role in cell proliferation regulation[28]. Previous research have showed that liver fibrosis could alleviated by mTOR inhibitor[29]. p70S6K is directly concerned to the matrix with mTOR, while the mTOR/p70S6K pathways is related to regulate of cell proliferation[30]. HIF-1 was used to grasp the expression of hypoxia inducible genes and further to decrease oxidation ability in cells[31]. Some studies have proved that increasing expression of HIF-1α though mTOR signaling can significantly result in pulmonary fibrosis, renal fibrosis or peritoneal angiogenesis, whereas mTOR inhibitor such as FQG is able to effectively alleviate liver fibrosis[32,33]. In fact, the expression intensity of mTOR and HIF-1α in experiment rats with CCl₄ injected was up-regulated by western blot analysis. Moreover, anoxia is likely what lead HIF-1α to up-regulation in hepatic tissues. Nevertheless, it was down-regulated for FQG treat group, which perhaps raising matrix to degrade and promoting HSC to apoptosis, consequently inhibiting deterioration of hepatic fibrosis. From what has been discussed above, we speculate that the FQG effect might be due to inhibition of CCl₄-induced p70S6K activation (Figure 6).

COMMENTS

Background

The incidence rate was high in patients with liver fibrosis in world, accordingly, if the issue was appropriately to regard liver fibrosis during this stage. It will prevent the development of cirrhosis and relieve the pain of the patients. However, there still lack of satisfactory treat medical for liver fibrosis at present. Based on the theories of Traditional Chinese medicines, humid, blocked lifeblood circulation, imbalance of yin and yang will give rise to liver fibrosis. Fu-qi granule (FQG) can activate blood and remove stasis, therefore, the current situation is to explore the effect and its underlying mechanisms of FQG on liver fibrosis duplicated by carbon tetrachloride (CCl$_4$) in rats.

Research frontiers

Recent research showed liver fibrosis can be relieved by regulating collagen metabolism, inhibiting hepatic stellate cell (HSC) activation. Moreover, amelioration of hepatic fibrosis was regulated by mammalian target of rapamycin (mTOR) inhibitors. mTOR/p70S6K pathway is blocked will lead to decrease of HSCs proliferation.

Innovations and breakthroughs

This study has confirmed that FQG can improve liver function, alleviate liver fibrosis, which is probably associated with its regulating mTOR/p70S6K signal transduction pathway.

Applications

The FQG can prevent liver fibrosis, which implies that it will be a good medicine and promising preparation for patients with liver fibrosis, this study can provide some scientific data for its application and development.

Terminology

Liver fibrosis is a chronically ill, which was caused by excessive cumulation of extracellar stroma proteins. HSCs become a crucial role in liver fibrosis and cirrhosis with portal hypertension incidence of pathological basis.

Peer-review

This paper reinforced my conviction that there is protective effect of FQG on liver fibrosis rats with CCl$_4$-stimulated. The study is interesting and the analysed parameters are well matched to the mechanism of hepatic fibrosis. Data are clear and convincing.

REFERENCES

1   **Lee TY**, Chang HH, Chen JH, Hsueh ML, Kuo JJ. Herb medicine Yin-Chen-Hao-Tang ameliorates hepatic fibrosis in bile duct ligation rats. *J Ethnopharmacol* 2007; **109**: 318-324 [PMID: 16989967 DOI: 10.1016/j.jep.2006.07.042]

2   **Friedman SL**. Liver fibrosis -- from bench to bedside. *J Hepatol* 2003; **38** Suppl 1: S38-S53 [PMID: 12591185 DOI: 10.1016/S0168-8278(02)00429-4]

3   **Osaka E**, Suzuki T, Osaka S, Yoshida Y, Sugita H, Asami S, Tabata K, Hemmi A, Sugitani M, Nemoto N, Ryu J. Survivin as a prognostic factor for osteosarcoma patients. *Acta Histochem Cytochem* 2006; **39**: 95-100 [PMID: 17327929 DOI: 10.1267/ahc.06005]

4   **Zhou Q**, Deng Z, Zhu Y, Long H, Zhang S, Zhao J. mTOR/p70S6K signal transduction pathway contributes to osteosarcoma progression and patients' prognosis. *Med Oncol* 2010; **27**: 1239-1245 [PMID: 19936974]

5   **Gäbele E**, Reif S, Tsukada S, Bataller R, Yata Y, Morris T, Schrum LW, Brenner DA, Rippe RA. The role of p70S6K in hepatic stellate cell collagen gene expression and cell proliferation. *J Biol Chem* 2005; **280**: 13374-13382 [PMID: 15677443 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M409444200]

6   **Friedman SL**. Reversibility of hepatic fibrosis and cirrhosis--is it all hype? *Nat Clin Pract Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2007; **4**: 236-237 [PMID: 17476207 DOI: 10.1038/ncpgasthep0813]

7   **Bataller R**, Brenner DA. Hepatic stellate cells as a target for the treatment of liver fibrosis. *Semin Liver Dis* 2001; **21**: 437-451 [PMID: 11586471 DOI: 10.1055/s-2001-17558]

8   **Li WL**, Zheng HC, Bukuru J, De Kimpe N. Natural medicines used in the traditional Chinese medical system for therapy of diabetes mellitus. *J Ethnopharmacol* 2004; **92**: 1-21 [PMID: 15099842 DOI: 10.1016/j.jep.2003.12.031]

9   **Zou YH**, Yang Y, Li J, Wu Q, Li WP, Lu JT, Roberts MS. Potential therapeutic effects of a traditional Chinese formulation, BJ-JN, on liver fibrosis induced by carbon tetrachloride in rats. *J Ethnopharmacol* 2008; **120**: 452-457 [PMID: 18951966 DOI: 10.1016/j.jep.2008.09.023]

10 **Lin X**, Zhang S, Huang Q, Wei L, Zheng L, Chen Z, Jiao Y, Huang J, Fu S, Huang R. Protective effect of Fufang-Liu-Yue-Qing, a traditional Chinese herbal formula, on CCl4 induced liver fibrosis in rats. *J Ethnopharmacol* 2012; **142**: 548-556 [PMID: 22658988]

11 **Liu P**, Hu YY, Ni LQ. [On establishing comparative reference system for syndrome classification study from the thinking characteristics of syndrome differentiation dependent therapy]. *Zhongguo Zhongxiyi Jiehe Zazhi* 2006; **26**: 451-454 [PMID: 16883917]

12 **Arias M**, Lahme B, Van de Leur E, Gressner AM, Weiskirchen R. Adenoviral delivery of an antisense RNA complementary to the 3' coding sequence of transforming growth factor-beta1 inhibits fibrogenic activities of hepatic stellate cells. *Cell Growth Differ* 2002; **13**: 265-273 [PMID: 12114216]

13 **Zhang YD**, Shen JP, Zhu SH, Huang DK, Ding Y, Zhang XL. [Effects of astragalus (ASI, SK) on experimental liver injury]. *Yaoxue Xuebao* 1992; **27**: 401-406 [PMID: 1442065]

14 **Nakamura T**, Akiyoshi H, Saito I, Sato K. Adenovirus-mediated gene expression in the septal cells of cirrhotic rat livers. *J Hepatol* 1999; **30**: 101-106 [PMID: 9927156 DOI: 10.1016/S0168-8278(99)80013-0]

15 **Yang FR**, Fang BW, Lou JS. Effects of Haobie Yangyin Ruanjian decoction on hepatic fibrosis induced by carbon tetrachloride in rats. *World J Gastroenterol* 2010; **16**: 1458-1464 [PMID: 20333785 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v16.i12.1458]

16 **Mullen KD**, McCullough AJ. Problems with animal models of chronic liver disease: suggestions for improvement in standardization. *Hepatology* 1989; **9**: 500-503 [PMID: 2921000 DOI: 10.1002/hep.1840090326]

17 **Yen CC**, Lai YW, Chen HL, Lai CW, Lin CY, Chen W, Kuan YP, Hsu WH, Chen CM. Aerosolized human extracellular superoxide dismutase prevents hyperoxia-induced lung injury. *PLoS One* 2011; **6**: e26870 [PMID: 22046389 DOI: 10.1371/journal.Pone.0026870]

18 **Brautbar N**, Williams J. Industrial solvents and liver toxicity: risk assessment, risk factors and mechanisms. *Int J Hyg Environ Health* 2002; **205**: 479-491 [PMID: 12455270 DOI: 10.1078/1438-4639-00175]

19 **Berger ML**, Bhatt H, Combes B, Estabrook RW. CCl4-induced toxicity in isolated hepatocytes: the importance of direct solvent injury. *Hepatology* 1986; **6**: 36-45 [PMID: 3943788 DOI: 10.1002/hep.1840060108]

20 **Ueberham E**, Löw R, Ueberham U, Schönig K, Bujard H, Gebhardt R. Conditional tetracycline-regulated expression of TGF-beta1 in liver of transgenic mice leads to reversible intermediary fibrosis. *Hepatology* 2003; **37**: 1067-1078 [PMID: 12717387 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2003.50196]

21 **Lou JL**, Jiang MN, Li C, Zhou Q, He X, Lei HY, Li J, Jia YJ. Herb medicine Gan-fu-kang attenuates liver injury in a rat fibrotic model. *J Ethnopharmacol* 2010; **128**: 131-138 [PMID: 20056141 DOI: 10.1016/j.jep.2009.12.D38]

22 **Zimmermann GR**, Lehár J, Keith CT. Multi-target therapeutics: when the whole is greater than the sum of the parts. *Drug Discov Today* 2007; **12**: 34-42 [PMID: 17198971 DOI: 10.1016/j.drudis.2006.11.008]

23 **Gu P**, Chen H, Yu T. Ontology-oriented diagnostic system for traditional Chinese medicine based on relation refinement. *Comput Math Methods Med* 2013; **2013**: 317803 [PMID: 23533534]

24 **Cheung KF**, Ye DW, Yang ZF, Lu L, Liu CH, Wang XL, Poon RT, Tong Y, Liu P, Chen YC, Lau GK. Therapeutic efficacy of Traditional Chinese Medicine 319 recipe on hepatic fibrosis induced by carbon tetrachloride in rats. *J Ethnopharmacol* 2009; **124**: 142-150 [PMID: 19501992 DOI: 10.1016/j.jep.2009.03.005]

25 **Jackson BC**, Nebert DW, Vasiliou V. Update of human and mouse matrix metalloproteinase families. *Hum Genomics* 2010; **4**: 194-201 [PMID: 20368140]

26   **Zhou X**, Hovell CJ, Pawley S, Hutchings MI, Arthur MJ, Iredale JP, Benyon RC. Expression of matrix metalloproteinase-2 and -14 persists during early resolution of experimental liver fibrosis and might contribute to fibrolysis. *Liver Int* 2004; **24**: 492-501 [PMID: 15482348 DOI: 10.1111/j.1478-3231.2004.0946.x]

27   **Ueberham E**, Löw R, Ueberham U, Schönig K, Bujard H, Gebhardt R. Conditional tetracycline-regulated expression of TGF-beta1 in liver of transgenic mice leads to reversible intermediary fibrosis. *Hepatology* 2003; **37**: 1067-1078 [PMID: 12717387 DOI: 10.1053/jhep.2003.50196]

28   **Fingar DC**, Blenis J. Target of rapamycin (TOR): an integrator of nutrient and growth factor signals and coordinator of cell growth and cell cycle progression. *Oncogene* 2004; **23**: 3151-3171 [PMID: 15094765 DOI: 10.1038/sj.onc.1207542]

29   **Patsenker E**, Schneider V, Ledermann M, Saegesser H, Dorn C, Hellerbrand C, Stickel F. Potent antifibrotic activity of mTOR inhibitors sirolimus and everolimus but not of cyclosporine A and tacrolimus in experimental liver fibrosis. *J Hepatol* 2011; **55**: 388-398 [PMID: 21168455 DOI: 10.1016/j.jhep.2010.10.044]

30   **Shamji AF**, Nghiem P, Schreiber SL. Integration of growth factor and nutrient signaling: implications for cancer biology. *Mol Cell* 2003; **12**: 271-280 [PMID: 14536067 DOI: 10.1016/j.molcel.2003.08.016]

31   **Sun S**, Gao YQ, Gao WX, Fan M. Hypoxia-inducible factor-1 and PI3K/Akt/mTOR signaling pathway. *Chinese Bulletin of Life Sciences* 2005; **17**: 311-314

32   **Mehrad B**, Burdick MD, Strieter RM. Fibrocyte CXCR4 regulation as a therapeutic target in pulmonary fibrosis. *Int J Biochem Cell Biol* 2009; **41**: 1708-1718 [PMID: 19433312 DOI: 10.1016/j.biocel.2009.02.020]

33   **Rozen-Zvi B**, Hayashida T, Hubchak SC, Hanna C, Platanias LC, Schnaper HW. TGF-β/Smad3 activates mammalian target of rapamycin complex-1 to promote collagen production by increasing HIF-1α expression. *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol* 2013; **305**: F485-F494 [PMID: 23761672 DOI: 10.1152/ajprenal.00215.2013]

World Journal of

Pharmacology

World Journal of *Pharmacology*

A peer-reviewed, online, open-access journal of pharmacology

Editorial Board

2011-2015

The *World Journal of Pharmacology* Editorial Board consists of 476 members, representing a team of worldwide experts in pharmacology. They are from 44 countries, including Argentina (1), Australia (12), Austria (3), Belarus (1), Belgium (3), Brazil (5), Bulgaria (1), Canada (13), Chile (2), China (45), Czech Republic (2), Denmark (2), Egypt (2), Finland (3), France (13), Germany (7), Greece (17), Hungary (6), Iceland (1), India (10), Iran (4), Ireland (1), Israel (13), Italy (40), Japan (31), Malaysia (1), Mexico (1), Netherlands (11), New Zealand (2), Poland (3), Portugal (2), Russia (1), Saint Kitts and Nevis (1), Saudi Arabia (1), Serbia (1), Singapore (7), South Korea (10), Spain (22), Sweden (4), Switzerland (2), Thailand (2), Turkey (6), United Kingdom (21), and United States (140).

Takayuki Masaki, *Oita*
Shin-ichiro Miura, *Fukuoka,*
Noboru-Motohashi, *Tokyo*
Yuji Naito, *Kyoto*
Toshio Nakaki, *Tokyo*
Satomi Onoue, *Shizuoka*
Honoo Satake, *Osaka*
Masaharu Seno, *Okayama*
Yasuyuki Shimada, *Yuri-Honjo*
Mitsushige Sugimoto, *Hamamatsu*
Masafumi Takahashi, *Tochigi*
Shinji Takai, *Takatsuki*
Yoh Takuwa, *Kanazawa*
Shingo Tsuji, *Osaka*
Hirokazu Tsukahara, *Okayama*
Motoko Unoki, *Fukuoka*
Shizuo Yamada, *Shizuoka*
Norio Yasui-Furukori, *Hirosaki*
Yukio Yoneda, *Kanazawa*
Kiyotsugu Yoshida, *Bunkyo-ku*

Malaysia

Johnson Stanslas, *Serdang*

Mexico

Esus Adolfo Garcia-Sainz, *Col. Nápoles*

Netherlands

Arjan Blokland, *Maastricht*
Eliyahu Dremencov, *Groningen*
Elisa Giovannetti, *Amsterdam*
Hidde J Haisma, *Groningen*
Godefridus J Peters, *Amsterdam*
Frank A Redegeld, *Utrecht*
Harald H H W Schmidt, *Maastricht*
Martina Schmidt, *Groningen*
Frederik M van der Veen, *Rotterdam*
Charles J Vecht, *The Hague*
Joris Cornelis Verster, *Utrecht*

New Zealand

Hesham Al-Sallami, *Dunedin*
Lin Yang, *Dunedin*

Poland

Thomas Michal Brzozowski, *Cracow*
Wladyslawa Anna Daniel, *Krakow*
Andrzej Pilc, *Krakow*

Portugal

Bruno Filipe C Cardoso Sarmento, *Porto*
Cristina Maria Sena, *Coimbra*

Russia

Roman Gerbertovich Efremov, *Moscow*

Saint Kitts and Nevis

Ignacio Lizarraga, *Basseterre*

Saudi Arabia

Mohamed Haidara, *Abha*

Serbia

Milan Jokanovic, *Belgrade*

Singapore

Jinsong Bian, *Singapore*
Gavin S Dawe, *Singapore*
Chang Ming Li, *Singapore*
Haishu Lin, *Singapore*
Rajkumar Ramamoorthy, *Singapore*
Gautam Sethi, *Singapore*
WS Fred Wong, *Singapore*

South Korea

Ki Churl Chang, *Jinju*
Joohun Ha, *Seoul*
Sang June Hahn, *Seoul*
Byeongmoon Jeong, *Seoul*
Myung Gull Lee, *Bucheon*
Won Suk Lee, *Yangsan*
Seung-Yeol Nah, *Seoul*
Kyoungho SUK, *Daegu*
Young-Hyun Yoo, *Pusan*
Soh Yunjo, *Jeonju*

Spain

José Luis Arias-Mediano, *Granada*
Pedro Emilio Bermejo, *Madrid*
Fermín Sánchez de Medina, *Granada*
Guillermo Elizondo, *Mexico*
Leandro Fernández-Pérez, *Las Palmas*
Cristina Fillat, *Barcelona*
J Adolfo Garcia-Sainz, *Mexico*
Angel Luis Montejo Gonzalez, *Salamanca*
Tomas Herraiz, *Madrid*
Miguel JA Lainez, *Valencia*
Jose Martinez Lanao, *Salamanca*
Angel Lanas, *Zaragoza*
Vicente Martinez, *Barcelona*
Faustino Mollinedo, *Salamanca*
Virginia Motilva, *Sevilla*
Gorka Orive, *Vitoria-Gasteiz*
Ricardo Enrique Perez-Tomas, *Barcelona*
S Rodriguez-Couto, *Donostia-San Sebastian*
Maria Eugenia Saez, *Seville*
Juan Sastre, *Valencia*
Juan L Tamargo, *Madrid*
Salvador Ventura Zamora, *Barcelona*

Sweden

Aleksander A Mathe, *Stockholm*

Sharma Hari Shanker, *Uppsala*
Marie-Louise G Wadenberg, *Kalmar*
Cang-Bao Xu, *Lund*

Switzerland

Stefan J Borgwardt, *Basel*
Felicien Karege, *Geneva*

Thailand

Rumi Ghosh, *Rayong*
Kanokwan Jarukamjorn, *Khon Kaen*

Turkey

Cengiz Abdollahi Akkaya, *Bursa*
Sule Apikoglu-Rabus, *Istanbul*
Fatih Canan, *Bolu*
Saygin S Eker, *Bursa*
Nese Tuncel, *Eskisehir*
Mehmet Yaman, *Elazig*

United Kingdom

Charalambos Antoniades, *Oxford*
Sabine Bahn, *Cambridge*
Christopher John Bushe, *New Malden*
David J Chambers, *London*
Michael J Curtis, *London*
Rossen M Donev, *Swansea*
Marco Falasca, *London*
David James Grieve, *Belfast*
Alan Jeffrey Hargreaves, *Nottingham*
Mahmoud M Iravani, *London*
Nigel Irwin, *Coleraine*
Lin-Hua Jiang, *Leeds*
Veena Kumari, *London*
Kim Lawson, *Sheffield*
Debbi MacMillan, *Glasgow*
Elek-Molnar, *Bristol*
Stuart Anthony Rushworth, *Norwich*
Sunita Suri, *Nottingham*
Jinsheng Xu, *Bristol*
Alexander Victor Zholos, *Belfast*

United States

Nihal Ahmad, *Madison*
James David Adams Jr, *Los Angeles*
Gustav Akk, *St. Louis*
Karim A Alkadhi, *Houston*
Charles Antzelevitch, *Utica*
Hugo Ruben Arias, *Glendale*
Dominick L Auci, *Escondido*
Ross J Baldessarini, *Belmont*
Oleg A Barski, *Louisville*
Bjorn Bauer, *Duluth*
Chengpeng Bi, *Kansas*
Marco Bortolato, *Los Angeles*
Josh Burk, *Williamsburg*
William K Chan, *Stockton*
James J Chen, *Jefferson*
Zhe-Sheng Chen, *New York*
Beek Yoke Chin, *Boston*
Ting-Chao Chou, *New York*

Contents

Contents

ABOUT COVER

Editorial Board Number of *World Journal of Pharmacology*, Zhi-Gen Jiang, MD, Professor, Oregon Hearing Research Center, Department of Otolaryngology, Head and Neck Surgery, NRC-04 Oregon Health and Science University, Portland, OR 97239-3098, United States

AIM AND SCOPE

World Journal of Pharmacology (*World J Pharmacol*, *WJP*, online ISSN 2220-3192, DOI: 10.5497) is a peer-reviewed open access academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians.

WJP covers topics concerning neuropsychiatric pharmacology, cerebrovascular pharmacology, geriatric pharmacology, anti-inflammatory and immunological pharmacology, antitumor pharmacology, anti-infective pharmacology, metabolic pharmacology, gastrointestinal and hepatic pharmacology, respiratory pharmacology, blood pharmacology, urinary and reproductive pharmacology, pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics, clinical pharmacology, and drug toxicology.

We encourage authors to submit their manuscripts to *WJP*. We will give priority to manuscripts that are supported by major national and international foundations and those that are of great basic and clinical significance.

INDEXING/ABSTRACTING

World Journal of Pharmacology is now indexed in Digital Object Identifier.

FLYLEAF

INSTRUCTIONS TO AUTHORS
Full instructions are available online at http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3192/g_info_20100722180909.htm

ONLINE SUBMISSION
http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/

Therapeutic targets and delivery challenges for Alzheimer's disease

Preshita Desai, Harshad Shete, Rahul Adnaik, John Disouza, Vandana Patravale

Preshita Desai, Harshad Shete, Vandana Patravale, Department of Pharmaceutical Sciences and Technology, Institute of Chemical Technology, Mumbai 400019, Maharashtra, India

Rahul Adnaik, Department of Pharmacology, Rajarambapu College of Pharmacy, Sangli 415404, Maharashtra, India

John Disouza, Tatyasaheb Kore College of Pharmacy, Kolhapur 416113, Maharashtra, India

Correspondence to: Vandana Patravale, PhD, Professor of Pharmaceutics, Department of Pharmaceutical Sciences and Technology, Institute of Chemical Technology, Nathalal Parekh Marg, Matunga (East), Mumbai 400019, Maharashtra, India. vbp_muict@yahoo.co.in
Telephone: +91-22-33612217
Fax: +91-22-33611020

Abstract

Dementia, including Alzheimer's disease, the 21st Century epidemic, is one of the most significant social and health crises which has currently afflicted nearly 44 million patients worldwide and about new 7.7 million cases are reported every year. This portrays the unmet need towards better understanding of Alzheimer's disease pathomechanisms and related research towards more effective treatment strategies. The review thus comprehensively addresses Alzheimer's disease pathophysiology with an insight of underlying multicascade pathway and elaborates possible therapeutic targets- particularly anti-amyloid approaches, anti-tau approaches, acetylcholinesterase inhibitors, glutamatergic system modifiers, immunotherapy, anti-inflammatory targets, antioxidants, 3-hydroxy-3-methyl-glutaryl-coenzyme A reductase inhibitors and insulin. In spite of extensive research leading to identification of newer targets and potent drugs, complete cure of Alzheimer's disease appears to be an unreached holy grail. This can be attributed to their ineffective delivery across blood brain barrier and ultimately to the brain. With this understanding, researchers are now focusing on development of drug delivery systems to be delivered *via* suitable route that can circumvent blood brain barrier effectively with enhanced patient compliance. In this context, we have summarized current drug delivery strategies by oral, transdermal, intravenous, intranasal and other miscellaneous routes and have accentuated the future standpoint towards promising therapy ultimately leading to Alzheimer's disease cure.

Key words: Neurofibrillary tangles; Alzheimer's disease; Dementia; Amyloid β; Tau; Neurodegeneration; Blood brain barrier; Transdermal; Nasal

Core tip: Dementia, including Alzheimer's disease, the 21st Century epidemic, is one of the most significant social and health crises which has currently afflicted nearly 44 million patients worldwide and is on rampant rise. This portrays the unmet need towards better understanding

of Alzheimer's disease pathomechanisms and related research towards more effective treatment strategies. The review thus focuses on thorough understanding of Alzheimer's disease pathophysiology, pharmacotherapy in terms of explored therapeutic targets and drug delivery systems towards better delivery of anti-Alzheirmer actives and a possible way ahead.

INTRODUCTION

Dementia, including Alzheimer's disease (AD), the 21st Century epidemic, is one of the most significant social and health crises impacting families, social service and healthcare delivery systems.

The incidence of dementia and AD escalates almost exponentially with age[1]. The prevalence of dementia nearly doubles every five years after the age of 60 in which AD accounts for between 50%-70% among all dementia cases[2]. The age-standardized occurrence for those aged 60 or older is 5%-7%; among persons aged 60-64 years is 7%-18%, but among those aged over 90 years is 29%-64%[3-6]. It is generally believed that men and women are equally at risk of AD. However, there are more women patients than men possibly due to higher longevity of women as compared to men. Further, it is devastating to note that nearly one in four people with AD hide or conceal their symptoms, citing social stigma or dread of being ostracized[7] and four out of ten sufferers report being excluded from the familiar and comforting routines of everyday life[8].

Worldwide, approximately 44 million patients are reported to be afflicted with AD or other dementias and about 7.7 million new cases are reported every year[9]. The numbers are estimated to reach 76 million by 2030 and more than 135 million by 2050[4,10,11], with 90% increase in Europe, 226% in Asia, 248% in America and 345% in Africa[12]. In fact, most countries are woefully unprepared for the dementia epidemic and have not structured their health care programs to cope with the foreseen increase in numbers. Despite the urgent need for action, only 13 of the 193 World Health Organization members have instigated national dementia plans, precisely all of them in the developed world[13].

On the other hand, as per the current statistics, the number of cases of AD in Asia and Africa is lower than that reported in developed countries. There are several possible reasons like undiagnosed AD, the lack of awareness, poor access to technologically advanced health care*, etc.*, or there may be lower incidence of risk factors[14]. Research in India and Africa proposes that the AD risk was possibly greater for urban as compared

to rural areas. The reason for this difference is not clear whether it is increased life expectancy, lifestyle or diet?

AD though has a genetic predisposition in terms of mutations in specific genes (discussed in subsequent section), the expected hike in AD afflicted population can be attributed to increased exposure to AD risk factors that include ageing, oxidative stress (age and lifestyle induced), cardiovascular disorders, brain injuries, occupational hazards, *etc.*[12,15,16].

Further, the annual cost of AD related drug sales is reported to be increasing proportionally at growth rate of 33% from $500 million (year 1999) to approximately $6 billion (year 2008) and the estimated AD market is expected to cover a market size of $9.5 billion to $15 billion by year 2015-2017 (Figure 1)[16].

These huge statistical numbers clearly portray the unfulfilled need in AD therapeutic research and better management strategies. The major hurdle in this context is not only the identification of potential targets and discovery of potent therapeutic agents but also their effective delivery across brain.

With due consideration to these burning issues, the review focuses on thorough understanding of AD pathophysiology, pharmacotherapy in terms of explored therapeutic targets and current state of art in drug delivery systems towards better delivery of AD actives and a possible way ahead.

AD: PATHOLOGY AND SYMPTOMS

AD is a progressive brain disorder wherein the patients show clinical symptoms after a significant manifestation of disease which can take as long as 20 years[15,17]. The symptomatic appearance of AD results from progressive neurodegeneration resulting from alteration in normal anatomy and physiology of central nervous system (CNS). This primarily includes abnormal appearance of extracellular senile plaques and intracellular neur-ofibrillary tangles (NFTs) in CNS that interfere with classical neuronal activity triggering the neuronal death.

The senile plaques comprise toxic Amyloid β [$A\beta_{(1-42)}$] protein fragments resulting from atypical amyloidogenic cleavage of amyloid precursor protein (APP). These $A\beta$ fragments undergo sequential aggregation process to form insoluble senile plaques that get deposited in extracellular neuronal matrix. These plaques then interfere with synaptic signal transfer and induce stress signals that activate microglia, lysosomes and synaptic mitochondria ultimately causing neuronal death[15,18-21].

The intracellular NFTs are predominantly made up of hyperphosphorylated tau protein inter-tangles that impede neuronal nutrient supply leading to neuronal death. Additionally, other pathological variations like inflammation, activated microglias, elevated levels of proinflammatory cytokines, *etc.*, accelerate the neuronal death.

From the site specific AD manifestation *per se,* the early neurodegeneration is observed in the choliner-gic region of basal forebrain that results in cholinergic neuronal death. This results in acetylcholine (ACh)
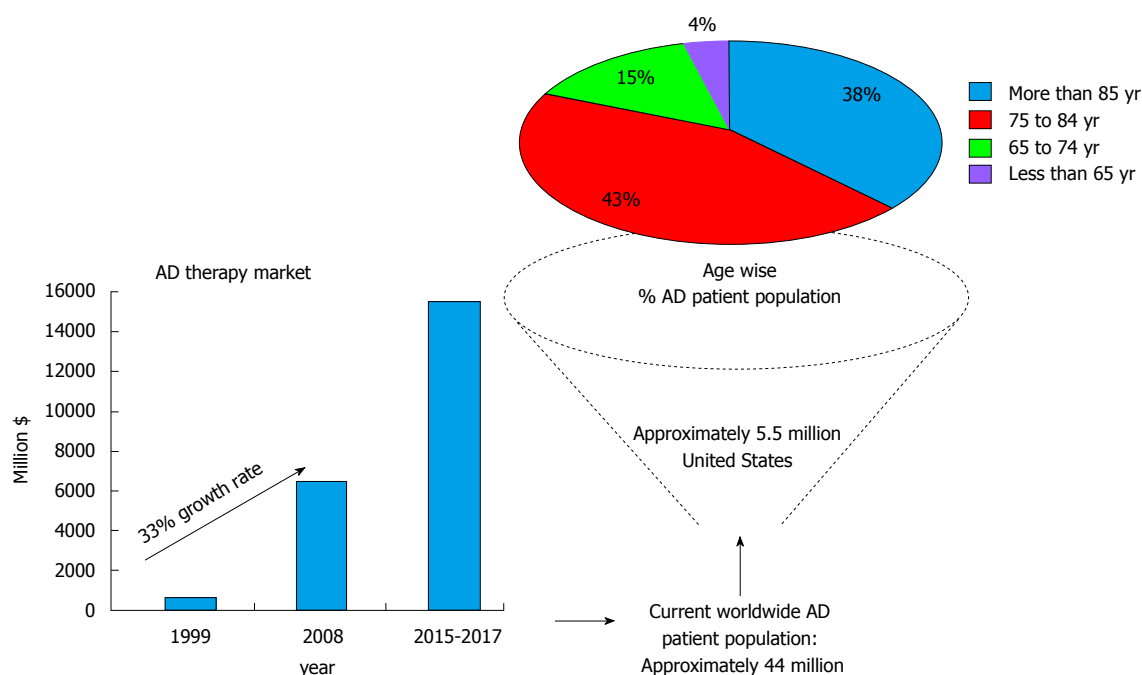
Figure 1 Schematic of Alzheimer's disease afflicted patient population and associated therapy market data. AD: Alzheimer's disease.

imbalance leading to early symptoms and memory loss *via* interference in both nicotinic and muscarinic receptor activities[18,19]. This early clinical stage of AD is commonly identified with mild to moderate forgetfulness in routine activities, apathy, depression, *etc*. These symptoms are broadly classified under a general class of dementia. An important point to note here is that forebrain region is associated with memory formation and thus early manifestation of AD leads to loss of recent memory followed by the old memory as the disease advances[15,19,20].

As the disease progresses senile plaques and NFTs deposition gets extrapolated to other regions of brain that predominantly include parietal and temporal lobes, hippocampus and entorhinal cortex[19,22-24]. This worsens the neuropsychiatric symptoms resulting in delirium, disorientation, lack of judgment, withdrawal from social appearance, difficulty in performing routine activities like eating, talking, walking, writing, *etc*.[15,19].

As the disease progresses, the brain shows high degree of shrinkage and debris deposition due to excessive neuronal death in all regions of brain. This impairment makes the patients dependent on help even for performing routine daily activities and this is identified as the final stage of the disease. At this stage, the excessively deprived brain function deprives the control on all the other body functions. This makes the patient highly vulnerable to secondary diseases like cardiac/pulmonary complications and out borne infections like pneumonia, *etc*., which forms the predominant reason for patient's death[15].

AD: THERAPEUTIC TARGETS

From the ongoing multidirectional research on AD etio-

logy, it is well evident that there is no unanimous opinion suggesting a single mechanistic pathway. Hence the pathophysiological and symptomatic advents associated with AD are believed to be resulting from a multicascade pathway leading to neurodegeneration. To understand this gradual and irreversible cognitive decline, various hypotheses have been proposed that include, formation of Aβ and extracellular fibrillation thereof, development of intracellular hyperphosphorylated tau and associated NFTs, oxidative stress, *etc*., ultimately resulting in neuronal death (Figure 2).

An extensive research on these variable pathways has resulted in identification of multiple therapeutic targets which are summarized below.

Amyloid cascade and therapeutic targets
This hypothesis was proposed by Hardy and Higgins in early 1990's and till date it is the most-researched and conceptual framework for AD which has markedly influenced drug development over a period of last 25 years[21]. The hypothesis is based on formation and accumulation of toxic A$\beta_{(1-42)}$ fragments resulting from abnormal amyloidogenic cleavage of trans membrane APP resulting from mutation in APP and presenilin gene (*PS-1*, *PS-2*) that regulate the entire pathway (familial origin)[25,26]. The so formed insoluble Aβ fragments further associate to form senile plaques, diffuse plaques, and cerebrovascular deposits which are the hallmarks of AD and being toxic they result in synaptic loss, neuronal death (predominantly cholinergic neurons) leading to progressive cognitive impairment[18,22-24].

Conventionally, 3 enzymes that play a crucial role in natural proteolytic cleavage of APP are α, β, and γ secretase. The first step herein comprises cleavage
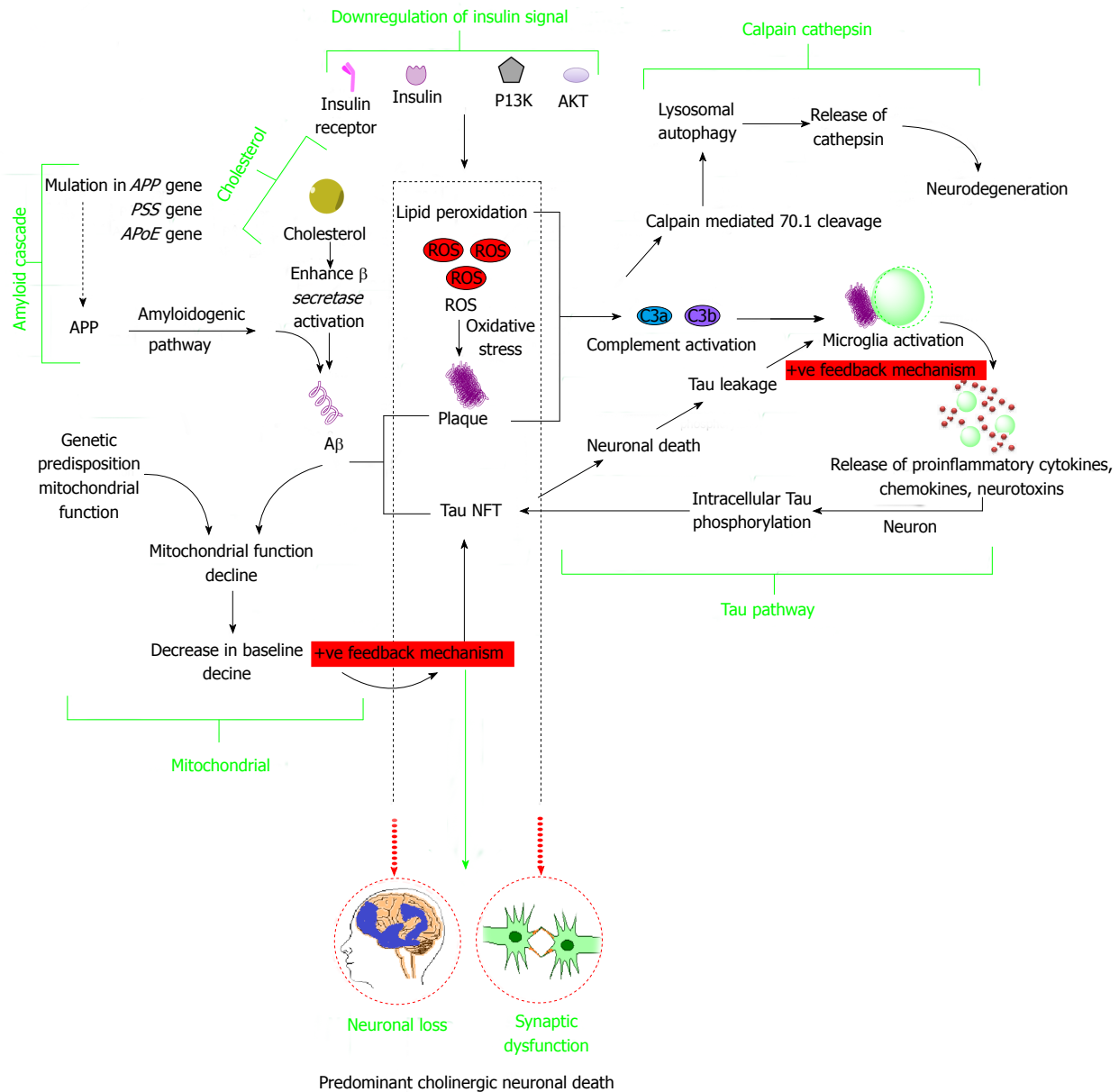
Figure 2 Schematic representation indicating interlinks among important Alzheimer's disease pathogenetic hypotheses that majorly include amyloid cascade hypothesis, taupathy, mitochondrial dysfunction hypothesis, cholesterol induced mechanism, insulin signal downregulation, calpain-cathepsin hypothesis. APP: Amyloid precursor protein; PS: Presinilin; APoE: Apolipoprotein E; PI3K: Phosphoinositide-3-kinase; AKT: Protein kinase B; ROS: Reactive oxygen species.

of extracellular fragment by α-secretase (non-amyloidogenic and predominant pathway under normal condition) or β-secretase (amyloidogenic pathway predominant under AD) leading to 83 or 99 amino acid peptide residues respectively that remain attached as a trans membrane fragment. Further, these fragments are invariably cleaved by γ-secretase which leads to formation of toxic Aβ(1-42) fragments in case of amyloidogenic pathway and initiates the extracellular plaque formation[22,24] (Figure 3).

Thus, targeting Aβ cascade presents the most important strategy towards management of AD. Several of such approaches include inflection of Aβ formation, augmentation of Aβ degradation, inhibition of Aβ assembly, and immunization (passive and active) to raise

antibodies that target and remove Aβ and are discussed in subsequent sections.

α-secretase stimulators: This approach came in scientific limelight with an *in vivo* study that demonstrated the potential of enzyme ADAM 10 (a member of disintegrin and metalloproteinase family) that functions as α-secretase to prevent plaque formation and additionally it offered neuronal protection in hippocampal region[27]. This is attributed to the fact that α-secretase cleaves APP in a non-amyloidogenic pathway (Figure 3) and thus, up regulation of this enzyme is postulated to arrest Aβ formation. In this context, naturally occurring retinoids are reported to possess α-secretase stimulator activity and one such molecule acitretin is at phase 2 trial
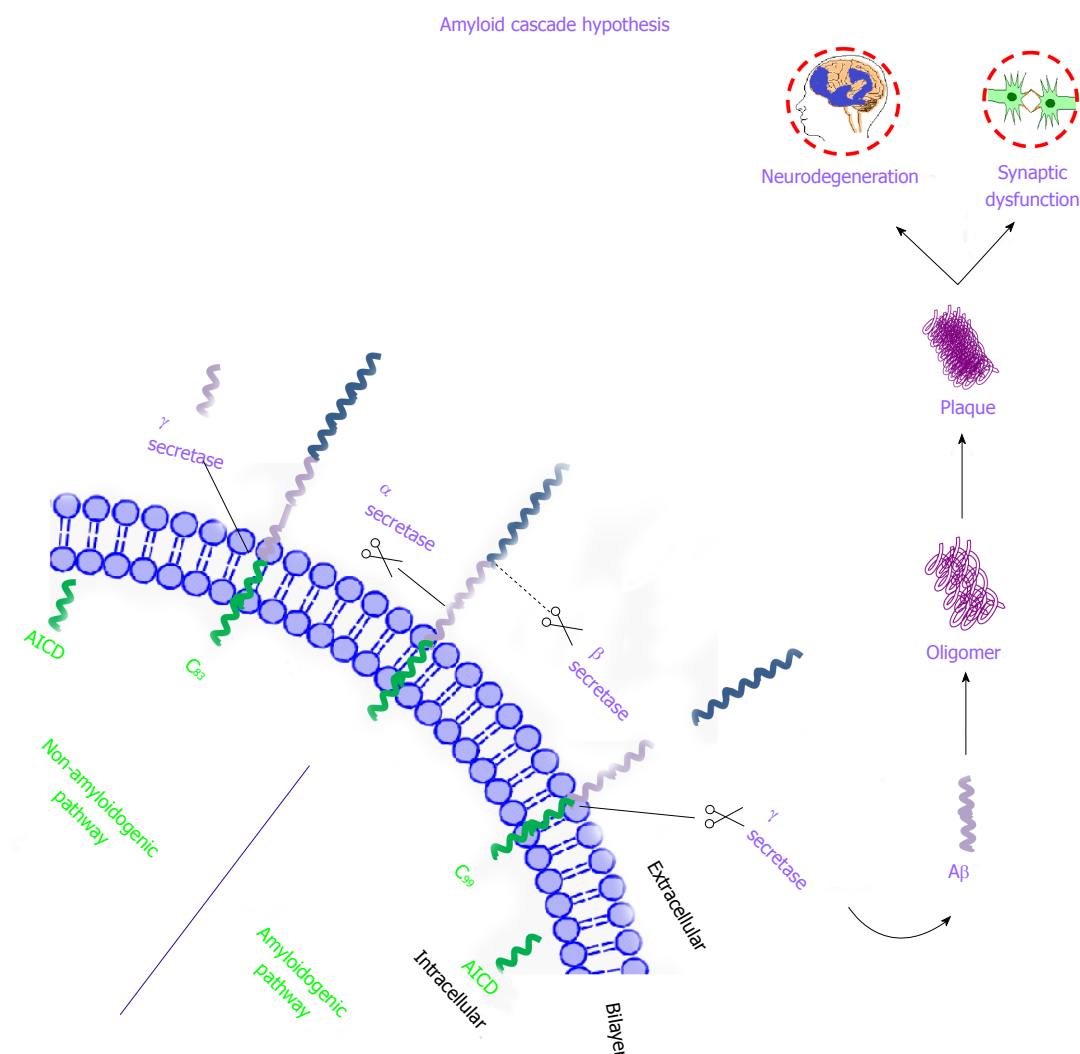
Figure 3 Schematic representation of amyloid cascade hypothesis. Three enzymes α, β, and γ secretase play a crucial role in the proteolytic cleavage of APP. The first step, extracellular fragment of APP is cleaved by α-secretase (non-amyloidogenic and predominant pathway under normal condition) or β-secretase (amyloidogenic pathway predominant under AD) leading to 83 or 99 amino acid peptide residues respectively that remain attached as a trans membrane fragment. These fragments are ultimately cleaved by γ-secretase which leads to formation of toxic $A\beta_{(1-42)}$ fragments in case of amyloidogenic pathway and initiates the extracellular Aβ plaque formation. APP: Amyloid precursor protein; AD: Alzheimer's disease.

stage[28]. This finding suggests the use of natural retinoid rich food which includes spinach, carrots, soy products, *etc*., as a possible nutritional supplement for AD patients. Apart from natural sources, synthetic agonists of α-secretase are under thorough investigation and one such molecule, EHT-0202 has shown very promising results both *in vitro* and *in vivo* and is currently under 3-mo phase 2 clinical evaluation in 35 AD subjects[29-31].

β-secretase modulators: The β-secretase enzyme initiates the amyloidogenic pathway and thus it is a prime requisite to develop inhibitors of the same. The enzyme is very large structurally and poses difficulties in producing an inhibitor especially with an ability to cross the blood brain barrier (BBB). Thus, small molecules are being designed to inhibit the enzyme at the active site. CTS-21166, a β-secretase inhibitor is successfully reported to reduce plasma Aβ levels in phase 1 study conducted in 48 healthy volunteers at 6 different doses

up to 225 mg and phase 2 study is planned[32]. In another study, central Aβ levels were lowered by the orally administrable non peptide molecule LY2811376 (molecule by Eli Lilly Inc.) in preclinical studies but further progress was halted as it affected animal retinal epithelium[33,34]. Other β-secretase inhibitor KMI-429 is being developed and human trial data is awaited[35]. Thus, this strategy is in its infancy and has to undergo a battery of safety and efficacy studies prior to becoming a market reality.

γ-secretase modulators: γ-secretase, the ultimate enzyme in amyloid cascade pathway, presents the next probable target to arrest amyloid cascade. With this in vision, MK-0752 (Merck), a γ-secretase inhibitor was developed which is in phase 2 trial as phase 1 trial was successful and indicated significant reduction in cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) Aβ levels in healthy volunteers[29,36].

Structurally, γ-secretase is a trans-membrane complex of four proteins: presenilin, presenilin enhancer 2, nicastrin, and anterior pharynx-defective 1[29,37] that play role in proteolysis of type-1 transmembrane proteins. Thus, it is worthy to note here that, apart from APP, γ-secretase has other substrates like Notch, E-cadherin, ErbB4, CD44, tyrosinase, alcadein which play a crucial role in embryogenesis and development[37]. Thus, non-selective inhibition of this protein may lead to side/adverse effects. As an instance, semagacestat (non-selective γ-secretase inhibitor) has advanced in therapeutic trials for AD but a phase 2 trial (14 wk) in 51 subjects (15, 22 and 14 subjects received placebo, 100 mg and 140 mg drug daily respectively) have shown high risk of skin rash and hair colour change which was reversed with treatment withdrawal[38]. Thus designing of an inhibitor to this enzyme desires meticulous selection. Owing to these observations, the new molecules are being developed with an aim to modulate the enzyme which will retain the therapeutic efficacy but overrule the adverse drug reactions[39].

Inhibitors of Aβ aggregation: Another encouraging approach for the development of novel therapeutics for treating AD is to prevent Aβ fibril formation especially by the small molecules. Neurochem Inc., a Canadian company, has developed a glycosaminoglycan mimetic Alzhemed™ which has an ability to bind to Aβ peptides and thereby inhibits the formation of Aβ aggregates. The molecule has successfully completed Phase 2 clinical trial and Phase 3 trial results are recently published wherein the data is very promising[40]. Metal ions like Cu^{2+} and Zn^{2+} are reported to augment Aβ aggregation and associated toxicity[41]. In consistency with this, a Cu/Zn chelator, clioquinol is reported to reduce CNS Aβ deposition after a 9 wk treatment in rodent model. The additional benefit of this molecule is its inherent tendency to cross BBB which is anticipated to ensure the therapeutic efficacy[42].

Aβ removal approaches: Aβ plaques are degraded by some proteases such as plasmin, neprilysin, insulin degrading enzyme, endothelin converting enzyme, angiotensin converting enzyme and metalloprotein-ase[43]. The levels of these Aβ degrading enzymes are observed to decline in AD and may contribute to Aβ accumulation[44]. In consistency to these observations, experimental evidence has suggested that inhibitors of plasminogen activator decrease the plasma and brain Aβ levels in transgenic animals[45] and increasing neprilysin levels through viral vector-delivered gene expression shows beneficial effects in animal models[46]. Additionally, the peptide hormone somatostatin is also reported to enhance Aβ clearance through activation of neprilysin[47]. Therefore targeting neprilysin with somatostatin or its analogs is an encouraging option in AD. This approach is quite in its infancy and demands thorough investigation.

Immunotherapy against Aβ: Immunotherapy was first explored by Schenk *et al*[48] for treatment of AD in a preclinical experiment involving Aβ(1-42) active immunization using PDAPP transgenic mice. So far numerous studies have shown encouraging results by both active (vaccination) and passive (monoclonal antibody) immunization. In active immunization, the Aβ peptide or fragment conjugated to a carrier protein and adjuvant which holds potential to stimulate cellular and humoral immune response is administered to the host which results in generation of anti-Aβ antibody. In passive immunization, the Aβ peptide specific antibody is directly injected into the host, thus evading the step of stimulating the host immune systems. The exact mechanism by which immunotherapy executes anti-AD activity is still not clear. However, studies conducted so far have given substantial proofs based on which few of the hypotheses are proposed *viz*. microglia-mediated phagocytosis, antibody mediated Aβ monomer sequestration, antibody mediated prevention of Aβ aggregation and neutralization of Aβ toxicity and antibody mediated peripheral clearance of Aβ[49-57]. Figure 4 illustrates the diagrammatic representation of the various mechanistic pathways of immunotherapy in AD.

Bard *et al*[49] and Hartman *et al*[50] administered Aβ monoclonal antibody to PDAPP transgenic mice and further noticed significant immunoreactivity within the microglia and macrophages. The study clearly indicated that the generated antibodies were able to cross the BBB and bind to Aβ plaques, provoking the Fc receptors (FcR)-mediated microglial phagocytosis. Numerous studies conducted by active and passive immunization have suggested that the (FcR)-mediated microglial phagocytosis might play a crucial role in clearing Aβ load from brain[49,50].

In yet another study, Yamada *et al*[51] found that administration of certain anti-Aβ monoclonal antibody m266 has selectively sequestered soluble Aβ monomers in the brain and terminated its progression to oligomers and plaques, thus circumventing associated neuro-toxicity.

Another hypothesis suggests that certain anti-Aβ monoclonal antibodies have ability to by-pass the BBB and interact with Aβ oligomers and fibrils[52,53] to either disassemble or dissolve the existing plaques[54-56].

DeMattos *et al*[57] were the first to reveal the ability of antibodies to clear the Aβ levels from the systemic circulation. In this study, Aβ mid-region antibody (m266) which bears high affinity for soluble Aβ administered to PDAPP transgenic mice showed notable reduction in Aβ burden from the plasma. This mechanism was further confirmed by both active[58,59] and passive immunization[60-62]. These mechanisms indicated that anti-Aβ antibodies directly interact with plasma Aβ and enhance its clearance. This in turn imbalance the plasma to brain Aβ ratio and there by hasten the Aβ removal
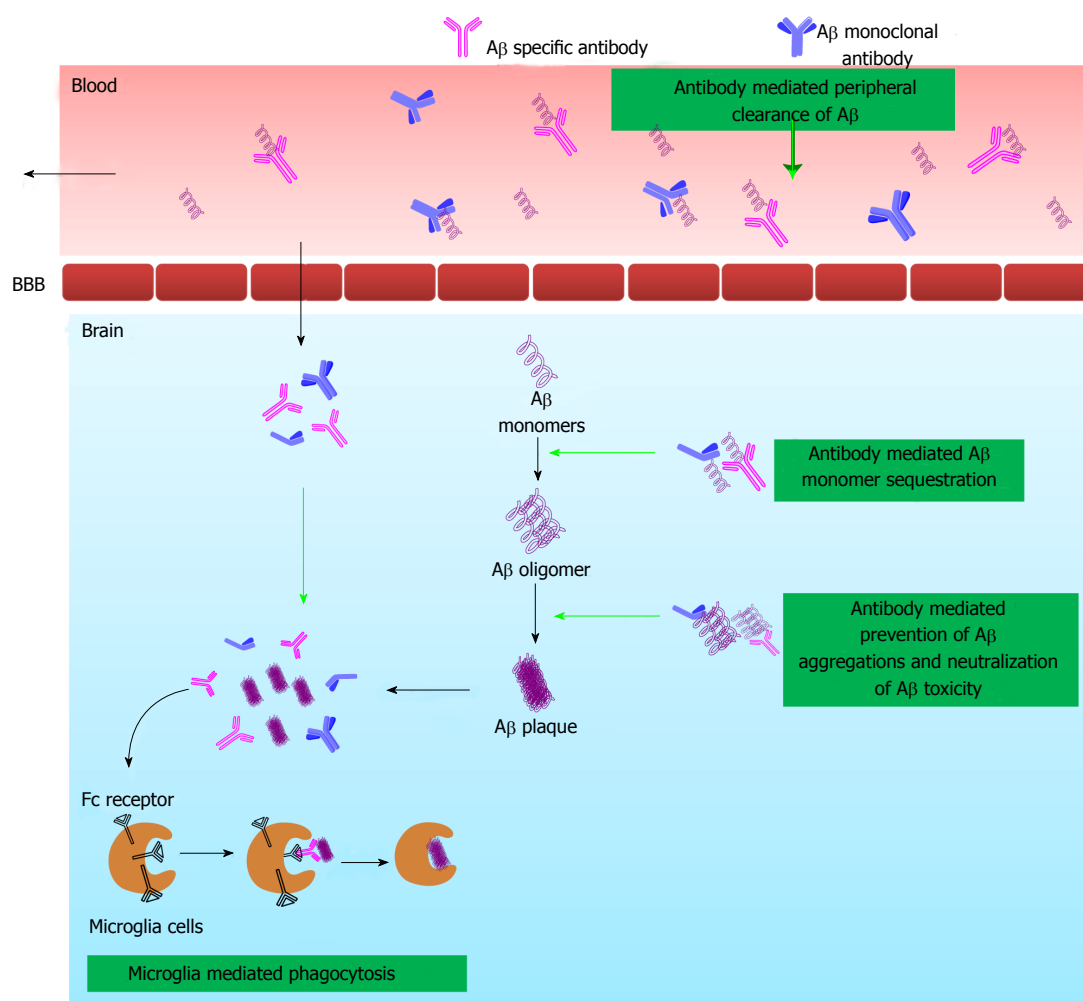
Figure 4 Schematic diagram explaining different mechanistic pathways hypothesized for immunotherapy to exert Amyloid β clearance from brain and plasma. Immunotherapy exerts its activity by active and passive ways. In active immunization, the Aβ peptide or fragment is injected into the host which in turn stimulates cellular and humoral immune response to generate anti-Aβ antibody. In passive immunization, directly Aβ peptide specific antibody is injected into the host. The generated anti-Aβ antibodies provoke anti-AD activity by one of the or combination of following ways: microglia-mediated phagocytosis, antibody mediated Aβ monomer sequestration, antibody mediated prevention of Aβ aggregation and neutralization of Aβ toxicity and antibody mediated peripheral clearance of Aβ. Aβ: Amyloid β; BBB: Blood brain barrier. AD: Alzheimer's disease.

from the brain.

Despite the promising outcome in *in vitro* and preclinical studies, application of immunotherapy in clinical trial using synthetic Aβ peptide AN1792/QS-21 in AD patients with mild to moderate severity has turned out to be fatal and resulted in abrupt termination as 8 out of 300 patients developed meningoencephalitis during the study[63]. The study concluded that, there was significant plaque reduction in patients treated with AN1792/QS-2 but unfortunately it augmented T cell activation leading to meningoencephalitis. A different clinical trial with Aβ immunization, indicated noteworthy clearance of amyloid plaque in AD patients but lacked the ability to arrest neurodegenerative progression[64].

In an attempt to evade the potentially harmful T cell responses, emergence of advanced vaccines consisting sole antibody epitope(s) that lack T-cell reactive sites is a step further in the development of immunotherapy for AD. The existing data has shown promising effects while clinical reports are still awaited. In all, despite promising

outcome of immunotherapy by curtailing the Aβ load and improvement of cognitive function, threat of adverse reactions still remains to be the unresolved issue[64].

Although several drugs have been investigated to be active at their intended targets, none have yet been proven to have significant clinical benefits. In 2011 and 2012, two negative trials of secretase inhibitors, semagacestat and avagacestat, and several negative trials of monoclonal antibodies, bapineuzumab and solanezumab were reported[64-68]. Recent studies have demonstrated that reducing Aβ in the brain is possible but that decreasing production or reducing fibrils or plaques is not clearly associated with clinical improvement and could be associated with toxicity[64-68]. These issues must be critically evaluated while development of newer therapeutic molecules against the specific targets in amyloid cascade hypothesis.

Taupathy and therapeutic targets
The second major hallmark of AD is formation of NFTs

which comprise hyperphosphorylated form of tau protein. Tau is a protein that under normal physiological conditions stabilizes microtubules, allowing transport of vesicles and other products of neuronal cell bodies down the axon to the synapse. By regulating microtubule assembly, tau controls the morphology and growth of axons[69]. The protein has several phosphorylation sites, and the microtubule binding property of tau is dependent on the phosphorylation state. The phosphorylated tau binds microtubules with a lesser affinity leading to microtubule instability[70,71].

The trigger for this abnormal tau fibrillation initiates with stress signals (Aβ, mechanical damage, ROS, *etc*.) that activate primary microglial cells in CNS. This activation results in release of proinflammatory cytokines (TNFα and interleukins) that leads to neuronal alteration initiating tau hyperphosphorylation. This hyperphosphorylated form presents an aggregation tendency forming initial paired helical filaments that further precipitate to form NFTs. These intracellular NFTs elicit toxic effect on neurons leading to neuronal death. Upon neurodegeneration, these NFTs are released in extracellular matrix that in turn augments the microglial activity *via* positive feedback mechanism[72,73].

As per this hypothesis, AD pathology starts with formation of pretangles in proximal axons of the noradrenergic locus ceruleus which spreads *via* trans-synaptic transport to entorhinal cortex, hippocampus, and neocortex. This cascade of reactions is known as taupathy and is reported to worsen the AD in conjunction with senile plaques[72] (Figure 2).

Thus, it is well conceived that tau hyperphosphorylation, microtubule disruption and formation of NFTs play a crucial role in AD pathomechanisms. Therapeutically, several of these mechanisms can be targeted to arrest AD progression *viz*. inhibition of tau kinases to lower tau hperphosphorylation and associated aggregation, enhancing clearance of tau aggregates with drugs or antibodies and microtubule stabilization by enhancing phosphatase activity. Few of such approaches have progressed from preclinical to advanced clinical trials[74,75]. In this context, the main focus is now shifting on glycogen synthase kinase 3, a prime enzyme involved in tau phosphorylation. Lithium and valproate are reported to have inhibitory action on this enzyme and have shown promising results in terms of reducing taupathy and NFT formation in transgenic mice[76,77]. Further, it should be noted that tau pathology is not specific to AD, and occurs in several other disorders, including frontotemporal dementia, corticobasal degeneration, progressive supranuclear palsy, *etc*., and these approaches can be extrapolated in treatment thereof[72].

Recently, scientists have reported close relation between taupathy and synaptic mitochondrial dysfunction that leads to ROS augmentation. With this support, mitochondrial dysfunction cascade hypothesis is gaining wide attention in AD pathomechanisms[73].

Mitochondrial dysfunction and therapeutic targets

Mitochondria being the energy hose of the cells, decline in mitochondrial function allies itself with ageing and AD. The prime assumption of this hypothesis is based on genetic predisposition of AD that is presented by low genetic mitochondrial baseline function which is predominantly inherited from mother's genome and this mitochondrial baseline function is inversely proportional with AD progression[73].

In addition to genetic predisposition, AD patho-mechanisms are also reported to manifest mitochondrial dysfunction. Aβ is reported to be present in mitochondria and is observed to be interacting with complex II of respiratory chain, mitochondrial membrane and Hsp 60 (a mitochondrial chaperon matrix protein) leading to mitochondrial abnormalities. This not only alters the regular mitochondrial function but also causes abnormal increase in mitochondrial fission and reduced fusion that severely affects the mitochondrial morphology. This alteration in morphology is proposed to augment mitochondrial fragmentation and was confirmed using confocal and electron microscopic analysis in APP overex-pressed neurons[78]. This can be additionally explained by the unwanted interaction of Aβ and NFT with dyna-min-related protein 1, the protein that maintains the mammalian mitochondria. This interaction results in increased mitochondrial fragmentation, their restricted axonal transport and subsequent neurodegeneration[79].

Apart from genetic and AD associated factors, other environmental factors like heavy metal exposure, oxidative stress, insulin resistance, *etc*., are reported to down regulate the mitochondrial function *via* positive feedback pathway. Under normal scenario, mitochondrial biogenesis can take care of this external environmental burden but fails in case of patients with already declined neuronal activity like in case of AD. Thus, these environmental factors are postulated to cause additional affliction by hastening the mitochondrial dysfunction ultimately leading to progressive AD associated synaptic damage and symptomatic manifestation[73,80].

Oxidative stress not only causes mitochondrial dysfunction but also triggers Aβ deposition, tau hype-rphosphorylation and oxidation of other neuronal components like lipids, proteins, nucleic acids, *etc*., causing neuronal damage[70]. The relationship between oxidative stress and AD suggests that oxidative stress is the key component of AD pathophysiology. In this context, use of antioxidants to reduce oxidative burden on cells holds a strong rationale[81].

Antioxidants for AD therapy

Antioxidant treatment is proposed to be a promising approach to slow down the disease progression by attenuating phospholipid peroxidation, protein and DNA oxidation[82]. Flavonoids and carotenoids, a group of ubiquitous antioxidants have also shown neuroprotective effect in several experiments[83,84]. Rutin, a flavonoid

compound, protected rats from stress induced damage and streptozotocin induced neuronal inflammation[85]. Lutein, a natural carotenoid with cytoprotective effect[86]; when supplemented in combination with docosahexaenoic acid, memory scores and rate of learning improved in elderly women[87]. The spice curcumin has shown several beneficial roles (antioxidant, anti-inflammatory, and amyloid disaggregating properties) in experimental studies[88,89].

Melatonin is another antioxidant compound which is anticipated to be a potent anti-AD active. This is attributed to N-methyl-D-aspartate (NMDA) receptor modulation, inhibition of Aβ generation, formation of amyloid fibrils, attenuation of tau hyperphosphorylation, mitochondrial protection, and antiapoptotic effect[90]. Vitamin E has shown marked reduction in lipid peroxidation and plaque deposition when administered in transgenic AD rodent model but has failed to produce similar convincing results in humans[91]. Also, the combination of vitamin E with donepezil did not provide additional benefit in patients with AD or mild cognitive impairment[92]. Evidence for the protection offered by antioxidants including vitamins (E, C, and carotenoids), phytochemicals and synthetic compounds in AD is inconsistent[83].

Antioxidants though have shown positive results, their translation to clinic as a solitary AD therapy is not successful due to varied epidemiological data. However, it is worthy to note that they are emerging as nutritional supplements to decrease the incidence or to delay the progression of AD.

Acetylcholinesterase inhibitors for AD therapy

As discussed in earlier section (AD: Pathology and Symptoms), cholinergic neuronal death is the classical manifestation of AD leading to ACh imbalance and associated cognitive decline[18,19]. Thus restoration of CNS ACh levels is believed to offer early symptomatic relief.

In this context, cholinergic neuronal death restricts the opportunity to augment the ACh release from neurons and thus restoration of CNS ACh levels by arresting its degradation was thought to be a promising strategy. With this in view, Acetylcholinesterase (enzyme responsible for degradation of Ach) inhibitors (AChEIs) were the first amongst the pharmacological treatments sanctioned by the United States Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for AD. Currently four AChEIs are available in market: tacrine (Cognex®), donepezil (Aricept®), rivastigmine (Exelon®) and galantamine (Razadyne®, Reminyl®). Their therapeutic efficacy may be attributed to their ability to sustain cognitive function over a prolonged period of therapy[93,94]. Studies have also shown that these drugs can arrest neurodegeneration and thus can delay AD progression, if the therapy is initiated at earliest in patients with mild to moderate AD. Rivastigmine blocks butyrylcholinesterase, levels of which are reported to be augmented in the brain of patients

with AD[95] and this may have an advantageous effect on prolonged cholinesterase inhibition ensuing disease stabilization. On the other hand, galantamine binds to the nicotinic ACh receptor sites which opens the ionic channels and improves the receptor responsiveness to Ach[96]. Tacrine is hardly prescribed nowadays due to its high dosing frequency and associated hepatotoxicity. Other adverse effects associated with AChEIs are nausea, vomiting, diarrhoea, anorexia, *etc.*, and are observed to worsen during dose escalation[97]. Patients with bradycardia are at higher risk and should be given additional attention[98]. Gastrointestinal (GI) effects can be minimized by simultaneous administration of food and an anti-emetic. As the cholinergic neurons decline with disease progression (severe forms of AD), the AChEI treatments becomes inefficient.

The mechanism of action by which these drugs act is by arresting the breakdown of the neurotransmitter Ach *via* inhibition of the acetylcholinesterase enzyme. Acetylcholinesterase is also found to enhance Aβ plaque formation; therefore inhibition of this enzyme will not only provide symptomatic relief but also arrest AD progression[97].

Glutamatergic system modifiers for AD therapy

Glutamate is the major excitatory neurotransmitter in the CNS which is involved in a variety of functions, including synaptic neurotransmission, neuronal growth and development, synaptic plasticity, *etc*[98,99]. Glutamatergic neurotransmission is also observed to be very crucial in learning and memory[64,65] which is greatly hampered in case of AD patients. Moreover, the glutamatergic neurons are observed in the brain regions affected by AD, particularly in the neocortex, cortex and hippocampus[99-101].

Glutamate induced up regulation of the NMDA receptor augments the intracellular calcium level leading to neuronal death which is the hallmark of AD[102]. Memantine (Namenda®, Axura®, Ebixa®), a non-competitive NMDA receptor antagonist was approved by FDA in October 2003 for treatment of moderate to severe AD. It inhibits the neurodegeneration resulting from protracted glutamate release[103] but does not interfere with cognition at therapeutic doses[104]. At higher doses, clinical studies have shown the potential of drug to cause functional decline with delay in cognition but have overruled the possibility of any severe adverse effects[105,106]. Some studies also suggest that memantine may synergies the AChEIs therapeutic efficacy if given in combination. In one such study, it is proven that the combination was effective and well tolerated by majority of AD subjects without any severe side effects[107]. With such a promising data combination therapy can be envisioned as a better AD treatment regime.

Anti-inflammatory agents for AD therapy

The perception of AD being an inflammatory disease has appeared with two unique pathophysiological findings

in AD patients. Firstly, the increased size and number of microglial cells in the brain and second the overexpression of complement system *via* amyloid plaques. Results from several studies, based on follow-up design and prescription based data have shown substantial reduction in the incidence of AD with prolonged use of non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)[108].

Investigation of AD brain has confirmed the incidence of inflammation at and around the sites of Aβ plaques deposits, NFTs and degenerating neurons. The aggregation and deposition of Aβ plaques tend to provoke the activation of microglia and astrocytes. This event is further accompanied by overexpression of complement system, particularly C1q, C3b, C3a, membrane attack complex (MAC), cytokines and chemokines. During the Aβ aggregation process, binding of C1q and C3b to amyloid plaques activates the complement system causing dystrophic neuritis and up regulating C3a and MAC (Figure 5). C3b further boosts the complement activation. C3a stimulates the activation of microglial cells which clears the Aβ through phagocytic mechanism. MAC causes cell lysis and results in toxic effects. The uncleared Aβ escalates the deposition and provokes the microglial cell activation and release of cytokines, chemokines and neurotoxins which cause neuronal loss and synaptic dysfunction[108].

Multiple mechanistic pathways have been cited for NSAIDs to elicit anti-AD activity. First of which is native anti-inflammatory action (Figure 5). NSAIDs mainly exert their anti-AD activity by suppressing the synthesis of inflammatory prostaglandin executed *via* Cyclooxygenase inhibition[109]. In support of this, Kotilinek *et al*[110] also recorded that the major improvement in the memory aspect of transgenic mice is associated with decreased prostaglandin E2 and is attributed to COX-2 inhibition. In another mechanism the NSAIDs are known to inhibit the nuclear transgenic factor Kβ which is up regulated in AD patients and is involved in regulation of many cellular target genes[111].

Yet in another investigation, the role of nuclear located peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-γ (PPARγ) was unveiled where it is involved in regulation of pro-inflammatory genes associated with the pathogenesis of AD. The NSAIDs like ibuprofen and naproxen are known to stimulate PPARγ receptor and subsequently cause anti-inflammatory effect. Also, PPRAγ receptor mediated release of pro-inflammatory cytokines is associated with reduction of β-secretase expression and Aβ secretion[112].

The second proposed mechanism of anti-AD activity of NSAIDs is attributed to inhibition of amyloidogenic APP processing, Aβ formation and its aggregation. Studies conducted by Avramovich *et al*[113] have shown that NSAIDs in particular like indomethacin and ibuprofen stimulate non-amyloidogenic α-secretase pathway and cause marked release of neurotrophic and neuroprotective APP ectodomain in neuronal cells.

Further, effect of ibuprofen causing down regulation

of α1-antichymotrypsin, a protein responsible for triggering Aβ pathogenesis proves another mechanistic pathway. They are known to exhibit a direct effect by inhibiting Aβ oligomer formation and subsequent deposition by interacting with Aβ peptide[114].

Despite generation of enormous data at cellular and preclinical level, replication of similar effects at clinical level has been still a matter of debate. Ten years of comprehensive study conducted in Canada to assess the incidence of AD has shown that use of NSAIDs is associated with reduced incidence of AD[115]. Contradictory to this, several studies conducted with other anti-inflammatory drugs like prednisone, hydroxychloroquine, COX-2 selective inhibitors (celecoxib, rofecoxib) and non-selective COX inhibitors (naproxen) have failed to show any advantageous effect[108,109].

3-hydroxy-3-methyl-glutaryl-CoA reductase inhibitors (statins) for AD therapy

The relation between cholesterol and AD was brought to notice for the first time by Sparks *et al*[116] and statistical studies have suggested that individuals on statins therapy (drugs used in cholesterol management) have very low incidence of AD.

It had been observed that elevated intracellular cholesterol induces the β-secretase activity leading to enhanced Aβ production. Inhibition of 3-hydroxy-3-methyl-glutaryl-CoA (HMG-CoA) reductase by statins, reverses this elevated intracellular cholesterol level (cholesterol dependent pathway) (Figure 6) and thereby blocks the Aβ formation. Another proposed mechanism by which statins act against Aβ progression is through cholesterol independent effect or pleiotropic effect that grants neuroprotection (Figure 6)[117,118]. Herein, statins enhance nitric oxide (NO) mediated anti-inflammatory activity and facilitate the systemic Aβ clearance by stimulating endothelial NO synthase[117,118]. Owing to these multi-target activities, statins are now emerging as promising pharmacological agents for AD treatment. The clinical trials conducted with statins like atorvastatin, lovastatin (for longer duration approximately 1 year) have shown beneficial effect by reducing the plasma Aβ levels but were not observed to be reproducible[117,118]. This could be attributed to study variations that include differences in cognitive test employed, experimental protocol, study duration and the stage of AD manifestation and dose. Thus, there is need for thorough investigation of this strategy towards its clinical approval.

Insulin for AD therapy

Apart from diabetes, insulin is reported to play a critical role in glucose uptake and neurotransmission across the brain[119-122]. Further, the proteins important for transmission of insulin signal were identified to be up regulated in AD sensitive brain regions *viz*. hippocampus and temporal lobe. This instigated an interest of researchers to investigate possible correlation between
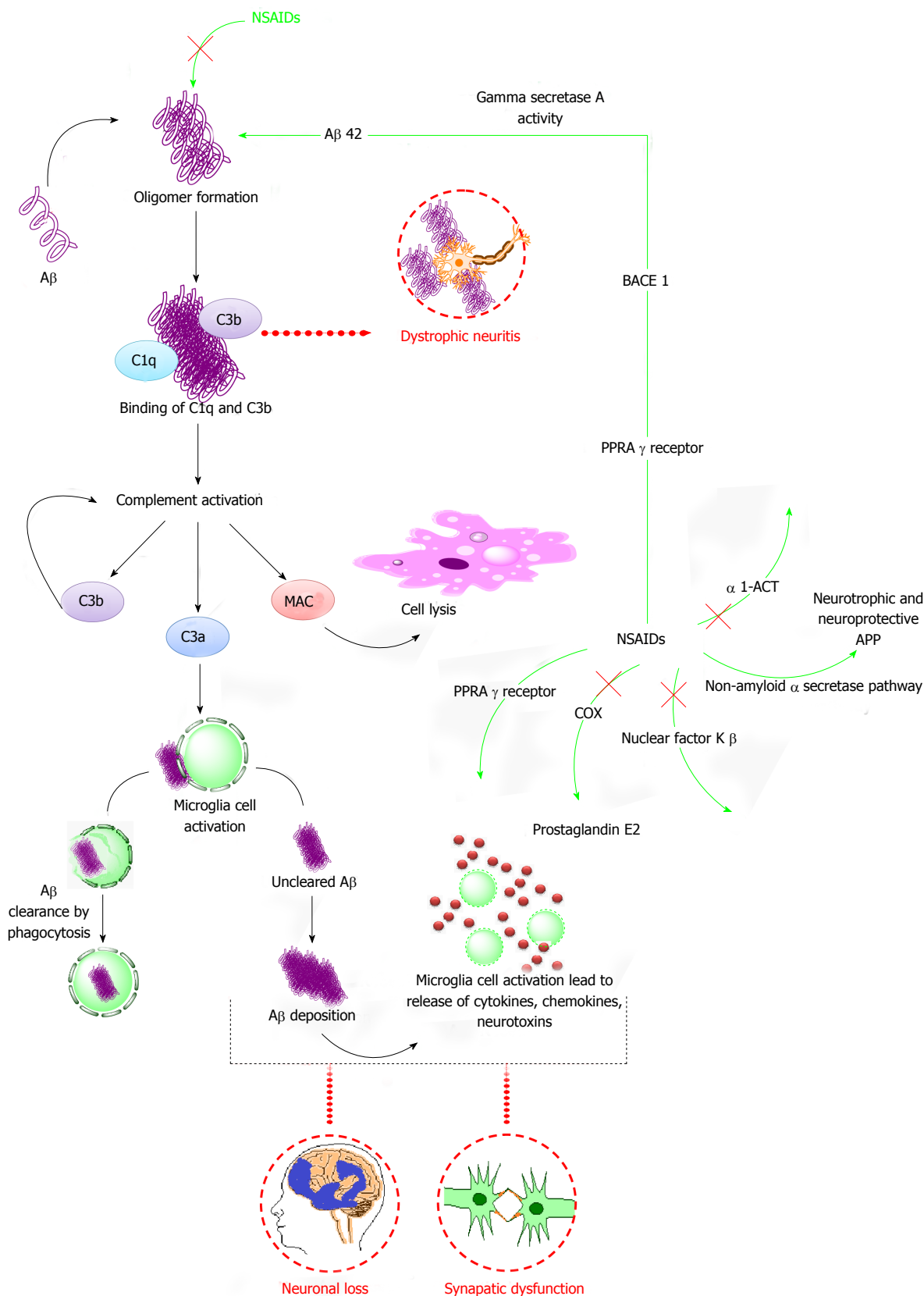
Figure 5 Diagram representation elaborating various mechanistic pathways by which anti-Alzheimer's disease activity is executed by non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs. The aggregation and deposition of Aβ plaques provoke the activation of microglia, astrocytes and complement system (C1q, C3b, C3a, MAC, cytokines and chemokines). The Aβ plaques which evades the clearance process forms deposit and provokes microglial cell activation and release of cytokines, chemokines and neurotoxins which consequently results in neuronal loss and synaptic dysfunction. NSAIDs are reported to act by multiple ways to elicit anti-AD activity which includes suppresion of oligomer formation, PPRAγ, COX, NFKβ, α1-ACT and non-amyloid α secretase pathway. Aβ: Amyloid β; APP: Amyloid precursor protein; MAC: Membrane attack complex; PPARγ: Peroxisome proliferator-activated receptor-γ; COX: Cycloxygenase; α1-ACT: α1-antichymotrypsin; BACE1: Beta-secretase 1.

Figure 6 Diagrammatic illustration of anti-amyloid activity of 3-hydroxy-3-methyl-glutaryl-CoA reductase inhibitors *via* cholesterol independent and cholesterol dependent mechanistic pathways. Cholesterol independent pathway: Statins cause NO mediated anti-inflammatory activity and facilitate the clearance of systemic Aβ by stimulating endothelial nitric oxide synthase. The statins with the virtue of its antioxidant effect cause reduction in lipid peroxidation which is escalated due to elevated levels of NO in AD brain. Cholesterol dependent pathway: The systemic cholesterol enters the brain in form of HDL. The astrocytes originated ApoE facilitates the uptake of extracellular free cholesterol and release into the neuronal cells *via* LRP. This act reduces free cholesterol and curtails the Aβ genesis whereas un-sequestered free ApoE aggravates the Aβ formation. Statins inhibits the HMG-CoA reductase and subsequently reverse the elevated intracellular cholesterol levels and blocks the Aβ formation. Also, ACAT inhibition leads to reduction in Aβ levels by an unknown mechanism. HDL: High density lipoprotein; BBB: Blood brain barrier; Aβ: Amyloid β; ApoE: Apolipoprotein E; LRP: LDL receptor-related protein; HMG-CoA reductase: 3-hydroxy-3-methyl-glutaryl-CoA; ER: Endoplasmic reticulum; NO: Nitric oxide; eNOS: Endothelial nitric oxide synthase; nNOS: Neuronal nitric oxide synthase; iNOS: Inducible nitric oxide synthase; ACAT: Acetyl-coenzyme a acetyltransferase. AD: Alzheimer's disease.

insulin and AD[123,124]. Remarkably, research groups both at cell-culture and clinical level have shown that normal insulin signaling under an AD condition confers beneficial effects like protection against Aβ oligomer-mediated insulin receptor loss and synaptic deterioration[125], boosting Aβ trafficking at cell membrane and clearance thereof[126].

Briefly, insulin signaling pathway is initiated when tyrosine phosphorylated insulin receptor substrate interacts with insulin receptor. Upon interaction, phosphatidylinositol 4,5-bisphosphate (PIP2) is transformed to phosphatidylinositol 3,4,5-triphosphate (PIP3) at the plasma membrane *via* cascade of mechanisms that finally activate Phosphoinositide-dependent kinase-1 which triggers the insulin signal. Though the exact mechanism by which insulin enhances cognitive function is unknown, the possible mechanisms can be down regulation of insulin receptors and other signaling intermediates discussed above[124-127].

Moreover, evidences also show that Aβ acts as a competitive inhibitor of insulin at the insulin receptor. This inhibition results GSK-3 stimulation by negative feedback mechanism which subsequently increases tau phosphorylation (Figure 7). Thus, insulin therapy is expected to arrest both Aβ generation and tau hyperphosphorylation[124-127].

Two dose clinical study performed in young, cognitively normal subjects (1.5 mU/kg per minute and 15 mU/kg per minute) showed improved memory performance and attention at high serum levels of insulin[127]. Other additional studies conducted in elderly impaired individuals by Craft *et al*[128,129] demonstrated improvement in declarative memory at dose level of 1.0 mU/kg per minute infusion. Since treatment with insulin infusion is associated with hypoglycemia, direct delivery of insulin to the brain proves to be a viable approach. In this context, intranasal administration of insulin has gained wide attention wherein a 8 wk therapy (40 IU/dose, 4 × per day) showed good performance in recalling the words in young, cognitively normal subjects[130] whereas 21 d (20 IU, 2 × per day) treatment promoted story recall and attention in cognitively impaired subjects and individuals with AD[130-132]. These effects have shown insulin to be a promising anti-AD agent.

In addition to aforementioned targets some new hypotheses are emerging with advances in understanding of AD pathmechanisms. One such recent observation is presence of autophagic vacuoles in degenerating neurons. It is proposed that these vacuoles formation results from lysosomal autophagy induced by oxidative stress, Aβ, calcium ion imbalance and cleavage of heat shock protein (Hsp 70.1) that plays a crucial role in lysosomal integrity. Accumulation of these vacuoles further results in autophagy induced neurodegeneration[133]. Thus lysosomal stabilization can be seen as a near future approach to treat AD. Thus to summarize, multivariate targets have been identified as treatment avenues for AD and are currently in various stages of clinical development. However, it must be noted that clinicians have now started believing in multi-target approach as a better therapy module to address both disease progression and symptomatic relief.

AD: DRUG DELIVERY SYSTEMS

With emergence of newer therapeutic targets as discussed in earlier section, there comes a great hope for successful AD treatment modalities in near future. Though very lucrative, the prime challenge in getting these potent drugs from bench to bedside lies in their effective delivery across BBB and ultimately to the brain. BBB is identified as an obstructive interface between blood and CNS that restricts the entry of variety of molecules to the brain *via* tight junctions and also serves as CNS microvasculature. This over-protective phenomenon of BBB turns out to be the rate limiting step in effective transport of drug to the brain. Further, during AD progression, BBB undergoes certain pathophysiological changes in terms of altered expression of certain transporter receptors, altered glucose transport, impaired P-gp efflux system, leaky vasculature, release of neurotoxins and oxidative stress induced changes in BBB permeability. These are being studied extensively in recent years for better understanding of disease pathophysiology. In coming years, understanding of these will play a crucial role in designing smart delivery systems to surpass BBB[134,135].

Besides drug delivery system, the route of administration also plays a significant role in drug absorption, distribution, and passage across BBB, *etc*. With this understanding, researchers are now focusing on development of drug delivery systems and suitable route of delivery that can synergistically circumvent BBB and enhance patient compliance[134-136]. This section describes design and development of plethora of drug delivery systems for AD therapeutics with a special attention on route of delivery. Table 1 abridges the novel strategies under investigation and Table 2 summarizes currently marketed products and ongoing clinical studies.

Oral drug delivery systems

Peroral route is most preferred route of drug delivery owing to the associated patient compliance and convenience of administration. This is marked from the fact that the first approved dosage form for treatment of AD was an oral capsule of reversible AChEI drug tacrine (Cognex®).

However for AD treatment, in addition to BBB, GI stability and permeation of drug into systemic circulation become superfluous rate limiting step upon oral administration. This is well evident from the reports that Cognex® is prescribed 4 times daily which resulted in poor therapeutic compliance due to meager oral bioavailability, severe first-pass metabolism and peripheral side effects. Thus to leverage the benefits of oral delivery towards effective treatment strategy in case of AD, researchers are working towards the modified oral dosage forms that ensure better stability and permeation across GI tract.

Various drugs investigated in literature towards modified oral dosage form include AChEIs, polyphenols, metal chelators, peptides, *etc*. Polyphenols are a class of molecules which are extensively explored for AD treatment. One such polyphenol is (-)-epigallocatechin-3-gallate (EGCG) which is reported to be a potent activator of α-secretase that activates nonamyloidogenic processing APP but is a poor candidate for oral delivery. In this context, Smith *et al*[137] developed the nanolipid particles of EGCG using a co-solubilization method at drug to excipient ratio ranging from 1:1 to 1:32. The *in vitro* studies in murine neuroblastoma cells indicated significant enhancement in α-secretase activity above the ratio of 1:8 and activity was attributed to the better encapsulation and stability of drug in nanolipid matrix. Further, the oral pharmacokinetic studies performed in male Sprague Dawley rats exhibited over two fold enhancement in oral bioavailability with nanolipid EGCG formulation as compared to plain drug when administered at dose of 100 mg/kg of EGCG. These results signify importance of modified dosage form towards better oral bioavailability and can be anticipated to also enhance the brain uptake owing to the nanolipid matrix[137]. On similar lines, Dube *et al*[138] reported chitosan-tripolyphosphate nanoparticles of EGCG and performed pharmacokinetic studies in Swiss Outbred mice. The studies indicated almost 1.5 fold improvement in oral bioavailability as compared to EGCG suspension and interestingly indicated higher permeation from the jejunum region of GI tract indicating better potential of these NPs to enter systemic circulation.

Among the various AD treatment targets antiprogesterone drugs like mifepristone are also reported to arrest the cognitive impairment and thus offer symptomatic relief[139-141]. To enhance oral bioavailability, He *et al*[139] have reported polylactide-co-glycolide (PLGA) nanoparticles of this drug and have shown significantly high oral bioavailability of mifepristone as compared to plain drug. Thus lipid as well as polymeric encapsulation of actives presents a promising strategy towards enhanced stability and permeation of drug
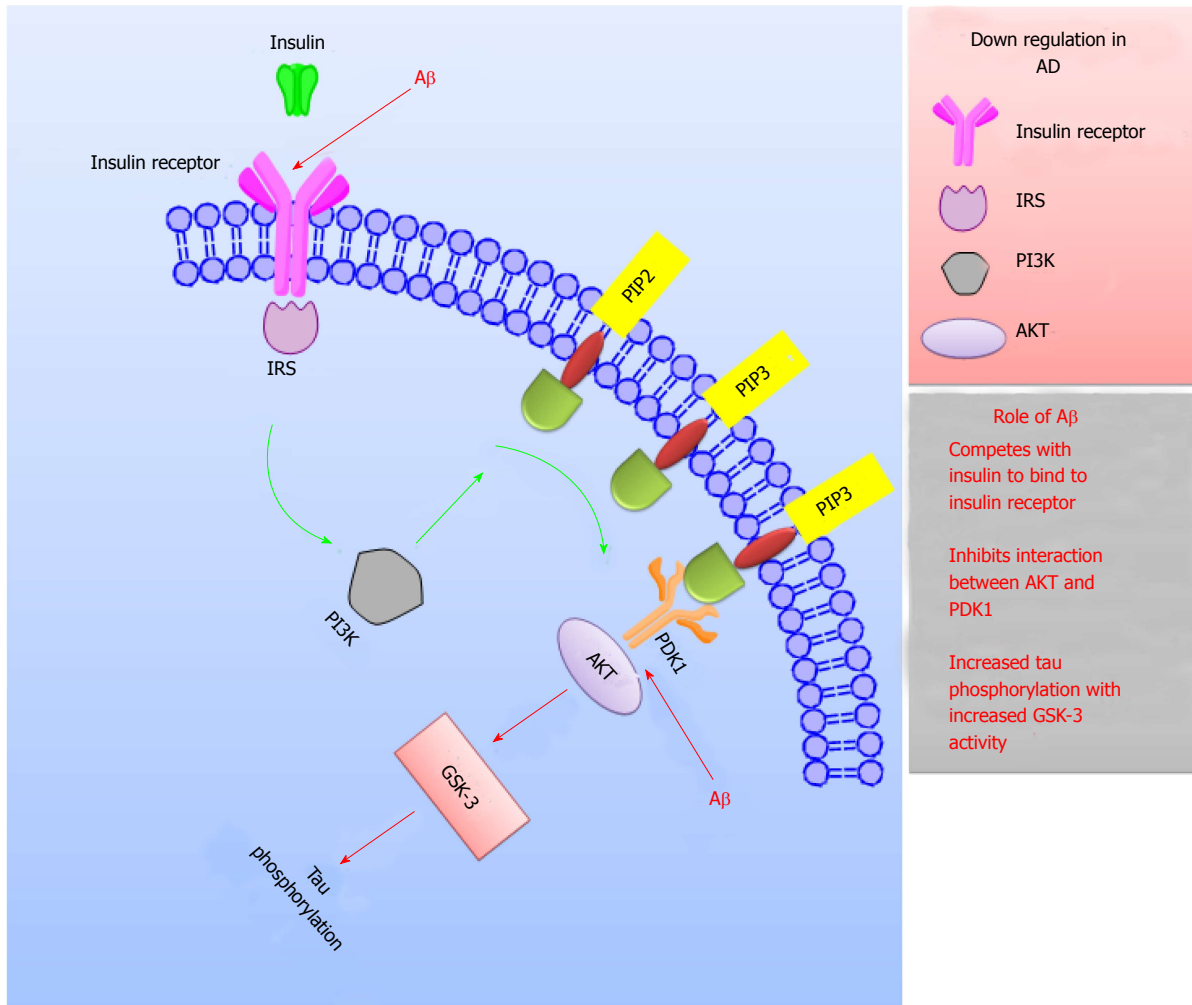
Figure 7 Schematic representation explaining the role of insulin in Alzheimer's disease treatment. Interaction of IRS with insulin receptor initiates the event of insulin signaling. This act triggers a cascade of activities which subsequently results in expression of PIP3 on the plasma membrane. This further leads to the activation of PDK-1 which interacts with AKT to generate the transmission of the insulin signal. In AD, the crucial components for insulin signaling like insulin receptors, IRS, PI3K and AKT; are down regulated. Also, Aβ competes with insulin to bind to insulin receptors, inhibits the PI3K-AKT interaction and enhances the GSK-3 activity which subsequently increases tau phosphorylation leading to impaired signaling in AD. IRS: Insulin receptor substrate; PI3K: Phosphoinositide-3-kinase; PIP: Phosphatidylinositol phosphate; PDK1: Phosphoinositide-dependent kinase-1; AKT: Protein kinase B; GSK-3: Glycogen synthase kinase-3; AD: Alzheimer's disease.

across GI tract. A step ahead in this field is to explore dual modalities towards enhanced GI as well as BBB permeability. For this, Mittal *et al*[142,143] developed estradiol entrapped PLGA nanoparticles coated with tween 80 using single emulsion technique (particle size approximately 170 nm). The rationale here was to enhance GI uptake of estradiol by nanopolymeric encapsulation and to enhance the brain uptake by tween 80 coat which is reported to be recognized and actively taken up across BBB by apolipoprotein receptors present on the BBB. Upon oral administration in Sprague Dawley rats, the estradiol level was found to be 1.969 ± 0.197 ng/g brain tissue in case of tween 80 coated nanoparticles which was almost 2 fold as compared to 1.105 ± 0.136 ng/g tissue as in case of uncoated nanoparticles. Interestingly, the drug levels obtained in brain with tween 80 coated nanoparticles given orally were almost similar to that obtained after intramuscular injection (2.123 ± 0.370 ng/g tissue) of estradiol

indicating the superiority of targeted nanoparticles. Also, the pharmacodynamic studies performed using elevated plus maze test indicated marked reduction in anxiety behaviour with nanoparticulate formulation as compared to plain drug[142,143].

Oral therapy though poses issues w.r.t. low oral bioavailability, chronic oral treatment is reported to be effective probably for drugs that offer minimal or no peripheral side effects. This can be attributed to the time dependent accumulation and slow clearance from brain. In support of this, very recently Kazim *et al*[144] reported that the chronic oral treatment of neurotrophic factors results in reduction of neural plasticity and associated cognitive impairment. In this study, a ciliary neurotrophic factor P021 (Ac-DGGLAG-NH2) was given orally over a period of 12 mo to both moderate and severe stages of AD in transgenic mice. It was also observed that there was a significant down regulation of hyperphosphorylated tau and Aβ and thus chronic

Table 1 Novel therapeutic strategies for Alzheimer's disease management

Active	Mechanism of action	Drug delivery system	Efficacy study model	Ref.
		Oral		
Rutin	Antioxidant	Only drug	Preclinical rodent streptozotocin induced AD model	[85]
(-)-Epigallocatechin-3-gallate	Antioxidant, α-secretase activator	Nanolipid carriers	*In vitro*, preclinical rodent model	[137]
		Chitosan	Preclinical rodent model	[138]
Mifepristone	Antiprogesterone activity, AD symptomatic relief	PLGA nanoparticles	Preclinical rodent model	[139-141]
Estradiol	Estrogenic activity, AD symptomatic relief	Tween 80 coated PLGA nanoparticles	Preclinical rodent model	[142,143]
CNTF P021 (Ac-DGGLAG-NH₂)	Neurotrophic factor	Only drug	Preclinical rodent AD transgenic model	[144]
Clioquinol	Metal ion Cu/Zn chelator	Only drug	Preclinical rodent AD transgenic model	[145,146]
Galactose	Glucose restoration	Only drug	Preclinical streptozotocin induced rodent model	[147]
		Transdermal		
Galantamine	AChEI	Drug in adhesive type patch	Preclinical rodent model	[151]
Donepezil (base and salt form)	AChEI	Fatty acid based topical formulation	*In vitro* skin model, preclinical rodent model	[152]
Huperzine A	AChEI	Microemulsion, solid lipid nanoparticles, nanostructured lipid carriers	*In vitro* skin model, preclinical rodent model	[153]
Donepezil	AChEI	Iontophoresis, Wearable Electronic Drug Delivery System patches	Preclinical rodent model	[154]
Rasageline and selegiline	MAO-B inhibitors	Solution and carbopol based gel - iontophoresis	*In vitro* skin model	[155]
Memantine	NMDA receptor modulator	Iontophoresis with penetration enhancers	*In vitro* skin model	[156]
Aβ(1-42) antigen	AD immunovaccine	Microneedles	Preclinical rodent model	[161]
		Intravenous		
Clioquinol	Cu/Zn chelator	Only drug	Preclinical rodent AD transgenic model	[42]
Lithium	GSK-3 inhibitor of tau phosphorylation	Only drug	Preclinical rodent AD transgenic model	[76,77]
Valproate sodium	GSK-3 inhibitor of tau phosphorylation	Only drug	Preclinical rodent AD transgenic model	[76,77]
Nerve growth factor	Cholinergic neuron protection	Polysorbate 80 coated PBCA nanoparticles	Preclinical scopolamine induced rodent model	[162]
		PEG chemical conjugate	Preclinical rodent model	[163]
		Antitransferrin antibody chemical conjugate	Preclinical rodent model	[163,164]
Galantamine	AChEI	Peptide targeting ligand functionalized liposomes	*In vitro* cell line	[165]
Aβ binding peptide QSH	Aβ reduction	Targeted PEGylated polylactic acid nanocarriers	Preclinical AD induced rodent model	[166]
Thiflavin T	Specific Aβ plaque binding	PBCA Nanoparticles	Preclinical rodent model	[168,169]
Anti- Aβ antibody	AD immunotherapy	Only drug	Preclinical rodent AD transgenic model	[49,50]
BAM -10 antibody	AD immunotherapy	External targeting with trans-cranial application of magnetic and ultrasound energy	Preclinical rodent AD transgenic model	[186,187]
Cholic acid	Cholinergic management	Fluorescent labeled PEG-PLGA nanoparticles, external ultrasound	Preclinical rodent model	[188]
Octapeptide NAP derived from the neurotrophic factor	Neuroprotective activity	Only drug	Preclinical rodent model	[196,197]
Mesenchymal stem Cells	Neuronal growth	Only drug	*In vitro*, Preclinical transgenic AD rodent model	[203,204]
		Intranasal		
Insulin	Multicascade anti AD activity	Only drug	Preclinical rodent model	[130-132]
Tacrine	AChEI	Cyclodextrin coated bovine serum albumin nanospeheres	Ex *vivo* permeation model	[175]
Curcumin	Antioxidant, anti- Aβ activity	Nanoemulsion	Ex *vivo* permeation model	[177]
siRNA	AD associated gene silencing	Cell penetrating peptide TAT conjugated polycaprolactone- PEG Micelles	Early development	[184]
Gene delivery	AD associated gene silencing	Exosomes	Early development	[185]
Pituitary adenylate cyclase-activating polypeptide	Neuroprotective activity	Only drug	Preclinical rodent model	[198]

		Implants		
Rivastigmine	AChEI	BTM and SAM based organogel implants, subcutaneous administration	Preclinical rodent model	[195]

Aβ: Amyloid β; AD: Alzheimer's disease; PLGA: Polylactide-co-glycolide; CNTF: Ciliary neurotrophic factor; AChEI: Acetylcholinesterase inhibitors; MAO-B: Monoamine oxidase B; NMDA: N-methyl-D-aspartate; GSK-3: Glycogen synthase kinase 3; PEG: Polyethylene glycol; PBCA: Polybutylcyanoacrylate; BTM: N-behenoyl L-tyrosine methylester; SAM: N-stearoyl L-alanine methylester.

Table 2 Current market status and ongoing clinical investigation for Alzheimer's disease therapeutics

Active	Mechanism of action	Drug delivery route	Clinical status	Ref.
Approved drugs				
Tacrine (Cognex®)	AChEI	Oral	USFDA approved	[205]
Donepezil (Aricept®)	AChEI	Oral	USFDA approved	
Galantamine (Razadyne, Reminyl®)	AChEI	Oral	USFDA approved	
Rivastigmine (Exelon®)	AChEI	Transdermal patch	USFDA approved	
Memantine (Namenda, Axura®, Ebixa®)	NMDA receptor inhibitor, glutaminergic system modifier	Oral	USFDA approved	
Drugs under clinical investigation				
EHT-0202	α-secretase activator	Oral	Phase 2	[29]
CTS-21166	β-secretase inhibitor	Oral	Phase 2	[35]
MK-0752	γ-secretase inhibitor	Oral	Phase 2	[29,36]
Immunoglobulin	AD immune activity	Intravenous	Phase 2	[170]
Omega-3-fatty acid treatment, nutritional supplement, physical exercise and cognitive stimulation	AD symptomatic management	Oral	Phase 3	[199]
Cerebrolysin and AChEI	Neirotropic, AChEI	Oral	Phase 4	[200,201]
Alzhemed™	Activity Aβ aggregation inhibitor	Oral (dietary supplement)	Phase 3	[206]

USFDA: United States Food and Drug Administration; AChEI: Acetylcholinesterase inhibitors; NMDA: N-methyl-D-aspartate; AD: Alzheimer's disease.

therapy can be visualized to be an effective strategy for such drugs that do not offer peripheral side effects but pose problem with oral bioavailability alone. In one such study, clioquinol (metal ion Cu/Zn chelator) was given orally over a period of 9 wk to aged APP2576 transgenic mice with advanced AD. As hypothesized, the results indicated significant reduction in both cerebral and serum Aβ levels[145,146].

Nutrient imbalance is generally observed with AD and among all, glucose hypometabolism is one such hallmark condition. With an aim to restore the brain glucose levels, Salkovic-Petrisic *et al*[147] supplemented streptozotocin induced AD rats with oral galactose (200 mg/kg per day) over a period of 1 mo. The pharmacodynamic evaluation with Morris Water Maze and Passive Avoidance test indicated restoration of cognitive function in galactose treated group as compared to control. Thus, it can be well noted that chronic treatment with nutrient sugars that can be converted to glucose *via* alternative pathways can be a supportive therapy ensuring symptomatic relief.

Transdermal drug delivery systems
Considering life-long therapy, transdermal delivery of AD actives is considered to be an ideal route as it offers sustained drug delivery over prolonged period of time with reduced dosing frequency. This certainly ensures patient compliant therapy module and positively reduces patient dependence on caretaker. Additionally, it also overrules the adversities associated with oral route *viz*. peripheral side effects, first pass metabolism, fluctuations in plasma drug concentration, *etc.*[148,149]. Owing to these lucrative advantages and feasibility of dosage form development, first AChEI drug rivastigmine transdermal patch (Exelon®) was introduced in market in year 2007 for treatment to mild to moderate AD. In a multicentric study with approximately 2000 AD patient caregivers, it was observed that 94.3% of caregivers preferred transdermal form of rivastigmine over oral therapy and corroborated better efficacy and symptomatic relief in patients[150]. With this great success of Exelon®, various conventional patches have been investigated for transdermal delivery of AD therapeutics. In one such study, Park *et al*[151] formulated drug in adhesive type patch of galantamine with a series of pressure sensitive adhesives. Among all, DT-2510 was found to be the most suitable pressure sensitive adhesive and this optimised patch demonstrated sustained drug plasma levels over a period of 24 h with 80% bioavailability. Thus, the successful delivery of galantamine *via* transdermal route proves to be a promising alternative to oral therapy ensuring relief from peripheral side effects like severe vomiting, nausea, *etc*.

Drug as well drug carrier both play a crucial role in delivery of drugs across the skin. To understand this phenomenon, Choi *et al*[152] investigated the permeation of AChEI drug donepezil in its base as well as salt form and further studied the influence of fatty acids as penetration enhancers on permeation behavior. The *in vitro* permeation studies performed using mouse

and human cadaver skin indicated a good degree of correlation and confirmed a parabolic relationship between drug permeation and fatty acid chain length wherein the oleic acid and palmitoleic acid were observed to be optimum for the base and the salt form respectively. *In vivo* pharmacokinetic studies performed in rat model indicated that the base form of the drug exhibited 6 fold higher bioavailability as compared to the salt form, when formulated and applied topically with the respective fatty acid. This confirmed that the base form is more permeable and can be correlated to the lipophilic nature of drug along with the fatty acid matrix that ensured better permeation.

Considering the need of AD therapeutics to cross BBB, one must ensure higher plasma drug levels so as to felicitate BBB transport. Use of transdermal delivery presents a hurdle here, as stratum corneum, the uppermost layer of skin epidermis acts as a strong barrier towards the permeation of drug from skin into the systemic circulation. Thus higher degree and extent of drug permeation across skin demands modifications in transdermal delivery systems.

Lipid matrix based formulations are anticipated to enhance transdermal permeation and if formulated in nanocarriers are expected to cross BBB *via* passive transport. In context of this, Patel *et al*[153] developed microemulsion (ME), solid lipid nanoparticles (SLNs), and nanostructured lipid carriers (NLCs) based gels of an AChEI drug Huperzine A (particle size less than 150 nm) and compared their efficacy both *in vitro* and *in vivo*. *In vitro* skin permeation studies performed using rat skin resulted in highest flux observed with ME based formulation followed by NLCs and SLNs respectively. This enhanced permeation with ME based formulation can be ascribed to unique properties of ME to cause structural alteration in stratum corneum by virtue of the ME excipient matrix. Further, *in vivo* pharmacodynamic studies performed using elevated plus maze test in scopolamine induced mice amnesia model displayed significant reduction in transfer latency period indicating better cognition with nanoformulations as compared to orally administered drug suspension.

In order to further enhance permeation across the skin, various techniques *viz*. iontophoresis, sono-phoresis, microneedles are being investigated. Among these techniques iontophoresis has gained the widest attention and is being explored for varied arena of AD therapeutics *viz*. AChEI, monoamine oxidase B (MAO-B) inhibitors, metal chelators, NMDA receptor antagonists, *etc*.

one such study Saluja *et al*[154] studied the ionto-phoretic delivery and effect of electric current on drug permeation *via* Wearable Electronic Drug Delivery patches using donepezil as a model drug. The done-pezil gel loaded electronic patches were applied on hairless rats and *in vivo* pharmacokinetic studies were performed. The studies revealed that at current intensity of 0.13 mA, 0.26 mA and 0.39 mA, the C_{max} level of

drug in plasma was observed to be 0.094 μg/mL, 0.237 μg/mL and 0.336 μg/mL respectively indicating that current density has a proportional effect on drug permeation. The imperative role of electric current was also confirmed by the fact that during iontophoresis linear pharmacokinetics were observed and it altered to flip flop kinetics after iontophoretic intervention.

Kalaria *et al*[155] investigated anodal iontophoresis as a technique to check permeation of two MAO-B inhibitor drugs rasagiline and selegiline, both from solution and carbopol gel form. *In vitro* studies performed using porcine and human skin revealed that rise in electric current intensity increases the permeation flux proportionally and the major mechanism of permeation was electromigration in presence of counter ions. Further, the degree of permeation from solution form was better as compared to the carbopol gel and was attributed to slower diffusion of drugs from the gel matrix. Thus, the studies suggested that simple transdermal patches can be employed for effective iontophoretic delivery wherein the patch system plays a very crucial role on rate of permeation and thus demands a meticulous selection.

With an aim to compare the potential of chemical penetration enhancers and iontophoresis, del Rio-Sancho *et al*[156] conducted 2 sets of *in vitro* skin permeation studies wherein the skin was pre-treated over a period of 12 h with various classes of chemical permeation enhancers *viz*. decenoic acid, R-(+)-limonene, oleic acid, cineol, laurocapram followed by *in vitro* permeation with memantine drug solution. In other set, iontophoresis was investigated as a drug permeation technique at the current density of 0.5 mA/cm^2. Amongst the various penetration enhancers, R-(+)-limonene exhibited maximum transdermal flux of 91.9 ± 8.2 μg/cm^{2}per hour. Iontophoresis exhibited transdermal flux of 158 ± 6 μg/cm^2 per hour which was almost 1.5 fold higher than the optimized permeation enhancer. Thus, iontophoresis can be visualized as an effective technique and additionally this opens up newer doors to investigate the co-application of both the techniques towards better permeation profiles.

As discussed in earlier section, AD immunovaccines are now emerging as a different dimension to AD therapeutics. Initial studies have proven potential of Aβ antigen injections in mouse but clinical trials were withdrawn from phase 2 due to meningoencephalitis induced by TH1 cells[63,157,158]. To overcome this adverse reaction, transcutaneous immunization is now gaining attention in recent years as it involves immune response *via* Th2 pathway[159,160]. Matsuo *et al*[161] amalgamated the concept of transcutaneous immunization with novel transdermal devices and have developed Aβ(1-42) antigen incorporated microneedle array, MicroHyala that is dissolved upon incorporation into the skin releasing the antigen. The scientists have proven the induction of immune system activation and have suggested that further modification is desired in delivery systems to achieve higher immune response and better cognitive

regain.

Intravenous drug delivery systems

Intravenous delivery of AD actives is being investigated extensively as it results in 100% bioavailability. This ensures higher systemic levels of drug that presents higher probability of drug permeation across the BBB. Further, this serves as an effective research tool to investigate the effect on drug carrier system on BBB permeability as upon intravenous administration the only major rate limiting step towards entry of drug in brain is BBB.

In recent times, with a rationale to augment the delivery of nanoparticulate carriers across BBB, use of targeting ligands is gaining wide attention. Having understood the potential of Nerve growth factor (NGF) in maintenance of cholinergic neurons, targeted delivery of NGF is under extensive exploration. Kurakhmaeva *et al*[162] developed polybutylcyanoacrylate (PBCA) nanoparticles of NGF followed by a polysorbate 80 coat that serves as a targeting ligand across BBB. Upon intravenous administration in scopolamine induced amnesic rodent model, significant improvement in cognition was observed and was corroborated with higher levels of NGF detected in murine brain as compared to plain NGF.

Several other approaches that involve drug ligand chemical conjugation are also reported in literature for delivery of NGF that include covalent ligation of NGF to polyethylene glycol (PEG) that warrants long circulation time in systemic circulation boosting the chances of BBB uptake[163], conjugation to antitransferrin antibody enabling receptor mediated active transport across BBB[164,165]. Mufamadi *et al*[165] recently reported peptide targeting ligand functionalized liposomes (size approximately 150 nm) incorporating galantamine and they have shown selective uptake of these targeted nanoliposomes across PC12 cells in contrast to the non-targeted liposomes.

Use of multiple targeting ligands is also being investigated. Zhang *et al*[166] employed two targeting ligands on PEGylated polylactic acid (PLA) nanoparticles. The targeting ligands were TGN, a 12 amino acid ligand specific for BBB transport and an Aβ binding peptide QSH. The hypothesis here was to achieve a better permeation across BBB *via* active transport of target specific nanocarriers followed by selective binding to Aβ plaques. The *in vivo* biodistribution studies followed by intravenous administration of these nanoparticles to AD induced mice indicated almost 1.5 fold higher uptake in cerebellum and hippocampus as compared to blood indicating the preferential uptake in brain.

In another approach, Bana *et al*[167] have reported development of liposomes with phosphatidic acid and a derivative of ApoE-peptide as a dual targeting strategy. The *in vivo* biodistribution studies in rodent model upon intravenous administration revealed a higher uptake as compared to monofunctionalised liposomes. This

signposts that concurrent targeting strategy can be used as a synergistic method to enhance BBB permeability.

The nanoparticulate systems are also extrapolated for diagnostic purpose. Thioflavin T is a fluorescent marker and is reported to possess specific binding affinity towards Aβ plaques. Taking advantage of this, scientists have developed polymeric PBCA nanoparticles of this dye and have shown imaging potential of this dye towards AD diagnosis. These results are very encouraging as these nanoparticles are reported to be taken across BBB from the systemic circulation and thus the current techniques of direct CNS intervention *via* intracerebral or intracortical or intrahippocampal injections for diagnostic purpose can be circumvented[168,169].

Intravenous immunoglobulins are reported to contain anti-Aβ antibodies and are under clinical studies for their therapeutic assessment. In an open study, 8 patients with mild AD were subjected to intravenous immunoglobulins for a period of 6 mo followed by a break that was continued with further treatment for 9 mo. Studies publicized significant reduction in Aβ levels in CSF and a symptomatic progress was observed with 2.5 points increase in Mini-mental state[170]. In extension to this, phase 2 double blind studies in patients with mild to moderate AD suggested the efficacy of treatment and confirmed safety. However they have reported need for longer trials with higher number of patients for more clinically significant data generation[171].

Intranasal drug delivery systems

Olfactory pathway is being reconnoitered comprehensively towards the brain delivery of therapeutic actives as it is the most accessible route for circumventing BBB that allows entry *via* peripheral olfactory neurons and lamina propria in the CNS (Figure 8)[172-174]. In this context, both passive as well as active targeting approaches are well reported in literature. Considering the nasal epithelium and permeability of olfactory pathway, nanoparticle mediated intranasal drug delivery for treatment of AD is most widely investigated for both passive as well as active delivery modules.

Natural polymeric nanocarriers *viz*. albumin, chitosan, *etc*. are amongst the highly explored nanoparticles because of high degree of mucoadhesion, negligible nasal mucosa irritation and compatibility. Luppi *et al*[175] developed cyclodextrin coated bovine serum albumin nanospheres of tacrine (size approximately 300 nm) using coacervation technique. These nanospheres presented strong mucoadhesive properties and *ex vivo* permeation studies using sheep nasal mucosa indicated complete permeation within 100 min. This suggests a better possibility of brain delivery *via* nasal route as complete dose permeated well within the nasal mucosa clearance time (approximately 4 h).

Gao *et al*[176] developed 6-Coumarin, a fluorescent dye loaded lectinised nanoparticles as a tool for targeted uptake *via* olfactory epithelium. Briefly, Ulexeuropeus agglutinin I is reported to bind specifically to l-fucose,
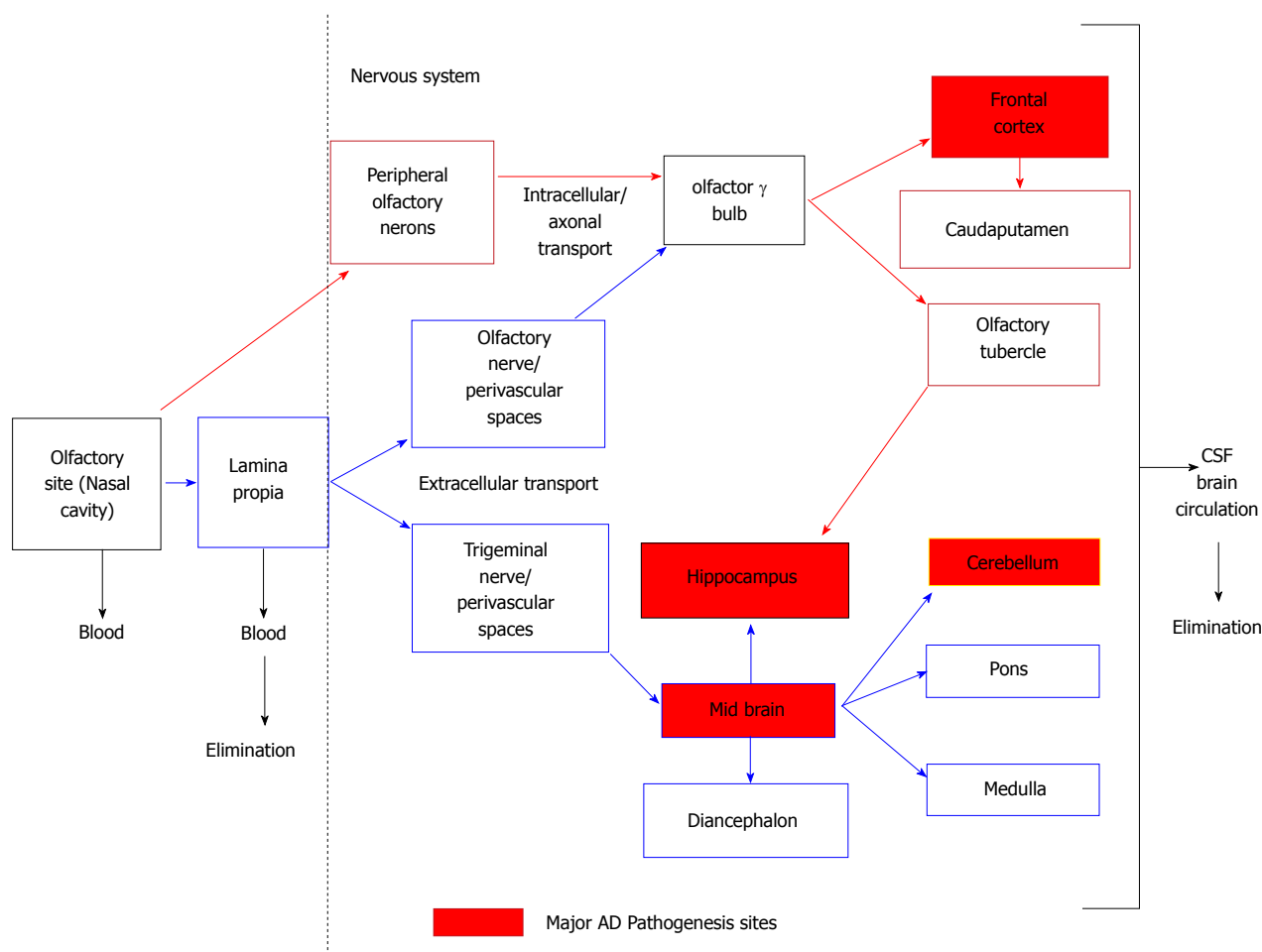
Figure 8 Schematic representation of nose to brain uptake by olfactory pathway circumventing blood brain barrier that allows entry *via* peripheral olfactory neurons and lamina propria in the central nervous system. Modified from[172]. CSF: Cerebrospinal fluid.

a lectin binding domain located on olfactory epithelium. Using this as a targeting ligand decorated on PEG-PLA nanoparticles, almost 1.7 fold enhancement in brain bioavailability was seen as compared to the non-targeted PEG-PLA nanoparticles. Further, the developed targeted nanocarrier exhibited higher affinity towards olfactory mucosa than respiratory mucosa and was attributed to nanoparticulate surface immobilization of carbohydrate binding pockets present in the nasal mucosa. This evidently ensured the selective passage of targeted nanoparticles *via* olfactory pathway upon nasal administration.

Researchers have also developed nanoemulsion based formulation of anti-AD drugs with a view of better permeation possibility achieved using selective surfactants. In this area, Sood *et al*[177] formulated nanoemulsion of curcumin using high hydrophilic lipophilic balance surfactant with size less than 100 nm (optimized using Box-Behnken model). Further, with a rationale to synergise permeation by better mucoadhesion, the formulation was additionally loaded with 1% chitosan solution. Interestingly, in *ex vivo* permeation studies across sheep nasal mucosa, the mucoadhesive nanoemulsion exhibited an increased flux

(445.1 ± 37.48 μg/cm^2 per hour) in contrast to plain nanoemulsion (359.9 ± 36.85 μg/cm^2 per hour). This could be attributed to opening of tight nasal epithelial junctions with enhanced permeation resulting from the combination approach. Thus, multiple permeation pathways may enhance the brain drug delivery *via* nasal route.

As discussed in earlier sections, Aβ is the major culprit causing AD induced neuronal death. Since past two decades, serious efforts are being directed to use this as a diagnostic marker. In this context, it must be understood that detection of Aβ in blood is a difficult challenge as it gets assimilated in blood only after sufficient progression of disease and is present at very low concentration as compared to the brain. This makes AD diagnosis a difficult task and if at all diagnosed it is only after a significant progression of disease. Thus, it is of prime concern to identify other efficient diagnostic techniques. For this, Kameshima *et al*[178,179] did a systematic study in Tg2576 mice wherein they not only indicated significant amount of Aβ(1-42) in nasal cavity but also proposed that it reaches nasal cavity *via* non blood pathway. They further proved that there is positive correlation between nasal and brain Aβ(1-42)

levels which was not observed in case of serum and CSF. This is worthy to note as using nasal cavity for AD diagnosis will not only avail early diagnosis of AD but will also enable to monitor disease progression.

The efficacy of nasal route to deliver therapeutic actives is well perceived with pilot clinical studies performed for insulin delivery in patients with AD and mild cognitive disorders. The CSF biomarkers were positively identified ascertaining delivery of insulin *via* nasal route. Further, the study results were promising in terms of attention and memory improvement corroborating that insulin signaling pathway plays a crucial role in cognition[180]. This favors further exploration of this route for delivery of peptides which is otherwise difficult by other routes.

With this promising milestone achieved, the research here is paving a new path towards nasal delivery of siRNA, dsDNA, miRNA, *etc*. These molecules are recognized to be playing a key role in gene silencing especially for the pathways that lead to Aβ generation and thus represent a newer therapy module. From AD *per se* miR-107, miR-206 are recognized as potential actives inhibiting β-secretase and brain-derived neurotrophic factor (BDNF) respectively, whereas miR-34 is selective in terms of reducing stored BDNF levels[181-183]. Though it is lucrative, one must understand that the biggest challenge here is their site specific delivery owing to their extremely fragile nature and lack of permeability[183]. The smart formulation approach is anticipated to come to the rescue here wherein scientists have shown improved delivery of siRNA intranasally when given *via* cell penetrating peptide TAT conjugated polycaprolactone-PEG micelles as carriers[183,184]. Alternatively, exosomes, specialized vesicles resulting from plasma membrane like structures are coming in limelight as delivery vehicles *via* nasal route after proving their better efficacy *via* intravenous route. But research in this direction is in quite infancy and desires thorough investigation[183,185].

Altering BBB permeability

Thorough insights of AD pathophysiology and treatment strategies conclude in one major understanding that BBB serves as a major milestone to be overcome towards effective management of AD.

In supplement to various active and passive targeting strategies to cross BBB, transitory increase in BBB permeability using magnetic resonance or ultrasound is proposed to be the most site specific and sophisticated targeting strategies as it allows external control over BBB permeability and can further be focused to the particular site in the CNS.

Using this technology, Jordão *et al*[186] proposed the targeted immunotherapy approach for AD treatment. In this study, anti-Aβ antibody BAM-10 was administered intravenously with magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) and focused ultrasound contrast reagents in transgenic AD mice model. This was followed by trans-cranial application of magnetic and ultrasound energy. The results indicated immediate entry of contrast agents along with the antibody across the BBB and were confirmed with significant binding of antibody to Aβ plaques in brain cortical region. The similar group further explored the potential of only ultrasound energy to achieve selective BBB permeation. In the study, they injected a single dose anti-Aβ antibody with ultrasound contrast agent in transgenic AD mice model and demonstrated a significant reduction in Aβ plaques post 4 d of treatment. They also observed that the ultrasound application resulted in activation of glial cells and astrocytes in brain region which is assumed to further reduce the Aβ plaque load[187].

This strategy can be extended to ensure synergistic penetration of nanoparticles by virtue of their size along with increased permeability of BBB. To study this phenomenon, Nance *et al*[188] prepared fluorescent labeled PEG-PLGA nanoparticles (size approximately 60 nm) of cholic acid and administered them intravenously with contrast reagents. Upon application of brain focal MR-guided ultrasound, a significant increase in fluorescent intensity was observed as compared to when administered without MR-guided ultrasound. In another study, Treat *et al*[189] have demonstrated better penetration of liposomal formulations across BBB using ultrasound treatment.

These strategies are also extrapolated for AD diagnostics[190-192]. Under current protocol, an intra cerebroventricular injection of MRI contrast agent is given for imaging based diagnosis of microscopic Aβ plaques. To avoid the CNS intervention, Santin *et al*[192] have reported a novel ultra sound-Gd-staining protocol wherein they propose to administer clinically approved MRI contrast agent Dotarem® and microbubbles Sonovue® intravenously followed by external ultrasound treatment that ensures partitioning of contrast agent inside BBB. With preliminary studies in mouse model, the group has demonstrated fast imaging within 30 min with a resolution upto 29 μm which is similar to the one achieved with intra cerebroventricular injection alone.

These studies reveal the potential of transient improvisation of BBB permeability towards better diagnostics and therapeutic efficacy. Though non-invasive, one must thoroughly study the effect of prolong use of such strategies on BBB. To understand this Xie *et al*[193] employed the ultrasound frequency of 1 MHz over temporal bone of higher animal model, *i.e.*, pigs for a period of 30 min and tracked the permeation of using MRI and a dye evans red. Studies revealed significant retention up to 90 min post exposure but was not observed at 120 min. This indicates that enhanced BBB permeability with ultrasound is a temporary and reversible mechanism but demands detailed investigation of chronic use of such techniques as AD treatment is a life-long therapy desiring regular therapeutic intervention.

Miscellaneous

With an aim to achieve sustained delivery of AD actives

over a prolonged period of time, implants are emerging as novel delivery tools in this arena[194]. Sustained release biodegradable polymeric implants of PLGA, Polylactic acid, Lecithins, organogels of safflower oil, N-stearoyl L-alanine methylester (SAM), N-behenoyl L-tyrosine methylester (BTM), *etc*., and hydrogels are very well explored. In this class of biodegradable implants, organogel based implants (identified as a 3-dimensional gelator network entrapping an organic phase component and drug) are gaining wide attention in AD therapeutics due to their unique properties of insitu implant formation, better entrapment and control over the release of low molecular weight polar compounds.

In congruence with this hypothesis, Bastiat *et al*[195] developed BTM based organogels of rivastigmine and compared its efficacy w.r.t. SAM based organogels. These organogels were injected subcutaneously in rodent model wherein they formed an implant *in situ*. *In vivo* pharmacokinetic studies herein resulted in 2.5 fold enhancement in bioavailability with BTM based organogels as compared to SAM based organogels over a period of 35 d with minimum foreign body response thus proving the potential of these oraganogels in AD treatment modality.

Not only the drug delivery systems but AD therapeutic research is also witnessing the discovery of newer molecules originating from native brain protective factors. One such example is an octapeptide NAP derived from the neurotrophic factor (molecular weight = 825 Da). Researchers have shown the significant accumulation of this octapeptide in cortex and cerebellum of brain with reduced levels of hyperphosphorylated tau and Aβ in transgenic mouse[196,197]. In extension to this, Gozes *et al*[197] studied the effect of this oligopeptide on memory retention and reported improved short-term spatial memory behavior in cognition impaired rat model. This finding suggests the potential use of this peptide towards both pathophysiological and symptomatic relief in AD therapy.

One such other peptide under investigation is pituitary adenylate cyclase-activating polypeptide (PACAP) which is a strong α-secretase activator and possesses neuroprotective activity. Upon continuous intranasal application Rat *et al*[198] demonstrated that PACAP upregulated non amyloidogenic processing of resulting in reduction of Aβ and synergistically improved the levels of brain derived neurotrophic factor. These results are promising towards development of newer therapy modalities for AD and nasal route can be anticipated as an emerging choicest route for delivery of such molecules as it will not only ensure effective delivery to brain but will also confer stability to these fragile peptides otherwise difficult to deliver by other routes.

FUTURE PROSPECTS

With thorough insight of current state of art in AD rese-

arch and due consideration to few burning facts *viz*. clinical failure of majority of drug candidates especially those targeted towards reduction of Aβ load, lack of any new drug approval and market entry since almost a decade necessitates identification of newer AD targets and/or modified treatment strategies.

In this setting, multi-domain treatment strategies are expected to become mainstream in coming years. For instance, a Multi-domain Alzheimer Prevention Study (MAPT) is currently ongoing in France that involves combination of omega-3-fatty acid treatment, nutritional supplement, physical exercise and cognitive stimulation in patient population over the age of 70. The results have shown very positive outcome opening a newer opportunity for AD management[199]. Also a combination of neurotrophic peptide drug, Cerebrolysin (Ever Neuro Pharma Ltd.) and AChEIs have shown very promising synergistic results and a phase 4 clinical trial is on-going[200,201].

Additionally, epigenetics is recently being discussed as a key reason of AD pathomechanisms and is correlated with alterations due to methylation of DNA and/or acylation of histones. Enzymes involved in these reactions are thus drawing wide attention of researchers and identification of potential inhibitors of these driver enzymes (histone acetyl transferase, *etc*.) is underway. Additionally a concept of epigenetic diet that includes vitamins (B6, B12, folate, *etc*.) is getting streamlined as these vitamins act as essential cofactors for the enzymes that control methylation homeostasis. Thus, a supplementary therapy to the existing treatment can be seen as a next step in AD therapeutics[200].

Neurodegeneration being the major pathophysiological cause of AD, stem cells induced neuroregeneration is becoming lucrative avenue which will not only arrest disease progression but will also offer symptomatic relief. *In vitro* studies have shown that mesenchymal stem cells (MSCs) augment neuronal cell differentiation, neurite growth and more importantly are resistant to taupathy[202]. Another study has recently suggested that human placental MSCs elicit significant immunomodulatory and paracrine effects leading to marked improvement in spatial and memory functions in AD transgenic mice[203]. With such promising research leads, it is envisioned that stem cells will soon serve as a survivor to AD patients.

CONCLUSION

Literature gives a wide spectrum of possibilities towards future AD treatment but in current setting complete AD cure appears to be an unreached holy grail. As a fact, 413 AD clinical trials have been conducted from year 2002 to 2012 and only 0.4% of trials have shown positive results[196]. This portrays the unmet need towards more better and deeper understanding of AD pathomechanisms and related research towards more effective treatment strategies. In this context, it is predicted that even if one succeeds in achieving

two-year delay in both the onset and progression of AD, it will possibly reduce both AD prevalence and the last stage of disease by more than 20% and 30% respectively. This will in turn reduce the individual, social, and economic burden of the disease[197]. Thus the great challenge of coming decades will be to find financial and humanitarian resources towards better management of those afflicted with AD and to refine and redouble research efforts.

With more awareness and worldwide programs like AD Neuroimaging Initiative, Alzheimer's Drug Therapy Initiative we are optimistic that the collaborative streamlined research will soon come up with a promising therapy for AD treatment and ultimately the cure.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

REFERENCES

1   **Fratiglioni L**, Launer LJ, Andersen K, Breteler MM, Copeland JR, Dartigues JF, Lobo A, Martinez-Lage J, Soininen H, Hofman A. Incidence of dementia and major subtypes in Europe: A collaborative study of population-based cohorts. Neurologic Diseases in the Elderly Research Group. *Neurology* 2000; **54**: S10-S15 [PMID: 10854355]

2   **Lobo A**, Launer LJ, Fratiglioni L, Andersen K, Di Carlo A, Breteler MM, Copeland JR, Dartigues JF, Jagger C, Martinez-Lage J, Soininen H, Hofman A. Prevalence of dementia and major subtypes in Europe: A collaborative study of population-based cohorts. Neurologic Diseases in the Elderly Research Group. *Neurology* 2000; **54**: S4-S9 [PMID: 10854354]

3   **Prince M**, Jackson J. World Alzheimer Report 2009. [Accessed 2014 Oct 20]. Available from: URL: http://www.alz.co.uk/research/files/WorldAlzheimerReport.pdf

4   **Prince M**, Bryce R, Albanese E, Wimo A, Ribeiro W, Ferri CP. The global prevalence of dementia: a systematic review and metaanalysis. *Alzheimers Dement* 2013; **9**: 63-75.e2 [PMID: 23305823 DOI: 10.1016/j.jalz.2012.11.007]

5   **Qiu C**, Kivipelto M, von Strauss E. Epidemiology of Alzheimer's disease: occurrence, determinants, and strategies toward intervention. *Dialogues Clin Neurosci* 2009; **11**: 111-128 [PMID: 19585947]

6   Prevalence of dementia in Europe. [Accessed 2014 Oct 20]. Available from: URL: http://www.alzheimer-europe.org/Research/European-Collaboration-on-Dementia/Prevalence-of-dementia/Prevalence-of-dementia-in-Europe

7   **Ferri CP**, Prince M, Brayne C, Brodaty H, Fratiglioni L, Ganguli M, Hall K, Hasegawa K, Hendrie H, Huang Y, Jorm A, Mathers C, Menezes PR, Rimmer E, Scazufca M. Global prevalence of dementia: a Delphi consensus study. *Lancet* 2005; **366**: 2112-2117 [PMID: 16360788]

8   The global voice on Dementia - Demnetia statistics. [Accessed 2014 Oct 20]. Available from: URL: http://www.alz.co.uk/research/statistics

9   Dementia a public health Priority. [Accessed 2014 Oct 20]. Available from: URL: http://apps.who.int/iris/bitstream/10665/75263/1/9789241564458_eng.pdf?ua=

10   The Global Voice on Dementia - landmark report reveals massive global cost of alzheimer's: 1% of global gdp and growing. [Accessed 2014 Oct 20]. Available from: URL: http://www.alz.co.uk/media/nr100921.html

11   **Prince M**, Guerchet M, Prina M. Policy brief for heads of government the global impact of dementia 2013-2050. [Accessed 2014 Oct 20]. Available from: URL: http://www.alz.co.uk/research/GlobalImpactDementia2013.pdf

12   **Batsch NL**, Mittelman MS, Blankman K, Ellenbogen M, Graham N, Hogg L, Mittler P, Piot P, Splaine M, Vernooij-Dassen M, Watt A. World Alzheimer report 2012 overcoming the stigma of dementia. [Accessed 2014 Oct 20]. Available from: URL: http://www.alz.co.uk/research/WorldAlzheimerReport2012.pdf

13   The global voice on Dementia - Government Alzheimer plans. [Accessed 2014 Oct 20]. Available from: URL: http://www.alz.co.uk/alzheimer-plans

14   **Prince M**, Albanese E, Guerchet M, Prina M. World Alzheimer Report 2014: Dementia and Risk Reduction. [Accessed 2014 Oct 20]. Available from: URL: http://www.alz.co.uk/research/world-report-2014

15   **Alzheimer's Association.** 2014 Alzheimer's disease facts and figures. *Alzheimers Dement* 2014; **10**: e47-e92 [PMID: 24818261]

16   Blood-brain barrier technologies and global markets. [Accessed 2014 Oct 20]. Available from: URL: http://www.bccresearch.com/market-research/pharmaceuticals/blood-brain-technologies-phm075a.html

17   **Villemagne VL**, Burnham S, Bourgeat P, Brown B, Ellis KA, Salvado O, Szoeke C, Macaulay SL, Martins R, Maruff P, Ames D, Rowe CC, Masters CL. Amyloid β deposition, neurodegeneration, and cognitive decline in sporadic Alzheimer's disease: a prospective cohort study. *Lancet Neurol* 2013; **12**: 357-367 [PMID: 23477989 DOI: 10.1016/S1474-4422(13)70044-9]

18   **Selkoe DJ**. Alzheimer's disease: genes, proteins, and therapy. *Physiol Rev* 2001; **81**: 741-766 [PMID: 11274343]

19   **Auld DS**, Kornecook TJ, Bastianetto S, Quirion R. Alzheimer's disease and the basal forebrain cholinergic system: relations to beta-amyloid peptides, cognition, and treatment strategies. *Prog Neurobiol* 2002; **68**: 209-245 [PMID: 12450488]

20   **Robbins TW**, Elliott R, Sahakian BJ. Neuropsychology--dementia and affective disorders. *Br Med Bull* 1996; **52**: 627-643 [PMID: 8949262]

21   **Golde TE**, Schneider LS, Koo EH. Anti-aβ therapeutics in Alzheimer's disease: the need for a paradigm shift. *Neuron* 2011; **69**: 203-213 [PMID: 21262461 DOI: 10.1016/j.neuron.2011.01.002]

22   **Morgan C**, Colombres M, Nuñez MT, Inestrosa NC. Structure and function of amyloid in Alzheimer's disease. *Prog Neurobiol* 2004; **74**: 323-349 [PMID: 15649580]

23   **Haass C**, Selkoe DJ. Soluble protein oligomers in neurodegeneration: lessons from the Alzheimer's amyloid beta-peptide. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol* 2007; **8**: 101-112 [PMID: 17245412]

24   **Drachman DA**. The amyloid hypothesis, time to move on: Amyloid is the downstream result, not cause, of Alzheimer's disease. *Alzheimers Dement* 2014; **10**: 372-380 [PMID: 24589433 DOI: 10.1016/j.jalz.2013.11.003]

25   **Tiiman A**, Palumaa P, Tõugu V. The missing link in the amyloid cascade of Alzheimer's disease - metal ions. *Neurochem Int* 2013; **62**: 367-378 [PMID: 23395747 DOI: 10.1016/j.neuint.2013.01.023]

26   **Korczyn AD**. The amyloid cascade hypothesis. *Alzheimers Dement* 2008; **4**: 176-178 [PMID: 18631966 DOI: 10.1016/j.jalz.2007.11.008]

27   **Fahrenholz F**, Postina R. Alpha-secretase activation--an approach to Alzheimer's disease therapy. *Neurodegener Dis* 2006; **3**: 255-261 [PMID: 17047365]

28   **Etchamendy N**, Enderlin V, Marighetto A, Pallet V, Higueret P, Jaffard R. Vitamin A deficiency and relational memory deficit in adult mice: relationships with changes in brain retinoid signalling. *Behav Brain Res* 2003; **145**: 37-49 [PMID: 14529804]

29   **Panza F**, Solfrizzi V, Frisardi V, Capurso C, D'Introno A, Colacicco AM, Vendemiale G, Capurso A, Imbimbo BP. Disease-modifying approach to the treatment of Alzheimer's disease: from alpha-secretase activators to gamma-secretase inhibitors and modulators. *Drugs Aging* 2009; **26**: 537-555 [PMID: 19655822 DOI: 10.2165/11315770-000000000-00000]

30   **Marcade M**, Bourdin J, Loiseau N, Peillon H, Rayer A, Drouin D,

Schweighoffer F, Désiré L. Etazolate, a neuroprotective drug linking GABA(A) receptor pharmacology to amyloid precursor protein processing. *J Neurochem* 2008; **106**: 392-404 [PMID: 18397369 DOI: 10.1111/j.1471-4159.2008.05396.x]

31   **Vellas B**, Sol O, Snyder PJ, Ousset PJ, Haddad R, Maurin M, Lemarié JC, Désiré L, Pando MP; EHT0202/002 study group. EHT0202 in Alzheimer's disease: a 3-month, randomized, placebo-controlled, double-blind study. *Curr Alzheimer Res* 2011; **8**: 203-212 [PMID: 21222604]

32   **Ghosh AK**, Brindisi M, Tang J. Developing β-secretase inhibitors for treatment of Alzheimer's disease. *J Neurochem* 2012; **120** Suppl 1: 71-83 [PMID: 22122681 DOI: 10.1111/j.1471-4159.2011.07476.x]

33   **May PC**, Dean RA, Lowe SL, Martenyi F, Sheehan SM, Boggs LN, Monk SA, Mathes BM, Mergott DJ, Watson BM, Stout SL, Timm DE, Smith Labell E, Gonzales CR, Nakano M, Jhee SS, Yen M, Ereshefsky L, Lindstrom TD, Calligaro DO, Cocke PJ, Greg Hall D, Friedrich S, Citron M, Audia JE. Robust central reduction of amyloid-β in humans with an orally available, non-peptidic β-secretase inhibitor. *J Neurosci* 2011; **31**: 16507-16516 [PMID: 22090477 DOI: 10.1523/JNEUROSCI.3647-11.2011]

34   **Cai J**, Qi X, Kociok N, Skosyrski S, Emilio A, Ruan Q, Han S, Liu L, Chen Z, Bowes Rickman C, Golde T, Grant MB, Saftig P, Serneels L, de Strooper B, Joussen AM, Boulton ME. β-Secretase (BACE1) inhibition causes retinal pathology by vascular dysregulation and accumulation of age pigment. *EMBO Mol Med* 2012; **4**: 980-991 [PMID: 22903875 DOI: 10.1002/emmm.201101084]

35   **Vassar R**, Kandalepas PC. The β-secretase enzyme BACE1 as a therapeutic target for Alzheimer's disease. *Alzheimers Res Ther* 2011; **3**: 20 [PMID: 21639952 DOI: 10.1186/alzrt82]

36   **Rosen LB**, Stone JA, Plump A, Yuan J, Harrison T, Flynn M, Dallob A, Matthews C, Stevenson D, Schmidt D, Palmieri T, Leibowitz M, Jhee S, Ereshefsky L, Salomon R, Winchell G, Mark S, Shearman MS, Murphy MG, Gottesdiener KM. The gamma secretase inhibitor MK-0752 acutely and significantly reduces CSF Abeta40 concentrations in humans. *Alzheimers Dement* 2006; **2**: S79 [DOI: 10.1016/j.jalz.2006.05.310]

37   **Zhang X**, Li Y, Xu H, Zhang YW. The γ-secretase complex: from structure to function. *Front Cell Neurosci* 2014; **8**: 427 [PMID: 25565961 DOI: 10.3389/fncel.2014.00427]

38   **Fleisher AS**, Raman R, Siemers ER, Becerra L, Clark CM, Dean RA, Farlow MR, Galvin JE, Peskind ER, Quinn JF, Sherzai A, Sowell BB, Aisen PS, Thal LJ. Phase 2 safety trial targeting amyloid beta production with a gamma-secretase inhibitor in Alzheimer disease. *Arch Neurol* 2008; **65**: 1031-1038 [PMID: 18695053 DOI: 10.1001/archneur.65.8.1031]

39   **Kukar TL**, Ladd TB, Bann MA, Fraering PC, Narlawar R, Maharvi GM, Healy B, Chapman R, Welzel AT, Price RW, Moore B, Rangachari V, Cusack B, Eriksen J, Jansen-West K, Verbeeck C, Yager D, Eckman C, Ye W, Sagi S, Cottrell BA, Torpey J, Rosenberry TL, Fauq A, Wolfe MS, Schmidt B, Walsh DM, Koo EH, Golde TE. Substrate-targeting gamma-secretase modulators. *Nature* 2008; **453**: 925-929 [PMID: 18548070 DOI: 10.1038/nature07055]

40   Alzhemed™. [Accessed 2014 Oct 20]. Available from: URL: http://www.alzforum.org/therapeutics/alzhemedtm

41   **Atwood CS**, Moir RD, Huang X, Scarpa RC, Bacarra NM, Romano DM, Hartshorn MA, Tanzi RE, Bush AI. Dramatic aggregation of Alzheimer abeta by Cu(II) is induced by conditions representing physiological acidosis. *J Biol Chem* 1998; **273**: 12817-12826 [PMID: 9582309 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.273.21.12817]

42   **Cherny RA**, Atwood CS, Xilinas ME, Gray DN, Jones WD, McLean CA, Barnham KJ, Volitakis I, Fraser FW, Kim Y, Huang X, Goldstein LE, Moir RD, Lim JT, Beyreuther K, Zheng H, Tanzi RE, Masters CL, Bush AI. Treatment with a copper-zinc chelator markedly and rapidly inhibits beta-amyloid accumulation in Alzheimer's disease transgenic mice. *Neuron* 2001; **30**: 665-676 [PMID: 11430801 DOI: 10.1016/S0896-6273(01)00317-8]

43   **Nalivaeva NN**, Beckett C, Belyaev ND, Turner AJ. Are amyloid-degrading enzymes viable therapeutic targets in Alzheimer's disease?

J Neurochem 2012; **120** Suppl 1: 167-185 [PMID: 22122230 DOI: 10.1111/j.1471-4159.2011.07510.x]

44   **Yasojima K**, McGeer EG, McGeer PL. Relationship between beta amyloid peptide generating molecules and neprilysin in Alzheimer disease and normal brain. *Brain Res* 2001; **919**: 115-121 [PMID: 11689168 DOI: 10.1016/S0006-8993(01)03008-6]

45   **Jacobsen JS**, Comery TA, Martone RL, Elokdah H, Crandall DL, Oganesian A, Aschmies S, Kirksey Y, Gonzales C, Xu J, Zhou H, Atchison K, Wagner E, Zaleska MM, Das I, Arias RL, Bard J, Riddell D, Gardell SJ, Abou-Gharbia M, Robichaud A, Magolda R, Vlasuk GP, Bjornsson T, Reinhart PH, Pangalos MN. Enhanced clearance of Abeta in brain by sustaining the plasmin proteolysis cascade. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2008; **105**: 8754-8759 [PMID: 18559859 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0710823105]

46   **Marr RA**, Rockenstein E, Mukherjee A, Kindy MS, Hersh LB, Gage FH, Verma IM, Masliah E. Neprilysin gene transfer reduces human amyloid pathology in transgenic mice. *J Neurosci* 2003; **23**: 1992-1996 [PMID: 12657655]

47   **Saito T**, Iwata N, Tsubuki S, Takaki Y, Takano J, Huang SM, Suemoto T, Higuchi M, Saido TC. Somatostatin regulates brain amyloid beta peptide Abeta42 through modulation of proteolytic degradation. *Nat Med* 2005; **11**: 434-439 [PMID: 15778722 DOI: 10.1038/nm1206]

48   **Schenk D**, Barbour R, Dunn W, Gordon G, Grajeda H, Guido T, Hu K, Huang J, Johnson-Wood K, Khan K, Kholodenko D, Lee M, Liao Z, Lieberburg I, Motter R, Mutter L, Soriano F, Shopp G, Vasquez N, Vandevert C, Walker S, Wogulis M, Yednock T, Games D, Seubert P. Immunization with amyloid-beta attenuates Alzheimer-disease-like pathology in the PDAPP mouse. *Nature* 1999; **400**: 173-177 [PMID: 10408445 DOI: 10.1038/22124]

49   **Bard F**, Barbour R, Cannon C, Carretto R, Fox M, Games D, Guido T, Hoenow K, Hu K, Johnson-Wood K, Khan K, Kholodenko D, Lee C, Lee M, Motter R, Nguyen M, Reed A, Schenk D, Tang P, Vasquez N, Seubert P, Yednock T. Epitope and isotype specificities of antibodies to beta -amyloid peptide for protection against Alzheimer's disease-like neuropathology. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2003; **100**: 2023-2028 [PMID: 12566568 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0436286100]

50   **Hartman RE**, Izumi Y, Bales KR, Paul SM, Wozniak DF, Holtzman DM. Treatment with an amyloid-beta antibody ameliorates plaque load, learning deficits, and hippocampal long-term potentiation in a mouse model of Alzheimer's disease. *J Neurosci* 2005; **25**: 6213-6220 [PMID: 15987951 DOI: 10.1523/JNEUROSCI.0664-05.2005]

51   **Yamada K**, Yabuki C, Seubert P, Schenk D, Hori Y, Ohtsuki S, Terasaki T, Hashimoto T, Iwatsubo T. Abeta immunotherapy: intracerebral sequestration of Abeta by an anti-Abeta monoclonal antibody 266 with high affinity to soluble Abeta. *J Neurosci* 2009; **29**: 11393-11398 [PMID: 19741145 DOI: 10.1523/JNEUROSCI.2021-09.2009]

52   **Solomon B**, Koppel R, Hanan E, Katzav T. Monoclonal antibodies inhibit in vitro fibrillar aggregation of the Alzheimer beta-amyloid peptide. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1996; **93**: 452-455 [PMID: 8552659 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.93.1.452]

53   **Legleiter J**, Czilli DL, Gitter B, DeMattos RB, Holtzman DM, Kowalewski T. Effect of different anti-Abeta antibodies on Abeta fibrillogenesis as assessed by atomic force microscopy. *J Mol Biol* 2004; **335**: 997-1006 [PMID: 14698294 DOI: 10.1016/j.jmb.2003.11.019]

54   **Solomon B**, Koppel R, Frankel D, Hanan-Aharon E. Disaggregation of Alzheimer beta-amyloid by site-directed mAb. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1997; **94**: 4109-4112 [PMID: 9108113 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.94.8.4109]

55   **Frenkel D**, Katz O, Solomon B. Immunization against Alzheimer's beta -amyloid plaques via EFRH phage administration. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2000; **97**: 11455-11459 [PMID: 11027345 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.97.21.11455]

56   **Bacskai BJ**, Kajdasz ST, Christie RH, Carter C, Games D, Seubert P, Schenk D, Hyman BT. Imaging of amyloid-beta deposits in

brains of living mice permits direct observation of clearance of plaques with immunotherapy. *Nat Med* 2001; **7**: 369-372 [PMID: 11231639]

57   **DeMattos RB**, Bales KR, Cummins DJ, Dodart JC, Paul SM, Holtzman DM. Peripheral anti-A beta antibody alters CNS and plasma A beta clearance and decreases brain A beta burden in a mouse model of Alzheimer's disease. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2001; **98**: 8850-8855 [PMID: 11438712]

58   **Sigurdsson EM**, Wisniewski T, Frangione B. A safer vaccine for Alzheimer's disease? *Neurobiol Aging* 2002; **23**: 1001-1008 [PMID: 12470795 DOI: 10.1016/S0197-4580(02)00124-0]

59   **Lemere CA**, Spooner ET, LaFrancois J, Malester B, Mori C, Leverone JF, Matsuoka Y, Taylor JW, DeMattos RB, Holtzman DM, Clements JD, Selkoe DJ, Duff KE. Evidence for peripheral clearance of cerebral Abeta protein following chronic, active Abeta immunization in PSAPP mice. *Neurobiol Dis* 2003; **14**: 10-18 [PMID: 13678662 DOI: 10.1016/S0969-9961(03)00044-5]

60   **Deane R**, Du Yan S, Submamaryan RK, LaRue B, Jovanovic S, Hogg E, Welch D, Manness L, Lin C, Yu J, Zhu H, Ghiso J, Frangione B, Stern A, Schmidt AM, Armstrong DL, Arnold B, Liliensiek B, Nawroth P, Hofman F, Kindy M, Stern D, Zlokovic B. RAGE mediates amyloid-beta peptide transport across the blood-brain barrier and accumulation in brain. *Nat Med* 2003; **9**: 907-913 [PMID: 12808450 DOI: 10.1038/nm890]

61   **Deane R**, Sagare A, Hamm K, Parisi M, LaRue B, Guo H, Wu Z, Holtzman DM, Zlokovic BV. IgG-assisted age-dependent clearance of Alzheimer's amyloid beta peptide by the blood-brain barrier neonatal Fc receptor. *J Neurosci* 2005; **25**: 11495-11503 [PMID: 16354907]

62   **Dodel R**, Hampel H, Depboylu C, Lin S, Gao F, Schock S, Jäckel S, Wei X, Buerger K, Höft C, Hemmer B, Möller HJ, Farlow M, Oertel WH, Sommer N, Du Y. Human antibodies against amyloid beta peptide: a potential treatment for Alzheimer's disease. *Ann Neurol* 2002; **52**: 253-256 [PMID: 12210803]

63   **Orgogozo JM**, Gilman S, Dartigues JF, Laurent B, Puel M, Kirby LC, Jouanny P, Dubois B, Eisner L, Flitman S, Michel BF, Boada M, Frank A, Hock C. Subacute meningoencephalitis in a subset of patients with AD after Abeta42 immunization. *Neurology* 2003; **61**: 46-54 [PMID: 12847155]

64   **Holmes C**, Boche D, Wilkinson D, Yadegarfar G, Hopkins V, Bayer A, Jones RW, Bullock R, Love S, Neal JW, Zotova E, Nicoll JA. Long-term effects of Abeta42 immunisation in Alzheimer's disease: follow-up of a randomised, placebo-controlled phase I trial. *Lancet* 2008; **372**: 216-223 [PMID: 18640458 DOI: 10.1016/S0140-6736(08)61075-2]

65   **Rinne JO**, Brooks DJ, Rossor MN, Fox NC, Bullock R, Klunk WE, Mathis CA, Blennow K, Barakos J, Okello AA, Rodriguez Martinez de Liano S, Liu E, Koller M, Gregg KM, Schenk D, Black R, Grundman M. 11C-PiB PET assessment of change in fibrillar amyloid-beta load in patients with Alzheimer's disease treated with bapineuzumab: a phase 2, double-blind, placebo-controlled, ascending-dose study. *Lancet Neurol* 2010; **9**: 363-372 [PMID: 20189881 DOI: 10.1016/S1474-4422(10)70043-0]

66   **Gilman S**, Koller M, Black RS, Jenkins L, Griffith SG, Fox NC, Eisner L, Kirby L, Rovira MB, Forette F, Orgogozo JM; AN1792(QS-21)-201 Study Team. Clinical effects of Abeta immunization (AN1792) in patients with AD in an interrupted trial. *Neurology* 2005; **64**: 1553-1562 [PMID: 15883316]

67   **Salloway S**, Sperling R, Gilman S, Fox NC, Blennow K, Raskind M, Sabbagh M, Honig LS, Doody R, van Dyck CH, Mulnard R, Barakos J, Gregg KM, Liu E, Lieberburg I, Schenk D, Black R, Grundman M. A phase 2 multiple ascending dose trial of bapineuzumab in mild to moderate Alzheimer disease. *Neurology* 2009; **73**: 2061-2070 [PMID: 19923550 DOI: 10.1212/WNL.0b013e3181c67808]

68   **Ostrowitzki S**, Deptula D, Thurfjell L, Barkhof F, Bohrmann B, Brooks DJ, Klunk WE, Ashford E, Yoo K, Xu ZX, Loetscher H, Santarelli L. Mechanism of amyloid removal in patients with Alzheimer disease treated with gantenerumab. *Arch Neurol* 2012;

69: 198-207 [PMID: 21987394 DOI: 10.1001/archneurol.2011.1538]

69   **Buée L**, Bussière T, Buée-Scherrer V, Delacourte A, Hof PR. Tau protein isoforms, phosphorylation and role in neurodegenerative disorders. *Brain Res Brain Res Rev* 2000; **33**: 95-130 [PMID: 10967355 DOI: 10.1016/S0165-0173(00)00019-9]

70   **Maccioni RB**, Cambiazo V. Role of microtubule-associated proteins in the control of microtubule assembly. *Physiol Rev* 1995; **75**: 835-864 [PMID: 7480164]

71   **Garcia ML**, Cleveland DW. Going new places using an old MAP: tau, microtubules and human neurodegenerative disease. *Curr Opin Cell Biol* 2001; **13**: 41-48 [PMID: 11163132]

72   **Maccioni RB**, Farías G, Morales I, Navarrete L. The revitalized tau hypothesis on Alzheimer's disease. *Arch Med Res* 2010; **41**: 226-231 [PMID: 20682182 DOI: 10.1016/j.arcmed.2010.03.007]

73   **Eckert A**, Nisbet R, Grimm A, Götz J. March separate, strike together--role of phosphorylated TAU in mitochondrial dysfunction in Alzheimer's disease. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2014; **1842**: 1258-1266 [PMID: 24051203 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbadis.2013.08.013]

74   **Boutajangout A**, Sigurdsson EM, Krishnamurthy PK. Tau as a therapeutic target for Alzheimer's disease. *Curr Alzheimer Res* 2011; **8**: 666-677 [PMID: 21679154 DOI: 10.2174/156720511796717195]

75   **Fuentes P**, Catalan J. A clinical perspective: anti tau's treatment in Alzheimer's disease. *Curr Alzheimer Res* 2011; **8**: 686-688 [PMID: 21605037 DOI: 10.2174/156720511796717221]

76   **Engel T**, Goñi-Oliver P, Lucas JJ, Avila J, Hernández F. Chronic lithium administration to FTDP-17 tau and GSK-3beta overexpressing mice prevents tau hyperphosphorylation and neurofibrillary tangle formation, but pre-formed neurofibrillary tangles do not revert. *J Neurochem* 2006; **99**: 1445-1455 [PMID: 17059563 DOI: 10.1111/j.1471-4159.2006.04139.x]

77   **Noble W**, Planel E, Zehr C, Olm V, Meyerson J, Suleman F, Gaynor K, Wang L, LaFrancois J, Feinstein B, Burns M, Krishnamurthy P, Wen Y, Bhat R, Lewis J, Dickson D, Duff K. Inhibition of glycogen synthase kinase-3 by lithium correlates with reduced tauopathy and degeneration in vivo. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2005; **102**: 6990-6995 [PMID: 15867159 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0500466102]

78   **Wang X**, Su B, Siedlak SL, Moreira PI, Fujioka H, Wang Y, Casadesus G, Zhu X. Amyloid-beta overproduction causes abnormal mitochondrial dynamics via differential modulation of mitochondrial fission/fusion proteins. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2008; **105**: 19318-19323 [PMID: 19050078 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0804871105]

79   **Manczak M**, Reddy PH. Abnormal interaction between the mitochondrial fission protein Drp1 and hyperphosphorylated tau in Alzheimer's disease neurons: implications for mitochondrial dysfunction and neuronal damage. *Hum Mol Genet* 2012; **21**: 2538-2547 [PMID: 22367970 DOI: 10.1093/hmg/dds072]

80   **Picone P**, Nuzzo D, Caruana L, Scafidi V, Di Carlo M. Mitochondrial dysfunction: different routes to Alzheimer's disease therapy. *Oxid Med Cell Longev* 2014; **2014**: 780179 [PMID: 25221640 DOI: 10.1155/2014/780179]

81   **Zhu X**, Lee HG, Perry G, Smith MA. Alzheimer disease, the two-hit hypothesis: an update. *Biochim Biophys Acta* 2007; **1772**: 494-502 [PMID: 17142016]

82   **Markesbery WR**. The role of oxidative stress in Alzheimer disease. *Arch Neurol* 1999; **56**: 1449-1452 [PMID: 10593298]

83   **Kelsey NA**, Wilkins HM, Linseman DA. Nutraceutical antioxidants as novel neuroprotective agents. *Molecules* 2010; **15**: 7792-7814 [PMID: 21060289 DOI: 10.3390/molecules15117792]

84   **Khalili M**, Hamzeh F. Effects of active constituents of Crocus sativus L., crocin on streptozocin-induced model of sporadic Alzheimer's disease in male rats. *Iran Biomed J* 2010; **14**: 59-65 [PMID: 20683499]

85   **Javed H**, Khan MM, Ahmad A, Vaibhav K, Ahmad ME, Khan A, Ashafaq M, Islam F, Siddiqui MS, Safhi MM, Islam F. Rutin prevents cognitive impairments by ameliorating oxidative stress and neuroinflammation in rat model of sporadic dementia of Alzheimer

type. *Neuroscience* 2012; **210**: 340-352 [PMID: 22441036 DOI: 10.1016/j.neuroscience.2012.02.046]

86   **Vijayapadma V**, Ramyaa P, Pavithra D, Krishnasamy R. Protective effect of lutein against benzo(a)pyrene-induced oxidative stress in human erythrocytes. *Toxicol Ind Health* 2014; **30**: 284-293 [PMID: 22903177 DOI: 10.1177/0748233712457439]

87   **Johnson EJ**. A possible role for lutein and zeaxanthin in cognitive function in the elderly. *Am J Clin Nutr* 2012; **96**: 1161S-1165S [PMID: 23053547 DOI: 10.3945/ajcn.112.034611]

88   **Lim GP**, Chu T, Yang F, Beech W, Frautschy SA, Cole GM. The curry spice curcumin reduces oxidative damage and amyloid pathology in an Alzheimer transgenic mouse. *J Neurosci* 2001; **21**: 8370-8377 [PMID: 11606625]

89   **Park SY**, Kim DS. Discovery of natural products from Curcuma longa that protect cells from beta-amyloid insult: a drug discovery effort against Alzheimer's disease. *J Nat Prod* 2002; **65**: 1227-1231 [PMID: 12350137 DOI: 10.1021/np010039x]

90   **Wang JZ**, Wang ZF. Role of melatonin in Alzheimer-like neurodegeneration. *Acta Pharmacol Sin* 2006; **27**: 41-49 [PMID: 16364209 DOI: 10.1111/j.1745-7254.2006.00260.x]

91   **Farina N**, Isaac MG, Clark AR, Rusted J, Tabet N. Vitamin E for Alzheimer's dementia and mild cognitive impairment. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev* 2012; **11**: CD002854 [PMID: 23152215 DOI: 10.1002/14651858.CD002854.pub3]

92   **Petersen RC**, Thomas RG, Grundman M, Bennett D, Doody R, Ferris S, Galasko D, Jin S, Kaye J, Levey A, Pfeiffer E, Sano M, van Dyck CH, Thal LJ. Vitamin E and donepezil for the treatment of mild cognitive impairment. *N Engl J Med* 2005; **352**: 2379-2388 [PMID: 15829527]

93   **Mohs RC**, Doody RS, Morris JC, Ieni JR, Rogers SL, Perdomo CA, Pratt RD; "312" Study Group. A 1-year, placebo-controlled preservation of function survival study of donepezil in AD patients. *Neurology* 2001; **57**: 481-488 [PMID: 11502917]

94   **Raskind MA**, Peskind ER, Truyen L, Kershaw P, Damaraju CV. The cognitive benefits of galantamine are sustained for at least 36 months: a long-term extension trial. *Arch Neurol* 2004; **61**: 252-256 [PMID: 14967774 DOI: 10.1001/archneur.61.2.252]

95   **Perry EK**, Atack JR, Perry RH, Hardy JA, Dodd PR, Edwardson JA, Blessed G, Tomlinson BE, Fairbairn AF. Intralaminar neurochemical distributions in human midtemporal cortex: comparison between Alzheimer's disease and the normal. *J Neurochem* 1984; **42**: 1402-1410 [PMID: 6142924 DOI: 10.1111/j.1471-4159.1984.tb02801.x]

96   **Albuquerque EX**, Alkondon M, Pereira EF, Castro NG, Schrattenholz A, Barbosa CT, Bonfante-Cabarcas R, Aracava Y, Eisenberg HM, Maelicke A. Properties of neuronal nicotinic acetylcholine receptors: pharmacological characterization and modulation of synaptic function. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther* 1997; **280**: 1117-1136 [PMID: 9067295]

97   **Ellis JM**. Cholinesterase inhibitors in the treatment of dementia. *J Am Osteopath Assoc* 2005; **105**: 145-158 [PMID: 15863734]

98   **Butterfield DA**, Pocernich CB. The glutamatergic system and Alzheimer's disease: therapeutic implications. *CNS Drugs* 2003; **17**: 641-652 [PMID: 12828500 DOI: 10.2165/00023210-200317090-00004]

99   **Francis PT**. Glutamatergic systems in Alzheimer's disease. *Int J Geriatr Psychiatry* 2003; **18**: S15-S21 [PMID: 12973746 DOI: 10.1002/gps.934]

100   **Kowall NW**, Beal MF. Glutamate-, glutaminase-, and taurine-immunoreactive neurons develop neurofibrillary tangles in Alzheimer's disease. *Ann Neurol* 1991; **29**: 162-167 [PMID: 1672808 DOI: 10.1002/ana.410290208]

101   **Bussière T**, Giannakopoulos P, Bouras C, Perl DP, Morrison JH, Hof PR. Progressive degeneration of nonphosphorylated neurofilament protein-enriched pyramidal neurons predicts cognitive impairment in Alzheimer's disease: stereologic analysis of prefrontal cortex area 9. *J Comp Neurol* 2003; **463**: 281-302 [PMID: 12820162 DOI: 10.1002/cne.10760]

102   **Lipton SA**, Rosenberg PA. Excitatory amino acids as a final common pathway for neurologic disorders. *N Engl J Med* 1994; **330**: 613-622 [PMID: 7905600 DOI: 10.1056/NEJM199403033300907]

103   **Danysz W**, Parsons CG, Mobius HJ, Stoffler A, Quack G. Neuroprotective and symptomatological action of memantine relevant for Alzheimer's disease--a unified glutamatergic hypothesis on the mechanism of action. *Neurotox Res* 2000; **2**: 85-97 [PMID: 16787834 DOI: 10.1007/BF03033787]

104   **Smith PF**. Therapeutic N-methyl-D-aspartate receptor antagonists: will reality meet expectation? *Curr Opin Investig Drugs* 2003; **4**: 826-832 [PMID: 14619404]

105   **Reisberg B**, Doody R, Stöffler A, Schmitt F, Ferris S, Möbius HJ; Memantine Study Group. Memantine in moderate-to-severe Alzheimer's disease. *N Engl J Med* 2003; **348**: 1333-1341 [PMID: 12672860 DOI: 10.1056/NEJMoa013128]

106   **Winblad B**, Poritis N. Memantine in severe dementia: results of the 9M-Best Study (Benefit and efficacy in severely demented patients during treatment with memantine). *Int J Geriatr Psychiatry* 1999; **14**: 135-146 [PMID: 10885864]

107   **Tariot PN**, Farlow MR, Grossberg GT, Graham SM, McDonald S, Gergel I; Memantine Study Group. Memantine treatment in patients with moderate to severe Alzheimer disease already receiving donepezil: a randomized controlled trial. *JAMA* 2004; **291**: 317-324 [PMID: 14734594 DOI: 10.1001/jama.291.3.317]

108   **Szekely CA**, Thorne JE, Zandi PP, Ek M, Messias E, Breitner JC, Goodman SN. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs for the prevention of Alzheimer's disease: a systematic review. *Neuroepidemiology* 2004; **23**: 159-169 [PMID: 15279021 DOI: 10.1159/000078501]

109   **Hoozemans JJ**, Rozemuller JM, van Haastert ES, Veerhuis R, Eikelenboom P. Cyclooxygenase-1 and -2 in the different stages of Alzheimer's disease pathology. *Curr Pharm Des* 2008; **14**: 1419-1427 [PMID: 18537664 DOI: 10.2174/138161208784480171]

110   **Kotilinek LA**, Westerman MA, Wang Q, Panizzon K, Lim GP, Simonyi A, Lesne S, Falinska A, Younkin LH, Younkin SG, Rowan M, Cleary J, Wallis RA, Sun GY, Cole G, Frautschy S, Anwyl R, Ashe KH. Cyclooxygenase-2 inhibition improves amyloid-beta-mediated suppression of memory and synaptic plasticity. *Brain* 2008; **131**: 651-664 [PMID: 18292081 DOI: 10.1093/brain/awn008]

111   **Sung S**, Yang H, Uryu K, Lee EB, Zhao L, Shineman D, Trojanowski JQ, Lee VM, Praticò D. Modulation of nuclear factor-kappa B activity by indomethacin influences A beta levels but not A beta precursor protein metabolism in a model of Alzheimer's disease. *Am J Pathol* 2004; **165**: 2197-2206 [PMID: 15579461 DOI: 10.1016/S0002-9440(10)63269-5]

112   **Sastre M**, Dewachter I, Rossner S, Bogdanovic N, Rosen E, Borghgraef P, Evert BO, Dumitrescu-Ozimek L, Thal DR, Landreth G, Walter J, Klockgether T, van Leuven F, Heneka MT. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs repress beta-secretase gene promoter activity by the activation of PPARgamma. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2006; **103**: 443-448 [PMID: 16407166 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0503839103]

113   **Avramovich Y**, Amit T, Youdim MB. Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs stimulate secretion of non-amyloidogenic precursor protein. *J Biol Chem* 2002; **277**: 31466-31473 [PMID: 12070143 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M201308200]

114   **Morihara T**, Teter B, Yang F, Lim GP, Boudinot S, Boudinot FD, Frautschy SA, Cole GM. Ibuprofen suppresses interleukin-1beta induction of pro-amyloidogenic alpha1-antichymotrypsin to ameliorate beta-amyloid (Abeta) pathology in Alzheimer's models. *Neuropsychopharmacology* 2005; **30**: 1111-1120 [PMID: 15688088 DOI: 10.1038/sj.npp.1300668]

115   **Côté S**, Carmichael PH, Verreault R, Lindsay J, Lefebvre J, Laurin D. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug use and the risk of cognitive impairment and Alzheimer's disease. *Alzheimers Dement* 2012; **8**: 219-226 [PMID: 22546354 DOI: 10.1016/j.jalz.2011.03.012]

116   **Sparks DL**, Hunsaker JC, Scheff SW, Kryscio RJ, Henson JL, Markesbery WR. Cortical senile plaques in coronary artery disease, aging and Alzheimer's disease. *Neurobiol Aging* 1990; **11**: 601-607

[PMID: 1704106 DOI: 10.1016/0197-4580(90)90024-T]

117 **Cucchiara B**, Kasner SE. Use of statins in CNS disorders. *J Neurol Sci* 2001; **187**: 81-89 [PMID: 11440749 DOI: 10.1016/S0022-510X(01)00529-9]

118 **Delanty N**, Vaughan CJ, Sheehy N. Statins and neuroprotection. *Expert Opin Investig Drugs* 2001; **10**: 1847-1853 [PMID: 11772290 DOI: 10.1517/13543784.10.10.1847]

119 **Clarke DW**, Boyd FT, Kappy MS, Raizada MK. Insulin binds to specific receptors and stimulates 2-deoxy-D-glucose uptake in cultured glial cells from rat brain. *J Biol Chem* 1984; **259**: 11672-11675 [PMID: 6384211]

120 **Raizada MK**, Shemer J, Judkins JH, Clarke DW, Masters BA, LeRoith D. Insulin receptors in the brain: structural and physiological characterization. *Neurochem Res* 1988; **13**: 297-303 [PMID: 3292965 DOI: 10.1007/BF00972477]

121 **Smythe GA**, Bradshaw JE, Nicholson MV, Grunstein HS, Storlien LH. Rapid bidirectional effects of insulin on hypothalamic noradrenergic and serotoninergic neuronal activity in the rat: role in glucose homeostasis. *Endocrinology* 1985; **117**: 1590-1597 [PMID: 2411530 DOI: 10.1210/endo-117-4-1590]

122 **Gammeltoft S**, Fehlmann M, Van Obberghen E. Insulin receptors in the mammalian central nervous system: binding characteristics and subunit structure. *Biochimie* 1985; **67**: 1147-1153 [PMID: 3907719 DOI: 10.1016/S0300-9084(85)80113-9]

123 **Moloney AM**, Griffin RJ, Timmons S, O'Connor R, Ravid R, O'Neill C. Defects in IGF-1 receptor, insulin receptor and IRS-1/2 in Alzheimer's disease indicate possible resistance to IGF-1 and insulin signalling. *Neurobiol Aging* 2010; **31**: 224-243 [PMID: 18479783 DOI: 10.1016/j.neurobiolaging.2008.04.002]

124 **Steen E**, Terry BM, Rivera EJ, Cannon JL, Neely TR, Tavares R, Xu XJ, Wands JR, de la Monte SM. Impaired insulin and insulin-like growth factor expression and signaling mechanisms in Alzheimer's disease--is this type 3 diabetes? *J Alzheimers Dis* 2005; **7**: 63-80 [PMID: 15750215]

125 **De Felice FG**, Vieira MN, Bomfim TR, Decker H, Velasco PT, Lambert MP, Viola KL, Zhao WQ, Ferreira ST, Klein WL. Protection of synapses against Alzheimer's-linked toxins: insulin signaling prevents the pathogenic binding of Abeta oligomers. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2009; **106**: 1971-1976 [PMID: 19188609 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.0809158106]

126 **Gasparini L**, Gouras GK, Wang R, Gross RS, Beal MF, Greengard P, Xu H. Stimulation of beta-amyloid precursor protein trafficking by insulin reduces intraneuronal beta-amyloid and requires mitogen-activated protein kinase signaling. *J Neurosci* 2001; **21**: 2561-2570 [PMID: 11306609]

127 **Kern W**, Peters A, Fruehwald-Schultes B, Deininger E, Born J, Fehm HL. Improving influence of insulin on cognitive functions in humans. *Neuroendocrinology* 2001; **74**: 270-280 [PMID: 11598383 DOI: 10.1159/000054694]

128 **Craft S**, Newcomer J, Kanne S, Dagogo-Jack S, Cryer P, Sheline Y, Luby J, Dagogo-Jack A, Alderson A. Memory improvement following induced hyperinsulinemia in Alzheimer's disease. *Neurobiol Aging* 1996; **17**: 123-130 [PMID: 8786794 DOI: 10.1016/0197-4580(95)02002-0]

129 **Craft S**, Asthana S, Newcomer JW, Wilkinson CW, Matos IT, Baker LD, Cherrier M, Lofgreen C, Latendresse S, Petrova A, Plymate S, Raskind M, Grimwood K, Veith RC. Enhancement of memory in Alzheimer disease with insulin and somatostatin, but not glucose. *Arch Gen Psychiatry* 1999; **56**: 1135-1140 [PMID: 10591291 DOI: 10.1001/archpsyc.56.12.1135]

130 **Benedict C**, Hallschmid M, Schmitz K, Schultes B, Ratter F, Fehm HL, Born J, Kern W. Intranasal insulin improves memory in humans: superiority of insulin aspart. *Neuropsychopharmacology* 2007; **32**: 239-243 [PMID: 16936707 DOI: 10.1038/sj.npp.1301193]

131 **Reger MA**, Watson GS, Frey WH, Baker LD, Cholerton B, Keeling ML, Belongia DA, Fishel MA, Plymate SR, Schellenberg GD, Cherrier MM, Craft S. Effects of intranasal insulin on cognition in memory-impaired older adults: modulation by APOE genotype. *Neurobiol Aging* 2006; **27**: 451-458 [PMID: 15964100 DOI:

132 **Reger MA**, Watson GS, Green PS, Wilkinson CW, Baker LD, Cholerton B, Fishel MA, Plymate SR, Breitner JC, DeGroodt W, Mehta P, Craft S. Intranasal insulin improves cognition and modulates beta-amyloid in early AD. *Neurology* 2008; **70**: 440-448 [PMID: 17942819 DOI: 10.1212/01.WNL.0000265401.62434.36]

133 **Yamashima T**. Reconsider Alzheimer's disease by the 'calpain-cathepsin hypothesis'--a perspective review. *Prog Neurobiol* 2013; **105**: 1-23 [PMID: 23499711 DOI: 10.1016/j.pneurobio.2013.02.004]

134 **Banks WA**. Drug delivery to the brain in Alzheimer's disease: consideration of the blood-brain barrier. *Adv Drug Deliv Rev* 2012; **64**: 629-639 [PMID: 22202501 DOI: 10.1016/j.addr.2011.12.005]

135 **Pahnke J**, Walker LC, Scheffler K, Krohn M. Alzheimer's disease and blood-brain barrier function-Why have anti-beta-amyloid therapies failed to prevent dementia progression? *Neurosci Biobehav Rev* 2009; **33**: 1099-1108 [PMID: 19481107 DOI: 10.1016/j.neubiorev.2009.05.006]

136 **Starr JM**, Farrall AJ, Armitage P, McGurn B, Wardlaw J. Blood-brain barrier permeability in Alzheimer's disease: a case-control MRI study. *Psychiatry Res* 2009; **171**: 232-241 [PMID: 19211227 DOI: 10.1016/j.pscychresns.2008.04.003]

137 **Smith A**, Giunta B, Bickford PC, Fountain M, Tan J, Shytle RD. Nanolipidic particles improve the bioavailability and alpha-secretase inducing ability of epigallocatechin-3-gallate (EGCG) for the treatment of Alzheimer's disease. *Int J Pharm* 2010; **389**: 207-212 [PMID: 20083179 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijpharm.2010.01.012]

138 **Dube A**, Nicolazzo JA, Larson I. Chitosan nanoparticles enhance the intestinal absorption of the green tea catechins (+)-catechin and (-)-epigallocatechin gallate. *Eur J Pharm Sci* 2010; **41**: 219-225 [PMID: 20600878 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejps.2010.06.010]

139 **He W**, Horn SW, Hussain MD. Improved bioavailability of orally administered mifepristone from PLGA nanoparticles. *Int J Pharm* 2007; **334**: 173-178 [PMID: 17101249]

140 **Belanoff JK**, Jurik J, Schatzberg LD, DeBattista C, Schatzberg AF. Slowing the progression of cognitive decline in Alzheimer's disease using mifepristone. *J Mol Neurosci* 2002; **19**: 201-206 [PMID: 12212781]

141 **Brambilla D**, Le Droumaguet B, Nicolas J, Hashemi SH, Wu LP, Moghimi SM, Couvreur P, Andrieux K. Nanotechnologies for Alzheimer's disease: diagnosis, therapy, and safety issues. *Nanomedicine* 2011; **7**: 521-540 [PMID: 21477665 DOI: 10.1016/j.nano.2011.03.008]

142 **Mittal G**, Carswell H, Brett R, Currie S, Kumar MN. Development and evaluation of polymer nanoparticles for oral delivery of estradiol to rat brain in a model of Alzheimer's pathology. *J Control Release* 2011; **150**: 220-228 [PMID: 21111014 DOI: 10.1016/j.jconrel.2010.11.013]

143 **Mittal G**, Sahana DK, Bhardwaj V, Ravi Kumar MN. Estradiol loaded PLGA nanoparticles for oral administration: effect of polymer molecular weight and copolymer composition on release behavior in vitro and in vivo. *J Control Release* 2007; **119**: 77-85 [PMID: 17349712]

144 **Kazim SF**, Blanchard J, Dai CL, Tung YC, LaFerla FM, Iqbal IG, Iqbal K. Disease modifying effect of chronic oral treatment with a neurotrophic peptidergic compound in a triple transgenic mouse model of Alzheimer's disease. *Neurobiol Dis* 2014; **71**: 110-130 [PMID: 25046994 DOI: 10.1016/j.nbd.2014.07.001]

145 **Ritchie CW**, Bush AI, Mackinnon A, Macfarlane S, Mastwyk M, MacGregor L, Kiers L, Cherny R, Li QX, Tammer A, Carrington D, Mavros C, Volitakis I, Xilinas M, Ames D, Davis S, Beyreuther K, Tanzi RE, Masters CL. Metal-protein attenuation with iodochlorhydroxyquin (clioquinol) targeting Abeta amyloid deposition and toxicity in Alzheimer disease: a pilot phase 2 clinical trial. *Arch Neurol* 2003; **60**: 1685-1691 [PMID: 14676042]

146 **Roney C**, Kulkarni P, Arora V, Antich P, Bonte F, Wu A, Mallikarjuana NN, Manohar S, Liang HF, Kulkarni AR, Sung HW, Sairam M, Aminabhavi TM. Targeted nanoparticles for drug delivery through the blood-brain barrier for Alzheimer's disease. *J Control Release* 2005; **108**: 193-214 [PMID: 16246446]

147   **Salkovic-Petrisic M**, Osmanovic-Barilar J, Knezovic A, Hoyer S, Mosetter K, Reutter W. Long-term oral galactose treatment prevents cognitive deficits in male Wistar rats treated intracerebroventricularly with streptozotocin. *Neuropharmacology* 2014; **77**: 68-80 [PMID: 24055495 DOI: 10.1016/j.neuropharm.2013.09.002]

148   **Oertel W**, Ross JS, Eggert K, Adler G. Rationale for transdermal drug administration in Alzheimer disease. *Neurology* 2007; **69**: S4-S9 [PMID: 17646621]

149   **Utsuki T**, Uchimura N, Irikura M, Moriuchi H, Holloway HW, Yu QS, Spangler EL, Mamczarz J, Ingram DK, Irie T, Greig NH. Preclinical investigation of the topical administration of phenserine: transdermal flux, cholinesterase inhibition, and cognitive efficacy. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther* 2007; **321**: 353-361 [PMID: 17255466]

150   **Reñé R**, Ricart J, Hernández B. From high doses of oral rivastigmine to transdermal rivastigmine patches: user experience and satisfaction among caregivers of patients with mild to moderate Alzheimer disease. *Neurologia* 2014; **29**: 86-93 [PMID: 23684446 DOI: 10.1016/j.nrl.2013.02.012]

151   **Park CW**, Son DD, Kim JY, Oh TO, Ha JM, Rhee YS, Park ES. Investigation of formulation factors affecting in vitro and in vivo characteristics of a galantamine transdermal system. *Int J Pharm* 2012; **436**: 32-40 [PMID: 22771734 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijpharm.2012.06.057]

152   **Choi J**, Choi MK, Chong S, Chung SJ, Shim CK, Kim DD. Effect of fatty acids on the transdermal delivery of donepezil: in vitro and in vivo evaluation. *Int J Pharm* 2012; **422**: 83-90 [PMID: 22037444 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijpharm.2011.10.031]

153   **Patel PA**, Patil SC, Kalaria DR, Kalia YN, Patravale VB. Comparative in vitro and in vivo evaluation of lipid based nanocarriers of Huperzine A. *Int J Pharm* 2013; **446**: 16-23 [PMID: 23410989 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijpharm.2013.02.014]

154   **Saluja S**, Kasha PC, Paturi J, Anderson C, Morris R, Banga AK. A novel electronic skin patch for delivery and pharmacokinetic evaluation of donepezil following transdermal iontophoresis. *Int J Pharm* 2013; **453**: 395-399 [PMID: 23735902 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijpharm.2013.05.029]

155   **Kalaria DR**, Patel P, Patravale V, Kalia YN. Comparison of the cutaneous iontophoretic delivery of rasagiline and selegiline across porcine and human skin in vitro. *Int J Pharm* 2012; **438**: 202-208 [PMID: 22954444 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijpharm.2012.08.037]

156   **del Rio-Sancho S**, Serna-Jiménez CE, Calatayud-Pascual MA, Balaguer-Fernández C, Femenía-Font A, Merino V, López-Castellano A. Transdermal absorption of memantin--effect of chemical enhancers, iontophoresis, and role of enhancer lipophilicity. *Eur J Pharm Biopharm* 2012; **82**: 164-170 [PMID: 22732268 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejpb.2012.06]

157   **Fox NC**, Black RS, Gilman S, Rossor MN, Griffith SG, Jenkins L, Koller M. Effects of Abeta immunization (AN1792) on MRI measures of cerebral volume in Alzheimer disease. *Neurology* 2005; **64**: 1563-1572 [PMID: 15883317]

158   **Bayer AJ**, Bullock R, Jones RW, Wilkinson D, Paterson KR, Jenkins L, Millais SB, Donoghue S. Evaluation of the safety and immunogenicity of synthetic Abeta42 (AN1792) in patients with AD. *Neurology* 2005; **64**: 94-101 [PMID: 15642910]

159   **Ishii-Katsuno R**, Nakajima A, Katsuno T, Nojima J, Futai E, Sasagawa N, Yoshida T, Watanabe Y, Ishiura S. Reduction of amyloid beta-peptide accumulation in Tg2576 transgenic mice by oral vaccination. *Biochem Biophys Res Commun* 2010; **399**: 593-599 [PMID: 20682291 DOI: 10.1016/j.bbrc.2010.07.120]

160   **Nikolic WV**, Bai Y, Obregon D, Hou H, Mori T, Zeng J, Ehrhart J, Shytle RD, Giunta B, Morgan D, Town T, Tan J. Transcutaneous beta-amyloid immunization reduces cerebral beta-amyloid deposits without T cell infiltration and microhemorrhage. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2007; **104**: 2507-2512 [PMID: 17264212]

161   **Matsuo K**, Okamoto H, Kawai Y, Quan YS, Kamiyama F, Hirobe S, Okada N, Nakagawa S. Vaccine efficacy of transcutaneous immunization with amyloid β using a dissolving microneedle array in a mouse model of Alzheimer's disease. *J Neuroimmunol* 2014; **266**: 1-11 [PMID: 24315156 DOI: 10.1016/j.jneuroim.2013.11.002]

162   **Kurakhmaeva KB**, Djindjikhashvili IA, Petrov VE, Balabanyan VU, Voronina TA, Trofimov SS, Kreuter J, Gelperina S, Begley D, Alyautdin RN. Brain targeting of nerve growth factor using poly(butyl cyanoacrylate) nanoparticles. *J Drug Target* 2009; **17**: 564-574 [PMID: 19694610 DOI: 10.1080/10611860903112842]

163   **Brasnjevic I**, Steinbusch HW, Schmitz C, Martinez-Martinez P; European NanoBioPharmaceutics Research Initiative. Delivery of peptide and protein drugs over the blood-brain barrier. *Prog Neurobiol* 2009; **87**: 212-251 [PMID: 19395337 DOI: 10.1016/j.pneurobio.2008.12.002]

164   **Liao GS**, Li XB, Zhang CY, Shu YY, Tang SX. Pharmacological actions of nerve growth factor-transferrin conjugate on the central nervous system. *J Nat Toxins* 2001; **10**: 291-297 [PMID: 11695818]

165   **Mufamadi MS**, Choonara YE, Kumar P, Modi G, Naidoo D, van Vuuren S, Ndesendo VM, Toit LC, Iyuke SE, Pillay V. Ligand-functionalized nanoliposomes for targeted delivery of galantamine. *Int J Pharm* 2013; **448**: 267-281 [PMID: 23535346 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijpharm.2013.03.037]

166   **Zhang C**, Wan X, Zheng X, Shao X, Liu Q, Zhang Q, Qian Y. Dual-functional nanoparticles targeting amyloid plaques in the brains of Alzheimer's disease mice. *Biomaterials* 2014; **35**: 456-465 [PMID: 24099709 DOI: 10.1016/j.biomaterials.2013.09.063]

167   **Bana L**, Minniti S, Salvati E, Sesana S, Zambelli V, Cagnotto A, Orlando A, Cazzaniga E, Zwart R, Scheper W, Masserini M, Re F. Liposomes bi-functionalized with phosphatidic acid and an ApoE-derived peptide affect Aβ aggregation features and cross the blood-brain-barrier: implications for therapy of Alzheimer disease. *Nanomedicine* 2014; **10**: 1583-1590 [PMID: 24333591 DOI: 10.1016/j.nano.2013.12.001]

168   **Härtig W**, Paulke BR, Varga C, Seeger J, Harkany T, Kacza J. Electron microscopic analysis of nanoparticles delivering thioflavin-T after intrahippocampal injection in mouse: implications for targeting beta-amyloid in Alzheimer's disease. *Neurosci Lett* 2003; **338**: 174-176 [PMID: 12566180]

169   **Modi G**, Pillay V, Choonara YE, Ndesendo VM, du Toit LC, Naidoo D. Nanotechnological applications for the treatment of neurodegenerative disorders. *Prog Neurobiol* 2009; **88**: 272-285 [PMID: 19486920 DOI: 10.1016/j.pneurobio.2009.05.002]

170   **Relkin NR**, Szabo P, Adamiak B, Burgut T, Monthe C, Lent RW, Younkin S, Younkin L, Schiff R, Weksler ME. 18-Month study of intravenous immunoglobulin for treatment of mild Alzheimer disease. *Neurobiol Aging* 2009; **30**: 1728-1736 [PMID: 18294736 DOI: 10.1016/j.neurobiolaging.2007.12.021]

171   **Dodel R**, Rominger A, Bartenstein P, Barkhof F, Blennow K, Förster S, Winter Y, Bach JP, Popp J, Alferink J, Wiltfang J, Buerger K, Otto M, Antuono P, Jacoby M, Richter R, Stevens J, Melamed I, Goldstein J, Haag S, Wietek S, Farlow M, Jessen F. Intravenous immunoglobulin for treatment of mild-to-moderate Alzheimer's disease: a phase 2, randomised, double-blind, placebo-controlled, dose-finding trial. *Lancet Neurol* 2013; **12**: 233-243 [PMID: 23375965 DOI: 10.1016/S1474-4422(13)70014-0]

172   **Jain R**, Nabar S, Dandekar P, Hassan P, Aswal V, Talmon Y, Shet T, Borde L, Ray K, Patravale V. Formulation and evaluation of novel micellar nanocarrier for nasal delivery of sumatriptan. *Nanomedicine* (Lond) 2010; **5**: 575-587 [PMID: 20528453 DOI: 10.2217/nnm.10.28]

173   **Chiappetta DA**, Hocht C, Opezzo JA, Sosnik A. Intranasal administration of antiretroviral-loaded micelles for anatomical targeting to the brain in HIV. *Nanomedicine* (Lond) 2013; **8**: 223-237 [PMID: 23173734 DOI: 10.2217/nnm.12.104]

174   **Kumar A**, Pandey AN, Jain SK. Nasal-nanotechnology: revolution for efficient therapeutics delivery. *Drug Deliv* 2015; 1-13 [PMID: 24901207]

175   **Luppi B**, Bigucci F, Corace G, Delucca A, Cerchiara T, Sorrenti M, Catenacci L, Di Pietra AM, Zecchi V. Albumin nanoparticles carrying cyclodextrins for nasal delivery of the anti-Alzheimer drug tacrine. *Eur J Pharm Sci* 2011; **44**: 559-565 [PMID: 22009109 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejps.2011.10.002]

176   **Gao X**, Chen J, Tao W, Zhu J, Zhang Q, Chen H, Jiang X. UEA

I-bearing nanoparticles for brain delivery following intranasal administration. *Int J Pharm* 2007; **340**: 207-215 [PMID: 17499948]

177 **Sood S**, Jain K, Gowthamarajan K. Optimization of curcumin nanoemulsion for intranasal delivery using design of experiment and its toxicity assessment. *Colloids Surf B Biointerfaces* 2014; **113**: 330-337 [PMID: 24121076 DOI: 10.1016/j.colsurfb.2013.09.030]

178 **Kameshima N**, Nanjou T, Fukuhara T, Yanagisawa D, Tooyama I. Correlation of Aβ deposition in the nasal cavity with the formation of senile plaques in the brain of a transgenic mouse model of Alzheimer's disease. *Neurosci Lett* 2012; **513**: 166-169 [PMID: 22343315 DOI: 10.1016/j.neulet.2012.02.026]

179 **Kameshima N**, Yanagisawa D, Tooyama I. β-Amyloid peptide (1-40) in the brain reaches the nasal cavity via a non-blood pathway. *Neurosci Res* 2013; **76**: 169-172 [PMID: 23603507 DOI: 10.1016/j.neures.2013.03.016]

180 **Hölscher C**. First clinical data of the neuroprotective effects of nasal insulin application in patients with Alzheimer's disease. *Alzheimers Dement* 2014; **10**: S33-S37 [PMID: 24529523 DOI: 10.1016/j.jalz.2013.12.006]

181 **Lee ST**, Chu K, Jung KH, Kim JH, Huh JY, Yoon H, Park DK, Lim JY, Kim JM, Jeon D, Ryu H, Lee SK, Kim M, Roh JK. miR-206 regulates brain-derived neurotrophic factor in Alzheimer disease model. *Ann Neurol* 2012; **72**: 269-277 [PMID: 22926857 DOI: 10.1002/ana.23588]

182 **Wang WX**, Rajeev BW, Stromberg AJ, Ren N, Tang G, Huang Q, Rigoutsos I, Nelson PT. The expression of microRNA miR-107 decreases early in Alzheimer's disease and may accelerate disease progression through regulation of beta-site amyloid precursor protein-cleaving enzyme 1. *J Neurosci* 2008; **28**: 1213-1223 [PMID: 18234899 DOI: 10.1523/JNEUROSCI.5065-07.2008]

183 **Magen I**, Hornstein E. Oligonucleotide-based therapy for neurodegenerative diseases. *Brain Res* 2014; **1584**: 116-128 [PMID: 24727531 DOI: 10.1016/j.brainres.2014.04.005]

184 **Kanazawa T**, Akiyama F, Kakizaki S, Takashima Y, Seta Y. Delivery of siRNA to the brain using a combination of nose-to-brain delivery and cell-penetrating peptide-modified nano-micelles. *Biomaterials* 2013; **34**: 9220-9226 [PMID: 23992922 DOI: 10.1016/j.biomaterials.2013.08.036]

185 **Zhuang X**, Xiang X, Grizzle W, Sun D, Zhang S, Axtell RC, Ju S, Mu J, Zhang L, Steinman L, Miller D, Zhang HG. Treatment of brain inflammatory diseases by delivering exosome encapsulated anti-inflammatory drugs from the nasal region to the brain. *Mol Ther* 2011; **19**: 1769-1779 [PMID: 21915101 DOI: 10.1038/mt.2011.164]

186 **Jordão JF**, Ayala-Grosso CA, Markham K, Huang Y, Chopra R, McLaurin J, Hynynen K, Aubert I. Antibodies targeted to the brain with image-guided focused ultrasound reduces amyloid-beta plaque load in the TgCRND8 mouse model of Alzheimer's disease. *PLoS One* 2010; **5**: e10549 [PMID: 20485502 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0010549]

187 **Jordão JF**, Thévenot E, Markham-Coultes K, Scarcelli T, Weng YQ, Xhima K, O'Reilly M, Huang Y, McLaurin J, Hynynen K, Aubert I. Amyloid-β plaque reduction, endogenous antibody delivery and glial activation by brain-targeted, transcranial focused ultrasound. *Exp Neurol* 2013; **248**: 16-29 [PMID: 23707300 DOI: 10.1016/j.expneurol.2013.05.008]

188 **Nance E**, Timbie K, Miller GW, Song J, Louttit C, Klibanov AL, Shih TY, Swaminathan G, Tamargo RJ, Woodworth GF, Hanes J, Price RJ. Non-invasive delivery of stealth, brain-penetrating nanoparticles across the blood-brain barrier using MRI-guided focused ultrasound. *J Control Release* 2014; **189**: 123-132 [PMID: 24979210 DOI: 10.1016/j.jconrel.2014.06.031]

189 **Treat LH**, McDannold N, Zhang Y, Vykhodtseva N, Hynynen K. Improved anti-tumor effect of liposomal doxorubicin after targeted blood-brain barrier disruption by MRI-guided focused ultrasound in rat glioma. *Ultrasound Med Biol* 2012; **38**: 1716-1725 [PMID: 22818878 DOI: 10.1016/j.ultrasmedbio.2012.04.015]

190 **de la Torre JC**. Carotid artery ultrasound and echocardiography testing to lower the prevalence of Alzheimer's disease. *J Stroke Cerebrovasc Dis* 2009; **18**: 319-328 [PMID: 19560690 DOI:

10.1016/j.jstrokecerebrovasdis.2008.11.014]

191 **Roher AE**, Garami Z, Tyas SL, Maarouf CL, Kokjohn TA, Belohlavek M, Vedders LJ, Connor D, Sabbagh MN, Beach TG, Emmerling MR. Transcranial doppler ultrasound blood flow velocity and pulsatility index as systemic indicators for Alzheimer's disease. *Alzheimers Dement* 2011; **7**: 445-455 [PMID: 21388892 DOI: 10.1016/j.jalz.2010.09.002]

192 **Santin MD**, Debeir T, Bridal SL, Rooney T, Dhenain M. Fast in vivo imaging of amyloid plaques using μ-MRI Gd-staining combined with ultrasound-induced blood-brain barrier opening. *Neuroimage* 2013; **79**: 288-294 [PMID: 23660031 DOI: 10.1016/j.neuroimage.2013.04.106]

193 **Xie F**, Boska MD, Lof J, Uberti MG, Tsutsui JM, Porter TR. Effects of transcranial ultrasound and intravenous microbubbles on blood brain barrier permeability in a large animal model. *Ultrasound Med Biol* 2008; **34**: 2028-2034 [PMID: 18692294 DOI: 10.1016/j.ultrasmedbio.2008.05.004]

194 **Gratieri T**, Alberti I, Lapteva M, Kalia YN. Next generation intra- and transdermal therapeutic systems: using non- and minimally-invasive technologies to increase drug delivery into and across the skin. *Eur J Pharm Sci* 2013; **50**: 609-622 [PMID: 23567467 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejps.2013.03.019]

195 **Bastiat G**, Plourde F, Motulsky A, Furtos A, Dumont Y, Quirion R, Fuhrmann G, Leroux JC. Tyrosine-based rivastigmine-loaded organogels in the treatment of Alzheimer's disease. *Biomaterials* 2010; **31**: 6031-6038 [PMID: 20472283 DOI: 10.1016/j.biomaterials.2010.04.009]

196 **Matsuoka Y**, Gray AJ, Hirata-Fukae C, Minami SS, Waterhouse EG, Mattson MP, LaFerla FM, Gozes I, Aisen PS. Intranasal NAP administration reduces accumulation of amyloid peptide and tau hyperphosphorylation in a transgenic mouse model of Alzheimer's disease at early pathological stage. *J Mol Neurosci* 2007; **31**: 165-170 [PMID: 17478890]

197 **Gozes I**, Giladi E, Pinhasov A, Bardea A, Brenneman DE. Activity-dependent neurotrophic factor: intranasal administration of femtomolar-acting peptides improve performance in a water maze. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther* 2000; **293**: 1091-1098 [PMID: 10869414]

198 **Rat D**, Schmitt U, Tippmann F, Dewachter I, Theunis C, Wieczerzak E, Postina R, van Leuven F, Fahrenholz F, Kojro E. Neuropeptide pituitary adenylate cyclase-activating polypeptide (PACAP) slows down Alzheimer's disease-like pathology in amyloid precursor protein-transgenic mice. *FASEB J* 2011; **25**: 3208-3218 [PMID: 21593432 DOI: 10.1096/fj.10-180133]

199 **Vellas B**, Carrie I, Gillette-Guyonnet S,Touchon J, Dantoine T, Dartigues JF, Cuffi MN, Bordes S, Gasnier Y, Robert P, Bories L, Rouaud O, Desclaux F, Sudres K, Bonnefoy M, Pesce A, Dufouil C, Lehericy S, Chupin M, Mangin JF, Payoux P, Adel D, Legrand P, Catheline D, Kanony C, Zaim M, Molinier L, Costa N, Delrieu J, Voisin T, Faisant C, Lala F, Nourhashemi F, Rolland Y, Abellan Van Kan G, Dupuy C, Cantet C, Cestac P, Belleville S, Willis S, Cesari M, Weiner MW, Soto ME, Ousset PJ, Andrieu S. MAPT Study: A Multidomain Approach for Preventing Alzheimer's Disease: Design and Baseline Data. *JPAD* 2014; **1**: 3-44

200 **Anand R**, Gill KD, Mahdi AA. Therapeutics of Alzheimer's disease: Past, present and future. *Neuropharmacology* 2014; **76** Pt A: 27-50 [PMID: 23891641 DOI: 10.1016/j.neuropharm.2013.07.004]

201 **Imtiaz B**, Tolppanen AM, Kivipelto M, Soininen H. Future directions in Alzheimer's disease from risk factors to prevention. *Biochem Pharmacol* 2014; **88**: 661-670 [PMID: 24418410 DOI: 10.1016/j.bcp.2014.01.003]

202 **Zilka N**, Zilkova M, Kazmerova Z, Sarissky M, Cigankova V, Novak M. Mesenchymal stem cells rescue the Alzheimer's disease cell model from cell death induced by misfolded truncated tau. *Neuroscience* 2011; **193**: 330-337 [PMID: 21763758 DOI: 10.1016/j.neuroscience.2011.06.088]

203 **Kim KS**, Kim HS, Park JM, Kim HW, Park MK, Lee HS, Lim DS, Lee TH, Chopp M, Moon J. Long-term immunomodulatory effect of amniotic stem cells in an Alzheimer's disease model. *Neurobiol Aging* 2013; **34**: 2408-2420 [PMID: 23623603 DOI: 10.1016/j.neur

obiolaging.2013.03.029]

204 **Cummings JL**, Morstorf T, Zhong K. Alzheimer's disease drug-development pipeline: few candidates, frequent failures. *Alzheimers Res Ther* 2014; **6**: 37 [PMID: 25024750 DOI: 10.1186/alzrt269]

205 U.S. Food and Drug Administration. [Accessed 2014 Oct 20]. Available from: URL: http://www.fda.gov/

206 Therapeutics. [Accessed 2014 Oct 20]. Available from: URL: http://www.alzforum.org/therapeutics

Baishideng®

Published by **Baishideng Publishing Group Inc**
8226 Regency Drive, Pleasanton, CA 94588, USA
Telephone: +1-925-223-8242
Fax: +1-925-223-8243
E-mail: bpgoffice@wjgnet.com
Help Desk: http://www.wjgnet.com/esps/helpdesk.aspx
http://www.wjgnet.com

World Journal of

Pharmacology

World Journal of *Pharmacology*

A peer-reviewed, online, open-access journal of pharmacology

Editorial Board

2011-2015

Tai-Yi Jin, *Shanghai*
Yiu Wa Kwan, *Hong Kong*
Ke Lan, *Chengdu*
Pak-Heng George Leung, *Hong Kong*
Jian-Jun Li, *Beijing*
Peng Liang, *Shenyang*
Zhi-Xiu Lin, *Hong Kong*
Xiao-Dong Liu, *Nanjing*
Xin-Yong Liu, *Jinan*
Yong-Yong Shi, *Shanghai*
Jing-Fang Wang, *Shanghai*
Yong-Qing Wang, *Nanjing*
William Ka Kei Wu, *Hong Kong*
Ruian (Ray) Xu, *Xiamen*
Xiaoqiang Yao, *Hong Kong*
Wei-Hai Ying, *Shanghai*
Shu-Biao Zhang, *Dalian*
Yu Zhang, *Beijing*
Cheng-Gang Zou, *Kunming*

Czech Republic

Vladimir Krystof, *Olomouc*
Kamil Kuca, *Hradec Kralove*

Denmark

Morten Grunnet, *Copenhagen*
Yasser Ahmed Mahmmoud, *Aarhus*

Egypt

Nagwa M Nour El Din, *Alexandria*
Manar Mahfouz Salem, *Tanta*

Finland

Seppo Kahkonen, *Helsinki*
Hannu Ilmari Kankaanranta, *Seinajoki*
Helder Almeida Santos, *Helsinki*

France

Christian Bronner, *Strasbourg*
Rene Bruno, *Marseille*
Marie-Chantal Canivenc-Lavier, *Dijon*
Bertrand Cariou, *Nantes*
Emmanuelle Corruble, *Le Kremlin Bicêtre*
Boue-Grabot Eric, *Bordeaux*
Siest Gerard, *Nancy*
Laurent Karila, *Villejuif*
Frederic Lagarce, *Angers*
Tangui Nicolas Maurice, *Montpellier*
Fernando Rodrigues-Lima, *Paris*
Jean-Marc Sabatier, *Marseille*
Steeve Herve Thany, *Angers*

Germany

Axel Becker, *Magdeburg*
Thomas Efferth, *Mainz*
Walter E Haefeli, *Heidelberg*
Florian Lang, *Tubingen*
Huige Li, *Mainz*

Frank Thevenod, *Witten*
Michael Wink, *Heidelberg*

Greece

Panagiotis G Anagnostis, *Thessaloniki*
Ekaterini Chatzaki, *Alexandroupolis*
Vassilis J Demopoulos, *Thessaloniki*
Moses Elisaf, *Ioannina*
Panagiotis Ferentinos, *Athens*
Dimitrios Galaris, *Ioannina*
George Kolios, *Alexandroupolis*
Tzortzis Nomikos, *Athens*
Constantinos M Paleos, *Aghia Paraskevi*,
George Panagis, *Rethymno*
Andreas Papapetropoulos, *Patras*
Kosmas I Paraskevas, *Athens*
George P Patrinos, *Patras*
Evangelos Rizos, *Ioannina*
Despina Sanoudou, *Athens*
Kostas Syrigos, *Athens*
Ioannis S Vizirianakis, *Thessaloniki*

Hungary

Albert Császár, *Budapest*
Peter Hamar, *Budapest*
Peter Krajcsi, *Budapest*
Gabor Maksay, *Budapest*
Attila Janos Miseta, *Cserkut*
Joseph Molnar, *Szeged*

Iceland

Hekla Sigmundsdottir, *Reykjavik*

India

VN Balaji, *Bangalore*
Chiranjib Chakraborty, *Vellore*
Naibedya Chattopadhyay, *Lucknow*
SJS Flora, *Gwalior*
Srinivas Gopala, *Thiruvananthapuram*
Seetharamappa Jaldappagari, *Dharwad*
Basavaraj K Nanjwade, *Karnataka*
Kishore Madhukar Paknikar, *Pune*
Vikas Anand Saharan, *Sri Ganganagar*
Abdus Samad, *delhi*

Iran

Mohammad Abdollahi, *Tehran*
Ahmad Reza Dehpour, *Tehran*
Mehrdad Hamidi, *Zanjan*
Arash Mowla, *Bushehr*

Ireland

Marek Witold Radomski, *Dublin*

Israel

Galila Agam, *Beer-Sheva*

Robert Henry Belmaker, *Beersheva*
Shomron Ben-Horin, *Tel-Hashomer*
Arik Dahan, *Beer-Sheva*
Hagit Eldar-Finkelman, *Rehovot*
Eliezer Flescher, *Tel Aviv*
Moshe Gavish, *Haifa*
Jacob George, *Rehovot*
Israel Hanukoglu, *Ariel*
Joseph Kost, *Beer-Sheva*
Irena Manov, *Haifa*
Mordechai Muszkat, *Jerusalem*
Michal Schwartz, *Rehovot*

Italy

Giuseppe Barbaro, *Rome*
Francesca Borrelli, *Naples*
Franco Borsini, *Pomezia*
Silvio Caccia, *Milan*
Giuseppe Maurizio Campo, *Messina*
Raffaele Capasso, *Naples*
Mauro Antonio Maria Carai, *Cagliari*
Dario Cattaneo, *Milan*
Davide Cervia, *Viterbo*
Giuseppe Cirino, *Napoli*
Emilio Clementi, *Milano*
Massimo Collino, *Torino*
Vincenzo Cuomo, *Rome*
Francesca Fallarino, *Perugia*
Tullio Florio, *Genova*
Vittorio Gentile, *Napoli*
Guido Grassi, *Milan*
Mario Grassi, *Trieste*
Annalisa Guaragna, *Napoli*
Milena Gusella, *Trecenta*
Francesco Impagnatiello, *Milan*
Angelo A Izzo, *Naples*
Luca La Colla, *Parma*
Giovanni Landoni, *Milan*
Aurelio Leone, *Castelnuovo Magra*
Mauro Magnani, *Urbino*
Mario Marchi, *Genova*
Silvia Marinelli, *Rome*
Robert Nistico, *Rome*
Francesco Parmeggiani, *Ferrara*
Sabina Passamonti, *Trieste*
Emilio Perucca, *Pavia*
Carlo Riccardi, *Perugia*
Graziano Riccioni, *Manfredonia*
Sergio Rutella, *Rome*
Gianni Sava, *Trieste*
Pier Andrea Serra, *Sassari*
Luca Steardo, *Rome*
Claudiu T Supuran, *Florence*
Gianluca Tettamanti, *Varese*

Japan

Katsuya Dezaki, *Tochigi*
Jun Fang, *Kumamoto*
Takahisa Furuta, *Hamamatsu*
Mitsuko Furuya, *Yokohama*
Osamu Handa, *Kyoto*
Hideaki Hara, *Gifu*
Kenji Hashimoto, *Chiba*
Zhi-Qing Hu, *Tokyo*
Toru Kobayashi, *Niigata*
Hiroshi Kunugi, *Tokyo*
Makoto Makishima, *Tokyo*

Takayuki Masaki, *Oita*
Shin-ichiro Miura, *Fukuoka,*
Noboru-Motohashi, *Tokyo*
Yuji Naito, *Kyoto*
Toshio Nakaki, *Tokyo*
Satomi Onoue, *Shizuoka*
Honoo Satake, *Osaka*
Masaharu Seno, *Okayama*
Yasuyuki Shimada, *Yuri-Honjo*
Mitsushige Sugimoto, *Hamamatsu*
Masafumi Takahashi, *Tochigi*
Shinji Takai, *Takatsuki*
Yoh Takuwa, *Kanazawa*
Shingo Tsuji, *Osaka*
Hirokazu Tsukahara, *Okayama*
Motoko Unoki, *Fukuoka*
Shizuo Yamada, *Shizuoka*
Norio Yasui-Furukori, *Hirosaki*
Yukio Yoneda, *Kanazawa*
Kiyotsugu Yoshida, *Bunkyo-ku*

Malaysia

Johnson Stanslas, *Serdang*

Mexico

Esus Adolfo Garcia-Sainz, *Col. Nápoles*

Netherlands

Arjan Blokland, *Maastricht*
Eliyahu Dremencov, *Groningen*
Elisa Giovannetti, *Amsterdam*
Hidde J Haisma, *Groningen*
Godefridus J Peters, *Amsterdam*
Frank A Redegeld, *Utrecht*
Harald H H W Schmidt, *Maastricht*
Martina Schmidt, *Groningen*
Frederik M van der Veen, *Rotterdam*
Charles J Vecht, *The Hague*
Joris Cornelis Verster, *Utrecht*

New Zealand

Hesham Al-Sallami, *Dunedin*
Lin Yang, *Dunedin*

Poland

Thomas Michal Brzozowski, *Cracow*
Wladyslawa Anna Daniel, *Krakow*
Andrzej Pilc, *Krakow*

Portugal

Bruno Filipe C Cardoso Sarmento, *Porto*
Cristina Maria Sena, *Coimbra*

Russia

Roman Gerbertovich Efremov, *Moscow*

Saint Kitts and Nevis

Ignacio Lizarraga, *Basseterre*

Saudi Arabia

Mohamed Haidara, *Abha*

Serbia

Milan Jokanovic, *Belgrade*

Singapore

Jinsong Bian, *Singapore*
Gavin S Dawe, *Singapore*
Chang Ming Li, *Singapore*
Haishu Lin, *Singapore*
Rajkumar Ramamoorthy, *Singapore*
Gautam Sethi, *Singapore*
WS Fred Wong, *Singapore*

South Korea

Ki Churl Chang, *Jinju*
Joohun Ha, *Seoul*
Sang June Hahn, *Seoul*
Byeongmoon Jeong, *Seoul*
Myung Gull Lee, *Bucheon*
Won Suk Lee, *Yangsan*
Seung-Yeol Nah, *Seoul*
Kyoungho SUK, *Daegu*
Young-Hyun Yoo, *Pusan*
Soh Yunjo, *Jeonju*

Spain

José Luis Arias-Mediano, *Granada*
Pedro Emilio Bermejo, *Madrid*
Fermín Sánchez de Medina, *Granada*
Guillermo Elizondo, *Mexico*
Leandro Fernández-Pérez, *Las Palmas*
Cristina Fillat, *Barcelona*
J Adolfo Garcia-Sainz, *Mexico*
Angel Luis Montejo Gonzalez, *Salamanca*
Tomas Herraiz, *Madrid*
Miguel JA Lainez, *Valencia*
Jose Martinez Lanao, *Salamanca*
Angel Lanas, *Zaragoza*
Vicente Martinez, *Barcelona*
Faustino Mollinedo, *Salamanca*
Virginia Motilva, *Sevilla*
Gorka Orive, *Vitoria-Gasteiz*
Ricardo Enrique Perez-Tomas, *Barcelona*
S Rodriguez-Couto, *Donostia-San Sebastian*
Maria Eugenia Saez, *Seville*
Juan Sastre, *Valencia*
Juan L Tamargo, *Madrid*
Salvador Ventura Zamora, *Barcelona*

Sweden

Aleksander A Mathe, *Stockholm*

Sharma Hari Shanker, *Uppsala*
Marie-Louise G Wadenberg, *Kalmar*
Cang-Bao Xu, *Lund*

Switzerland

Stefan J Borgwardt, *Basel*
Felicien Karege, *Geneva*

Thailand

Rumi Ghosh, *Rayong*
Kanokwan Jarukamjorn, *Khon Kaen*

Turkey

Cengiz Abdollahi Akkaya, *Bursa*
Sule Apikoglu-Rabus, *Istanbul*
Fatih Canan, *Bolu*
Saygin S Eker, *Bursa*
Nese Tuncel, *Eskisehir*
Mehmet Yaman, *Elazig*

United Kingdom

Charalambos Antoniades, *Oxford*
Sabine Bahn, *Cambridge*
Christopher John Bushe, *New Malden*
David J Chambers, *London*
Michael J Curtis, *London*
Rossen M Donev, *Swansea*
Marco Falasca, *London*
David James Grieve, *Belfast*
Alan Jeffrey Hargreaves, *Nottingham*
Mahmoud M Iravani, *London*
Nigel Irwin, *Coleraine*
Lin-Hua Jiang, *Leeds*
Veena Kumari, *London*
Kim Lawson, *Sheffield*
Debbi MacMillan, *Glasgow*
Elek-Molnar, *Bristol*
Stuart Anthony Rushworth, *Norwich*
Sunita Suri, *Nottingham*
Jinsheng Xu, *Bristol*
Alexander Victor Zholos, *Belfast*

United States

Nihal Ahmad, *Madison*
James David Adams Jr, *Los Angeles*
Gustav Akk, *St. Louis*
Karim A Alkadhi, *Houston*
Charles Antzelevitch, *Utica*
Hugo Ruben Arias, *Glendale*
Dominick L Auci, *Escondido*
Ross J Baldessarini, *Belmont*
Oleg A Barski, *Louisville*
Bjorn Bauer, *Duluth*
Chengpeng Bi, *Kansas*
Marco Bortolato, *Los Angeles*
Josh Burk, *Williamsburg*
William K Chan, *Stockton*
James J Chen, *Jefferson*
Zhe-Sheng Chen, *New York*
Beek Yoke Chin, *Boston*
Ting-Chao Chou, *New York*

Contents

Contents

ABOUT COVER

Editorial Board Number of *World Journal of Pharmacology*, Elek-Molnar, MD, PhD, FHEA, Professor of Neuroscience, School of Physiology and Pharmacology, University of Bristol, Medical Sciences Building, University Walk, Bristol BS8 1TD, United Kingdom

AIM AND SCOPE

World Journal of Pharmacology (*World J Pharmacol*, *WJP*, online ISSN 2220-3192, DOI: 10.5497) is a peer-reviewed open access academic journal that aims to guide clinical practice and improve diagnostic and therapeutic skills of clinicians.

WJP covers topics concerning neuropsychiatric pharmacology, cerebrovascular pharmacology, geriatric pharmacology, anti-inflammatory and immunological pharmacology, antitumor pharmacology, anti-infective pharmacology, metabolic pharmacology, gastrointestinal and hepatic pharmacology, respiratory pharmacology, blood pharmacology, urinary and reproductive pharmacology, pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics, clinical pharmacology, and drug toxicology.

We encourage authors to submit their manuscripts to *WJP*. We will give priority to manuscripts that are supported by major national and international foundations and those that are of great basic and clinical significance.

INDEXING/ABSTRACTING

World Journal of Pharmacology is now indexed in Digital Object Identifier.

FLYLEAF

EDITORS FOR THIS ISSUE

REVIEW

Role of mitogen- and stress-activated kinases in inflammatory arthritis

Sylvain G Bourgoin, Weili Hui

Sylvain G Bourgoin, Weili Hui, Division of Infectious Disease and Immunity, CHU de Québec Research Center and Department of Microbiology-Infectious Disease and Immunology, Faculty of Medicine, Laval University, Québec G1V 4G2, Canada

Correspondence to: Sylvain G Bourgoin, PhD, Division of Infectious Disease and Immunity, CHU de Québec Research Center and Department of Microbiology-Infectious Disease and Immunology, Faculty of Medicine, Laval University, 2705 Boul Laurier, Québec G1V 4G2,
Canada. sylvain.bourgoin@crchudequebec.ulaval.ca
Telephone: +1-418-5254444-46136
Fax: +1-418-6542765

Abstract

Lysophosphatidic acid (LPA) is a pleiotropic lipid mediator that promotes motility, survival, and the synthesis of chemokines/cytokines in human fibroblast-like synoviocytes (FLS) from patients with rheumatoid arthritis. LPA activates several proteins within the mitogen activated protein (MAP) kinase signaling network, including extracellular signal-regulated kinases (ERK) 1/2 and p38 MAP kinase (MAPK). Upon docking to mitogen- and stress-activated kinases (MSKs), ERK1/2 and p38 MAPK phosphorylate serine and threonine residues within its C-terminal domain and cause autophosphorylation of MSKs. Activated MSKs can then directly phosphorylate cAMP response element-binding protein (CREB) at Ser133 in FLS. Phosphorylation of CREB by MSKs is essential for the production of pro-inflammatory and anti-inflammatory cytokines. However, other downstream effectors of MSK1/2 such as nuclear factor-kappa B, histone H3, and high mobility group nucleosome binding domain 1 may also regulate gene expression in immune cells involved in disease pathogenesis. MSKs are master regulators of cell function that integrate signals induced by growth factors, pro-inflammatory cytokines, and cellular stresses, as well as those induced by LPA.

Key words: Lysophosphatidic acid; Mitogen activated protein kinase; Chemokines; Cytokines; Mitogen- and stress-activated kinases; Inflammation; cAMP response element-binding protein; Arthritis

Core tip: Extracellular signal-regulated kinases 1/2 and p38 mitogen activated protein kinase cascades are activated in response to stimulation with inflammatory stimuli, including lysophosphatidic acid, and are able to activate mitogen- and stress-activated kinase (MSK) 1 and MSK2 in human synovial fibroblasts. MSKs then

phosphorylate the transcription factor cAMP response element-binding protein (CREB), leading to the production of pro-inflammatory and anti-inflammatory cytokines. In addition to CREB, many other downstream effectors of MSK1/2 such as nuclear factor-kappa B, histone H3, the E3 ubiquitin ligase, Tripartite motif containing 7 and high mobility group nucleosome binding domain 1 have been reported and suggested to play important functions in immunity and disease states, including arthritis.

INTRODUCTION

Mitogen- and stress-activated protein kinases (MSKs) were first identified as efficient cAMP response element-binding protein (CREB) kinases in 1998[1]. For the past 17 years, MSKs have been investigated thoroughly as regulators of gene expression at multiple levels[2]. The known function of MSKs is mainly phosphorylation of transcription factors, chromatin-associated proteins and ubiquitin ligase. MSKs are activated in response to mitogenic signals [*e.g.*, serum, epidermal growth factor and fibroblast growth factor, lysophosphatidic acid (LPA)], neurotransmitters, progesterone, cellular stresses (*e.g.*, UV-irradiation, oxidative stress, arsenite, metals and retinoic acid), and other signals from pro-inflammatory cytokines (*e.g.*, TNF-α), as well as PAMP[3]. Through binding to G protein-coupled receptors, cytokine/chemokine and growth factor receptors, or activation of stress sensors, all these stimuli activate various mitogen activated protein kinase (MAPK) signaling pathways (p38 MAPK and ERK). Activation of ERK1/2 and p38 MAPK directly or indirectly through the phosphorylation of MSKs regulates the function of transcription factors and nuclear proteins involved in gene transcription (Figure 1). The substrates of MSKs including, CREB, ATF-1, NF-κB p65, Histone H3, and high mobility group nucleosome binding domain 1 (HMGN1), have been extensively studied and validated in cells silenced for the expression of MSK1 and/or MSK2[2]. Another protein, the E3 ubiquitin ligase named Tripartite motif containing 7 was recently reported to be a target of MSK1 using cell silencing approaches, thereby highlighting the crosstalk between different post-translational protein modifications[4]. The roles of MSKs downstream of ERK1/2 and p38 MAPK and their important functions in immunity and disease states, including arthritis, have been highlighted in the book edited by Arthur[3].

Rheumatoid arthritis (RA) is a severe, chronic and systemic inflammatory disease. Infiltration of multiple blood-derived cells (macrophages, dendritic cells, T cells, B cells, neutrophils, platelets[5]) into inflamed joints, high levels of cytokines/chemokines, production of lipid mediators and matrix metalloproteinases (MMPs) in synovial joints, synovial cell proliferation leading to synovium thickening, and pannus formation are the hallmarks of RA[6]. All these features eventually lead to cartilage dysfunction, damage to adjacent tissues, and deformation of joints with associated chronic pain. At the present time, medical therapy for RA uses conventional disease-modifying anti-rheumatic drugs such as corticosteroids and methotrexate, anti-malarials, and TNF inhibitors alone or in combination with methotrexate. New strategies targeting other cytokines, like IL-1[7,8] and IL-6[9,10], or B cell marker CD20[11] are also approved for RA treatment. Inhibitors of specific protein kinase pathways also hold potential in the treatment of chronic autoimmune diseases. More recently the JAK1/3 inhibitor tofacitinib, which suppresses inflammation driven by immune cells through inhibition of JAK/STAT, was approved by the Food and Drug Administration for the treatment of RA[12]. Although anti-cytokine therapies provide significant benefits for RA patients, there is still a substantial subset of nonresponsive patients as well as patients who cannot tolerate the current therapy[13]. Presently, researchers focus more on the cellular pathways of inflammation to search for new therapeutic targets for the treatment of autoimmune diseases such as RA[14]. MAPKs are potential targets to treat RA because of their important role in regulating cell proliferation, apoptosis, cytokine and MMP expression[15]. The functions of MSKs as important nuclear signaling kinases phosphorylated by MAPKs and regulators of inflammatory gene transcription were investigated extensively during the past decade. More extensive reviews are found elsewhere[16,17]. In this article, we will summarize current knowledge on MSK signaling in inflammatory arthritis and describe its potential roles in amplification and perpetuation of inflammation.

MSK STRUCTURE AND ACTIVATION MODE

The kinase domains composing MSK1/2 include a C-terminal and N-terminal kinase domain, harboring several phosphorylation sites[16,17] (Figure 1). Human MSK1 can be activated by MAPK at Ser360, Thr581 and Thr700 located in the C-terminal domain[18]. Phosphorylation of the C-terminal domain induces a conformational change in MSK1, which permits autophosphorylation on Ser212, Ser376 and Ser381 by the C-terminal kinase domain and phosphorylation of MSK substrates by the N-terminal kinase domain[2,18]. Compared with ribosomal S6 kinases (RSKs), the main difference is that RSK is activated by ERK whereas MSK can be activated by both ERK and p38 MAPK through a closely related mechanism that reflects the common domain structure of MSKs and RSKs[19]. The molecular docking interaction

Table 1 Specificity and selectivity of inhibitors currently being used to inhibit mitogen- and stress-activated protein kinase 1/2

MSK inhibitors	IC50	Mechanism of action	Ref.
SB747651A	0.5 nmol/L	Selectively targets MSK1/2	[45,100,101]
		Inhibits the N-terminal kinase domain of MSKs	
		> 300-fold selectivity over RSK1 and > 3000-fold selectivity over GSK3	
Ro-31–8220	8 nmol/L	Inhibitor of PKC, MSK1, RSK, S6K1, GSK3	[85,102]
H89	120 nmol/L	Inhibitor of MSK1, S6K1 and ROCK-II, PKA	[85]

MSK: Mitogen- and stress-activated protein kinase; RSK1: 90 kDa ribosomal S6 kinase (p90rsk), also known as MAPKAP-K1(RPS6KA1); GSK3: Glycogen synthase kinase 3; PKC: Protein kinase C; S6K1: Ribosomal protein S6 kinase beta-1; ROCK-II: Rho-associated protein kinase 2; PKA: Protein kinase A.

between p38 MAPK or ERK1/2 and MSKs has been clearly highlighted previously[19,20] and will not be further discussed in this review.

MSK IN IMMUNE AND SYNOVIAL CELLS

T cells
The key evidence for the aberrant pathway of T cell activation in the initiation and perpetuation of RA is the association between disease pathogenesis and HLA-DRB1[21,22]. Th1 cells expressing IFNγ and TNF-α are present in RA synovial tissues[21,23]. Data from animal models of arthritis suggest that IL-17-producing CD4+ T cells (Th17 cells), also contribute to the inflammatory processes[24-26]. The p38α MAPK-MSK1/2 axis was reported to induce IL-17 synthesis by CD4+ T cells in experimental models of autoimmune diseases[27]. The absence of the *msk1/2* gene resulted in the failure to produce IL-17 by murine lymphocytes isolated from lymph node and blood[27]. The potential role of MSK1/2 in the regulation of gene transcription downstream of p38α MAPK signaling in T cells is illustrated by the LAT (linker for activation of T cells) signalosome that propagates signals through branching of several signaling pathways including that of MAPK[28]. In T cells, MSK is the major kinase responsible for CREB phosphorylation in response to TCR activation, and MSK1/2 knockout mice showed reduced T cell proliferation in the presence of IL-2[29]. In this study, the authors pointed out that MSK1/2 are highly expressed in the thymus and the spleen, and that spleens from MSK1/2 knockout mice contain fewer T cells. Data for tissue-specific patterns of mRNA expression available at the Scripps Research Institute BioGPS Website and Database indicate that MSK1 (gene symbol: RPS6KA5) but not MSK2 (gene symbol: RPS6KA4) is highly expressed in CD19+ B cells, CD4+ T cells, CD8+ T cells, and CD56+ NK cells compared to other tissues and cell types. Hence, it is possible that MSK1 and MSK2 have different functions (*i.e.*, substrate specificity) in those cells.

B cells
CD20+ B cells are enriched in the RA synovium and their functions mainly include autoantibody production, T cell interaction and cytokine production[30]. MSK1/2

deficiency has no significant effect on T cells or B cell development[29]. At present, we do not know what impact MSK1 and/or MSK2 deficiency has on T/B cell interaction, cytokine/chemokine production by B cells, and mature B cell proliferation. Mn2+ induced apoptosis of human lymphoma B cells through the activation of caspase-8[31]. This study using specific pharmacological inhibitors and dominant-negative mutants of p38α MAPK and MSK1 showed the p38α MAPK-MSK1 signaling pathway, but not Fas-associated death domain protein, drives B cell apoptosis. Nevertheless, the mechanism of how the p38α MAPK-MSK1 axis regulates B cell apoptosis is not clear given that caspase-8 does not associate with MSK1 and is not a substrate of MSK1[31]. Another study showed that TGFβ mediated apoptosis in human Burkitt lymphoma B cells through caspase-8 activation downstream of p38α MAPK, but the possible contribution of MSKs to this effect is not yet known[32].

Neutrophils
Neutrophils constitute 90% of the cells in RA synovial fluids[33]. The crucial roles of neutrophils in inflammation, inflammatory diseases, and systemic autoimmune diseases have been thoroughly reviewed[34-38]. The main functions of neutrophils include phagocytosis, degranulation, production of antimicrobial peptides and proteins, production of reactive oxygen species, and NETosis (release of neutrophil extracellular traps)[35,39]. Khandpur *et al*[40] showed enhanced NETosis of circulating and synovial fluid neutrophils from RA patients, compared to those from osteoarthritis patients or healthy individuals. In neutrophils, a role for p38 MAPK has also been reported in chemotaxis[41], regulation of apoptosis[42], as well as cytokine/chemokine and MMP production[43,44]. The p38 MAPK-MSK1 axis contributes to chemokine production through CREB activation in LPS-stimulated human neutrophils[44]. In this study CREB was presumably phosphorylated by MSK1, but the data require further validation since the authors used Ro-31-8220, a non-selective inhibitor of MSK1[45] (Table 1). There is another report showing that neutrophil stimulation with sphingosine-1-phosphate (S1P) induces p38 MAPK and ERK-dependent phosphorylation of MSK1 to control the secretion of IL-8[46].
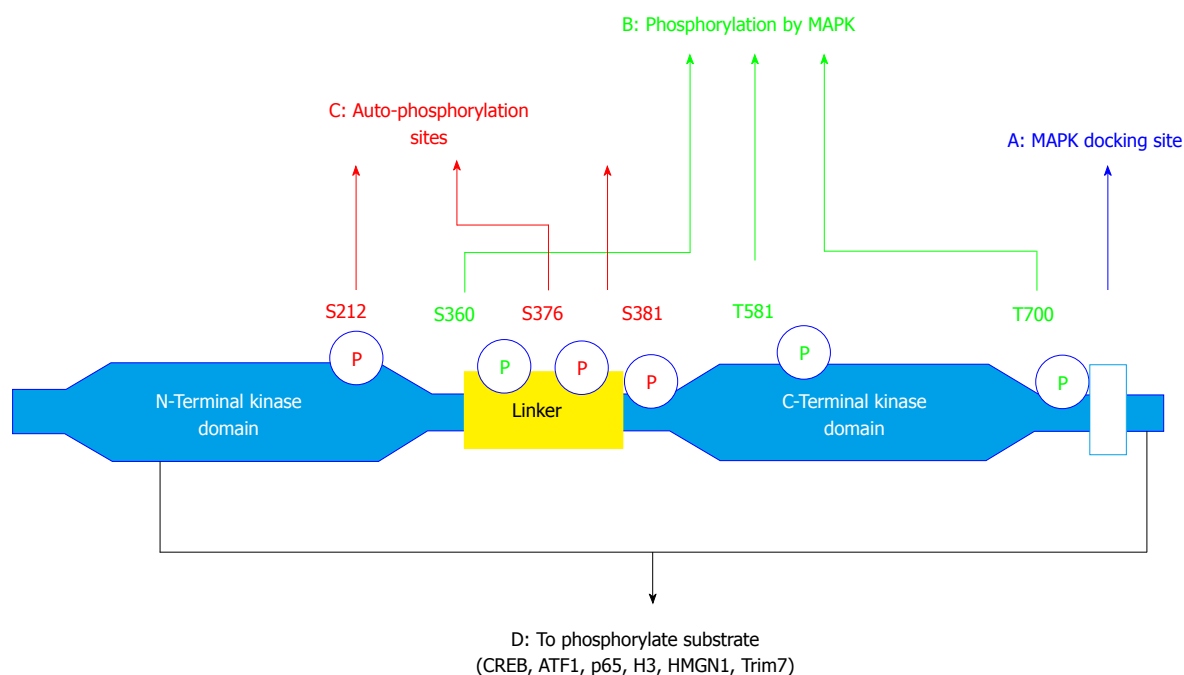
Activation of the ERK and p38 MAPK pathways has

Figure 1 Schematic representation of human mitogen- and stress-activated protein kinase 1 activation. A: MAPKs bind to the MAPK-docking site in the MSK C-terminal domain (blue); B: Human MSK1 is activated by MAPK-dependent phosphorylation at Ser360, Thr581 and Thr700 located in the C-terminal domain (green); C: Phosphorylation of the C-terminal domain induces a conformational change in MSK1, which permits autophosphorylation at Ser212, Ser376 and Ser381 by the C-terminal kinase domain (red); D: Phosphorylation of MSK substrate (validated substrates include CREB, ATF-1, p65, H3, HMGN1 and Trim7) by the N-terminal kinase domain (black). MSK1: Mitogen- and stress-activated protein kinase 1; MAPK: Mitogen-activated protein kinases; CREB: cAMP response element-binding protein; ATF-1: Activating transcription factor 1; HMGN1: High mobility group nucleosome binding domain 1.

been reported in human neutrophils stimulated with chemoattractants, pro-inflammatory cytokines, and Fcγ receptor ligands[47], and their activation is also required for the respiratory burst in TNF-α and GM-CSF primed cells[48]. As MSK1 is phosphorylated by ERK1/2 and p38 MAPK in neutrophils under certain conditions, we cannot deny a role for MSKs in the signaling pathway leading to a coordinated pattern of cytokine/chemokine gene expression induced by various stimuli.

Fibroblast-like synoviocytes

Fibroblast-like synoviocytes (FLS) play a substantial role in many pathologic events in inflammatory arthritis. As a key component of the hyperplastic rheumatoid pannus, combined with their invasive phenotype, FLS have a major role in the initiation and perpetuation of destructive joint inflammation[49]. As passive responders, FLS in RA secrete cytokines/chemokines, lipid mediators of inflammation, a subset of extracellular matrix remodeling enzymes, and express adhesion molecules. Somatic mutations and epigenetic alterations associated with signaling anomalies may also contribute to invasive behavior, resistance to apoptosis, and production of inflammatory cytokines (reviewed in[49]). We demonstrated that Ser376 on MSK1 and possibly Ser360 on MSK2 were transiently phosphorylated in RAFLS shortly after stimulation with LPA[50] and TNF-α as well (unpublished data). A specific inhibitor of MSKs (SB747651A) or silencing of MSK1 and/or MSK2 with siRNAs significantly reduced LPA-induced

chemokine secretion (IL-8 and MCP-1) and CREB phosphorylation at Ser133[50]. FLS priming with TNF-α for 8 h prior to LPA stimulation consistently increases the phosphorylation of MSK1/2 at Ser376/Ser360 (unpublished data), as well as IL-8, IL-6, and MCP-1 secretion[50,51]. These data suggest an important role for MSKs in LPA signaling which leads to inflammatory cytokine/chemokine secretion by FLS in RA. A possible explanation for transient MSK1/2 phosphorylation could be the activity of a protein phosphatase such as protein phosphatase 2Cδ, which has been reported to be phosphorylated by ERK and to associate with MSKs[52], or dephosphorylation of ERK1/2 and p38α MAPK by dual-specific phosphatase 1 (DUSP1)[53]. Further work is needed to pinpoint the phosphatases that regulate the p38α MAPK-MSK1/2 signaling axis in FLS.

To date little is known about the mechanism of how TNF-α drastically enhances the secretion of chemokines in response to bioactive lipids such as LPA and S1P. Early studies showed correlation between chemokine synthesis and increased expression of a subset of LPA and S1P receptors by cultured FLS or the lining tissue of mouse air pouch when stimulated with TNF-α[54]. Both S1P and LPA promote chemokine secretion, and p38 MAPK, ERK1/2 and Rho kinase activation in FLS[55]. Hence, increased expression of certain LPA receptors (LPA1 and LPA3) and of S1P receptors by cells exposed to an inflammatory environment may contribute, at least in part, to enhanced intracellular signals that lead to further activation of MSK and CREB.

Macrophages

By producing various pro-inflammatory cytokines/ chemokines macrophages play a critical role in cartilage and bone destruction in inflammatory arthritis[56,57]. There is an imbalance between inflammatory and anti-inflammatory macrophages in the RA synovium[58], and more information on how macrophages contribute to RA disease activity at both the local and the systemic levels can be obtained by reference to other reviews[59-61]. LPS-mediated activation of MSK1 and MSK2 was associated with COX-2 expression and IL-1β secretion in macrophages[62]. MSK activation is not restricted to TLR4 signaling, as Pam3CSK4 (TLR1/2 agonist), lipoteichoic acid (TLR2 agonist), CpG-DNA (TLR9 agonist) and dectin-1 agonist stimulation all phosphorylated MSK1 at Thr581[63]. Inhibition of early expression of COX2 in MSK1/2 knockout macrophages was confirmed by another study, but induction of COX-2 protein and prostaglandin secretion was detected at later time points due to reduced LPS-mediated production of IL-10 and increased COX-2 mRNA stability in the absence of IL-10[64]. By regulating the CREB/ATF-1 dependent transcription of DUSP1 and of IL-10, MSK1 and MSK2 are also part of a negative feedback loop that limits TLR4-driven inflammation. Hence, the absence of this feedback loop may explain why LPS-mediated expression of TNF-α, IL-6, IL-12, and late expression of COX-2 are increased in MSK1/2 deficient macrophages[63]. In line with those studies, it was reported that stimulation of MSK1/2 knockout macrophages with zymozan particles reduced the secretion of IL-10 and increased that of IL-12[65]. So far there is no information on the role of MSK1/2 in mouse models of arthritis but it would be interesting to evaluate the impact of MSK knockdown on disease onset, severity and duration as TNF-α, IL-1β, IL-6 and chemokines are produced by various cell types including macrophages and other immune cells[66]. MSKs may limit inflammation since mice that lack MSK1 and MSK2 produce less IL-10 and IL-1 receptor antagonist, which provide crucial negative-feedback loops in response to LPS[64,67]. A study investigating genetic variations in the p38 MAPK signaling network in RA patients identified SNPs in MSK1 and MSK2 that were associated with anti-TNF treatment response[68]. Further analysis suggests that the MSK2 genetic variant has a recessive effect whereas other SNPs in proteins of the p38 MAPK signaling pathway have a dominant effect on the change in DAS28[68]. However, the impact of these SNPs on MSK protein expression and activation has not been investigated.

ROLES OF MSK IN CYTOKINE/ CHEMOKINE PRODUCTION

MSKs play a versatile role through the phosphorylation of transcription factors and nuclear proteins that up-regulate the expression of pro-inflammatory and anti-inflammatory genes including chemokines/cytokines and signaling proteins[16,17]. *TNF-α*, *IL-6*, *IL-2*, and *IL-10* genes share in common a CRE element in the core promoter region that is required for CREB binding and gene transcription[69,70]. However, phosphorylation of CREB on Ser133 by MSKs has a greater effect on the induction of CREB-dependent immediate-early genes than that induced by protein kinase A (PKA), possibly due to differential recruitment of CREB co-activator proteins[71]. Activation of ERK1/2 also leads to histone phosphorylation and Sp1 transcription factor binding to the IL-10 promoter[72]. As validated substrates of MSKs, histone H3 and HMGN1 may also contribute to immediate-early gene expression through various mechanisms[2].

The expression of IL-8 (CXCL8) is controlled by three different mechanisms: derepression of the gene promoter; transcriptional activation of the gene by NF-κB and JUN-N-terminal protein kinase pathways; and stabilization of the mRNA by the p38 MAPK pathway[73]. In FLS from RA patients the production of IL-8 is upregulated by approximately 100-fold in response to TNF-α or IL-1β[5]. Inhibitors of p38 MAPK inhibit the functional responses to these cytokines including the production of IL-8[74]. This study suggests positive feedback loop mechanisms that lead to activation of the p38 MAPK pathway and long term IL-8 secretion, which recruit neutrophils to the inflammatory sites. We demonstrated that LPA-induced production of IL-8 is inhibited by inhibitors of p38 MAPK and MSK, as well as silencing of MSK1/2 and CREB in FLS[50,51]. The mechanism by which MSK regulates the transcription of CREB-dependent genes such as *IL-8* and *MCP-1* as well is not clear[71]. In RAFLS, NF-κB p65 subunit, but not C/EBP-β or AP-1, dominantly regulates *IL-8* gene expression under IL-1β stimulation[75]. Whether phosphorylated CREB needs to recruit co-activation proteins (CBP/p300)[76] or synergizes with other transcription factors such as NF-κB p65 subunit[75,77], C/EBP-β[78,79], or AP-1[80-82] to regulate IL-8 expression in FLS requires further investigation.

THE INHIBITORS OF MSK

Two MSK inhibitors have been used to study various MSK functions, including the secretion of cytokines[1,83-90]. However, these inhibitors are not selective for MSKs and inhibit many other kinases, including PKA[45]. This is a major limitation since these compounds show better selectivity for PKA which targets CREB, ATF1, RARα and nuclear factor-kappa B (NF-κB) p65 subunit shown to be phosphorylated by MSKs[2,17,91]. The selectivity of new MSK inhibitor SB-747651A was evaluated *in vitro* and shown to have superior selectivity for MSKs than that of H89 and Ro31-8220[45]. In this study, the authors showed that Ro31-8220 reduced LPS-induced TNF-α secretion that cannot be attributed to MSK inhibition. In contrast, inhibition of MSK in LPS-stimulated macrophages reduced IL-10 secretion and enhanced that

of IL-12 as previously reported in MSK1/2 knockout cells[63,64]. In oral squamous cell carcinoma, SB-747651A was found to inhibit the phosphorylation of NF-κB p65 subunit[92]. We demonstrated that SB747651A inhibits LPA-mediated chemokine synthesis through inhibition of CREB phosphorylation[50]. SB-747651A inhibits CREB phosphorylation without affecting MSK1 phosphorylation at Thr581 (a critical site for MSK1 activation)[64]. Autophosphorylation of Ser212 and Ser376 in MSK1 is poorly affected by SB-747651 thereby suggesting that the inhibitor targets the N-terminal kinase domain of MSKs[45]. Although SB747651A showed improved selectivity, off target effects cannot be totally excluded since other kinases like RSK1, p70RSK and Rho-associated protein kinase 2 (ROCK-Ⅱ) are inhibited by the compound[45].

Inhibition of p38α MAPK showed efficacy in animal models of arthritis but failed in clinical trials[93-96]. Inhibition of p38 MAPK initiates an imbalance between anti-inflammatory and pro-inflammatory processes which excludes this kinase from drug targeting in autoimmune diseases[97]. This is illustrated by the fact that MSKs, the downstream targets of p38 MAPK, differentially regulate the synthesis of two important anti-inflammatory cytokines, IL-10 and IL-12, as a negative feedback loop in inflammation[63]. From the experience of cancer therapy, monotherapy using signaling inhibitors such as MEK-ERK is not permanently effective, as cells may become resistant to the inhibitor by different mechanism[98]. As the aggressive characteristics of RA synoviocytes were viewed as reminiscent of neoplastic tissue[99], and MAPK signaling plays an important role in cell proliferation and cytokine production, it will be necessary to study well the signaling pathways downstream of MSKs to better understand their dual roles in inflammation.

CONCLUSION

Several inflammatory cytokines and lipid mediators of inflammation activate MSK1/2 signaling downstream of p38 MAPK and ERK1/2. Inhibitors of MSK1/2 have effects on different cell types involved in the pathogenesis of RA, which could provide an important advantage in treatment. Inhibitors of MSK inhibit the production of cytokines/chemokines as well as the responses induced by these pro-inflammatory mediators thereby limiting the activation and/or the recruitment of immune cells to sites of inflammation. However, as reported for other inhibitors of the MAPK pathway, targeting MSK in arthritis may have undesirable effects due to inhibition of other kinase pathways or regulation of complex positive and negative feedback loops that could induce imbalance in the production of pro-inflammatory and anti-inflammatory mediators. Screening for more selective inhibitors or developing isoform-specific inhibitors of MSK1 and MSK2 is required to establish applicability as a drug in the future. Furthermore, more research will be necessary to identify targets downstream of MSK1/2. Understanding how CREB interplays with other transcription factors such as NF-κB or other MSK-dependent pathways regulating protein stability through ubiquitinylation may enable the development of drugs that have less adverse effects for treatment of chronic inflammatory diseases.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

REFERENCES

1   **Deak M**, Clifton AD, Lucocq LM, Alessi DR. Mitogen- and stress-activated protein kinase-1 (MSK1) is directly activated by MAPK and SAPK2/p38, and may mediate activation of CREB. *EMBO J* 1998; **17**: 4426-4441 [PMID: 9687510 DOI: 10.1093/emboj/17.15. 4426]

2   **Vermeulen L**, Vanden Berghe W, Beck IM, De Bosscher K, Haegeman G. The versatile role of MSKs in transcriptional regulation. *Trends Biochem Sci* 2009; **34**: 311-318 [PMID: 19464896 DOI: 10.1016/j.tibs.2009.02.007]

3   **Arthur JS**. MSKs. Austin: Landes Biosciences, 2014

4   **Chakraborty A**, Diefenbacher ME, Mylona A, Kassel O, Behrens A. The E3 ubiquitin ligase Trim7 mediates c-Jun/AP-1 activation by Ras signalling. *Nat Commun* 2015; **6**: 6782 [PMID: 25851810 DOI: 10.1038/ncomms7782]

5   **Boilard E**, Nigrovic PA, Larabee K, Watts GF, Coblyn JS, Weinblatt ME, Massarotti EM, Remold-O'Donnell E, Farndale RW, Ware J, Lee DM. Platelets amplify inflammation in arthritis via collagen-dependent microparticle production. *Science* 2010; **327**: 580-583 [PMID: 20110505 DOI: 10.1126/science.1181928]

6   **Feldmann M**, Brennan FM, Maini RN. Rheumatoid arthritis. *Cell* 1996; **85**: 307-310 [PMID: 8616886]

7   **Geyer M**, Müller-Ladner U. Actual status of antiinterleukin-1 therapies in rheumatic diseases. *Curr Opin Rheumatol* 2010; **22**: 246-251 [PMID: 20150813 DOI: 10.1097/BOR.0b013e3283373fa0]

8   **Mertens M**, Singh JA. Anakinra for rheumatoid arthritis: a systematic review. *J Rheumatol* 2009; **36**: 1118-1125 [PMID: 19447938 DOI: 10.3899/jrheum.090074]

9   **Navarro-Millán I**, Singh JA, Curtis JR. Systematic review of tocilizumab for rheumatoid arthritis: a new biologic agent targeting the interleukin-6 receptor. *Clin Ther* 2012; **34**: 788-802.e3 [PMID: 22444783 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinthera.2012.02.014]

10 **Dougados M**, Kissel K, Sheeran T, Tak PP, Conaghan PG, Mola EM, Schett G, Amital H, Navarro-Sarabia F, Hou A, Bernasconi C, Huizinga TW. Adding tocilizumab or switching to tocilizumab monotherapy in methotrexate inadequate responders: 24-week symptomatic and structural results of a 2-year randomised controlled strategy trial in rheumatoid arthritis (ACT-RAY). *Ann Rheum Dis* 2013; **72**: 43-50 [PMID: 22562983 DOI: 10.1136/annrheumdis-2011 -201282]

11 **Jacobi AM**, Dörner T. Current aspects of anti-CD20 therapy in rheumatoid arthritis. *Curr Opin Pharmacol* 2010; **10**: 316-321 [PMID: 20189875 DOI: 10.1016/j.coph.2010.02.002]

12 **Zerbini CA**, Lomonte AB. Tofacitinib for the treatment of rheumatoid arthritis. *Expert Rev Clin Immunol* 2012; **8**: 319-331 [PMID: 22607178 DOI: 10.1586/eci.12.19]

13 **Ohori M**. ERK inhibitors as a potential new therapy for rheumatoid arthritis. *Drug News Perspect* 2008; **21**: 245-250 [PMID: 18596988 DOI: 10.1358/DNP.2008.21.5.1219006]

14 **MacFarlane LA**, Todd DJ. Kinase inhibitors: the next generation of therapies in the treatment of rheumatoid arthritis. *Int J Rheum Dis* 2014; **17**: 359-368 [PMID: 24460872 DOI: 10.1111/1756-185X.1 2293]

15 **Hammaker D**, Sweeney S, Firestein GS. Signal transduction

networks in rheumatoid arthritis. *Ann Rheum Dis* 2003; **62** Suppl 2: ii86-ii89 [PMID: 14532158]

16   **Moens** U, Kostenko S, Sveinbjørnsson B. The Role of Mitogen-Activated Protein Kinase-Activated Protein Kinases (MAPKAPKs) in Inflammation. *Genes* (Basel) 2013; **4**: 101-133 [PMID: 24705157 DOI: 10.3390/genes4020101]

17   **Arthur JS**. MSK activation and physiological roles. *Front Biosci* 2008; **13**: 5866-5879 [PMID: 18508628]

18   **McCoy CE**, macdonald A, Morrice NA, Campbell DG, Deak M, Toth R, McIlrath J, Arthur JS. Identification of novel phosphorylation sites in MSK1 by precursor ion scanning MS. *Biochem J* 2007; **402**: 491-501 [PMID: 17117922 DOI: 10.1042/BJ20061183]

19   **Hauge C**, Frödin M. RSK and MSK in MAP kinase signalling. *J Cell Sci* 2006; **119**: 3021-3023 [PMID: 16868029 DOI: 10.1242/jcs.02950]

20   **Roux PP**, Blenis J. ERK and p38 MAPK-activated protein kinases: a family of protein kinases with diverse biological functions. *Microbiol Mol Biol Rev* 2004; **68**: 320-344 [PMID: 15187187 DOI: 10.1128/MMBR.68.2.320-344.2004]

21   **Cope AP**, Schulze-Koops H, Aringer M. The central role of T cells in rheumatoid arthritis. *Clin Exp Rheumatol* 2007; **25**: S4-11 [PMID: 17977483]

22   **Cope AP**. T cells in rheumatoid arthritis. *Arthritis Res Ther* 2008; **10** Suppl 1: S1 [PMID: 19007421 DOI: 10.1186/ar2412]

23   **Rönnelid J**, Berg L, Rogberg S, Nilsson A, Albertsson K, Klareskog L. Production of T-cell cytokines at the single-cell level in patients with inflammatory arthritides: enhanced activity in synovial fluid compared to blood. *Br J Rheumatol* 1998; **37**: 7-14 [PMID: 9487244]

24   **Lubberts E**, Koenders MI, van den Berg WB. The role of T-cell interleukin-17 in conducting destructive arthritis: lessons from animal models. *Arthritis Res Ther* 2005; **7**: 29-37 [PMID: 15642151 DOI: 10.1186/ar1478]

25   **Nakae S**, Nambu A, Sudo K, Iwakura Y. Suppression of immune induction of collagen-induced arthritis in IL-17-deficient mice. *J Immunol* 2003; **171**: 6173-6177 [PMID: 14634133]

26   **Nakae S**, Saijo S, Horai R, Sudo K, Mori S, Iwakura Y. IL-17 production from activated T cells is required for the spontaneous development of destructive arthritis in mice deficient in IL-1 receptor antagonist. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 2003; **100**: 5986-5990 [PMID: 12721360 DOI: 10.1073/pnas.1035999100]

27   **Commodaro AG**, Bombardieri CR, Peron JP, Saito KC, Guedes PM, Hamassaki DE, Belfort RN, Rizzo LV, Belfort R, de Camargo MM. p38{alpha} MAP kinase controls IL-17 synthesis in vogt-koyanagi-harada syndrome and experimental autoimmune uveitis. *Invest Ophthalmol Vis Sci* 2010; **51**: 3567-3574 [PMID: 20164464 DOI: 10.1167/iovs.09-4393]

28   **Brownlie RJ**, Zamoyska R. T cell receptor signalling networks: branched, diversified and bounded. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2013; **13**: 257-269 [PMID: 23524462 DOI: 10.1038/nri3403]

29   **Kaiser M**, Wiggin GR, Lightfoot K, Arthur JS, Macdonald A. MSK regulate TCR-induced CREB phosphorylation but not immediate early gene transcription. *Eur J Immunol* 2007; **37**: 2583-2595 [PMID: 17668895 DOI: 10.1002/eji.200636606]

30   **Bugatti S**, Codullo V, Caporali R, Montecucco C. B cells in rheumatoid arthritis. *Autoimmun Rev* 2007; **6**: 482-487 [PMID: 17643937 DOI: 10.1016/j.autrev.2007.02.008]

31   **El Mchichi B**, Hadji A, Vazquez A, Leca G. p38 MAPK and MSK1 mediate caspase-8 activation in manganese-induced mitochondria-dependent cell death. *Cell Death Differ* 2007; **14**: 1826-1836 [PMID: 17585337 DOI: 10.1038/sj.cdd.4402187]

32   **Schrantz N**, Bourgeade MF, Mouhamad S, Leca G, Sharma S, Vazquez A. p38-mediated regulation of an Fas-associated death domain protein-independent pathway leading to caspase-8 activation during TGFbeta-induced apoptosis in human Burkitt lymphoma B cells BL41. *Mol Biol Cell* 2001; **12**: 3139-3151 [PMID: 11598198]

33   **Weissmann G**, Korchak H. Rheumatoid arthritis. The role of neutrophil activation. *Inflammation* 1984; **8** Suppl: S3-14 [PMID: 6090313]

34   **Wright HL**, Moots RJ, Bucknall RC, Edwards SW. Neutrophil

function in inflammation and inflammatory diseases. *Rheumatology* (Oxford) 2010; **49**: 1618-1631 [PMID: 20338884 DOI: 10.1093/rheumatology/keq045]

35   **Wright HL**, Moots RJ, Edwards SW. The multifactorial role of neutrophils in rheumatoid arthritis. *Nat Rev Rheumatol* 2014; **10**: 593-601 [PMID: 24914698 DOI: 10.1038/nrrheum.2014.80]

36   **Kaplan MJ**. Role of neutrophils in systemic autoimmune diseases. *Arthritis Res Ther* 2013; **15**: 219 [PMID: 24286137 DOI: 10.1186/ar4325]

37   **Cascão R**, Rosário HS, Souto-Carneiro MM, Fonseca JE. Neutrophils in rheumatoid arthritis: More than simple final effectors. *Autoimmun Rev* 2010; **9**: 531-535 [PMID: 20060506 DOI: 10.1016/j.autrev.2009.12.013]

38   **Pillinger MH**, Abramson SB. The neutrophil in rheumatoid arthritis. *Rheum Dis Clin North Am* 1995; **21**: 691-714 [PMID: 8619095]

39   **Amulic B**, Cazalet C, Hayes GL, Metzler KD, Zychlinsky A. Neutrophil function: from mechanisms to disease. *Annu Rev Immunol* 2012; **30**: 459-489 [PMID: 22224774 DOI: 10.1146/annurev-immunol-020711-074942]

40   **Khandpur R**, Carmona-Rivera C, Vivekanandan-Giri A, Gizinski A, Yalavarthi S, Knight JS, Friday S, Li S, Patel RM, Subramanian V, Thompson P, Chen P, Fox DA, Pennathur S, Kaplan MJ. NETs are a source of citrullinated autoantigens and stimulate inflammatory responses in rheumatoid arthritis. *Sci Transl Med* 2013; **5**: 178ra40 [PMID: 23536012 DOI: 10.1126/scitranslmed.3005580]

41   **Kim D**, Haynes CL. The role of p38 MAPK in neutrophil functions: single cell chemotaxis and surface marker expression. *Analyst* 2013; **138**: 6826-6833 [PMID: 24061073 DOI: 10.1039/c3an01076g]

42   **Alvarado-Kristensson M**, Melander F, Leandersson K, Rönnstrand L, Wernstedt C, Andersson T. p38-MAPK signals survival by phosphorylation of caspase-8 and caspase-3 in human neutrophils. *J Exp Med* 2004; **199**: 449-458 [PMID: 14970175 DOI: 10.1084/jem.20031771]

43   **Dumitru CA**, Fechner MK, Hoffmann TK, Lang S, Brandau S. A novel p38-MAPK signaling axis modulates neutrophil biology in head and neck cancer. *J Leukoc Biol* 2012; **91**: 591-598 [PMID: 22262799 DOI: 10.1189/jlb.0411193]

44   **Mayer TZ**, Simard FA, Cloutier A, Vardhan H, Dubois CM, McDonald PP. The p38-MSK1 signaling cascade influences cytokine production through CREB and C/EBP factors in human neutrophils. *J Immunol* 2013; **191**: 4299-4307 [PMID: 24038085 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1301117]

45   **Naqvi S**, Macdonald A, McCoy CE, Darragh J, Reith AD, Arthur JS. Characterization of the cellular action of the MSK inhibitor SB-747651A. *Biochem J* 2012; **441**: 347-357 [PMID: 21970321 DOI: 10.1042/BJ20110970]

46   **Rahman MM**, Alkhouri H, Tang F, Che W, Ge Q, Ammit AJ. Sphingosine 1-phosphate induces neutrophil chemoattractant IL-8: repression by steroids. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e92466 [PMID: 24647471 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0092466]

47   **Coxon PY**, Rane MJ, Uriarte S, Powell DW, Singh S, Butt W, Chen Q, McLeish KR. MAPK-activated protein kinase-2 participates in p38 MAPK-dependent and ERK-dependent functions in human neutrophils. *Cell Signal* 2003; **15**: 993-1001 [PMID: 14499342]

48   **McLeish KR**, Knall C, Ward RA, Gerwins P, Coxon PY, Klein JB, Johnson GL. Activation of mitogen-activated protein kinase cascades during priming of human neutrophils by TNF-alpha and GM-CSF. *J Leukoc Biol* 1998; **64**: 537-545 [PMID: 9766635]

49   **Bottini N**, Firestein GS. Duality of fibroblast-like synoviocytes in RA: passive responders and imprinted aggressors. *Nat Rev Rheumatol* 2013; **9**: 24-33 [PMID: 23147896 DOI: 10.1038/nrrheum.2012.190]

50   **Zhao C**, Hui W, Fernandes MJ, Poubelle PE, Bourgoin SG. Lysophosphatidic acid-induced IL-8 secretion involves MSK1 and MSK2 mediated activation of CREB1 in human fibroblast-like synoviocytes. *Biochem Pharmacol* 2014; **90**: 62-72 [PMID: 24792438 DOI: 10.1016/j.bcp.2014.04.012]

51   **Zhao C**, Fernandes MJ, Prestwich GD, Turgeon M, Di Battista J, Clair T, Poubelle PE, Bourgoin SG. Regulation of lysophosphatidic

acid receptor expression and function in human synoviocytes: implications for rheumatoid arthritis? *Mol Pharmacol* 2008; **73**: 587-600 [PMID: 18006645 DOI: 10.1124/mol.107.038216]

52   **Doehn U**, Gammeltoft S, Shen SH, Jensen CJ. p90 ribosomal S6 kinase 2 is associated with and dephosphorylated by protein phosphatase 2Cdelta. *Biochem J* 2004; **382**: 425-431 [PMID: 15206906 DOI: 10.1042/BJ20040948]

53   **Toh ML**, Yang Y, Leech M, Santos L, Morand EF. Expression of mitogen-activated protein kinase phosphatase 1, a negative regulator of the mitogen-activated protein kinases, in rheumatoid arthritis: up-regulation by interleukin-1beta and glucocorticoids. *Arthritis Rheum* 2004; **50**: 3118-3128 [PMID: 15476200 DOI: 10.1002/art.20580]

54   **Zhao C**, Sardella A, Chun J, Poubelle PE, Fernandes MJ, Bourgoin SG. TNF-alpha promotes LPA1- and LPA3-mediated recruitment of leukocytes in vivo through CXCR2 ligand chemokines. *J Lipid Res* 2011; **52**: 1307-1318 [PMID: 21521824 DOI: 10.1194/jlr.M008045]

55   **Bourgoin SG**, Zhao C. Autotaxin and lysophospholipids in rheumatoid arthritis. *Curr Opin Investig Drugs* 2010; **11**: 515-526 [PMID: 20419597]

56   **Ma Y**, Pope RM. The role of macrophages in rheumatoid arthritis. *Curr Pharm Des* 2005; **11**: 569-580 [PMID: 15720276]

57   **Kinne RW**, Bräuer R, Stuhlmüller B, Palombo-Kinne E, Burmester GR. Macrophages in rheumatoid arthritis. *Arthritis Res* 2000; **2**: 189-202 [PMID: 11094428 DOI: 10.1186/ar86]

58   **Li J**, Hsu HC, Mountz JD. Managing macrophages in rheumatoid arthritis by reform or removal. *Curr Rheumatol Rep* 2012; **14**: 445-454 [PMID: 22855296 DOI: 10.1007/s11926-012-0272-4]

59   **Kinne RW**, Stuhlmüller B, Burmester GR. Cells of the synovium in rheumatoid arthritis. Macrophages. *Arthritis Res Ther* 2007; **9**: 224 [PMID: 18177511 DOI: 10.1186/ar2333]

60   **Torsteinsdóttir I**, Arvidson NG, Hällgren R, Håkansson L. Monocyte activation in rheumatoid arthritis (RA): increased integrin, Fc gamma and complement receptor expression and the effect of glucocorticoids. *Clin Exp Immunol* 1999; **115**: 554-560 [PMID: 10193433]

61   **Davignon JL**, Hayder M, Baron M, Boyer JF, Constantin A, Apparailly F, Poupot R, Cantagrel A. Targeting monocytes/macrophages in the treatment of rheumatoid arthritis. *Rheumatology* (Oxford) 2013; **52**: 590-598 [PMID: 23204551 DOI: 10.1093/rheumatology/kes304]

62   **Caivano M**, Cohen P. Role of mitogen-activated protein kinase cascades in mediating lipopolysaccharide-stimulated induction of cyclooxygenase-2 and IL-1 beta in RAW264 macrophages. *J Immunol* 2000; **164**: 3018-3025 [PMID: 10706690]

63   **Ananieva O**, Darragh J, Johansen C, Carr JM, McIlrath J, Park JM, Wingate A, Monk CE, Toth R, Santos SG, Iversen L, Arthur JS. The kinases MSK1 and MSK2 act as negative regulators of Toll-like receptor signaling. *Nat Immunol* 2008; **9**: 1028-1036 [PMID: 18690222 DOI: 10.1038/ni.1644]

64   **MacKenzie KF**, Van Den Bosch MW, Naqvi S, Elcombe SE, McGuire VA, Reith AD, Blackshear PJ, Dean JL, Arthur JS. MSK1 and MSK2 inhibit lipopolysaccharide-induced prostaglandin production via an interleukin-10 feedback loop. *Mol Cell Biol* 2013; **33**: 1456-1467 [PMID: 23382072 DOI: 10.1128/MCB.01690-12]

65   **Elcombe SE**, Naqvi S, Van Den Bosch MW, MacKenzie KF, Cianfanelli F, Brown GD, Arthur JS. Dectin-1 regulates IL-10 production via a MSK1/2 and CREB dependent pathway and promotes the induction of regulatory macrophage markers. *PLoS One* 2013; **8**: e60086 [PMID: 23533666 DOI: 10.1371/journal.pone.0060086]

66   **Feldmann M**, Brennan FM, Maini RN. Role of cytokines in rheumatoid arthritis. *Annu Rev Immunol* 1996; **14**: 397-440 [PMID: 8717520 DOI: 10.1146/annurev.immunol.14.1.397]

67   **Arthur JS**, Ley SC. Mitogen-activated protein kinases in innate immunity. *Nat Rev Immunol* 2013; **13**: 679-692 [PMID: 23954936 DOI: 10.1038/nri3495]

68   **Coulthard LR**, Taylor JC, Eyre S, Robinson JI, Wilson AG, Isaacs JD, Hyrich K, Emery P, Barton A, Barrett JH, Morgan AW, McDermott MF. Genetic variants within the MAP kinase signalling network and anti-TNF treatment response in rheumatoid arthritis

patients. *Ann Rheum Dis* 2011; **70**: 98-103 [PMID: 20805296 DOI: 10.1136/ard.2010.133249]

69   **Mayr B**, Montminy M. Transcriptional regulation by the phosphorylation-dependent factor CREB. *Nat Rev Mol Cell Biol* 2001; **2**: 599-609 [PMID: 11483993 DOI: 10.1038/35085068]

70   **Wen AY**, Sakamoto KM, Miller LS. The role of the transcription factor CREB in immune function. *J Immunol* 2010; **185**: 6413-6419 [PMID: 21084670 DOI: 10.4049/jimmunol.1001829]

71   **Naqvi S**, Martin KJ, Arthur JS. CREB phosphorylation at Ser133 regulates transcription via distinct mechanisms downstream of cAMP and MAPK signalling. *Biochem J* 2014; **458**: 469-479 [PMID: 24438093 DOI: 10.1042/BJ20131115]

72   **Zhang X**, Edwards JP, Mosser DM. Dynamic and transient remodeling of the macrophage IL-10 promoter during transcription. *J Immunol* 2006; **177**: 1282-1288 [PMID: 16818788]

73   **Hoffmann E**, Dittrich-Breiholz O, Holtmann H, Kracht M. Multiple control of interleukin-8 gene expression. *J Leukoc Biol* 2002; **72**: 847-855 [PMID: 12429706]

74   **Westra J**, Limburg PC, de Boer P, van Rijswijk MH. Effects of RWJ 67657, a p38 mitogen activated protein kinase (MAPK) inhibitor, on the production of inflammatory mediators by rheumatoid synovial fibroblasts. *Ann Rheum Dis* 2004; **63**: 1453-1459 [PMID: 15479895 DOI: 10.1136/ard.2003.013011]

75   **Georganas C**, Liu H, Perlman H, Hoffmann A, Thimmapaya B, Pope RM. Regulation of IL-6 and IL-8 expression in rheumatoid arthritis synovial fibroblasts: the dominant role for NF-kappa B but not C/EBP beta or c-Jun. *J Immunol* 2000; **165**: 7199-7206 [PMID: 11120852]

76   **Miyazawa K**, Mori A, Yamamoto K, Okudaira H. Transcriptional roles of CCAAT/enhancer binding protein-beta, nuclear factor-kappaB, and C-promoter binding factor 1 in interleukin (IL)-1beta-induced IL-6 synthesis by human rheumatoid fibroblast-like synoviocytes. *J Biol Chem* 1998; **273**: 7620-7627 [PMID: 9516466]

77   **Gerritsen ME**, Williams AJ, Neish AS, Moore S, Shi Y, Collins T. CREB-binding protein/p300 are transcriptional coactivators of p65. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA* 1997; **94**: 2927-2932 [PMID: 9096323]

78   **Gao H**, Parkin S, Johnson PF, Schwartz RC. C/EBP gamma has a stimulatory role on the IL-6 and IL-8 promoters. *J Biol Chem* 2002; **277**: 38827-38837 [PMID: 12177065 DOI: 10.1074/jbc.M206224200]

79   **Zwergal A**, Quirling M, Saugel B, Huth KC, Sydlik C, Poli V, Neumeier D, Ziegler-Heitbrock HW, Brand K. C/EBP beta blocks p65 phosphorylation and thereby NF-kappa B-mediated transcription in TNF-tolerant cells. *J Immunol* 2006; **177**: 665-672 [PMID: 16785565]

80   **Asahara H**, Fujisawa K, Kobata T, Hasunuma T, Maeda T, Asanuma M, Ogawa N, Inoue H, Sumida T, Nishioka K. Direct evidence of high DNA binding activity of transcription factor AP-1 in rheumatoid arthritis synovium. *Arthritis Rheum* 1997; **40**: 912-918 [PMID: 9153554]

81   **Khanjani S**, Terzidou V, Johnson MR, Bennett PR. NFκB and AP-1 drive human myometrial IL8 expression. *Mediators Inflamm* 2012; **2012**: 504952 [PMID: 22685373 DOI: 10.1155/2012/504952]

82   **Park SH**, Kim JH, Lee DH, Kang JW, Song HH, Oh SR, Yoon DY. Luteolin 8-C-β-fucopyranoside inhibits invasion and suppresses TPA-induced MMP-9 and IL-8 via ERK/AP-1 and ERK/NF-κB signaling in MCF-7 breast cancer cells. *Biochimie* 2013; **95**: 2082-2090 [PMID: 23933110 DOI: 10.1016/j.biochi.2013.07.021]

83   **Markou T**, Hadzopoulou-Cladaras M, Lazou A. Phenylephrine induces activation of CREB in adult rat cardiac myocytes through MSK1 and PKA signaling pathways. *J Mol Cell Cardiol* 2004; **37**: 1001-1011 [PMID: 15522277 DOI: 10.1016/j.yjmcc.2004.08.002]

84   **Vermeulen L**, De Wilde G, Van Damme P, Vanden Berghe W, Haegeman G. Transcriptional activation of the NF-kappaB p65 subunit by mitogen- and stress-activated protein kinase-1 (MSK1). *EMBO J* 2003; **22**: 1313-1324 [PMID: 12628924 DOI: 10.1093/emboj/cdg139]

85   **Davies SP**, Reddy H, Caivano M, Cohen P. Specificity and mechanism of action of some commonly used protein kinase inhibitors. *Biochem J* 2000; **351**: 95-105 [PMID: 10998351]

86 **Chwang WB**, Arthur JS, Schumacher A, Sweatt JD. The nuclear kinase mitogen- and stress-activated protein kinase 1 regulates hippocampal chromatin remodeling in memory formation. *J Neurosci* 2007; **27**: 12732-12742 [PMID: 18003853 DOI: 10.1523/JNEUROSCI.2522-07.2007]

87 **Drobic B**, Pérez-Cadahía B, Yu J, Kung SK, Davie JR. Promoter chromatin remodeling of immediate-early genes is mediated through H3 phosphorylation at either serine 28 or 10 by the MSK1 multi-protein complex. *Nucleic Acids Res* 2010; **38**: 3196-3208 [PMID: 20129940 DOI: 10.1093/nar/gkq030]

88 **Beck IM**, Vanden Berghe W, Vermeulen L, Bougarne N, Vander Cruyssen B, Haegeman G, De Bosscher K. Altered subcellular distribution of MSK1 induced by glucocorticoids contributes to NF-kappaB inhibition. *EMBO J* 2008; **27**: 1682-1693 [PMID: 18511904 DOI: 10.1038/emboj.2008.95]

89 **Cho IJ**, Woo NR, Shin IC, Kim SG. H89, an inhibitor of PKA and MSK, inhibits cyclic-AMP response element binding protein-mediated MAPK phosphatase-1 induction by lipopolysaccharide. *Inflamm Res* 2009; **58**: 863-872 [PMID: 19547917 DOI: 10.1007/s00011-009-0057-z]

90 **Kawaguchi M**, Fujita J, Kokubu F, Huang SK, Homma T, Matsukura S, Adachi M, Hizawa N. IL-17F-induced IL-11 release in bronchial epithelial cells via MSK1-CREB pathway. *Am J Physiol Lung Cell Mol Physiol* 2009; **296**: L804-L810 [PMID: 19251839 DOI: 10.1152/ajplung.90607.2008]

91 **Bruck N**, Vitoux D, Ferry C, Duong V, Bauer A, de Thé H, Rochette-Egly C. A coordinated phosphorylation cascade initiated by p38MAPK/MSK1 directs RARalpha to target promoters. *EMBO J* 2009; **28**: 34-47 [PMID: 19078967 DOI: 10.1038/emboj.2008.256]

92 **Johnson J**, Shi Z, Liu Y, Stack MS. Inhibitors of NF-kappaB reverse cellular invasion and target gene upregulation in an experimental model of aggressive oral squamous cell carcinoma. *Oral Oncol* 2014; **50**: 468-477 [PMID: 24582884 DOI: 10.1016/j.oraloncology.2014.02.004]

93 **Revesz L**, Blum E, Di Padova FE, Buhl T, Feifel R, Gram H, Hiestand P, Manning U, Rucklin G. Novel p38 inhibitors with potent oral efficacy in several models of rheumatoid arthritis. *Bioorg Med Chem Lett* 2004; **14**: 3595-3599 [PMID: 15177482 DOI: 10.1016/j.bmcl.2004.03.106]

94 **Genovese MC**, Cohen SB, Wofsy D, Weinblatt ME, Firestein GS, Brahn E, Strand V, Baker DG, Tong SE. A 24-week, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, parallel group study of the efficacy of oral SCIO-469, a p38 mitogen-activated protein kinase inhibitor, in patients with active rheumatoid arthritis. *J Rheumatol* 2011; **38**: 846-854 [PMID: 21285160 DOI: 10.3899/jrheum.100602]

95 **Damjanov N**, Kauffman RS, Spencer-Green GT. Efficacy, pharmacodynamics, and safety of VX-702, a novel p38 MAPK inhibitor, in rheumatoid arthritis: results of two randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled clinical studies. *Arthritis Rheum* 2009; **60**: 1232-1241 [PMID: 19404957 DOI: 10.1002/art.24485]

96 **Kyttaris VC**. Kinase inhibitors: a new class of antirheumatic drugs. *Drug Des Devel Ther* 2012; **6**: 245-250 [PMID: 23055694 DOI: 10.2147/DDDT.S25426]

97 **Clark AR**, Dean JL, Saklatvala J. The p38 MAPK pathway mediates both antiinflammatory and proinflammatory processes: comment on the article by Damjanov and the editorial by Genovese. *Arthritis Rheum* 2009; **60**: 3513-3514 [PMID: 19877029 DOI: 10.1002/art.24919]

98 **Johannessen CM**, Boehm JS, Kim SY, Thomas SR, Wardwell L, Johnson LA, Emery CM, Stransky N, Cogdill AP, Barretina J, Caponigro G, Hieronymus H, Murray RR, Salehi-Ashtiani K, Hill DE, Vidal M, Zhao JJ, Yang X, Alkan O, Kim S, Harris JL, Wilson CJ, Myer VE, Finan PM, Root DE, Roberts TM, Golub T, Flaherty KT, Dummer R, Weber BL, Sellers WR, Schlegel R, Wargo JA, Hahn WC, Garraway LA. COT drives resistance to RAF inhibition through MAP kinase pathway reactivation. *Nature* 2010; **468**: 968-972 [PMID: 21107320 DOI: 10.1038/nature09627]

99 **Firestein GS**. Evolving concepts of rheumatoid arthritis. *Nature* 2003; **423**: 356-361 [PMID: 12748655 DOI: 10.1038/nature01661]

100 **Bamford MJ**, Bailey N, Davies S, Dean DK, Francis L, Panchal TA, Parr CA, Sehmi S, Steadman JG, Takle AK, Townsend JT, Wilson DM. (1H-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridin-2-yl)-1,2,5-oxadiazol-3-ylamine derivatives: further optimisation as highly potent and selective MSK-1-inhibitors. *Bioorg Med Chem Lett* 2005; **15**: 3407-3411 [PMID: 15955699 DOI: 10.1016/j.bmcl.2005.05.020]

101 **Bamford MJ**, Alberti MJ, Bailey N, Davies S, Dean DK, Gaiba A, Garland S, Harling JD, Jung DK, Panchal TA, Parr CA, Steadman JG, Takle AK, Townsend JT, Wilson DM, Witherington J. (1H-imidazo[4,5-c]pyridin-2-yl)-1,2,5-oxadiazol-3-ylamine derivatives: a novel class of potent MSK-1-inhibitors. *Bioorg Med Chem Lett* 2005; **15**: 3402-3406 [PMID: 15950465 DOI: 10.1016/j.bmcl.2005.05.021]

102 **Beltman J**, McCormick F, Cook SJ. The selective protein kinase C inhibitor, Ro-31-8220, inhibits mitogen-activated protein kinase phosphatase-1 (MKP-1) expression, induces c-Jun expression, and activates Jun N-terminal kinase. *J Biol Chem* 1996; **271**: 27018-27024 [PMID: 8900190]

MINIREVIEWS

Quinolone-based first, second and third-line therapies for *Helicobacter pylori*

Enzo Ierardi, Giuseppe Losurdo, Floriana Giorgio, Andrea Iannone, Mariabeatrice Principi, Alfredo Di Leo

Enzo Ierardi, Giuseppe Losurdo, Floriana Giorgio, Andrea Iannone, Mariabeatrice Principi, Alfredo Di Leo, Gastroenterology Section, Department of Emergency and Organ Transplantation, University of Bari, 70124 Bari, Italy

Correspondence to: Enzo Ierardi, Professor, Gastroenterology Section, Department of Emergency and Organ Transplantation, University of Bari, Piazza G. Cesare 11, 70124 Bari, Italy. e.ierardi@virgilio.it
Telephone: +39-80-5594034
Fax: +39-80-5593088

Abstract

Helicobacter pylori (*H. pylori*) is a very common bacterium that infects about 50% of the world population in urban areas and over 90% of people living in rural and developing countries. Fluoroquinolones, a class of antimicrobials, have been extensively used in eradication regimens for *H. pylori*. Levofloxacin is the most commonly used, and in second-line regimens, is one of the most effective options. However, an increasing resistance rate of *H. pylori* to fluoroquinolones is being observed, that will likely affect their effectiveness in the near future. Other novel fluoroquinolone molecules, such as moxifloxacin, sitafloxacin, gatifloxacin and gemifloxacin, have been proposed and showed encouraging results *in vitro*, although data on their clinical use are still limited. Further studies in large sample trials are needed to confirm their safety and efficacy profile in clinical practice.

Key words: *Helicobacter pylori*; Eradication regimens; Fluoroquinolones; Antibiotic resistance; Levofloxacin; Rescue treatments

Core tip: In the present minireview, we analyzed current evidence about the use of fluoroquinolones in first, second and third-line eradication regimens for *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*). The increasing resistances to levofloxacin are a worrying issue, that confirm the need to use this drug with proper care. We analyzed the current use of fluoroquinolones in first-line and rescue regimens, underlining possible pitfalls and mistakes that could be avoided in clinical practice. Novel molecules have been investigated, that could offer an interesting tool to combat *H. pylori*.

Ierardi E, Losurdo G, Giorgio F, Iannone A, Principi M, Di Leo A. Quinolone-based first, second and third-line therapies for *Helicobacter pylori*. *World J Pharmacol* 2015; 4(4): 274-280 Available from: URL: http://www.wjgnet.com/2220-3192/full/v4/i4/274.htm DOI: http://dx.doi.org/10.5497/wjp.v4.i4.274

INTRODUCTION

Helicobacter pylori (*H. pylori*) is a very common bacterium that infects about 50% of the world population in urban areas and over 90% of people living in rural and developing countries[1,2]. The imperative to treat *H. pylori* infection lies in the fact that it is a known risk factor for benign[3] (chronic gastritis and peptic ulcer disease) and malignant [adenocarcinoma and mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue lymphoma] gastric disorders[4]. Indeed, bacterial eradication may change the natural course of these diseases and prevent their malignant evolution[5].

Currently, first-line therapies (triple, sequential or concomitant regimens) are able to achieve eradication in about 80% of cases but when these fail, a second-line regimen is necessary. In this case, Maastricht IV guidelines advise a levofloxacin-containing triple therapy or a bismuth-based quadruple regimen[6]. Since bismuth is not available worldwide and in some countries an excessive number of tablets of tetracycline formulations may be needed to obtain a therapeutic effect[7], fluoroquinolone-containing triple therapies are being adopted with increasing frequency several fluoroquinolone-based protocols, mainly including levofloxacin, have been proposed and tested in different combinations as first, second and third-line treatment for *H. pylori* eradication[8].

Aim of this review is to depict an all-encompassing scenario of the use of fluoroquinolones for *H. pylori* eradication.

FLUOROQUINOLONES: MAIN CHARACTERISTICS IN THE *H. PYLORI* CONTEXT

The fluoroquinolone drug class is active against both gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria. It acts by inhibiting DNA gyrase, a type II topoisomerase, as well as topoisomerase IV, an enzyme necessary to separate replicated bacterial DNA, thus inducing a block of cell division[9]. This mechanism explains its effectiveness against *H. pylori*. However, the resistance of this bacterium to fluoroquinolones is due to point mutations in the *gyrA* region[10].

The antibiotics belonging to this class that have been applied for *H. pylori* eradication are moxifloxacin, sitafloxacin and levofloxacin, which is the most commonly employed. Although guidelines recommend its use in second-line regimens, several studies have used this antibiotic in first-line treatment. This last application may theorically not be correctly indicated because of the risk of further increasing antibiotic resistances[11] due to plasmid-mediated horizontally transferable genes[12]. An example of this unfavorable trend has been observed in Asian countries, where the resistance rates are largely above 10%: 18.4% in Vietnam[13], 20.6% in China[14] and 63.3% in Pakistan[15]. Only Malaysia registered 0%[16] and Japan 8.2%[17].

In Europe, the global resistance to levofloxacin, according to a recent multicentric epidemiologic study, is 14.1%[12], with values ranging from 11.7% in Ireland[18] to 29.1% in Germany[19]. This last percentage should be paid particular attention, if we consider that in 2003 a resistance rate of only 3.3% was detected in France[20]. In Italy a single study found resistance in 10.6% of the strains[21]; this result was confirmed by a recent overview that observed a rate of 11.8% in already treated patients[22].

THE USE OF LEVOFLOXACIN IN *H. PYLORI* ERADICATION REGIMENS

Second line treatments

Levofloxacin has been mainly employed after failure of a first-line regimen, usually in combination with amoxicillin [levofloxacin-based triple therapy (LTT)] for a variable period lasting from 7 to 10 d[23]. Current literature demonstrates that LTT is still more effective than bismuth-containing quadruple therapy. In a meta-analysis by Di Caro *et al*[24] the overall eradication rates were 76.5% in the LTT group and 67.4% in the quadruple regimen group. The superiority of LTT was more evident when it was administered for 10 d (88.7%) as compared to 7 d (70.6%). In a similar meta-analysis by Gisbert *et al*[25], a better tolerability profile of LTT in second-line treatment as compared to the quadruple regimen protocol including bismuth was reported: adverse events occurred in 0.8% and 8.4% of the two groups, respectively.

Other levofloxacin-based alternative regimens have been proposed as second-line therapies after the failure of clarithromycin-based first-line regimens. The "Sequential with levofloxacin" schedule (SQL) has been used in some trials[26]; amoxicillin is given for the first 5 d and levofloxacin plus metronidazole for the remaining 5 d, but the reported success rate is variable, ranging from 65.4% to 82.5%[27,28]. Prolonging the administration of LTT up to 14 d has been proposed as a strategy to improve the effectiveness. Indeed, in a study from Taiwan, 14-d LTT had a success rate of 90.5%, much better than the 10-d LTT (73.6%)[29].

First line treatments

The application of levofloxacin in first-line regimens shows a satisfactory outcome. To date, eleven studies[30-40], reported in Table 1, have investigated LTT as first-line treatment. The pooled success rate was 79.1%, with a 95%CI of 77.7%-80.5%. Studies comparing two different proton pump inhibitors (PPI) in this setting showed an equivalent power[32].

Some studies, therefore, had a disappointing eradication rate for LTT, close to 70%. For these reasons, other levofloxacin-based first-line regimens have been proposed: sequential (SQL) and concomitant (CL). SQL was able to eradicate the bacterium in 96% of cases in an Italian study[41], and a similar rate (95.6%)

Table 1 Studies investigating first-line levofloxacin-based triple therapies

Ref.	Year	Country	PPI	Eradicated/enrolled patients	Duration (d)	ITT rate
Qian *et al*[30]	2012	China	Esomeprazole	269/345	7	78.1%
Cuadrado-Lavín *et al*[31]	2012	Spain	Omeprazole	207/250	10	82.8%
Pan *et al*[32]	2010	China	Esomeprazole/rabeprazole	173/199	7	87.1%
Assem *et al*[33]	2010	Egypt	Esomeprazole	381/450	7	84.7%
Erçin *et al*[34]	2010	Turkey	Lansoprazole	66/91	14	72.0%
Liou *et al*[35]	2010	Taiwan	Lansoprazole	320/432	7	74.0%
Chen *et al*[36]	2010	China	Esomeprazole	222/300	7	74.0%
Molina-Infante *et al*[37]	2010	Spain	Omeprazole	380/460	10	82.6%
Castro-Fernández *et al*[38]	2009	Spain	All PPI	97/135	10	71.8%
Rispo *et al*[39]	2007	Italy	Esomeprazole	118/130	7	90.8%
Lee *et al*[40]	2006	South Korea	All PPI	186/267	7	69.8%
Total				2419/3059		79.1%

The dose of levofloxacin was 500 mg b.i.d and amoxicillin 1 g b.i.d for all studies. PPI: Proton pump inhibitor; ITT: Intention to treat.

was found in a Turkish study[42]. The lowest rate was recorded in a Spanish trial: 82.6%[37]. Only one Italian study tested a 5-d concomitant therapy[43], including levofloxacin 500 mg b.i.d, tinidazole 500 mg b.i.d and amoxicillin 1 g b.i.d. This trial found an eradication rate of 92.2% at intention-to-treat (ITT) and 96.5% at per-protocol (PP) analysis, similar to the control group, that received classical 10-d sequential therapy, which eradicated the bacterium in 93.3% and 95.5% of cases at ITT and PP, respectively. This study prompts two considerations. The first, that conventional first-line therapies are as effective as levofloxacin-containing regimens. The second, that the large difference between ITT and PP in the concomitant regimen is a consequence of a large number of drop-outs, suggesting that this therapy may be less well tolerated than the classical sequential therapy, most probably due to the major antibiotics "charge" ("load"?). Finally, the data in Table 1 do not demonstrate a better outcome of first-line levofloxacin triple therapy than sequential or concomitant treatments. Based on these considerations, the use of levofloxacin in first-line regimens may not be advantageous, taking into account its limited benefits. Moreover, in case of failure, the clinician may encounter some problems in the choice of a rescue therapy, since this good therapeutic option has already been used[44]. Further support of the recommendation to avoid using levofloxacin in first-line regimens may be provided by the evident, rapid increase of worldwide resistances, as reported above.

Third line regimens

Current guidelines propose a culture-based approach when several attempts to eradicate *H. pylori* fail[6]. Unluckily, antimicrobial susceptibility testing is not widely and promptly available. Because of this limitation, several studies have assessed the effectiveness of empirical third-line protocols including levofloxacin. Gisbert *et al*[45] reported, in a prospective multicentre study, that in third-line therapy, 10-d LTT achieved eradication in 66% of cases in 2006. In Italy, third-line LTT was effective

in 83% and 75%, in two studies performed about 10 years ago[46,47]. Presumably, these satisfactory results cannot be replicated nowadays due to the increased rate of quinolone resistances. Moreover, when compared to a rifabutin-based triple therapy, LTT was shown to be less effective (71.4% *vs* 57.1%, respectively)[48] even if the combination with tetracycline can improve the LTT success rate. A "quadruple" regimen including bismuth, levofloxacin and tetracycline was effective in 78.9% in a study from Taiwan[49]. This peculiar combination has been tested as second-line therapy in two other trials with an excellent outcome in Turkey and Taiwan (90.6% and 95.8%, respectively)[50,51]. However, the use of a quadruple regimen in second-line therapy strongly restricts its therapeutic potential for third-line use.

NOVEL MOLECULES: MOXIFLOXACIN, SITAFLOXACIN AND GEMIFLOXACIN

Moxifloxacin is a fourth generation fluoroquinolone. Currently, it is indicated for respiratory infections. However, it has been proposed to treat *H. pylori* infection in some Asian and European trials. The first study was conducted in Germany in 2011, and achieved a 95% success rate in second-line therapy, consisting of a 14-d triple (moxifloxacin plus amoxicillin) regimen[52]. More recently, a multicenter European trial carried out in 250 subjects demonstrated that a second-line 14-d moxifloxacin-based triple regimen was effective in 82.4% of cases[53]. In South Korea, where the use of this drug is extensive, the same treatment was able to cure the infection only in 68.4%[54]. This result strongly supports the hypothesis that a wide consumption of fluoroquinolones may lead to a huge prevalence of resistances. Indeed, a subsequent study[55] from the same area confirmed a similar eradication rate (62.4%). A single Turkish study[56] investigated a quadruple regimen (moxifloxacin, bismuth and tetracycline) in second-line and demonstrated satisfactory results, with a success rate of 82.1%.

Sitafloxacin is another fourth generation fluoro-

quinolone which is currently marketed only in Japan and few other Far East Asian countries. For this reason, only five studies have been performed to investigate its application for *H. pylori* treatment[57-60]. These trials showed that a triple therapy with amoxicillin and sitafloxacin in third-line obtained a success rate ranging from 70% to 90.9%. Nevertheless, further studies are required to assess the effectiveness of this drug[17].

Gemifloxacin is a new quinolone which may be a promising alternative to overcome the problem of *H. pylori* levofloxacin resistances. A recent study from Taiwan showed that gemifloxacin demonstrates inhibitory concentration values only slightly lower than levofloxacin for its antimicrobial activity against *H. pylori* isolates, as well as sensitivity in levofloxacin-resistant strains[61]. Therefore, gemifloxacin may be a powerful quinolone to combat *H. pylori* and offers a future alternative for resistant strains. However, current studies have investigated the effectiveness of gemifloxacin only *in vitro*[62-64], and clinical trials are needed to translate these results to humans. Finally, gatifloxacin has been employed only in few pilot studies as a third-line regimen, showing a success rate ranging from 75% to 84.4%[65,66], but with discordant results when used in first-line[67,68].

CONCLUSION

Fluoroquinolones-based protocols offer encouraging strategies for the eradication of *H. pylori* infection. According to the current evidence and the Maastricht Ⅳ consensus, they should be used as first-line or "rescue" treatment, depending on geographic areas, since *H. pylori* resistance to these antibiotics is increasing. However, the use of levofloxacin in a first-line regimen has limited benefits and it restricts the therapeutic options in case of failure. Therefore, this antibiotic should generally be confined to second-line treatment. In third-line its use is mainly empirical. Despite the relatively few studies, new fluoroquinolones could offer promising alternative options for resistant strains. Moxifloxacin, sitafloxacin, gatifloxacin and gemifloxacin have been less investigated but may be the most encouraging molecules.

The extension of therapy duration to 14 d improves the eradication rates, but this strategy could have an impact on some public health issues such as tuberculosis management. Indeed, a long exposure to fluoroquinolones may delay the diagnosis of the infection, as well as raising drug resistances[69].

In summary, *H. pylori* eradication guidelines recommend the prescription of levofloxacin as first-line therapy only in areas with high clarithromycin resistances. In second-line regimens, levofloxacin-based protocols are a promising strategy as an alternative to quadruple therapy, when the PPI-clarithromycin-amoxicillin association fails. These protocols, moreover, offer the advantages of efficacy, simplicity, and safety. Finally, as regards third-line and "rescue" protocols, the antibiotic

choice should be guided by antimicrobial susceptibility testing. This can be achieved by culture-based (E-test) and/or molecular-based methods (real-time PCR to detect the presence of a *gyrA* mutation).

On the bases of what has been reported above, fluoroquinolones appear to be a very useful and effective treatment option for *H. pylori* eradication. However, they need to be adopted with some caution, and the criteria for their proper use defined, so as to avoid the risk that abuse could lead to a rapid ineffectiveness.

REFERENCES

1   **Tonkic A**, Tonkic M, Lehours P, Mégraud F. Epidemiology and diagnosis of Helicobacter pylori infection. *Helicobacter* 2012; **17** Suppl 1: 1-8 [PMID: 22958148 DOI: 10.1111/j.1523-5378.2012.00975.x]

2   **Goh KL**, Chan WK, Shiota S, Yamaoka Y. Epidemiology of Helicobacter pylori infection and public health implications. *Helicobacter* 2011; **16** Suppl 1: 1-9 [PMID: 21896079 DOI: 10.1111/j.1523-5378.2011.00874.x]

3   **Ierardi E**, Goni E, Losurdo G, Di Mario F. Helicobacter pylori and nonmalignant diseases. *Helicobacter* 2014; **19** Suppl 1: 27-31 [PMID: 25167942 DOI: 10.1111/hel.12157]

4   **Venerito M**, Nardone G, Selgrad M, Rokkas T, Malfertheiner P. Gastric cancer--epidemiologic and clinical aspects. *Helicobacter* 2014; **19** Suppl 1: 32-37 [PMID: 25167943 DOI: 10.1111/hel.12164]

5   **Zullo A**, Hassan C, Cristofari F, Andriani A, De Francesco V, Ierardi E, Tomao S, Stolte M, Morini S, Vaira D. Effects of Helicobacter pylori eradication on early stage gastric mucosa-associated lymphoid tissue lymphoma. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2010; **8**: 105-110 [PMID: 19631287 DOI: 10.1016/j.cgh.2009.07.017]

6   **Malfertheiner P**, Megraud F, O'Morain CA, Atherton J, Axon AT, Bazzoli F, Gensini GF, Gisbert JP, Graham DY, Rokkas T, El-Omar EM, Kuipers EJ. Management of Helicobacter pylori infection--the Maastricht IV/ Florence Consensus Report. *Gut* 2012; **61**: 646-664 [PMID: 22491499 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2012-302084]

7   **Ierardi E**, Giangaspero A, Losurdo G, Giorgio F, Amoruso A, De Francesco V, Di Leo A, Principi M. Quadruple rescue therapy after first and second line failure for Helicobacter pylori treatment: comparison between two tetracycline-based regimens. *J Gastrointestin Liver Dis* 2014; **23**: 367-370 [PMID: 25531993 DOI: 10.15403/jgld.2014.1121.234.qrth]

8   **Vakil N**, Vaira D. Treatment for H. pylori infection: new challenges with antimicrobial resistance. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2013; **47**: 383-388 [PMID: 23388847 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0b013e318277577b]

9   **Drlica K**, Zhao X. DNA gyrase, topoisomerase IV, and the 4-quinolones. *Microbiol Mol Biol Rev* 1997; **61**: 377-392 [PMID: 9293187]

10 **Moore RA**, Beckthold B, Wong S, Kureishi A, Bryan LE. Nucleotide sequence of the gyrA gene and characterization of ciprofloxacin-resistant mutants of Helicobacter pylori. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 1995; **39**: 107-111 [PMID: 7695290]

11 **Ierardi E**, Giorgio F, Losurdo G, Di Leo A, Principi M. How antibiotic resistances could change Helicobacter pylori treatment: A matter of geography? *World J Gastroenterol* 2013; **19**: 8168-8180 [PMID: 24363506 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v19.i45.8168]

12 **Megraud F**, Coenen S, Versporten A, Kist M, Lopez-Brea M, Hirschl AM, Andersen LP, Goossens H, Glupczynski Y. Helicobacter pylori resistance to antibiotics in Europe and its relationship to antibiotic consumption. *Gut* 2013; **62**: 34-42 [PMID: 22580412 DOI: 10.1136/gutjnl-2012-302254]

13 **Binh TT**, Shiota S, Nguyen LT, Ho DD, Hoang HH, Ta L, Trinh DT, Fujioka T, Yamaoka Y. The incidence of primary antibiotic resistance of Helicobacter pylori in Vietnam. *J Clin Gastroenterol* 2013; **47**: 233-238 [PMID: 23090037 DOI: 10.1097/MCG.0b013e3182676e2b]

14 **Su P**, Li Y, Li H, Zhang J, Lin L, Wang Q, Guo F, Ji Z, Mao J, Tang W, Shi Z, Shao W, Mao J, Zhu X, Zhang X, Tong Y, Tu H, Jiang M, Wang Z, Jin F, Yang N, Zhang J. Antibiotic resistance of Helicobacter pylori isolated in the Southeast Coastal Region of China. *Helicobacter* 2013; **18**: 274-279 [PMID: 23418857 DOI: 10.1111/hel.12046]

15 **Rajper S**, Khan E, Ahmad Z, Alam SM, Akbar A, Hasan R. Macrolide and fluoroquinolone resistance in Helicobacter pylori isolates: an experience at a tertiary care centre in Pakistan. *J Pak Med Assoc* 2012; **62**: 1140-1144 [PMID: 23866399]

16 **Goh KL**, Navaratnam P. High Helicobacter pylori resistance to metronidazole but zero or low resistance to clarithromycin, levofloxacin, and other antibiotics in Malaysia. *Helicobacter* 2011; **16**: 241-245 [PMID: 21585611 DOI: 10.1111/j.1523-5378.2011.008 41.x]

17 **Murakami K**, Furuta T, Ando T, Nakajima T, Inui Y, Oshima T, Tomita T, Mabe K, Sasaki M, Suganuma T, Nomura H, Satoh K, Hori S, Inoue S, Tomokane T, Kudo M, Inaba T, Take S, Ohkusa T, Yamamoto S, Mizuno S, Kamoshida T, Amagai K, Iwamoto J, Miwa J, Kodama M, Okimoto T, Kato M, Asaka M. Multi-center randomized controlled study to establish the standard third-line regimen for Helicobacter pylori eradication in Japan. *J Gastroenterol* 2013; **48**: 1128-1135 [PMID: 23307042 DOI: 10.1007/ s00535-012-0731-8]

18 **O'Connor A**, Taneike I, Nami A, Fitzgerald N, Ryan B, Breslin N, O'Connor H, McNamara D, Murphy P, O'Morain C. Helicobacter pylori resistance rates for levofloxacin, tetracycline and rifabutin among Irish isolates at a reference centre. *Ir J Med Sci* 2013; **182**: 693-695 [PMID: 23625165 DOI: 10.1007/s11845-013-0957-3]

19 **Wueppenhorst N**, Stueger HP, Kist M, Glocker EO. High secondary resistance to quinolones in German Helicobacter pylori clinical isolates. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2013; **68**: 1562-1566 [PMID: 23463210 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dkt061]

20 **Tankovic J**, Lascols C, Sculo Q, Petit JC, Soussy CJ. Single and double mutations in gyrA but not in gyrB are associated with low- and high-level fluoroquinolone resistance in Helicobacter pylori. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2003; **47**: 3942-3944 [PMID: 14638505 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.47.12.3942-3944.2003]

21 **De Francesco V**, Giorgio F, Hassan C, Manes G, Vannella L, Panella C, Ierardi E, Zullo A. Worldwide H. pylori antibiotic resistance: a systematic review. *J Gastrointestin Liver Dis* 2010; **19**: 409-414 [PMID: 21188333]

22 **Monno R**, Capolongo C, Giorgio F, Losurdo G, Di Leo A, Ierardi E. An overview of antibiotic phenotypic resistances to Helicobacter pylori (Hp) in Southern Italy: May tigecycline be the "drug of the future?" (abstract). Proceedings European Helicobacter Study Group Meeting; 2013 Sep 12-14; Madrid

23 **Federico A**, Gravina AG, Miranda A, Loguercio C, Romano M. Eradication of Helicobacter pylori infection: which regimen first? *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 665-672 [PMID: 24574740 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i3.665]

24 **Di Caro S**, Fini L, Daoud Y, Grizzi F, Gasbarrini A, De Lorenzo A, Di Renzo L, McCartney S, Bloom S. Levofloxacin/amoxicillin-based schemes vs quadruple therapy for Helicobacter pylori eradication in second-line. *World J Gastroenterol* 2012; **18**: 5669-5678 [PMID: 23155306 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v18.i40.5669]

25 **Gisbert JP**, Molina-Infante J, Marin AC, Vinagre G, Barrio J, McNicholl AG. Second-line rescue triple therapy with levofloxacin after failure of non-bismuth quadruple "sequential" or "concomitant" treatment to eradicate H. pylori infection. *Scand J Gastroenterol* 2013; **48**: 652-656 [PMID: 23556551 DOI: 10.3109/00365521.201 3.786132]

26 **Zullo A**, De Francesco V, Hassan C, Ridola L, Repici A, Bruzzese V, Vaira D. Modified sequential therapy regimens for Helicobacter pylori eradication: a systematic review. *Dig Liver Dis* 2013; **45**: 18-22 [PMID: 23022424 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2012.08.025]

27 **Aminian K**, Farsad F, Ghanbari A, Fakhreih S, Hasheminasab SM. A randomized trial comparing four Helicobacter pylori eradication regimens: standard triple therapy, ciprofloxacin based triple therapy, quadruple and sequential therapy. *Trop Gastroenterol* 2010; **31**:

303-307 [PMID: 21568147]

28 **Aydin A**, Oruc N, Turan I, Ozutemiz O, Tuncyurek M, Musoglu A. The modified sequential treatment regimen containing levofloxacin for Helicobacter pylori eradication in Turkey. *Helicobacter* 2009; **14**: 520-524 [PMID: 19889069 DOI: 10.1111/j.1523-5378.2009.00 720.x]

29 **Tai WC**, Lee CH, Chiou SS, Kuo CM, Kuo CH, Liang CM, Lu LS, Chiu CH, Wu KL, Chiu YC, Hu TH, Chuah SK. The clinical and bacteriological factors for optimal levofloxacin-containing triple therapy in second-line Helicobacter pylori eradication. *PLoS One* 2014; **9**: e105822 [PMID: 25141137 DOI: 10.1371/journal. pone.0105822]

30 **Qian J**, Ye F, Zhang J, Yang YM, Tu HM, Jiang Q, Shang L, Pan XL, Shi RH, Zhang GX. Levofloxacin-containing triple and sequential therapy or standard sequential therapy as the first line treatment for Helicobacter pylori eradication in China. *Helicobacter* 2012; **17**: 478-485 [PMID: 23067317 DOI: 10.1111/j.1523-5378.20 12.00993.x]

31 **Cuadrado-Lavín A**, Salcines-Caviedes JR, Carrascosa MF, Dierssen-Sotos T, Cobo M, Campos MR, Ayestarán B, Fernández-Pousa A, González-Colominas E, Aresti-Zárate S, Hernández M, Pascual EL. Levofloxacin versus clarithromycin in a 10 day triple therapy regimen for first-line Helicobacter pylori eradication: a single-blind randomized clinical trial. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2012; **67**: 2254-2259 [PMID: 22687889 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dks209]

32 **Pan X**, Li Y, Qiu Y, Tang Q, Qian B, Yao L, Shi R, Zhang G. Efficacy and tolerability of first-line triple therapy with levofloxacin and amoxicillin plus esomeprazole or rabeprazole for the eradication of Helicobacter pylori infection and the effect of CYP2C19 genotype: a 1-week, randomized, open-label study in Chinese adults. *Clin Ther* 2010; **32**: 2003-2011 [PMID: 21118735 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinthera.2010.11.005]

33 **Assem M**, El Azab G, Rasheed MA, Abdelfatah M, Shastery M. Efficacy and safety of Levofloxacin, Clarithromycin and Esomeprazol as first line triple therapy for Helicobacter pylori eradication in Middle East. Prospective, randomized, blind, comparative, multicenter study. *Eur J Intern Med* 2010; **21**: 310-314 [PMID: 20603042 DOI: 10.1016/j.ejim.2010.05.011]

34 **Erçin CN**, Uygun A, Toros AB, Kantarcioğlu M, Kilciler G, Polat Z, Bağci S. Comparison of 7- and 14-day first-line therapies including levofloxacin in patients with Helicobacter pylori positive non-ulcer dyspepsia. *Turk J Gastroenterol* 2010; **21**: 12-16 [PMID: 20533106]

35 **Liou JM**, Lin JT, Chang CY, Chen MJ, Cheng TY, Lee YC, Chen CC, Sheng WH, Wang HP, Wu MS. Levofloxacin-based and clarithromycin-based triple therapies as first-line and second-line treatments for Helicobacter pylori infection: a randomised comparative trial with crossover design. *Gut* 2010; **59**: 572-578 [PMID: 20427390 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2009.198309]

36 **Chen LW**, Chien RN, Chang JJ, Fang KM, Chang LC. Comparison of the once-daily levofloxacin-containing triple therapy with the twice-daily standard triple therapy for first-line Helicobacter pylori eradication: a prospective randomised study. *Int J Clin Pract* 2010; **64**: 1530-1534 [PMID: 20846200 DOI: 10.1111/j.1742-1241.2010. 02482.x]

37 **Molina-Infante J**, Perez-Gallardo B, Fernandez-Bermejo M, Hernandez-Alonso M, Vinagre G, Dueñas C, Mateos-Rodriguez JM, Gonzalez-Garcia G, Abadia EG, Gisbert JP. Clinical trial: clarithromycin vs. levofloxacin in first-line triple and sequential regimens for Helicobacter pylori eradication. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2010; **31**: 1077-1084 [PMID: 20180787 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2010.04274.x]

38 **Castro-Fernández M**, Lamas E, Pérez-Pastor A, Pabón M, Aparcero R, Vargas-Romero J, Larraona JL, Romero-Gómez M. Efficacy of triple therapy with a proton pump inhibitor, levofloxacin, and amoxicillin as first-line treatment to eradicate Helicobacter pylori. *Rev Esp Enferm Dig* 2009; **101**: 395-398, 399-402 [PMID: 19630462 DOI: 10.4321/S1130-01082009000600004]

39 **Rispo A**, Di Girolamo E, Cozzolino A, Bozzi R, Morante A, Pasquale L. Levofloxacin in first-line treatment of Helicobacter pylori infection. *Helicobacter* 2007; **12**: 364-365 [PMID: 17669111

DOI: 10.1111/j.1523-5378.2007.00517.x]

40   **Lee JH**, Hong SP, Kwon CI, Phyun LH, Lee BS, Song HU, Ko KH, Hwang SG, Park PW, Rim KS, Kim S. [The efficacy of levofloxacin based triple therapy for Helicobacter pylori eradication]. *Korean J Gastroenterol* 2006; **48**: 19-24 [PMID: 16861877]

41   **Romano M**, Cuomo A, Gravina AG, Miranda A, Iovene MR, Tiso A, Sica M, Rocco A, Salerno R, Marmo R, Federico A, Nardone G. Empirical levofloxacin-containing versus clarithromycin-containing sequential therapy for Helicobacter pylori eradication: a randomised trial. *Gut* 2010; **59**: 1465-1470 [PMID: 20947881 DOI: 10.1136/gut.2010.215350]

42   **Ozdil K**, Calhan T, Sahin A, Senates E, Kahraman R, Yüzbasioglu B, Demirdag H, Demirsoy H, Sökmen MH. Levofloxacin based sequential and triple therapy compared with standard plus probiotic combination for Helicobacter pylori eradication. *Hepatogastroenterology* 2011; **58**: 1148-1152 [PMID: 21937367 DOI: 10.5754/hge11075]

43   **Federico A**, Nardone G, Gravina AG, Iovene MR, Miranda A, Compare D, Pilloni PA, Rocco A, Ricciardiello L, Marmo R, Loguercio C, Romano M. Efficacy of 5-day levofloxacin-containing concomitant therapy in eradication of Helicobacter pylori infection. *Gastroenterology* 2012; **143**: 55-61.e1; quize e13-4 [PMID: 22484118 DOI: 10.1053/j.gastro.2012.03.043]

44   **Talebi Bezmin Abadi A**. Therapy of Helicobacter pylori: present medley and future prospective. *Biomed Res Int* 2014; **2014**: 124607 [PMID: 24800203 DOI: 10.1155/2014/124607]

45   **Gisbert JP**, Castro-Fernández M, Bermejo F, Pérez-Aisa A, Ducons J, Fernández-Bermejo M, Bory F, Cosme A, Benito LM, López-Rivas L, Lamas E, Pabón M, Olivares D. Third-line rescue therapy with levofloxacin after two H. pylori treatment failures. *Am J Gastroenterol* 2006; **101**: 243-247 [PMID: 16454825 DOI: 10.1111/j.1572-0241.2006.00457.x]

46   **Zullo A**, Hassan C, De Francesco V, Lorenzetti R, Marignani M, Angeletti S, Ierardi E, Morini S. A third-line levofloxacin-based rescue therapy for Helicobacter pylori eradication. *Dig Liver Dis* 2003; **35**: 232-236 [PMID: 12801033 DOI: 10.1016/S1590-8658(03)00059-8]

47   **Gatta L**, Zullo A, Perna F, Ricci C, De Francesco V, Tampieri A, Bernabucci V, Cavina M, Hassan C, Ierardi E, Morini S, Vaira D. A 10-day levofloxacin-based triple therapy in patients who have failed two eradication courses. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2005; **22**: 45-49 [PMID: 15963079 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2005.02522.x]

48   **Jeong MH**, Chung JW, Lee SJ, Ha M, Jeong SH, Na S, Na BS, Park SK, Kim YJ, Kwon KA, Ko KI, Jo Y, Hahm KB, Jung HY. [Comparison of rifabutin- and levofloxacin-based third-line rescue therapies for Helicobacter pylori]. *Korean J Gastroenterol* 2012; **59**: 401-406 [PMID: 22735872 DOI: 10.4166/kjg.2012.59.6.401]

49   **Kuo CH**, Hsu PI, Kuo FC, Wang SS, Hu HM, Liu CJ, Chuah SK, Chen YH, Hsieh MC, Wu DC, Tseng HH. Comparison of 10 day bismuth quadruple therapy with high-dose metronidazole or levofloxacin for second-line Helicobacter pylori therapy: a randomized controlled trial. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2013; **68**: 222-228 [PMID: 22984204 DOI: 10.1093/jac/dks361]

50   **Calhan T**, Kahraman R, Sahin A, Senates E, Doganay HL, Kanat E, Ozdil K, Sokmen HM. Efficacy of two levofloxacin-containing second-line therapies for Helicobacter pylori: a pilot study. *Helicobacter* 2013; **18**: 378-383 [PMID: 23601026 DOI: 10.1111/hel.12056]

51   **Hsu PI**, Chen WC, Tsay FW, Shih CA, Kao SS, Wang HM, Yu HC, Lai KH, Tseng HH, Peng NJ, Chen A, Kuo CH, Wu DC. Ten-day Quadruple therapy comprising proton-pump inhibitor, bismuth, tetracycline, and levofloxacin achieves a high eradication rate for Helicobacter pylori infection after failure of sequential therapy. *Helicobacter* 2014; **19**: 74-79 [PMID: 24033865 DOI: 10.1111/hel.12085]

52   **Miehlke S**, Krasz S, Schneider-Brachert W, Kuhlisch E, Berning M, Madisch A, Laass MW, Neumeyer M, Jebens C, Zekorn C, Knoth H, Vieth M, Stolte M, Lehn N, Morgner A. Randomized trial on 14 versus 7 days of esomeprazole, moxifloxacin, and amoxicillin for second-line or rescue treatment of Helicobacter pylori infection.

Helicobacter 2011; **16**: 420-426 [PMID: 22059392 DOI: 10.1111/j.1523-5378.2011.00867.x]

53   **Gisbert JP**, Romano M, Molina-Infante J, Lucendo AJ, Medina E, Modolell I, Rodríguez-Tellez M, Gomez B, Barrio J, Perona M, Ortuño J, Ariño I, Domínguez-Muñoz JE, Perez-Aisa Á, Bermejo F, Domínguez JL, Almela P, Gomez-Camarero J, Millastre J, Martin-Noguerol E, Gravina AG, Martorano M, Miranda A, Federico A, Fernandez-Bermejo M, Angueira T, Ferrer-Barcelo L, Fernández N, Marín AC, McNicholl AG. Two-week, high-dose proton pump inhibitor, moxifloxacin triple Helicobacter pylori therapy after failure of standard triple or non-bismuth quadruple treatments. *Dig Liver Dis* 2015; **47**: 108-113 [PMID: 25454706 DOI: 10.1016/j.dld.2014.10.009]

54   **Kang KK**, Lee DH, Oh DH, Yoon H, Shin CM, Park YS, Kim N, Jung HC. Helicobacter pylori eradication with moxifloxacin-containing therapy following failed first-line therapies in South Korea. *World J Gastroenterol* 2014; **20**: 6932-6938 [PMID: 24944485 DOI: 10.3748/wjg.v20.i22.6932]

55   **Chung KH**, Lee DH, Jin E, Cho Y, Seo JY, Kim N, Jeong SH, Kim JW, Hwang JH, Shin CM. The efficacy of moxifloxacin-containing triple therapy after standard triple, sequential, or concomitant therapy failure for Helicobacter pylori eradication in Korea. *Gut Liver* 2014; **8**: 605-611 [PMID: 25368747 DOI: 10.5009/gnl13303]

56   **Ergül B**, Koçak E, Taş A, Filik L, Köklü S. Bismuth, moxifloxacin, tetracycline, lansoprazole quadruple first line therapy for eradication of H. pylori: A prospective study. *Clin Res Hepatol Gastroenterol* 2013; **37**: 527-529 [PMID: 23312494 DOI: 10.1016/j.clinre.2012.10.014]

57   **Furuta T**, Sugimoto M, Kodaira C, Nishino M, Yamade M, Uotani T, Sahara S, Ichikawa H, Yamada T, Osawa S, Sugimoto K, Watanabe H, Umemura K. Sitafloxacin-based third-line rescue regimens for Helicobacter pylori infection in Japan. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2014; **29**: 487-493 [PMID: 24224808 DOI: 10.1111/jgh.12442]

58   **Hirata Y**, Ohmae T, Yanai A, Sakitani K, Hayakawa Y, Yoshida S, Sugimoto T, Mitsuno Y, Akanuma M, Yamaji Y, Ogura K, Maeda S, Koike K. Sitafloxacin resistance in Helicobacter pylori isolates and sitafloxacin-based triple therapy as a third-line regimen in Japan. *Int J Antimicrob Agents* 2012; **39**: 352-355 [PMID: 22321702 DOI: 10.1016/j.ijantimicag.2011.12.002]

59   **Matsuzaki J**, Suzuki H, Nishizawa T, Hirata K, Tsugawa H, Saito Y, Okada S, Fukuhara S, Hibi T. Efficacy of sitafloxacin-based rescue therapy for Helicobacter pylori after failures of first- and second-line therapies. *Antimicrob Agents Chemother* 2012; **56**: 1643-1645 [PMID: 22203601 DOI: 10.1128/AAC.05941-11]

60   **Furuta T**, Sugimoto M, Yamade M, Uotani T, Sahara S, Ichikawa H, Kagami T, Yamada T, Osawa S, Sugimoto K, Watanabe H, Umemura K. Eradication of H. pylori infection in patients allergic to penicillin using triple therapy with a PPI, metronidazole and sitafloxacin. *Intern Med* 2014; **53**: 571-575 [PMID: 24633026]

61   **Cheng A**, Sheng WH, Liou JM, Wang HP, Wu MS, Lin JT, Chang SC. Comparative in vitro antimicrobial susceptibility and synergistic activity of antimicrobial combinations against Helicobacter pylori isolates in Taiwan. *J Microbiol Immunol Infect* 2015; **48**: 72-79 [PMID: 23036269 DOI: 10.1016/j.jmii.2012.08.021]

62   **Chang WL**, Kao CY, Wu CT, Huang AH, Wu JJ, Yang HB, Cheng HC, Sheu BS. Gemifloxacin can partially overcome quinolone resistance of H. pylori with gyrA mutation in Taiwan. *Helicobacter* 2012; **17**: 210-215 [PMID: 22515359 DOI: 10.1111/j.1523-5378.2012.00935.x]

63   **Yang JC**, Lee PI, Hsueh PR. In vitro activity of nemonoxacin, tigecycline, and other antimicrobial agents against Helicobacter pylori isolates in Taiwan, 1998-2007. *Eur J Clin Microbiol Infect Dis* 2010; **29**: 1369-1375 [PMID: 20658256 DOI: 10.1007/s10096-010-1009-9]

64   **Minehart HW**, Chalker AF. In vitro activity of gemifloxacin against Helicobacter pylori. *J Antimicrob Chemother* 2001; **47**: 360-361 [PMID: 11222574]

65   **Nishizawa T**, Suzuki H, Nakagawa I, Iwasaki E, Masaoka T, Hibi T. Gatifloxacin-based triple therapy as a third-line regimen for

Helicobacter pylori eradication. *J Gastroenterol Hepatol* 2008; **23** Suppl 2: S167-S170 [PMID: 19120892 DOI: 10.1111/j.1440-1746.2 008.05407.x]

66   **Sharara AI**, Chaar HF, Aoun E, Abdul-Baki H, Araj GF, Kanj SS. Efficacy and safety of rabeprazole, amoxicillin, and gatifloxacin after treatment failure of initial Helicobacter pylori eradication. *Helicobacter* 2006; **11**: 231-236 [PMID: 16882325 DOI: 10.1111/ j.1523-5378.2006.00416.x]

67   **Graham DY**, Abudayyeh S, El-Zimaity HM, Hoffman J, Reddy R, Opekun AR. Sequential therapy using high-dose esomeprazole-amoxicillin followed by gatifloxacin for Helicobacter pylori infection. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther* 2006; **24**: 845-850 [PMID: 16918889 DOI: 10.1111/j.1365-2036.2006.03072.x]

68   **Sharara AI**, Chaar HF, Racoubian E, Moukhachen O, Barada KA, Mourad FH, Araj GF. Efficacy of two rabeprazole/gatifloxacin-based triple therapies for Helicobacter pylori infection. *Helicobacter* 2004; **9**: 255-261 [PMID: 15165262 DOI: 10.1111/j.1083-4389.200 4.00220.x]

69   **Hernández-Garduño E**. Is the delay in diagnosis of pulmonary tuberculosis related to exposure to fluoroquinolones or any antibiotic? *Int J Tuberc Lung Dis* 2011; **15**: 1560; author reply 1560 [PMID: 22008774 DOI: 10.5588/ijtld.11.0515]